THIRD EDITION

DESIGN OF STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

CONCRETE, STEELWORK, MASONRY AND TIMBER DESIGNS TO BRITISH STANDARDS AND EUROCODES

Spon Press

SPON TEXT

CHANAKYA ARYA

Design of Structural Elements

Third Edition

Concrete, steelwork, masonry and timber designs to British Standards and Eurocodes

Design of Structural Elements

Third Edition

Concrete, steelwork, masonry and timber designs to British Standards and Eurocodes

Chanakya Arya

Spon Press
an imprint of Taylor & Francis
LONDON AND NEW YORK

First published 1994 by E & FN Spon

Second edition published 2003 by Spon Press

This edition published 2009
by Taylor & Francis
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Taylor & Francis
270 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10016, USA

Taylor & Francis is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2009.

To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge's
collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Arya, Chanakya.
Design of structural elements : concrete, steelwork, masonry, and timber designs
to British standards and Eurocodes / Chanakya Arya. – 3rd ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
1. Structural design – Standards – Great Britain. 2. Structural design – Standards – Europe. I. Title. II. Title: Concrete, steelwork, masonry, and timber design to British standards and Eurocodes.
TA658.A79 2009
624.1′7–dc22
2008043080

ISBN 0-203-92650-1 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN10: 0-415-46719-5 (hbk)
ISBN10: 0-415-46720-9 (pbk)
ISBN10: 0-203-92650-1 (ebk)

ISBN13: 978-0-415-46719-3 (hbk)
ISBN13: 978-0-415-46720-9 (pbk)
ISBN13: 978-0-203-92650-5 (ebk)

Contents

Preface to the third edition

Since publication of the second edition of *Design of Structural Elements* there have been two major developments in the field of structural engineering which have suggested this new edition.

The first and foremost of these is that the Eurocodes for concrete, steel, masonry and timber design have now been converted to full EuroNorm (EN) status and, with the possible exception of the steel code, all the associated UK National Annexes have also been finalised and published. Therefore, these codes can now be used for structural design, although guidance on the timing and circumstances under which they must be used is still awaited. Thus, the content of Chapters 8 to 11 on, respectively, the design of concrete, steel, masonry and timber structures has been completely revised to comply with the EN versions of the Eurocodes for these materials. The opportunity has been used to expand Chapter 10 and include several worked examples on the design of masonry walls subject to either vertical or lateral loading or a combination of both.

The second major development is that a number of small but significant amendments have been made to the 1997 edition of BS 8110: Part 1 on concrete design, and new editions of BS 5628: Parts 1 and 3 on masonry design have recently been published. These and other national standards, e.g. BS 5950 for steel design and BS 5268 for timber design, are still widely used in the UK and beyond. This situation is likely to persist for some years, and therefore the decision was taken to retain the chapters on British Standards and where necessary update the material to reflect latest design recommendations. This principally affects the material in Chapters 3 and 5 on concrete and masonry design.

The chapters on Eurocodes are not self-contained but include reference to relevant chapters on British Standards. This should not present any problems to readers familiar with British Standards, but will mean that readers new to this subject will have to refer to two chapters from time to time to get the most from this book. This is not ideal, but should result in the reader becoming familiar with both British and European practices, which is probably necessary during the transition phase from British Standards to Eurocodes.

Preface to the second edition

The main motivation for preparing this new edition was to update the text in Chapters 4 and 6 on steel and timber design to conform with the latest editions of respectively BS 5950: Part 1 and BS 5268: Part 2. The opportunity has also been taken to add new material to Chapters 3 and 4. Thus, Chapter 3 on concrete design now includes a new section and several new worked examples on the analysis and design of continuous beams and slabs. Examples illustrating the analysis and design of two-way spanning slabs and columns subject to axial load and bending have also been added. The section on concrete slabs has been updated. A discussion on flooring systems for steel framed structures is featured in Chapter 4 together with a section and several worked examples on composite floor design.

Work on converting Parts 1.1 of the Eurocodes for concrete, steel, timber and masonry structures to full EN status is still ongoing. Until such time that these documents are approved the design rules in pre-standard form, designated by ENV, remain valid. The material in Chapters 8, 9 and 11 to the ENV versions of EC2, EC3 and EC5 are still current. The first part of Eurocode 6 on masonry design was published in pre-standard form in 1996, some three years after publication of the first edition of this book. The material in Chapter 10 has therefore been revised, so it now conforms to the guidance given in the ENV.

I would like to thank the following who have assisted with the preparation of this new edition: Professor Colin Baley for preparing Appendix C; Fred Lambert, Tony Threlfall, Charles Goodchild and Peter Watt for reviewing parts of the manuscript.

Preface to the first edition

Structural design is a key element of all degree and diploma courses in civil and structural engineering. It involves the study of principles and procedures contained in the latest codes of practice for structural design for a range of materials, including concrete, steel, masonry and timber.

Most textbooks on structural design consider only one construction material and, therefore, the student may end up buying several books on the subject. This is undesirable from the viewpoint of cost but also because it makes it difficult for the student to unify principles of structural design, because of differing presentation approaches adopted by the authors.

There are a number of combined textbooks which include sections on several materials. However, these tend to concentrate on application of the codes and give little explanation of the structural principles involved or, indeed, an awareness of material properties and their design implications. Moreover, none of the books refer to the new Eurocodes for structural design, which will eventually replace British Standards.

The purpose of this book, then, is to describe the background to the principles and procedures contained in the latest British Standards and Eurocodes on the structural use of concrete, steelwork, masonry and timber. It is primarily aimed at students on civil and structural engineering degree and diploma courses. Allied professionals such as architects, builders and surveyors will also find it appropriate. In so far as it includes five chapters on the structural Eurocodes it will be of considerable interest to practising engineers too.

The subject matter is divided into 11 chapters and 3 parts:

Part One	contains two chapters and explains the principles and philosophy of structural design, focusing on the limit state approach. It also explains how the overall loading on a structure and individual elements can be assessed, thereby enabling the designer to size the element.
Part Two	contains four chapters covering the design and detailing of a number of structural elements, e.g. floors, beams, walls, columns, connections and foundations to the latest British codes of practice for concrete, steelwork, masonry and timber design.
Part Three	contains five chapters on the Eurocodes for these materials. The first of these describes the purpose, scope and problems associated with drafting the Eurocodes. The remaining chapters describe the layout and contents of EC2, EC3, EC5 and EC6 for design in concrete, steelwork, timber and masonry respectively.

At the end of Chapters 1–6 a number of design problems have been included for the student to attempt.

Although most of the tables and figures from the British Standards referred to in the text have been reproduced, it is expected that the reader will have either the full Standard or the publication *Extracts from British Standards for Students of Structural Design* in order to gain the most from this book.

I would like to thank the following who have assisted with the production of this book: Peter Wright for co-authoring Chapters 1, 4 and 9; Fred Lambert, Tony Fewell, John Moran, David Smith, Tony Threlfall, Colin Taylor, Peter Watt and Peter Steer for reviewing various parts of the manuscript; Tony Fawcett for the drafting of the figures; and Associate Professor Noor Hana for help with proofreading.

C. Arya
London
UK

Acknowledgements

I am once again indebted to Tony Threlfall, formerly of the British Cement Association and now an independent consultant, for comprehensively reviewing Chapter 8 and the material in Chapter 3 on durability and fire resistance

I would also sincerely like to thank Professor R.S. Narayanan of the Clark Smith Partnership for reviewing Chapter 7, David Brown of the Steel Construction Institute for reviewing Chapter 9, Dr John Morton, an independent consultant, for reviewing Chapter 10, Dr Ali Arasteh of the Brick Development Association for reviewing Chapters 5 and 10, and Peter Steer, an independent consultant, for reviewing Chapter 11. The contents of these chapters are greatly improved due to their comments.

A special thanks to John Aston for reading parts of the manuscript.

I am grateful to The Concrete Centre for permission to use extracts from their publications. Extracts from British Standards are reproduced with the permission of BSI under licence number 2008ET0037. Complete standards can be obtained from BSI Customer Services, 389 Chiswick High Road, London W4 4AL.

List of worked examples

Dedication

In memory of Biji

PART ONE

INTRODUCTION TO STRUCTURAL DESIGN

The primary aim of all structural design is to ensure that the structure will perform satisfactorily during its design life. Specifically, the designer must check that the structure is capable of carrying the loads safely and that it will not deform excessively due to the applied loads. This requires the designer to make realistic estimates of the strengths of the materials composing the structure and the loading to which it may be subject during its design life. Furthermore, the designer will need a basic understanding of structural behaviour.

The work that follows has two objectives:

1. to describe the philosophy of structural design;
2. to introduce various aspects of structural and material behaviour.

Towards the first objective, *Chapter 1* discusses the three main philosophies of structural design, emphasizing the limit state philosophy which forms the bases of design in many of the modern codes of practice. *Chapter 2* then outlines a method of assessing the design loading acting on individual elements of a structure and how this information can be used, together with the material properties, to size elements.

Chapter 1

Philosophy of design

This chapter is concerned with the philosophy of structural design. The chapter describes the overall aims of design and the many inputs into the design process. The primary aim of design is seen as the need to ensure that at no point in the structure do the design loads exceed the design strengths of the materials. This can be achieved by using the permissible stress or load factor philosophies of design. However, both suffer from drawbacks and it is more common to design according to limit state principles which involve considering all the mechanisms by which a structure could become unfit for its intended purpose during its design life.

1.1 Introduction

The task of the structural engineer is to design a structure which satisfies the needs of the client and the user. Specifically the structure should be safe, economical to build and maintain, and aesthetically pleasing. But what does the design process involve?

Design is a word that means different things to different people. In dictionaries the word is described as a mental plan, preliminary sketch, pattern, construction, plot or invention. Even among those closely involved with the built environment there are considerable differences in interpretation. Architects, for example, may interpret design as being the production of drawings and models to show what a new building will actually look like. To civil and structural engineers, however, design is taken to mean the entire planning process for a new building structure, bridge, tunnel, road, etc., from outline concepts and feasibility studies through mathematical calculations to working drawings which could show every last nut and bolt in the project. Together with the drawings there will be bills of quantities, a specification and a contract, which will form the necessary legal and organizational framework within which a contractor, under the supervision of engineers and architects, can construct the scheme.

There are many inputs into the engineering design process as illustrated by *Fig. 1.1* including:

1. client brief
2. experience
3. imagination
4. a site investigation
5. model and laboratory tests
6. economic factors
7. environmental factors.

The starting-point for the designer is normally a conceptual brief from the client, who may be a private developer or perhaps a government body. The conceptual brief may simply consist of some sketches prepared by the client or perhaps a detailed set of architect's drawings. Experience is crucially important, and a client will always demand that the firm he is employing to do the design has previous experience designing similar structures.

Although imagination is thought by some to be entirely the domain of the architect, this is not so. For engineers and technicians an imagination of how elements of structure interrelate in three dimensions is essential, as is an appreciation of the loadings to which structures might be subject in certain circumstances. In addition, imaginative solutions to engineering problems are often required to save money, time, or to improve safety or quality.

A site investigation is essential to determine the strength and other characteristics of the ground on which the structure will be founded. If the structure is unusual in any way, or subject to abnormal loadings, model or laboratory tests may also be used to help determine how the structure will behave.

In today's economic climate a structural designer must be constantly aware of the cost implications of his or her design. On the one hand design should aim to achieve economy of materials in the structure, but over-refinement can lead to an excessive

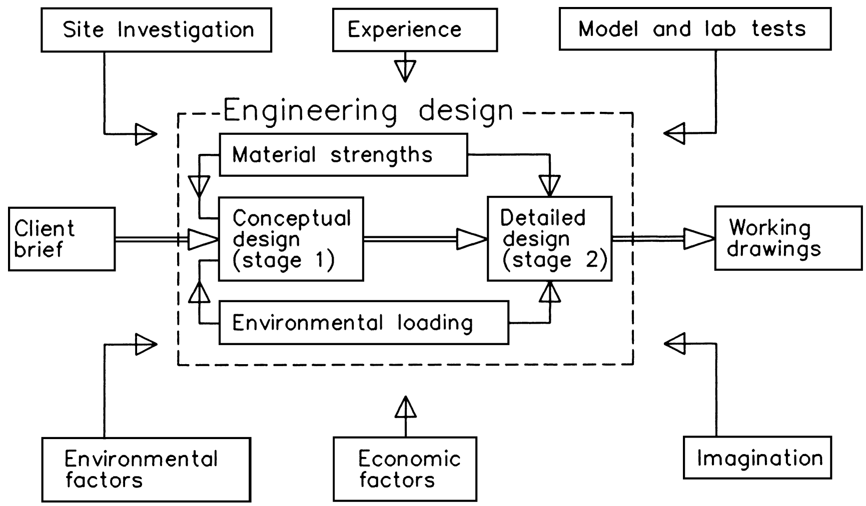


Fig. 1.1 *Inputs into the design process.*

number of different sizes and components in the structure, and labour costs will rise. In addition the actual cost of the designer's time should not be excessive, or this will undermine the employer's competitiveness. The idea is to produce a workable design achieving reasonable economy of materials, while keeping manufacturing and construction costs down, and avoiding unnecessary design and research expenditure. Attention to detailing and buildability of structures cannot be overemphasized in design. Most failures are as a result of poor detailing rather than incorrect analysis.

Designers must also understand how the structure will fit into the environment for which it is designed. Today many proposals for engineering structures stand or fall on this basis, so it is part of the designer's job to try to anticipate and reconcile the environmental priorities of the public and government.

The engineering design process can often be divided into two stages: (1) a feasibility study involving a comparison of the alternative forms of structure and selection of the most suitable type and (2) a detailed design of the chosen structure. The success of stage 1, the conceptual design, relies to a large extent on engineering judgement and instinct, both of which are the outcome of many years' experience of designing structures. Stage 2, the detailed design, also requires these attributes but is usually more dependent upon a thorough understanding of the codes of practice for structural design, e.g. BS 8110 and BS 5950. These documents are based on the amassed experience of many generations of engineers, and the results of research. They help to ensure safety and economy of construction, and that mistakes are not repeated. For instance, after the infamous disaster at the Ronan Point block of flats in Newham, London, when a gas explosion caused a serious partial collapse, research work was carried out, and codes of practice were amended so that such structures could survive a gas explosion, with damage being confined to one level.

The aim of this book is to look at the procedures associated with the detailed design of structural elements such as beams, columns and slabs. *Chapter 2* will help the reader to revise some basic theories of structural behaviour. *Chapters 3–6* deal with design to British Standard (BS) codes of practice for the structural use of concrete (BS 8110), structural steelwork (BS 5950), masonry (BS 5628) and timber (BS 5268). *Chapter 7* introduces the new Eurocodes (EC) for structural design and *Chapters 8–11* then describe the layout and design principles in EC2, EC3, EC6 and EC5 for concrete, steelwork, masonry and timber respectively.

1.2 Basis of design

Table 1.1 illustrates some risk factors that are associated with activities in which people engage. It can be seen that some degree of risk is associated with air and road travel. However, people normally accept that the benefits of mobility outweigh the risks. Staying in buildings, however, has always been

Table 1.1 Comparative death risk per 10^8 persons exposed

Mountaineering (international)	2700
Air travel (international)	120
Deep water trawling	59
Car travel	56
Coal mining	21
Construction sites	8
Manufacturing	2
Accidents at home	2
Fire at home	0.1
Structural failures	0.002

regarded as fairly safe. The risk of death or injury due to structural failure is extremely low, but as we spend most of our life in buildings this is perhaps just as well.

As far as the design of structures for safety is concerned, it is seen as the process of ensuring that stresses due to loading at all critical points in a structure have a very low chance of exceeding the strength of materials used at these critical points. *Figure 1.2* illustrates this in statistical terms.

In design there exist within the structure a number of critical points (e.g. beam mid-spans) where the design process is concentrated. The normal distribution curve on the left of *Fig. 1.2* represents the actual maximum material stresses at these critical points due to the loading. Because loading varies according to occupancy and environmental conditions, and because design is an imperfect process, the material stresses will vary about a modal value – the peak of the curve. Similarly the normal distribution curve on the right represents material strengths at these critical points, which are also not constant due to the variability of manufacturing conditions.

The overlap between the two curves represents a possibility that failure may take place at one of the

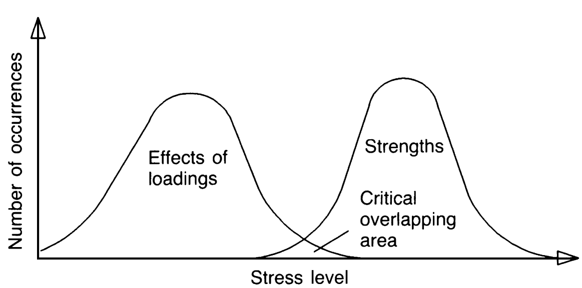


Fig. 1.2 *Relationship between stress and strength.*

critical points, as stress due to loading exceeds the strength of the material. In order for the structure to be safe the overlapping area must be kept to a minimum. The degree of overlap between the two curves can be minimized by using one of three distinct design philosophies, namely:

1. permissible stress design
2. load factor method
3. limit state design.

1.2.1 PERMISSIBLE STRESS DESIGN

In permissible stress design, sometimes referred to as modular ratio or elastic design, the stresses in the structure at working loads are not allowed to exceed a certain proportion of the yield stress of the construction material, i.e. the stress levels are limited to the elastic range. By assuming that the stress–strain relationship over this range is linear, it is possible to calculate the actual stresses in the material concerned. Such an approach formed the basis of the design methods used in CP 114 (the forerunner of BS 8110) and BS 449 (the forerunner of BS 5950).

However, although it modelled real building performance under actual conditions, this philosophy had two major drawbacks. Firstly, permissible design methods sometimes tended to overcomplicate the design process and also led to conservative solutions. Secondly, as the quality of materials increased and the safety margins decreased, the assumption that stress and strain are directly proportional became unjustifiable for materials such as concrete, making it impossible to estimate the true factors of safety.

1.2.2 LOAD FACTOR DESIGN

Load factor or plastic design was developed to take account of the behaviour of the structure once the yield point of the construction material had been reached. This approach involved calculating the collapse load of the structure. The working load was derived by dividing the collapse load by a load factor. This approach simplified methods of analysis and allowed actual factors of safety to be calculated. It was in fact permitted in CP 114 and BS 449 but was slow in gaining acceptance and was eventually superseded by the more comprehensive limit state approach.

The reader is referred to *Appendix A* for an example illustrating the differences between the permissible stress and load factor approaches to design.

1.2.3 LIMIT STATE DESIGN

Originally formulated in the former Soviet Union in the 1930s and developed in Europe in the 1960s, limit state design can perhaps be seen as a compromise between the permissible and load factor methods. It is in fact a more comprehensive approach which takes into account both methods in appropriate ways. Most modern structural codes of practice are now based on the limit state approach. BS 8110 for concrete, BS 5950 for structural steelwork, BS 5400 for bridges and BS 5628 for masonry are all limit state codes. The principal exceptions are the code of practice for design in timber, BS 5268, and the old (but still current) structural steelwork code, BS 449, both of which are permissible stress codes. It should be noted, however, that the Eurocode for timber (EC5), which is expected to replace BS 5268 around 2010, is based on limit state principles.

As limit state philosophy forms the basis of the design methods in most modern codes of practice for structural design, it is essential that the design methodology is fully understood. This then is the purpose of the following subsections.

1.2.3.1 Ultimate and serviceability limit states

The aim of limit state design is to achieve acceptable probabilities that a structure will not become unfit for its intended use during its design life, that is, the structure will not reach a limit state. There are many ways in which a structure could become unfit for use, including excessive conditions of bending, shear, compression, deflection and cracking (*Fig. 1.3*). Each of these mechanisms is a limit state whose effect on the structure must be individually assessed.

Some of the above limit states, e.g. deflection and cracking, principally affect the appearance of the structure. Others, e.g. bending, shear and compression, may lead to partial or complete collapse of the structure. Those limit states which can cause failure of the structure are termed ultimate limit states. The others are categorized as serviceability limit states. The ultimate limit states enable the designer to calculate the strength of the structure. Serviceability limit states model the behaviour of the structure at working loads. In addition, there may be other limit states which may adversely affect the performance of the structure, e.g. durability and fire resistance, and which must therefore also be considered in design.

It is a matter of experience to be able to judge which limit states should be considered in the design of particular structures. Nevertheless, once this has been done, it is normal practice to base the design on the most critical limit state and then check for the remaining limit states. For example, for reinforced concrete beams the ultimate limit states of bending and shear are used to size the beam. The design is then checked for the remaining limit states, e.g. deflection and cracking. On the other hand, the serviceability limit state of deflection is normally critical in the design of concrete slabs. Again, once the designer has determined a suitable depth of slab, he/she must then make sure that the design satisfies the limit states of bending, shear and cracking.

In assessing the effect of a particular limit state on the structure, the designer will need to assume certain values for the loading on the structure and the strength of the materials composing the structure. This requires an understanding of the concepts of characteristic and design values which are discussed below.

1.2.3.2 Characteristic and design values

As stated at the outset, when checking whether a particular member is safe, the designer cannot be certain about either the strength of the material composing the member or, indeed, the load which the member must carry. The material strength may be less than intended (a) because of its variable composition, and (b) because of the variability of manufacturing conditions during construction, and other effects such as corrosion. Similarly the load in the member may be greater than anticipated (a) because of the variability of the occupancy or environmental loading, and (b) because of unforeseen circumstances which may lead to an increase in the general level of loading, errors in the analysis, errors during construction, etc.

In each case, item (a) is allowed for by using a **characteristic** value. The characteristic strength is the value **below** which the strength lies in only a small number of cases. Similarly the characteristic load is the value **above** which the load lies in only a small percentage of cases. In the case of strength the characteristic value is determined from test results using statistical principles, and is normally defined as the value below which not more than 5% of the test results fall. However, at this stage there are insufficient data available to apply statistical principles to loads. Therefore the characteristic loads are normally taken to be the design loads from other codes of practice, e.g. BS 648 and BS 6399.

The overall effect of items under (b) is allowed for using a partial safety factor: γ_m for strength

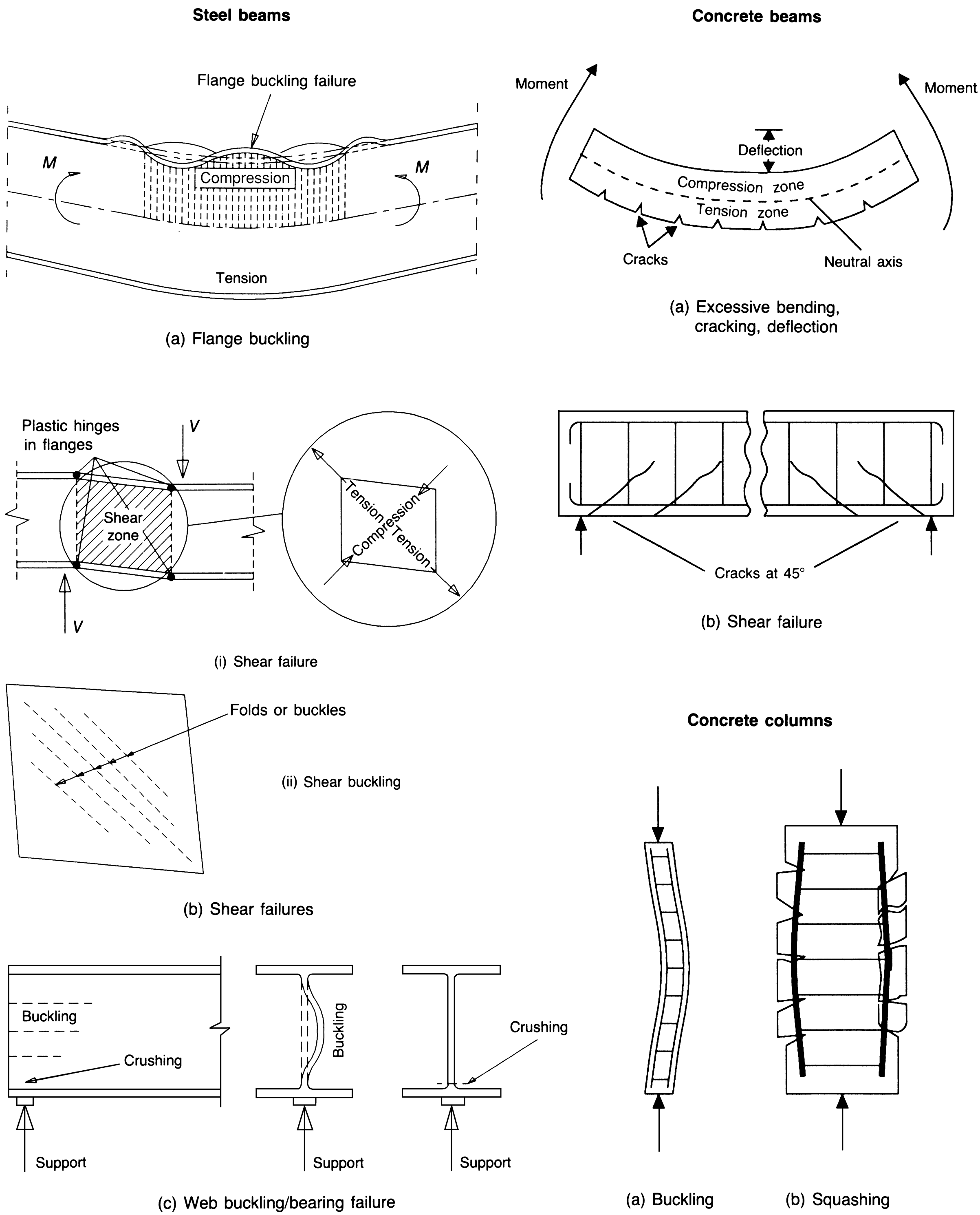


Fig. 1.3 *Typical modes of failure for beams and columns.*

and γ_f for load. The design strength is obtained by dividing the characteristic strength by the partial safety factor for strength:

$$\text{Design strength} = \frac{\text{characteristic strength}}{\gamma_m} \quad (1.1)$$

The design load is obtained by multiplying the characteristic load by the partial safety factor for load:

$$\text{Design load} = \text{characteristic load} \times \gamma_f \quad (1.2)$$

The value of γ_m will depend upon the properties of the actual construction material being used. Values for γ_f depend on other factors which will be discussed more fully in *Chapter 2*.

In general, once a preliminary assessment of the design loads has been made it is then possible to calculate the maximum bending moments, shear forces and deflections in the structure (*Chapter 2*). The construction material must be capable of withstanding these forces otherwise failure of the structure may occur, i.e.

$$\text{Design strength} \geq \text{design load} \quad (1.3)$$

Simplified procedures for calculating the moment, shear and axial load capacities of structural elements together with acceptable deflection limits are described in the appropriate codes of practice. These allow the designer to rapidly assess the suitability of the proposed design. However, before discussing these procedures in detail, *Chapter 2* describes in general terms how the design loads acting on the structure are estimated and used to size individual elements of the structure.

1.3 Summary

This chapter has examined the bases of three philosophies of structural design: permissible stress, load factor and limit state. The chapter has concentrated on limit state design since it forms the basis of the design methods given in the codes of practice for concrete (BS 8110), structural steelwork (BS 5950) and masonry (BS 5628). The aim of limit state design is to ensure that a structure will not become unfit for its intended use, that is, it will not reach a limit state during its design life. Two categories of limit states are examined in design: ultimate and serviceability. The former is concerned with overall stability and determining the collapse load of the structure; the latter examines its behaviour under working loads. Structural design principally involves ensuring that the loads acting on the structure do not exceed its strength and the first step in the design process then is to estimate the loads acting on the structure.

Questions

1. Explain the difference between conceptual design and detailed design.
2. What is a code of practice and what is its purpose in structural design?
3. List the principal sources of uncertainty in structural design and discuss how these uncertainties are rationally allowed for in design.
4. The characteristic strengths and design strengths are related via the partial safety factor for materials. The partial safety factor for concrete is higher than for steel reinforcement. Discuss why this should be so.
5. Describe in general terms the ways in which a beam and column could become unfit for use.

Chapter 2

Basic structural concepts and material properties

This chapter is concerned with general methods of sizing beams and columns in structures. The chapter describes how the characteristic and design loads acting on structures and on the individual elements are determined. Methods of calculating the bending moments, shear forces and deflections in beams are outlined. Finally, the chapter describes general approaches to sizing beams according to elastic and plastic criteria and sizing columns subject to axial loading.

2.1 Introduction

All structures are composed of a number of interconnected elements such as slabs, beams, columns, walls and foundations. Collectively, they enable the internal and external loads acting on the structure to be safely transmitted down to the ground. The actual way that this is achieved is difficult to model and many simplifying, but conservative, assumptions have to be made. For example, the degree of fixity at column and beam ends is usually uncertain but, nevertheless, must be estimated as it significantly affects the internal forces in the element. Furthermore, it is usually assumed that the reaction from one element is a load on the next and that the sequence of load transfer between elements occurs in the order: ceiling/floor loads to beams to columns to foundations to ground (*Fig. 2.1*).

At the outset, the designer must make an assessment of the future likely level of loading, including self-weight, to which the structure may be subject during its design life. Using computer methods or hand calculations the design loads acting on individual elements can then be evaluated. The design loads are used to calculate the bending moments, shear forces and deflections at critical points along the elements. Finally, suitable dimensions for the element can be determined. This aspect requires an understanding of the elementary theory of bending and the behaviour of elements subject to compressive loading. These steps are summarized in *Fig. 2.2* and the following sections describe the procedures associated with each step.

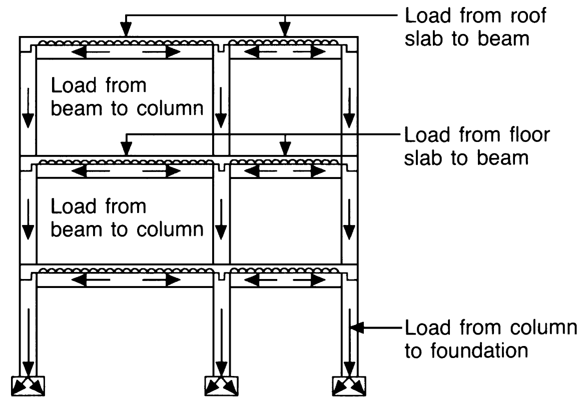


Fig. 2.1 *Sequence of load transfer between elements of a structure.*

2.2 Design loads acting on structures

The loads acting on a structure are divided into three basic types: dead, imposed and wind. For each type of loading there will be characteristic and design values, as discussed in *Chapter 1*, which must be estimated. In addition, the designer will have to determine the particular combination of loading which is likely to produce the most adverse effect on the structure in terms of bending moments, shear forces and deflections.

2.2.1 DEAD LOADS, G_k, g_k

Dead loads are all the permanent loads acting on the structure including self-weight, finishes, fixtures and partitions. The characteristic dead loads can be

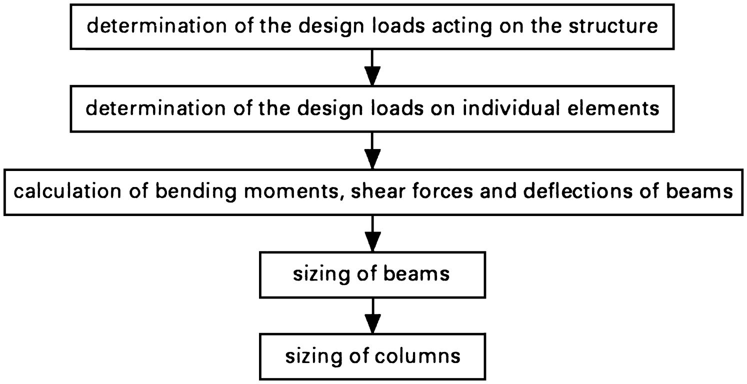


Fig. 2.2 *Design process.*

Example 2.1 Self-weight of a reinforced concrete beam

Calculate the self-weight of a reinforced concrete beam of breadth 300 mm, depth 600 mm and length 6000 mm.

From *Table 2.1*, unit mass of reinforced concrete is 2400 kg m^{-3}. Assuming that the gravitational constant is 10 m s^{-2} (strictly 9.807 m s^{-2}), the unit weight of reinforced concrete, ρ, is

$$\rho = 2400 \times 10 = 24\,000 \text{ N m}^{-3} = 24 \text{ kN m}^{-3}$$

Hence, the self-weight of beam, SW, is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{SW} &= \text{volume} \times \text{unit weight} \\ &= (0.3 \times 0.6 \times 6)24 = 25.92 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

estimated using the schedule of weights of building materials given in BS 648 (*Table 2.1*) or from manufacturers' literature. The symbols G_k and g_k are normally used to denote the total and uniformly distributed characteristic dead loads respectively.

Estimation of the self-weight of an element tends to be a cyclic process since its value can only be assessed once the element has been designed which requires prior knowledge of the self-weight of the element. Generally, the self-weight of the element is likely to be small in comparison with other dead and live loads and any error in estimation will tend to have a minimal effect on the overall design (*Example 2.1*).

2.2.2 IMPOSED LOADS Q_k, q_k

Imposed load, sometimes also referred to as live load, represents the load due to the proposed occupancy and includes the weights of the occupants, furniture and roof loads including snow. Since imposed loads tend to be much more variable than dead loads they are more difficult to predict. BS 6399: Part 1: 1984: *Code of Practice for Dead and Imposed Loads* gives typical characteristic imposed floor loads for different classes of structure, e.g. residential dwellings, educational institutions, hospitals, and parts of the same structure, e.g. balconies, corridors and toilet rooms (*Table 2.2*).

2.2.3 WIND LOADS

Wind pressure can either add to the other gravitational forces acting on the structure or, equally well, exert suction or negative pressures on the structure. Under particular situations, the latter may well lead to critical conditions and must be considered in design. The characteristic wind loads acting on a structure can be assessed in accordance with the recommendations given in CP 3: Chapter V: Part 2: 1972 *Wind Loads* or Part 2 of BS 6399: *Code of Practice for Wind Loads*.

Wind loading is important in the design of masonry panel walls (*Chapter 5*). However beyond that, wind loading is not considered further since the emphasis in this book is on the design of elements rather

Table 2.1 Schedule of unit masses of building materials (based on BS 648)

Asphalt		**Plaster**	
Roofing 2 layers, 19 mm thick	42 kg m^{-2}	Two coats gypsum, 13 mm thick	22 kg m^{-2}
Damp-proofing, 19 mm thick	41 kg m^{-2}		
Roads and footpaths, 19 mm thick	44 kg m^{-2}	**Plastics sheeting (corrugated)**	4.5 kg m^{-2}
Bitumen roofing felts		**Plywood**	
Mineral surfaced bitumen	3.5 kg m^{-2}	per mm thick	0.7 kg m^{-2}
Blockwork		**Reinforced concrete**	2400 kg m^{-3}
Solid per 25 mm thick, stone aggregate	55 kg m^{-2}	**Rendering**	
Aerated per 25 mm thick	15 kg m^{-2}	Cement: sand (1:3), 13 mm thick	30 kg m^{-2}
Board		**Screeding**	
Blockboard per 25 mm thick	12.5 kg m^{-2}	Cement: sand (1:3), 13 mm thick	30 kg m^{-2}
Brickwork		**Slate tiles**	
Clay, solid per 25 mm thick medium density	55 kg m^{-2}	(depending upon thickness and source)	24–78 kg m^{-3}
Concrete, solid per 25 mm thick	59 kg m^{-2}		
		Steel	
Cast stone	2250 kg m^{-3}	Solid (mild)	7850 kg m^{-3}
		Corrugated roofing sheets, per mm thick	10 kg m^{-2}
Concrete			
Natural aggregates	2400 kg m^{-3}		
Lightweight aggregates (structural)	1760 + 240/ −160 kg m^{-3}	**Tarmacadam**	
		25 mm thick	60 kg m^{-2}
Flagstones		**Terrazzo**	
Concrete, 50 mm thick	120 kg m^{-2}	25 mm thick	54 kg m^{-2}
Glass fibre		**Tiling, roof**	
Slab, per 25 mm thick	2.0–5.0 kg m^{-2}	Clay	70 kg m^{-2}
Gypsum panels and partitions		**Timber**	
Building panels 75 mm thick	44 kg m^{-2}	Softwood	590 kg m^{-3}
		Hardwood	1250 kg m^{-3}
Lead			
Sheet, 2.5 mm thick	30 kg m^{-2}	**Water**	1000 kg m^{-3}
Linoleum		**Woodwool**	
3 mm thick	6 kg m^{-2}	Slabs, 25 mm thick	15 kg m^{-2}

than structures, which generally involves investigating the effects of dead and imposed loads only.

2.2.4 LOAD COMBINATIONS AND DESIGN LOADS

The design loads are obtained by multiplying the characteristic loads by the partial safety factor for loads, γ_f (*Chapter 1*). The value for γ_f depends on several factors including the limit state under consideration, i.e. ultimate or serviceability, the accuracy of predicting the load and the particular combination of loading which will produce the worst possible effect on the structure in terms of bending moments, shear forces and deflections.

Table 2.2 Imposed loads for residential occupancy class

Floor area usage	*Intensity of distributed load kN m^{-2}*	*Concentrated load kN*
Type 1. Self-contained dwelling units		
All	1.5	1.4
Type 2. Apartment houses, boarding houses, lodging houses, guest houses, hostels, residential clubs and communal areas in blocks of flats		
Boiler rooms, motor rooms, fan rooms and the like including the weight of machinery	7.5	4.5
Communal kitchens, laundries	3.0	4.5
Dining rooms, lounges, billiard rooms	2.0	2.7
Toilet rooms	2.0	–
Bedrooms, dormitories	1.5	1.8
Corridors, hallways, stairs, landings, footbridges, etc.	3.0	4.5
Balconies	Same as rooms to which they give access but with a minimum of 3.0	1.5 per metre run concentrated at the outer edge
Cat walks	–	1.0 at 1 m centres
Type 3. Hotels and motels		
Boiler rooms, motor rooms, fan rooms and the like, including the weight of machinery	7.5	4.5
Assembly areas without fixed seating, dance halls	5.0	3.6
Bars	5.0	–
Assembly areas with fixed seating[a]	4.0	–
Corridors, hallways, stairs, landings, footbridges, etc.	4.0	4.5
Kitchens, laundries	3.0	4.5
Dining rooms, lounges, billiard rooms	2.0	2.7
Bedrooms	2.0	1.8
Toilet rooms	2.0	–
Balconies	Same as rooms to which they give access but with a minimum of 4.0	1.5 per metre run concentrated at the outer edge
Cat walks	–	1.0 at 1 m centres

Note. [a] Fixed seating is seating where its removal and the use of the space for other purposes are improbable.

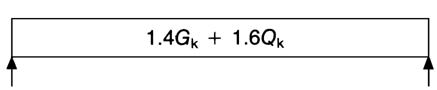


Fig. 2.3

In most of the simple structures which will be considered in this book, the worst possible combination will arise due to the maximum dead and maximum imposed loads acting on the structure together. In such cases, the partial safety factors for dead and imposed loads are 1.4 and 1.6 respectively (*Fig. 2.3*) and hence the design load is given by

$$\text{Design load} = 1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k$$

However, it should be appreciated that theoretically the design dead loads can vary between the characteristic and ultimate values, i.e. $1.0G_k$ and $1.4G_k$. Similarly, the design imposed loads can vary between zero and the ultimate value, i.e. $0.0Q_k$ and $1.6Q_k$. Thus for a simply supported beam with an overhang (*Fig. 2.4(a)*) the load cases shown in *Figs 2.4(b)–(d)* will need to be considered in order to determine the design bending moments and shear forces in the beam.

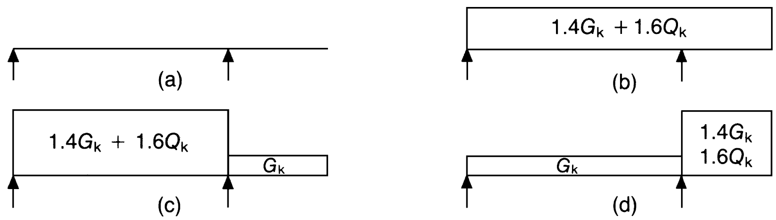


Fig. 2.4

2.3 Design loads acting on elements

Once the design loads acting on the structure have been estimated it is then possible to calculate the design loads acting on individual elements. As was pointed out at the beginning of this chapter, this usually requires the designer to make assumptions regarding the support conditions and how the loads will eventually be transmitted down to the ground. *Figures 2.5(a)* and *(b)* illustrate some of the more commonly assumed support conditions at the ends of beams and columns respectively.

In design it is common to assume that all the joints in the structure are pinned and that the sequence of load transfer occurs in the order: ceiling/floor loads to beams to columns to foundations to ground. These assumptions will considerably simplify calculations and lead to conservative estimates of the design loads acting on individual elements of the structure. The actual calculations to determine the forces acting on the elements are best illustrated by a number of worked examples as follows.

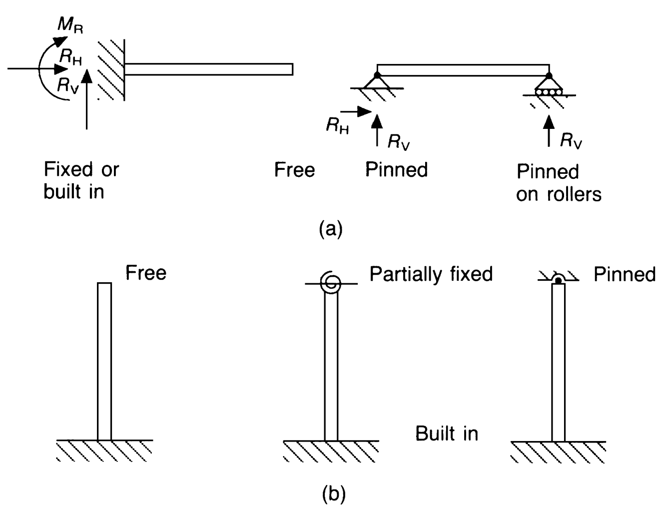
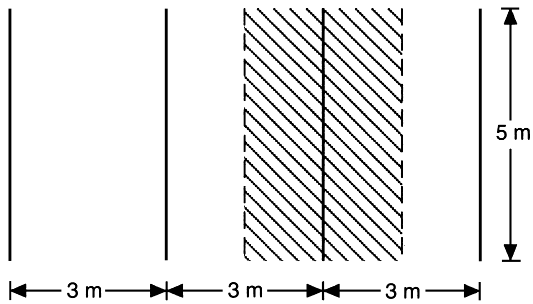


Fig. 2.5 *Typical beams and column support conditions.*

Example 2.2 Design loads on a floor beam

A composite floor consisting of a 150 mm thick reinforced concrete slab supported on steel beams spanning 5 m and spaced at 3 m centres is to be designed to carry an imposed load of 3.5 kN m^{-2}. Assuming that the unit mass of the steel beams is 50 kg m^{-1} run, calculate the design loads on a typical internal beam.



UNIT WEIGHTS OF MATERIALS

Reinforced concrete

From *Table 2.1*, unit mass of reinforced concrete is 2400 kg m^{-3}. Assuming the gravitational constant is 10 m s^{-2}, the unit weight of reinforced concrete is

$$2400 \times 10 = 24\,000 \text{ N m}^{-3} = 24 \text{ kN m}^{-3}$$

Steel beams

Unit mass of beam = 50 kg m^{-1} run
Unit weight of beam = $50 \times 10 = 500$ N m^{-1} run = 0.5 kN m^{-1} run

LOADING

Slab

Slab dead load (g_k) = self-weight = $0.15 \times 24 = 3.6$ kN m^{-2}
Slab imposed load (q_k) = 3.5 kN m^{-2}
Slab ultimate load = $1.4g_k + 1.6q_k = 1.4 \times 3.6 + 1.6 \times 3.5$
= 10.64 kN m^{-2}

Beam

Beam dead load (g_k) = self-weight = 0.5 kN m^{-1} run
Beam ultimate load = $1.4g_k$ = $1.4 \times 0.5 = 0.7$ kN m^{-1} run

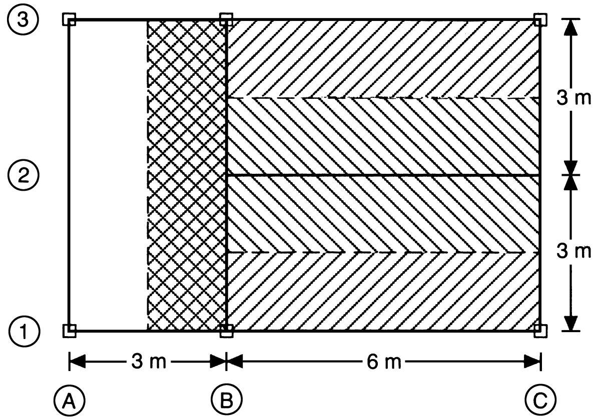
DESIGN LOAD

Each internal beam supports a uniformly distributed load from a 3 m width of slab (hatched \\\\\\\\\\\\) plus self-weight. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Design load on beam} &= \text{slab load} + \text{self-weight of beam}\\ &= 10.64 \times 5 \times 3 + 0.7 \times 5\\ &= 159.6 + 3.5 = 163.1 \text{ kN}\end{aligned}$$

Example 2.3 Design loads on floor beams and columns

The floor shown below with an overall depth of 225 mm is to be designed to carry an imposed load of 3 kN m^{-2} plus floor finishes and ceiling loads of 1 kN m^{-2}. Calculate the design loads acting on beams B1–C1, B2–C2 and B1–B3 and columns B1 and C1. Assume that all the column heights are 3 m and that the beam and column weights are 70 and 60 kg m^{-1} run respectively.



UNIT WEIGHTS OF MATERIALS

Reinforced concrete

From *Table 2.1*, unit mass of reinforced concrete is 2400 kg m^{-3}. Assuming the gravitational constant is 10 m s^{-2}, the unit weight of reinforced concrete is

$$2400 \times 10 = 24\,000 \text{ N m}^{-3} = 24 \text{ kN m}^{-3}$$

Steel beams

Unit mass of beam = 70 kg m^{-1} run
Unit weight of beam = $70 \times 10 = 700$ N m^{-1} run = 0.7 kN m^{-1} run

Steel columns

Unit mass of column = 60 kg m^{-1} run
Unit weight of column = $60 \times 10 = 600$ N m^{-1} run = 0.6 kN m^{-1} run

LOADING

Slab

Slab dead load (g_k) = self-weight + finishes
= $0.225 \times 24 + 1 = 6.4$ kN m^{-2}
Slab imposed load (q_k) = 3 kN m^{-2}
Slab ultimate load = $1.4g_k + 1.6q_k$
= $1.4 \times 6.4 + 1.6 \times 3$ = 13.76 kN m^{-2}

Beam

Beam dead load (g_k) = self-weight = 0.7 kN m^{-1} run
Beam ultimate load = $1.4g_k$ = $1.4 \times 0.7 = 0.98$ kN m^{-1} run

Column

Column dead load (g_k) = 0.6 kN m^{-1} run
Column ultimate load = $1.4g_k = 1.4 \times 0.6 = 0.84$ kN m^{-1} run

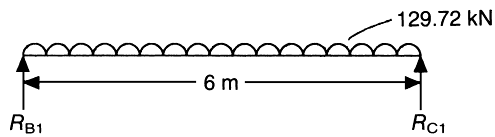
Example 2.3 *continued*

DESIGN LOADS

Beam B1–C1

Assuming that the slab is simply supported, beam B1–C1 supports a uniformly distributed load from a 1.5 m width of slab (hatched //////) plus self-weight of beam. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Design load on beam B1–C1} &= \text{slab load + self-weight of beam}\\ &= 13.76 \times 6 \times 1.5 + 0.98 \times 6\\ &= 123.84 + 5.88 = 129.72 \text{ kN}\end{aligned}$$



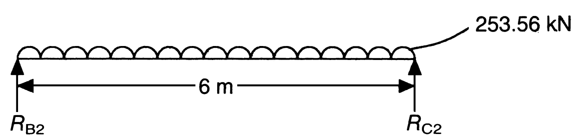
Since the beam is symmetrically loaded,

$$R_{B1} = R_{C1} = 129.72/2 = 64.86 \text{ kN}$$

Beam B2–C2

Assuming that the slab is simply supported, beam B2–C2 supports a uniformly distributed load from a 3 m width of slab (hatched \\\\\\) plus its self-weight. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Design load on beam B2–C2} &= \text{slab load + self-weight of beam}\\ &= 13.76 \times 6 \times 3 + 0.98 \times 6\\ &= 247.68 + 5.88 = 253.56 \text{ kN}\end{aligned}$$

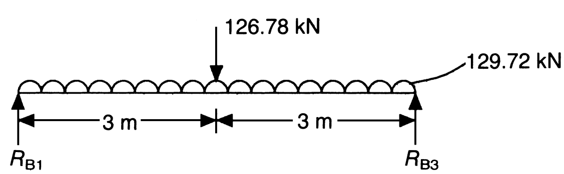


Since the beam is symmetrically loaded, R_{B2} and R_{C2} are the same and equal to 253.56/2 = 126.78 kN.

Beam B1–B3

Assuming that the slab is simply supported, beam B1–B3 supports a uniformly distributed load from a 1.5 m width of slab (shown cross-hatched) plus the self-weight of the beam and the reaction transmitted from beam B2–C2 which acts as a point load at mid-span. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Design load on beam B1–B3} &= \text{uniformly distributed load from slab plus self-weight of beam}\\ &\quad + \text{point load from reaction } R_{B2}\\ &= (13.76 \times 1.5 \times 6 + 0.98 \times 6) + 126.78\\ &= 129.72 + 126.78 = 256.5 \text{ kN}\end{aligned}$$

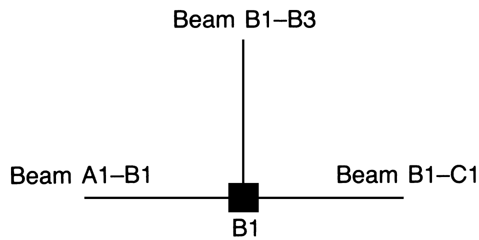


Example 2.3 *continued*

Since the beam is symmetrically loaded,

$$R_{B1} = R_{B3} = 256.5/2 = 128.25 \text{ kN}$$

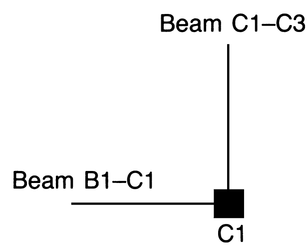
Column B1



Column B1 supports the reactions from beams A1–B1, B1–C1 and B1–B3 and its self-weight. From the above, the reaction at B1 due to beam B1–C1 is 64.86 kN and from beam B1–B3 is 128.25 kN. Beam A1–B1 supports only its self-weight = 0.98 × 3 = 2.94 kN. Hence reaction at B1 due to A1–B1 is 2.94/2 = 1.47 kN. Since the column height is 3 m, self-weight of column = 0.84 × 3 = 2.52 kN. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Design load on column B1} &= 64.86 + 128.25 + 1.47 + 2.52\\ &= 197.1 \text{ kN}\end{aligned}$$

Column C1



Column C1 supports the reactions from beams B1–C1 and C1–C3 and its self-weight. From the above, the reaction at C1 due to beam B1–C1 is 64.86 kN. Beam C1–C3 supports the reactions from B2–C2 (= 126.78 kN) and its self-weight (= 0.98 × 6) = 5.88 kN. Hence the reaction at C1 is (126.78 + 5.88)/2 = 66.33 kN. Since the column height is 3 m, self-weight = 0.84 × 3 = 2.52 kN. Hence

$$\text{Design load on column C1} = 64.86 + 66.33 + 2.52 = 133.71 \text{ kN}$$

2.4 Structural analysis

The design axial loads can be used directly to size columns. Column design will be discussed more fully in *section 2.5*. However, before flexural members such as beams can be sized, the design bending moments and shear forces must be evaluated. Such calculations can be performed by a variety of methods as noted below, depending upon the complexity of the loading and support conditions:

1. equilibrium equations
2. formulae
3. computer methods.

Hand calculations are suitable for analysing statically determinate structures such as simply supported beams and slabs (*section 2.4.1*). For various standard load cases, formulae for calculating the maximum bending moments, shear forces and deflections are available which can be used to rapidly analyse beams, as will be discussed in *section 2.4.2*. Alternatively, the designer may resort to using various commercially available computer packages, e.g. SAND. Their use is not considered in this book.

2.4.1 EQUILIBRIUM EQUATIONS

It can be demonstrated that if a body is in equilibrium under the action of a system of external forces, all parts of the body must also be in equilibrium. This principle can be used to determine the bending moments and shear forces along a beam. The actual procedure simply involves making fictitious 'cuts' at intervals along the beam and applying the equilibrium equations given below to the cut portions of the beam.

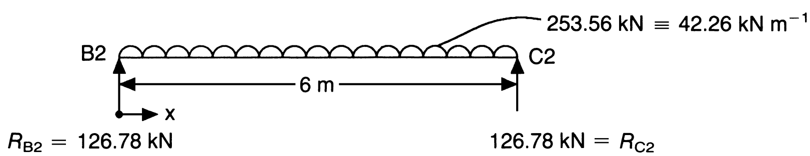
$$\Sigma \text{ moments } (M) = 0 \qquad (2.1)$$

$$\Sigma \text{ vertical forces } (V) = 0 \qquad (2.2)$$

Example 2.4 Design moments and shear forces in beams using equilibrium equations

Calculate the design bending moments and shear forces in beams B2–C2 and B1–B3 of *Example 2.3*.

BEAM B2–C2



Let the longitudinal centroidal axis of the beam be the x axis and $x = 0$ at support B2.

x = 0

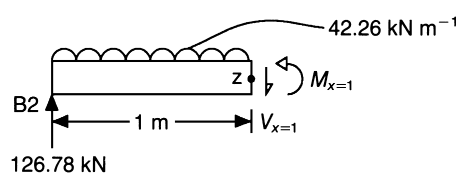
By inspection,

$$\text{Moment at } x = 0 \ (M_{x=0}) = 0$$

$$\text{Shear force at } x = 0 \ (V_{x=0}) = R_{B2} = 126.78 \text{ kN}$$

x = 1

Assuming that the beam is cut 1 m from support B2, i.e. $x = 1$ m, the moments and shear forces acting on the cut portion of the beam will be those shown in the free body diagram below:



From equation 2.1, taking moments about Z gives

$$126.78 \times 1 - 42.26 \times 1 \times 0.5 - M_{x=1} = 0$$

Hence

$$M_{x=1} = 105.65 \text{ kN m}$$

From equation 2.2, summing the vertical forces gives

$$126.78 - 42.26 \times 1 - V_{x=1} = 0$$

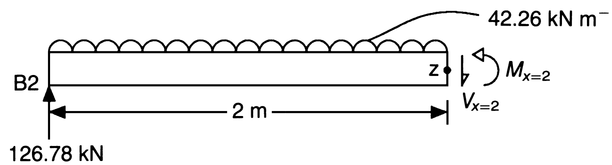
Example 2.4 *continued*

Hence

$$V_{x=1} = 84.52 \text{ kN}$$

x = 2

The free body diagram for the beam, assuming that it has been cut 2 m from support B2, is shown below:



From equation 2.1, taking moments about Z gives

$$126.78 \times 2 - 42.26 \times 2 \times 1 - M_{x=2} = 0$$

Hence

$$M_{x=2} = 169.04 \text{ kN m}$$

From equation 2.2, summing the vertical forces gives

$$126.78 - 42.26 \times 2 - V_{x=2} = 0$$

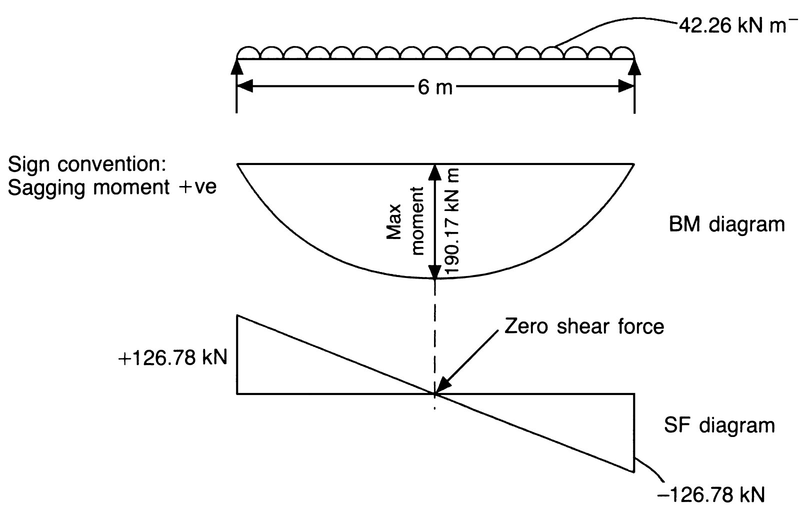
Hence

$$V_{x=2} = 42.26 \text{ kN}$$

If this process is repeated for values of *x* equal to 3, 4, 5 and 6 m, the following values of the moments and shear forces in the beam will result:

x(m)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
M(kN m)	0	105.65	169.04	190.17	169.04	105.65	0
V(kN)	126.78	84.52	42.26	0	−42.26	−84.52	−126.78

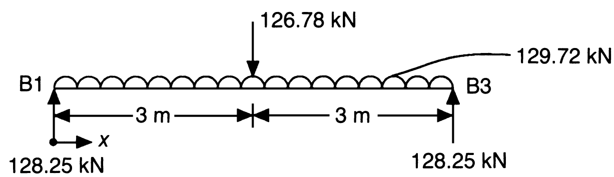
This information is better presented diagrammatically as shown below:



Example 2.4 *continued*

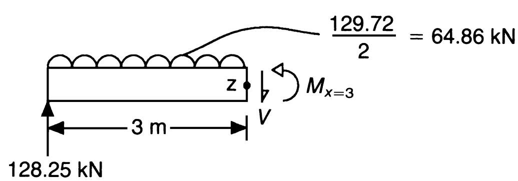
Hence, the design moment (M) is 190.17 kN m. Note that this occurs at mid-span and coincides with the point of zero shear force. The design shear force (V) is 126.78 kN and occurs at the supports.

BEAM B1–B3



Again, let the longitudinal centroidal axis of the beam be the x axis of the beam and set $x = 0$ at support B1. The steps outlined earlier can be used to determine the bending moments and shear forces at $x = 0$, 1 and 2 m and since the beam is symmetrically loaded and supported, these values of bending moment and shear forces will apply at $x = 4$, 5 and 6 m respectively.

The bending moment at $x = 3$ m can be calculated by considering all the loading immediately to the left of the point load as shown below:



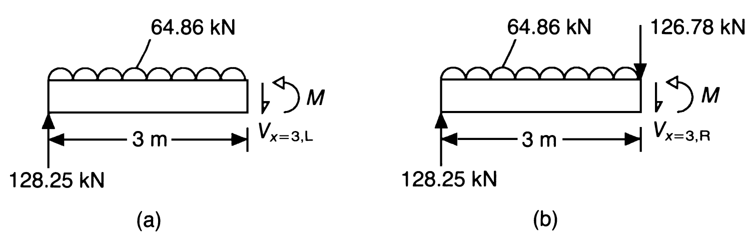
From equation 2.1, taking moments about Z gives

$$128.25 \times 3 - 64.86 \times 3/2 - M_{x=3} = 0$$

Hence

$$M_{x=3} = 287.46 \text{ kN m}$$

In order to determine the shear force at $x = 3$ the following two load cases need to be considered:



In (a) it is assumed that the beam is cut immediately to the left of the point load. In (b) the beam is cut immediately to the right of the point load. In (a), from equation 2.2, the shear force to the left of the cut, $V_{x=3,L}$, is given by

$$128.25 - 64.86 - V_{x=3,L} = 0$$

Hence

$$V_{x=3,L} = 63.39 \text{ kN}$$

Example 2.4 *continued*

In (b), from equation 2.2, the shear force to the right of the cut, $V_{x=3,R}$, is given by

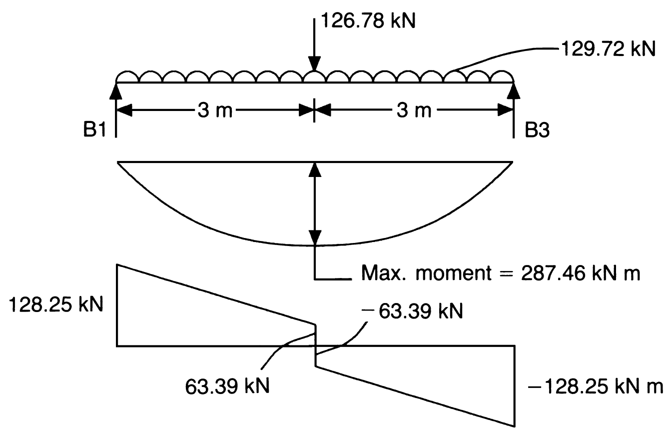
$$128.25 - 64.86 - 126.78 - V_{x=3,R} = 0$$

Hence

$$V_{x=3,R} = -63.39 \text{ kN}$$

Summarising the results in tabular and graphical form gives

x(m)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
M(kN m)	0	117.44	213.26	287.46	213.26	117.44	0
V(kN)	128.25	106.63	85.01	63.39|−63.39	−85.01	−106.63	−128.25

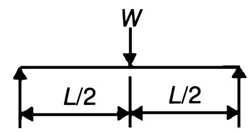
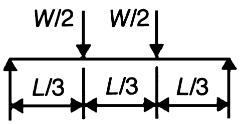
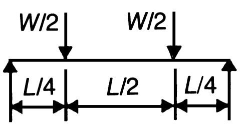
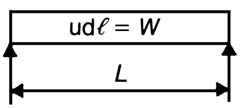
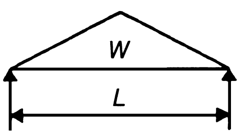
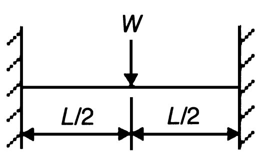
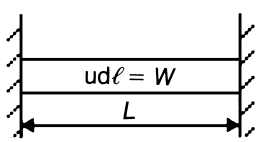
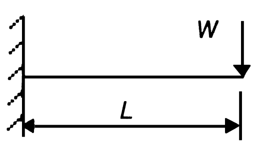
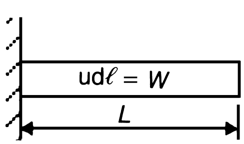


Hence, the design moment for beam B1–B3 is 287.46 kN m and occurs at mid-span and the design shear force is 128.25 kN and occurs at the supports.

2.4.2 FORMULAE

An alternative method of determining the design bending moments and shear forces in beams involves using the formulae quoted in *Table 2.3*. The table also includes formulae for calculating the maximum deflections for each load case. The formulae can be derived using a variety of methods for analysing statically indeterminate structures, e.g. slope deflection and virtual work, and the interested reader is referred to any standard work on this subject for background information. There will be many instances in practical design where the use of standard formulae is not convenient and equilibrium methods are preferable.

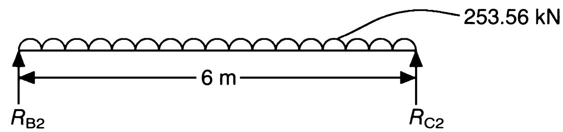
Table 2.3 Bending moments, shear forces and deflections for various standard load cases

Loading	*Maximum bending moment*	*Maximum shearing force*	*Maximum deflection*
	$\frac{WL}{4}$	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{WL^3}{48EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{6}$	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{23WL^3}{1296EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{8}$	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{11WL^3}{768EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{8}$	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{5WL^3}{384EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{6}$	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{WL^3}{60EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{8}$ (at supports and at midspan)	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{WL^3}{192EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{12}$ at supports $\frac{WL}{24}$ at midspan	$\frac{W}{2}$	$\frac{WL^3}{384EI}$
	WL	W	$\frac{WL^3}{3EI}$
	$\frac{WL}{2}$	W	$\frac{WL^3}{8EI}$

Example 2.5 Design moments and shear forces in beams using formulae

Repeat *Example 2.4* using the formulae given in *Table 2.3.*

BEAM B2–C2



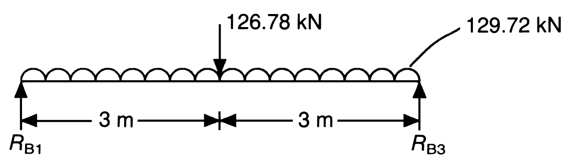
By inspection, maximum moment and maximum shear force occur at beam mid-span and supports respectively. From *Table 2.3*, design moment, M, is given by

$$M = \frac{Wl}{8} = \frac{253.56 \times 6}{8} = 190.17 \text{ kN m}$$

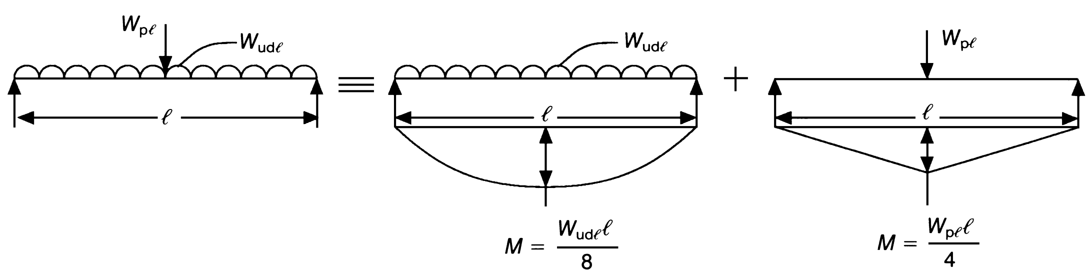
and design shear force, V, is given by

$$V = \frac{W}{2} = \frac{253.56}{2} = 126.78 \text{ kN}$$

BEAM B1–B3



This load case can be solved using the principle of superposition which can be stated in general terms as follows: 'The effect of several actions taking place simultaneously can be reproduced exactly by adding the effects of each case separately.' Thus, the loading on beam B1–B3 can be considered to be the sum of a uniformly distributed load (W_{udl}) of 129.72 kN and a point load (W_{pl}) at mid-span of 126.78 kN.



By inspection, the maximum bending moment and shear force for both load cases occur at beam mid-span and supports respectively. Thus, the design moment, M, is given by

$$M = \frac{W_{udl}l}{8} + \frac{W_{pl}l}{4} = \frac{129.72 \times 6}{8} + \frac{126.78 \times 6}{4} = 287.46 \text{ kN m}$$

and the design shear force, V, is given by

$$V = \frac{W_{udl}}{2} + \frac{W_{pl}}{2} = \frac{129.72}{2} + \frac{126.78}{2} = 128.25 \text{ kN}$$

2.5 Beam design

Having calculated the design bending moment and shear force, all that now remains to be done is to assess the size and strength of beam required. Generally, the ultimate limit state of bending will be critical for medium-span beams which are moderately loaded and shear for short-span beams which are heavily loaded. For long-span beams the serviceability limit state of deflection may well be critical. Irrespective of the actual critical limit state, once a preliminary assessment of the size and strength of beam needed has been made, it must be checked for the remaining limit states that may influence its long-term integrity.

The processes involved in such a selection will depend on whether the construction material behaves (i) elastically or (ii) plastically. If the material is elastic, it obeys Hooke's law, that is, the stress in the material due to the applied load is directly proportional to its strain (*Fig. 2.6*) where

$$\text{Stress } (\sigma) = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

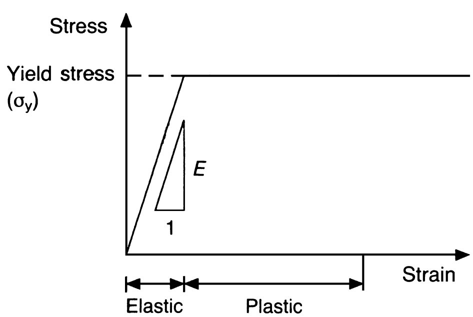


Fig. 2.6 *Stress–strain plot for steel.*

$$\text{and Strain } (\varepsilon) = \frac{\text{change in length}}{\text{original length}}$$

The slope of the graph of stress vs. strain (*Fig. 2.6*) is therefore constant, and this gradient is normally referred to as the elastic or Young's modulus and is denoted by the letter E. It is given by

$$\text{Young's modulus } (E) = \frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}}$$

Note that strain is dimensionless but that both stress and Young's modulus are usually expressed in N mm^{-2}.

A material is said to be plastic if it strains without a change in stress. Plasticine and clay are plastic materials but so is steel beyond its yield point (*Fig. 2.6*). As will be seen in *Chapter 3*, reinforced concrete design also assumes that the material behaves plastically.

The structural implications of elastic and plastic behaviour are best illustrated by considering how bending is resisted by the simplest of beams – a rectangular section b wide and d deep.

2.5.1 ELASTIC CRITERIA

When any beam is subject to load it bends as shown in *Fig. 2.7(a)*. The top half of the beam is put into compression and the bottom half into tension. In the middle, there is neither tension nor compression. This axis is normally termed the neutral axis.

If the beam is elastic and stress and strain are directly proportional for the material, the variation in strain and stress from the top to middle to bottom is linear (*Figs 2.7(b)* and *(c)*). The maximum stress in compression and tension is σ_y. The average stress in compression and tension is $\sigma_y/2$. Hence the compressive force, F_c, and tensile force, F_t, acting on the section are equal and are given by

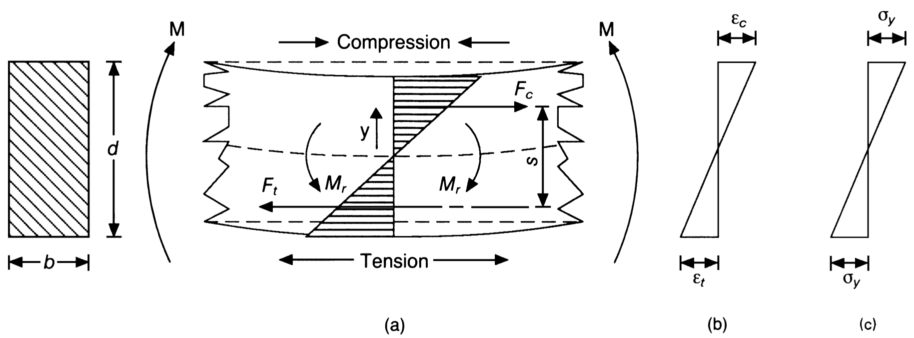


Fig. 2.7 *Strain and stress in an elastic beam.*

$$F_c = F_t = F = \text{stress} \times \text{area}$$
$$= \frac{\sigma_y}{2}\frac{bd}{2} = \frac{bd\sigma_y}{4}$$

The tensile and compression forces are separated by a distance s whose value is equal to $2d/3$ (*Fig. 2.7(a)*). Together they make up a couple, or moment, which acts in the opposite sense to the design moment. The value of this moment of resistance, M_r, is given by

$$M_r = Fs = \frac{bd\sigma_y}{4}\frac{2d}{3} = \frac{bd^2\sigma_y}{6} \qquad (2.3)$$

At equilibrium, the design moment in the beam will equal the moment of resistance, i.e.

$$M = M_r \qquad (2.4)$$

Provided that the yield strength of the material, i.e. σ_y is known, equations 2.3 and 2.4 can be used to calculate suitable dimensions for the beam needed to resist a particular design moment. Alternatively if b and d are known, the required material strength can be evaluated.

Equation 2.3 is more usually written as

$$M = \sigma Z \qquad (2.5)$$

or

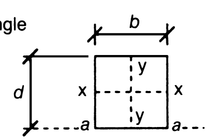
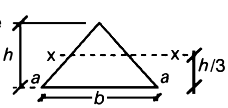
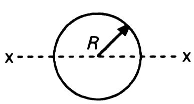
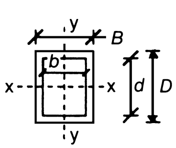
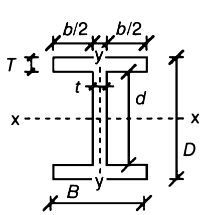
$$M = \frac{\sigma I}{y} \qquad (2.6)$$

where Z is the elastic section modulus and is equal to $bd^2/6$ for a rectangular beam, I is the moment of inertia or, more correctly, the second moment of area of the section and y the distance from the neutral axis (*Fig. 2.7(a)*). The elastic section modulus can be regarded as an index of the strength of the beam in bending. The second moment of area about an axis x–x in the plane of the section is defined by

$$I_{xx} = \int y^2 dA \qquad (2.7)$$

Second moments of area of some common shapes are given in *Table 2.4*.

Table 2.4 Second moments of area

Shape		*Second moment of area*
Rectangle		$I_{xx} = bd^3/12 \quad I_{aa} = \frac{bd^3}{3}$ $I_{yy} = db^3/12$
Triangle		$I_{xx} = bh^3/36$ $I_{aa} = bh^3/12$
Disk		$I_{xx} = \pi R^4/4$ $I_{polar} = 2I_{xx}$
Hollow rectangle		$I_{xx} = \frac{BD^3 - bd^3}{12}$ $I_{yy} = \frac{DB^3 - db^3}{12}$
I-section		$I_{xx} = \frac{BD^3 - bd^3}{12}$ $I_{yy} = \frac{2TB^3}{12} + \frac{dt^3}{12}$

2.5.2 PLASTIC CRITERIA

While the above approach would be suitable for design involving the use of materials which have a linear elastic behaviour, materials such as reinforced concrete and steel have a substantial plastic performance. In practice this means that on reaching an elastic yield point the material continues to deform but with little or no change in maximum stress.

Figure 2.8 shows what this means in terms of stresses in the beam. As the loading on the beam increases extreme fibre stresses reach the yield point, σ_y, and remain constant as the beam continues to bend. A zone of plastic yielding begins to penetrate into the interior of the beam, until a point is reached immediately prior to complete failure, when practically all the cross-section has yielded plastically. The average stress at failure is σ_y, rather than $\sigma_y/2$ as was

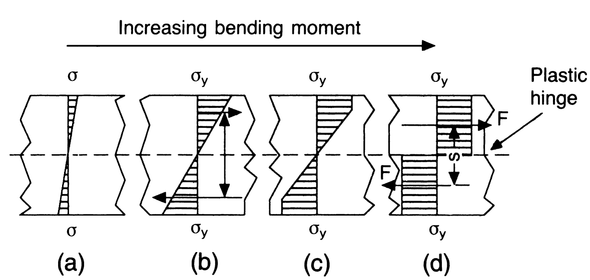


Fig. 2.8 *Bending failure of a beam (a) below yield (elastic); (b) at yield point (elastic); (c) beyond yield (partially plastic); (d) beyond yield (fully plastic).*

found to be the case when the material was assumed to have a linear-elastic behaviour. The moment of resistance assuming plastic behaviour is given by

$$M_r = Fs = \frac{bd\sigma_y}{2}\frac{d}{2} = \frac{bd^2\sigma_y}{4} = S\sigma_y \qquad (2.8)$$

where S is the plastic section modulus and is equal to $bd^2/4$ for rectangular beams. By setting the design moment equal to the moment of resistance of the beam its size and strength can be calculated according to plastic criteria (Example 2.6).

2.6 Column design

Generally, column design is relatively straightforward. The design process simply involves making sure that the design load does not exceed the load capacity of the column, i.e.

$$\text{Load capacity} \geq \text{design axial load} \qquad (2.9)$$

Where the column is required to resist a predominantly axial load, its load capacity is given by

$$\text{Load capacity} = \text{design stress} \times \text{area of column cross-section} \qquad (2.10)$$

The design stress is related to the crushing strength of the material(s) concerned. However, not all columns fail in this mode. Some fail due to a combination of buckling followed by crushing of the material(s) (*Fig. 1.3*). These columns will tend to have lower load-carrying capacities, a fact which is taken into account by reducing the design stresses in the column. The design stresses are related to the slenderness ratio of the column, which is found to be a function of the following factors:

1. geometric properties of the column cross-section, e.g. lateral dimension of column, radius of gyration;
2. length of column;
3. support conditions (*Fig. 2.5*).

The radius of gyration, r, is a sectional property which provides a measure of the column's ability to resist buckling. It is given by

$$r = (I/A)^{1/2} \qquad (2.11)$$

Generally, the higher the slenderness ratio, the greater the tendency for buckling and hence the lower the load capacity of the column. Most practical reinforced concrete columns are designed to fail by crushing and the design equations for this medium are based on equation 2.10 (*Chapter 3*). Steel columns, on the other hand, are designed to fail by a combination of buckling and crushing. Empirical relations have been derived to predict the design stress in steel columns in terms of the slenderness ratio (*Chapter 4*).

Example 2.6 Elastic and plastic moments of resistance of a beam section

Calculate the moment of resistance of a beam 50 mm wide by 100 mm deep with $\sigma_y = 20$ N mm^{-2} according to (i) elastic criteria and (ii) plastic criteria.

ELASTIC CRITERIA

From equation 2.3,

$$M_{r,el} = \frac{bd^2}{6}\sigma_y = \frac{50 \times 100^2 \times 20}{6} = 1.67 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm}$$

PLASTIC CRITERIA

From equation 2.8,

$$M_{r,pl} = \frac{bd^2\sigma_y}{4} = \frac{50 \times 100^2 \times 20}{4} = 2.5 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm}$$

Hence it can be seen that the plastic moment of resistance of the section is greater than the maximum elastic moment of resistance. This will always be the case but the actual difference between the two moments will depend upon the shape of the section.

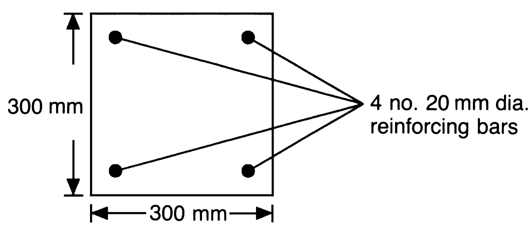
In most real situations, however, the loads will be applied eccentric to the axes of the column. Columns will therefore be required to resist axial loads and bending moments about one or both axes. In some cases, the bending moments may be small and can be accounted for in design simply by reducing the allowable design stresses in the material(s). Where the moments are large, for instance columns along the outside edges of buildings, the analysis procedures become more complex and the designer may have to resort to the use of design charts. However, as different codes of practice treat this in different ways, the details will be discussed separately in the chapters which follow.

2.7 Summary

This chapter has presented a simple but conservative method for assessing the design loads acting on individual members of building structures. This assumes that all the joints in the structure are pinended and that the sequence of load transfer occurs in the order: ceiling/floor loads to beams to columns to foundations to ground. The design loads are used to calculate the design bending moments, shear forces, axial loads and deflections experienced by members. In combination with design strengths and other properties of the construction medium, the sizes of the structural members are determined.

Example 2.7 Analysis of column section

Determine whether the reinforced concrete column cross-section shown below would be suitable to resist an axial load of 1500 kN. Assume that the design compressive strengths of the concrete and steel reinforcement are 14 and 375 N mm^{-2} respectively.



$$\text{Area of steel bars} = 4 \times (\pi 20^2/4) = 1256 \text{ mm}^2$$

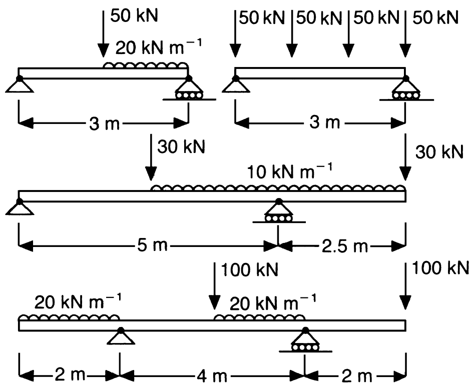
$$\text{Net area of concrete} = 300 \times 300 - 1256 = 88\,744 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Load capacity of column} &= \text{force in concrete} + \text{force in steel}\\ &= 14 \times 88\,744 + 375 \times 1256\\ &= 1\,713\,416 \text{ N} = 1713.4 \text{ kN}\end{aligned}$$

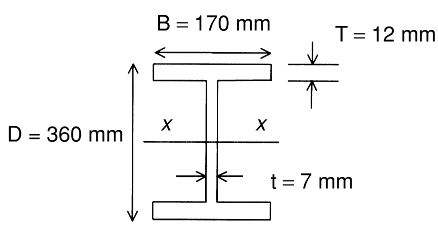
Hence the column cross-section would be suitable to resist the design load of 1500 kN.

Questions

1. For the beams shown, calculate and sketch the bending moment and shear force diagrams.



2. For the three load cases shown in *Fig. 2.4*, sketch the bending moment and shear force diagrams and hence determine the design bending moments and shear forces for the beam. Assume the main span is 6 m and the overhang is 2 m. The characteristic dead and imposed loads are respectively 20 kNm^{-1} and 10 kNm^{-1}.
3. (a) Calculate the area and the major axis moment of inertia, elastic modulus, plastic modulus and the radius of gyration of the steel I-section shown below.



   (b) Assuming the design strength of steel, σ_y, is 275 Nmm^{-2}, calculate the moment of resistance of the I-section according to (i) elastic and (ii) plastic criteria. Use your results to determine the working and collapse loads of a beam with this cross-section, 6 m long and simply supported at its ends. Assume the loading on the beam is uniformly distributed.
4. What are the most common ways in which columns can fail? List and discuss the factors that influence the load carrying capacity of columns.
5. The water tank shown in *Fig. 2.9* is subjected to the following characteristic dead (G_k), imposed (Q_k) and wind loads (W_k) respectively
   (i) 200 kN, 100 kN and 50 kN (Load case 1)
   (ii) 200 kN, 100 kN and 75 kN (Load case 2).
   Assuming the support legs are pinned at the base, determine the design axial forces in both legs by considering the following load combinations:
   (a) dead plus imposed
   (b) dead plus wind
   (c) dead plus imposed plus wind.
   Refer to Table 3.4 for relevant load factors.

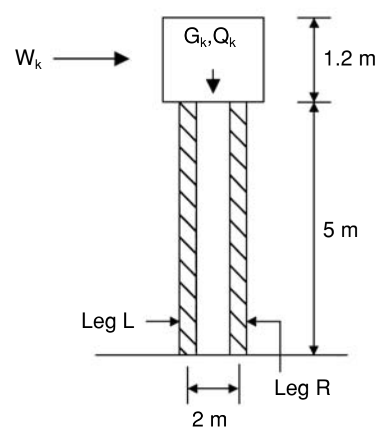


Fig. 2.9

PART TWO

STRUCTURAL DESIGN TO BRITISH STANDARDS

Part One has discussed the principles of limit state design and outlined general approaches towards assessing the sizes of beams and columns in building structures. Since limit state design forms the basis of the design methods in most modern codes of practice on structural design, there is considerable overlap in the design procedures presented in these codes.

The aim of this part of the book is to give detailed guidance on the design of a number of structural elements in the four media: concrete, steel, masonry and timber to the current British Standards. The work has been divided into four chapters as follows:

1. *Chapter 3* discusses the design procedures in BS 8110: *Structural use of concrete* relating to beams, slabs, pad foundations, retaining walls and columns.
2. *Chapter 4* discusses the design procedures in BS 5950: *Structural use of steelwork in buildings* relating to beams, columns, floors and connections.
3. *Chapter 5* discusses the design procedures in BS 5628: *Code of practice for use of masonry* relating to unreinforced loadbearing and panel walls.
4. *Chapter 6* discusses the design procedures in BS 5268: *Structural use of timber* relating to beams, columns and stud walling.

Chapter 3

Design in reinforced concrete to BS 8110

This chapter is concerned with the detailed design of reinforced concrete elements to British Standard 8110. A general discussion of the different types of commonly occurring beams, slabs, walls, foundations and columns is given together with a number of fully worked examples covering the design of the following elements: singly and doubly reinforced beams, continuous beams, one-way and two-way spanning solid slabs, pad foundation, cantilever retaining wall and short braced columns supporting axial loads and uni-axial or bi-axial bending. The section which deals with singly reinforced beams is, perhaps, the most important since it introduces the design procedures and equations which are common to the design of the other elements mentioned above, with the possible exception of columns.

3.1 Introduction

Reinforced concrete is one of the principal materials used in structural design. It is a composite material, consisting of steel reinforcing bars embedded in concrete. These two materials have complementary properties. Concrete, on the one hand, has high compressive strength but low tensile strength. Steel bars, on the other, can resist high tensile stresses but will buckle when subjected to comparatively low compressive stresses. Steel is much more expensive than concrete. By providing steel bars predominantly in those zones within a concrete member which will be subjected to tensile stresses, an economical structural material can be produced which is both strong in compression and strong in tension. In addition, the concrete provides corrosion protection and fire resistance to the more vulnerable embedded steel reinforcing bars.

Reinforced concrete is used in many civil engineering applications such as the construction of structural frames, foundations, retaining walls, water retaining structures, highways and bridges. They are normally designed in accordance with the recommendations given in various documents including BS 5400: Part 4: *Code of practice for design of concrete bridges*, BS 8007: *Code of practice for the design of concrete structures for retaining aqueous liquids* and BS 8110: *Structural use of concrete*. Since the primary aim of this book is to give guidance on the design of structural elements, this is best illustrated by considering the contents of BS 8110.

BS 8110 is divided into the following three parts:

Part 1: *Code of practice for design and construction.*
Part 2: *Code of practice for special circumstances.*
Part 3: *Design charts for singly reinforced beams, doubly reinforced beams and rectangular columns.*

Part 1 covers most of the material required for everyday design. Since most of this chapter is concerned with the contents of Part 1, it should be assumed that all references to BS 8110 refer to Part 1 exclusively. Part 2 covers subjects such as torsional resistance, calculation of deflections and estimation of crack widths. These aspects of design are beyond the scope of this book and Part 2, therefore, is not discussed here. Part 3 of BS 8110 contains charts for use in the design of singly reinforced beams, doubly reinforced beams and rectangular columns. A number of design examples illustrating the use of these charts are included in the relevant sections of this chapter.

3.2 Objectives and scope

All reinforced concrete building structures are composed of various categories of elements including slabs, beams, columns, walls and foundations (*Fig. 3.1*). Within each category is a range of element types. The aim of this chapter is to describe the element types and, for selected elements, to give guidance on their design.

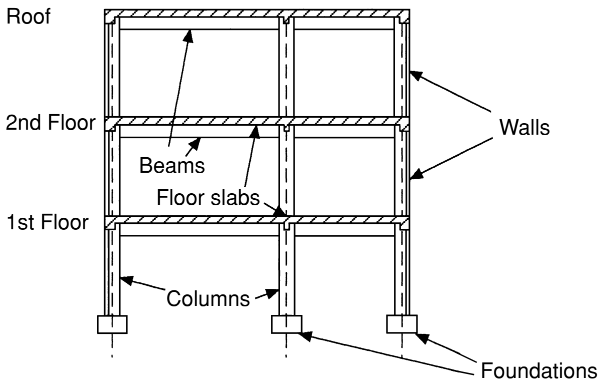


Fig. 3.1 Some elements of a structure.

A great deal of emphasis has been placed in the text to highlight the similarities in structural behaviour and, hence, design of the various categories of elements. Thus, certain slabs can be regarded for design purposes as a series of transversely connected beams. Columns may support slabs and beams but columns may also be supported by (ground bearing) slabs and beams, in which case the latter are more commonly referred to as foundations. Cantilever retaining walls are usually designed as if they consist of three cantilever beams as shown in *Fig. 3.2*. Columns are different in that they are primarily compression members rather than beams and slabs which predominantly resist bending. Therefore columns are dealt with separately at the end of the chapter.

Irrespective of the element being designed, the designer will need a basic understanding of the following aspects which are discussed next:

1. symbols
2. basis of design

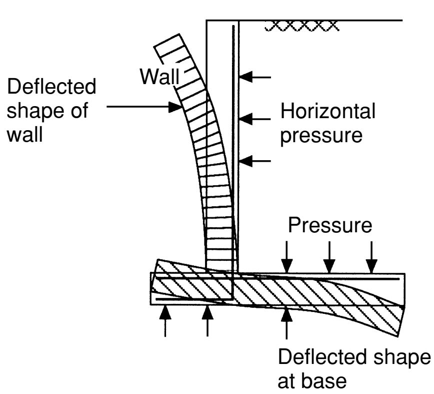


Fig. 3.2 Cantilever retaining wall.

3. material properties
4. loading
5. stress–strain relationships
6. durability and fire resistance.

The detailed design of beams, slabs, foundations, retaining walls and columns will be discussed in sections 3.9, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12 and 3.13, respectively.

3.3 Symbols

For the purpose of this book, the following symbols have been used. These have largely been taken from BS 8110. Note that in one or two cases the same symbol is differently defined. Where this occurs the reader should use the definition most appropriate to the element being designed.

Geometric properties:

b	width of section
d	effective depth of the tension reinforcement
h	overall depth of section
x	depth to neutral axis
z	lever arm
d'	depth to the compression reinforcement
ℓ	effective span
c	nominal cover to reinforcement

Bending:

F_k	characteristic load
g_k, G_k	characteristic dead load
q_k, Q_k	characteristic imposed load
w_k, W_k	characteristic wind load
f_k	characteristic strength
f_{cu}	characteristic compressive cube strength of concrete
f_y	characteristic tensile strength of reinforcement
γ_f	partial safety factor for load
γ_m	partial safety factor for material strengths
K	coefficient given by $M/f_{cu}bd^2$
K'	coefficient given by $M_u/f_{cu}bd^2 = 0.156$ when redistribution does not exceed 10 per cent
M	design ultimate moment
M_u	design ultimate moment of resistance
A_s	area of tension reinforcement
A'_s	area of compression reinforcement
Φ	diameter of main steel
Φ'	diameter of links

Shear:

f_{yv}	characteristic strength of links
s_v	spacing of links along the member

V	design shear force due to ultimate loads
v	design shear stress
v_c	design concrete shear stress
A_{sv}	total cross-sectional area of shear reinforcement

Compression:

b	width of column
h	depth of column
ℓ_o	clear height between end restraints
ℓ_e	effective height
ℓ_{ex}	effective height in respect of x-x axis
ℓ_{ey}	effective height in respect of y-y axis
N	design ultimate axial load
A_c	net cross-sectional area of concrete in a column
A_{sc}	area of longitudinal reinforcement

3.4 Basis of design

The design of reinforced concrete elements to BS 8110 is based on the limit state method. As discussed in Chapter 1, the two principal categories of limit states normally considered in design are:

(i) ultimate limit state
(ii) serviceability limit state.

The ultimate limit state models the behaviour of the element at failure due to a variety of mechanisms including excessive bending, shear and compression or tension. The serviceability limit state models the behaviour of the member at working loads and in the context of reinforced concrete design is principally concerned with the limit states of deflection and cracking.

Having identified the relevant limit states, the design process simply involves basing the design on the most critical one and then checking for the remaining limit states. This requires an understanding of

1. material properties
2. loadings.

3.5 Material properties

The two materials whose properties must be known are concrete and steel reinforcement. In the case of concrete, the property with which the designer is primarily concerned is its compressive strength. For steel, however, it is its tensile strength capacity which is important.

3.5.1 CHARACTERISTIC COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF CONCRETE, f_{cu}

Concrete is a mixture of water, coarse and fine aggregate and a cementitious binder (normally Portland cement) which hardens to a stone like mass. As can be appreciated, it is difficult to produce a homogeneous material from these components. Furthermore, its strength and other properties may vary considerably due to operations such as transportation, compaction and curing.

The compressive strength of concrete is usually determined by carrying out compression tests on 28-day-old, 100 mm cubes which have been prepared using a standard procedure laid down in BS EN 12390-1 (2000). An alternative approach is to use 100 mm diameter by 200 mm long cylinders. Irrespective of the shape of the test specimen, if a large number of compression tests were carried out on samples made from the same mix it would be found that a plot of crushing strength against frequency of occurrence would approximate to a normal distribution (*Fig. 3.3*).

For design purposes it is necessary to assume a unique value for the strength of the mix. However, choosing too high a value will result in a high probability that most of the structure will be constructed with concrete having a strength below this value. Conversely, too low a value will result in inefficient use of the material. As a compromise between economy and safety, BS 8110 refers to the characteristic strength (f_{cu}) which is defined as the value below which not more than 5 per cent of the test results fall.

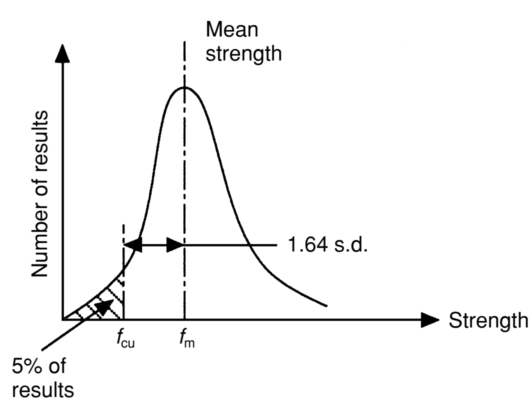


Fig. 3.3 *Normal frequency distribution of strengths.*

Table 3.1 Concrete compressive strength classes

Concrete strength classes	*Designated concrete*	*Characteristic cube strength, f_{cu} (Nmm^{-2})*
C 20/25	RC 20/25	25
C 25/30	RC 25/30	30
C 28/35	RC 28/35	35
C 32/40	RC 32/40	40
C 35/45	RC 35/45	45
C 40/50	RC 40/50	50
C 50/60	–	60

The characteristic and mean strength (f_m) of a sample are related by the expression:

$$f_{cu} = f_m - 1.64 \text{ s.d.}$$

where s.d. is the standard deviation. Thus assuming that the mean strength is 35 Nmm^{-2} and standard deviation is 3 Nmm^{-2}, the characteristic strength of the mix is $35 - 1.64 \times 3 = 30$ Nmm^{-2}.

The characteristic compressive strength of concrete can be identified by its 'strength class'. *Table 3.1* shows typical compressive strength classes of concrete commonly used in reinforced concrete design. Note that the strength class consists of the characteristic cylinder strength of the mix followed by its characteristic cube strength. For example, a class C25/30 concrete has a characteristic cylinder strength of 25 Nmm^{-2} and a characteristic cube strength of 30 Nmm^{-2}. Nevertheless, like previous editions of BS 8110, the design rules in the latest edition are based on characteristic cube not cylinder strengths. In general, concrete strength classes in the range C20/25 and C50/60 can be designed using BS 8110.

Table 3.1 also shows the two common approaches to the specification of concrete recommended in BS 8500, namely designed and designated. In many applications the most straightforward approach is to use a designated concrete which simply involves specifying the strength class, e.g. RC 20/25, and the maximum aggregate size. However, this approach may not be suitable for foundations, for example if ground investigations indicate the concrete will be exposed to an aggressive chemical environment. Under these circumstances a designed mix may be required and the designer will need to specify not only the strength class, i.e. C20/25, and the maximum aggregate size but also the maximum permissible water/cement ratio, minimum cement content, permitted cement or combination types, amongst other aspects.

Table 3.2 Strength of reinforcement (Table 3.1, BS 8110)

Reinforcement type	*Characteristic strength, f_y (Nmm^{-2})*
Hot rolled mild steel	250
High-yield steel (hot rolled or cold worked)	500

3.5.2 CHARACTERISTIC STRENGTH OF REINFORCEMENT, f_y

Concrete is strong in compression but weak in tension. Because of this it is normal practice to provide steel reinforcement in those areas where tensile stresses in the concrete are most likely to develop. Consequently, it is the tensile strength of the reinforcement which most concerns the designer.

The tensile strength of steel reinforcement can be determined using the procedure laid down in BS EN 10002: Part 1. The tensile strength will also vary 'normally' with specimens of the same composition. Using the same reasoning as above, BS 8110 recommends that design should be based on the characteristic strength of the reinforcement (f_y) and gives typical values for mild steel and high-yield steel reinforcement, the two reinforcement types available in the UK, of 250 Nmm^{-2} and 500 Nmm^{-2} respectively (*Table 3.2*). High-yield reinforcement is mostly used in practice nowadays.

3.5.3 DESIGN STRENGTH

Tests to determine the characteristic strengths of concrete and steel reinforcement are carried out on near perfect specimens, which have been prepared under laboratory conditions. Such conditions will seldom exist in practice. Therefore it is undesirable to use characteristic strengths to size members.

To take account of differences between actual and laboratory values, local weaknesses and inaccuracies in assessment of the resistances of sections, the characteristic strengths (f_k) are divided by appropriate partial safety factor for strengths (γ_m), obtained from *Table 3.3*. The resulting values are termed design strengths and it is the design strengths which are used to size members.

$$\text{Design strength} = \frac{f_k}{\gamma_m} \qquad (3.1)$$

It should be noted that for the ultimate limit state the partial safety factor for reinforcement (γ_{ms}) is always 1.15, but for concrete (γ_{mc}) assumes

Table 3.3 Values of γ_m for the ultimate limit state (Table 2.2, BS 8110)

Material/Stress type	*Partial safety factor,* γ_m
Reinforcement	1.15
Concrete in flexure or axial load	1.50
Concrete shear strength without shear reinforcement	1.25
Concrete bond strength	1.40
Concrete, others (e.g. bearing stress)	≥ 1.50

different values depending upon the stress type under consideration. Furthermore, the partial safety factors for concrete are all greater than that for reinforcement since concrete quality is less controllable.

3.6 Loading

In addition to the material properties, the designer needs to know the type and magnitude of the loading to which the structure may be subject during its design life.

The loads acting on a structure are divided into three basic types: dead, imposed and wind (*section 2.2*). Associated with each type of loading there are characteristic and design values which must be assessed before the individual elements of the structure can be designed. These aspects are discussed next.

3.6.1 CHARACTERISTIC LOAD

As noted in Chapter 2, it is not possible to apply statistical principles to determine characteristic dead (G_k), imposed (Q_k) and wind (W_k) loads simply because there are insufficient data. Therefore, the characteristic loads are taken to be those given in the following documents:

1. BS 648: *Schedule of weights for building materials*.
2. BS 6399: *Design loadings for buildings*, Part 1: *Code of practice for dead and imposed loads*; Part 2: *Code of practice for wind loads*; Part 3: *Code of practice for imposed roof loads*

3.6.2 DESIGN LOAD

Variations in the characteristic loads may arise due to a number of reasons such as errors in the analysis and design of the structure, constructional inaccuracies and possible unusual load increases. In order to take account of these effects, the characteristic loads (F_k) are multiplied by the appropriate partial safety factor for loads (γ_f), taken from *Table 3.4*, to give the design loads acting on the structure:

$$\text{Design load} = \gamma_f F_k \tag{3.2}$$

Generally, the 'adverse' factors will be used to derive the design loads acting on the structure. For example, for single-span beams subject to only dead and imposed loads the appropriate values of γ_f are generally 1.4 and 1.6 respectively (*Fig. 3.4(a)*). However, for continuous beams, load cases must be analysed which should include maximum and minimum design loads on alternate spans (*Fig. 3.4(b)*).

The design loads are used to calculate the distribution of bending moments and shear forces in the structure usually using elastic analysis methods as discussed in Chapter 2. At no point should they exceed the corresponding design strengths of the member, otherwise failure of the structure may arise.

The design strength is a function of the distribution of stresses in the member. Thus, for the simple case of a steel bar in direct tension the design strength is equal to the cross-sectional area of the bar multiplied by the average stress at failure (*Fig 3.5*). The distribution of stresses in reinforced concrete members is usually more complicated, but can be estimated once the stress–strain behaviour

Table 3.4 Values of γ_f for various load combinations (based on *Table 2.1*, BS 8110)

Load combination	*Load type*				
	Dead, G_k		*Imposed,* Q_k		*Wind,* W_k
	Adverse	*Beneficial*	*Adverse*	*Beneficial*	
1. Dead and imposed	1.4	1.0	1.6	0	–
2. Dead and wind	1.4	1.0	–	–	1.4
3. Dead and wind and imposed	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2

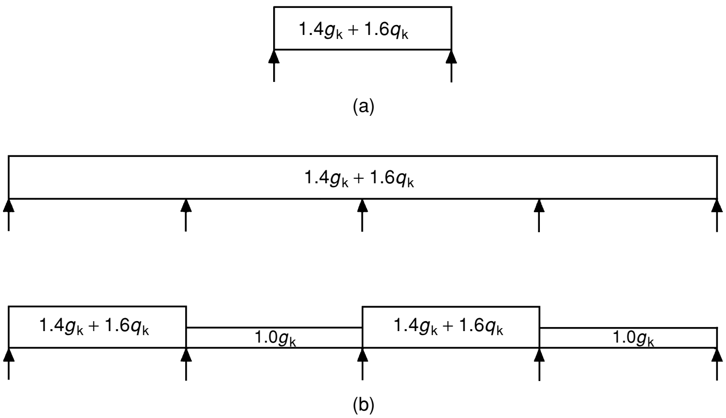


Fig. 3.4 *Ultimate design loads: (a) single span beam; (b) continuous beam.*

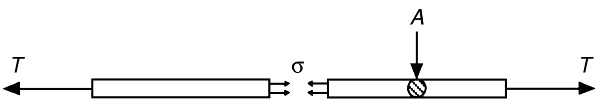


Fig. 3.5 *Design strength of the bar. Design strength, T, = σ.A, where σ is the average stress at failure and A the cross-sectional area of the bar.*

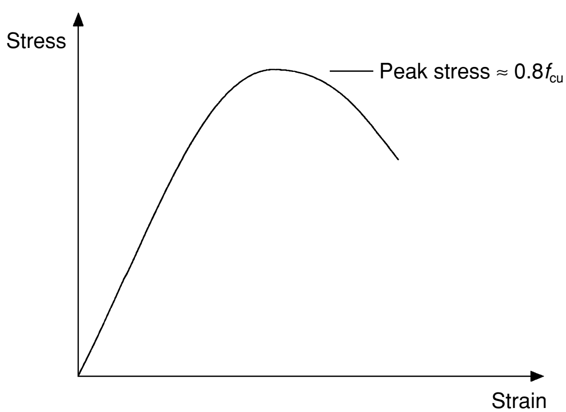


Fig. 3.6 *Actual stress–strain curve for concrete in compression.*

of the concrete and steel reinforcement is known. This aspect is discussed next.

3.7 Stress-strain curves

3.7.1 STRESS-STRAIN CURVE FOR CONCRETE

Figure 3.6 shows a typical stress–strain curve for a concrete cylinder under uniaxial compression. Note that the stress–strain behaviour is never truly linear and that the maximum compressive stress

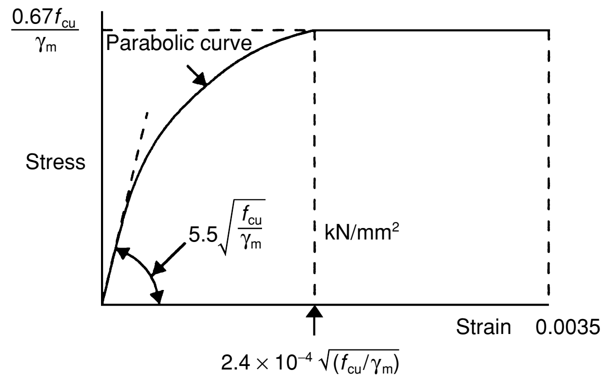


Fig. 3.7 *Design stress–strain curve for concrete in compression (Fig. 2.1, BS 8110).*

at failure is approximately 0.8 × characteristic cube strength (i.e. $0.8f_{cu}$).

However, the actual behaviour is rather complicated to model mathematically and, therefore, BS 8110 uses the modified stress–strain curve shown in *Fig. 3.7* for design. This assumes that the peak stress is only 0.67 (rather than 0.8) times the characteristic strength and hence the design stress for concrete is given by

$$\text{Design compressive stress for concrete} = \frac{0.67f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}} \approx 0.45f_{cu} \quad (3.3)$$

In other words, the failure stress assumed in design is approximately 0.45/0.8 = 56 per cent of the actual stress at failure when near perfect specimens are tested.

3.7.2 STRESS–STRAIN CURVE FOR STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A typical tensile stress–strain curve for steel reinforcement is shown in *Fig. 3.8*. It can be divided

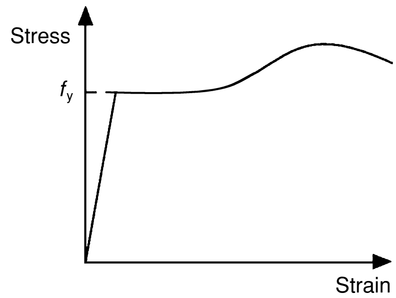


Fig. 3.8 *Actual stress–strain curve for reinforcement.*

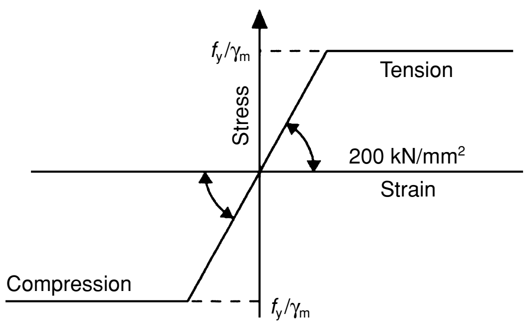


Fig. 3.9 *Design stress–strain curve for reinforcement (Fig. 2.2, BS 8110).*

into two regions: (i) an elastic region where strain is proportional to stress and (ii) a plastic region where small increases in stress produce large increases in strain. The change from elastic to plastic behaviour occurs at the yield stress and is significant since it defines the characteristic strength of reinforcement (f_y).

Once again, the actual material behaviour is rather complicated to model mathematically and therefore BS 8110 modifies it to the form shown in *Fig. 3.9* which also includes the idealised stress–strain relationship for reinforcement in compression. The maximum design stress for reinforcement in tension and compression is given by

$$\text{Design stress for reinforcement} = \frac{f_y}{\gamma_{ms}} \qquad (3.4)$$

From the foregoing it is possible to determine the distribution of stresses at a section and hence calculate the design strength of the member. The latter is normally carried out using the equations given in BS 8110. However, before considering these in detail, it is useful to pause for a moment in order to introduce BS 8110's requirements in respect of durability and fire resistance since these requirements are common to several of the elements which will be subsequently discussed.

3.8 Durability and fire resistance

Apart from the need to ensure that the design is structurally sound, the designer must also verify the proper performance of the structure in service. Principally this involves consideration of the two limit states of (i) durability and (ii) fire resistance. It should be noted that much of the detailed guidance on durability design is given in BS 8500-1 not BS 8110.

3.8.1 DURABILITY

Many concrete structures are showing signs of severe deterioration after only a few years of service. Repair of these structures is both difficult and extremely costly. Therefore, over recent years, much effort has been directed towards improving the durability requirements, particularly with regard to the protection of steel reinforcement in concrete from corrosion caused by carbonation and chloride attack (*Table 3.5*). The other main mechanisms of concrete deterioration which are addressed in BS 8500-1 are freeze/thaw attack, sulphate attack and alkali/silica reaction.

In general, the durability of concrete structures is largely achieved by imposing limits on:

1. the minimum strength class of concrete;
2. the minimum cover to reinforcement;
3. the minimum cement content;
4. the maximum water/cement ratio;
5. the cement type or combination;
6. the maximum allowable surface crack width.

Other measures may include the specification of particular types of admixtures, restrictions on the use of certain types of aggregates, the use of details that ensure concrete surfaces are free draining and good workmanship.

Generally speaking, the risk of freeze/thaw attack and reinforcement corrosion decreases with increasing compressive strength of concrete. In the case of freeze/thaw attack this is largely because of the concomitant increase in tensile capacity of the concrete, which reduces the risk of cracking and spalling when water in the concrete expands on freezing. The use of an air entraining agent also enhances the frost resistance of concrete and is a well-established method of achieving this requirement in practice.

Table 3.5 Exposure classes related to environmental conditions in accordance with BS EN 206 and BS 8500

Class	*Description of the environment*	*Informative examples where exposure classes may occur*
1. No risk of corrosion		
X0	For concrete with reinforcement or embedded metal: very dry	Concrete inside buildings with very low (around 35%) humidity
2. Corrosion induced by carbonation		
XC1	Dry or permanently wet	Concrete inside building with low air humidity Concrete permanently submerged in water
XC2	Wet, rarely dry	Concrete surfaces subject to long-term water contact; many foundations
XC3	Moderate humidity	Concrete inside buildings with moderate or high humidity External concrete sheltered from rain
XC4	Cyclic wet and dry	Concrete surfaces subject to water contact, not within exposure class XC2
3. Corrosion induced by chlorides		
XD1	Moderate humidity	Concrete exposed to airborne chlorides
XD2	Wet, rarely dry	Concrete totally immersed in water containing chlorides, e.g. swimming pools Concrete exposed to industrial waters containing chlorides
XD3	Cyclic wet and dry	Parts of bridges exposed to spray containing chlorides Pavements, car park slabs
4. Corrosion induced by chlorides from sea water		
XS1	Exposed to air borne salt but not	Structures near to or on the coast in direct contact with sea water
XS2	Permanently submerged	Parts of marine structures
XS3	Tidal, splash and spray zones	Parts of marine structures
5. Freeze/thaw attack		
XF1	Moderate water saturation, without deicing agent	Vertical concrete surfaces exposed to rain and freezing
XF2	Moderate water saturation, with deicing agent	Vertical concrete surfaces of road structures exposed to freezing and airborne deicing agents
XF3	High water saturation, without deicing agent	Horizontal surfaces exposed to rain and freezing
XF4	Moderate water saturation, with deicing agent	Road and bridge decks exposed to deicing agents; concrete surfaces exposed to direct spray containing deicing agents and freezing; splash zone of marine structures exposed to freezing
6. Chemical attack		
ACEC	See *Table 3.8*	Reinforced concrete in contact with the ground, e.g. many foundations

The reduction in risk of reinforcement corrosion with increasing compressive strength of concrete is linked to the associated reduction in the permeability of concrete. A low permeability mix enhances durability by reducing the rate of carbonation and chloride penetration into concrete as well as restricting ionic movement within the concrete during corrosion. These features not only increase the time to the onset of corrosion (initiation time) but also reduce the subsequent rate of corrosion propagation. The permeability of concrete is also influenced by water/cement ratio, cement content as well as type/composition of the cement, e.g. CEM I, IIB-V, IIIA, IIIB, IVB (see key at bottom of *Table 3.6* for details), which provide additional means of enhancing concrete durability. It is noteworthy that the link between carbonation-induced corrosion and concrete permeability is less pronounced than for chloride-induced corrosion. This is reflected in the values of nominal cover to reinforcement for carbonation-induced corrosion which are largely independent of cement type (*Table 3.6*). Nevertheless, for both carbonation and chloride attack a good thickness of concrete cover is vital for corrosion protection as is the need to limit crack widths, in particular where cracks follow the line of the reinforcement (coincident cracks).

Sulphate attack is normally countered by specifying sulphate resisting Portland cement (SRPC). The risk of alkali-silica reaction can be reduced by specifying non-reactive aggregate and/or cementitious materials with a low alkali content. It should be noted that deterioration of concrete is rarely due to a single cause, which can sometimes make specification tricky.

Table 3.5 (taken from BS 8500-1) shows the range of exposure classes relevant to concrete construction. As can be seen, the exposure classes are generally broken down into the major concrete deterioration processes discussed above. Although this system allows for the possibility of no risk of corrosion, i.e. exposure class X0, it is recommended that it is not applied to reinforced concrete as

Table 3.6 Concrete quality and cover to reinforcement for durability for an intended working life of at least 50 years (based on *Table A4* BS 8500-1)

Class	*Cement combination type*[1]	*Strength class, max. w/c ratio, min. cement or combination content (kg/m^3) or equivalent designated concrete*							
		Nominal cover to reinforcement							
		15+Δc	20+Δc	25+Δc	30+Δc	35+Δc	40+Δc	45+Δc	50+Δc
1. No risk of corrosion									
X0	All	Not recommended for reinforced concrete structures							
2. Corrosion induced by carbonation									
XC1	All	C20/25, 0.70, 240	→		use the same grade of concrete				→
XC2	All	–	–	C25/30, 0.65, 260	→				→
XC3/ XC4	All except IVB	–	C40/50, 0.45, 340	C30/37, 0.55, 300	C28/35, 0.60, 280	C25/30, 0.65, 260	→		→
3. Corrosion induced by chlorides									
XD1	All	–	–	C40/50, 0.45, 360	C32/40, 0.55, 320	C28/35, 0.60, 300	→		→
XD2	CEM I, IIA, IIB–S, SRPC	–	–	–	C40/50, 0.40, 380	C32/40, 0.50, 340	C28/35, 0.55, 320	→	→
	IIB–V, IIIA	–	–	–	C35/45, 0.40, 380	C28/35, 0.50, 340	C25/30, 0.55, 320	→	→
	IIIB–V, IVB	–	–	–	C32/40, 0.40, 380	C25/30, 0.50, 340	C20/25, 0.55, 320	→	→

Table 3.6 *(cont'd)*

Class	*Cement combination type*[1]	*Strength class, max. w/c ratio, min. cement or combination content (kg/m³) or equivalent designated concrete*							
		Nominal cover to reinforcement							
		$15+\Delta c$	$20+\Delta c$	$25+\Delta c$	$30+\Delta c$	$35+\Delta c$	$40+\Delta c$	$45+\Delta c$	$50+\Delta c$
XD3	CEM I, IIA, IIB–S, SRPC	–	–	–	–	–	C45/55, 0.35, 380	C40/50, 0.40, 380	C35/45, 0.45, 360
	IIB–V, IIIA	–	–	–	–	–	C35/45, 0.40, 380	C32/40, 0.45, 360	C28/35, 0.50, 340
	IIIB–V, IVB–V	–	–	–	–	–	C32/40, 0.40, 380	C28/35, 0.45, 360	C25/30, 0.50, 340
4. Corrosion induced by chlorides from sea water									
XS1	CEM I, IIA, IIB–S, SRPC	–	–	–	C45/50, 0.35, 380	C35/45, 0.45, 360	C32/40, 0.50, 340	→	
	IIB–V, IIIA	–	–	–	C40/50, 0.35, 380	C32/40, 0.45, 360	C28/35, 0.50, 340	→	
	IIIB–V, IVB–V	–	–	–	C32/40, 0.40, 380	C28/35, 0.50, 340	C25/30, 0.50, 340	→	
XS2	CEM I, IIA, IIB–S, SRPC	–	–	–	C40/50, 0.40, 380	C32/40, 0.50, 340	C28/35, 0.55, 320	→	
	IIB–V, IIIA	–	–	–	C35/45, 0.40, 380	C28/35, 0.50, 340	C25/30, 0.55, 320	→	
	IIIB–V, IVB–V	–	–	–	C32/40, 0.40, 380	C25/30, 0.50, 340	C20/25, 0.55, 320	→	
XS3	CEM I, IIA, IIB–S, SRPC	–	–	–	–	–	–	C45/55, 0.35, 380	C40/50, 0.40, 380
	IIB–V, IIIA	–	–	–	–	–	C35/45, 0.40, 380	C32/40, 0.45, 360	C28/35, 0.50, 340
	IIIB–V, IVB	–	–	–	–	–	C32/40, 0.40, 380	C28/35, 0.45, 360	C25/30, 0.50, 340

[1]Cement or combination types:

CEM I	Portland cement
IIA	Portland cement with 6–20% pfa, ggbs or 20% limestone
IIB	Portland cement with 21–35% pfa or ggbs
IIIA	Portland cement with 36–65% ggbs
IIIB	Portland cement with 66–80% pfa or ggbs
IVB	Portland cement with 36–55% pfa
SRPC	Sulphate resisting Portland cement
–S	ground granulated blast furnace slag (ggbs)
–V	pulverised fly ash (pfa)

Table 3.7 Minimum strength classes of concrete with 20 mm aggregates to resist freeze thaw attack (based on *Table A8* BS 8500-1)

Exposure class:	*XF1*	*XF2*	*XF3*	*XF4*
	Indicative Strength Classes:			
3.5% air-entrainment	C28/35	C32/40	C40/50	C40/50
No air-entrainment	RC25/30	RC25/30	RC25/30	RC28/35

conditions of very low humidity, assumed to be less than about 35 per cent, seldom exist in practice. The table also distinguishes between chlorides derived from sea-water and chlorides derived from other sources, presumably rock salt, which is used as a de-icing agent during winter maintenance. As noted above, these mechanisms may occur singly or in combination. For example, an external element of a building structure may be susceptible to carbonation and freeze thaw attack, i.e. exposure classes XC4 + XF1. Similarly, coastal structures may be vulnerable to both chloride attack and freezing, i.e. exposure classes XS1 + XF2. Clearly, the durability requirements should be based on the most onerous condition.

Once the relevant environmental condition(s) have been identified, a minimum strength class and nominal depth of concrete cover to the reinforcement can be selected. *Table 3.6* gives the nominal (i.e. minimum plus an allowance for deviation, normally assumed to be 10 mm) depths of concrete cover to all reinforcement for specified cement/combination types and strength classes (for both designed and designated concretes) required for exposure classes XC1-XC4, XD1-XD3 and XS1-XS3, for structures with an intended working life of at least 50 years. Reference should be made to *Table A5* of BS 8500-1 for concrete covers for structures with an intended working life of in excess of 100 years.

It can be seen from *Table 3.6* that for a given level of protection, the permitted minimum quality of concrete decreases as the recommended nominal depth of concrete cover increases. Moreover, for chloride-induced corrosion the permitted minimum strength class of concrete reduces with increasing percentage of pulverised fuel ash (pfa) or ground granulated blastfurnace slag (ggbs). For example, for exposure class XD2 the minimum concrete strength class is C40/50 if the pfa content lies between 6–20 per cent (i.e. cement type IIA). However, a lower concrete strength class (C35/45) is permitted if the pfa content is between 21–35 per cent (i.e. cement type IIB) and lower still (C32/40) if the pfa content is between 35–55 per cent (i.e. cement type IVB). Where concrete is vulnerable to freeze/thaw attack, i.e. exposure classes XF1–XF4, the strength class of the concrete must not generally fall below the values shown in *Table 3.7*.

Concrete in the ground (e.g. foundations) may be subject to chemical attack, possibly due to the presence of sulphates, magnesium or acids in the soil and/or groundwater. *Table 3.8* shows the nominal covers and design chemical (DC) and designated concrete classes (FND) for specified soil chemical environments. The design procedure involves determining the class of aggressive chemical environment for concrete (ACEC) via limits on the sulphate and magnesium ion concentrations and soil acidity. This is used together with the intended working life of the structure to determine the DC class. Where the strength class of the concrete exceeds C25/30, a designed concrete will have to be specified and the concrete producer should be advised of the DC class required. Otherwise, a designated (FND) concrete, with a minimum strength of C25/30, can be specified. Where concrete is cast directly against the earth the nominal depth of concrete cover should be at least 75 mm whereas for concrete cast against blinding it should be at least 50 mm.

BS 8110 further recommends that the maximum surface crack width should not exceed 0.3 mm in order to avoid corrosion of the reinforcing bars. This requirement will generally be satisfied by observing the detailing rules given in BS 8110 with regard to:

1. minimum reinforcement areas;
2. maximum clear spacing between reinforcing bars.

These requirements will be discussed individually for beams, slabs and columns in *sections 3.9.1.6, 3.10.2.4 and 3.13.6*, respectively.

Table 3.8 ACEC classes and associated nominal covers and DC or designated concretes for structures with an intended working life of at least 50 years (based on *Tables A.2, A.9* and *A.10* of BS 8500-1)

Sulphate and magnesium					*Design sulphate class*	*Natural soil*		*Brownfield*		*ACEC-class*	*Lowest nominal covers (mm)*	*DC/FND class*[a]
2:1 water/soil Extract		*Groundwater*		*Total potential sulphate*		*Static water*	*Mobile water*	*Static water*	*Mobile water*			
SO_4 mg/l	*Mg mg/l*	*SO_4 mg/l*	*Mg mg/l*	*SO_4 %*								
1600 to 3000	–	1500 to 3000	–	0.7–1.2	DS-3	>3.5	–	>5.5	–	AC-2s	50[b], 75[c]	DC-2 (FND2)
						–	>5.5	–	>6.5	AC-3	50[b], 75[c]	DC-3 (FND3)
						2.5–3.5	–	2.5–5.5	–	AC-3s	50[b], 75[c]	DC-3 (FND3)
						–	2.5–5.5	–	5.6–6.5	AC-4	50[b], 75[c]	DC-4 (FND4)
						–	–	–	2.5–5.5	AC-5	50[b], 75[c]	DC-4 (FND4) + APM3[d]
3100 to 6000	≤1200	3100 to 6000	≤1000	1.3–2.4	DS-4	>3.5	–	>5.5	–	AC-3s	50[b], 75[c]	DC-3(FND3)
						–	>5.5	–	>6.5	AC-4	50[b], 75[c]	DC-4 (FND4)
						2.5–3.5	–	2.5–5.5	–	AC-4s	50[b], 75[c]	DC-4 (FND4)
						–	2.5–5.5	–	2.5–6.5	AC-5	50[b], 75[c]	DC-4 (FND4) + APM3[d]

[a]For structures with at least 50 years' working life
[b]For concrete cast against blinding
[c]For concrete cast directly against the soil
[d]Additional Protection Measure (APM) 3 – provide surface protection

Example 3.1 Selection of minimum strength class and nominal concrete cover to reinforcement (BS 8110)

Assuming a design life of 50 years, determine the minimum concrete strength classes of concrete and the associated nominal covers to reinforcement at locations 1–4 for the structure shown in *Fig. 3.10*. List any assumptions.

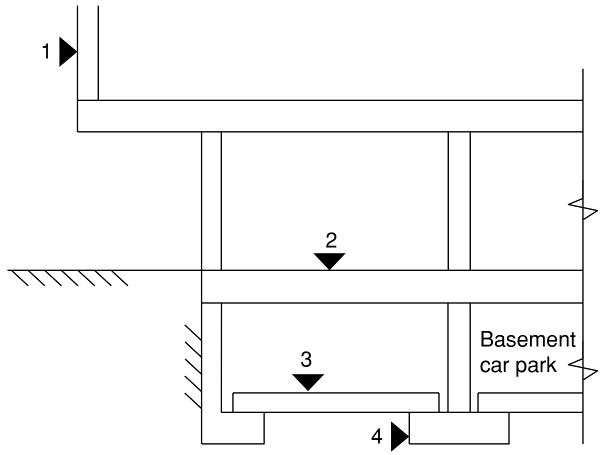


Fig. 3.10

LOCATION 1

Assume concrete column is exposed to rain and freezing.

Therefore, design the column for exposure class XC4 and XF1 (*Table 3.5*).

From *Table 3.7* the minimum strength class of concrete for class XF1 exposure is C28/35 and from *Table 3.6* the associated nominal cover to reinforcement for class XC4 exposure, c_{nom}, is

$$c_{nom} = 30 + \Delta c = 30 + 10 = 40 \text{ mm}$$

LOCATION 2

Assume concrete beam is exposed to normal humidity.

Therefore, design the beam for exposure class XC1 (*Table 3.5*).

From *Table 3.6* the minimum strength class of concrete for class XC1 exposure is C20/25 and the associated nominal cover to reinforcement, c_{nom}, is

$$c_{nom} = 15 + \Delta c = 15 + 10 = 25 \text{ mm}$$

LOCATION 3

Clearly, the car-park slab is vulnerable to chloride attack but exposure class XD3 would seem to be too severe for a basement car park whereas exposure class XD1 is perhaps rather mild. As a compromise it is suggested that the minimum strength class of concrete should be taken as C32/40 and the nominal cover to reinforcement, c_{nom}, should be taken as

$$c_{nom} = 30 + \Delta c = 30 + 10 = 40 \text{ mm}$$

LOCATION 4

Assume non-aggressive soil conditions and that the concrete is cast directly against the soil.

Hence, design foundation for exposure class XC2 (*Table 3.5*).

From *Table 3.6* the minimum strength class of concrete for class XC2 exposure is C25/30 and the associated nominal cover to reinforcement, c_{nom}, is

$$c_{nom} = 25 + \Delta c = 25 + 10 = 35 \text{ mm} \geq 75 \text{ mm (since the concrete is cast directly against the ground).}$$

Therefore $c_{nom} = 75$ mm.

Table 3.9 Nominal cover to all reinforcement to meet specified periods of fire resistance (based on *Table 3.4*, BS 8110)

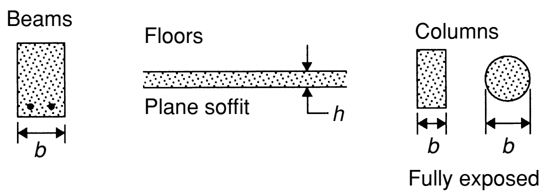
Fire resistance (hours)	*Nominal cover (mm)*				
	Beams		*Floors*		*Columns*
	Simply supported	*Continuous*	*Simply supported*	*Continuous*	
0.5	20	20	20	20	20
1.0	20	20	20	20	20
1.5	20	20	25	20	20
2.0	40	30	35	25	25
3.0	60	40	45	35	25
4.0	70	50	55	45	25

3.8.2 FIRE PROTECTION

Fire protection of reinforced concrete members is largely achieved by specifying limits for:

1. nominal thickness of cover to the reinforcement;
2. minimum dimensions of members.

Table 3.9 gives the actual values of the nominal depths of concrete covers to all reinforcement for specified periods of fire resistance and member types. The covers in the table may need to be increased because of durability considerations. The minimum dimensions of members for fire resistance are shown in *Fig. 3.11*.



Fire resistance (hours)	*Minimum dimension (mm)*		
	Beam width (b)	*Floor thickness (h)*	*Exposed column width (b)*
0.5	200	75	150
1.0	200	95	200
1.5	200	110	250
2.0	200	125	300
3.0	240	150	400
4.0	280	170	450

Fig. 3.11 *Minimum dimensions of reinforced concrete members for fire resistance (based on Fig. 3.2, BS 8110).*

Having discussed these more general aspects relating to structural design, the detailed design of beams is considered in the following section.

3.9 Beams

Beams in reinforced concrete structures can be defined according to:

1. cross-section
2. position of reinforcement
3. support conditions.

Some common beam sections are shown in *Fig. 3.12*. Beams reinforced with tension steel only are referred to as singly reinforced. Beams reinforced with tension and compression steel are termed doubly reinforced. Inclusion of compression steel will increase the moment capacity of the beam and hence allow more slender sections to be used. Thus, doubly reinforced beams are used in preference to

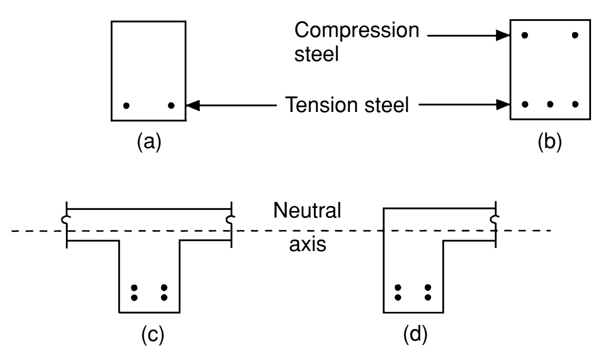


Fig. 3.12 *Beam sections: (a) singly reinforced; (b) doubly reinforced; (c) T-section; (d) L-section.*

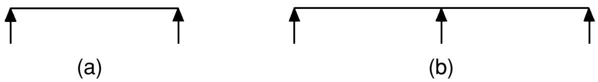


Fig. 3.13 *Support conditions: (a) simply supported; (b) continuous.*

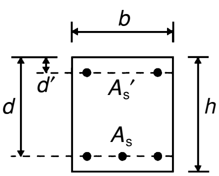


Fig. 3.14 *Notation.*

singly reinforced beams when there is some restriction on the construction depth of the section.

Under certain conditions, T and L beams are more economical than rectangular beams since some of the concrete below the dotted line (neutral axis), which serves only to contain the tension steel, is removed resulting in a reduced unit weight of beam. Furthermore, beams may be simply supported at their ends or continuous, as illustrated in *Fig. 3.13*.

Figure 3.14 illustrates some of the notation used in beam design. Here b is the width of the beam, h the overall depth of section, d the effective depth of tension reinforcement, d' the depth of compression reinforcement, A_s the area of tension reinforcement and A_s' the area of compression reinforcement.

The following sub-sections consider the design of:

1. singly reinforced beams
2. doubly reinforced beams
3. continuous, L and T beams.

3.9.1 SINGLY REINFORCED BEAM DESIGN

All beams may fail due to excessive bending or shear. In addition, excessive deflection of beams must be avoided otherwise the efficiency or appearance of the structure may become impaired. As discussed in *section 3.4*, bending and shear are ultimate states while deflection is a serviceabilty state. Generally, structural design of concrete beams primarily involves consideration of the following aspects which are discussed next:

1. bending
2. shear
3. deflection.

3.9.1.1 **Bending** (clause 3.4.4.4, BS 8110)

Consider the case of a simply supported, singly reinforced, rectangular beam subject to a uniformly distributed load ω as shown in *Figs 3.15* and *3.16*.

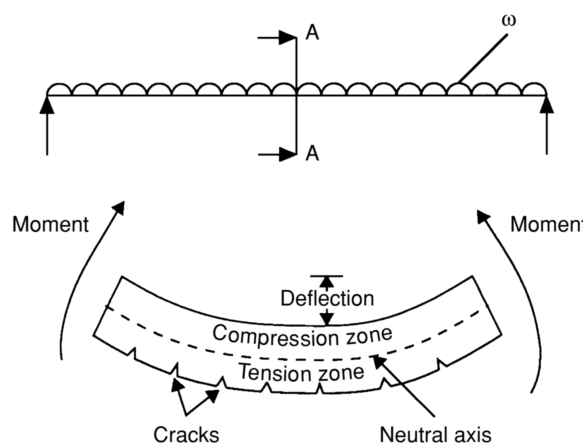


Fig. 3.15

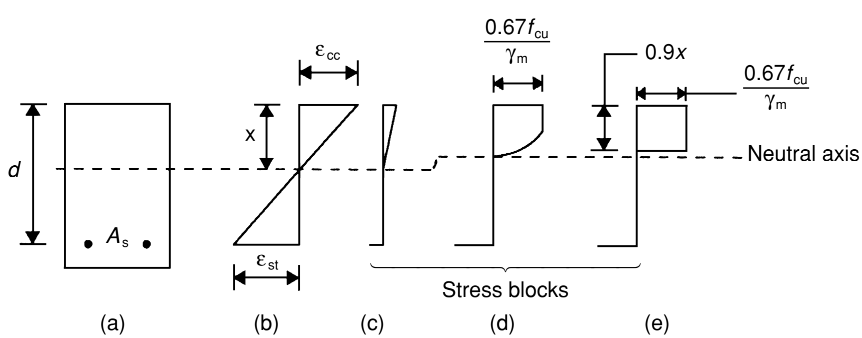


Fig. 3.16 *Stress and strain distributions at section A-A: (a) section; (b) strains; (c) triangular (low strain); (d) rectangular parabolic (large strain); (e) equivalent rectangular.*

The load causes the beam to deflect downwards, putting the top portion of the beam into compression and the bottom portion into tension. At some distance x below the compression face, the section is neither in compression nor tension and therefore the strain at this level is zero. This axis is normally referred to as the neutral axis.

Assuming that plane sections remain plane, the strain distribution will be triangular (*Fig. 3.16b*). The stress distribution in the concrete above the neutral axis is initially triangular (*Fig. 3.16c*), for low values of strain, because stress and strain are directly proportional (*Fig. 3.7*). The stress in the concrete below the neutral axis is zero, however, since it is assumed that the concrete is cracked, being unable to resist any tensile stress. All the tensile stresses in the member are assumed to be resisted by the steel reinforcement and this is reflected in a peak in the tensile stress at the level of the reinforcement.

As the intensity of loading on the beam increases, the mid-span moment increases and the distribution of stresses changes from that shown in *Fig. 3.16c* to *3.16d*. The stress in the reinforcement increases linearly with strain up to the yield point. Thereafter it remains at a constant value (*Fig. 3.9*). However, as the strain in the concrete increases, the stress distribution is assumed to follow the parabolic form of the stress–strain relationship for concrete under compression (*Fig. 3.7*).

The actual stress distribution at a given section and the mode of failure of the beam will depend upon whether the section is (1) under-reinforced or (2) over-reinforced. If the section is over-reinforced the steel does not yield and the failure mechanism will be crushing of the concrete due to its compressive capacity being exceeded. Steel is expensive and, therefore, over-reinforcing will lead to uneconomical design. Furthermore, with this type of failure there may be no external warning signs; just sudden, catastrophic collapse.

If the section is under-reinforced, the steel yields and failure will again occur due to crushing of the concrete. However, the beam will show considerable deflection which will be accompanied by severe cracking and spalling from the tension face thus providing ample warning signs of failure. Moreover, this form of design is more economical since a greater proportion of the steel strength is utilised. Therefore, it is normal practice to design sections which are under-reinforced rather than over-reinforced.

In an under-reinforced section, since the reinforcement will have yielded, the tensile force in the steel (F_{st}) at the ultimate limit state can be readily calculated using the following:

$$F_{st} = \text{design stress} \times \text{area}$$

$$= \frac{f_y A_s}{\gamma_{ms}} \quad \text{(using equation 3.4)} \qquad (3.5)$$

where

f_y = yield stress
A_s = area of reinforcement
γ_{ms} = factor of safety for reinforcement (= 1.15)

However, it is not an easy matter to calculate the compressive force in the concrete because of the complicated pattern of stresses in the concrete. To simplify the situation, BS 8110 replaces the rectangular–parabolic stress distribution with an equivalent rectangular stress distribution (*Fig. 3.16e*). And it is the rectangular stress distribution which is used in order to develop the design formulae for rectangular beams given in clause 3.4.4.4 of BS 8110. Specifically, the code gives formulae for the following design parameters which are derived below:

1. ultimate moment of resistance
2. area of tension reinforcement
3. lever arm.

(i) Ultimate moment of resistance, M_u. Consider the singly reinforced beam shown in *Fig. 3.17*. The loading on the beam gives rise to an ultimate design moment (M) at mid-span. The resulting curvature of the beam produces a compression force in the concrete (F_{cc}) and a tensile force in the reinforcement (F_{st}). Since there is no resultant axial force on the beam, the force in the concrete must equal the force in the reinforcement:

$$F_{cc} = F_{st} \qquad (3.6)$$

These two forces are separated by a distance z, the moment of which forms a couple (M_u) which opposes the design moment. For structural stability $M_u \geq M$ where

$$M_u = F_{cc}z = F_{st}z \qquad (3.7)$$

From the stress block shown in *Fig. 3.17(c)*

$$F_{cc} = \text{stress} \times \text{area}$$

$$= \frac{0.67 f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}} 0.9xb \qquad (3.8)$$

and

$$z = d - 0.9x/2 \qquad (3.9)$$

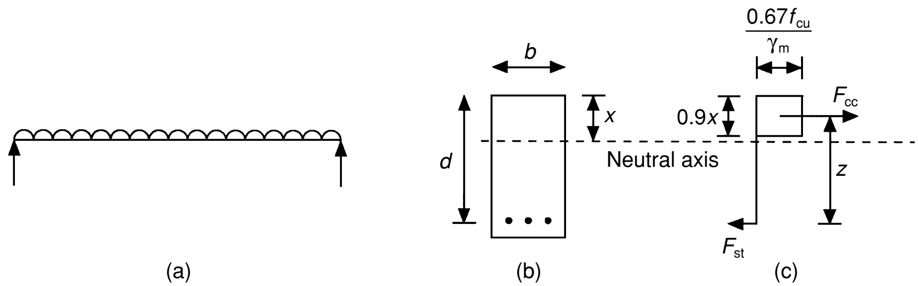


Fig. 3.17 *Ultimate moment of resistance for singly reinforced section.*

In order to ensure that the section is under-reinforced, BS 8110 limits the depth of the neutral axis (x) to a maximum of $0.5d$, where d is the effective depth (*Fig. 3.17(b)*). Hence

$$x \leq 0.5d \tag{3.10}$$

By combining equations 3.7–3.10 and putting $\gamma_{mc} = 1.5$ (*Table 3.3*) it can be shown that the ultimate moment of resistance is given by:

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} bd^2 \tag{3.11}$$

Note that M_u depends only on the properties of the concrete and not the steel reinforcement. Provided that the design moment does not exceed M_u (i.e. $M \leq M_u$), a beam whose section is singly reinforced will be sufficient to resist the design moment. The following section derives the equation necessary to calculate the area of reinforcement needed for such a case.

(ii) Area of tension reinforcement, A_s. At the limiting condition $M_u = M$, equation 3.7 becomes

$$M = F_{st} \cdot z$$

$$= \frac{f_y A_s}{\gamma_{ms}} z \quad \text{(from equation 3.5)}$$

Rearranging and putting $\gamma_{ms} = 1.15$ (*Table 3.3*) gives

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} \tag{3.12}$$

Solution of this equation requires an expression for z which can either be obtained graphically (*Fig. 3.18*) or by calculation as discussed below.

(iii) Lever arm, z. At the limiting condition $M_u = M$, equation 3.7 becomes

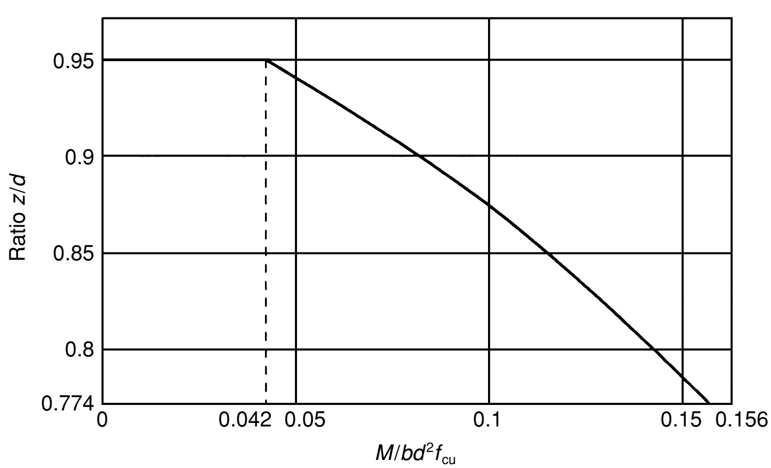


Fig. 3.18 *Lever-arm curve.*

$$M = F_{cc}z = \frac{0.67f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}}0.9bxz \quad \text{(from equation 3.8)}$$
$$= 0.4f_{cu}bzx \quad \text{(putting } \gamma_{mc} = 1.5\text{)}$$
$$= 0.4f_{cu}bz2\frac{(d-z)}{0.9} \quad \text{(from equation 3.9)}$$
$$= \frac{8}{9}f_{cu}bz(d-z)$$

Dividing both sides by $f_{cu}bd^2$ gives

$$\frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{8}{9}(z/d)(1 - z/d)$$

Substituting $K = \dfrac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2}$ and putting $z_o = z/d$ gives

$$0 = z_o^2 - z_o + 9K/8$$

This is a quadratic and can be solved to give

$$z_o = z/d = 0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}$$

This equation is used to draw the lever arm curve shown in *Fig. 3.18*, and is usually expressed in the following form

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}] \qquad (3.13)$$

Once z has been determined, the area of tension reinforcement, A_s, can be calculated using equation 3.12. In clause 3.4.4.1 of BS 8110 it is noted that z should not exceed $0.95d$ in order to give a reasonable concrete area in compression. Moreover it should be remembered that equation 3.12 can only be used to determine A_s provided that $M \le M_u$ or $K \le K'$ where

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} \quad \text{and} \quad K' = \frac{M_u}{f_{cu}bd^2}$$

To summarise, design for bending requires the calculation of the maximum design moment (M) and corresponding ultimate moment of resistance of the section (M_u). Provided $M \le M_u$ or $K \le K'$, only tension reinforcement is needed and the area of steel can be calculated using equation 3.12 via equation 3.13. Where $M > M_u$ the designer has the option to either increase the section sizes (i.e. $M \le M_u$) or design as a doubly reinforced section. The latter option is discussed more fully in *section 3.9.2*.

Example 3.2 Design of bending reinforcement for a singly reinforced beam (BS 8110)

A simply supported rectangular beam of 7 m span carries characteristic dead (including self-weight of beam), g_k, and imposed, q_k, loads of 12 kNm^{-1} and 8 kNm^{-1} respectively (*Fig. 3.19*). The beam dimensions are breadth, b, 275 mm and effective depth, d, 450 mm. Assuming the following material strengths, calculate the area of reinforcement required.

$$f_{cu} = 30 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$
$$f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

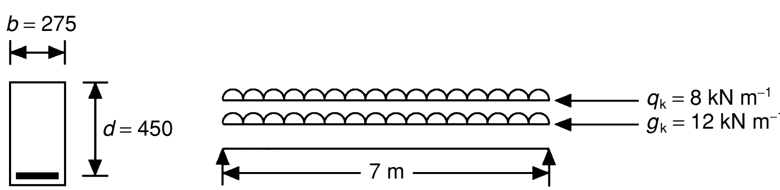


Fig. 3.19

Ultimate load (w) $= 1.4g_k + 1.6q_k$

$$= 1.4 \times 12 + 1.6 \times 8 = 29.6 \text{ kNm}^{-1}$$

Design moment (M) $= \dfrac{w\ell^2}{8} = \dfrac{29.6 \times 7^2}{8} = 181.3$ kNm

Ultimate moment of resistance (M_u) $= 0.156f_{cu}bd^2$

$$= 0.156 \times 30 \times 275 \times 450^2 \times 10^{-6} = 260.6 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 3.2 *continued*

Since $M_u > M$ design as a singly reinforced beam.

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{181.3 \times 10^6}{30 \times 275 \times 450^2} = 0.1085$$

$$\begin{aligned} z &= d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)} \\ &= 450[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.1085/0.9)}] \\ &= 386.8 \text{ mm} \le 0.95d \ (= 427.5 \text{ mm}) \quad \text{OK.} \end{aligned}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{181.3 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 386.8} = 1078 \text{ mm}^2$$

For detailing purposes this area of steel has to be transposed into a certain number of bars of a given diameter. This is usually achieved using steel area tables similar to that shown in *Table 3.10*. Thus it can be seen that four 20 mm diameter bars have a total cross-sectional area of 1260 mm^2 and would therefore be suitable. Hence provide 4H20. (N.B. H refers to high yield steel bars (f_y = 500 Nmm^{-2}); R refers to mild steel bars (f_y = 250 Nmm^{-2}).

Table 3.10 Cross-sectional areas of groups of bars (mm^2)

Bar size (mm)	*Number of bars*									
	1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*9*	*10*
6	28.3	56.6	84.9	113	142	170	198	226	255	283
8	50.3	101	151	201	252	302	352	402	453	503
10	78.5	157	236	314	393	471	550	628	707	785
12	113	226	339	452	566	679	792	905	1020	1130
16	201	402	603	804	1010	1210	1410	1610	1810	2010
20	314	628	943	1260	1570	1890	2200	2510	2830	3140
25	491	982	1470	1960	2450	2950	3440	3930	4420	4910
32	804	1610	2410	3220	4020	4830	5630	6430	7240	8040
40	1260	2510	3770	5030	6280	7540	8800	10100	11300	12600

3.9.1.2 Design charts

An alternative method of determining the area of tensile steel required in singly reinforced rectangular beams is by using the design charts given in Part 3 of BS 8110. These charts are based on the rectangular–parabolic stress distribution for concrete shown in *Fig. 3.16(d)* rather than the simplified rectangular distribution and should therefore provide a more economical estimate of the required area of steel reinforcement. However, BSI issued these charts when the preferred grade of reinforcement was 460, not 500, and use of these charts will therefore in fact overestimate the required tensile steel area by around 10 per cent.

A modified version of chart 2 which is appropriate for use with grade 500 reinforcement is shown *Fig. 3.20*.

The design procedure involves the following steps:

1. Check $M \le M_u$.
2. Select appropriate chart from Part 3 of BS 8110 based on the grade of tensile reinforcement.
3. Calculate M/bd^2.
4. Plot M/bd^2 ratio on chart and read off corresponding $100A_s/bd$ value using curve appropriate to grade of concrete selected for design.
5. Calculate A_s.

Using the figures given in Example 3.2,

$$M = 181.3 \text{ kNm} \le M_u = 260.6 \text{ kNm}$$

$$\frac{M}{bd^2} = \frac{181.3 \times 10^6}{275 \times 450^2} = 3.26$$

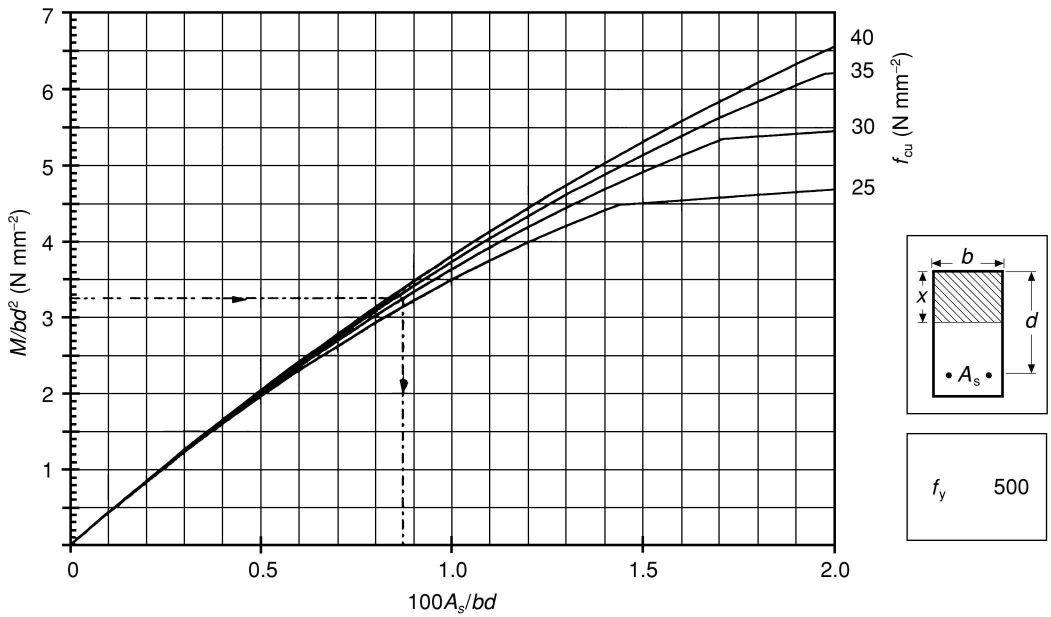


Fig. 3.20 *Design chart for singly reinforced beam (based on chart No. 2, BS 8110: Part 3).*

From *Fig. 3.20*, using the f_{cu} = 30 N/mm^2 curve

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = 0.87$$

Hence, A_s = 1076 mm^2

Therefore provide 4H20 (A_s = 1260 mm^2)

3.9.1.3 Shear (clause 3.4.5, BS 8110)

Another way in which failure of a beam may arise is due to its shear capacity being exceeded. Shear failure may arise in several ways, but the two principal failure mechanisms are shown in *Fig. 3.21*.

With reference to *Fig. 3.21(a)*, as the loading increases, an inclined crack rapidly develops between the edge of the support and the load point, resulting in splitting of the beam into two pieces. This is normally termed diagonal tension failure and can be prevented by providing shear reinforcement.

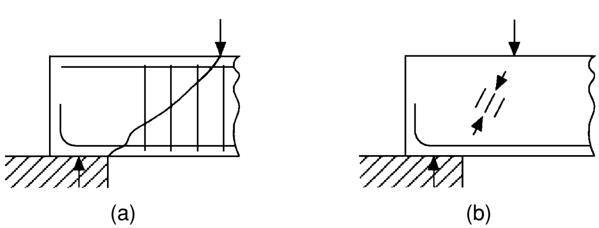


Fig. 3.21 *Types of shear failure: (a) diagonal tension; (b) diagonal compression.*

The second failure mode, termed diagonal compression failure (*Fig. 3.21(b)*), occurs under the action of large shear forces acting near the support, resulting in crushing of the concrete. This type of failure is avoided by limiting the maximum shear stress to 5 N/mm^2 or $0.8\sqrt{f_{cu}}$, whichever is the lesser.

The design shear stress, υ, at any cross-section can be calculated from:

$$\upsilon = V/bd \qquad (3.14)$$

where

V design shear force due to ultimate loads
b breadth of section
d effective depth of section

In order to determine whether shear reinforcement is required, it is necessary to calculate the shear resistance, or using BS 8110 terminology the design concrete shear stress, at critical sections along the beam. The design concrete shear stress, υ_c, is found to be composed of three major components, namely:

1. concrete in the compression zone;
2. aggregate interlock across the crack zone;
3. dowel action of the tension reinforcement.

The design concrete shear stress can be determined using *Table 3.11*. The values are in terms of the percentage area of longitudinal tension reinforcement ($100A_s/bd$) and effective depth of the

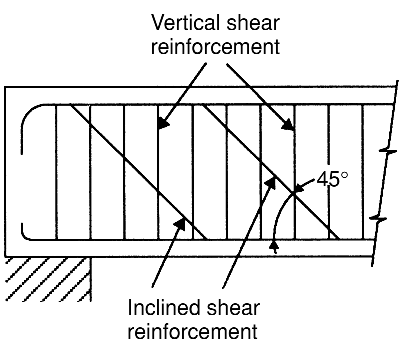
Table 3.11 Values of design concrete shear stress, υ_c (N/mm^2) for f_{cu} = 25 N/mm^2 concrete (Table 3.8, BS 8110)

$\frac{100A_s}{bd}$	*Effective depth (d) mm*							
	125	*150*	*175*	*200*	*225*	*250*	*300*	*≥ 400*
≤ 0.15	0.45	0.43	0.41	0.40	0.39	0.38	0.36	0.34
0.25	0.53	0.51	0.49	0.47	0.46	0.45	0.43	0.40
0.50	0.57	0.64	0.62	0.60	0.58	0.56	0.54	0.50
0.75	0.77	0.73	0.71	0.68	0.66	0.65	0.62	0.57
1.00	0.84	0.81	0.78	0.75	0.73	0.71	0.68	0.63
1.50	0.97	0.92	0.89	0.86	0.83	0.81	0.78	0.72
2.00	1.06	1.02	0.98	0.95	0.92	0.89	0.86	0.80
≥ 3.00	1.22	1.16	1.12	1.08	1.05	1.02	0.98	0.91

section (d). The table assumes that cube strength of concrete is 25 Nmm^{-2}. For other values of cube strength up to a maximum of 40 Nmm^{-2}, the design shear stresses can be determined by multiplying the values in the table by the factor $(f_{cu}/25)^{1/3}$.

Generally, where the design shear stress exceeds the design concrete shear stress, shear reinforcement will be needed. This is normally done by providing

1. vertical shear reinforcement commonly referred to as 'links'
2. a combination of vertical and inclined (or bent-up) bars as shown below.



Beam with vertical and inclined shear reinforcement.

The former is the most widely used method and will therefore be the only one discussed here. The following section derives the design equations for calculating the area and spacing of links.

(i) Shear resistance of links. Consider a reinforced concrete beam with links uniformly spaced at a distance s_v, under the action of a shear force V. The resulting failure plane is assumed to be inclined approximately 45° to the horizontal as shown in *Fig. 3.22*.

The number of links intersecting the potential crack is equal to d/s_v and it follows therefore that the shear resistance of these links, V_{link}, is given by

$$V_{link} = \text{number of links} \times \text{total cross-sectional area of links (Fig. 3.23)} \times \text{design stress}$$

$$= (d/s_v) \times A_{sv} \times 0.87f_{yv}$$

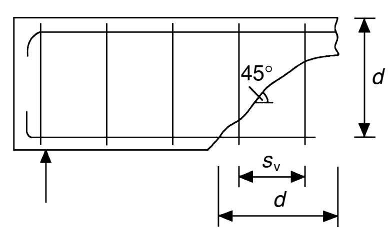


Fig. 3.22 *Shear resistance of links.*

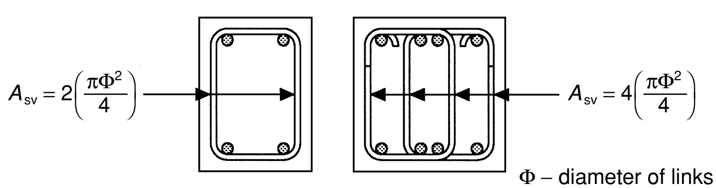


Fig. 3.23 *A_{sv} for varying shear reinforcement arrangements.*

The shear resistance of concrete, V_{conc}, can be calculated from

$$V_{conc} = \upsilon_c bd \quad \text{(using equation 3.14)}$$

The design shear force due to ultimate loads, V, must be less than the sum of the shear resistance of the concrete (V_{conc}) plus the shear resistance of the links (V_{link}), otherwise failure of the beam may arise. Hence

$$V \le V_{conc} + V_{link}$$
$$\le \upsilon_c bd + (d/s_v)A_{sv}0.87f_{yv}$$

Dividing both sides by bd gives

$$V/bd \le \upsilon_c + (1/bs_v)A_{sv}0.87f_{yv}$$

From equation 3.14

$$\upsilon \le \upsilon_c + (1/bs_v)A_{sv}0.87f_{yv}$$

$$\text{rearranging gives } \frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{b(\upsilon - \upsilon_c)}{0.87f_{yv}} \qquad (3.15)$$

Where $(\upsilon - \upsilon_c)$ is less than 0.4 N/mm² then links should be provided according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} \qquad (3.16)$$

Equations 3.15 and 3.16 provide a basis for calculating the minimum area and spacing of links. The details are discussed next.

(ii) Form, area and spacing of links. Shear reinforcement should be provided in beams according to the criteria given in *Table 3.12*.

Thus where the design shear stress is less than half the design concrete shear stress (i.e. $\upsilon < 0.5\upsilon_c$), no shear reinforcement will be necessary although, in practice, it is normal to provide nominal links in all beams of structural importance. Where $0.5\upsilon_c < \upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4)$ nominal links based on equation 3.16 should be provided. Where $\upsilon > \upsilon_c + 0.4$, design links based on equation 3.15 should be provided.

BS 8110 further recommends that the spacing of links in the direction of the span should not exceed 0.75d. This will ensure that at least one link crosses the potential crack.

Table 3.12 Form and area of links in beams (*Table 3.7*, BS 8110)

Values of υ (N/mm²)	*Area of shear reinforcement to be provided*
$\upsilon < 0.5\upsilon_c$ throughout the beam	No links required but normal practice to provide nominal links in members of structural importance
$0.5\upsilon_c < \upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4)$	Nominal (or minimum) links for whole length of beam $A_{sv} \ge \dfrac{0.4bs_v}{0.87f_{yv}}$
$(\upsilon_c + 0.4) < \upsilon < 0.8\sqrt{f_{cu}}$ or 5 N/mm²	Design links $A_{sv} \ge \dfrac{bs_v(\upsilon - \upsilon_c)}{0.87f_{yv}}$

Example 3.3 Design of shear reinforcement for a beam (BS 8110)

Design the shear reinforcement for the beam shown in *Fig. 3.24* using high yield steel (f_y = 500 Nmm^{-2}) links for the following load cases:

(i) $q_k = 0$
(ii) $q_k = 10$ kNm^{-1}
(iii) $q_k = 29$ kNm^{-1}
(iv) $q_k = 45$ kNm^{-1}

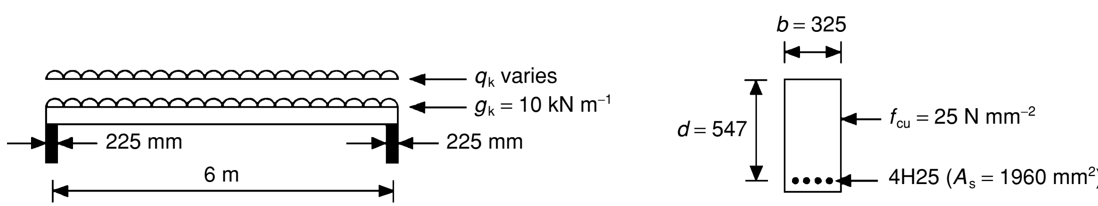


Fig. 3.24

Example 3.3 *continued*

DESIGN CONCRETE SHEAR STRESS, υ_c

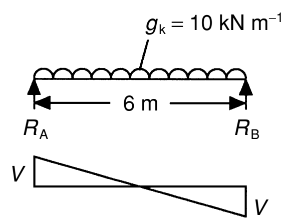
$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 1960}{325 \times 547} = 1.10$$

From *Table 3.11*, $\upsilon_c = 0.65$ Nmm^{-2} (see below)

$\frac{100A_s}{bd}$	*Effective depth* (mm)	
	300	*≥ 400*
	Nmm^{-2}	Nmm^{-2}
1.00	0.68	0.63
1.10		0.65
1.50	0.78	0.72

(I) $q_k = 0$

Design shear stress (υ)



Shear force diagram

Total ultimate load, W, is

$$W = (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)\text{span} = (1.4 \times 10 + 1.6 \times 0)6 = 84 \text{ kN}$$

Since beam is symmetrically loaded

$$R_A = R_B = W/2 = 42 \text{ kN}$$

Ultimate shear force (V) = 42 kN and design shear stress, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{42 \times 10^3}{325 \times 547} = 0.24 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Diameter and spacing of links

By inspection

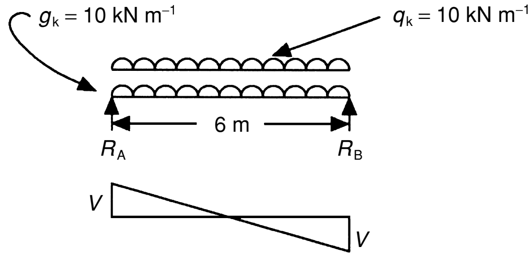
$$\upsilon < \upsilon_c/2$$

i.e. 0.24 Nmm^{-2} < 0.32 Nmm^{-2}. Hence from *Table 3.12*, shear reinforcement may not be necessary.

Example 3.3 *continued*

(II) $q_k = 10\ \text{kNm}^{-1}$

Design shear stress (υ)



Total ultimate load, W, is

$$W = (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)\text{span} = (1.4 \times 10 + 1.6 \times 10)6 = 180\ \text{kN}$$

Since beam is symmetrically loaded

$$R_A = R_B = W/2 = 90\ \text{kN}$$

Ultimate shear force (V) = 90 kN and design shear stress, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{90 \times 10^3}{325 \times 547} = 0.51\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

Diameter and spacing of links

By inspection

$$\upsilon_c/2 < \upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4)$$

i.e. 0.32 < 0.51< 1.05. Hence from *Table 3.12*, provide nominal links for whole length of beam according to

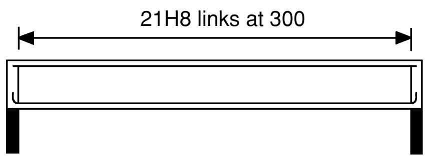
$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{0.4 \times 325}{0.87 \times 500}$$

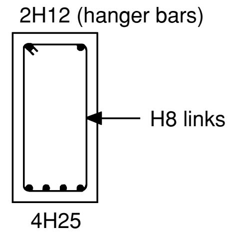
This value has to be translated into a certain bar size and spacing of links and is usually achieved using shear reinforcement tables similar to *Table 3.13*. The spacing of links should not exceed $0.75d = 0.75 \times 547 = 410$ mm. From *Table 3.13* it can be seen that 8 mm diameter links spaced at 300 mm centres provide a A_{sv}/s_v ratio of 0.335 and would therefore be suitable. Hence provide H8 links at 300 mm centres for whole length of beam.

Table 3.13 Values of A_{sv}/s_v

Diameter (mm)	*Spacing of links* (mm)										
	85	*90*	*100*	*125*	*150*	*175*	*200*	*225*	*250*	*275*	*300*
8	1.183	1.118	1.006	0.805	0.671	0.575	0.503	0.447	0.402	0.366	0.335
10	1.847	1.744	1.57	1.256	1.047	0.897	0.785	0.698	0.628	0.571	0.523
12	2.659	2.511	2.26	1.808	1.507	1.291	1.13	1.004	0.904	0.822	0.753
16	4.729	4.467	4.02	3.216	2.68	2.297	2.01	1.787	1.608	1.462	1.34

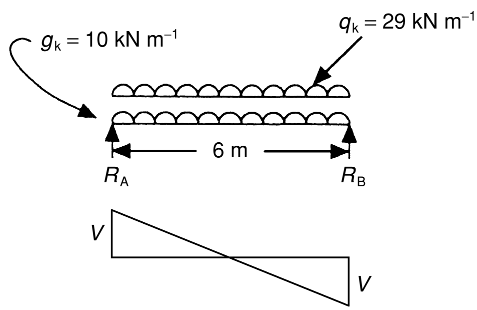
Example 3.3 *continued*





(III) $q_k = 29\ \text{kNm}^{-1}$

Design shear stress (v)



Total ultimate load, W, is

$$W = (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)\text{span} = (1.4 \times 10 + 1.6 \times 29)6 = 362.4 \text{ kN}$$

Since beam is symmetrically loaded

$$R_A = R_B = W/2 = 181.2 \text{ kN}$$

Ultimate shear force (V) = 181.2 kN and design shear stress, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{181.2 \times 10^3}{325 \times 547} = 1.02 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Diameter and spacing of links

By inspection

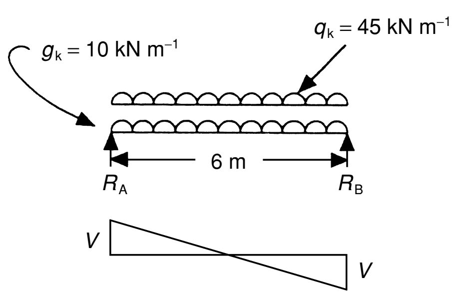
$$\upsilon_c/2 < \upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4)$$

i.e. 0.32 < 1.02 < 1.05. Hence from *Table 3.12*, provide nominal links for whole length of beam according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{0.4 \times 325}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.3$$

Therefore as in case (ii) ($q_k = 10\ \text{kNm}^{-1}$), provide H8 links at 300 mm centres.

(IV) $q_k = 45\ \text{kNm}^{-1}$



Example 3.3 *continued*

Design shear stress (v)

Total ultimate load, W, is

$$W = (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)\text{span} = (1.4 \times 10 + 1.6 \times 45)6 = 516 \text{ kN}$$

Since beam is symmetrically loaded

$$R_A = R_B = W/2 = 258 \text{ kN}$$

Ultimate shear force (V) = 258 kN and design shear stress, υ, is

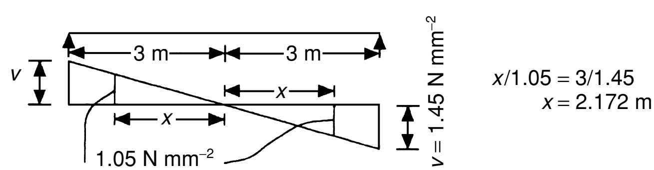
$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{258 \times 10^3}{325 \times 547} = 1.45 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < \text{permissible} = 0.8\sqrt{25} = 4 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Diameter and spacing of links

Where $\upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4) = 0.65 + 0.4 = 1.05 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$, nominal links are required according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{0.4 \times 325}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.3$$

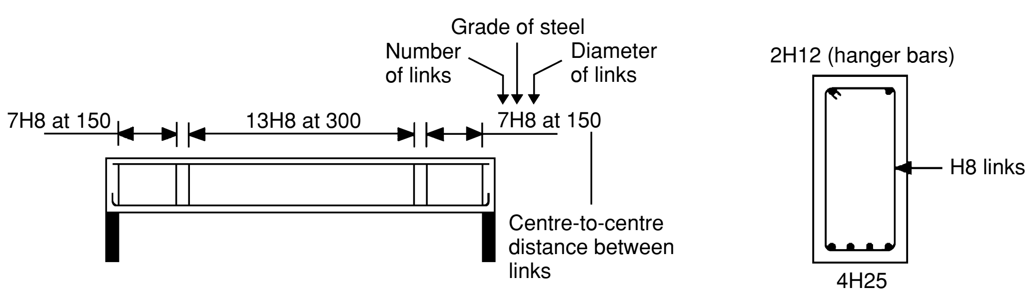
Hence, from *Table 3.13*, provide H8 links at 300 mm centres where $\upsilon < 1.05 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$, i.e. 2.172 m either side of the mid-span of beam.



Where $\upsilon > (\upsilon_c + 0.4) = 1.05 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$ design links required according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{b(\upsilon - \upsilon_c)}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{325(1.45 - 0.65)}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.598$$

Hence, from *Table 3.13*, provide H8 links at 150 mm centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.671$) where $v > 1.05 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$, i.e. 0.828 m in from both supports.



3.9.1.4 Deflection (clause 3.4.6, BS 8110)

In addition to checking that failure of the member does not arise due to the ultimate limit states of bending and shear, the designer must ensure that the deflections under working loads do not adversely affect either the efficiency or appearance of the structure. BS 8110 describes the following criteria for ensuring the proper performance of rectangular beams:

1. Final deflection should not exceed span/250.
2. Deflection after construction of finishes and partitions should not exceed span/500 or 20 mm, whichever is the lesser, for spans up to 10 m.

However, it is rather difficult to make accurate predictions of the deflections that may arise in concrete members principally because the member may be cracked under working loads and the degree of restraint at the supports is uncertain. Therefore, BS 8110 uses an approximate method based on permissible ratios of the span/effective depth. Before discussing this method in detail it is worth clarifying what is meant by the effective span of a beam.

(i) Effective span (clause 3.4.1.2, BS 8110)**.** All calculations relating to beam design should be based on the effective span of the beam. For a simply supported beam this should be taken as the lesser of (1) the distance between centres of bearings, A, or (2) the clear distance between supports, D, plus the effective depth, d, of the beam (*Fig. 3.25*). For a continuous beam the effective span should normally be taken as the distance between the centres of supports.

(ii) Span/effective depth ratio. Generally, the deflection criteria in (1) and (2) above will be satisfied provided that the span/effective depth ratio of the beam does not exceed the appropriate limiting values given in *Table 3.14*. The reader is referred to the Handbook to BS 8110 which outlines the basis of this approach.

The span/effective depth ratio given in the table apply to spans up to 10 m long. Where the span exceeds 10 m, these ratios should be multiplied by

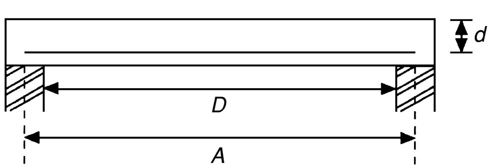


Fig. 3.25 *Effective span of simply supported beam.*

Table 3.14 Basic span/effective depth ratio for rectangular or flanged beams (Table 3.9, BS 8110)

Support conditions	*Rectangular sections*	*Flanged beams with* $\frac{\text{width of beam}}{\text{width of flange}} \le 0.3$
Cantilever	7	5.6
Simply supported	20	16.0
Continuous	26	20.8

Table 3.15 Modification factors for compression reinforcement (Table 3.11, BS 8110)

$\frac{100A'_{s,prov}}{bd}$	*Factor*
0.00	1.0
0.15	1.05
0.25	1.08
0.35	1.10
0.5	1.14
0.75	1.20
1	1.25
1.5	1.33
2.0	1.40
2.5	1.45
≥ 3.0	1.5

10/span (except for cantilevers). The basic ratios may be further modified by factors taken from *Tables 3.15* and *3.16*, depending upon the amount of compression and tension reinforcement respectively. Deflection is usually critical in the design of slabs rather than beams and, therefore, modifications factors will be discussed more fully in the context of slab design (*section 3.10*).

3.9.1.5 Member sizing

The dual concepts of span/effective depth ratio and maximum design concrete shear stress can be used not only to assess the performance of members with respect to deflection and shear but also for preliminary sizing of members. *Table 3.17* gives modified span/effective depth ratios for estimating the effective depth of a concrete beam provided that its span is known. The width of the beam can then be determined by limiting the maximum design concrete shear stress to around (say) 1.2 Nmm^{-2}.

Table 3.16 Modification factors for tension reinforcement (based on Table 3.10, BS 8110)

Service stress	*M/bd²*								
	0.50	*0.75*	*1.00*	*1.50*	*2.00*	*3.00*	*4.00*	*5.00*	*6.00*
100	2.00	2.00	2.00	1.86	1.63	1.36	1.19	1.08	1.01
150	2.00	2.00	1.98	1.69	1.49	1.25	1.11	1.01	0.94
(f_y = 250) 167	2.00	2.00	1.91	1.63	1.44	1.21	1.08	0.99	0.92
200	2.00	1.95	1.76	1.51	1.35	1.14	1.02	0.94	0.88
250	1.90	1.70	1.55	1.34	1.20	1.04	0.94	0.87	0.82
300	1.60	1.44	1.33	1.16	1.06	0.93	0.85	0.80	0.76
(f_y = 500) 323	1.41	1.28	1.18	1.05	0.96	0.86	0.79	0.75	0.72

Note 1. The values in the table derive from the equation:

$$\text{Modification factor} = 0.55 + \frac{(477 - f_s)}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{M}{bd^2}\right)} \leq 2.0 \quad \text{(equation 7)}$$

where
f_s is the design service stress in the tension reinforcement
M is the design ultimate moment at the centre of the span or, for a cantilever, at the support.
Note 2. The design service stress in the tension reinforcement may be estimated from the equation:

$$f_s = \frac{5^*}{8} \times \frac{f_y A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} \times \frac{1}{\beta_b} \quad \text{(equation 8)}$$

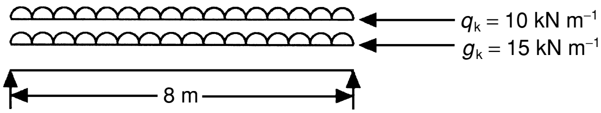
where β_b is the percentage of moment redistribution, equal to 1 for simply supported beams.
* As pointed out in Reynolds RC Designers Handbook the term 5/8 which is applicable to $\gamma_{ms} = 1.15$ is given incorrectly as 2/3 in BS 8110 which is applicable to $\gamma_{ms} = 1.05$.

Table 3.17 Span/effective depth ratios for initial design

Support condition	*Span/effective depth*
Cantilever	6
Simply supported	12
Continuous	15

Example 3.4 Sizing a concrete beam (BS 8110)

A simply supported beam has an effective span of 8 m and supports characteristic dead (g_k) and live (q_k) loads of 15 kNm^{-1} and 10 kNm^{-1} respectively. Determine suitable dimensions for the effective depth and width of the beam.



From *Table 3.17*, span/effective depth ratio for a simply supported beam is 12. Hence effective depth, d, is

$$d = \frac{span}{12} = \frac{8000}{12} \approx 670\,\text{mm}$$

Total ultimate load = $(1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)$span = $(1.4 \times 15 + 1.6 \times 10)8 = 296$ kN
Design shear force (V) = 296/2 = 148 kN and design shear force, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{148 \times 10^3}{670b}$$

Assuming υ is equal to 1.2 Nmm^{-2}, this gives a beam width, b, of

$$b = \frac{V}{d\upsilon} = \frac{148 \times 10^3}{670 \times 1.2} = 185 \text{ mm}$$

Hence a beam of width 185 mm and effective depth 670 mm would be suitable to support the given design loads.

3.9.1.6 Reinforcement details (clause 3.12, BS 8110)

The previous sections have covered much of the theory required to design singly reinforced concrete beams. However, there are a number of code provisions with regard to:

1. maximum and minimum reinforcement areas
2. spacing of reinforcement
3. curtailment and anchorage of reinforcement
4. lapping of reinforcement.

These need to be taken into account since they may affect the final design.

1. Reinforcement areas (clause 3.12.5.3 and 3.12.6.1, BS 8110). As pointed out in section 3.8, there is a need to control cracking of the concrete because of durability and aesthetics. This is usually achieved by providing minimum areas of reinforcement in the member. However, too large an area of reinforcement should also be avoided since it will hinder proper placing and adequate compaction of the concrete around the reinforcement.

For rectangular beams with overall dimensions b and h, the area of tension reinforcement, A_s, should lie within the following limits:

$$0.24\%bh \le A_s \le 4\%bh \quad \text{when } f_y = 250 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$0.13\%bh \le A_s \le 4\%bh \quad \text{when } f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

2. Spacing of reinforcement (clause 3.12.11.1, BS 8110). BS 8110 specifies minimum and maximum distances between tension reinforcement. The actual limits vary, depending upon the grade of reinforcement. The minimum distance is based on the need to achieve good compaction of the concrete around the reinforcement. The limits on the maximum distance between bars arise from the need to ensure that the maximum crack width does not exceed 0.3 mm in order to prevent corrosion of embedded bars (*section 3.8*).

For singly reinforced simply supported beams the clear horizontal distance between tension bars, s_b, should lie within the following limits:

$$h_{agg} + 5 \text{ mm or bar size} \le s_b \le 280 \text{ mm} \quad \text{when } f_y = 250 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$h_{agg} + 5 \text{ mm or bar size} \le s_b \le 155 \text{ mm} \quad \text{when } f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

where h_{agg} is the maximum size of the coarse aggregate.

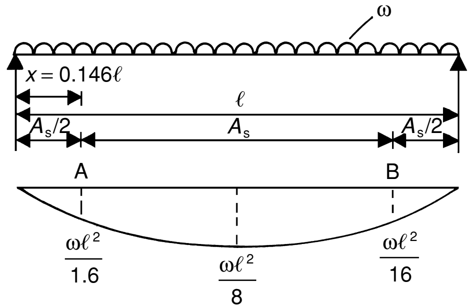


Fig. 3.26

3. Curtailment and anchorage of bars (clause 3.12.9, BS 8110). The design process for simply supported beams, in particular the calculations relating to the design moment and area of bending reinforcement, is concentrated at mid-span. However, the bending moment decreases either side of the mid-span and it follows, therefore, that it should be possible to reduce the corresponding area of bending reinforcement by curtailing bars. For the beam shown in *Fig. 3.26*, theoretically 50 per cent of the main steel can be curtailed at points A and B. However, in order to develop the design stress in the reinforcement (i.e. $0.87f_y$ at mid-span), these bars must be anchored into the concrete. Except at end supports, this is normally achieved by extending the bars beyond the point at which they are theoretically no longer required, by a distance equal to the greater of (i) the effective depth of the member and (ii) 12 times the bar size.

Where a bar is stopped off in the tension zone, e.g. beam shown in *Fig. 3.26*, this distance should be increased to the full anchorage bond length in accordance with the values given in *Table 3.18*. However, simplified rules for the curtailment of bars are given in clause 3.12.10.2 of BS 8110. These are shown diagrammatically in *Fig. 3.27* for simply supported and continuous beams.

The code also gives rules for the anchorage of bars at supports. Thus, at a simply supported end each tension bar will be properly anchored provided the bar extends a length equal to one of the following: (a) 12 times the bar size beyond the centre line of the support, or (b) 12 times the bar size plus $d/2$ from the face of the support (*Fig. 3.28*).

Sometimes it is not possible to use straight bars due to limitations of space and, in this case, anchorage must be provided by using hooks or bends in the reinforcement. The anchorage values of hooks and bends are shown in *Fig. 3.29*. Where hooks or bends are provided, BS 8110 states that they should

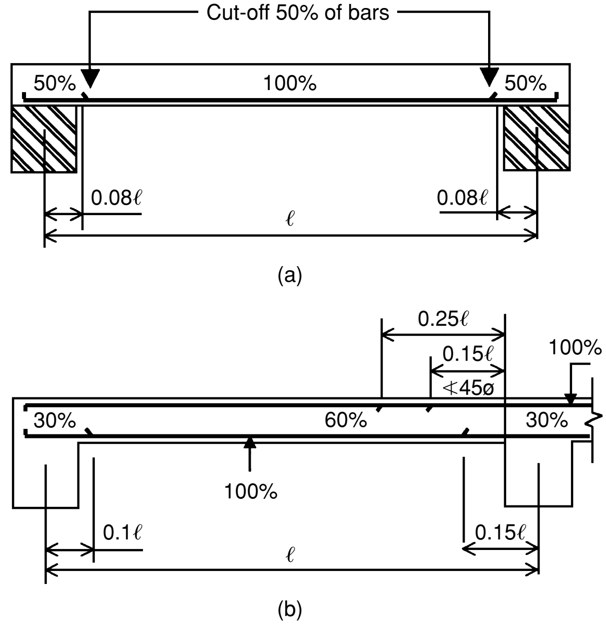


Fig. 3.27 *Simplified rules for curtailment of bars in beams: (a) simply supported ends; (b) continuous beam.*

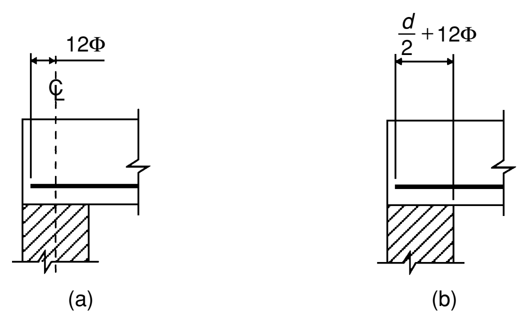


Fig. 3.28 *Anchorage requirements at simple supports.*

not begin before the centre of the support for rule (a) or before $d/2$ from the face of the support for rule (b).

4. Laps in reinforcement (clause 3.12.8, BS 8110). It is not possible nor, indeed, practicable to construct the reinforcement cage for an individual element or structure without joining some of the bars. This is normally achieved by lapping bars (*Fig. 3.30*). Bars which have been joined in this way must act as a single length of bar. This means that the lap length should be sufficiently long in order that stresses in one bar can be transferred to the other.

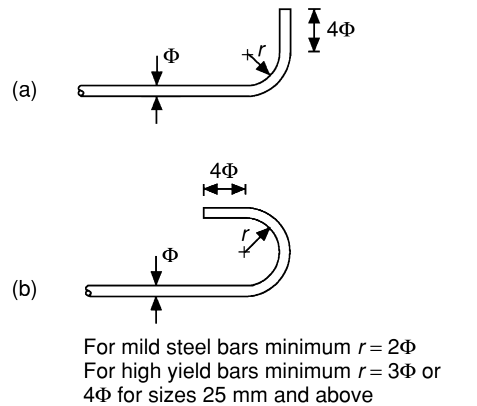


Fig. 3.29 *Anchorage lengths for hooks and bends (a) anchorage length for 90° bend = 4r but not greater than 12ϕ; (b) anchorage length for hook = 8r but not greater than 24ϕ.*

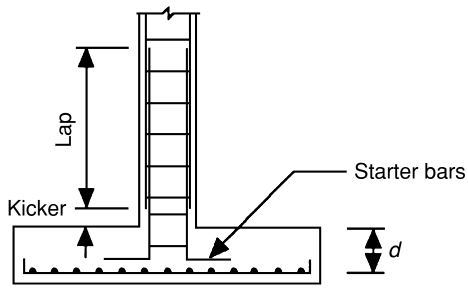


Fig. 3.30 *Lap lengths.*

The minimum lap length should not be less than 15 times the bar diameter or 300 mm. For **tension laps** it should normally be equal to the tension anchorage length, but will often need to be increased as outlined in clause 3.12.8.13 of BS 8110. The anchorage length (L) is calculated using

Table 3.18 Anchorage lengths as multiples of bar size (based on Table 3.27, BS 8110)

	L_A			
	$f_{cu} = 25$	*30*	*35*	*40 or more*
Plain (250)				
Tension	43	39	36	34
Compression	34	32	29	27
Deformed Type 1 (500)				
Tension	55	50	47	44
Compression	44	40	38	35
Deformed Type 2 (500)				
Tension	44	40	38	35
Compression	35	32	30	28

$$L = L_A \times \Phi \qquad (3.17)$$

where

Φ is the diameter of the (smaller) bar

L_A is obtained from *Table 3.18* and depends upon the stress type, grade of concrete and reinforcement type.

For **compression laps** the lap length should be at least 1.25 times the compression anchorage length.

Example 3.5 Design of a simply supported concrete beam (BS 8110)

A reinforced concrete beam which is 300 mm wide and 600 mm deep is required to span 6.0 m between the centres of supporting piers 300 mm wide (*Fig. 3.31*). The beam carries dead and imposed loads of 25 kNm^{-1} and 19 kNm^{-1} respectively. Assuming $f_{cu} = 30$ Nmm^{-2}, $f_y = f_{yv} = 500$ Nmm^{-2} and the exposure class is XC1, design the beam.

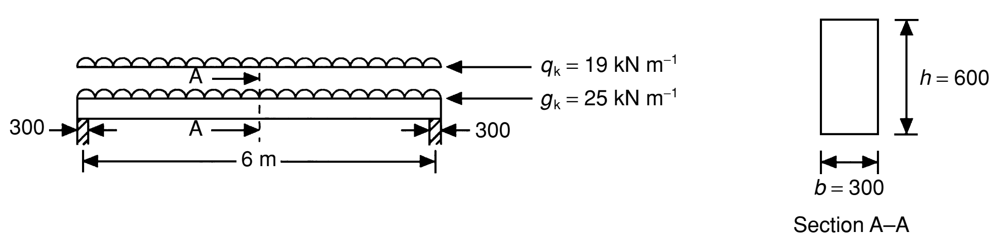


Fig. 3.31

Example 3.5 *continued*

DESIGN MOMENT, M

Loading

Dead

Self weight of beam = $0.6 \times 0.3 \times 24 = 4.32$ kNm^{-1}

Total dead load (g_k) = $25 + 4.32 = 29.32$ kNm^{-1}

Imposed

Total imposed load (q_k) = 19 kNm^{-1}

Ultimate load

Total ultimate load (W) = $(1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)$span

$= (1.4 \times 29.32 + 1.6 \times 19)6$

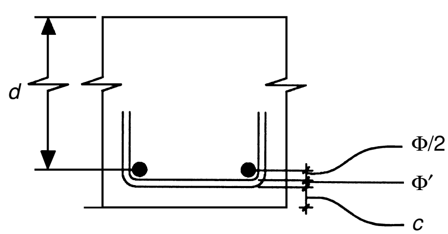
$= 428.7$ kN

Design moment

Maximum design moment (M) = $\dfrac{W\ell}{8} = \dfrac{428.7 \times 6}{8} = 321.5$ kN m

ULTIMATE MOMENT OF RESISTANCE, M_U

Effective depth, *d*



Assume diameter of main bars (Φ) = 25 mm
Assume diameter of links (Φ') = 8 mm
From *Table 3.6*, cover for exposure class XC1 = 15 + Δc = 25 mm.

$$d = h - c - \Phi' - \Phi/2$$

$$= 600 - 25 - 8 - 25/2 = 554 \text{ mm}$$

Ultimate moment

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} bd^2 = 0.156 \times 30 \times 300 \times 554^2$$

$$= 430.9 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 430.9 \text{ kNm} > M$$

Since $M_u > M$ no compression reinforcement is required.

Example 3.5 *continued*

MAIN STEEL, A_s

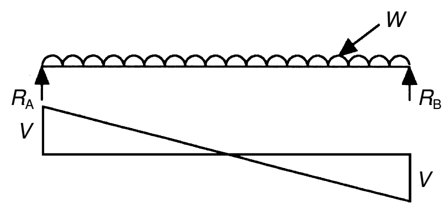
$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{321.5 \times 10^6}{30 \times 300 \times 554^2} = 0.116$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}] = 554[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.116/0.9)}] = 470 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{321.5 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 470} = 1573 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.10*, provide 4H25 (A_s = 1960 mm^2).

SHEAR REINFORCEMENT



Ultimate design load, W = 428.7 kN

Shear stress, υ

Since beam is symmetrically loaded

$$R_A = R_B = W/2 = 214.4 \text{ kN}$$

Ultimate shear force (V) = 214.4 kN and design shear stress, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{214.4 \times 10^3}{300 \times 554} = 1.29 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < \text{permissible} = 0.8\sqrt{30} = 4.38 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Design concrete shear stress, υ_c

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 1960}{300 \times 554} = 1.18$$

From *Table 3.11*,

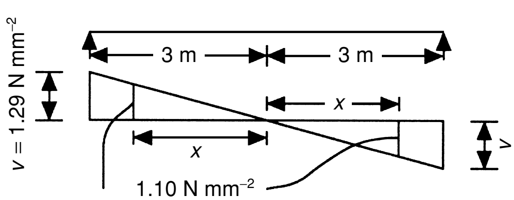
$$\upsilon_c = (30/25)^{1/3} \times 0.66 = 0.70 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Diameter and spacing of links

Where $\upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4) = 0.7 + 0.4 = 1.1$ Nmm^{-2}, nominal links are required according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{0.4 \times 300}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.276$$

Hence from *Table 3.13*, provide H8 links at 300 mm centres where $\upsilon < 1.10$ Nmm^{-2}, i.e. 2.558 m either side of the mid-span of beam.



$$\frac{x}{1.10} = \frac{3}{1.29} = 2.558 \text{ m}$$

Example 3.5 *continued*

Where $\upsilon > (\upsilon_c + 0.4) = 1.10\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$ design links required according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{b(\upsilon - \upsilon_c)}{0.87 f_{yv}} = \frac{300(1.29 - 0.70)}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.407$$

Maximum spacing of links is $0.75d = 0.75 \times 554 = 416$ mm. Hence from *Table 3.13*, provide 8 mm diameter links at 225 mm centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.447$) where $v > 1.10\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$, i.e. 0.442 m in from both supports.

EFFECTIVE SPAN

The above calculations were based on an effective span of 6 m, but this needs to be confirmed. As stated in section 3.9.1.4, the effective span is the lesser of (1) centre-to-centre distance between support, i.e. 6 m, and (2) clear distance between supports plus the effective depth, i.e. 5700 + 554 = 6254 mm. Therefore assumed span length of 6 m is correct.

DEFLECTION

Actual span/effective depth ratio = 6000/554 = 10.8

$$\frac{M}{bd^2} = \frac{321.5 \times 10^6}{300 \times 554^2} = 3.5$$

and from equation 8 (*Table 3.16*)

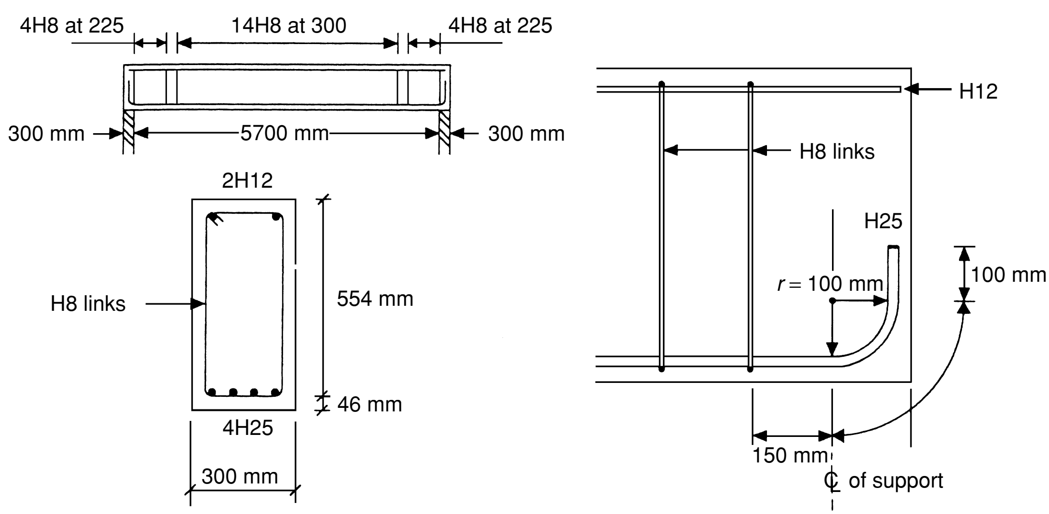
$$f_s = \frac{5}{8} \times f_y \times \frac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{1573}{1960} = 251\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

From *Table 3.14*, basic span/effective depth ratio for a simply supported beam is 20 and from *Table 3.16*, modification factor ≈ 0.97. Hence permissible span/effective depth ratio = 20 × 0.97 = 19 > actual (= 10.8) and the beam therefore satisfies the deflection criteria in BS 8110.

REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

The sketch below shows the main reinforcement requirements for the beam. For reasons of buildability, the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different and the reader is referred to the following publications for further information on this point:

1. *Designed and Detailed* (BS 8110: 1997), Higgins, J.B. and Rogers, B.R., British Cement Association, 1989.
2. *Standard Method of Detailing Structural Concrete*, the Concrete Society and the Institution of Structural Engineers, London, 1989.



Example 3.6 Analysis of a singly reinforced concrete beam (BS 8110)

A singly reinforced concrete beam in which f_{cu} = 30 Nmm^{-2} and f_y = 500 Nmm^{-2} contains 1960 mm^2 of tension reinforcement (*Fig. 3.32*). If the effective span is 7 m and the density of reinforced concrete is 24 kNm^{-3}, calculate the maximum imposed load that the beam can carry assuming that the load is (a) uniformly distributed and (b) occurs as a point load at mid-span.

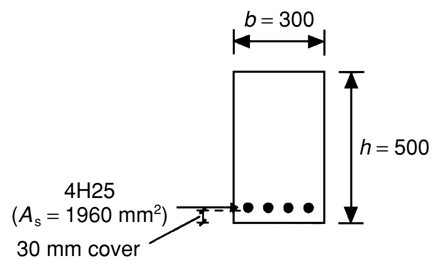
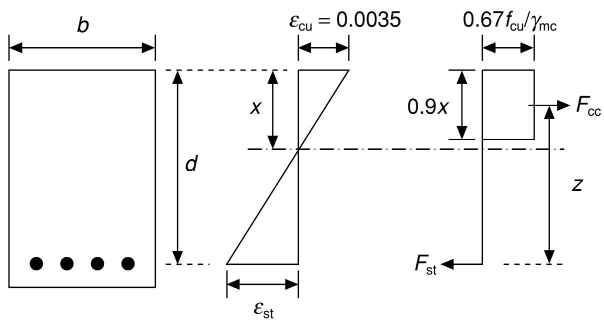
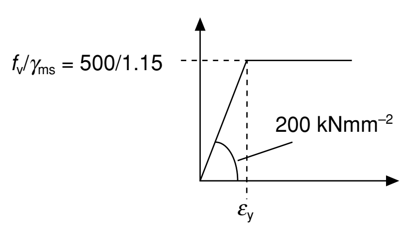


Fig. 3.32

(A) MAXIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED IMPOSED LOAD, q_k

Moment capacity of section, *M*





Effective depth, *d*, is

$$d = h - \text{cover} - \phi/2 = 500 - 30 - 25/2 = 457 \text{ mm}$$

For equilibrium

$$F_{cc} = F_{st}$$

$$\frac{0.67f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}}0.9xb = 0.87f_yA_s \quad \text{(assuming the steel has yielded)}$$

$$\frac{0.67 \times 30}{1.5}0.9 \times x \times 300 = 0.87 \times 500 \times 1960 \quad \Rightarrow x = 236 \text{ mm}$$

Example 3.6 *continued*

From similar triangles

$$\frac{\varepsilon_{cc}}{x} = \frac{\varepsilon_{st}}{d - x}$$

$$\frac{0.0035}{236} = \frac{\varepsilon_{st}}{457 - 236} \quad \Rightarrow \varepsilon_{st} = 0.0033$$

$$\varepsilon_y = \frac{f_y/\gamma_{ms}}{E_s} = \frac{500/1.15}{200 \times 10^6} = 0.00217 < \varepsilon_{st}$$

Therefore the steel has yielded and the steel stress is $0.87f_y$ as assumed.

Lever arm, z, is

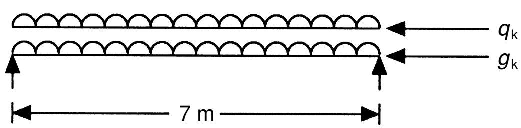
$$z = d - 0.45x = 457 - 0.45 \times 236 = 351 \text{ mm}$$

Moment capacity, M, is

$$M = \frac{0.67f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}} 0.9xbz$$

$$M = \left(\frac{0.67 \times 30}{1.5}\right) 0.9 \times 236 \times 300 \times 351 \times 10^{-6} = 299.7 \text{ kNm}$$

Maximum uniformly distributed imposed load, q_k



Dead load

Self weight of beam (g_k) = $0.5 \times 0.3 \times 24 = 3.6$ kNm^{-1}

Ultimate load

Total ultimate load (W) = $(1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)$span

$= (1.4 \times 3.6 + 1.6q_k)7$

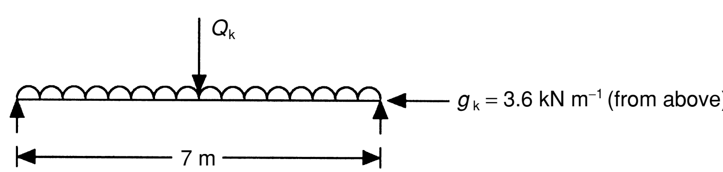
Imposed load

$$\text{Maximum design moment } (M) = \frac{W\ell}{8} = \frac{(5.04 + 1.6q_k)7^2}{8} = 299.7 \text{ kNm} \quad \text{(from above)}$$

Hence the maximum uniformly distributed imposed load the beam can support is

$$q_k = \frac{(299.7 \times 8)/7^2 - 5.04}{1.6} = 27.4 \text{ kNm}^{-1}$$

(B) MAXIMUM POINT LOAD AT MID-SPAN, Q_k



Example 3.6 *continued*

Loading

Ultimate load
Ultimate dead load (W_D) = $1.4g_k \times$ span = $1.4 \times 3.6 \times 7 = 35.3$ kN
Ultimate imposed load (W_I) = $1.6Q_k$

Imposed load
Maximum design moment, M, is

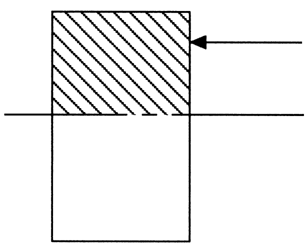
$$M = \frac{W_D \ell}{8} + \frac{W_I \ell}{4} \quad \text{(Example 2.5, beam B1–B3)} \quad = \frac{35.3 \times 7}{8} + \frac{1.6Q_k \times 7}{4} = 299.7 \text{ kNm} \quad \text{(from above)}$$

Hence the maximum point load which the beam can support at mid-span is

$$Q_k = \frac{(299.7 - 35.3 \times 7/8)4}{1.6 \times 7} = 96 \text{ kN}$$

3.9.2 DOUBLY REINFORCED BEAM DESIGN

If the design moment is greater than the ultimate moment of resistance, i.e. $M > M_u$, or $K > K'$ where $K = M/f_{cu}bd^2$ and $K' = M_u/f_{cu}bd^2$ the concrete will have insufficient strength in compression to generate this moment and maintain an under-reinforced mode of failure.



The required compressive strength can be achieved by increasing the proportions of the beam, particularly its overall depth. However, this may not always be possible due to limitations on the headroom in the structure, and in such cases it will be necessary to provide reinforcement in the compression face. The compression reinforcement will be designed to resist the moment in excess of M_u. This will ensure that the compressive stress in the concrete does not exceed the permissible value and ensure an under-reinforced failure mode.

Beams which contain tension and compression reinforcement are termed doubly reinforced. They are generally designed in the same way as singly reinforced beams except in respect of the calculations needed to determine the areas of tension and compression reinforcement. This aspect is discussed below.

3.9.2.1 Compression and tensile steel areas (clause 3.4.4.4, BS 8110)

The area of compression steel (A'_s) is calculated from

$$A'_s = \frac{M - M_u}{0.87f_y(d - d')} \tag{3.18}$$

where d' is the depth of the compression steel from the compression face (*Fig. 3.33*).

The area of tension reinforcement is calculated from

$$A_s = \frac{M_u}{0.87f_y z} + A'_s \tag{3.19}$$

where $z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K'/0.9)}]$ and $K' = 0.156$.

Equations 3.18 and 3.19 can be derived using the stress block shown in *Fig. 3.33*. This is basically the same stress block used in the analysis of a singly reinforced section (*Fig. 3.17*) except for the additional compression force (F_{sc}) in the steel.

In the derivation of equations 3.18 and 3.19 it is assumed that the compression steel has yielded (i.e. design stress = $0.87f_y$) and this condition will be met only if

$$\frac{d'}{x} \le 0.37 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{d'}{d} \le 0.19 \quad \text{where } x = \frac{d - z}{0.45}$$

If $d'/x > 0.37$, the compression steel will not have yielded and, therefore, the compressive stress will be less than $0.87f_y$. In such cases, the design stress can be obtained using *Fig. 3.9*.

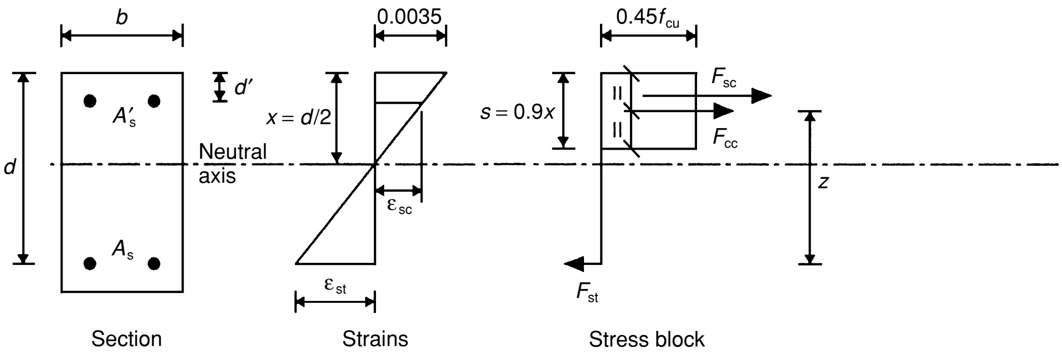


Fig. 3.33 *Section with compression reinforcement.*

Example 3.7 Design of bending reinforcement for a doubly reinforced beam (BS 8110)

The reinforced concrete beam shown in *Fig. 3.34* has an effective span of 9 m and carries uniformly distributed dead (including self weight of beam) and imposed loads of 4 and 5 kNm^{-1} respectively. Design the bending reinforcement assuming the following:

$$f_{cu} = 30 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Cover to *main* steel = 40 mm

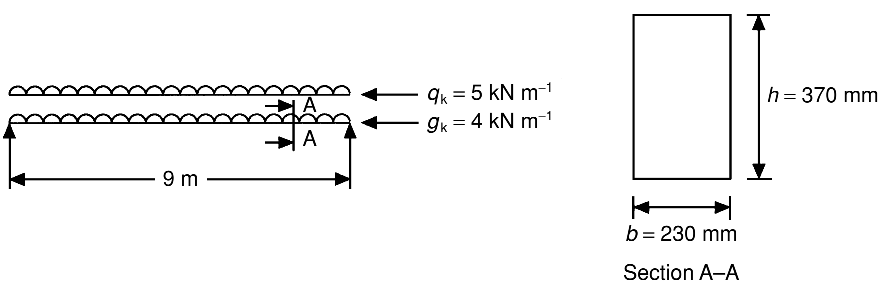


Fig. 3.34

DESIGN MOMENT, *M*

Loading

Ultimate load

Total ultimate load (W) = $(1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)$span

$= (1.4 \times 4 + 1.6 \times 5)9 = 122.4$ kN

Design moment

Maximum design moment $(M) = \dfrac{W\ell}{8} = \dfrac{122.4 \times 9}{8} = 137.7$ kNm

Example 3.7 *continued*

ULTIMATE MOMENT OF RESISTANCE, M_u

Effective depth, *d*
Assume diameter of tension bars (Φ) = 25 mm:

$$d = h - \Phi/2 - \text{cover}$$
$$= 370 - 25/2 - 40 = 317 \text{ mm}$$

Ultimate moment

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} bd^2$$
$$= 0.156 \times 30 \times 230 \times 317^2$$
$$= 108.2 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 108.2 \text{ kNm}$$

Since $M > M_u$ compression reinforcement is required.

COMPRESSION REINFORCEMENT

Assume diameter of compression bars (ϕ) = 16 mm. Hence

$$d' = \text{cover} + \phi/2 = 40 + 16/2 = 48 \text{ mm}$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K'/0.9)}] = 317[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.156/0.9)}] = 246 \text{ mm}$$

$$x = \frac{d - z}{0.45} = \frac{317 - 246}{0.45} = 158 \text{ mm}$$

$$\frac{d'}{x} = \frac{48}{158} = 0.3 < 0.37, \text{ i.e. compression steel has yielded.}$$

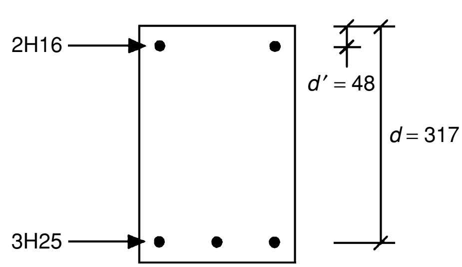
$$A'_s = \frac{M - M_u}{0.87 f_y (d - d')} = \frac{(137.7 - 108.2)10^6}{0.87 \times 500(317 - 48)} = 252 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.10*, provide 2H16 (A'_s = 402 mm^2)

(III) TENSION REINFORCEMENT

$$A_s = \frac{M_u}{0.87 f_y z} + A'_s = \frac{108.2 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 246} + 252 = 1263 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence provide 3H25 (A_s = 1470 mm^2).



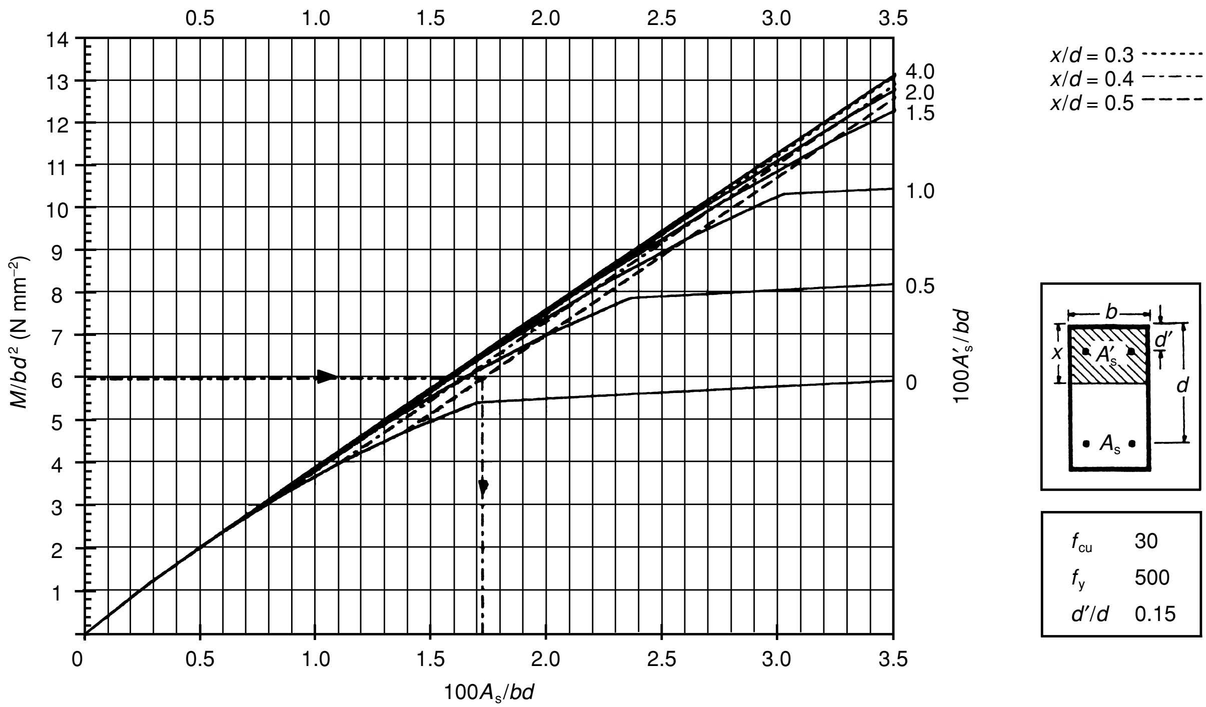


Fig. 3.35 *Design chart for doubly reinforced beams (based on chart 7, BS 8110: Part 3).*

3.9.2.2 Design charts

Rather than solving equations 3.18 and 3.19 it is possible to determine the area of tension and compression reinforcement simply by using the design charts for doubly reinforced beams given in Part 3 of BS 8110. Such charts are available for design involving the use of concrete grades 25, 30, 35, 40, 45 and 50 and d'/d ratios of 0.1, 0.15 and 0.2. Unfortunately, as previously mentioned, BSI issued these charts when grade 460 steel was the norm rather than grade 500 and, therefore, use of these charts will overestimate the steel areas by around 10 per cent. *Fig. 3.35* presents a modified version of chart 7 for grade 500 reinforcement.

The design procedure involves the following steps:

1. Check $M_u < M$.
2. Calculate d'/d.
3. Select appropriate chart from Part 3 of BS 8110 based on grade of concrete and d'/d ratio.
4. Calculate M/bd^2.
5. Plot M/bd^2 ratio on chart and read off corresponding $100A'_s/bd$ and $100A_s/bd$ values (*Fig. 3.35*)
6. Calculate A'_s and A_s.

Using the figures given in Example 3.7, M_u = 108.2 kNm < M = 137.7 kNm

Since d'/d (= 48/317) = 0.15 and f_{cu} = 30 N/mm², chart 7 is appropriate. Furthermore, since the beam is simply supported, no redistribution of moments is possible, therefore, use x/d = 0.5 construction line in order to determine areas of reinforcement.

$$\frac{M}{bd^2} = \frac{137.7 \times 10^6}{230 \times 317^2} = 5.95$$

$$100A'_s/bd = 0.33 \Rightarrow A'_s = 243 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$100A_s/bd = 1.72 \Rightarrow A_s = 1254 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.10*, provide 2H16 compression steel and 3H25 tension steel.

3.9.3 CONTINUOUS, *L* AND *T* BEAMS

In most real situations, the beams in buildings are seldom single span but continuous over the supports, e.g. beams 1, 2, 3 and 4 in *Fig. 3.36(a)*. The design process for such beams is similar to that outlined above for single span beams. However, the main difference arises from the fact that with continuous beams the designer will need to consider the various loading arrangements discussed in section 3.6.2 in order to determine the design

Table 3.19 Design ultimate moments and shear forces for continuous beams (Table 3.5, BS 8110)

	End support	*End span*	*Penultimate support*	*Interior span*	*Interior support*
Moment	0	$0.09F\ell$	$-0.11F\ell$	$0.07F\ell$	$-0.08F\ell$
Shear	0.45F	–	0.6F	–	0.55F

$F = 1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k$; ℓ = effective span

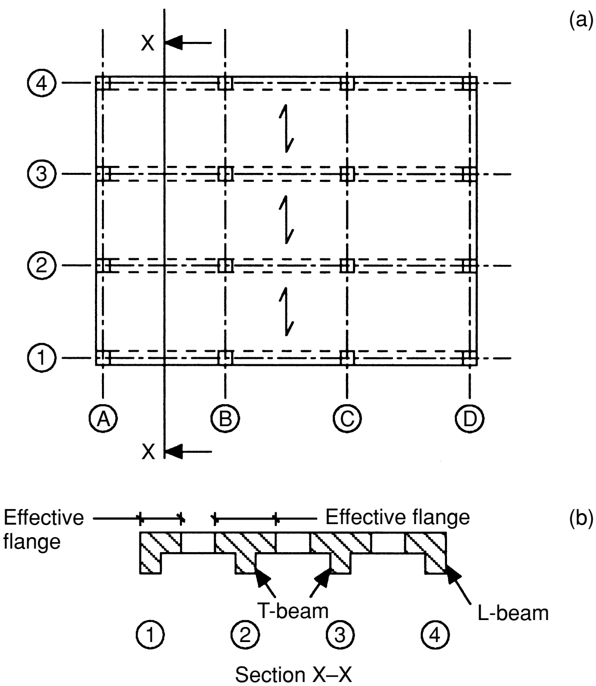


Fig. 3.36 *Floor slab: (a) plan (b) cross-section.*

moments and shear forces in the beam. The analysis to calculate the bending moments and shear forces can be carried out by moment distribution as discussed in section 3.9.3.1 or, provided the conditions in clause 3.4.3 of BS 8110 are satisfied (see Example 3.10), by using the coefficients given in *Table 3.5* of BS 8110, reproduced as *Table 3.19*. Once this has been done, the beam can be sized and the area of bending reinforcement calculated as discussed in section 3.9.1 or 3.9.2. At the internal supports, the bending moment is reversed and it should be remembered that the tensile reinforcement will occur in the top half of the beam and compression reinforcement in the bottom half of the beam.

Generally, beams and slabs are cast monolithically, that is, they are structurally tied. At mid-span, it is more economical in such cases to design the beam as an *L* or *T* section by including the adjacent areas of the slab (*Fig. 3.36(b)*). The actual width of slab that acts together with the beam is normally termed the effective flange. According to clause 3.4.1.5 of BS 8110, the effective flange width should be taken as the lesser of (a) the actual flange width and (b) the web width plus $\ell_z/5$ (for T-beams) or $\ell_z/10$ (for L-beams), where ℓ_z is the distance between points of zero moments which for a continuous beam may be taken as 0.7 times the distance between the centres of supports.

The depth of the neutral axis in relation to the depth of flange will influence the design process and must therefore be determined. The depth of the neutral axis, x, can be calculated using equation 3.9 derived in section 3.9.1, i.e.

$$x = \frac{d - z}{0.45}$$

Where the neutral axis lies within the flange, which will normally be the case in practice, the beam can be designed as being singly reinforced taking the breadth of the beam, b, equal to the effective flange width. At the supports of a continuous member, e.g. at columns *B*2, *B*3, *C*2 and *C*3, due to the moment reversal, b should be taken as the actual width of the beam.

3.9.3.1 Analysis of continuous beams

Continuous beams (and continuous slabs that span in one direction) are not statically determinate and more advanced analytical techniques must be used to obtain the bending moments and shear forces in the member. A straightforward method of calculating the moments at the supports of continuous members and hence the bending moments and shear forces in the span is by moment distribution. Essentially the moment-distribution method involves the following steps:

1. Calculate the fixed end moments (FEM) in each span using the formulae given in *Table 3.20* and elsewhere. Note that clockwise moments are conventionally positive and anticlockwise moments are negative.

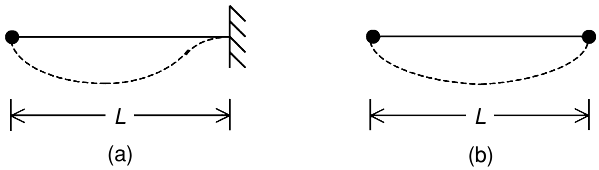
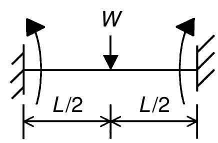
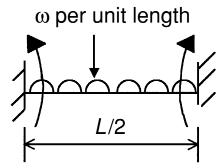


Fig. 3.37 Stiffness factors for uniform beams: (a) pinned-fixed beam = 4EI/L; (b) pinned-pinned beam = 3EI/L.

2. Determine the stiffness factor for each span. The stiffness factor is the moment required to produce unit rotation at the end of the member. A uniform member (i.e. constant EI) of length L that is pinned at one end and fixed at the other (*Fig. 3.37(a)*) has a stiffness factor of 4EI/L. If the member is pinned at both ends its stiffness factor reduces to (3/4)4EI/L (*Fig. 3.37(b)*).
3. Evaluate distribution factors for each member meeting at a joint. The factors indicate what proportion of the moment applied to a joint is distributed to each member attached to it in order to maintain continuity of slope. Distribution factors are simply ratios of the stiffnesses of individual members and the sum of the stiffnesses of all the members meeting at a joint. As such, the distribution factors at any joint should sum to unity.
4. Release each joint in turn and distribute the out-of-balance moments between the members meeting at the joint in proportion to their distribution factors. The out-of-balance moment is equal in magnitude but opposite in sense to the sum of the moments in the members meeting at a joint.

Table 3.20 Fixed end moments for uniform beams

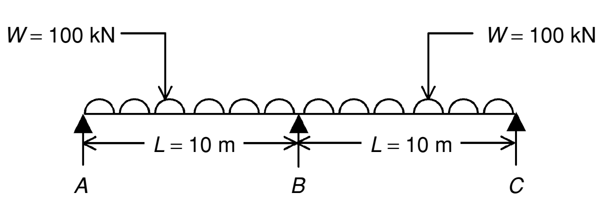
	M_{AB}	M_{BA}
	$-\frac{WL}{8}$	$\frac{WL}{8}$
	$-\frac{\omega L^2}{12}$	$\frac{\omega L^2}{12}$

5. Determine the moment developed at the far end of each member via the carry-over factor. If the far end of the member is fixed, the carry over factor is half and a moment of one-half of the applied moment will develop at the fixed end. If the far end is pinned, the carry over factor is zero and no moment is developed at the far end.
6. Repeat steps (4) and (5) until all the out of balance moments are negligible.
7. Determine the end moments for each span by summing the moments at each joint.

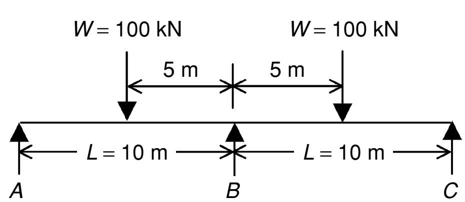
Once the end moments have been determined, it is a simple matter to calculate the bending moments and shear forces in individual spans using statics as discussed in Chapter 2.

Example 3.8 Analysis of a two-span continuous beam using moment distribution

Evaluate the critical moments and shear forces in the beams shown below assuming that they are of constant section and the supports provide no restraint to rotation.



Load case *A*



Load case *B*

Example 3.8 *continued*

LOAD CASE A

Fixed end moments

From *Table 3.20*

$$M_{AB} = M_{BC} = \frac{-WL}{12} = \frac{-100 \times 10}{12} = -83.33 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{BA} = M_{CB} = \frac{WL}{12} = \frac{100 \times 10}{12} = 83.33 \text{ kNm}$$

Stiffness factors

Since both spans are effectively pinned at both ends, the stiffness factors for members *AB* and *BC* (K_{AB} and K_{BC} respectively), are (3/4)4EI/10.

Distribution factors

$$\text{Distribution factor at end } BA = \frac{\text{Stiffness factor for member } AB}{\text{Stiffness factor for member } AB + \text{Stiffness factor for member } BC}$$

$$= \frac{K_{AB}}{K_{AB} + K_{BC}} = \frac{(3/4)4EI/10}{(3/4)4EI/10 + (3/4)4EI/10} = 0.5$$

Similarly the distribution factor at end $BC = 0.5$

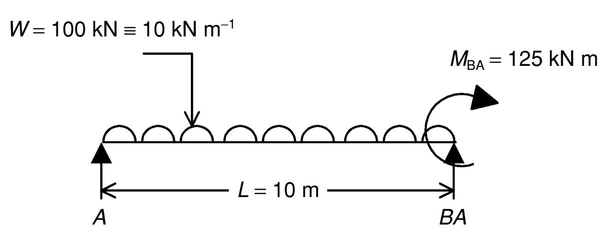
End moments

Joint	*A*	*B*		*C*
End	AB	*BA*	*BC*	*CB*
Distribution factors		0.5	0.5	
FEM (kNm)	−83.33	83.33	−83.33	83.33
Release *A* & *C*[1]	+83.33			−83.33
Carry over[2]		41.66	−41.66	
Release *B*		0		
Sum[3] (kNm)	0	125	−125	0

Notes:
[1]Since ends *A* and *C* are pinned, the moments here must be zero. Applying moments that are equal in magnitude but opposite in sense to the fixed end moments, i.e. +83.33 kNm and −83.33 kNm, satisfies this condition.
[2]Since joint *B* is effectively fixed, the carry-over factors for members *AB* and *BC* are both 0.5 and a moment of one-half of the applied moment will be induced at the fixed end.
[3]Summing the values in each column obtains the support moments.

Support reactions and mid-span moments

The support reactions and mid-span moments are obtained using statics.



Example 3.8 *continued*

Taking moments about end *BA* obtains the reaction at end *A*, R_A, as follows

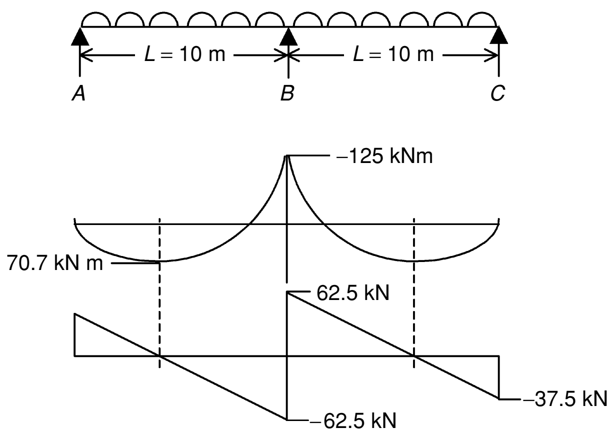
$$10R_A = WL/2 - M_{BA} = 100 \times (10/2) - 125 = 375 \text{ kNm} \Rightarrow R_A = 37.5 \text{ kN}$$

Reaction at end *BA*, $R_{BA} = W - R_{AB} = 100 - 37.5 = 62.5$ kN. Since the beam is symmetrically loaded, the reaction at end *BC*, $R_{BC} = R_{BA}$. Hence, reaction at support *B*, $R_B = R_{BA} + R_{BC} = 62.5 + 62.5 = 125$ kN.

The span moments, M_x, are obtained from

$$M_x = 37.5x - 10x^2/2$$

Maximum moment occurs when $\partial M/\partial x = 0$, i.e. $x = 3.75$ m $\Rightarrow M = 70.7$ kNm. Hence the bending moment and shear force diagrams are as follows



The results can be used to obtain moment and reaction coefficients by expressing in terms of *W* and *L*, where *W* is the load on one span only, i.e. 100 kN and L is the length of one span, i.e. 10 m, as shown in *Fig. 3.38*. The coefficients enable the bending moments and shear forces of any two equal span continuous beam, subjected to uniformly distributed loading, to be rapidly assessed.

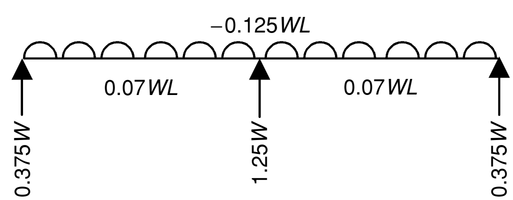


Fig. 3.38 *Bending moment and reaction coefficients for two equal span continuous beams subjected to a uniform load of W on each span.*

LOAD CASE B

Fixed end moments

$$M_{AB} = M_{BC} = \frac{-WL}{8} = \frac{-100 \times 10}{8} = -125 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{BA} = M_{CB} = \frac{WL}{8} = \frac{100 \times 10}{8} = 125 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 3.8 *continued*

Stiffness and distribution factors

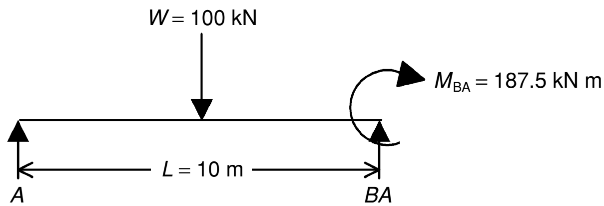
The stiffness and distribution factors are unchanged from the values calculated above.

End moments

Joint	*A*	*B*		*C*
End	*AB*	*BA*	*BC*	*CB*
Distribution factors		0.5	0.5	
FEM (kNm)	−125	125	−125	125
Release A & C	+125			−125
Carry over		62.5	−62.5	
Release B		0		
Sum	0	187.5	−187.5	0

Support reactions and mid-span moments

The support reactions and mid-span moments are again obtained using statics.



By taking moments about end BA, the reaction at end *A*, R_A, is

$$10R_A = WL/2 - M_{BA} = 100 \times (10/2) - 187.5 = 312.5 \text{ kNm} \Rightarrow R_A = 31.25 \text{ kN}$$

The reaction at end *BA*, $R_{BA} = W - R_A = 100 - 31.25 = 68.75$ kN $= R_{BC}$. Hence the total reaction at support *B*, $R_B = R_{BA} + R_{BC} = 68.75 + 68.75 = 137.5$ kN

By inspection, the maximum sagging moment occurs at the point load, i.e. $x = 5$ m, and is given by

$$M_{x=5} = 31.25x = 31.25 \times 5 = 156.25 \text{ kNm}$$

The bending moments and shear forces in the beam are shown in *Fig. 3.39*. *Fig. 3.40* records the moment and reaction coefficients for the beam.

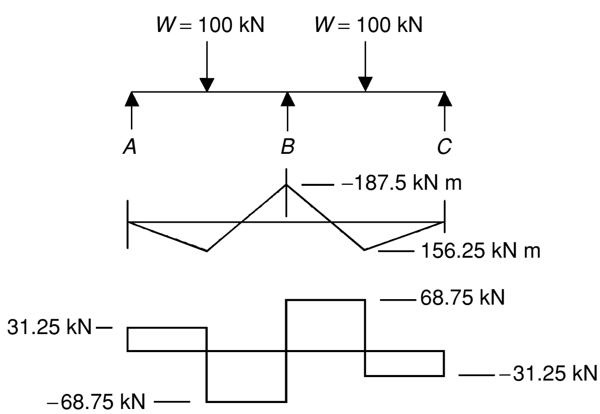


Fig. 3.39

Example 3.8 *continued*

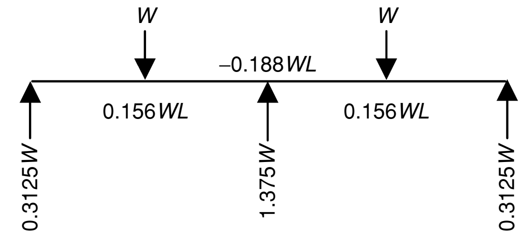
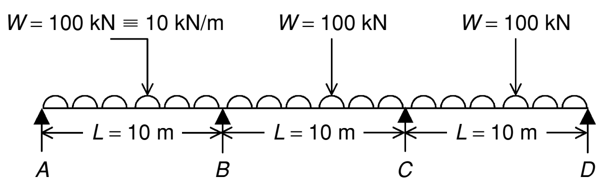


Fig. 3.40 *Bending moment and reaction coefficients for a two equal span continuous beam subjected to concentrated loads of W at each mid-span.*

Example 3.9 Analysis of a three span continuous beam using moment distribution

A three span continuous beam of constant section on simple supports is subjected to the uniformly distributed loads shown below. Evaluate the critical bending moments and shear forces in the beam using moment distribution.



FIXED END MOMENTS (FEM)

$$M_{AB} = M_{BC} = M_{CD} = \frac{-WL}{12} = \frac{-100 \times 10}{12} = -83.33 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_{BA} = M_{CB} = M_{DC} = \frac{WL}{12} = \frac{100 \times 10}{12} = 83.33 \text{ kN m}$$

STIFFNESS FACTORS

The outer spans are effectively pinned at both ends. Therefore, the stiffness factors for members *AB* and *CD* (K_{AB} and K_{CD} respectively), are (3/4)4EI/10.

During analysis, span *BC* is effectively pinned at one end and fixed at the other and its stiffness factor, K_{BC}, is therefore 4EI/10.

DISTRIBUTION FACTORS

$$\text{Distribution factor at end } BA = \frac{\text{Stiffness factor for member } AB}{\text{Stiffness factor for member } AB + \text{Stiffness factor for member } BC}$$

$$= \frac{K_{AB}}{K_{AB} + K_{BC}} = \frac{(3/4)4EI/10}{(3/4)4EI/10 + 4EI/10} = \frac{3}{7}$$

$$\text{Distribution factor at end } BC = \frac{\text{Stiffness factor for member } BC}{\text{Stiffness factor for member } AB + \text{Stiffness factor for member } BC}$$

$$= \frac{K_{AB}}{K_{AB} + K_{BC}} = \frac{4EI/10}{(3/4)4EI/10 + 4EI/10} = \frac{4}{7}$$

Similarly the distribution factors for ends *CB* and *CD* are, respectively, 4/7 and 3/7.

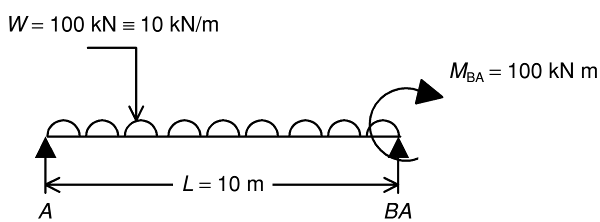
Example 3.9 *continued*

END MOMENTS

Joint	*A*	*B*		*C*		*D*
End	*AB*	*BA*	*BC*	*CB*	*CD*	*DC*
Distribution factors		3/7	4/7	4/7	3/7	
FEM (kNm)	−83.33	83.33	−83.33	83.33	−83.33	83.33
Release *A* & *D*	+83.33					−83.33
Carry over		41.66			−41.66	
Release *B* & *C*		−17.86	−23.8	23.8	17.86	
Carry over			11.9	−11.9		
Release *B* & *C*		−5.1	−6.8	6.8	5.1	
Carry over			3.4	−3.4		
Release *B* & *C*		−1.46	−1.94	1.94	1.46	
Carry over			0.97	−0.97		
Release *B* & *C*		−0.42	−0.55	0.55	0.42	
Carry over			0.28	−0.28		
Release *B* & *C*		−0.12	−0.16	0.16	0.12	
Sum	0	100.04	−100.04	100.04	−100.04	0

SUPPORT REACTIONS AND MID-SPAN MOMENTS

Span *AB*



Taking moments about end *BA* obtains the reaction at end *A*, R_A, as follows

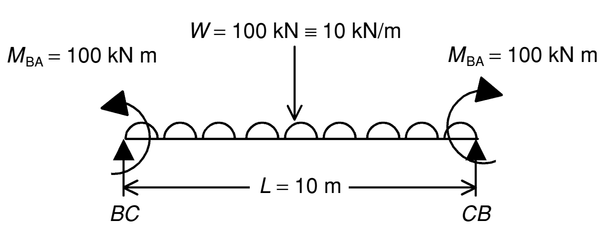
$$10R_A = WL/2 - M_{BA} = 100 \times (10/2) - 100 = 400 \text{ kNm} \Rightarrow R_A = 40 \text{ kN}$$

Reaction at end *BA*, $R_{BA} = W - R_{AB} = 100 - 40 = 60$ kN
The span moments, M_x, are obtained from

$$M_x = 40x - 10x^2/2$$

Maximum moment occurs when $\partial M/\partial x = 0$, i.e. $x = 4.0$ m $\Rightarrow M = 80$ kNm.

Span *BC*

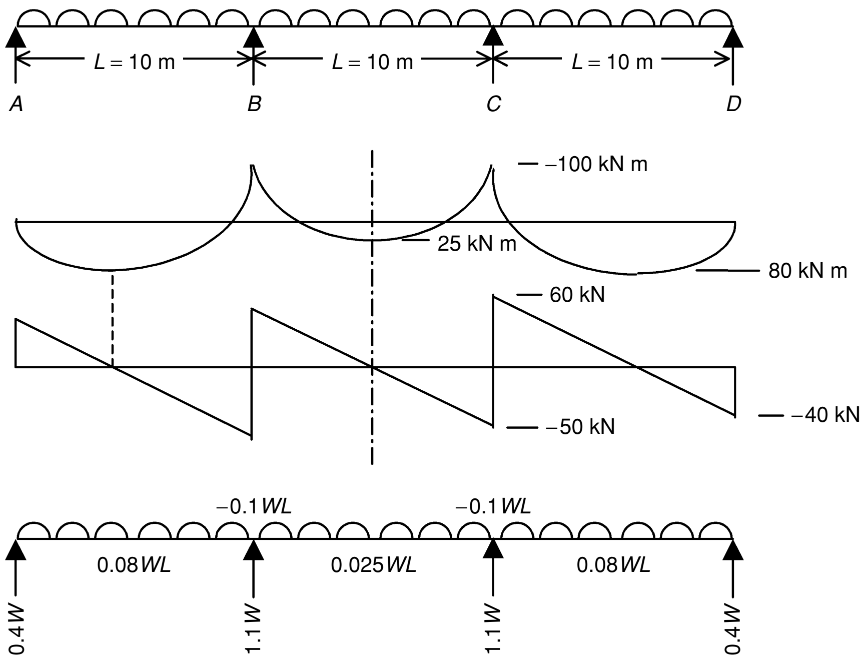


Example 3.9 *continued*

By inspection, reaction at end BC, R_{BC}, = reaction at end CB, R_{CB} = 50 kN
Therefore, total reaction at support B, $R_B = R_{BA} + R_{BC} = 60 + 50 = 110$ kN
By inspection, maximum moment occurs at mid-span of beam, i.e. $x = 5$ m. Hence, maximum moment is given by

$$M_{x=5} = 50x - 10x^2/2 - 100 = 50 \times 5 - 10 \times 5^2/2 - 100 = 25 \text{ kNm}$$

The bending moment and shear force diagrams plus the moment and reaction coefficients for the beam are shown below.

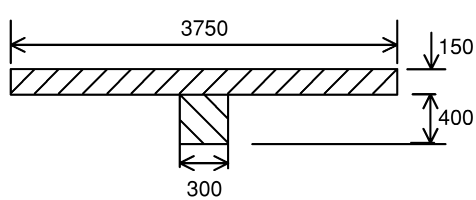


Example 3.10 Continuous beam design (BS 8110)

A typical floor plan of a small building structure is shown in *Fig. 3.41*. Design continuous beams 3A/D and B1/5 assuming the slab supports an imposed load of 4 kNm^{-2} and finishes of 1.5 kNm^{-2}. The overall sizes of the beams and slab are indicated on the drawing. The columns are 400 × 400 mm. The characteristic strength of the concrete is 35 Nmm^{-2} and of the steel reinforcement is 500 Nmm^{-2}. The cover to all reinforcement may be assumed to be 30 mm.

GRID LINE 3

Loading



Example 3.10 *continued*

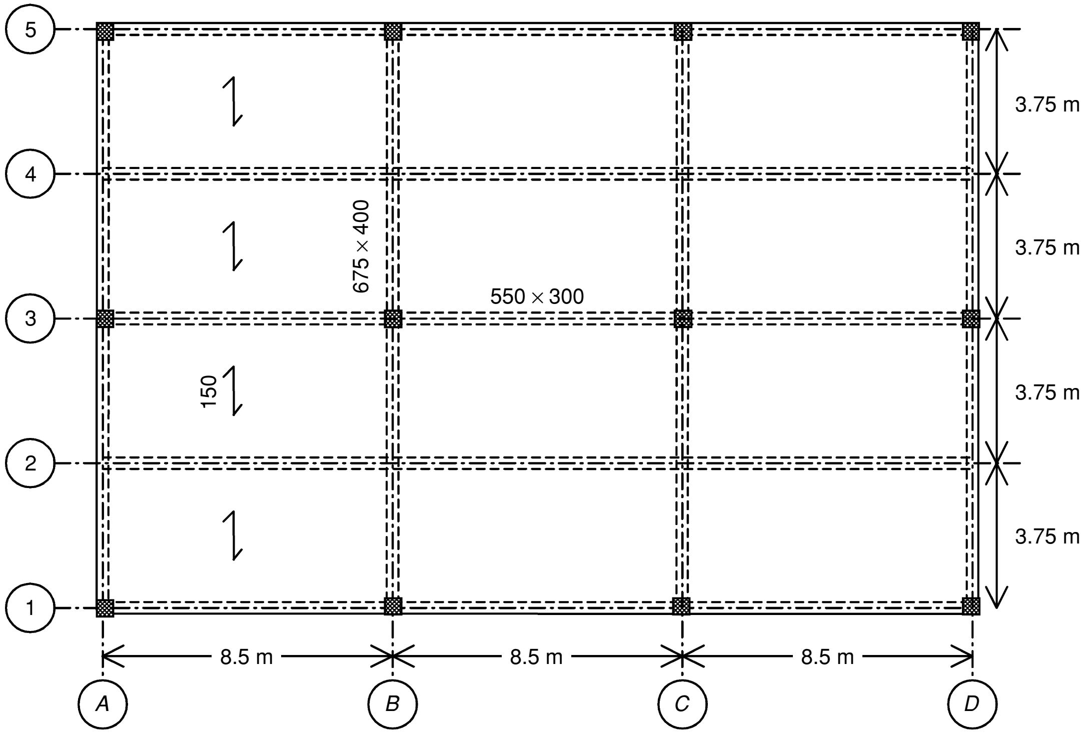


Fig. 3.41

Dead load, g_k, is the sum of

weight of slab = 0.15 × 3.75 × 24	= 13.5
weight of downstand = 0.3 × 0.4 × 24	= 2.88
finishes = 1.5 × 3.75	= 5.625
	22.0 kNm^{-1}

Imposed load, $q_k = 4 \times 3.75 = 15$ kNm^{-1}

Design uniformly distributed load, $\omega = (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k) = (1.4 \times 22 + 1.6 \times 15) = 54.8$ kNm^{-1}
Design load per span, $F = \omega \times \text{span} = 54.8 \times 8.5 = 465.8$ kN

Design moments and shear forces

From clause 3.4.3 of BS 8110, as $g_k > q_k$, the loading on the beam is substantially uniformly distributed and the spans are of equal length, the coefficients in *Table 3.19* can be used to calculate the design ultimate moments and shear forces. The results are shown in the table below. It should be noted however that these values are conservative estimates of the true in-span design moments and shear forces since the coefficients in *Table 3.19* are based on simple supports at the ends of the beam. In reality, beam 3*A*/*D* is part of a monolithic frame and significant restraint moments will occur at end supports.

Example 3.10 *continued*

Position	*Bending moment*	*Shear force*
Support 3*A*	0	$0.45 \times 465.8 = 209.6$ kN
Near middle of 3*A*/*B*	$0.09 \times 465.8 \times 8.5 = 356.3$ kNm	0
Support 3*B*	$-0.11 \times 465.8 \times 8.5 = -435.5$ kNm	$0.6 \times 465.8 = 279.5$ kN (support 3*B*/*A**) $0.55 \times 465.8 = 256.2$ kN (support 3*B*/*C***)
Middle of 3*B*/*C*	$0.07 \times 465.8 \times 8.5 = 277.2$ kNm	0

* shear force at support 3*B* towards *A* ** shear force at support 3*B* towards *C*

Steel reinforcement

Middle of 3*A*/*B* (and middle of 3*C*/*D*)
Assume diameter of main steel, $\phi = 25$ mm, diameter of links, $\phi' = 8$ mm and nominal cover, $c = 30$ mm. Hence

$$\text{Effective depth, } d = h - \frac{\phi}{2} - \phi' - c = 550 - \frac{25}{2} - 8 - 30 = 499 \text{ mm}$$

The effective width of beam is the lesser of

(a) actual flange width = 3750 mm
(b) web width + $\ell_z/5$, where ℓ_z is the distance between points of zero moments which for a continuous beam may be taken as 0.7 times the distance between centres of supports. Hence

$$\ell_z = 0.7 \times 8500 = 5950 \text{ mm and } b = 300 + 5950/5 = 1490 \text{ mm} \quad (\textit{critical})$$

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{356.3 \times 10^6}{35 \times 1490 \times 499^2} = 0.0274$$

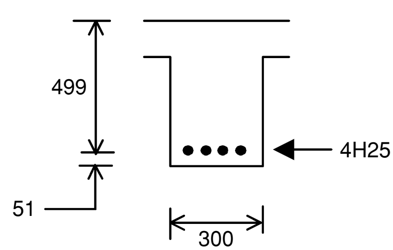
$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}) \le 0.95d = 0.95 \times 499 = 474 \text{ mm} \quad (\textit{critical})$$

$$= 499(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0274/0.9)}) = 499 \times 0.969 = 483 \text{ mm}$$

$x = (d - z)/0.45 = (499 - 474)/0.45 = 56$ mm < flange thickness (= 150 mm). Hence

$$\text{Area of steel reinforcement, } A_s = \frac{M}{0.87f_y z} = \frac{356.3 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500(0.95 \times 499)} = 1728 \text{ mm}^2 = 1728 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 4H25 ($A_s = 1960$ mm^2).



Example 3.10 *continued*

At support 3*B* (and 3*C*)
Assume the main steel consists of two layers of 25 mm diameter bars, diameter of links, $\phi' = 8$ mm and nominal cover, $c = 30$ mm. Hence

$$\text{Effective depth, } d = h - \phi - \phi' - c = 550 - 25 - 8 - 30 = 487 \text{ mm}$$

Since the beam is in hogging, $b = 300$ mm

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} b d^2 = 0.156 \times 35 \times 300 \times 487^2 \times 10^{-6} = 388.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Since $M_u < M$ (= 435.5 kNm), compression reinforcement is required.
Assume diameter of compression steel, $\Phi = 25$ mm, diameter of links, $\phi' = 8$ mm, and cover to reinforcement, c, is 30 mm. Hence effective depth of compression steel d' is

$$d' = c + \phi' + \Phi/2 = 30 + 8 + 25/2 = 51 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{Lever arm, } z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K'/0.9)}) = 487(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.156/0.9)}) = 378 \text{ mm}$$

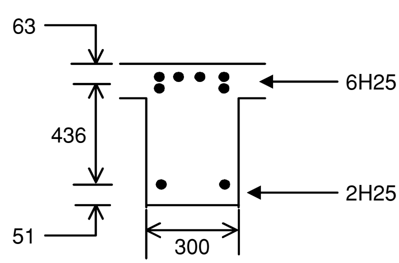
Depth to neutral axis, $x = (d - z)/0.45 = (487 - 378)/0.45 = 242$ *mm*
$d'/x = 51/242 = 0.21 < 0.37$. Therefore, the compression steel has yielded, i.e. $f'_s = 0.87 f_y$ and

$$\text{Area of compression steel, } A'_s = \frac{M - M_u}{0.87 f_y (d - d')} = \frac{(435.5 - 388.5)10^6}{0.87 \times 500(487 - 51)} = 248 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 2H25 ($A'_s = 982$ mm^2)

$$\text{Area of tension steel, } A_s = \frac{M_u}{0.87 f_y z} + A'_s = \frac{388.5 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 378} + 248 = 2610 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 6H25 as shown ($A_s = 2950$ mm^2)



Middle of 3*B*/*C*
From above, effective depth, $d = 499$ mm and effective width of beam, $b = 1490$ mm.
Hence, A_s is

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{277.2 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500(0.95 \times 499)} = 1344 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 3H25 ($A_s = 1470$ mm^2).
Fig. 3.42 shows a sketch of the bending reinforcement for spans 3*A*/*B* and 3*B*/*C*. The curtailment lengths indicated on the sketch are in accordance with the simplified rules for beams given in clause 3.12.10.2 of BS 8110 (*Fig. 3.27*).

Example 3.10 *continued*

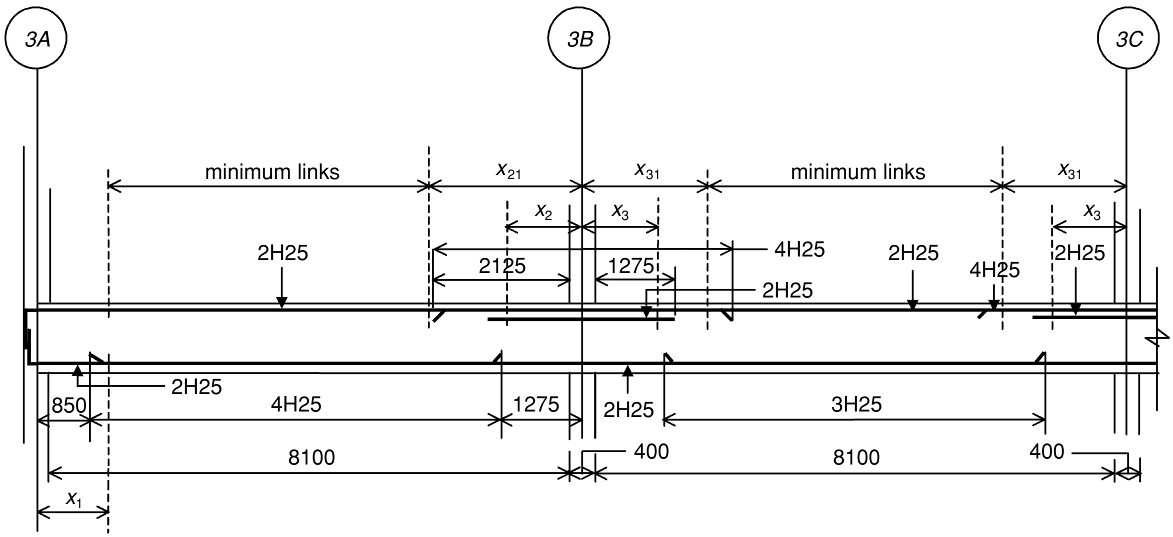


Fig. 3.42

Shear

As discussed in section 3.9.1.3, the amount and spacing of shear reinforcement depends on the area of tensile steel reinforcement present in the beam. Near to supports and at mid-spans this is relatively easy to asses. However, at intervening positions on the beam this task is more difficult because the points of zero bending moment are unknown. It is normal practice therefore to use conservative estimates of A_s to design the shear reinforcement without obtaining detailed knowledge of the bending moment distribution as illustrated below.

Span 3*A*/*B* (3*B*/*C* and 3*C*/*D*)

The minimum tension steel at any point in the span is 2H25. Hence A_s = 980 mm^2 and

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 980}{300 \times 499} = 0.655$$

From *Table 3.11*, $\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\frac{35}{25}} \times 0.54 = 0.6 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$

Provide minimum links where $V \le (\nu_c + 0.4)bd = (0.6 + 0.4)300 \times 499 \times 10^{-3} = 149.7$ kN (*Fig. 3.42*), according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{0.4 \times 300}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.276 \text{ with } s_v \le 0.75d = 373 \text{ mm}$$

From *Table 3.13* select H8 at 300 centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.335$)

Support 3*A* (and 3*D*)

According to clause 3.4.5.10 of BS 8110 for beams carrying generally uniform load the critical section for shear may be taken at distance d beyond the face of the support, i.e. 0.2 + 0.499 = 0.7 m from the column centreline. Here the design shear force, V_D, is

$$V_D = V_{3A} - 0.7\omega = 209.6 - 0.7 \times 54.8 = 171.3 \text{ kN}$$

Shear stress, $\nu = \frac{V_D}{bd} = \frac{171.3 \times 10^3}{499 \times 300} = 1.14 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$

Example 3.10 *continued*

From *Fig. 3.42* it can be seen that 50 per cent of main steel is curtailed at support *A*. The effective area of tension steel is 2H25, hence $A_s = 980$ mm^2, $\dfrac{100A_s}{bd} = 0.655$ and $\nu_c = 0.6$ Nmm^{-2}

Since $\nu > (\nu_c + 0.4)$ provide design links according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} \geq \frac{b(\nu - \nu_c)}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{300(1.14 - 0.6)}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.372.$$

From *Table 3.13* select H8 links at 250 mm centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.402$).
Note that the shear resistance obtained with minimum links, V_1, is

$$V_1 = (\nu_c + 0.4)bd = (0.6 + 0.4)300 \times 499 \times 10^{-3} = 149.7 \text{ kN}$$

This shear force occurs at $x_1 = (V_{3A} - V_1)/\omega = (209.6 - 149.7)/54.8 = 1.09$ m (*Fig. 3.42*). Assuming the first link is fixed 75 mm from the front face of column 3A (i.e. 275 mm from the centre line of the column), then five H8 links at 250 mm centres are required.

Support 3*B*/*A* (and 3*C*/*D*)
Design shear force at distance d beyond the face of the support (= 0.2 + 0.487 = 0.687 m), V_D, is

$$V_D = V_{3B/A} - 0.687\omega = 279.5 - 0.687 \times 54.8 = 241.9 \text{ kN}$$

Shear stress, $\nu = \dfrac{V_D}{bd} = \dfrac{241.9 \times 10^3}{300 \times 487} = 1.66 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$

Assume the tension steel is 4H25. Hence $A_s = 1960$ mm^2 and $\dfrac{100A_s}{bd} = \dfrac{100 \times 1960}{300 \times 487} = 1.34$

From *Table 3.11*, $\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\dfrac{35}{25}} \times 0.69 = 0.77$ Nmm^{-2}

Since $\nu > (\nu_c + 0.4)$ provide design links according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} \geq \frac{b(\nu - \nu_c)}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{300(1.66 - 0.77)}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.614.$$ Select H8 at 150 centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.671$).

To determine the number of links required assume H8 links at 200 mm centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.503$) are to be provided between the minimum links in span 3*A*/*B* (i.e. H8@300) and the design links at support 3*B* (H8@150). In this length, the minimum tension steel is 2H25 and from above $\nu_c = 0.6$ Nmm^{-2}. The shear resistance of H8 links at 200 mm centres plus concrete, V_2, is

$$V_2 = \left(\left(\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v}\right)0.87f_y + b\nu_c\right)d$$

$$= (0.503 \times 0.87 \times 500 + 300 \times 0.6)499 \times 10^{-3} = 199 \text{ kN}$$

Assuming the first link is fixed 75 mm from the front face of column 3B then nine H8 links at 150 mm centres are required. The distance from the centre line of column 3B to the ninth link (x_2) is (200 + 75) + 8 × 150 = 1475 mm. Since $x_2 < 2125$ mm the tension steel is 4H25 as assumed. The shear force at x_2 is

$$Vx_2 = 279.5 - 1.475 \times 54.8 = 198.7 \text{ kN} < V_2 \quad \text{OK}$$

From above shear resistance of minimum links = 149.7 kN. This occurs at $x_{21} = (279.5 - 149.7)/54.8 = 2.368$ m (*Fig. 3.42*). Therefore provide five H8 links at 200 mm centres and fifteen H8 links at 300 centres arranged as shown in *Fig. 3.43*.

Example 3.10 *continued*

(d) Support 3*B/C* (and 3*C/B*)

Shear force at distance d from support 3*B/C*, V_D, is

$$V_D = V_{3B/A} - 0.687\omega = 256.2 - 0.687 \times 54.8 = 218.6 \text{ kN}$$

Shear stress, $\nu_c = \dfrac{V_D}{bd} = \dfrac{218.6 \times 10^3}{300 \times 487} = 1.50 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$

Again, assume the tension steel is 4H25. Hence $A_s = 1960$ mm^2, $\dfrac{100A_s}{bd} = 1.34$, and $\nu_c = 0.77$ Nmm^{-2}.

Since $\nu > (\nu_c + 0.4)$ provide design links according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} \geq \frac{b(\nu - \nu_c)}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{300(1.50 - 0.77)}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.503. \text{ Select H8 at 150 centres } (A_{sv}/s_v = 0.671).$$

To determine the number of links required assume H8 links at 225 mm centres ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.447$) are to be provided between the minimum links in span 3*B/C* and the design links at support 3*B*. In this length the minimum tension steel is 2H25 and from above $\nu_c = 0.6$ Nmm^{-2}. The shear resistance of H8 links at 225 mm centres plus concrete, V_3, is

$$V_3 = \left(\left(\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v}\right)0.87f_y + b\nu_c\right)d$$
$$= (0.447 \times 0.87 \times 500 + 300 \times 0.6)499 \times 10^{-3} = 186.8 \text{ kN}$$

Assuming the first link is fixed 75 mm from the front face of column 3B then eight H8 links at 150 mm centres are required. The distance from the centre line of column 3B to the eight link (x_3) is (200 + 75) + 7 × 150 = 1325 mm. Since $x_3 < 2125$ mm the tension steel is 4H25 as assumed. The shear force at x_3 is

$$Vx_3 = 256.2 - 1.325 \times 54.8 = 183.6 \text{ kN} < V_3 \quad \text{OK}$$

From above shear resistance of minimum links = 149.7 kN. This occurs at x_{31} = (256.2 − 149.7)/54.8 = 1.943 m (*Fig. 3.42*). Therefore provide four H8 links at 225 mm centres and thirteen H8 links at 300 centres arranged as shown in *Fig. 3.43*.

Fig. 3.43 shows the main reinforcement requirements for spans 3*A/B* and 3*B/C*. Note that in the above calculations the serviceability limit state of cracking has not been considered. For this reason as well as reasons of buildability, the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different to those indicated in the figure. As previously noted the beam will be hogging at end supports and further calculations will be necessary to determine the area of steel required in the top face.

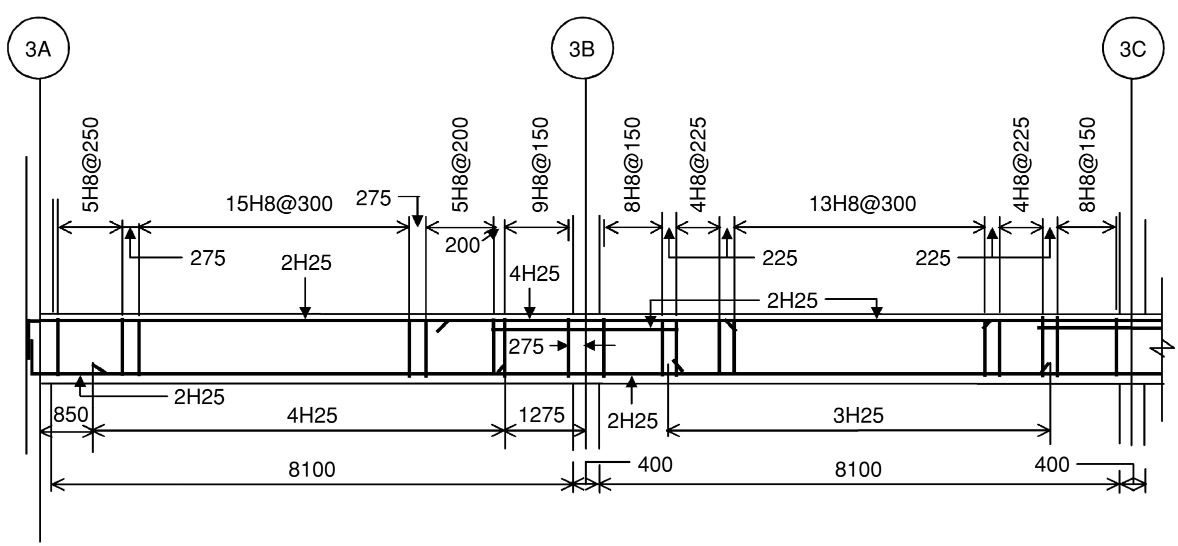


Fig. 3.43

Example 3.10 *continued*

Deflection

$$\text{Actual } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \frac{8500}{499} = 17$$

By inspection, exterior span is critical.

$$\frac{b_w}{b} = \frac{300}{1490} = 0.2 < 0.3 \Rightarrow \text{basic span/effective depth ratio of beam} = 20.8 \text{ (\textit{Table 3.12})}$$

Service stress, f_s, is

$$f_s = \frac{5}{8} f_y \frac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{1728}{1960} = 276 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{modification factor} = 0.55 + \frac{447 - f_s}{120\left(0.9 + \frac{M}{bd^2}\right)} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - 276}{120\left(0.9 + \frac{356.3 \times 10^6}{1490 \times 499^2}\right)} = 1.45$$

Therefore,

$$\text{permissible } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \text{basic ratio} \times \text{mod.factor} = 20.8 \times 1.45 = 30 > \text{actual} \quad \text{OK}$$

PRIMARY BEAM ON GRID LINE B

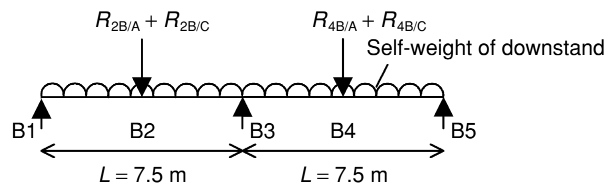
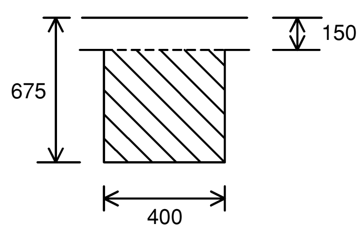


Fig. 3.44



Loading

Design load on beam = uniformly distributed load from self weight of downstand
+ reactions at *B*2 and *B*4 from beams 2*A*/*B*, 2*B*/*C*, 4*A*/*B* and 4*B*/*C*,
i.e. $R_{2B/A}$, $R_{2B/C}$, $R_{4B/A}$ and $R_{4B/C}$.

Uniform loads

Dead load from self weight of downstand, $g_k = 0.4 \times (0.675 - 0.15) \times 24 = 5.04 \text{ kNm}^{-1}$

$$\equiv 5.04 \times 7.5 = 37.8 \text{ kN on each span.}$$

Imposed load, $q_k = 0$

Point loads

Dead load from reactions $R_{2B/A}$ and $R_{2B/C}$ (and $R_{4B/A}$ and $R_{4B/C}$), G_k, is

$$G_k = 22 \times (0.6 \times 8.5) + 22 \times 4.25 = 205.7 \text{ kN}$$

Example 3.10 *continued*

Imposed load from reactions $R_{2B/A}$ and $R_{2B/C}$ (and $R_{4B/A}$ and $R_{4B/C}$), Q_k, is

$$Q_k = 15 \times (0.6 \times 8.5) + 15 \times 4.25 = 140.3 \text{ kN}$$

Load cases

Since the beam does not satisfy the conditions in clause 3.4.3, the coefficients in *Table 3.19* cannot be used to estimate the design moments and shear forces. They can be obtained using techniques such as moment distribution, as discussed in section 3.9.3.1. As noted in section 3.6.2 for continuous beams, two load cases must be considered: (1) maximum design load on all spans (*Fig. 3.45(a)*) and (2) maximum and minimum design loads on alternate spans (*Fig. 3.45(b)*). Assume for the sake of simplicity that the ends of beam B1/5 are simple supports.

Maximum design load = uniform load ($W' = 1.4g_k + 1.6q_k = 1.4 \times 37.8 + 0 = 52.9$ kN)
+ point load ($W'' = 1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k = 1.4 \times 205.7 + 1.6 \times 140.3 = 512.5$ kN)

Minimum design load = uniform load ($W''' = 1.0g_k = 1.0 \times 37.8 = 37.8$ kN)
+ point load ($W'''' = 1.0G_k = 1.0 \times 205.7 = 205.7$ kN)

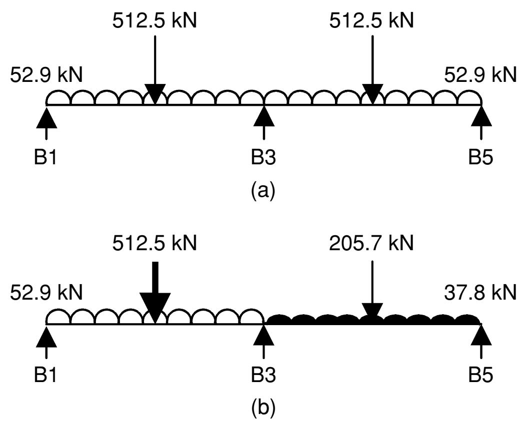


Fig. 3.45 *Load cases: (a) load case 1 (b) load case 2.*

Load case 1

Fixed end moments

From *Table 3.20*

$$M_{B1/3} = M_{B3/5} = -\frac{W'L}{12} - \frac{W''L}{8} = -\frac{52.9 \times 7.5}{12} - \frac{512.5 \times 7.5}{8} = -513.5 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_{B3/1} = M_{B5/3} = \frac{W'L}{12} + \frac{W''L}{8} = 513.5 \text{ kN m}$$

Stiffness and distribution factors

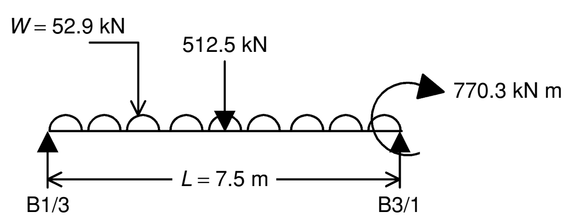
Referring to Example 3.8 it can be seen that the stiffness factors for members *B*3/1 and *B*3/5 are both (3/4)4EI/7.5. Therefore the distribution factor at end *B*3/1 and end *B*3/5 are both 0.5.

Example 3.10 *continued*

End moments

Joint	*B1*	*B3*		*B5*
End	*B1/3*	*B3/1*	*B3/5*	*B5/3*
Distribution factors		0.5	0.5	
FEM (kNm)	−513.5	513.5	−513.5	513.5
Release *B*1 & *B*5	+513.5			−513.5
Carry over		256.8	−256.8	
Sum (kNm)	0	770.3	−770.3	0

Span moments and reactions
The support reactions and mid-span moments are obtained using statics.



Taking moments about end *B*3/1 obtains the reaction at end *B*1/3, $R_{B1/3}$, as follows

$$7.5R_{B1/3} = 512.5 \times (7.5/2) + 52.9 \times (7.5/2) - 770.3 = 1350 \text{ kNm} \Rightarrow R_{B1/3} = 180 \text{ kN}$$

Reaction at end *B*3/1, $R_{B3/1} = 512.5 + 52.9 - 180 = 385.4$ kN. Since the beam is symmetrically loaded, the reaction at end *B*3/5 is 385.4 kN and end *B*5/3 is 180 kN.

By inspection, the maximum sagging moment occurs at the point load, i.e. $x = 3.75$ m, and is given by

$$M_{x=3.75\text{m}} = 180x - (52.9/7.5)x^2/2 = 625.4 \text{ kNm}$$

Load case 2

Fixed end moments

$$M_{B1/3} = -M_{B3/1} = -\frac{W'L}{12} - \frac{W''L}{8} = -\frac{52.9 \times 7.5}{12} - \frac{512.5 \times 7.5}{8} = -513.5 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{B3/5} = -M_{B5/3} = -\frac{W'''L}{12} - \frac{W''''L}{8} = -\frac{37.8 \times 7.5}{12} - \frac{205.7 \times 7.5}{8} = -216.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Stiffness and distribution factors
The stiffness and distribution factors are unchanged from the values calculated above.

Example 3.10 *continued*

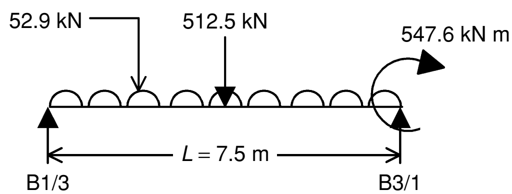
End moments

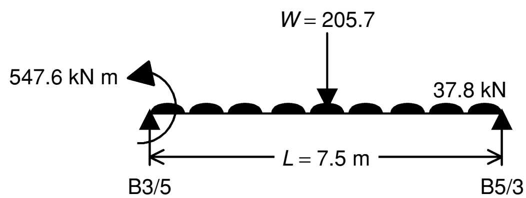
Joint	*B1*	*B3*		*B5*
End	*B1/3*	*B3/1*	*B3/5*	*B5/3*
Distribution factors		0.5	0.5	
FEM (kNm)	−513.5	513.5	−216.5	216.5
Release *B*1 & *B*5	+513.5			−216.5
Carry over		256.8	−108.3	
Release *B*3		−222.8*	−222.8	
Sum (kNm)	0	547.5	−547.6	0

* 0.5 [−(513.5 − 216.5 + 256.8 − 108.3)]

Span moments and reactions

The support reactions and mid-span moments are obtained using statics.





Taking moments about end $B3/1$ of beam $B1/3$, the reaction at end $B1/3$, $R_{B1/3}$, is

$$7.5R_{B1/3} = 512.5 \times (7.5/2) + 52.9 \times (7.5/2) - 547.6 = 1572.7 \text{ kNm}$$

$$R_{B1/3} = 209.7 \text{ kN}$$

Hence, reaction at end $B3/1$, $R_{B3/1} = 512.5 + 52.9 - 209.7 = 355.7$ kN.
Similarly for beam $B3/5$, the reaction at end $B5/3$, $R_{B5/3}$, is

$$7.5R_{B5/3} = 205.7 \times (7.5/2) + 37.8 \times (7.5/2) - 547.6 = 365.5 \text{ kNm}$$

$$R_{B5/3} = 48.7 \text{ kN}$$

and $R_{B3/5} = 205.7 + 37.8 - 48.7 = 194.8$ kN

By inspection, the maximum sagging moment in span $B1/3$ occurs at the point load and is given by

$$M_{x=3.75} = 209.7x - (52.9/7.5)x^2/2 = 736.8 \text{ kNm}$$

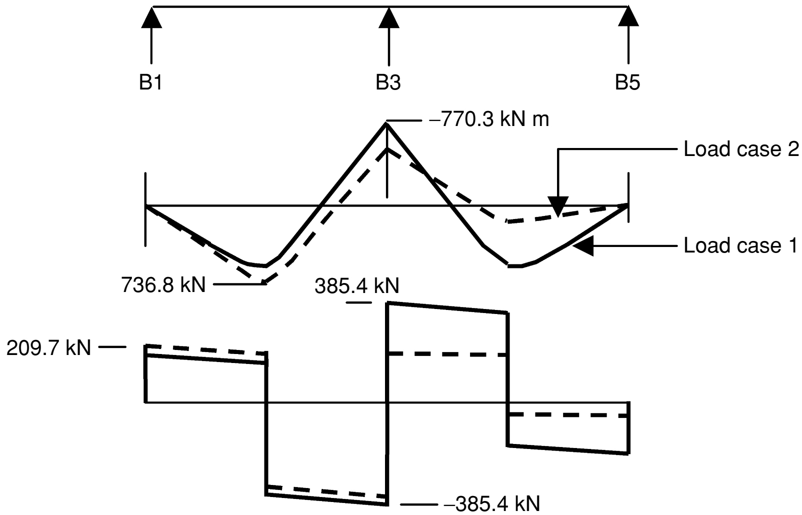
Similarly, the maximum sagging moment in span $B3/5$ is

$$M_{x=3.75} = 194.8x - (37.8/7.5)x^2/2 - 547.6 = 147.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 3.10 *continued*

Design moments and shear forces

The bending moment and shear force envelops for load cases 1 and 2 are shown below. It can be seen that the design sagging moment is 736.8 kNm and the design hogging moment is 770.3 kNm. The design shear force at supports B1 and B5 is 209.7 kN and at support B3 is 385.4 kN.



Steel reinforcement

Middle of span B1/3 (and B3/5)

Assume the main steel consists of two layers of 25 mm diameter bars, diameter of links, $\phi' = 10$ mm and nominal cover, $c = 30$ mm. Hence effective depth, d, is

$$d = h - (\phi + \phi' + c) = 675 - (25 + 10 + 30) = 610 \text{ mm}$$

From clause 3.4.1.5 of BS 8110 the effective width of beam, b, is

$$b = b_w + 0.7\ell/5 = 400 + 0.7 \times 7500/5 = 1450 \text{ mm}$$

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{736.8 \times 10^6}{35 \times 1450 \times 610^2} = 0.039$$

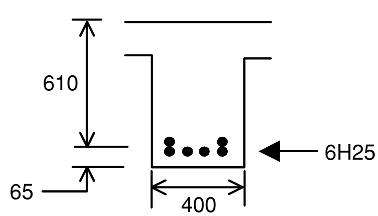
$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}) \leq 0.95d = 0.95 \times 610 = 580 \text{ mm} \quad (\textit{critical})$$

$$= 610(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.039/0.9)}) = 610 \times 0.955 = 583 \text{ mm}$$

$x = (d - z)/0.45 = (610 - 580)/0.45 = 67$ mm < flange thickness (= 150 mm). Hence

$$\text{Area of tension steel, } A_s = \frac{M}{0.87f_y z} = \frac{736.8 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500(0.95 \times 610)} = 2923 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 6H25 ($A_s = 2950$ mm^2).



Example 3.10 *continued*

At support B3

Again, assuming that the main steel consists of two layers of 25 mm diameter bars, diameter of links, $\phi' = 10$ mm and nominal cover, $c = 30$ mm, implies effective depth, $d = 610$ mm

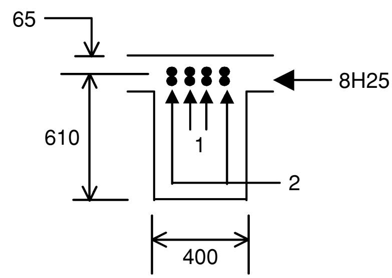
Since the beam is in hogging, effective width of beam, $b = b_w = 400$ mm

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{770.3 \times 10^6}{35 \times 400 \times 610^2} = 0.148$$

$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}) = 610(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.148/0.9)}) = 483\,\text{mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{770.3 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 483} = 3666\,\text{mm}^2$$

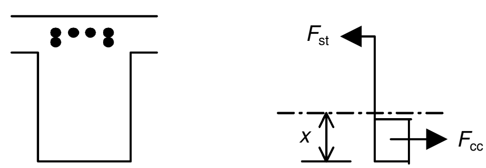
Provide 8H25 ($A_s = 3930$ mm^2).



Note that, in practice, it would be difficult to hold bars 1 in place and a spacer bar would be needed between the two layers of reinforcement. This would reduce the value of the effective depth, but this aspect has been ignored in the calculations.

The simplified rules for curtailment of bars in continuous beams illustrated in *Fig. 3.27* do not apply as the loading on the beam is not predominantly uniformly distributed. However, the general rule given in clause 3.12.9.1 can be used as discussed below with reference to bar marks 1 and 2.

The theoretical position along the beam where mark 1 bars (i.e. 2H25 from the inner layer of reinforcement) can be stopped off is where the moment of resistance of the section considering only the continuing bars (see sketch), M_r, is equal to the design moment, M.



For equilibrium

$$F_{cc} = F_{st}$$

$$\frac{0.67 f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}} 0.9xb = 0.87 f_y A_s$$

$$\frac{0.67 \times 35}{1.5} 0.9 \times x \times 400 = 0.87 \times 500 \times 2950$$

Hence $x = 228$ mm

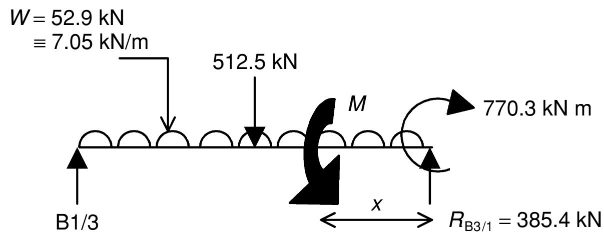
$$\text{Also, } z = d - 0.9x/2 = 610 - 0.9 \times 228/2 = 507 \text{ mm}$$

Moment of resistance of section, M_r, is

$$M_r = F_{cc}z = \left(\frac{0.67 f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}} 0.9xb\right) z = \left(\frac{0.67 \times 35}{1.5} 0.9 \times 229 \times 400\right) 505 \times 10^{-6} = 650 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 3.10 *continued*

The design moment along the beam from end *B*3/1, *M*, is



$M = 770.3 - 385.4x + \dfrac{7.05x^2}{2}$. Solving for $M = 651$ kNm implies that the theoretical cut-off point of mark 1 bars from the centre-line of support *B*3 is 0.31 m.

According to clause 3.12.9.1, the actual cut-off point of bars in the tension zone is obtained by extending the bars an anchorage length (= 38ϕ from *Table 3.27* of *BS* 8110 assuming $f_{cu} = 35$ Nmm^{-2} and $f_y = 500$ nmm^{-2}, deformed type 2 bars) beyond the theoretical cut-off point (i.e. 310 mm + 38 × 25 = 1260 mm) or where other bars continuing past provide double the area required to resist the moment at the section i.e. where the design moment is $^1/_2M = 325.5$ kNm. The latter is obtained by solving the above expression for *x* assuming $M = 325.5$ kNm. This implies that the actual cut-off point of the bars is 1.17 m. Hence the 2H25 bars can be stopped off at, say, 1.3 m from support B3.

The cut-off point of mark 2 bars can be similarly evaluated. Here A_s is 1960 mm^2. Hence $x = 152$ mm, $z = 552$ mm assuming $d = 620$ mm and $M_r = 471$ kNm. The theoretical cut-off point of the bars is 0.78 m from the centre-line of support B3. The actual cut-off point is then either 780 + 38 × 25 = 1730 mm or where the design moment is 235.5 kNm, i.e. 1.406 m. Thus it can be assumed the mark 2 bars can be stopped off at, say, 1.8 m from the centre-line of support *B*3.

Repeating the above procedure will obtain the cut-off points of the remaining sets of bars. Not all bars will need to be curtailed however. Some should continue through to supports as recommended in the simplified rules for curtailment of reinforcement for beams. Also the anchorage length of bars that continue to end supports or are stopped off in the compression zone will vary and the reader is referred to the provisions in clause 3.12.9.1 for further details. *Fig. 3.46* shows a sketch of the bending reinforcement for the beam.

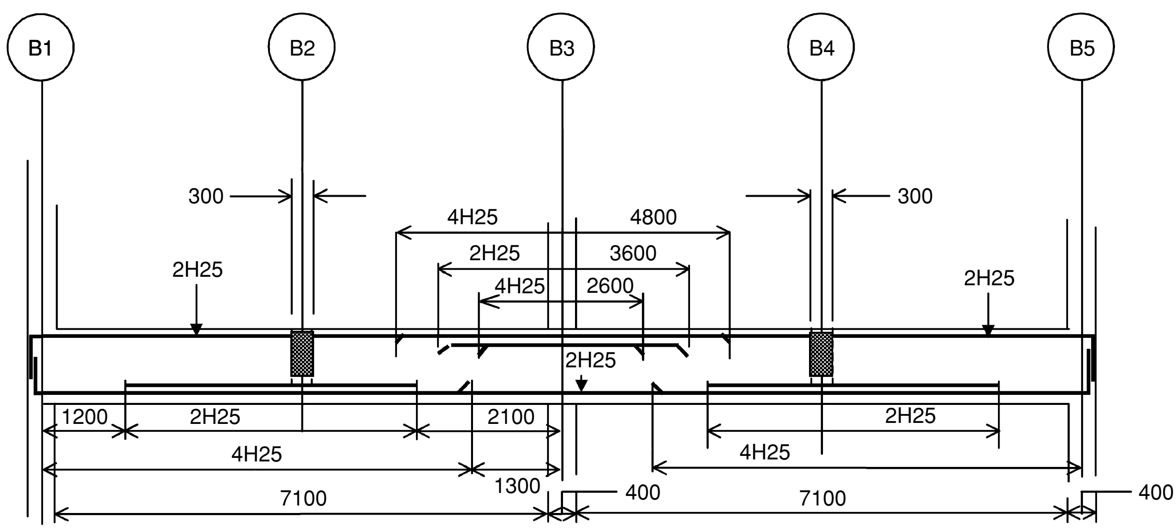


Fig. 3.46

Example 3.10 *continued*

Shear

Support B1(and B5)

Shear stress, $\nu = \dfrac{V}{bd} = \dfrac{209.7 \times 10^3}{400 \times 620} = 0.85\ \text{Nmm}^{-2} < 0.8\sqrt{f_{cu}} = 0.8\sqrt{35} = 4.7\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$ OK

From *Fig. 3.46* it can be seen that the area of tension steel is 4H25. Hence $A_s = 1960$ mm^2 and

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 1960}{400 \times 620} = 0.79$$

From *Table 3.11*, $\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\dfrac{35}{25}} \times 0.58 = 0.65\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$

Since $\nu < (\nu_c + 0.4)$ minimum links are required according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} = \frac{0.4b}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{0.4 \times 400}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.368$$

Provide H10-300 ($A_{sv}/s_v = 0.523$)

Support B3

Shear stress, $\nu = \dfrac{V}{bd} = \dfrac{385.4 \times 10^3}{400 \times 620} = 1.55\ \text{Nmm}^{-2} < 0.8\sqrt{f_{cu}} = 0.8\sqrt{35} = 4.7\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$ OK

From *Fig. 3.46* it can be seen that the minimum tension steel at any point between *B*3 and *B*2 is 2H25. Hence $A_s =$ 980 mm^2 and

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 980}{400 \times 620} = 0.40$$

From *Table 3.11*, $\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\dfrac{35}{25}} \times 0.46 = 0.52\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$

Since $\nu > (\nu_c + 0.4)$ provide design links according to

$$\frac{A_{sv}}{s_v} \geq \frac{b(\nu - \nu_c)}{0.87f_{yv}} = \frac{400(1.55 - 0.52)}{0.87 \times 500} = 0.947$$

Provide H10–150 ($A_{sv}/s_v = 1.047$)

Fig. 3.47 shows the main reinforcement requirements for beam *B*1/5. Note that in the above calculations the serviceability limit state of cracking has not been considered. For this reason as well as reasons of buildability, the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different to those shown. As previously noted, the beam will be hogging at end supports and further calculations will be necessary to determine the area of steel required in the top face.

Deflection

$$\text{Actual } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \frac{7500}{610} = 12.3$$

$$\frac{b_w}{b} = \frac{400}{1450} = 0.276 < 0.3 \Rightarrow \text{basic span/effective depth ratio of beam} = 20.8 \quad (\textit{Table } 3.12)$$

Example 3.10 *continued*

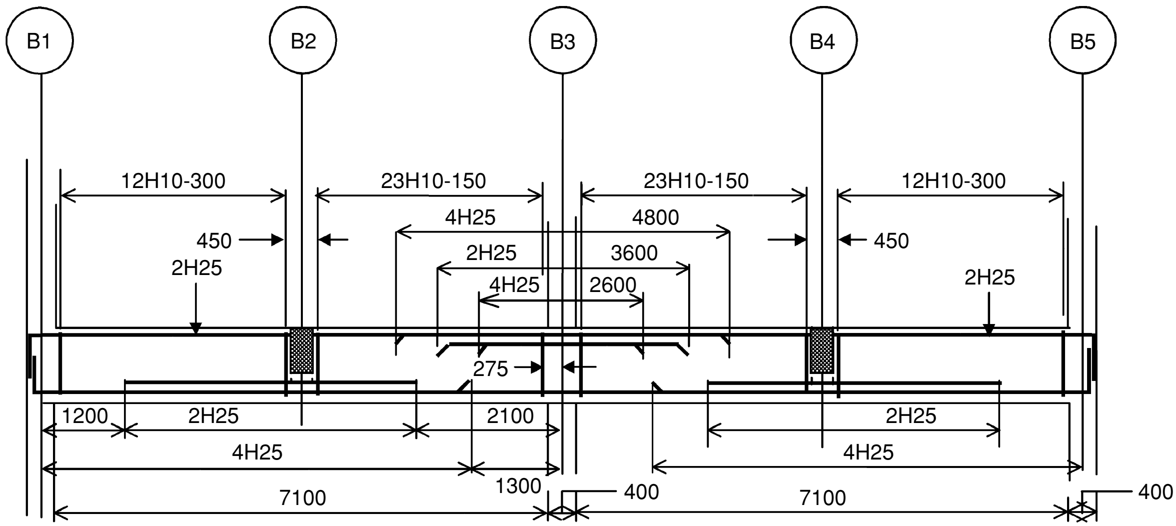


Fig. 3.47

Service stress, f_s, is

$$f_s = \frac{5}{8} f_y \frac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{2923}{2950} = 310 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{Modification factor} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - f_s}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{M}{bd^2}\right)} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - 310}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{736.8 \times 10^6}{1450 \times 610^2}\right)} = 1.2$$

$$\text{Therefore, permissible } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \text{basic ratio} \times \text{modification factor}$$

$$= 20.8 \times 1.2 = 25 > \text{actual} \quad \text{OK}$$

3.9.4 SUMMARY FOR BEAM DESIGN

Figure 3.48 shows the basic steps that should be followed in order to design reinforced concrete beams.

3.10 Slabs

If a series of very wide, shallow rectangular beams were placed side by side and connected transversely such that it was possible to share the load between adjacent beams, the combination of beams would act as a slab (*Fig. 3.49*).

Reinforced concrete slabs are used to form a variety of elements in building structures such as floors, roofs, staircases, foundations and some types of walls (*Fig. 3.50*). Since these elements can be modelled as a set of transversely connected beams, it follows that the design of slabs is similar, in principle, to that for beams. The major difference is that in slab design the serviceability limit state of deflection is normally critical, rather than the ultimate limit states of bending and shear.

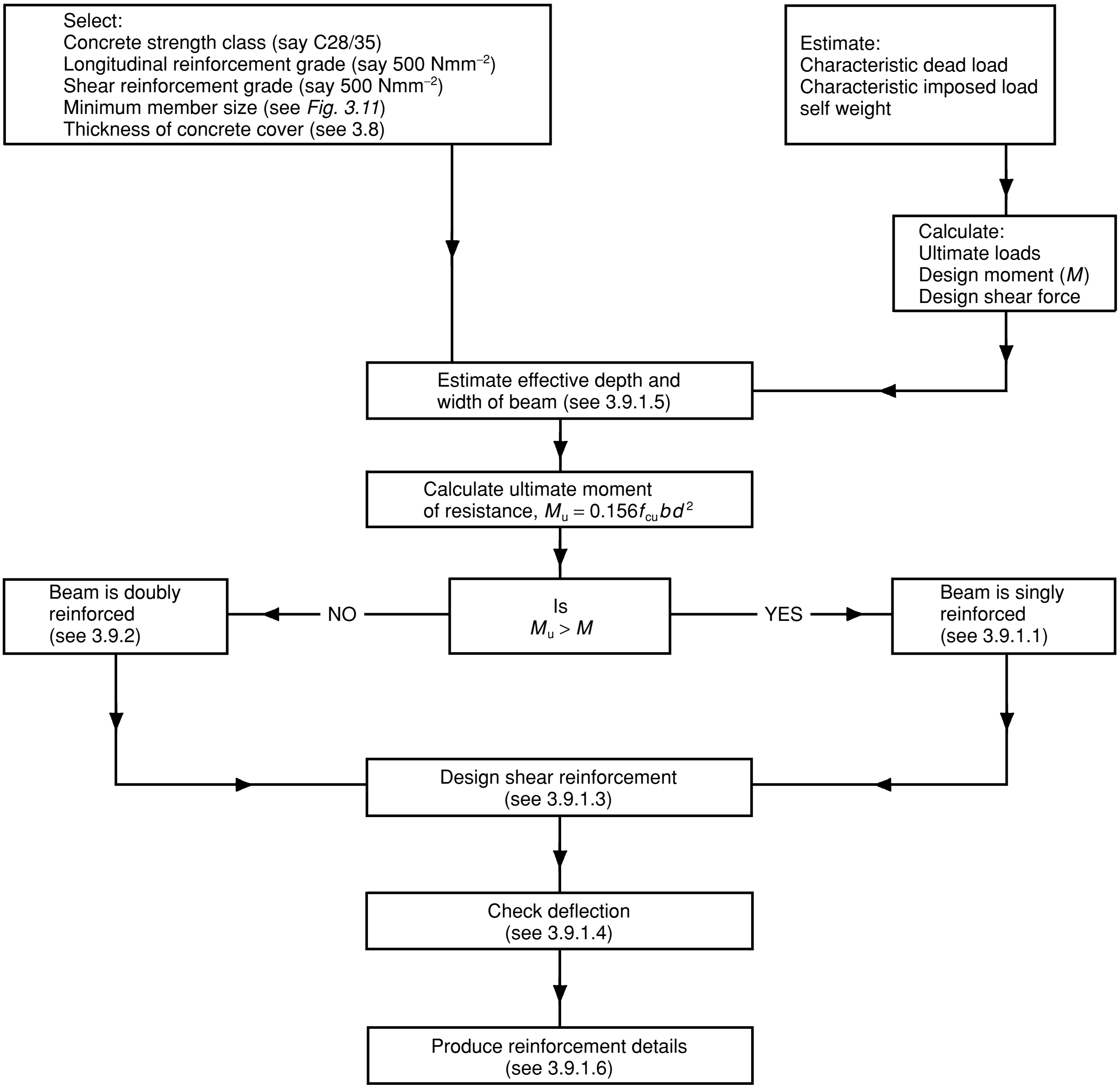


Fig. 3.48 *Beam design procedure.*

3.10.1 TYPES OF SLABS

Slabs may be solid, ribbed, precast or *in-situ* and if *in-situ* they may span two-ways. In practice, the choice of slab for a particular structure will largely depend upon economy, buildability, the loading conditions and the length of the span. Thus for short spans, generally less than 5 m, the most economical solution is to provide a solid slab of constant thickness over the complete span (*Fig. 3.51*).

With medium size spans from 5 to 9 m it is more economical to provide flat slabs since they are generally easier to construct (*Fig. 3.52*). The ease of construction chiefly arises from the fact that the

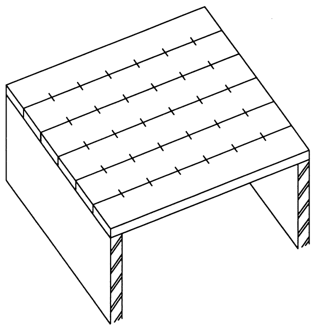


Fig. 3.49 *Floor slab as a series of beams connected transversely.*

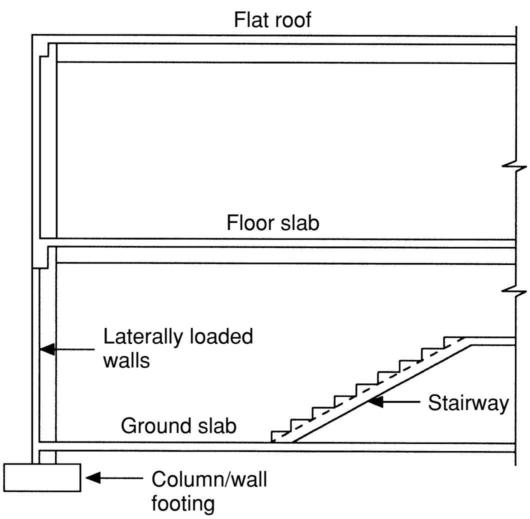


Fig. 3.50 *Various applications for slabs in reinforced concrete structures.*

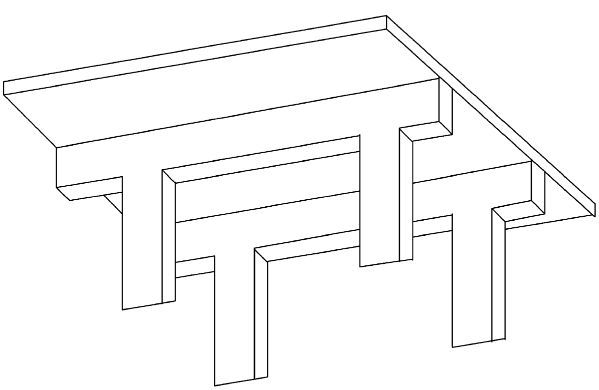


Fig. 3.51 *Solid slab.*

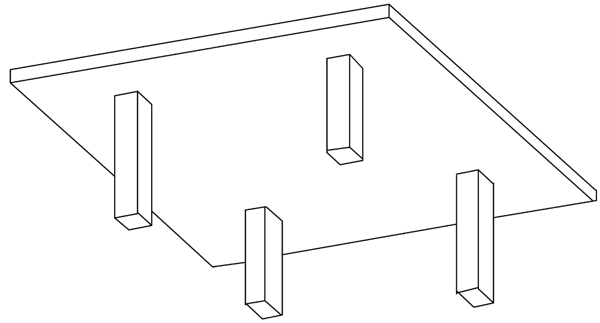


Fig. 3.52 *Flat slab.*

floor has a flat soffit. This avoids having to erect complicated shuttering, thereby making possible speedier and cheaper construction. The use of flat slab construction offers a number of other advantages, absent from other flooring systems, including reduced storey heights, no restrictions on the positioning of partitions, windows can extend up to the underside of the slab and ease of installation of horizontal services. The main drawbacks with flat slabs are that they may deflect excessively and are vulnerable to punching failure. Excessive deflection can be avoided by deepening slabs or by thickening the slab near the columns, using drop panels.

Punching failure arises from the fact that high live loads results in high shear stresses at the supports which may allow the columns to punch through the slab unless appropriate steps are taken. Using deep slabs with large diameter columns, providing drop panels and/or flaring column heads (*Fig. 3.53*), can avoid this problem. However, all these methods have drawbacks, and research effort has therefore been directed at finding alternative solutions. The use of shear hoops, ACI shear stirrups, shear ladders and stud rails (*Fig. 3.54*) are just a few of the solutions that have been proposed over recent years. All are designed to overcome the problem of fixing individual shear links, which is both labour intensive and a practical difficulty.

Shear hoops are prefabricated cages of shear reinforcement which are attached to the main steel. They are available in a range of diameters and are suitable for use with internal and edge columns. Although superficially attractive, use of this system has declined significantly over recent years.

The use of ACI shear stirrups is potentially the simplest and cheapest method of preventing punching shear in flat slabs. The shear stirrups are arrangements of conventional straight bars and links that form a '**+**', '**T**' or '**L**' shape for an internal,

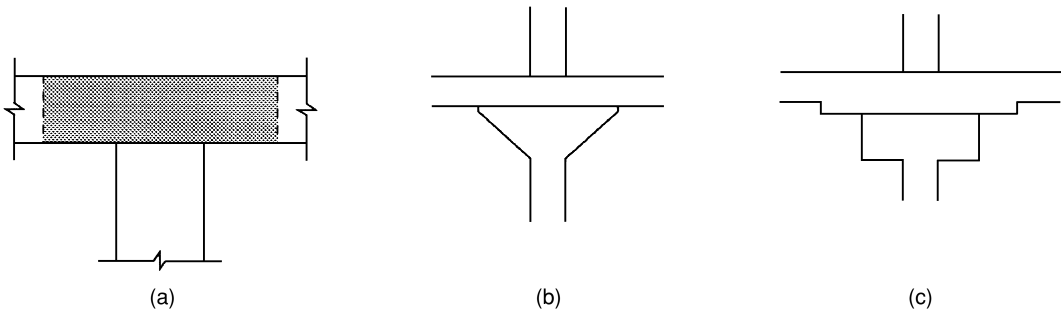


Fig. 3.53 Methods of reducing shear stresses in flat slab construction: (a) deep slab and large column; (b) slab with flared column head; (c) slab with drop panel and column head.

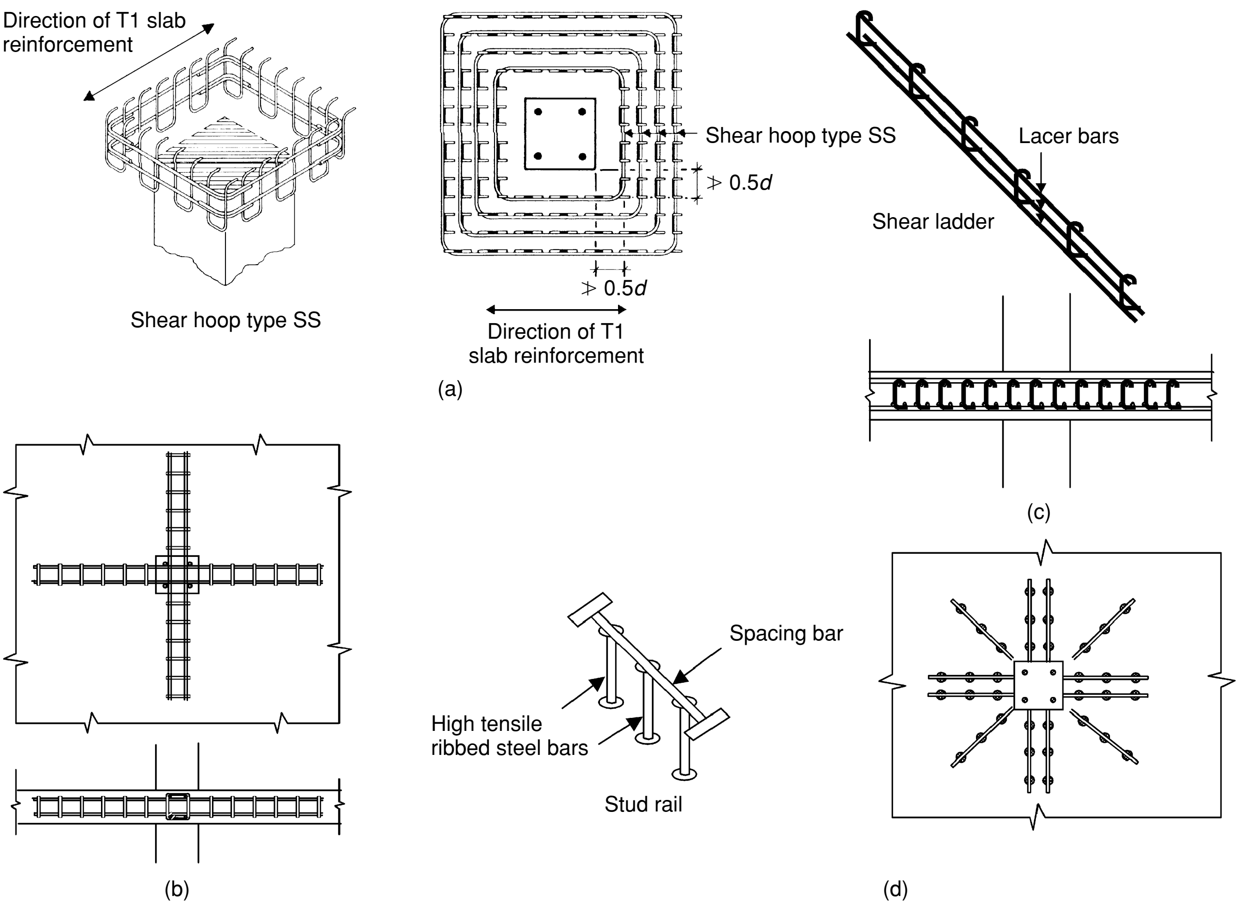


Fig. 3.54 Prefabricated punching shear reinforcement for flat slabs: (a) shear hoops (b) ACI shear stirrups (c) shear ladders (d) stud rails. Typical arrangements for an internal column.

edge or corner column respectively. The stirrups work in exactly the same way as conventional shear reinforcement but can simply be attached to the main steel via the straight bars.

Shear ladders are rows of traditional links that are welded to lacer bars. The links resist the shear stresses and the lacer bars anchor the links to the main steel. Whilst they are simple to design

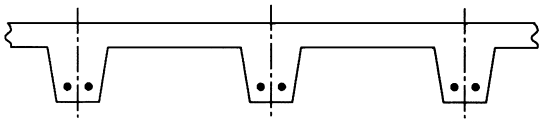


Fig. 3.55 *Ribbed slab.*

and use they can cause problems of congestion of reinforcement.

Stud rails are prefabricated high tensile ribbed headed studs, which are held at standard centres by a welded spacer bar. These rails are arranged in a radial pattern and held in position during the concrete pour by tying to either the top or bottom reinforcement. The studs work through direct mechanical anchorage provided by their heads. They are easy to install but quite expensive.

With medium to long spans and light to moderate live loads from 3 to 5 kN/m^2, it is more economical to provide ribbed slabs constructed using glass reinforced polyester, polypropylene or encapsulated expanded polystyrene moulds (*Fig. 3.55*). Such slabs have reduced self-weight compared to solid slabs since part of the concrete in the tension zone is omitted. However, ribbed slabs have higher formwork costs than the other slabs systems mentioned above and, generally, they are found to be economic in the range 8 to 12 m.

With the emphasis on speed of erection and economy of construction, the use of precast concrete floor slabs is now also popular with both clients and designers. *Fig. 3.56* shows two types of precast concrete units that can be used to form floors. The hollow core planks are very common as they are economic over short, medium and long spans. If desired the soffit can be left exposed whereas the top is normally finished with a levelling screed or appropriate flooring system. Cranage of large precast units, particularly in congested city centre developments, is the biggest obstacle to this type of floor construction.

The span ranges quoted above generally assume the slab is supported along two opposite edges, i.e. it is one-way spanning (*Fig. 3.57*). Where longer

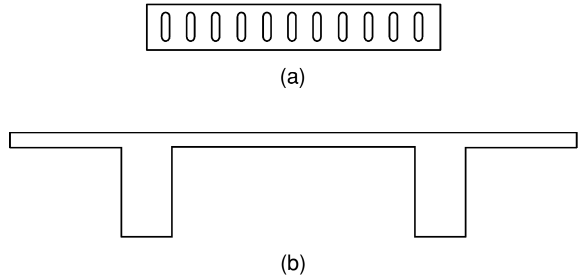


Fig. 3.56 *Precast concrete floor units: (a) hollow core plank (b) double 'T' unit.*

in-situ concrete floor spans are required it is usually more economical to support the slab on all four sides. The cost of supporting beams or walls needs to be considered though. Such slabs are referred to as two-way spanning and are normally designed as two-dimensional plates provided the ratio of the length of the longer side to the length of the shorter side is equal to 2 or less (*Fig. 3.58*).

This book only considers the design of one-way and two-way spanning solid slabs supporting uniformly distributed loads. The reader is referred to more specialised books on this subject for guidance on the design of the other slab types described above.

3.10.2 DESIGN OF ONE-WAY SPANNING SOLID SLAB

The general procedure to be adopted for slab design is as follows:

1. Determine a suitable depth of slab.
2. Calculate main and secondary reinforcement areas.
3. Check critical shear stresses.
4. Check detailing requirements.

3.10.2.1 Depth of slab (clause 3.5.7, BS 8110)

Solid slabs are designed as if they consist of a series of beams of 1 metre width.

The effective span of the slab is taken as the smaller of

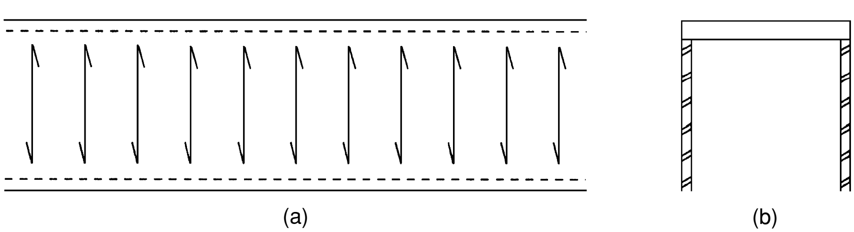


Fig. 3.57 *One-way spanning solid slab: (a) plan; (b) elevation.*

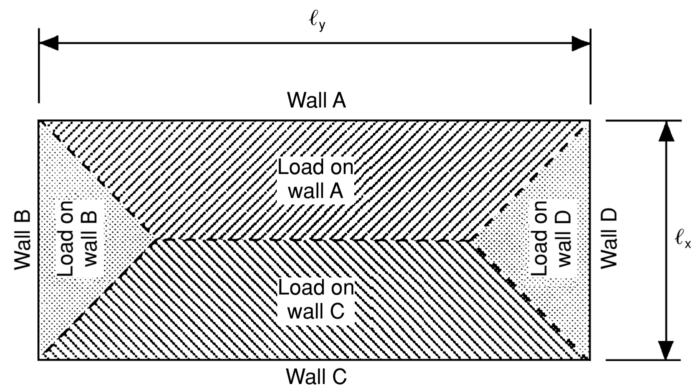


Fig. 3.58 *Plan of two-way spanning slab. l_x length of shorter side, l_y length of longer side. Provided $l_y/l_x \leq 2$ slab will span in two directions as indicated.*

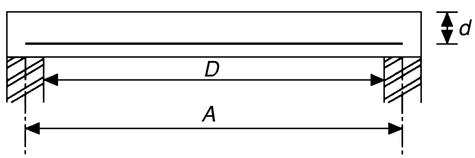


Fig. 3.59 *Effective span of simply supported slab.*

(a) the distance between centres of bearings, A, or
(b) the clear distance between supports, D, plus the effective depth, d, of the slab (*Fig. 3.59*).

The deflection requirements for slabs, which are the same as those for beams, will often control the depth of slab needed. The minimum effective depth of slab, d_{min}, can be calculated using

$$d_{min} = \frac{\text{span}}{\text{basic ratio} \times \text{modification factor}} \tag{3.20}$$

The basic (span/effective depth) ratios are given in *Table 3.14*. The modification factor is a function of the amount of reinforcement in the slab which is itself a function of the effective depth of the slab. Therefore, in order to make a first estimate of the effective depth, d_{min}, of the slab, a value of (say) 1.4 is assumed for the modification factor. The main steel areas can then be calculated (section 3.10.2.2), and used to determine the actual value of the modification factor. If the assumed value is slightly greater than the actual value, the depth of the slab will satisfy the deflection requirements in BS 8110. Otherwise, the calculation must be repeated using a revised value of the modification factor.

3.10.2.2 Steel areas (clause 3.5.4, BS 8110)

The overall depth of slab, h, is determined by adding allowances for cover (*Table 3.6*) and half the (assumed) main steel bar diameter to the effective depth. The self-weight of the slab together with the dead and live loads are used to calculate the design moment, M.

The ultimate moment of resistance of the slab, M_u, is calculated using equation 3.11, developed in section 3.9.1.1, namely

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} b d^2$$

If $M_u \geq M$, which is the usual condition for slabs, compression reinforcement will not be required and the area of tensile reinforcement, A_s, is determined using equation 3.12 developed in section 3.9.1.1, namely

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z}$$

where $z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}]$ in which $K = M/f_{cu}bd^2$.

Secondary or distribution steel is required in the transverse direction and this is usually based on the minimum percentages of reinforcement ($A_{s\,min}$) given in *Table 3.25* of BS 8110:

$$A_{s\,min} = 0.24\%\ A_c \quad \text{when } f_y = 250 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$A_{s\,min} = 0.13\%\ A_c \quad \text{when } f_y = 500 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where A_c is the total area of concrete.

3.10.2.3 Shear (clause 3.5.5 of BS 8110)

Shear resistance is generally not a problem in solid slabs subject to uniformly distributed loads and, in any case, shear reinforcement should not be provided in slabs less than 200 mm deep.

As discussed for beams in section 3.9.1.3, the design shear stress, υ, is calculated from

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd}$$

The ultimate shear resistance, υ_c, is determined using *Table 3.11*. If $\upsilon < \upsilon_c$, no shear reinforcement is required. Where $\upsilon > \upsilon_c$, the form and area of shear reinforcement in solid slabs should be provided in accordance with the requirements contained in *Table 3.21*.

Table 3.18 Form and area of shear reinforcement in solid slabs (Table 3.16, BS 8110)

Values of υ (N/mm^2)	*Area of shear reinforcement to be provided*
$\upsilon < v_c$	None required
$\upsilon_c < \upsilon < (\upsilon_c + 0.4)$	Minimum links in areas where $\upsilon > \upsilon_c$ $A_{sv} \geq 0.4bs_v/0.87f_{yv}$
$(\upsilon_c + 0.4) < \upsilon < 0.8\sqrt{f_{cu}}$ or 5 N/mm^2	Design links $A_{sv} \geq bs_v(\upsilon - \upsilon_c)/0.87f_{yv}$

3.10.2.4 Reinforcement details (clause 3.12, BS 8110)

For reasons of durability the code specifies limits in respect of:

1. minimum percentage of reinforcement
2. spacing of reinforcement
3. maximum crack widths.

These are outlined below together with the simplified rules for curtailment of reinforcement.

1. Reinforcement areas (clause 3.12.5, BS 8110)**.** The area of tension reinforcement, A_s, should not be less than the following limits:

$$A_s \geq 0.24\%A_c \quad \text{when } f_y = 250 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$A_s \geq 0.13\%A_c \quad \text{when } f_y = 500 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where A_c is the total area of concrete.

2. Spacing of reinforcement (clause 3.12.11.2.7, BS 8110)**.** The clear distance between tension bars, s_b, should lie within the following limits: h_{agg} + 5 mm or bar diameter $\leq s_b \leq 3d$ or 750 mm whichever is the lesser where h_{agg} is the maximum aggregate size. (See also below section on crack widths.)

3. Crack width (clause 3.12.11.2.7, BS 8110)**.** Unless the actual crack widths have been checked by direct calculation, the following rules will ensure that crack widths will not generally exceed 0.3 mm. This limiting crack width is based on considerations of appearance and durability.

(i) No further check is required on bar spacing if either:
   (a) f_y = 250 N/mm^2 and slab depth ≤ 250 mm, or
   (b) f_y = 500 N/mm^2 and slab depth ≤ 200 mm, or
   (c) the reinforcement percentage ($100A_s/bd$) < 0.3%.

(ii) Where none of conditions (a), (b) or (c) apply and the percentage of reinforcement in the slab exceed 1 per cent, then the maximum clear distance between bars (s_{max}) given in *Table 3.28* of BS 8110 should be used, namely:

$$s_{max} \leq 280 \text{ mm} \quad \text{when } f_y = 250 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$s_{max} \leq 155 \text{ mm} \quad \text{when } f_y = 500 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

4. Curtailment of reinforcement (clause 3.12.10.3, BS 8110)**.** Simplified rules for the curtailment of reinforcement are given in clause 3.12.10.3 of BS 8110. These are shown diagrammatically in *Fig. 3.60* for simply supported and continuous solid slabs.

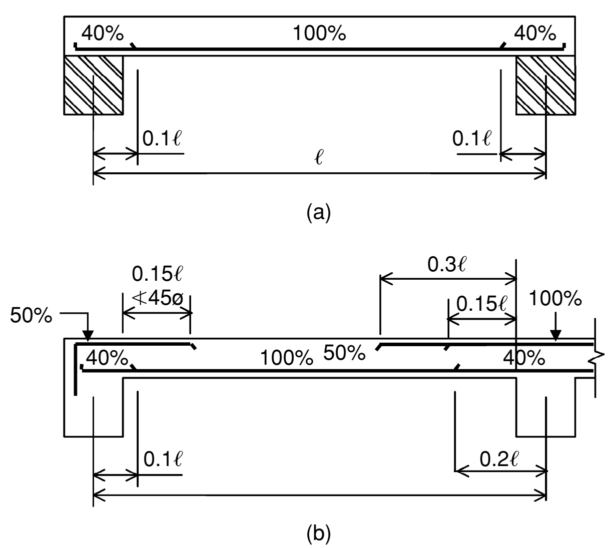
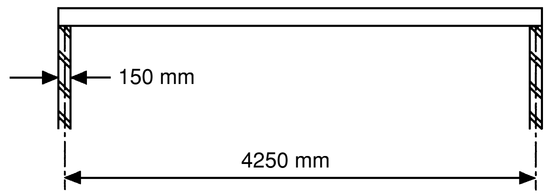


Fig. 3.60 *Simplified rules for curtailment of bars in slabs: (a) simply supported ends; (b) continuous slab (based on Fig. 3.25, BS 8110).*

Example 3.11 Design of a one-way spanning concrete floor (BS 8110)

A reinforced concrete floor subject to an imposed load of 4 kNm^{-2} spans between brick walls as shown below. Design the floor for exposure class XC1 assuming the following material strengths:

$$f_{cu} = 35 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$
$$f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

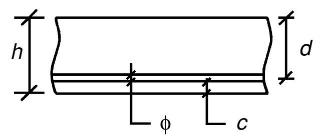


DEPTH OF SLAB AND MAIN STEEL AREA

Overall depth of slab, *h*

$$\text{Minimum effective depth, } d_{min} = \frac{\text{span}}{\text{basic ratio} \times \text{modification factor}}$$
$$= \frac{4250}{20 \times (say)1.4} = 152 \text{ mm}$$

Hence, assume effective depth of slab (d) = 155 mm. Assume diameter of main steel (Φ) = 10 mm. From *Table 3.6*, cover to all steel (c) for exposure class XC1 = 25 mm.



Overall depth of slab (h) = $d + \Phi/2 + c$

$$= 155 + 10/2 + 25 = 185 \text{ mm}$$

LOADING

Dead
Self weight of slab (g_k) = 0.185 × 24 kNm^{-3} = 4.44 kNm^{-2}

Imposed
Total imposed load (q_k) = 4 kNm^{-2}

Ultimate load
For 1 m width of slab total ultimate load, W, is

$$= (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k) \text{ width of slab} \times \text{span}$$
$$= (1.4 \times 4.44 + 1.6 \times 4)1 \times 4.25 = 53.62 \text{ kN}$$

Design moment

$$M = \frac{W\ell}{8} = \frac{53.62 \times 4.25}{8} = 28.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 3.11 *continued*

Ultimate moment

$$\begin{aligned} M_u &= 0.156 f_{cu} b d^2 \\ &= 0.156 \times 35 \times 10^3 \times 155^2 \\ &= 131.2 \times 10^6 = 131.2 \text{ kNm} \end{aligned}$$

Since $M < M_u$, no compression reinforcement is required.

Main steel

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu} b d^2} = \frac{28.5 \times 10^6}{35 \times 10^3 \times 155^2} = 0.0339$$

$$\begin{aligned} z &= d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}] \\ &= 155[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0339/0.9)}] \\ &= 155 \times 0.96 \leq 0.95d \ (= 147 \text{ mm}) \end{aligned}$$

Hence $z = 147$ mm.

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{28.5 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 147} = 446 \text{ mm}^2\text{/m width of slab}$$

For detailing purposes this area of steel has to be transposed into bars of a given diameter and spacing using steel area tables. Thus from *Table 3.22*, provide 10 mm diameter bars spaced at 150 mm, i.e. H10 at 150 centres ($A_s = 523\text{mm}^2\text{/m}$).

Table 3.22 Cross-sectional area per metre width for various bar spacing (mm^2)

Bar size (mm)	*Spacing of bars*								
	50	*75*	*100*	*125*	*150*	*175*	*200*	*250*	*300*
6	566	377	283	226	189	162	142	113	94.3
8	1010	671	503	402	335	287	252	201	168
10	1570	1050	785	628	523	449	393	314	262
12	2260	1510	1130	905	754	646	566	452	377
16	4020	2680	2010	1610	1340	1150	1010	804	670
20	6280	4190	3140	2510	2090	1800	1570	1260	1050
25	9820	6550	4910	3930	3270	2810	2450	1960	1640
32	16100	10700	8040	6430	5360	4600	4020	3220	2680
40	25100	16800	12600	10100	8380	7180	6280	5030	4190

Actual modification factor

The actual value of the modification can now be calculated using equations 7 and 8 given in *Table 3.16* (*section 3.9.1.4*).

$$\text{Design service stress, } f_s = \frac{5 f_y A_{s,req}}{8 A_{s,prov}} \quad \text{(equation 8, } \textit{Table 3.16}\text{)}$$

$$= \frac{5 \times 500 \times 446}{8 \times 523} = 266.5 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Example 3.11 *continued*

$$\text{Modification factor } = 0.55 + \frac{(477 - f_s)}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{M}{bd^2}\right)} \leq 2.0 \quad \text{(equation 7, } \textit{Table 3.16}\text{)}$$

$$= 0.55 + \frac{(477 - 266.5)}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{28.5 \times 10^6}{10^3 \times 155^2}\right)} = 1.39$$

Hence,

$$\text{New } d_{min} = \frac{4250}{20 \times 1.39} = 153 \text{ mm} < \text{assumed } d = 155 \text{ mm}$$

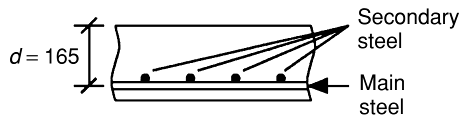
Minimum area of reinforcement, $A_{s\ min}$, is equal to

$$A_{s\ min} = 0.13\% bh = 0.13\% \times 10^3 \times 185 = 241 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m} < A_s$$

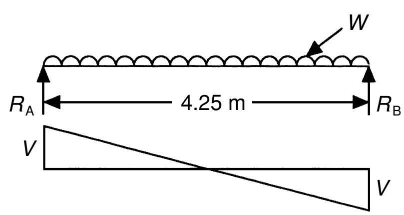
Therefore take d = 155 mm and provide H10 at 150 mm centres as main steel.

SECONDARY STEEL

Based on minimum steel area = 241 mm^2/m. Hence from *Table 3.22*, provide H8 at 200 mm centres (A_s = 252 mm^2/m).



SHEAR REINFORCEMENT



Design shear stress, υ

Since slab is symmetrically loaded

$$R_A = R_B = W/2 = 26.8 \text{ kN}$$

Ultimate shear force (V) = 26.8 kN and design shear stress, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{26.8 \times 10^3}{10^3 \times 155} = 0.17 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Design concrete shear stress, υ_c

Assuming that 50 per cent of main steel is curtailed at the supports, A_s = 523/2 = 262 mm^2/m

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 262}{10^3 \times 155} = 0.169$$

Example 3.11 *continued*

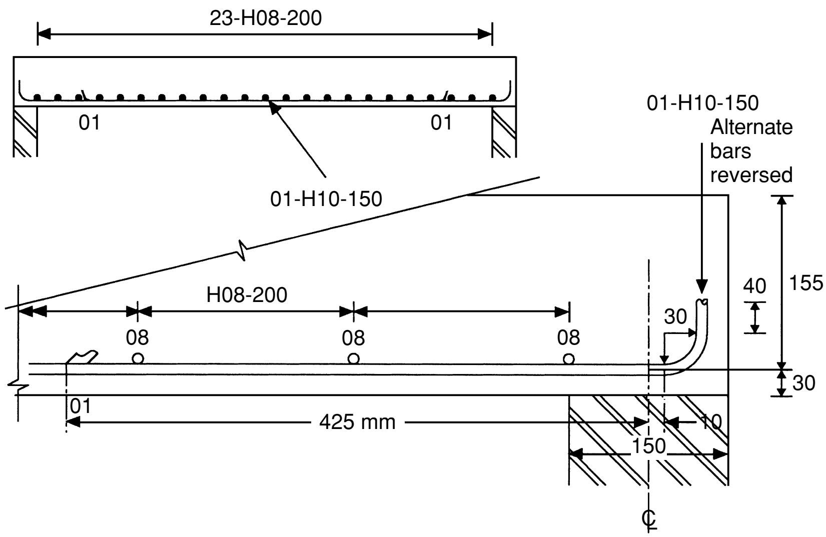
From *Table 3.11*, design concrete shear stress for grade 25 concrete is 0.44 Nmm^{-2}. Hence

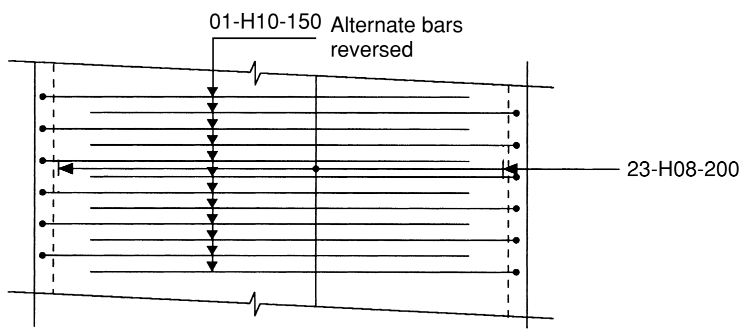
$$\upsilon_c = (35/25)^{1/3} \times 0.44 = 0.52 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

From *Table 3.16* since $\upsilon < \upsilon_c$, no shear reinforcement is required.

REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

The sketch below shows the main reinforcement requirements for the slab. For reasons of buildability the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different.





Check spacing between bars

Maximum spacing between bars should not exceed the lesser of 3*d* (= 465 mm) or 750 mm. Actual spacing = 150 mm main steel and 200 mm secondary steel.   OK

Maximum crack width

Since the slab depth does not exceed 200 mm, the above spacing between bars will automatically ensure that the maximum permissible crack width of 0.3 mm will not be exceeded.

Example 3.12 Analysis of a one-way spanning concrete floor (BS 8110)

A concrete floor reinforced with 10 mm diameter mild steel bars ($f_y = 250$ N/mm^2) at 125 mm centres ($A_s = 628$ mm^2 per metre width of slab) between brick walls as shown in *Fig. 3.61*. Calculate the maximum uniformly distributed imposed load the floor can carry.

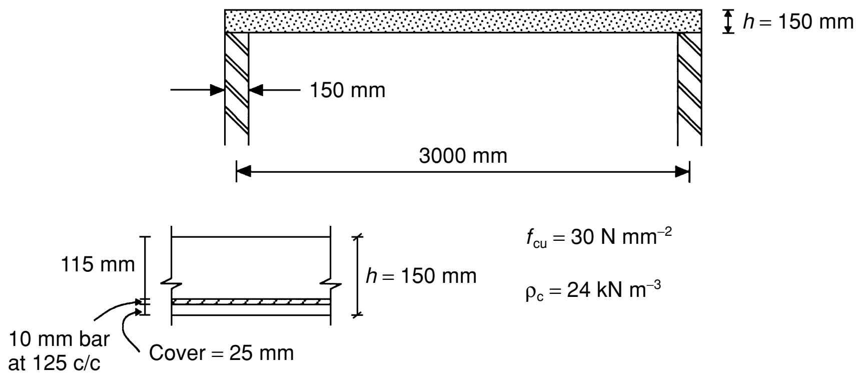


Fig. 3.61

EFFECTIVE SPAN

Effective depth of slab, *d*, is

$$d = h - \text{cover} - \Phi/2$$
$$= 150 - 25 - 10/2 = 120 \text{ mm}$$

Effective span is the lesser of

(a) centre to centre distance between bearings = 3000 mm
(b) clear distance between supports plus effective depth = 2850 + 120 = 2970 mm.

Hence effective span = 2970 mm.

MOMENT CAPACITY, *M*

Assume $z = 0.95d = 0.95 \times 120 = 114$ mm

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z}$$

Hence

$$M = A_s \cdot 0.87 f_y z = 628 \times 0.87 \times 250 \times 114$$
$$= 15.5 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 15.5 \text{ kNm per metre width of slab}$$

MAXIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED IMPOSED LOAD (q_k)

Loading

Dead load
Self weight of slab (g_k) = 0.15×24 kNm^{-3} = 3.6 kNm^{-2}

Example 3.12 *continued*

Ultimate load

Total ultimate load (W) = $(1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)$span

$$= (1.4 \times 3.6 + 1.6q_k)2.970$$

Imposed load

$$\text{Design moment } (M) = \frac{W\ell}{8}$$

$$\text{From above, } M = 15.5 \text{ kNm} = (5.04 + 1.6q_k)\frac{2.970^2}{8}$$

Rearranging gives

$$q_k = \frac{15.5 \times 8/2.970^2 - 5.04}{1.6} = 5.6 \text{ kNm}^{-2}$$

Lever arm (z)

Check that assumed value of z is correct, i.e. $z = 0.95d$.

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{15.5 \times 10^6}{30 \times 10^3 \times 120^2} = 0.0359$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}] \le 0.95d$$

$$= d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0359/0.9)}] = 0.958d$$

Hence, assumed value of z is correct and the maximum uniformly distributed load that the floor can carry is 5.6 kNm^{-2}.

3.10.3 CONTINUOUS ONE-WAY SPANNING SOLID SLAB DESIGN

The design of continuous one-way spanning slabs is similar to that outlined above for single-span slabs. The main differences are that (a) several loading arrangements may need to be considered and (b) such slabs are not statically determinate. Methods such as moment distribution can be used to determine the design moments and shear forces in the slab as discussed in section 3.9.3.1. However, where the following conditions are met, the moments and shear forces can be calculated using the coefficients in *Table 3.12* of BS 8110, part of which is reproduced here as *Table 3.23*.

1. There are three or more spans of approximately equal length.
2. The area of each bay exceeds 30 m^2 (*Fig. 3.62*).
3. The ratio of the characteristic imposed load to the characteristic dead load does not exceed 1.25.
4. The characteristic imposed load does not exceed 5 kN/m^2 excluding partitions.

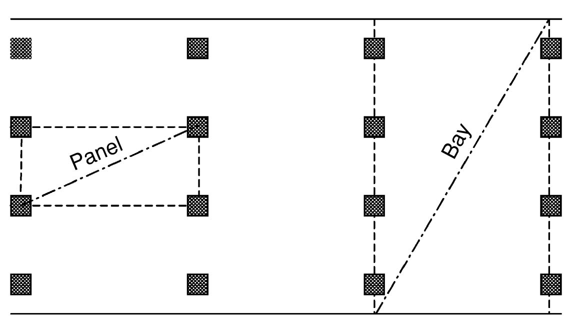


Fig. 3.62 *Definition of panels and bays (Fig. 3.7, BS 8110).*

Table 3.23 Ultimate bending moments and shear forces in one-way spanning slabs with simple end supports (Table 3.12, BS 8110)

	End support	*End span*	*Penultimate support*	*Interior span*	*Interior support*
Moment	0	0.086Fℓ	–0.086Fℓ	0.063Fℓ	–0.063Fℓ
Shear	0.4F	–	0.6F	–	0.5F

F = $1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k$; ℓ = effective span

Example 3.13 Continuous one-way spanning slab design (BS 8110)

Design the continuous one-way spanning slab in Example 3.10 assuming the cover to the reinforcement is 25 mm (*Fig. 3.63*).

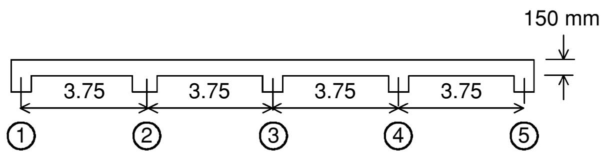


Fig. 3.63

Loading

Dead load, g_k = self-weight of slab + finishes = 0.15 × 24 + 1.5 = 5.1 kNm^{-2}
Imposed load, q_k = 4 kNm^{-2}

For a 1 m width of slab, total ultimate load, $F = (1.4g_k + 1.6q_k)$width of slab × span = (1.4 × 5.1 + 1.6 × 4)1 × 3.75 = 50.8 kN

Design moments and shear forces

Since area of each bay (= 8.5 × 15 = 127.5 m^2) > 30 m^2, q_k/g_k (= 4/5.1 = 0.78) < 1.25 and q_k < 5 kNm^{-2}, the coefficients in *Table 3.23* can be used to calculate the design moments and shear forces in the slab.

Position	*Bending moments (kNm)*	*Shear forces (kN)*
Supports 1 & 5	0	0.4 × 50.8 = 20.3
Near middle of spans 1/2 & 4/5	0.086 × 50.8 × 3.75 = 16.4	
Supports 2 & 4	–0.086 × 50.8 × 3.75 = –16.4	0.6 × 50.8 = 30.5
Middle of spans 2/3 & 3/4	0.063 × 50.8 × 3.75 = 12	
Support 3	–0.063 × 50.8 × 3.75 = –12	0.5 × 50.8 = 25.4

Steel reinforcement

Middle of span 1/2 (and 4/5)

Assume diameter of main steel, ϕ = 10 mm
Effective depth, $d = h_s - (\phi/2 + c) = 150 - (10/2 + 25) = 120$ mm

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{16.4 \times 10^6}{35 \times 1000 \times 120^2} = 0.0325$$

Example 3.13 *continued*

$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}) = 120(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0325/0.9)}) = 115.5 \leq 0.95d = 114 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 \times f_y \times z} = \frac{16.4 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 114} = 331 \text{ mm}^2 > A_{s,min} = 0.13\% bh = 195 \text{ mm}^2 \quad \text{OK}$$

From *Table 3.22*, provide H10@200 mm centres (A_s = 393 mm^2/m) in the bottom of the slab.

Support 2 (and 4)
M = −16.4 kNm. Therefore, provide H10@200 mm centres in the top of the slab.

Middle of span 2/3 (and 3/4)
M = 12 kNm and $z = 0.95d$ = 114 mm. Hence

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 \times f_y \times z} = \frac{12 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 114} = 242 \text{ mm}^2 > A_{s,min} \quad \text{OK}$$

Provide H10@300 mm centres (A_s = 262 mm^2/m) in bottom face of slab.

Support 3
Since M = −12 kNm provide H10@300 mm centres in top face of slab.

Support 1 (and 5)
According to clause 3.12.10.3.2 of BS 8110, although simple supports may have been assumed at end supports for analysis, negative moments may arise which could lead to cracking. Therefore an amount of reinforcement equal to half the area of bottom steel at mid-span but not less than the minimum percentage of steel recommended in *Table 3.25* of BS 8110 should be provided in the top of the slab. Furthermore, this reinforcement should be anchored at the support and extend not less than 0.15ℓ or 45 times the bar size into the span.

From above, area of reinforcement at middle of span 1/2 is 330 mm^2/m. From *Table 3.25* of BS 8110, the minimum area of steel reinforcement is $0.13\% bh = 0.0013 \times 1000 \times 150 = 195$ mm^2/m. Hence provide H10 at 300 mm centres (A_s = 262 mm^2/m) in the top of the slab.

Distribution steel
Based on the minimum area of reinforcement = 195 mm^2/m. Hence, provide H10 at 350 centres (A_s = 224 mm^2/m).

Shear reinforcement

Support 2 (and 4)
Design shear force, V = 30.5 kN

$$\nu = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{30.5 \times 10^3}{1000 \times 120} = 0.25 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 393}{1000 \times 120} = 0.33$$

$$\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\frac{35}{25}} \times 0.57 = 0.64 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} > \nu.$$

From *Table 3.21*, no shear reinforcement is required.

Support 3
Design shear force, V = 25.4 kN

Example 3.13 *continued*

$$\nu = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{25.4 \times 10^3}{1000 \times 120} = 0.21\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 262}{1000 \times 120} = 0.22$$

$$\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\frac{35}{25}} \times 0.51 = 0.57 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} > \nu \quad \text{OK}$$

No shear reinforcement is necessary.

Deflection

$$\text{Actual } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \frac{3750}{120} = 31.25$$

Exterior spans
Steel service stress, f_s, is

$$f_s = \frac{5}{8} f_y \frac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{331}{393} = 263.2\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{Modification factor} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - f_s}{120\left(0.9 + \frac{M}{bd^2}\right)} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - 263.2}{120\left(0.9 + \frac{16.4 \times 10^6}{10^3 \times 120^2}\right)} = 1.42$$

From *Table 3.14*, basic span to effective depth ratio is 26. Hence

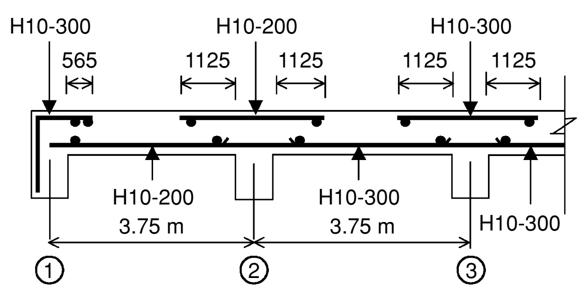
$$\text{permissible } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \text{basic ratio} \times \text{mod. factor} = 26 \times 1.42 = 37 > 31.25 \quad \text{OK}$$

Interior spans
Steel service stress, f_s, is

$$f_s = \frac{5}{8} f_y \frac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{242}{262} = 288.6\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{Modification factor} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - f_s}{120\left(0.9 + \frac{M}{bd^2}\right)} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - 288.6}{120\left(0.9 + \frac{12 \times 10^6}{10^3 \times 120^2}\right)} = 1.45$$

$$\text{Hence permissible } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \text{basic ratio} \times \text{mod. factor} = 26 \times 1.45 = 37.7 > 31.25 \quad \text{OK}$$



Distribution steel is H10-350 (A_s = 224 mm^2/m)

3.10.4 TWO-WAY SPANNING RESTRAINED SOLID SLAB DESIGN

The design of two-way spanning restrained slabs (*Fig. 3.64*) supporting uniformly distributed loads is generally similar to that outlined above for one-way spanning slabs. The extra complication arises from the fact that it is rather difficult to determine the design bending moments and shear forces in these plate-like structures. Fortunately BS 8110 contains tables of coefficients (β_{sx}, β_{sy}, β_{vx}, β_{vy}) that may assist in this task (*Tables 3.24* and *3.25*). Thus, the maximum design moments per unit width of rectangular slabs of shorter side ℓ_x and longer side ℓ_y are given by

$$m_{sx} = \beta_{sx} n \ell_x^2 \quad (3.21)$$

$$m_{sy} = \beta_{sy} n \ell_y^2 \quad (3.22)$$

where

m_{sx} maximum design ultimate moments either over supports or at mid-span on strips of unit width and span ℓ_x (*Fig. 3.65*)

m_{sy} maximum design ultimate moments either over supports or at mid-span on strips of unit width and span ℓ_y

n total design ultimate load per unit area = $1.4g_k + 1.6q_k$

Similarly, the design shear forces at supports in the long span direction, v_{sy}, and short span direction, v_{sx}, may be obtained from the following expressions

$$v_{sy} = \beta_{vy} n \ell_x \quad (3.23)$$

$$v_{sx} = \beta_{vx} n \ell_x \quad (3.24)$$

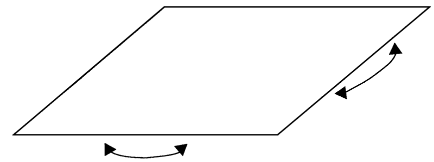


Fig. 3.64 *Bending of two-way spanning slabs.*

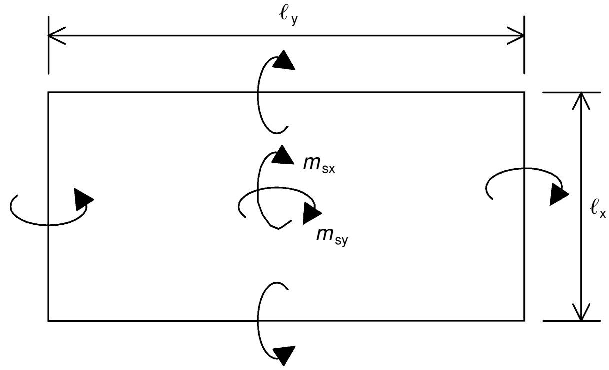


Fig. 3.65 *Location of moments.*

These moments and shears are considered to act over the middle three quarters of the panel width. The remaining edge strips, of width equal to one-eight of the panel width, may be provided with minimum tension reinforcement. In some cases, where there is a significant difference in the support moments calculated for adjacent panels, it may be necessary to modify the mid-span moments in accordance with the procedure given in BS 8110.

Table 3.24 Bending moment coefficients, β_{sx} and β_{sy}, for restrained slabs (based on Table 3.14, BS 8110)

Type of panel and moments considered	*Short span coefficients, β_{sx} Values of ℓ_y/ℓ_x*								*Long span coefficients, β_{sy}, for all values of ℓ_y/ℓ_x*
	1.0	*1.1*	*1.2*	*1.3*	*1.4*	*1.5*	*1.75*	*2.0*	
Interior panels									
Negative moment at continuous edge	0.031	0.037	0.042	0.046	0.050	0.053	0.059	0.063	0.032
Positive moment at mid-span	0.024	0.028	0.032	0.035	0.037	0.040	0.044	0.048	0.024
One long edge discontinuous									
Negative moment at continuous edge	0.039	0.049	0.056	0.062	0.068	0.073	0.082	0.089	0.037
Positive moment at mid-span	0.030	0.036	0.042	0.047	0.051	0.055	0.062	0.067	0.028
Two adjacent edges discontinuous									
Negative moment at continuous edge	0.047	0.056	0.063	0.069	0.074	0.078	0.087	0.093	0.045
Positive moment at mid-span	0.036	0.042	0.047	0.051	0.055	0.059	0.065	0.070	0.034

Table 3.25 Shear force coefficients, β_{vx} and β_{vy}, for restrained slabs (based on Table 3.15, BS 8110)

Type of panel and location	β_{vx} *for values of* ℓ_y/ℓ_x								β_{vy}
	1.0	*1.1*	*1.2*	*1.3*	*1.4*	*1.5*	*1.75*	*2.0*	
Four edges continuous									
Continuous edge	0.33	0.36	0.39	0.41	0.43	0.45	0.48	0.50	0.33
One long edge discontinuous									
Continuous edge	0.36	0.40	0.44	0.47	0.49	0.51	0.55	0.59	0.36
Discontinuous edge	0.24	0.27	0.29	0.31	0.32	0.34	0.36	0.38	–
Two adjacent edges discontinuous									
Continuous edge	0.40	0.44	0.47	0.50	0.52	0.54	0.57	0.60	0.40
Discontinuous edge	0.26	0.29	0.31	0.33	0.34	0.35	0.38	0.40	0.26

Example 3.14 Design of a two-way spanning restrained slab (BS 8110)

Fig. 3.66 shows a part plan of an office floor supported by monolithic concrete beams (not detailed), with individual slab panels continuous over two or more supports. The floor is to be designed to support an imposed load of 4 kNm^{-2} and finishes plus ceiling loads of 1.25 kNm^{-2}. The characteristic strength of the concrete is 30 Nmm^{-2} and the steel reinforcement is 500 Nmm^{-2}. The cover to steel reinforcement is 25 mm.

(a) Calculate the mid-span moments for panels AB2/3 and *BC*1/2 assuming the thickness of the floor is 180 mm.
(b) Design the steel reinforcement for panel *BC*2/3 (shown hatched) and check the adequacy of the slab in terms of shear resistance and deflection. Illustrate the reinforcement details on plan and elevation views of the panel.

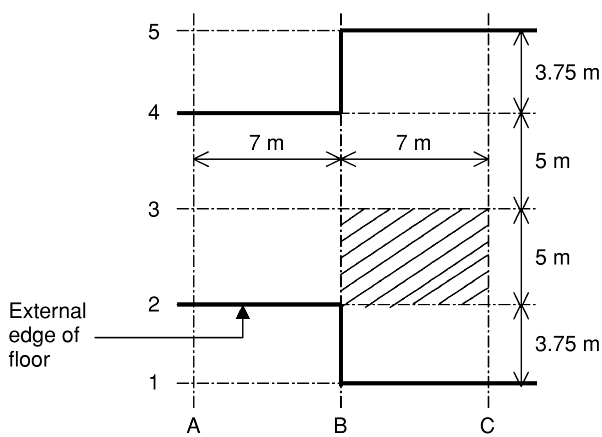


Fig. 3.66

MID-SPAN MOMENTS

Loading

Total dead load, g_k = finishes etc. + self-weight of slab = $1.25 + 0.180 \times 24 = 5.57$ kNm^{-2}
Imposed load, $q_k = 4$ kNm^{-2}
Design load, $n = 1.4g_k + 1.6q_k = 1.4 \times 5.57 + 1.6 \times 4 = 14.2$ kNm^{-2}

Example 3.14 *continued*

PANEL AB2/3

By inspection, panel AB2/3 has a discontinuous long edge. Also $\ell_y/\ell_x = 7/5 = 1.4$
From *Table 3.24*,

short span coefficient for mid-span moment, $\beta_{sx} = 0.051$
long span coefficient for mid-span moment, $\beta_{sy} = 0.028$

Hence mid-span moment in the short span, $m_{sx} = \beta_{sx} n \ell_x^2 = 0.051 \times 14.2 \times 5^2 = 18.1$ kNm and mid-span moment in the long span, $m_{sy} = \beta_{sy} n \ell_x^2 = 0.028 \times 14.2 \times 5^2 = 9.9$ kNm

PANEL BC1/2

By inspection, panel BC1/2 has two adjacent discontinuous edges and $\ell_y/\ell_x = 7/3.75 = 1.87$. From *Table 3.24*,

short span coefficient for mid-span moment, $\beta_{sx} = 0.0675$
long span coefficient for mid-span moment, $\beta_{sy} = 0.034$

Hence mid-span moment in the short span, $m_{sx} = \beta_{sx} n \ell_x^2 = 0.0675 \times 14.2 \times 3.75^2 = 13.5$ kNm and mid-span moment in the long span, $m_{sy} = \beta_{sy} n \ell_x^2 = 0.034 \times 14.2 \times 3.75^2 = 6.8$ kNm

PANEL BC2/3

Design moment

By inspection, panel BC2/3 is an interior panel. $\ell_y/\ell_x = 7/5 = 1.4$
From *Table 3.24*,

short span coefficient for negative (i.e. hogging) moment at continuous edge, $\beta_{sx,n} = 0.05$
short span coefficient for positive (i.e. sagging) moment at mid-span, $\beta_{sx,p} = 0.037$

long span coefficient for negative moment at continuous edge, $\beta_{sy,n} = 0.032$ and
long span coefficient for positive moment at mid-span, $\beta_{sy,p} = 0.024$

Hence negative moment at continuous edge in the short span,

$$m_{sx,n} = \beta_{sx,n} n \ell_x^2 = 0.05 \times 14.2 \times 5^2 = 17.8 \text{ kNm;}$$

positive moment at mid-span in the short span,

$$m_{sx,p} = \beta_{sx,p} n \ell_x^2 = 0.037 \times 14.2 \times 5^2 = 13.1 \text{ kNm;}$$

negative moment at continuous edge in the long span,

$$m_{sy,n} = \beta_{sy,n} n \ell_x^2 = 0.032 \times 14.2 \times 5^2 = 11.4 \text{ kNm;}$$

and positive moment at mid-span in the long span,

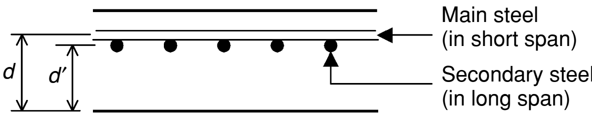
$$m_{sy,p} = \beta_{sy,p} n \ell_x^2 = 0.024 \times 14.2 \times 5^2 = 8.5 \text{ kNm.}$$

Steel reinforcement

Continuous supports

At continuous supports the slab resists hogging moments in both the short-span and long-span directions. Therefore two layers of reinforcement will be needed in the top face of the slab. Comparison of design moments shows that the moment in the short span (17.8 kNm) is greater than the moment in the long span (11.4 kNm) and it is appropriate therefore that the steel in the short span direction (i.e. main steel) be placed at a greater effective depth than the steel in the long-span direction (i.e. secondary steel) as shown.

Example 3.14 *continued*



Assume diameter of main steel, $\phi = 10$ mm and nominal cover, $c = 25$ mm. Hence,

$$\text{Effective depth of main steel, } d = h - \frac{\phi}{2} - c = 180 - \frac{10}{2} - 25 = 150 \text{ mm}$$

Assume diameter of secondary steel, $\phi' = 10$ mm. Hence,

$$\text{Effective depth of secondary steel, } d' = h - \phi - \frac{\phi'}{2} - c = 180 - 10 - \frac{10}{2} - 25 = 140 \text{ mm}$$

Main steel

$$K = \frac{m_{sx,n}}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{17.8 \times 10^6}{30 \times 10^3 \times 150^2} = 0.0264$$

$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}) \le 0.95d = 0.95 \times 150 = 142.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$= 150(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0264/0.9)}) = 150 \times 0.97 = 146 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87f_yz} = \frac{17.8 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500(0.95 \times 150)} = 287 \text{ mm}^2\text{/m} > 0.13\%bh = 234 \text{ mm}^2\text{/m} \quad \text{OK}$$

Provide H10@250 centres ($A_s = 314$ mm^2/m) in short span direction.

Secondary steel

$$K = \frac{m_{sy,n}}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{11.4 \times 10^6}{30 \times 10^3 \times 140^2} = 0.0194$$

$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}) \le 0.95d = 0.95 \times 140 = 133 \text{ mm}$$

$$= 140(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0194/0.9)}) = 140 \times 0.98 = 137 \text{ mm}$$

(Note that for slabs generally, $z = 0.95d$)

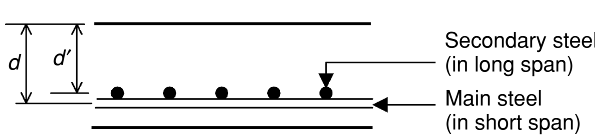
$$A_s = \frac{m_{sy,n}}{0.87 \times f_y \times z} = \frac{11.4 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times (0.95 \times 140)} = 197 \text{ mm}^2\text{/m}$$

$$\ge 0.13\%bh = 234 \text{ mm}^2\text{/m}$$

Provide H10@300 centres ($A_s = 262$ mm^2/m) in long span direction.

Mid-span

At mid-span the slab resists sagging moments in both the short-span and long-span directions, necessitating two layers of reinforcement in the bottom face of the slab too. Comparison of mid-span moments shows that the moment in the short span (13.1 kNm) is greater than the moment in the long span (8.5 kNm) and it is again appropriate therefore that the steel in the short span direction (main steel) be placed at a greater effective depth than the steel in the long span direction (secondary steel) as shown.



Example 3.14 *continued*

Assume diameter of main steel, $\phi = 10$ mm and nominal cover, $c = 25$ mm. Hence

$$\text{Effective depth of main steel, } d = h - \frac{\phi}{2} - c = 180 - \frac{10}{2} - 25 = 150 \text{ mm}$$

Assuming diameter of secondary steel, $\phi' = 10$ mm. Hence

$$\text{Effective depth of secondary steel, } d' = h - \phi - \frac{\phi'}{2} - c = 180 - 10 - \frac{10}{2} - 25 = 140 \text{ mm}$$

Main steel

$$A_s = \frac{m_{sx,p}}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{13.1 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500(0.95 \times 150)} = 211 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

$$\geq A_{s,min} = 0.13\% bh = 234 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

Provide H10@300 centres ($A_s = 262$ mm^2/m) in short span direction.

Secondary steel

$$A_s = \frac{m_{sy,p}}{0.87 \times f_y \times z} = \frac{8.5 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times (0.95 \times 140)} = 147 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

$$\geq A_{s,min} = 0.13\% bh = 234 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

Provide H10@300 centres ($A_s = 262$ mm^2/m) in long span direction.

Shear

From *Table 3.25*,

long span coefficient, $\beta_{vy} = 0.33$ and
short span shear coefficient, $\beta_{vx} = 0.43$

Design load on beams B2/3 and C2/3, $v_{sy} = \beta_{vy} n \ell_x = 0.33 \times 14.2 \times 5 = 23.4$ kNm^{-1}
Design load on beams 2B/C and 3B/C, $v_{sx} = \beta_{vx} n \ell_x = 0.43 \times 14.2 \times 5 = 30.5$ kNm^{-1} (critical)

Shear stress, $\nu = \dfrac{\nu_{sx}}{bd} = \dfrac{30.5 \times 10^3}{10^3 \times 150} = 0.20$ Nmm^{-2}

$$\frac{100 A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 314}{10^3 \times 150} = 0.21$$

From *Table 3.12*, $\nu_c = \sqrt[3]{\dfrac{30}{25}} \times 0.48 = 0.51$ Nmm^{-2}

Since $\nu_c > \nu$ no shear reinforcement is required

Deflection

For two-way spanning slabs, the deflection check is satisfied provided the span/effective depth ratio in the shorter span does not exceed the appropriate value in *Table 3.14* multiplied by the modification factor obtained via equations 7 and 8 of *Table 3.16*

$$\text{Actual} \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = \frac{5000}{150} = 33.3$$

Example 3.14 *continued*

Service stress, f_s, is

$$f_s = \frac{5}{8} f_y \frac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{211}{262} = 252\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{Modification factor } = 0.55 + \frac{477 - f_s}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{m_{sx,p}}{bd^2}\right)} = 0.55 + \frac{477 - 252}{120\left(0.9 + \dfrac{13.1 \times 10^6}{10^3 \times 150^2}\right)} = 1.81$$

$$\text{Permissible } \frac{\text{span}}{\text{effective depth}} = 26 \times 1.81 = 47 > \text{actual} \quad \text{OK}$$

Reinforcement details

Fig. 3.67 shows a sketch of the main reinforcement details for panel BC2/3. For reasons of buildability the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different.

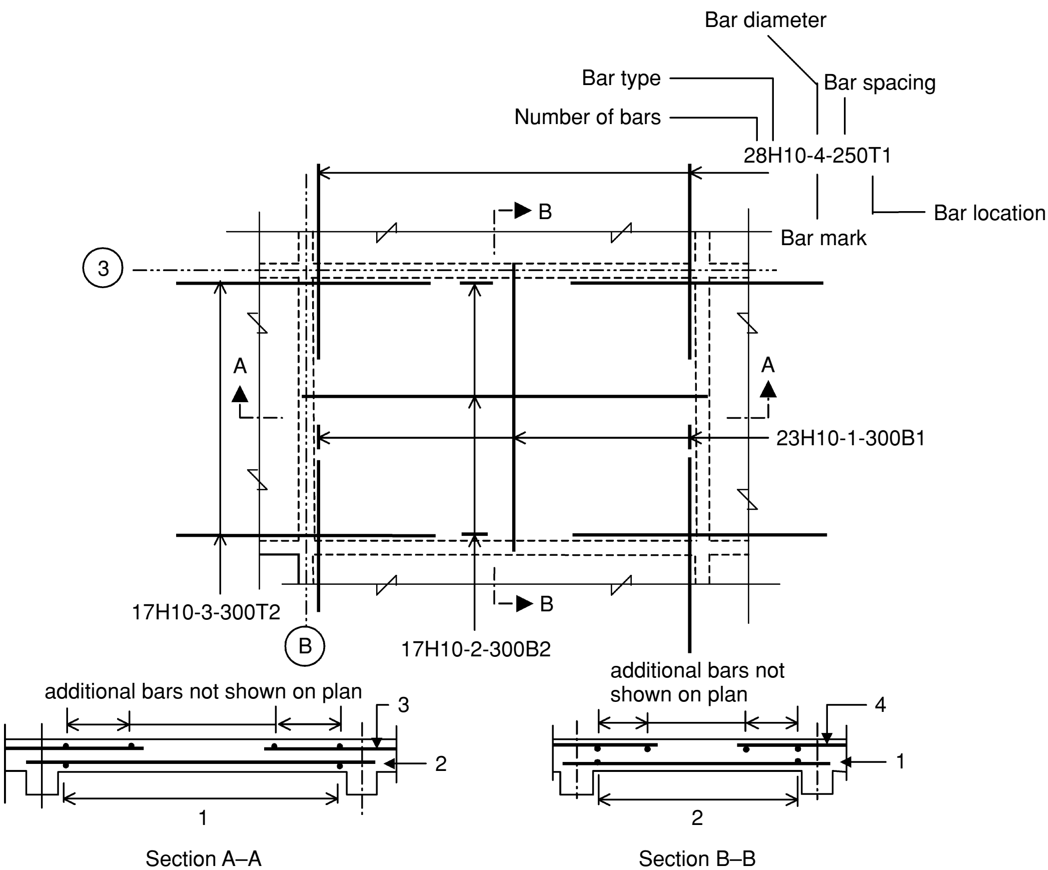


Fig. 3.67

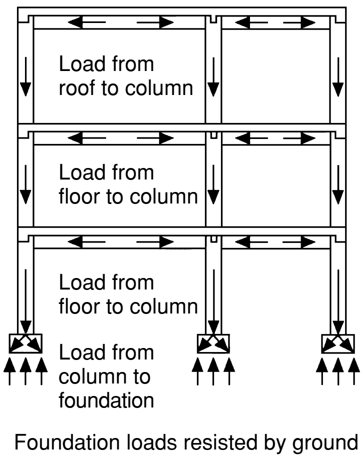


Fig. 3.68 *Loading on foundations.*

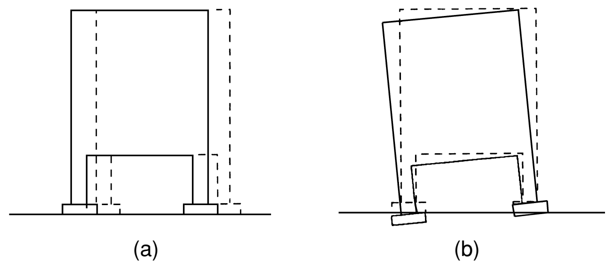


Fig. 3.69 *Foundation failures: (a) sliding failure; (b) overturning failure.*

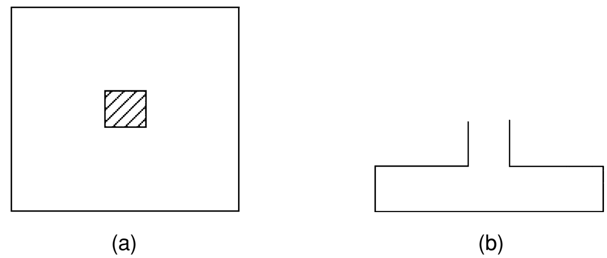


Fig. 3.70 *Pad footing: (a) plan; (b) elevation.*

3.11 Foundations

Foundations are required primarily to carry the dead and imposed loads due to the structure's floors, beams, walls, columns, etc. and transmit and distribute the loads safely to the ground (*Fig. 3.68*). The purpose of distributing the load is to avoid the safe bearing capacity of the soil being exceeded otherwise excessive settlement of the structure may occur.

Foundation failure can produce catastrophic effects on the overall stability of a structure so that it may slide or even overturn (*Fig. 3.69*). Such failures are likely to have tremendous financial and safety implications. It is essential, therefore, that much attention is paid to the design of this element of a structure.

3.11.1 FOUNDATION TYPES

There are many types of foundations which are commonly used, namely strip, pad and raft. The foundations may bear directly on the ground or be supported on piles. The choice of foundation type will largely depend upon (1) ground conditions (i.e. strength and type of soil) and (2) type of structure (i.e. layout and level of loading).

Pad footings are usually square or rectangular slabs and used to support a single column (*Fig. 3.70*). The pad may be constructed using mass concrete or reinforced concrete depending on the relative size of the loading. Detailed design of pad footings is discussed in section 3.11.2.1.

Continuous strip footings are used to support loadbearing walls or under a line of closely spaced columns (*Fig. 3.71*). Strip footings are designed as pad footings in the transverse direction and in the

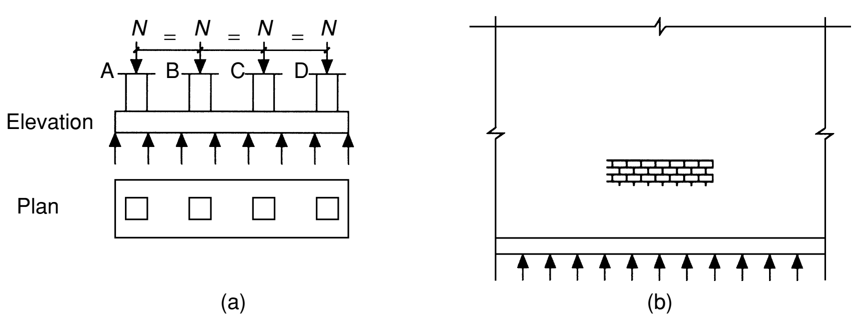


Fig. 3.71 *Strip footings: (a) footing supporting columns; (b) footing supporting wall.*

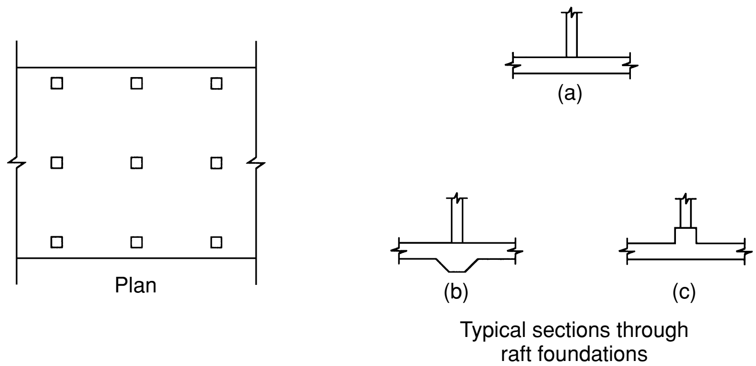


Fig. 3.72 *Raft foundations. Typical sections through raft foundation: (a) flat slab; (b) flat slab and downstand; (c) flat slab and upstand.*

longitudinal direction as an inverted continuous beam subject to the ground bearing pressure.

Where the ground conditions are relatively poor, a raft foundation may be necessary in order to distribute the loads from the walls and columns over a large area. In its simplest form this may consist of a flat slab, possibly strengthened by upstand or downstand beams for the more heavily loaded structures (*Fig. 3.72*).

Where the ground conditions are so poor that it is not practical to use strip or pad footings but better quality soil is present at lower depths, the use of pile foundations should be considered (*Fig. 3.73*).

The piles may be made of precast reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete or in-situ reinforced concrete. Loads are transmitted from the piles to the surrounding strata by end bearing and/or friction. End bearing piles derive most of their carrying capacity from the penetration resistance of the soil at the toe of the pile, while friction piles rely on the adhesion or friction between the sides of the pile and the soil.

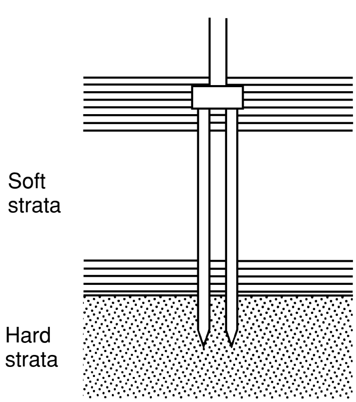


Fig. 3.73 *Piled foundations.*

3.11.2 FOUNDATION DESIGN

Foundation failure may arise as a result of (a) allowable bearing capacity of the soil being exceeded, or (b) bending and/or shear failure of the base. The first condition allows the plan-area of the base to be calculated, being equal to the design load divided by the bearing capacity of the soil, i.e.

$$\text{Ground pressure} = \frac{\text{design load}}{\text{plan area}} < \text{bearing capacity of soil} \qquad (3.25)$$

Since the settlement of the structure occurs during its working life, the design loadings to be considered when calculating the size of the base should be taken as those for the **serviceability limit state** (i.e. $1.0G_k + 1.0Q_k$). The calculations to determine the thickness of the base and the bending and shear reinforcement should, however, be based on **ultimate loads** (i.e. $1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k$). The design of a pad footing only will be considered here. The reader is referred to more specialised books on this subject for the design of the other foundation types discussed above. However, it should be borne in mind that in most cases the design process would be similar to that for beams and slabs.

3.11.2.1 Pad footing

The general procedure to be adopted for the design of pad footings is as follows:

1. Calculate the plan area of the footing using serviceability loads.
2. Determine the reinforcement areas required for bending using ultimate loads (*Fig. 3.74*).
3. Check for punching, face and transverse shear failures (*Fig. 3.75*).

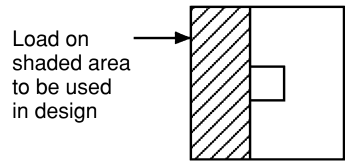


Fig. 3.74 *Critical section for bending.*

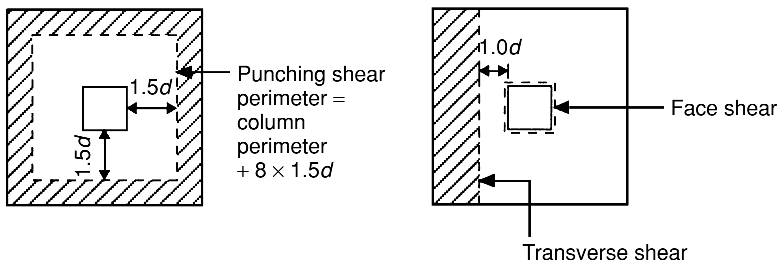
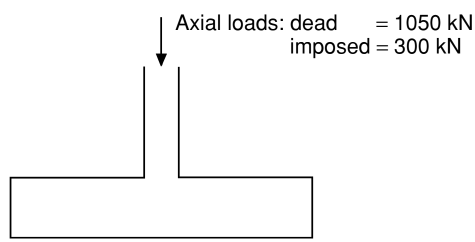


Fig. 3.75 *Critical sections for shear. (Load on shaded areas to be used in design.)*

Example 3.15 Design of a pad footing (BS 8110)

A 400 mm square column carries a dead load (G_k) of 1050 kN and imposed load (Q_k) of 300 kN. The safe bearing capacity of the soil is 170 kNm^{-2}. Design a square pad footing to resist the loads assuming the following material strengths:

$$f_{cu} = 35 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} \qquad f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$



PLAN AREA OF BASE

Loading

Dead load

Assume a footing weight of 130 kN

$$\text{Total dead load } (G_k) = 1050 + 130 = 1180 \text{ kN}$$

Serviceability load

$$\text{Design axial load } (N) = 1.0G_k + 1.0Q_k = 1.0 \times 1180 + 1.0 \times 300 = 1480 \text{ kN}$$

Plan area

$$\text{Plan area of base} = \frac{N}{\text{bearing capacity of soil}} = \frac{1480}{170} = 8.70 \text{ m}^2$$

Hence provide a 3 m square base (plan area = 9 m^2)

Example 3.15 *continued*

Self-weight of footing

Assume the overall depth of footing (h) = 600 mm

Self weight of footing = area × h × density of concrete

$$= 9 \times 0.6 \times 24 = 129.6 \text{ kN} < \text{assumed (130 kN)}$$

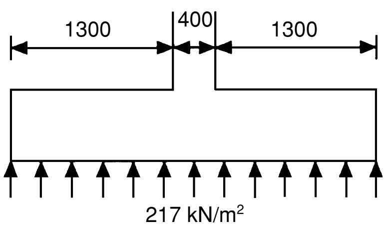
BENDING REINFORCEMENT

Design moment, *M*

Total ultimate load (W) = $1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k$

$$= 1.4 \times 1050 + 1.6 \times 300 = 1950 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Earth pressure } (p_s) = \frac{W}{\textit{plan area of base}} = \frac{1950}{9} = 217 \text{ kNm}^{-2}$$



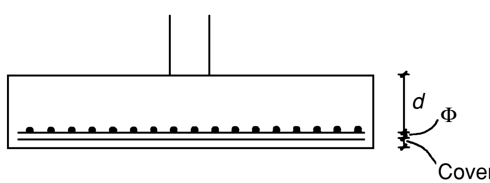
$$\text{Maximum design moment occurs at face of column } (M) = \frac{p_s \ell^2}{2} = \frac{217 \times 1.300^2}{2}$$

$$= 183 \text{ kNm/m width of slab}$$

Ultimate moment

Effective depth

Base to be cast against blinding, hence cover (c) to reinforcement = 50 mm (see *Table 3.8*). Assume 20 mm diameter (Φ) bars will be needed as bending reinforcement in both directions.



Hence, average effective depth of reinforcement, d, is

$$d = h - c - \Phi = 600 - 50 - 20 = 530 \text{ mm}$$

Ultimate moment

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} bd^2 = 0.156 \times 35 \times 10^3 \times 530^2$$

$$= 1534 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 1534 \text{ kNm}$$

Since $M_u > M$ no compression reinforcement is required.

Example 3.15 *continued*

Main steel

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{183 \times 10^6}{35 \times 1000 \times 530^2} = 0.0186$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}]$$

$$= d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0186/0.9)}]$$

$$= 0.979d \leq 0.95d = 0.95 \times 530 = 504 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87f_y z} = \frac{183 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 504} = 835 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

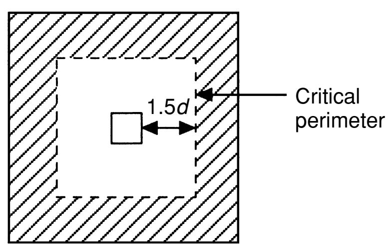
Minimum steel area is

$$0.13\%bh = 780 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m} < A_s \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence from *Table 3.22*, provide H20 at 300 mm centres (A_s = 1050 mm^2/m) distributed uniformly across the full width of the footing parallel to the x–x and y–y axis (see clause 3.11.3.2, BS 8110).

CRITICAL SHEAR STRESSES

Punching shear



Critical perimeter, p_{crit}, is

$$= \text{column perimeter} + 8 \times 1.5d$$

$$= 4 \times 400 + 8 \times 1.5 \times 530 = 7960 \text{ mm}$$

Area within perimeter is

$$(400 + 3d)^2 = (400 + 3 \times 530)^2 = 3.96 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^2$$

Ultimate punching force, V, is

$$V = \text{load on shaded area} = 217 \times (9 - 3.96) = 1094 \text{ kN}$$

Design punching shear stress, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{p_{crit}d} = \frac{1094 \times 10^3}{7960 \times 530} = 0.26 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\frac{100A_s}{bd} = \frac{100 \times 1050}{10^3 \times 530} = 0.198$$

Hence from *Table 3.11*, design concrete shear stress, υ_c, is

$$\upsilon_c = (35/25)^{1/3} \times 0.37 = 0.41 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Since $\upsilon_c > \upsilon$, punching failure is unlikely and a 600 mm depth of slab is acceptable.

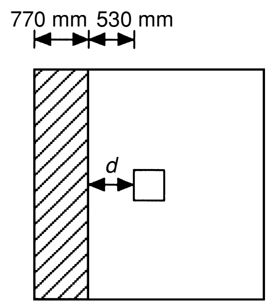
Example 3.15 *continued*

Face shear

Maximum shear stress (υ_{max}) occurs at face of column. Hence

$$\upsilon_{max} = \frac{W}{\textit{column perimeter} \times d} = \frac{1950 \times 10^3}{(4 \times 400) \times 530} = 2.3 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < \text{permissible } (= 0.8\sqrt{35} = 4.73 \text{ Nmm}^{-2})$$

Transverse shear



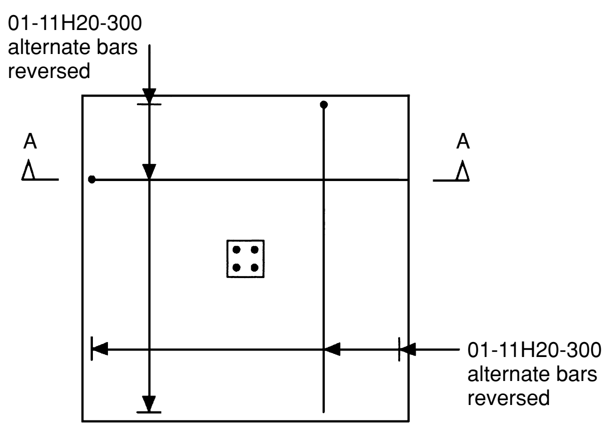
Ultimate shear force (V) = load on shaded area = $p_s \times$ area = 217(3 × 0.770) = 501 kN
Design shear stress, υ, is

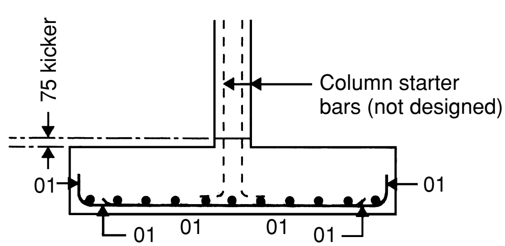
$$\upsilon = \frac{V}{bd} = \frac{501 \times 10^3}{3 \times 10^3 \times 530} = 0.32 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < \upsilon_c$$

Hence no shear reinforcement is required.

REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

The sketch below shows the main reinforcement requirements for the pad footing.





Section A–A

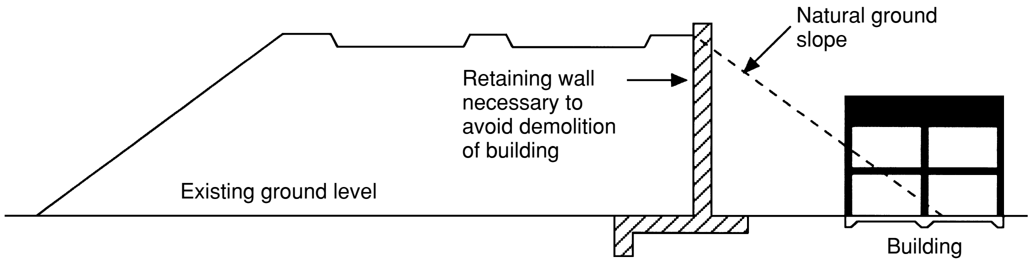


Fig. 3.76 Section through road embankment incorporating a retaining wall.

3.12 Retaining walls

Sometimes it is necessary to maintain a difference in ground levels between adjacent areas of land. Typical examples of this include road and railway embankments, reservoirs and ramps. A common solution to this problem is to build a natural slope between the two levels. However, this is not always possible because slopes are very demanding of space. An alternative solution which allows an immediate change in ground levels to be effected is to build a vertical wall which is capable of resisting the pressure of the retained material. These structures are commonly referred to as retaining walls (*Fig. 3.76*). Retaining walls are important elements in many building and civil engineering projects and the purpose of the following sections is to briefly describe the various types of retaining walls available and outline the design procedure associated with one common type, namely cantilever retaining walls.

3.12.1 TYPES OF RETAINING WALLS

Retaining walls are designed on the basis that they are capable of withstanding all horizontal pressures and forces without undue movement arising from deflection, sliding or overturning. There are two main categories of concrete retaining walls (a) gravity walls and (b) flexible walls.

3.12.1.1 Gravity walls

Where walls up to 2 m in height are required, it is generally economical to choose a gravity retaining wall. Such walls are usually constructed of mass concrete with mesh reinforcement in the faces to reduce thermal and shrinkage cracking. Other construction materials for gravity walls include masonry and stone (*Fig. 3.77*).

Gravity walls are designed so that the resultant force on the wall due to the dead weight and the earth pressures is kept within the middle third of the base. A rough guide is that the width of base should be about a third of the height of the retained material. It is usual to include a granular layer behind the wall and weep holes near the base to minimise hydrostatic pressure behind the wall. Gravity walls rely on their dead weight for strength and stability. The main advantages with this type of wall are simplicity of construction and ease of maintenance.

3.12.1.2 Flexible walls

These retaining walls may be of two basic types, namely (i) cantilever and (ii) counterfort.

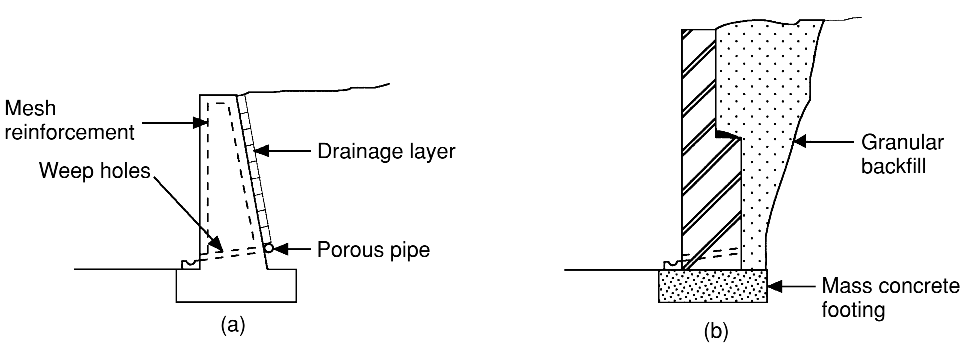


Fig. 3.77 Gravity retaining walls: (a) mass concrete wall; (b) masonry wall.

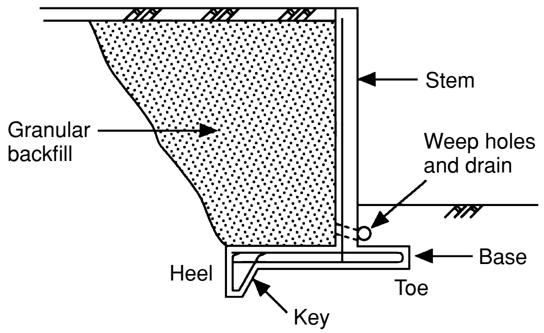


Fig. 3.78 Cantilever wall.

(i) Cantilever walls. Cantilevered reinforced concrete retaining walls are suitable for heights up to about 7 m. They generally consist of a uniform vertical stem monolithic with a base slab (*Fig. 3.78*). A key is sometimes incorporated at the base of the wall in order to prevent sliding failure of the wall. The stability of these structures often relies on the weight of the structure and the weight of backfill on the base. This is perhaps the most common type of wall and, therefore, the design of such walls is considered in detail in section 3.12.2.

(ii) Counterfort walls. In cases where a higher stem is needed, it may be necessary to design the wall as a counterfort (*Fig. 3.79*). Counterfort walls can be designed as continuous slabs spanning horizontally between vertical supports known as counterforts. The counterforts are designed as cantilevers and will normally have a triangular or trapezoidal shape. As with cantilever walls, stability is provided by the weight of the structure and earth on the base.

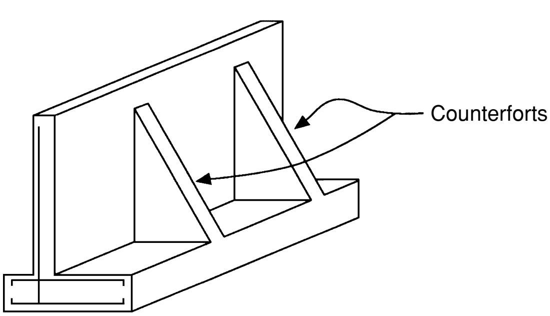


Fig. 3.79 Counterfort retaining wall.

3.12.2 DESIGN OF CANTILEVER WALLS

Generally, the design process involves ensuring that the wall will not fail either due to foundation failure or structural failure of the stem or base. Specifically, the design procedure involves the following steps:

1. Calculate the soil pressures on the wall.
2. Check the stability of the wall.
3. Design the bending reinforcement.

As in the case of slabs, the design of retaining walls is usually based on a 1 m width of section.

3.12.2.1 Soil pressures

The method most commonly used for determining the soil pressures is based on Rankin's formula, which may be considered to be conservative but is straightforward to apply. The pressure on the wall resulting from the retained fill has a destabilising effect on the wall and is normally termed active pressure (*Fig. 3.80*). The earth in front of the wall resists the destabilising forces and is termed passive pressure.

The active pressure (p_a) is given by

$$p_a = \rho k_a z \tag{3.26}$$

where
ρ = unit weight of soil (kN/m^3)
k_a = coefficient of active pressure
z = height of retained fill.

Here k_a is calculated using

$$k_a = \frac{1 - \sin\phi}{1 + \sin\phi} \tag{3.27}$$

where ϕ is the internal angle of friction of retained soil. Typical values of ρ and ϕ for various soil types are shown in *Table 3.26*.

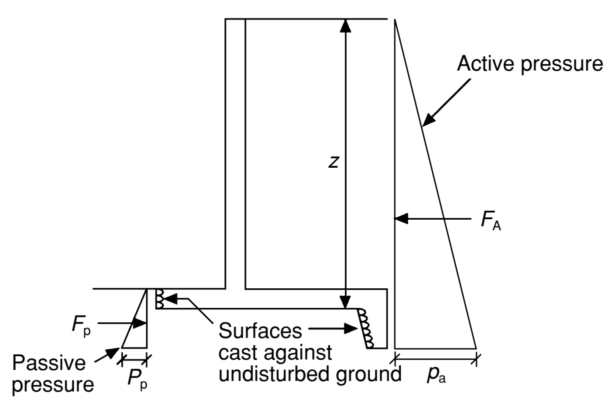


Fig. 3.80 Active and passive pressure acting on a wall.

Table 3.26 Values of ρ and ϕ

Material	ρ *(kN/m³)*	ϕ
Sandy gravel	17–22	35°–40°
Loose sand	15–16	30°–35°
Crushed rock	12–22	35°–40°
Ashes	9–10	35°–40°
Broken brick	15–16	35°–40°

The passive pressure (p_p) is given by

$$p_p = \rho k_p z \tag{3.28}$$

where
ρ = unit weight of soil
z = height of retained fill
k_p = coefficient of passive pressure and is calculated using

$$k_p = \frac{1 + \sin \phi}{1 - \sin \phi} = \frac{1}{k_a} \tag{3.29}$$

3.12.2.2 Stability

Fountain failure of the wall may arise due to (a) sliding or (b) rotation. Sliding failure will occur if the active pressure force (F_A) exceeds the passive pressure force (F_P) plus the friction force (F_F) arising at the base/ground interface (*Fig. 3.81(a)*) where

$$F_A = 0.5 p_a h_1 \tag{3.30}$$

$$F_P = 0.5 p_p h_2 \tag{3.31}$$

$$F_F = \mu W_t \tag{3.32}$$

The factor of safety against this type of failure occurring is normally taken to be at least 1.5:

$$\frac{F_F + F_P}{F_A} \geq 1.5 \tag{3.33}$$

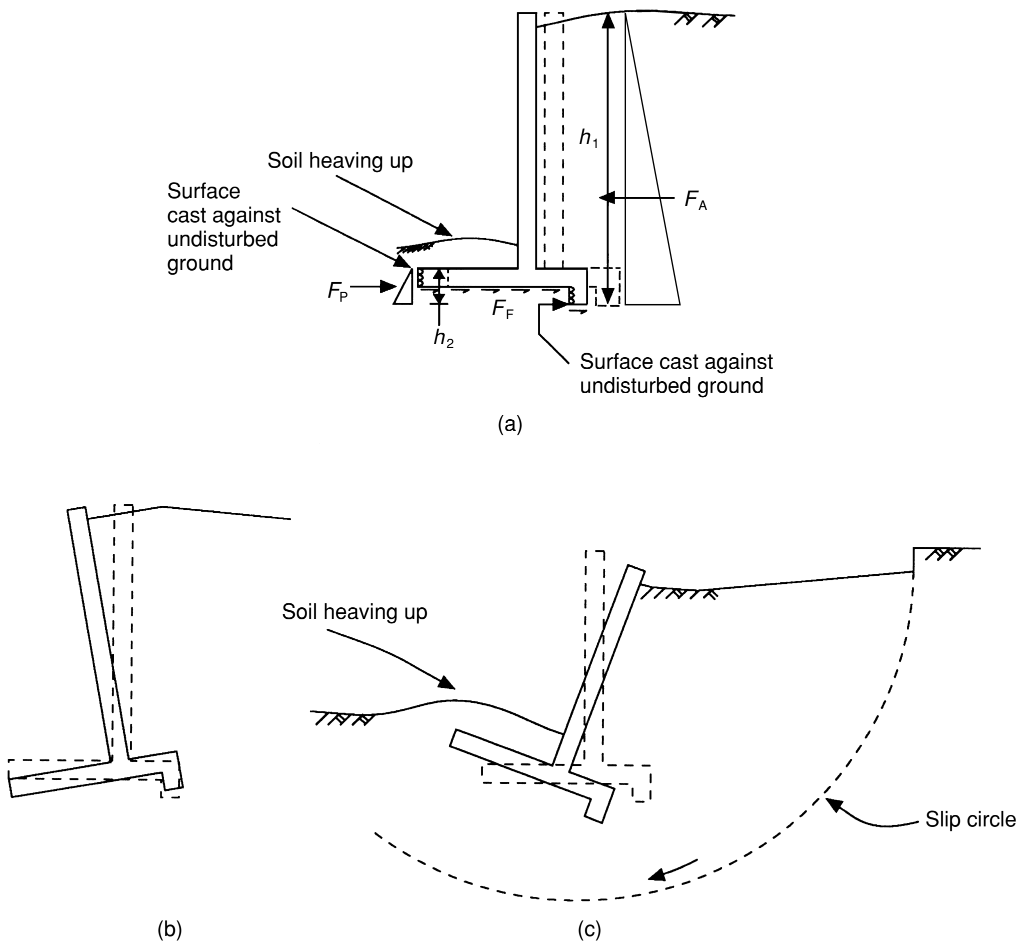


Fig. 3.81 *Modes of failure: (a) sliding; (b) overturning; (c) slip circle.*

Rotational failure of the wall may arise due to:

1. the overturning effect of the active pressure force (*Fig. 3.81(b)*);
2. bearing pressure of the soil being exceeded which will display similar characteristics to (1); or
3. failure of the soil mass surrounding the wall (*Fig. 3.81(c)*).

Failure of the soil mass (type (3)) will not be considered here but the reader is referred to any standard book on soil mechanics for an explanation of the procedure to be followed to avoid such failures.

Failure type (1) can be checked by taking moments about the toe of the foundation (A) as shown in *Fig. 3.82* and ensuring that the ratio of sum of restoring moments ($\sum M_{res}$) and sum of overturning moments ($\sum M_{over}$) exceeds 2.0, i.e.

$$\frac{\sum M_{res}}{\sum M_{over}} \geq 2.0 \qquad (3.34)$$

Failure type (2) can be avoided by ensuring that the ground pressure does not exceed the allowable bearing pressure for the soil. The ground pressure under the toe (p_{toe}) and the heel (p_{heel}) of the base can be calculated using

$$p_{toe} = \frac{N}{D} + \frac{6M}{D^2} \qquad (3.35)$$

$$p_{heel} = \frac{N}{D} - \frac{6M}{D^2} \qquad (3.36)$$

provided that the load eccentricity lies within the middle third of the base, that is

$$M/N \leq D/6 \qquad (3.37)$$

where
M = moment about centre line of base
N = total vertical load (W_t)
D = width of base

3.12.2.3 Reinforcement areas

Structural failure of the wall may arise if the base and stem are unable to resist the vertical and horizontal forces due to the retained soil. The area of steel reinforcement needed in the wall can be calculated by considering the ultimate limit states of bending and shear. As was pointed out at the beginning of this chapter, cantilever retaining walls can be regarded for design purposes as three cantilever beams (*Fig. 3.2*) and thus the equations developed in section 3.9 can be used here.

The areas of main reinforcement (A_s) can be calculated using

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z}$$

where
M = design moment
f_y = reinforcement grade
$z = d\sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}]$
$K = M/f_{cu}bd^2$

The area of distribution steel is based on the minimum steel area (A_s) given in *Table 3.25* of BS 8110, i.e.

$$A_s = 0.13\%A_c \quad \text{when } f_y = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$A_s = 0.24\%A_c \quad \text{when } f_y = 250 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

where A_c is the total cross-sectional area of concrete.

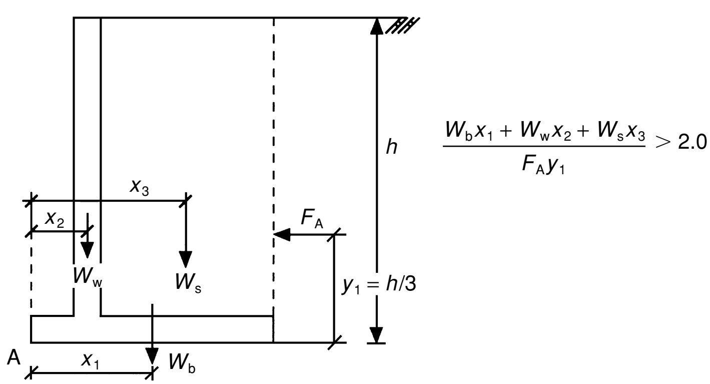
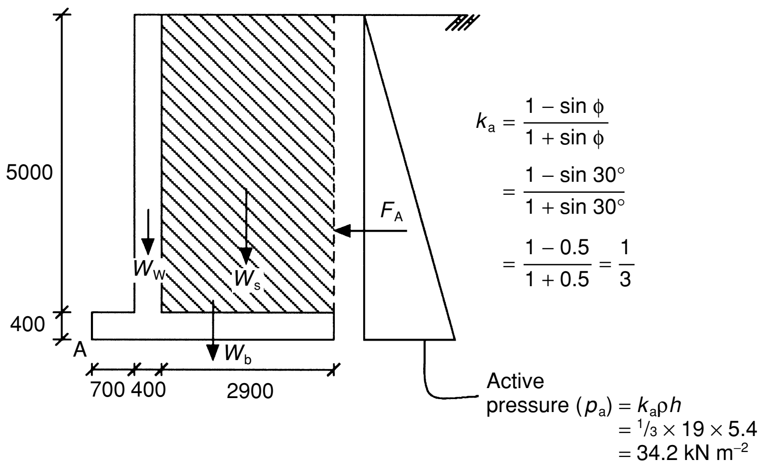


Fig. 3.82

Example 3.16 Design of a cantilever retaining wall (BS 8110)

The cantilever retaining wall shown below is backfilled with granular material having a unit weight, ρ, of 19 kNm^{-3} and an internal angle of friction, ϕ, of 30°. Assuming that the allowable bearing pressure of the soil is 120 kNm^{-2}, the coefficient of friction is 0.4 and the unit weight of reinforced concrete is 24 kNm^{-3}

1. Determine the factors of safety against sliding and overturning.
2. Calculate ground bearing pressures.
3. Design the wall and base reinforcement assuming f_{cu} = 35 kNm^{-2}, f_y = 500 kNm^{-2} and the cover to reinforcement in the wall and base are, respectively, 35 mm and 50 mm.



SLIDING

Consider the forces acting on a 1 m length of wall. Horizontal force on wall due to backfill, F_A, is

$$F_A = 0.5p_a h = 0.5 \times 34.2 \times 5.4 = 92.34 \text{ kN}$$

and

Weight of wall (W_w)	$= 0.4 \times 5 \times 24 = 48.0$ kN
Weight of base (W_b)	$= 0.4 \times 4 \times 24 = 38.4$ kN
Weight of soil (W_s)	$= 2.9 \times 5 \times 19 = 275.5$ kN
Total vertical force (W_t)	$= 361.9$ kN

Friction force, F_F, is

$$F_F = \mu W_t = 0.4 \times 361.9 = 144.76 \text{ kN}$$

Assume passive pressure force (F_P) = 0. Hence factor of safety against sliding is

$$\frac{144.76}{92.34} = 1.56 > 1.5 \quad \text{OK}$$

OVERTURNING

Taking moments about point A (see above), sum of overturning moments (M_{over}) is

$$\frac{F_A \times 5.4}{3} = \frac{92.34 \times 5.4}{3} = 166.2 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 3.16 *continued*

Sum of restoring moments (M_{res}) is

$$M_{res} = W_w \times 0.9 + W_b \times 2 + W_s \times 2.55$$
$$= 48 \times 0.9 + 38.4 \times 2 + 275.5 \times 2.55 = 822.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Factor of safety against overturning is

$$\frac{822.5}{166.2} = 4.9 > 2.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

GROUND BEARING PRESSURE

Moment about centre line of base (M) is

$$M = \frac{F_A \times 5.4}{3} + W_W \times 1.1 - W_S \times 0.55$$
$$= \frac{92.34 \times 5.4}{3} + 48 \times 1.1 - 275.5 \times 0.55 = 67.5 \text{ kNm}$$
$$N = 361.9 \text{ kN}$$
$$\frac{M}{N} = \frac{67.5}{361.9} = 0.187\, m < \frac{D}{6} = \frac{4}{6} = 0.666 \text{ m}$$

Therefore, the maximum ground pressure occurs at the toe, p_{toe}, which is given by

$$p_{toe} = \frac{361.9}{4} + \frac{6 \times 67.5}{4^2} = 116 \text{ kNm}^{-2} < \text{allowable } (120 \text{ kNm}^{-2})$$

Ground bearing pressure at the heel, p_{heel}, is

$$p_{heel} = \frac{361.9}{4} - \frac{6 \times 67.5}{4^2} = 65 \text{ kNm}^{-2}$$

BENDING REINFORCEMENT

Wall

Height of stem of wall, h_s = 5 m. Horizontal force on stem due to backfill, F_s, is

$$F_s = 0.5 k_a \rho h_s^2$$
$$= 0.5 \times {}^1/_3 \times 19 \times 5^2$$
$$= 79.17 \text{ kNm}^{-1} \text{ width}$$

Design moment at base of wall, M, is

$$M = \frac{\gamma_f F_s h_s}{3} = \frac{1.4 \times 79.17 \times 5}{3} = 184.7 \text{ kNm}$$

Effective depth

Assume diameter of main steel (Φ) = 20 mm.
Hence effective depth, d, is

$$d = 400 - \text{cover} - \Phi/2 = 400 - 35 - 20/2 = 355 \text{ mm}$$

Ultimate moment of resistance

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} b d^2 = 0.156 \times 35 \times 10^3 \times 355^2 \times 10^{-6} = 688 \text{ kNm}$$

Since $M_u > M$, no compression reinforcement is required.

Example 3.16 *continued*

Steel area

$$K = \frac{M}{f_{cu}bd^2} = \frac{184.7 \times 10^6}{35 \times 10^3 \times 355^2} = 0.0419$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}]$$

$$= 355[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0419/0.9)}] = 337 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{184.7 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 337} = 1260 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

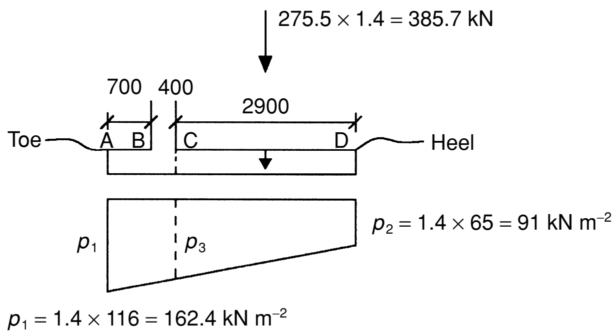
Hence from *Table 3.22*, provide H20 at 200 mm centres (A_s = 1570 mm^2/m) in near face (NF) of wall. Steel is also required in the front face (FF) of wall in order to prevent excessive cracking. This is based on the minimum steel area, i.e.

$$= 0.13\% bh = 0.13\% \times 10^3 \times 400 = 520 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

Hence, provide H12 at 200 centres (A_s = 566 mm^2)

Base

Heel



$$p_3 = 91 + \frac{2.9(162.4 - 91)}{4} = 142.8 \text{ kNm}^{-2}$$

Design moment at point C, M_c, is

$$\frac{385.7 \times 2.9}{2} + \frac{2.9 \times 38.4 \times 1.4 \times 1.45}{4} - \frac{91 \times 2.9^2}{2} - \frac{51.8 \times 2.9 \times 2.9}{2 \times 3} = 160.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Assuming diameter of main steel (Φ) = 20 mm and cover to reinforcement is 50 mm, effective depth, d, is

$$d = 400 - 50 - 20/2 = 340 \text{ mm}$$

$$K = \frac{160.5 \times 10^6}{35 \times 10^3 \times 340^2} = 0.0397$$

$$z = 340[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 0.0397/0.9)}] \le 0.95d = 323 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_y z} = \frac{160.5 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 323} = 1142 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

Hence from *Table 3.22*, provide H20 at 200 mm centres (A_s = 1570 mm^2/m) in top face (T) of base.

Example 3.16 *continued*

Toe

Design moment at point B, M_B, is given by

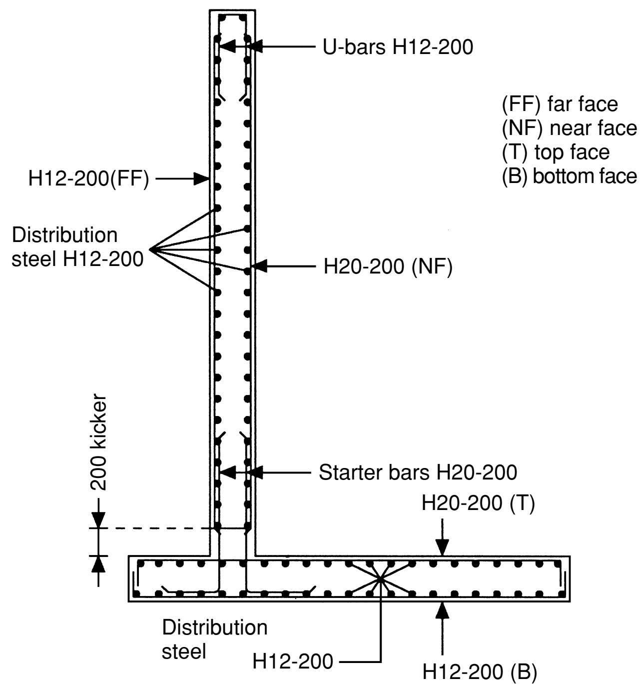
$$M_B \approx \frac{162.4 \times 0.7^2}{2} - \frac{0.7 \times 38.4 \times 1.4 \times 0.7}{4 \times 2} = 36.5 \text{ kNm}$$

$$A_s = \frac{36.5 \times 1142}{160.5} = 260 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m} < \text{minimum steel area} = 520 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

Hence provide H12 at 200 mm centres ($A_s = 566$ mm^2/m), in bottom face (B) of base and as distribution steel in base and stem of wall.

REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

The sketch below shows the main reinforcement requirements for the retaining wall. For reasons of buildability the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different.



3.13 Design of short braced columns

The function of columns in a structure is to act as vertical supports to suspended members such as beams and roofs and to transmit the loads from these members down to the foundations (*Fig. 3.83*). Columns are primarily compression members although they may also have to resist bending moments transmitted by beams.

Columns may be classified as short or slender, braced or unbraced, depending on various dimensional and structural factors which will be discussed below. However, due to limitations of space, the study will be restricted to the design of the most common type of column found in building structures, namely short-braced columns.

3.13.1 COLUMN SECTIONS

Some common column cross-sections are shown in *Fig. 3.84*. Any section can be used, however,

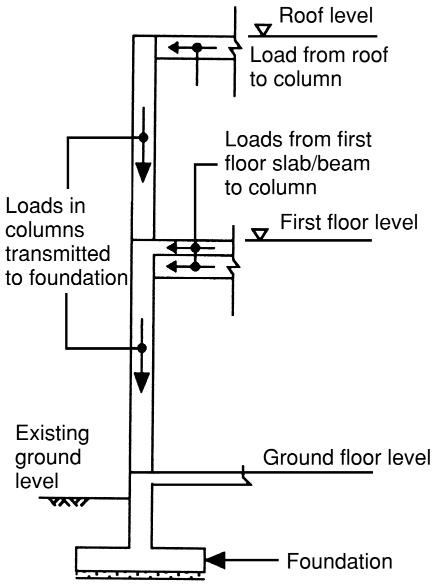


Fig. 3.83

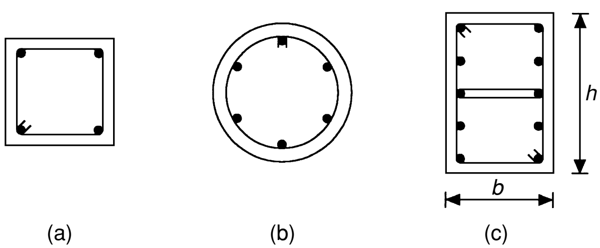


Fig. 3.84 *Column cross-sections.*

provided that the greatest overall cross-sectional dimension does not exceed four times its smaller dimension (i.e. $h \leq 4b$, *Fig. 3.84(c)*). With sections where $h > 4b$ the member should be regarded as a wall for design purposes (clause 1.2.4.1, BS 8110).

3.13.2 SHORT AND SLENDER COLUMNS

Columns may fail due to one of three mechanisms:

1. compression failure of the concrete/steel reinforcement (*Fig. 3.85*);
2. buckling (*Fig. 3.86*);
3. combination of buckling and compression failure.

For any given cross-section, failure mode (1) is most likely to occur with columns which are short and stocky, while failure mode (2) is probable with columns which are long and slender. It is important, therefore, to be able to distinguish between columns which are short and those which are slender since the failure mode and hence the design procedures for the two column types are likely to be different.

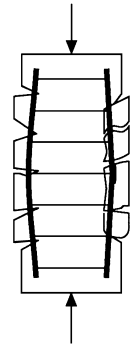


Fig. 3.85

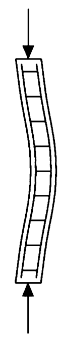


Fig. 3.86

Clause 3.8.1.3 of BS 8110 classifies a column as being short if

$$\frac{\ell_{ex}}{h} < 15 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\ell_{ey}}{b} < 15$$

where

ℓ_{ex} effective height of the column in respect of the major axis (i.e. x–x axis)
ℓ_{ey} effective height of the column in respect of the minor axis
b width of the column cross-section
h depth of the column cross-section

It should be noted that the above definition applies only to columns which are braced, rather than unbraced. This distinction is discussed more fully in section 3.13.3. Effective heights of columns is covered in section 3.13.4.

3.13.3 BRACED AND UNBRACED COLUMNS (CLAUSE 3.8.1.5, BS 8110)

A column may be considered braced if the lateral loads, due to wind for example, are resisted by

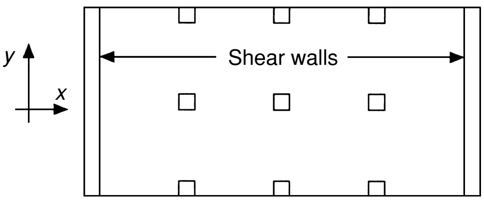


Fig. 3.87 *Columns braced in* y *direction and unbraced in the x direction.*

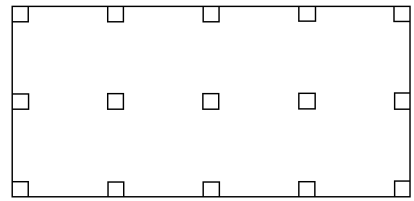


Fig. 3.89 *Columns unbraced in both directions.*

shear walls or some other form of bracing rather than by the column. For example, all the columns in the reinforced concrete frame shown in *Fig. 3.87* are braced in the y direction. A column may be considered to be unbraced if the lateral loads are resisted by the sway action of the column. For example, all the columns shown in *Fig. 3.87* are unbraced in the x direction.

Depending upon the layout of the structure, it is possible for the columns to be braced or unbraced in both directions as shown in *Figs 3.88* and *3.89* respectively.

Table 3.27 Values of β for braced columns (Table 3.19, BS 8110)

End condition of top	*End condition at bottom*		
	1	*2*	*3*
1	0.75	0.80	0.90
2	0.80	0.85	0.95
3	0.90	0.95	1.00

3.13.4 EFFECTIVE HEIGHT

The effective height (ℓ_e) of a column in a given plane is obtained by multiplying the clear height between lateral restraints (ℓ_o) by a coefficient (β) which is a function of the fixity at the column ends and is obtained from *Table 3.27*.

$$\ell_e = \beta \ell_o \qquad (3.38)$$

End condition 1 signifies that the column end is fully restrained. End condition 2 signifies that the column end is partially restrained and end condition 3 signifies that the column end is nominally restrained. In practice it is possible to infer the degree of restraint at the column ends simply by reference to the diagrams shown in *Fig. 3.90*.

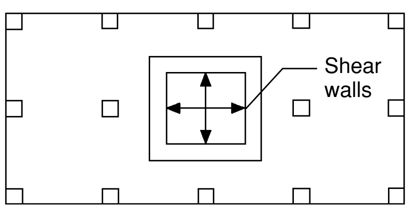


Fig. 3.88 *Columns braced in both directions.*

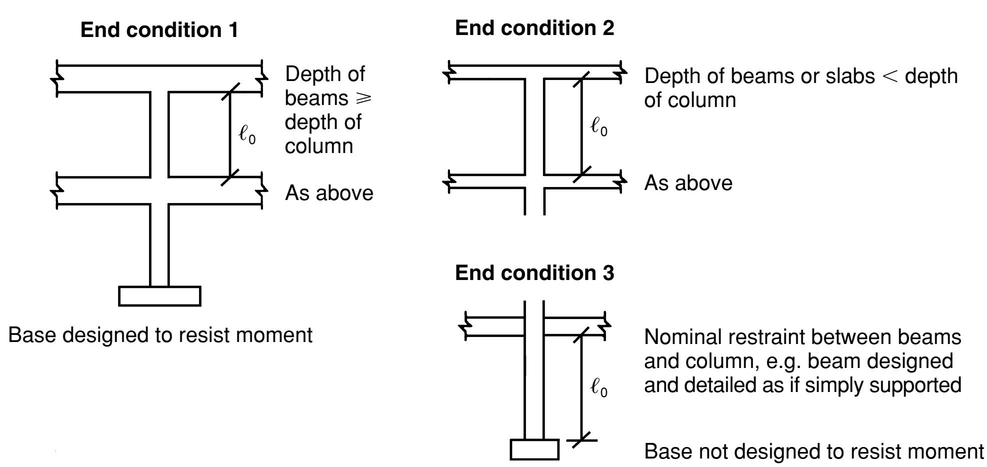


Fig. 3.90 *Column end restraint conditions.*

Example 3.17 Classification of a concrete column

Determine if the column shown in *Fig. 3.91* is short.

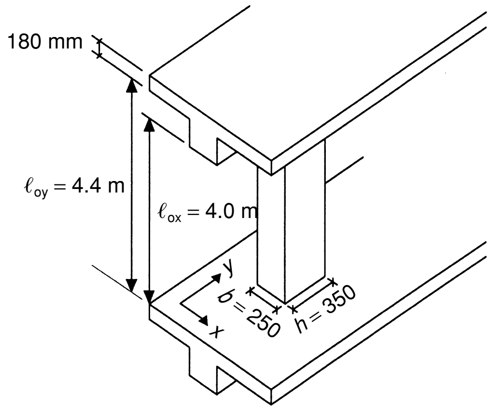


Fig. 3.91

For bending in the y direction: end condition at top of column = 1, end condition at bottom of column = 1. Hence from *Table 3.27*, $\beta_x = 0.75$.

$$\frac{\ell_{ex}}{h} = \frac{\beta_x \ell_{ox}}{h} = \frac{0.75 \times 4000}{350} = 8.57$$

For bending in the x direction: end condition at top of column = 2, end condition at bottom of column = 2. Hence from *Table 3.27*, $\beta_y = 0.85$

$$\frac{\ell_{ey}}{b} = \frac{\beta_y \ell_{oy}}{b} = \frac{0.85 \times 4400}{250} = 14.96$$

Since both ℓ_{ex}/h and ℓ_{ey}/b are both less than 15, the column is short.

3.13.5 SHORT BRACED COLUMN DESIGN

For design purposes, BS 8110 divides short-braced columns into three categories. These are:

1. columns resisting axial loads only;
2. columns supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams;
3. columns resisting axial loads and uniaxial or biaxial bending.

Referring to the floor plan shown in *Fig. 3.92*, it can be seen that column B2 supports beams which are equal in length and symmetrically arranged. Provided the floor is uniformly loaded, column B2 will resist an axial load only and is an example of category 1.

Column C2 supports a symmetrical arrangement of beams but which are unequal in length. Column C2 will, therefore, resist an axial load and moment. However, provided that (a) the loadings on the beams are uniformly distributed, and (b) the beam spans do not differ by more than 15 per cent of the longer, the moment will be small. As such, column C2 belongs to category 2 and it can safely be designed by considering the axial load only but using slightly reduced values of the design stresses in the concrete and steel reinforcement (*section 3.13.5.2*).

Columns belong to category 3 if conditions (a) and (b) are not satisfied. The moment here becomes significant and the column may be required to resist an axial load and uni-axial bending, e.g. columns A2, B1, B3, C1, C3 and D2, or an axial loads and biaxial bending, e.g. A1, A3, D1 and D3.

The design procedures associated with each of these categories are discussed in the subsection below.

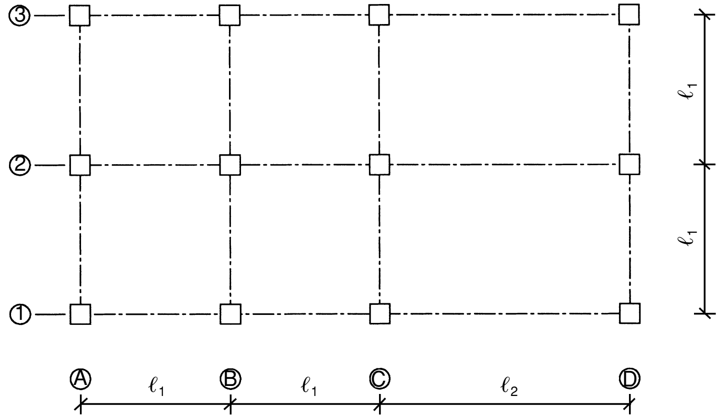


Fig. 3.92 *Floor plan.*

3.13.5.1 Axially loaded columns (clause 3.8.4.3, BS 8110)

Consider a column having a net cross-sectional area of concrete A_c and a total area of longitudinal reinforcement A_{sc} (*Fig. 3.93*).

As discussed in section 3.7, the design stresses for concrete and steel in compression are $0.67f_{cu}/1.5$ and $f_y/1.15$ respectively, i.e.

$$\text{Concrete design stress} = \frac{0.67f_{cu}}{1.5} = 0.45f_{cu}$$

$$\text{Reinforcement design stress} = \frac{f_y}{1.15} = 0.87f_y$$

Both the concrete and reinforcement assist in carrying the load. Thus, the ultimate load N which can be supported by the column is the sum of the loads carried by the concrete (F_c) and the reinforcement (F_s), i.e.

$$N = F_c + F_s$$

$$F_c = \text{stress} \times \text{area} = 0.45f_{cu}A_c$$

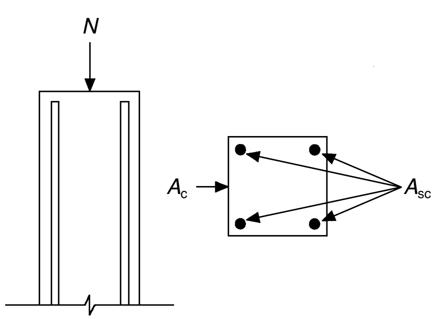


Fig. 3.93

$$F_s = \text{stress} \times \text{area} = 0.87f_yA_{sc}$$

Hence, $N = 0.45f_{cu}A_c + 0.87f_yA_{sc}$ (3.39)

Equation 3.35 assumes that the load is applied perfectly axially to the column. However, in practice, perfect conditions never exist. To allow for a small eccentricity BS 8110 reduces the design stresses in equation 3.35 by about 10 per cent, giving the following expression:

$$N = 0.4f_{cu}A_c + 0.75f_yA_{sc} \qquad (3.40)$$

This is equation 38 in BS 8110 which can be used to design short-braced axially loaded columns.

3.13.5.2 Columns supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams (clause 3.8.4.4, BS 8110)

Where the column is subject to an axial load and 'small' moment (section 3.13.5), the latter is taken into account simply by decreasing the design stresses in equation 3.40 by around 10 per cent, giving the following expression for the load carrying capacity of the column:

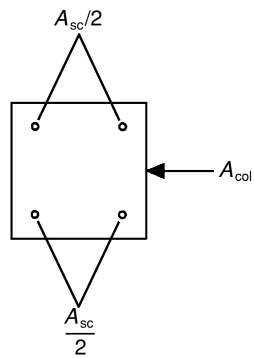
$$N = 0.35f_{cu}A_c + 0.67f_yA_{sc} \qquad (3.41)$$

This is equation 39 in BS 8110 and can be used to design columns supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams provided (a) the loadings on the beams are uniformly distributed, and (b) the beam spans do not differ by more than 15 per cent of the longer.

Equations 3.40 and 3.41 are not only used to determine the load-carrying capacities of short-braced columns predominantly supporting axial loads but can also be used for initial sizing of these elements, as illustrated in Example 3.18.

Example 3.18 Sizing a concrete column (BS 8110)

A short-braced column in which $f_{cu} = 30$ Nmm^{-2} and $f_y = 500$ Nmm^{-2} is required to support an ultimate axial load of 2000 kN. Determine a suitable section for the column assuming that the area of longitudinal steel, A_{sc}, is of the order of 3 per cent of the gross cross-sectional area of column, A_{col}.



Since the column is axially loaded use equation 3.40

$$N = 0.4f_{cu}A_c + 0.75f_yA_{sc}$$

$$2000 \times 10^3 = 0.4 \times 30\left(A_{col} - \frac{3A_{col}}{100}\right) + 0.75 \times 500 \times \frac{3A_{col}}{100}$$

$$A_{col} = 87374 \text{ mm}^2$$

Assuming that the column is square,

$$b = h \approx \sqrt{87374} = 296 \text{ mm.}$$

Hence a 300 mm square column constructed of concrete $f_{cu} = 30$ Nmm^{-2} would be suitable.

3.13.5.3 Columns resisting axial load and bending

The area of longitudinal steel for columns resisting axial loads and uniaxial or biaxial bending is normally calculated using the design charts in Part 3 of BS 8110. These charts are available for columns having a rectangular cross-section and a symmetrical arrangement of reinforcement. BSI issued these charts when the preferred grade of reinforcement was 460 not 500. Nevertheless, these charts could still be used to estimate the area of steel reinforcement required in columns but the steel areas obtained will be approximately 10 per cent greater than required. *Fig. 3.94* presents a modified version of chart 27 which takes account of the new grade of steel reinforcement.

It should be noted that each chart is particular for a selected

1. characteristic strength of concrete, f_{cu};
2. characteristic strength of reinforcement, f_y;
3. d/h ratio.

Design charts are available for concrete grades 25, 30, 35, 40, 45 and 50 and reinforcement grade 460. For a specified concrete and steel strength there is a series of charts for different d/h ratios in the range 0.75 to 0.95 in 0.05 increments.

The construction of these charts can best be illustrated by considering how the axial load and moment capacity of an existing column section is assessed. The solution to this problem is somewhat simpler than normal column design as many of the design parameters, e.g. grades of materials and area and location of the reinforcement are predefined. Nonetheless, both rely on an iterative method for solution. Determining the load capacity of an existing section involves investigating the relationship between the depth of neutral axis of the section and its axial load and co-existent moment capacity. For a range of neutral axis depths the tensile and compressive forces acting on the section are calculated. The size of these forces can be evaluated using the assumptions previously outlined in connection with the analysis of beam sections (3.9.1.1), namely:

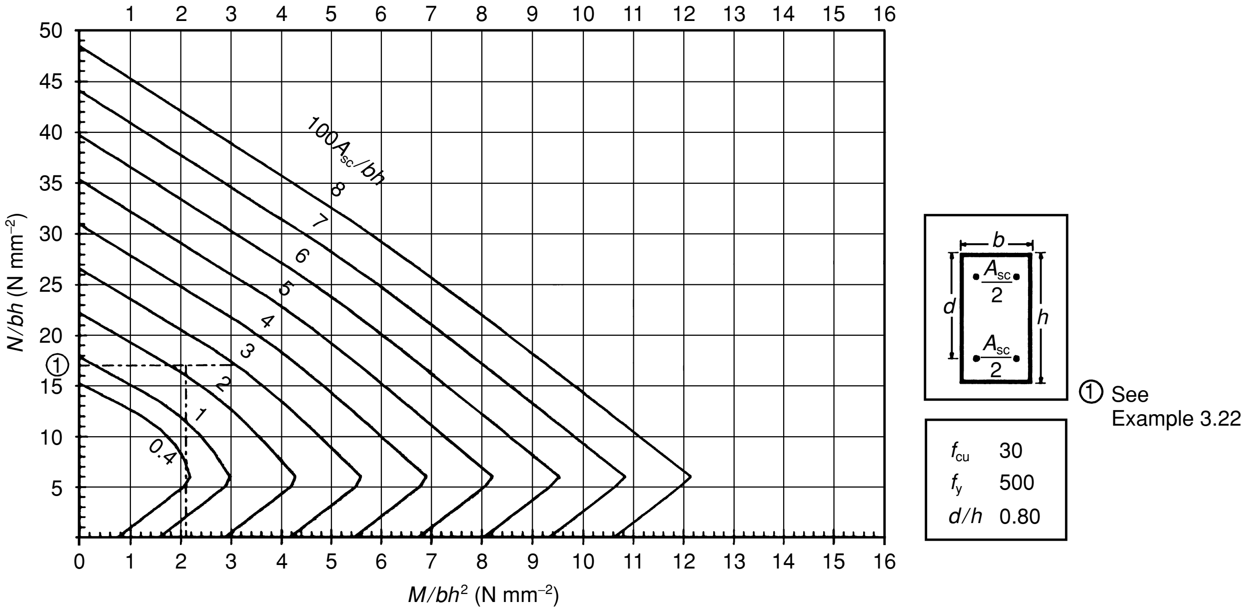


Fig. 3.94 *Column design chart (based on chart 27, BS 8110: Part 3).*

1. Sections that are plane before loading remain plane after loading.
2. The tensile and compressive stresses in the steel reinforcement are derived from *Fig. 3.9*.
3. The compressive stresses in concrete are based on either the rectangular-parabolic stress block for concrete (*Fig. 3.7*) or the equivalent rectangular stress block (*Fig. 3.16(e)*).
4. The tensile strength of concrete is zero.

Once the magnitude and position of the tensile and compressive forces have been determined, the axial load and moment capacity of the section can be evaluated. Example 3.19 illustrates how the results can be used to assess the suitability of the section to resist a particular axial load and moment.

Example 3.19 Analysis of a column section (BS 8110)

Determine whether the column section shown in *Fig. 3.95* is capable of supporting an axial load of 200 kN and a moment about the x–x axis of 200 kNm by calculating the load and moment capacity of the section when the depth of neutral axis of the section, $x = \infty$, 200 mm and 350 mm. Assume $f_{cu} = 35$ Nmm^{-2} and $f_y = 500$ Nmm^{-2}.

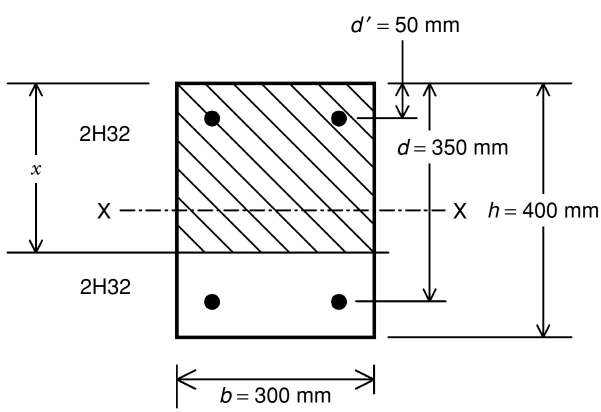


Fig. 3.95

Example 3.19 *continued*

LOAD AND MOMENT CAPACITY OF COLUMN WHEN $X = \infty$

Assuming the simplified stress block for concrete, the stress and strain distributions in the section will be as shown in *Fig. 3.96*.

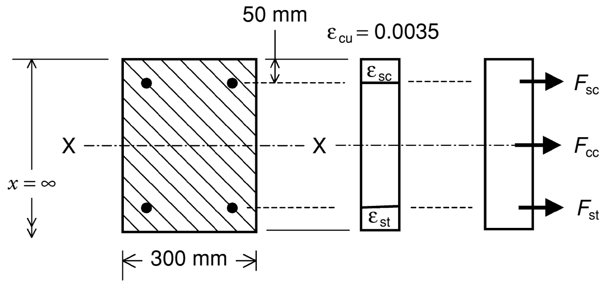


Fig. 3.96

The compressive force in the concrete, F_{cc}, neglecting the area displaced by the reinforcement is

$$F_{cc} = \left(\frac{0.67 f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}}\right) bh = \left(\frac{0.67 \times 35}{1.5}\right) \times 300 \times 400 = 1876 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

By inspection, $\varepsilon_{sc} = \varepsilon_{st} = \varepsilon_{cu} = 0.0035 > \varepsilon_y$ (= 0.0022, see *Fig. 3.9*). Hence

$$F_{sc} = F_{st} = 0.87 f_y (A_{sc}/2) = 0.87 \times 500 \times (3216/2) = 699480 \text{ N}$$

Axial load capacity of column, N, is

$$N = F_{cc} + F_{sc} + F_{st} = 1876 \times 10^3 + 2 \times 699480 = 3274960 \text{ N}$$

The moment capacity of the section, M, is obtained by taking moments about the centre line of the section. By inspection, it can be seen that $M = 0$.

LOAD AND MOMENT CAPACITY OF COLUMN WHEN $X = 200$ mm

Fig. 3.97 shows the stress and strain distributions when $x = 200$ mm.

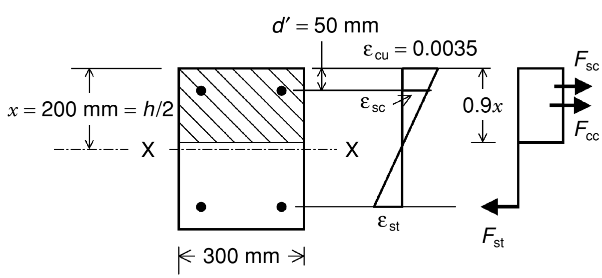


Fig. 3.97

From similar triangles

$$\frac{\varepsilon_{cu}}{x} = \frac{\varepsilon_{st}}{d - x}$$

$$\frac{0.0035}{200} = \frac{\varepsilon_{st}}{350 - 200} \quad \Rightarrow \varepsilon_{st} = 2.625 \times 10^{-3} > \varepsilon_y \ (= 0.0022)$$

Example 3.19 *continued*

By inspection $\varepsilon_{sc} = \varepsilon_{st}$. Hence the tensile force, F_{st}, and compressive force in the steel, F_{sc}, is

$$F_{sc} = F_{st} = 0.87f_y(A_{sc}/2) = 0.87 \times 500 \times (3216/2) = 699480 \text{ N}$$

The compressive force in the concrete, F_{cc}, is

$$F_{cc} = \left(\frac{0.67f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}}\right)0.9xb = \left(\frac{0.67 \times 35}{1.5}\right) \times 0.9 \times 200 \times 300 = 844200 \text{ N}$$

Axial load capacity of column, N, is

$$N = F_{cc} + F_{sc} - F_{st} = 844200 \text{ N}$$

The moment capacity of the section, M, is again obtained by taking moments about the centre line of the section:

$$M = F_{cc}(h/2 - 0.9x/2) + F_{st}(d - h/2) + F_{sc}(h/2 - d')$$
$$= 844200(400/2 - 0.9 \times 200/2) + 699480(350 - 400/2) + 699480(400/2 - 50) = 302.7 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

LOAD AND MOMENT CAPACITY OF COLUMN WHEN $X = 350$ mm

Fig. 3.98 shows the stress and strain distributions when $x = 350$ mm.

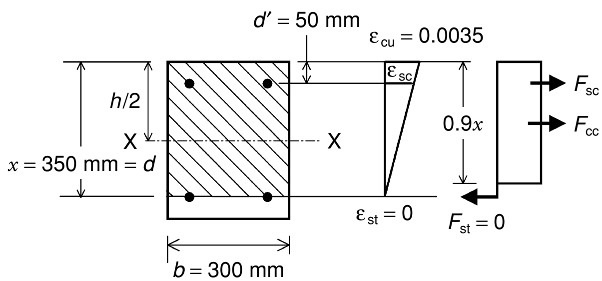


Fig. 3.98

As before

$$\frac{\varepsilon_{cu}}{x} = \frac{\varepsilon_{st}}{d - x}$$

$$\frac{0.0035}{350} = \frac{\varepsilon_{st}}{350 - 350} \quad \Rightarrow \varepsilon_{st} = 0 \text{ and } F_{st} = 0$$

Similarly, $\varepsilon_{sc} = \varepsilon_{cu}(x - d')/x = 0.0035(350 - 50)/350 = 0.003 > \varepsilon_y$. Hence, the compressive force in the steel, F_{sc}, is

$$F_{sc} = 0.87f_y(A_{sc}/2) = 0.87 \times 500 \times (3216/2) = 699480 \text{ kN}$$

$$F_{cc} = \left(\frac{0.67f_{cu}}{\gamma_{mc}}\right)0.9xb = \left(\frac{0.67 \times 35}{1.5}\right) \times 0.9 \times 350 \times 300 = 1477350 \text{ kN}$$

Axial load capacity of column, N, is

$$N = F_{cc} + F_{sc} - F_{st} = 1477350 + 699480 - 0 = 2176830 \text{ N}$$

The moment capacity of the section, M, is

$$M = F_{cc}(h/2 - 0.9x/2) + F_{st}(d - h/2) + F_{sc}(h/2 - d')$$
$$= 1477350(400/2 - 0.9 \times 350/2) + 0 + 699480(400/2 - 50)$$
$$= 167.7 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

Example 3.19 *continued*

CHECK SUITABILITY OF PROPOSED SECTION

By dividing the axial loads and moments calculated in (i)–(iii) by bh and bh^2 respectively, the following values obtain:

x (mm)	∞	200	350
N/bh (Nmm^{-2})	27.3	7.0	18.1
M/bh^2 (Nmm^{-2})	0	6.3	3.5

Fig. 3.99 shows a plot of the results. By calculating N/bh and M/bh^2 ratios for the design axial load (= 200 kN) and moment (= 200 kNm) (respectively 16.7 and 4.2) and plotting on *Fig. 3.99* the suitability of the section can be determined.

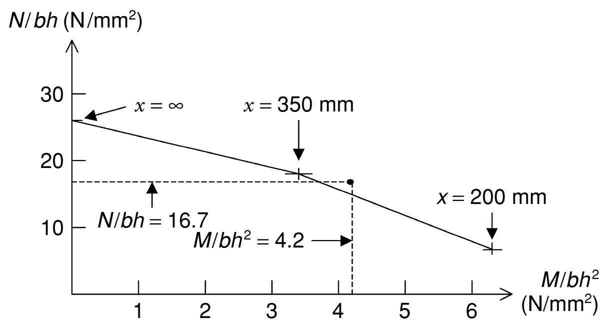


Fig. 3.99

The results show that the column section is incapable of supporting the design loads. Readers may like to confirm that if two 20 mm diameter bars (i.e. one in each face) were added to the section, the column would then have sufficient capacity.

Comparison of *Figs 3.94* and *3.99* shows that the curves in both cases are similar and, indeed, if the area of longitudinal steel in the section analysed in Example 3.19 was varied between 0.4 per cent and 8 per cent, a chart of similar construction to that shown in *Fig. 3.94* would result. The slight differences in the two charts arise from the fact that the d/h ratio and f_{cu} are not the same.

(i) Uniaxial bending. With columns which are subject to an axial load (N) and uni-axial moment (M), the procedure simply involves plotting the N/bh and M/bh^2 ratios on the appropriate chart and reading off the corresponding area of reinforcement as a percentage of the gross-sectional area of concrete ($100A_{sc}/bh$) (Example 3.22). Where the actual d/h ratio for the section being designed lies between two charts, both charts may be read and the longitudinal steel area found by linear interpolation.

(ii) Biaxial bending (clause 3.8.4.5, *BS* 8110). Where the column is subject to biaxial bending, the problem is reduced to one of uniaxial bending simply by increasing the moment about one of the axes using the procedure outlined below. Referring to *Fig. 3.100*, if $M_x/M_y \geq h'/b'$ the enhanced design moment, about the x–x axis, M'_x, is

$$M'_x = M_x + \frac{\beta h'}{b'} M_y \tag{3.42}$$

If $M_x/M_y < h'/b'$, the enhanced design moment about the y-y axis, M'_y, is

$$M'_y = M_y + \frac{\beta b'}{h'} M_x \tag{3.43}$$

where

b' and h' are the effective depths (*Fig. 3.100*)
β is the enhancement coefficient for biaxial bending obtained from *Table 3.28*.

Table 3.28 Values of the coefficient β (Table 3.22, BS 8110)

$\dfrac{N}{bhf_{cu}}$	0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	≥0.6
β	1.00	0.88	0.77	0.65	0.53	0.42	0.30

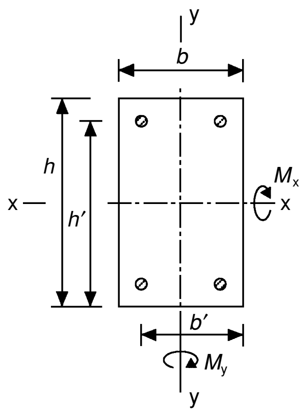


Fig. 3.100

The area of longitudinal steel can then be determined using the ultimate axial load (N) and enhanced moment (M'_x or M'_y,) in the same way as that described for uniaxial bending.

3.13.6 REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

In order to ensure structural stability, durability and practicability of construction BS 8110 lays down various rules governing the minimum size, amount and spacing of (i) longitudinal reinforcement and (ii) links. These are discussed in the subsections below.

3.13.6.1 Longitudinal reinforcement

(a) Size and minimum number of bars (clause 3.12.5.4, BS 8110)**.** Columns with rectangular cross-sections should be reinforced with a minimum of four longitudinal bars; columns with circular cross-sections should be reinforced with a minimum of six longitudinal bars. Each of the bars should not be less than 12 mm in diameter.

(b) Reinforcement areas (clause 3.12.5, BS 8110)**.** The code recommends that for columns with a gross cross-sectional area A_{col}, the area of longitudinal reinforcement (A_{sc}) should lie within the following limits:

$0.4\%A_{col} \le A_{sc} \le 6\%A_{col}$ in a vertically cast column and
$0.4\%A_{col} \le A_{sc} \le 8\%A_{col}$ in a horizontally cast column.

At laps the maximum area of longitudinal reinforcement may be increased to 10 per cent of the gross cross-sectional area of the column for both types of columns.

(c) Spacing of reinforcement. The minimum distance between adjacent bars should not be less than the diameter of the bars or h_{agg} + 5 mm, where h_{agg} is the maximum size of the coarse aggregate. The code does not specify any limitation with regard to the maximum spacing of bars, but for practical reasons it should not normally exceed 250 mm.

3.13.6.2 Links (clause 3.12.7, BS 8110)

The axial loading on the column may cause buckling of the longitudinal reinforcement and subsequent cracking and spalling of the adjacent concrete cover (*Fig. 3.101*). In order to prevent such a situation from occurring, the longitudinal steel is normally laterally restrained at regular intervals by links passing round the bars (*Fig. 3.102*).

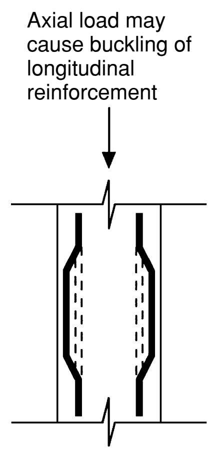


Fig. 3.101

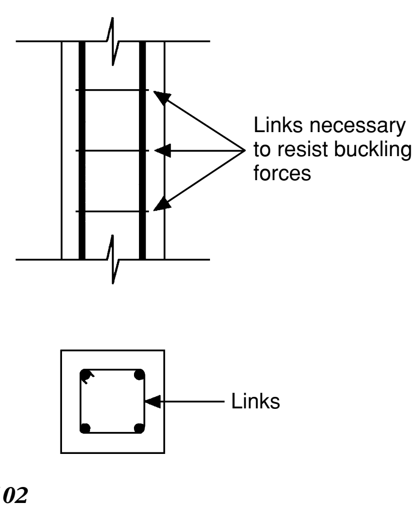


Fig. 3.102

(a) Size and spacing of links. Links should be at least one-quarter of the size of the largest longitudinal bar or 6 mm, whichever is the greater. However, in practice 6 mm bars may not be freely available and a minimum bar size of 8 mm is preferable.

Links should be provided at a maximum spacing of 12 times the size of the smallest longitudinal bar or the smallest cross-sectional dimension of the column. The latter condition is not mentioned in BS 8110 but was referred to in CP 114 and is still widely observed in order to reduce the risk of diagonal shear failure of columns.

(b) Arrangement of links. The code further requires that links should be so arranged that every corner and alternate bar in an outer layer of reinforcement is supported by a link passing around the bar and having an included angle of not more than 135°. All other bars should be within 150 mm of a restrained bar (*Fig. 3.103*).

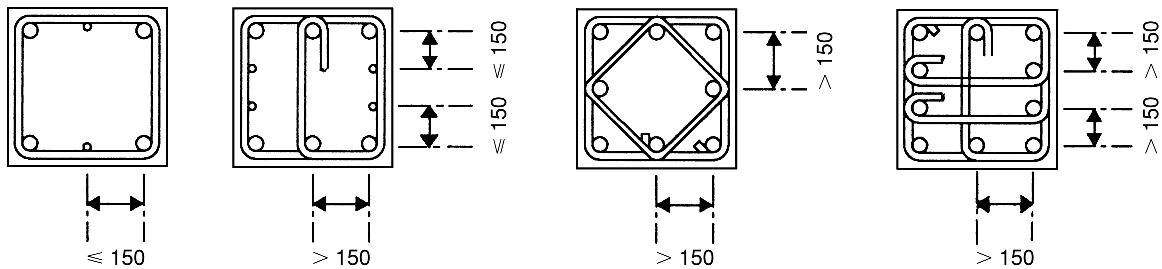


Fig. 3.103 *Arrangement of links in columns.*

Example 3.20 Axially loaded column (BS 8110)

Design the longitudinal steel and links for a 350 mm square, short-braced column which supports the following axial loads:

$$G_k = 1000 \text{ kN} \quad Q_k = 1000 \text{ kN}$$

Assume $f_{cu} = 40 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$ and f_y & $f_{yv} = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$.

LONGITUDINAL STEEL

Since column is axially loaded, use equation 3.40, i.e.

$$N = 0.4 f_{cu} A_c + 0.75 f_y A_{sc}$$

Total ultimate load (N) = $1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k = 1.4 \times 1000 + 1.6 \times 1000 = 3000$ kN
Substituting this into the above equation for N gives

$$3000 \times 10^3 = 0.4 \times 40 \times (350^2 - A_{sc}) + 0.75 \times 500 A_{sc}$$

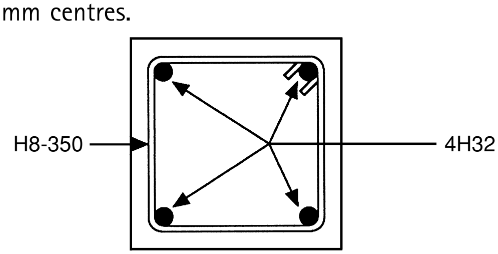
$$A_{sc} = 2897 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.10*, provide 4H32 ($A_{sc} = 3220 \text{ mm}^2$)

LINKS

The diameter of the links is one-quarter times the diameter of the largest longitudinal bar, that is, $^1/_4 \times 32 = 8$ mm, but not less than 8mm diameter. The spacing of the links is the lesser of (a) 12 times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar, that is, $12 \times 32 = 384$ mm, or (b) the smallest cross-sectional dimension of the column (= 350 mm).

Hence, provide H8 links at 350 mm centres.



Example 3.21 Column supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams (BS 8110)

An internal column in a braced two-storey building supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams (350 mm wide × 600 mm deep) results in characteristic dead and imposed loads each of 1100 kN being applied to the column. The column is 350 mm square and has a clear height of 4.5 m as shown in *Fig. 3.104*. Design the longitudinal reinforcement and links assuming

$$f_{cu} = 40 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} \text{ and } f_y \,\&\, f_{yv} = 500 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

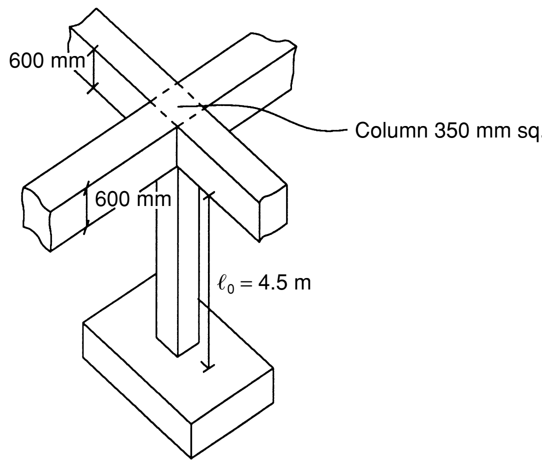


Fig. 3.104

CHECK IF COLUMN IS SHORT

Effective height

Depth of beams (600 mm) > depth of column (350 mm), therefore end condition at top of column = 1. Assuming that the pad footing is not designed to resist any moment, end condition at bottom of column = 3. Therefore, from *Table 3.27*, $\beta = 0.9$.

$$\ell_{ex} = \ell_{ey} = \beta\ell_o = 0.9 \times 4500 = 4050 \text{ mm}$$

Short or slender

$$\frac{\ell_{ex}}{h} = \frac{\ell_{ey}}{b} = \frac{4050}{350} = 11.6$$

Since both ratios are less than 15, the column is short.

LONGITUDINAL STEEL

Since column supports an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams use equation 3.41, i.e.

$$N = 0.35 f_{cu} A_c + 0.67 f_y A_{sc}$$

Total axial load, N, is

$$\begin{aligned} N &= 1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k \\ &= 1.4 \times 1100 + 1.6 \times 1100 = 3300 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

Example 3.21 *continued*

Substituting this into the above equation for N

$$3300 \times 10^3 = 0.35 \times 40(350^2 - A_{sc}) + 0.67 \times 500A_{sc}$$

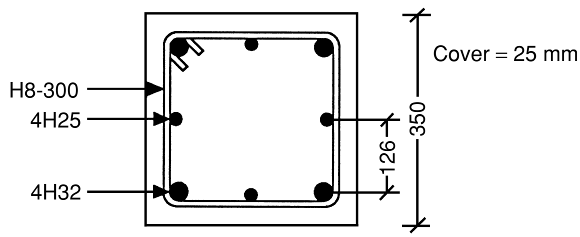
$$\Rightarrow A_{sc} = 4938 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.10*, provide 4H32 and 4H25

$$(A_{sc} = 3220 + 1960 = 5180 \text{ mm}^2)$$

LINKS

The diameter of the links is one-quarter times the diameter of the largest longitudinal bar, that is $^1/_4 \times 32 = 8$ mm, but not less than 8mm diameter. The spacing of the links is the lesser of (a) 12 times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar, that is, $12 \times 25 = 300$ mm, or (b) the smallest cross-sectional dimension of the column (= 350 mm). Provide H8 links at 300 mm centres.



Example 3.22 Columns resisting an axial load and bending (BS 8110)

Design the longitudinal and shear reinforcement for a 275 mm square, short-braced column which supports either

(a) an ultimate axial load of 1280 kN and a moment of 62.5 kNm about the x–x axis or
(b) an ultimate axial load of 1280 kN and bending moments of 35 kNm about the x–x axis and 25 kNm about the y–y axis.

Assume $f_{cu} = 30$ Nmm^{-2}, $f_y = 500$ Nmm^{-2} and cover to all reinforcement is 35 mm.

LOAD CASE (A)

Longitudinal steel

$$\frac{M}{bh^2} = \frac{62.5 \times 10^6}{275 \times 275^2} = 3$$

$$\frac{N}{bh} = \frac{1280 \times 10^3}{275 \times 275} = 17$$

Assume diameter of longitudinal bars (Φ) = 20 mm, diameter of links (Φ') = 8 mm

$$d = h - \text{cover} - \Phi' - \Phi/2 = 275 - 35 - 8 - 20/2 = 222 \text{ mm}$$

$$d/h = 222/275 = 0.8$$

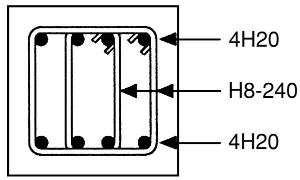
From *Fig. 3.94*, $100A_{sc}/bh = 3$, $A_{sc} = 3 \times 275 \times 275/100 = 2269$ mm^2
Provide 8H20 (A_{sc} = 2510mm^2, *Table 3.10*)

Links

The diameter of the links is one-quarter times the diameter of the largest longitudinal bar, that is, $^1/_4 \times 20 = 5$ mm, but not less than 8 mm diameter. The spacing of the links is the lesser of (a) 12 times the diameter of the smallest

Example 3.22 *continued*

longitudinal bar, that is, $12 \times 20 = 240$ mm, or (b) the smallest cross-sectional dimension of the column (= 275 mm). Provide H8 links at 240 mm centres



LOAD CASE (B)

Longitudinal steel

Assume diameter of longitudinal bars (Φ) = 25 mm, diameter of links (Φ') = 8 mm

$$b' = h' = h - \Phi/2 - \Phi' - \text{cover}$$

$$= 275 - 25/2 - 8 - 35 = 220 \text{ mm}$$

$$M_x/M_y = 35/25 = 1.4 > h'/b' = 1$$

$$\frac{N}{bhf_{cu}} = \frac{1280 \times 10^3}{275 \times 275 \times 30} = 0.56$$

Hence $\beta = 0.35$ (*Table 3.28*)
Enhanced design moment about x–x axis, M'_x, is

$$M'_x = M_x + \frac{\beta h'}{b'} M_y$$

$$= 35 + \frac{0.35 \times 220}{220} \times 25 = 43.8 \text{ kNm}$$

$$\frac{M'_x}{bh^2} = \frac{43.8 \times 10^6}{275 \times 275^2} = 2.1$$

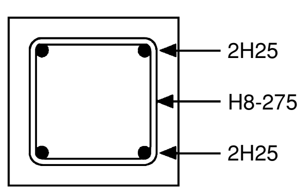
$$\frac{N}{bh} = \frac{1280 \times 10^3}{275 \times 275} = 17$$

$$d/h = 220/275 = 0.8$$

From *Fig. 3.94*, $100A_{sc}/bh = 2.2$, $A_{sc} = 2.2 \times 275 \times 275/100 = 1664$ mm^2
Provide 4H25 ($A_{sc} = 1960$ mm^2, *Table 3.10*)

Links

The diameter of the links is one-quarter times the diameter of the largest longitudinal bar, that is, $^1/_4 \times 25 \approx 6$ mm, but not less than 8 mm diameter. The spacing of the links is the lesser of (a) 12 times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar, that is, $12 \times 25 = 300$ mm, or (b) the smallest cross-sectional dimension of the column (= 275 mm). Provide H8 links at 275 mm centres.



3.14 Summary

This chapter has considered the design of a number of reinforced concrete elements to BS 8110: *Structural use of concrete*. The elements considered either resist bending or axial load and bending. The latter category includes columns subject to direct compression and a combination of compression and uni-axial or bi-axial bending. Elements which fall into the first category include beams, slabs, retaining walls and foundations. They are generally designed for the ultimate limit states of bending and shear and checked for the serviceability limit states of deflection and cracking. The notable exception to this is slabs where the deflection requirements will usually be used to determine the depth of the member. Furthermore, where slabs resist point loads, e.g. pad foundations or in flat slab construction, checks on punching shear will also be required.

Questions

1. (a) Derive from first principles the following equation for the ultimate moment of resistance (M_u) of a singly reinforced section in which f_{cu} is the characteristic cube strength of concrete, b is the width of the beam and d the effective depth

$$M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} b d^2$$

List any assumptions.

   (b) Explain what you understand by the term 'under-reinforced' and why concrete beams are normally designed in this way.

2. (a) Design the bending reinforcement for a rectangular concrete beam whose breadth and effective depth are 400 mm and 650 mm respectively to resist an ultimate bending moment of 700 kNm. The characteristic strengths of the concrete and steel reinforcement may be taken as 40 N/mm^2 and 500 N/mm^2.
   (b) Calculate the increase in moment of resistance of the beam in (a) assuming that two 25 mm diameter high-yield bars are introduced into the compression face at an effective depth of 50 mm from the extreme compression face of the section.

3. (a) Explain the difference between M and M_u.
   (b) Design the bending and shear reinforcement for the beam in *Fig. Q3* using the following information

f_{cu} = 30 N/mm^2 $\quad$ f_y = 500 N/mm^2
f_{yv} = 250 N/mm $\quad$ b = 300 mm

span/depth ratio = 12

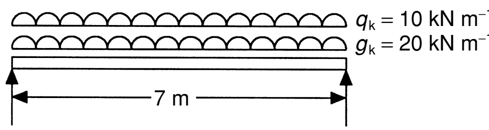
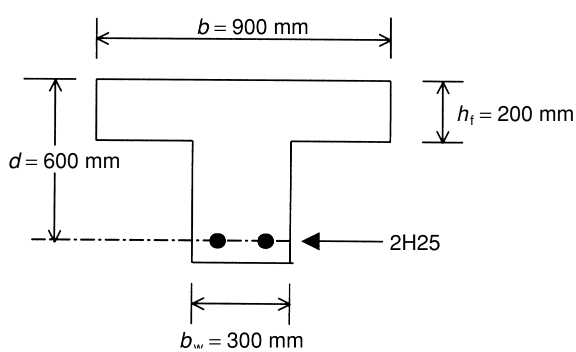


Fig. Q3

4. (a) Discuss how shear failure can arise in reinforced concrete members and how such failures can be avoided.
   (b) Describe the measures proposed in BS 8110 to achieve durable concrete structures.

5. (a) A simply supported T-beam of 7 m clear span carries uniformly distributed dead (including self-weight) and imposed loads of 10 kN/m and 15 kN/m respectively. The beam is reinforced with two 25 mm diameter high-yield steel bars as shown below.
      (i) Discuss the factors that influence the shear resistance of a reinforced concrete beam without shear reinforcement. Assuming that the T-beam is made from grade 30 concrete, calculate the beam's shear resistance.



(ii) Design the shear reinforcement for the beam. Assume $f_{yv} = 500$ N/mm^2.

(b) Assuming $A_{s,req} = 939$ mm^2 check the beam for deflection.

6. Redesign the slab in Example 3.11 assuming that the characteristic strength of the reinforcement is 250 N/mm^2. Comment on your results.
7. (a) Explain the difference between columns which are short and slender and those which are braced and unbraced.

   (b) Calculate the ultimate axial load capacity of a short-braced column supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams assuming that it is 500 mm square and is reinforced with eight 20 mm diameter bars. Assume that $f_{cu} = 40$ N/mm^2, $f_y = 500$ N/mm^2 and the concrete cover is 25 mm. Design the shear reinforcement for the column.
8. (a) A braced column which is 300 mm square is restrained such that it has an effective height of 4.5 m. Classify the column as short or slender.

   (b) The column supports:

   (1) an ultimate axial load of 500 kN and a bending moment of 200 kNm, or

   (2) an ultimate axial load of 800 kN and bending moments of 75 kNm about the x-axis and 50 kNm about the y-axis.

   Design the longitudinal steel for both load cases by constructing suitable design charts assuming $f_{cu} = 40$ N/mm^2, $f_y = 500$ N/mm^2 and the covers to all reinforcement is 35 mm.
9. An internal column in a multi-storey building supporting an approximately symmetrical arrangement of beams carries an ultimate load of 2,000 kN. The storey height is 5.2 m and the effective height factor is 0.85, $f_{cu} = 35$ N/mm^2 and $f_y = 500$ N/mm^2.

Assuming that the column is square, short and braced, calculate:

1. a suitable cross-section for the column;
2. the area of the longitudinal reinforcement;
3. the size and spacing of the links.

Sketch the reinforcement detail in cross-section.

Chapter 4

Design in structural steelwork to BS 5950

This chapter is concerned with the design of structural steelwork and composite elements to British Standard 5950. The chapter describes with the aid of a number of fully worked examples the design of the following elements: beams and joists, struts and columns, composite slabs and beams, and bolted and welded connections. The section on beams and joists covers the design of members that are fully laterally restrained as well as members subject to lateral torsional buckling. The section on columns includes the design of cased columns and column base plates.

4.1 Introduction

Several codes of practice are currently in use in the UK for design in structural steelwork. For buildings the older permissible stress code BS 449 has now been largely superseded by BS 5950, which is a limit state code introduced in 1985. For steel bridges the limit state code BS 5400: Part 3 is used. Since the primary aim of this chapter is to give guidance on the design of structural steelwork elements, this is best illustrated by considering the contents of BS 5950.

BS 5950 is divided into the following nine parts:

Part 1: *Code of practice for design – Rolled and welded sections.*
Part 2: *Specification for materials, fabrication and erection – Rolled and welded sections.*
Part 3: *Design in composite construction – Section 3.1: Code of practice for design of simple and continuous composite beams.*
Part 4: *Code of practice for design of composite slabs with profiled steel sheeting.*
Part 5: *Code of practice for design of cold formed thin gauge sections.*
Part 6: *Code of practice for design of light gauge profiled steel sheeting.*
Part 7: *Specification for materials, fabrication and erection – Cold formed sections and sheeting.*
Part 8: *Code of practice for fire resistant design.*
Part 9: *Code of practice for stressed skin design.*

Part 1 covers most of the material required for everyday design. Since the majority of this chapter is concerned with the contents of Part 1, it should be assumed that all references to BS 5950 refer to Part 1 exclusively. Part 3: Section 3.1 and Part 4 deal with, respectively, the design of composite beams and composite floors and will be discussed briefly in *section 4.10*. The remaining parts of the code generally either relate to specification or to specialist types of construction, which are not relevant to the present discussion and will not be mentioned further.

4.2 Iron and steel

4.2.1 MANUFACTURE

Iron has been produced for several thousands of years but it was not until the eighteenth century that it began to be used as a structural material. The first cast-iron bridge by Darby was built in 1779 at Coalbrookdale in Shropshire. Fifty years later wrought iron chains were used in Thomas Telford's Menai Straits suspension bridge. However, it was not until 1898 that the first steel-framed building was constructed. Nowadays most construction is carried out using steel which combines the best properties of cast and wrought iron.

Cast iron is basically remelted pig iron which has been cast into definite useful shapes. Charcoal was used for smelting iron but in 1740 Abraham Darby found a way of converting coal into coke which revolutionised the iron-making process. A later development to this process was the use of limestone to combine with the impurities in the ore and coke and form a slag which could be run off independently of the iron. Nevertheless, the pig iron contained many impurities which made the material brittle and weak in tension.

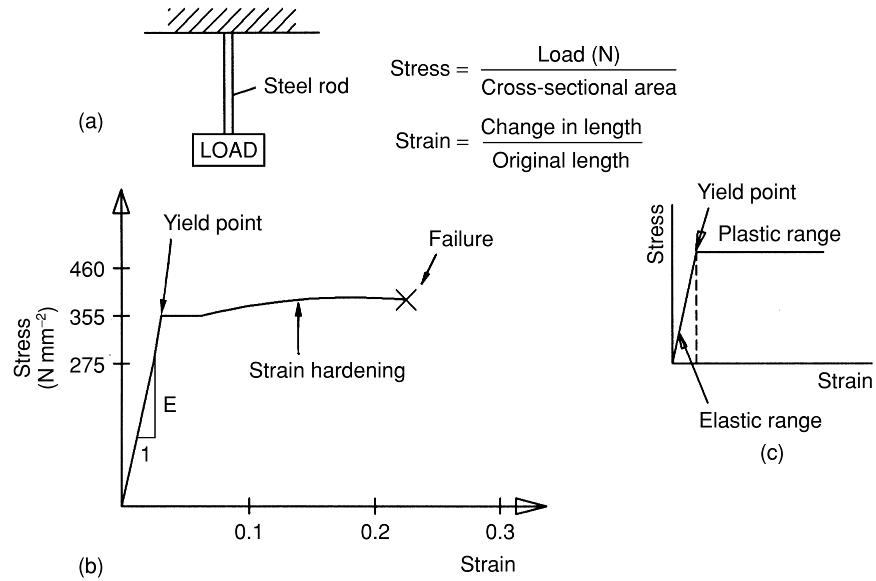


Fig. 4.1 *Stress–strain curves for structural steel: (a) schematic arrangements of test; (b) actual stress-strain curain curve from experiment; (c) idealised stress-strain relationship.*

In 1784, a method known as 'puddling' was developed which could be used to convert pig iron into a tough and ductile metal known as wrought iron. Essentially this process removed many of the impurities present in pig iron, e.g. carbon, manganese, silicon and phosphorus, by oxidation. However, it was difficult to remove the wrought iron from the furnace without contaminating it with slag. Thus although wrought iron was tough and ductile, it was rather soft and was eventually superseded by steel.

Bessemer discovered a way of making steel from iron. This involved filling a large vessel, lined with calcium silicate bricks, with molten pig iron which was then blown from the bottom to remove impurities. The vessel is termed a converter and the process is known as acid Bessemer. However, this converter was unable to remove the phosphorus from the molten iron which resulted in the metal being weak and brittle and completely unmalleable. Later in 1878 Gilchrist Thomas proposed an alternative lining for the converter in which dolomite was used instead of silica and which overcame the problems associated with the acid Bessemer. His process became known as basic Bessemer. The resulting metal, namely steel, was found to be superior to cast iron and wrought iron as it had the same high strength in tension and compression and was ductile.

4.2.2 PROPERTIES

If a rod of steel is subjected to a tensile test (*Fig. 4.1(a)*), and the stress in the rod (load/cross sectional area in N/mm^2) is plotted against the strain (change in length/original length), as the load is applied, a graph similar to that shown in *Fig. 4.1(b)* would be obtained. Note that the stress-strain curve is linear up to a certain value, known as the yield point. Beyond this point the steel yields without an increase in load, although there is significant 'strain hardening' as the bar continues to strain towards failure. This is the plastic range.

In the elastic range the bar will return to its original length if unloaded. However, once past the yield point, in the plastic range, the bar will be permanently strained after unloading. *Fig. 4.1(c)* shows the idealised stress-strain curve for structured steelwork which is used in the design of steel members.

The slope of the stress-strain curve in the elastic range is referred to as the modulus of elasticity or Young's modulus and is denoted by the letter E. It indicates the stiffness of the material and is used to calculate deflections under load. Structural steel has a modulus of elasticity of 205 kN/mm^2.

4.3 Structural steel and steel sections

Structural steel is manufactured in three basic grades: S275, S355 and S460. Grade S460 is the strongest, but the lower strength grade S275 is the most commonly used in structural applications, for reasons that will later become apparent. In this

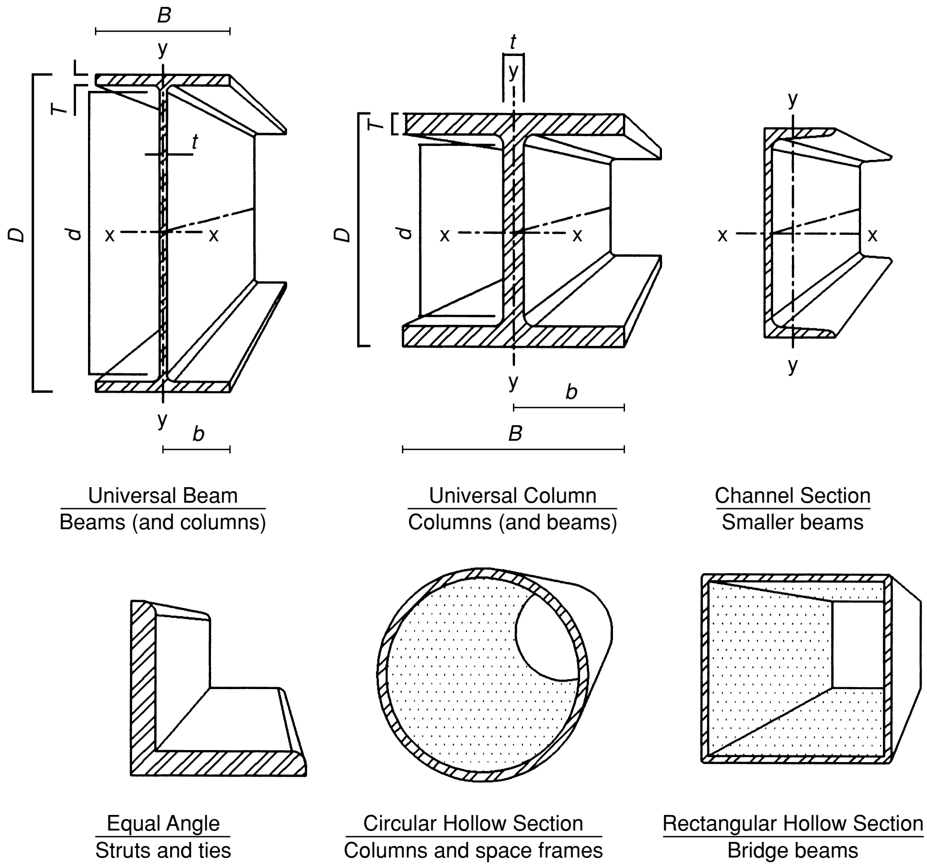


Fig. 4.2 *Standard rolled steel sections.*

classification system 'S' stands for structural and the number indicates the yield strength of the material in N/mm^2.

Figure 4.2 shows in end view a selection of sections commonly used in steel design together with typical applications. Depending on the size and the demand for a particular shape, some sections may be rolled into shape directly at a steel rolling mill, while others may be fabricated in a welding shop or on site using (usually) electric arc welding.

These sections are designed to achieve economy of material while maximising strength, particularly in bending. Bending strength can be maximised by concentrating metal at the extremities of the section, where it can sustain the tensile and compressive stresses associated with bending. The most commonly used sections are still Universal Beams (UBs) and Universal Columns (UCs). While boxes and tubes have some popularity in specialist applications, they tend to be expensive to make and are difficult to maintain, particularly in small sizes.

The geometric properties of these steel sections, including the principal dimensions, area, second moment of area, radius of gyration and elastic and plastic section moduli have been tabulated in a booklet entitled *Structural Sections to BS4: Part 1: 1993 and BS EN10056: 1999* which is published by Corus Construction and Industrial. *Appendix B* contains extracts from these tables for UBs and UCs, and will be frequently referred to. The axes x–x and y–y shown in *Fig. 4.2* and referred to in the steel tables in *Appendix B* denote the strong and weak bending axes respectively. Note that the symbols used to identify particular dimensions of universal sections in the booklet are not consistent with the notation used in BS 5950 and have therefore been changed in *Appendix B* to conform with BS 5950.

This chapter we will concentrate on the design of UBs and UCs and their connections to suit various applications. Irrespective of the element being designed, the designer will need an understanding of the following aspects which are discussed next.

(a) symbols
(b) general principles and design methods
(c) loadings
(d) design strengths.

4.4 Symbols

For the purpose of this chapter, the following symbols have been used. These have largely been taken from BS 5950.

GEOMETRIC PROPERTIES

A	area of section
A_g	gross sectional area of steel section
B	breadth of section
b	outstand of flange
D	depth of section
d	depth of web
I_x, I_y	second moment of area about the major and minor axes
J	torsion constant of section
L	length of span
r	root radius
r_x, r_y	radius of gyration of a member about its major and minor axes
S_{eff}	effective plastic modulus
S_x, S_y	plastic modulus about the major and minor axes
T	thickness of flange
t	thickness of web
u	buckling parameter of the section
x	torsional index of section
Z_{eff}	effective elastic modulus
Z_x, Z_y	elastic modulus about major and minor axes

BENDING

A_v	shear area
b_1	stiff bearing length
E	modulus of elasticity
F_t	tensile force
F_v	shear force
L	actual length
L_E	effective length
M	design moment *or* large end moment
M_c	moment capacity
M_b	buckling resistance moment
M_x	maximum major axis moment
P_{bw}	bearing resistance of an unstiffened web
P_s	bearing resistance of stiffener
P_x	buckling resistance of an unstiffened web
P_{xs}	buckling resistance of stiffener
k	$= T + r$
m_{LT}	equivalent uniform moment factor for lateral torsional buckling
P_{cs}	contact stress
P_v	shear capacity of a section
p_c	compressive strength of steel
p_b	bending strength of steel
p_y	design strength of steel
v	slenderness factor for beam
β	ratio of smaller to larger end moment
β_w	a ratio for lateral torsional buckling
γ_f	overall load factor
γ_m	material strength factor
δ	deflection
ε	constant = $(275/p_y)^{1/2}$
λ	slenderness ratio
λ_{LT}	equivalent slenderness

COMPRESSION

A_{be}	effective area of baseplate
A_g	gross sectional area of steel section
c	largest perpendicular distance from the edge of the effective portion of the baseplate to the face of the column cross-section
F_c	ultimate applied axial load
L	actual length
L_E	effective length
M_b	buckling resistance moment
M_{cx}, M_{cy}	moment capacity of section about the major and minor axes in the absence of axial load
M_{ex}, M_{ey}	eccentric moment about the major and minor axes
M_x, M_y	applied moment about the major and minor axes
M_{LT}	maximum major axis moment in the segment between restraints against lateral torsional buckling
m	equivalent uniform moment factor
P_c	compression resistance of column
P_s	squash load of column
P_{cs}	compression resistance of short strut
P_E	Euler load
p_c	compressive strength
p_{yp}	design strength of the baseplate
t_p	thickness of baseplate
ω	pressure under the baseplate
λ	slenderness ratio
λ_{LT}	equivalent slenderness

CONNECTIONS

a	effective throat size of weld
α_e	effective net area
α_g	gross area
α_n	net area of plate
A_s	effective area of bolt
A_t	tensile stress area of a bolt
d_b	diameter of bolt
D_h	diameter of bolt hole
e_1	edge distance
e_2	end distance
p	pitch
t	thickness of part
F_s	applied shear force
F_t	applied tension force
P_{bb}	bearing capacity of bolt
P_{bg}	bearing capacity of the parts connected by preloaded bolts
P_{bs}	bearing capacity of parts connected by bolts
P_s	shear capacity of a bolt
P_{sL}	slip resistance provided by a preloaded bolt
P_t	tension capacity of a member or bolt
P_o	minimum shank tension
p_{bb}	bearing strength of a bolt
p_{bs}	bearing strength of connected parts
p_s	shear strength of a bolt
p_t	tension strength of a bolt
p_w	design strength of a fillet-weld
s	leg length of a fillet-weld
K_e	coefficient = 1.2 for S275 steel
K_s	coefficient = 1.0 for clearance holes
μ	slip factor

COMPOSITES

A_{cv}	mean cross-sectional area of concrete
A_{sv}	cross-sectional area of steel reinforcement
α_e	modular ratio
B_e	effective breadth of concrete flange
D_p	depth of profiled metal decking
D_s	depth of concrete flange
δ	deflection
F_v	shear force
Q	strength of shear studs
R_c	compression resistance of concrete flange
R_f	tensile resistance of steel flange
R_s	tensile resistance of steel beam
s	longitudinal spacing of studs
ν	longitudinal shear stress per unit length
y_p	depth of neutral axis

4.5 General principles and design methods

As stated at the outset, BS 5950 is based on limit state philosophy. *Table 1* of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.1*, outlines typical limit states appropriate to steel structures.

As this book is principally about the design of structural elements we will be concentrating on the ultimate limit state of strength (1), and the serviceability limit state of deflection (5). Stability (2) is an aspect of complete structures or sub-structures that will not be examined at this point, except to say that structures must be robust enough not to overturn or sway excessively under wind or other sideways loading. Fatigue (3) is generally taken account of by the provision of adequate safety factors to prevent occurrence of the high stresses associated with fatigue. Brittle fracture (4) can be avoided by selecting the correct grade of steel for the expected ambient conditions. Avoidance of excessive vibration (6) and oscillations (7), are aspects of structural dynamics and are beyond the scope of this book. Corrosion can be a serious problem for exposed steelwork, but correct preparation and painting of the steel will ensure maximum durability (8) and minimum maintenance during the life of the structure. Alternatively, the use of weather resistant steels should be considered.

Table 4.1 Limit states (Table 1, BS 5950)

Ultimate	*Serviceability*
1 Strength (including general yielding, rupture, buckling and forming a mechanism)	5 Deflection
2 Stability against overturning and sway stability	6 Vibration
3 Fracture due to fatigue	7 Wind induced oscillation
4 Brittle fracture	8 Durability

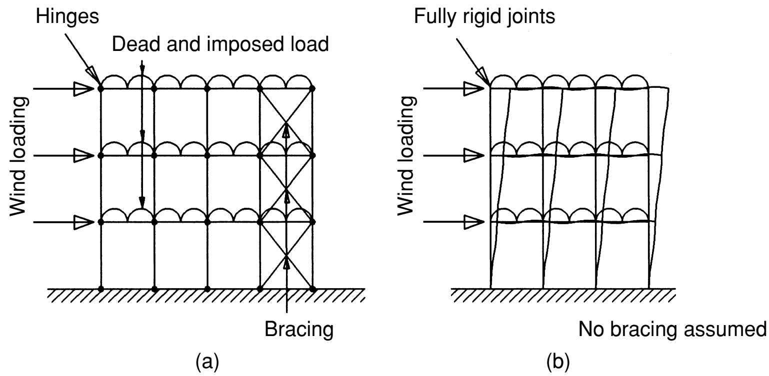


Fig. 4.3 *(a) Simple and (b) continuous design.*

Although BS 5950 does not specifically mention fire resistance, this is an important aspect that fundamentally affects steel's economic viability compared to its chief rival, concrete. Exposed structural steelwork does not perform well in a fire. The high conductivity of steel together with the thin sections used causes high temperatures to be quickly reached in steel members, resulting in premature failure due to softening at around 600°C. Structural steelwork has to be insulated to provide adequate fire resistance in multi-storey structures. Insulation may consist of sprayed treatment, intumescent coatings, concrete encasement or boxing with plasterboard. All insulation treatments are expensive. However, where the steel member is encased in concrete it may be possible to take structural advantage of the concrete, thereby mitigating some of the additional expenditure incurred (*Section 4.9.6*). Guidance on the design of fire protection for members in steel framed buildings can be found in Part 8 of BS 5950.

For steel structures three principal methods of design are identified in clause 2.1.2 of BS 5950:

1. *Simple design*. The structure is regarded as having pinned joints, and significant moments are not developed at connections (*Fig. 4.3(a)*). The structure is prevented from becoming a mechanism by appropriate bracing using shear walls for instance. This apparently conservative assumption is a very popular method of design.
2. *Continuous design*. The joints in the structure are assumed to be able to fully transfer the forces and moments in the members which they attach (*Fig. 4.3(b)*). Analysis of the structure may be by elastic or plastic methods, and will be more complex than simple design. However the increasing use of micro-computers has made this method more viable. In theory a more economic design can be achieved by this method, but unless the joints are truly rigid the analysis will give an upper bound (unsafe) solution.
3. *Semi-continuous design*. The joints in the structure are assumed to have some degree of strength and stiffness but not provide complete restraint as in the case of continuous design. The actual strength and stiffness of the joints should be determined experimentally. Guidance on the design of semi-continuous frames can be found in the following Steel Construction Institute publications:
   (i) *Wind-moment Design of Unbraced Composite Frames*, SCI-P264, 2000.
   (ii) *Design of Semi-continuous Braced Frames*, SCI-P183, 1997.

4.6 Loading

As for structural design in other media, the designer needs to estimate the loading to which the structure may be subject during its design life.

The characteristic dead and imposed loads can be obtained from BS 6399: Parts 1 and 3. Wind loads should be determined from BS 6399: Part 2 or CP3: Chapter V: Part 2. In general, a characteristic load is expected to be exceeded in only 5% of instances, or for 5% of the time, but in the case of wind loads it represents a gust expected only once every 50 years.

To obtain design loading at **ultimate limit state** for strength and stability calculations the characteristic load is multiplied by a load factor obtained from *Table 2* of BS 5950, part of which is reproduced as *Table 4.2*. Generally, dead load is multiplied by 1.4 and imposed vertical (or live) load by 1.6, except when the load case considers wind load

Table 4.2 Partial factors for loads (Table 2, BS 5950)

Type of load and load combinations	*Factor,* γ_f
Dead load	1.4
Dead load acting together with wind and imposed load	1.2
Dead load whenever it counters the effects of other loads	1.0
Dead load when restraining sliding, overturning or uplift	1.0
Imposed load	1.6
Imposed load acting together with wind load	1.2
Wind load	1.4
Storage tanks, including contents	1.4
Storage tanks, empty, when restraining sliding, overturning or uplift	1.0

also, in which case, dead, imposed and wind loads are all multiplied by 1.2.

Several loading cases may be specified to give a 'worst case' envelope of forces and moments around the structure. In the design of buildings without cranes, the following load combinations should normally be considered (clause 2.4.1.2, BS 5950):

1. dead plus imposed
2. dead plus wind
3. dead, imposed plus wind.

Table 4.3 Design strengths p_y (Table 9, BS 5950)

Steel grade	*Thickness, less than or equal to (mm)*	*Design strength,* p_y *(N/mm²)*
S275	16	275
	40	265
	63	255
	80	245
	100	235
	150	225
S355	16	355
	40	345
	63	335
	80	325
	100	315
	150	295
S460	16	460
	40	440
	63	430
	80	410
	100	400

To obtain design loading at **serviceability limit state** for calculation of deflections the most adverse realistic combination of **unfactored** characteristic **imposed** loads is usually used. In the case of wind loads acting together with imposed loads, only 80% of the full specified values need to be considered.

4.7 Design strengths

In BS 5950 no distinction is made between characteristic and design strength. In effect the material safety factor $\gamma_m = 1.0$. Structural steel used in the UK is specified by BS 5950: Part 2, and strengths of the more commonly used steels are given in *Table 9* of BS 5950, reproduced here as *Table 4.3*. As a result of the residual stresses locked into the metal during the rolling process, the thicker the material, the lower the design strength.

Having discussed these more general aspects relating to structural steelwork design, the following sections will consider the detailed design of beams and joists (*section 4.8*), struts and columns (*section 4.9*), composite floors and beams (*section 4.10*) and some simple bolted and welded connections (*section 4.11*).

4.8 Design of steel beams and joists

Structural design of steel beams and joists primarily involves predicting the strength of the member. This requires the designer to imagine all the ways in which the member may fail during its design life. It would be useful at this point, therefore, to discuss some of the more common modes of failure associated with beams and joists.

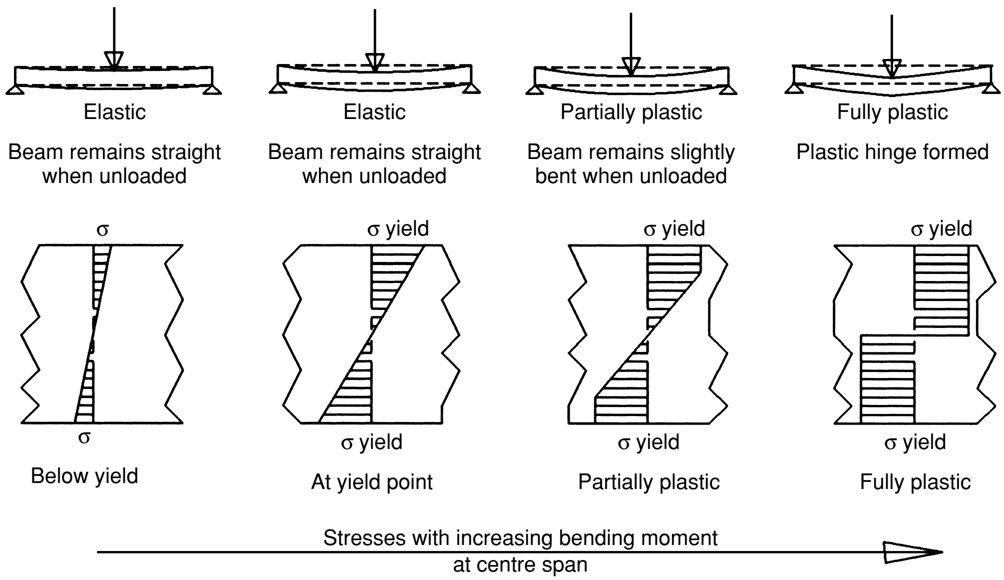


Fig. 4.4 *Bending failure of a beam.*

4.8.1 MODES OF FAILURE

4.8.1.1 Bending

The vertical loading gives rise to bending of the beam. This results in longitudinal stresses being set up in the beam. These stresses are tensile in one half of the beam and compressive in the other. As the bending moment increases, more and more of the steel reaches its yield stress. Eventually, all the steel yields in tension and/or compression across the entire cross section of the beam. At this point the beam cross-section has become plastic and it fails by formation of a plastic hinge at the point of maximum moment induced by the loading. *Figure 4.4* reviews this process. Chapter 2 summarises how classical beam theory is derived from these considerations.

4.8.1.2 Local buckling

During the bending process outlined above, if the compression flange or the part of the web subject to compression is too thin, the plate may actually fail by buckling or rippling, as shown in *Fig. 4.5*, before the full plastic moment is reached.

4.8.1.3 Shear

Due to excessive shear forces, usually adjacent to supports, the beam may fail in shear. The beam web, which resists shear forces, may fail as shown in *Fig. 4.6(a)*, as steel yields in tension and compression in the shaded zones. The formation of plastic hinges in the flanges accompanies this process.

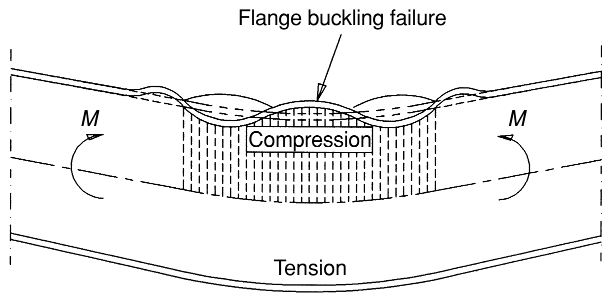


Fig. 4.5 *Local flange buckling failure.*

4.8.1.4 Shear buckling

During the shearing process described above, if the web is too thin it will fail by buckling or rippling in the shear zone, as shown in *Fig. 4.6(b)*.

4.8.1.5 Web bearing and buckling

Due to high vertical stresses directly over a support or under a concentrated load, the beam web may actually crush, or buckle as a result of these stresses, as illustrated in *Fig. 4.7*.

4.8.1.6 Lateral torsional buckling

When the beam has a higher bending stiffness in the vertical plane compared to the horizontal plane, the beam can twist sideways under the load. This is perhaps best visualised by loading a scale rule on

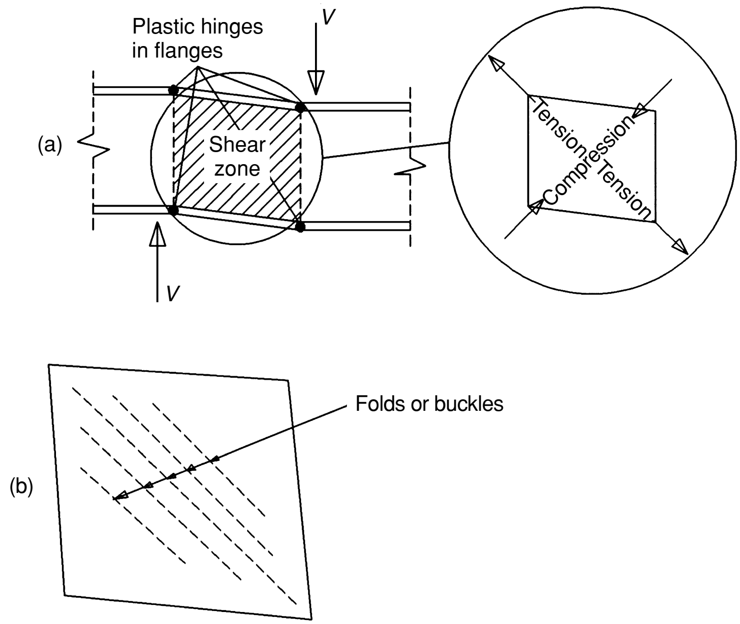


Fig. 4.6 *Shear and shear buckling failures: (a) shear failure; (b) shear buckling.*

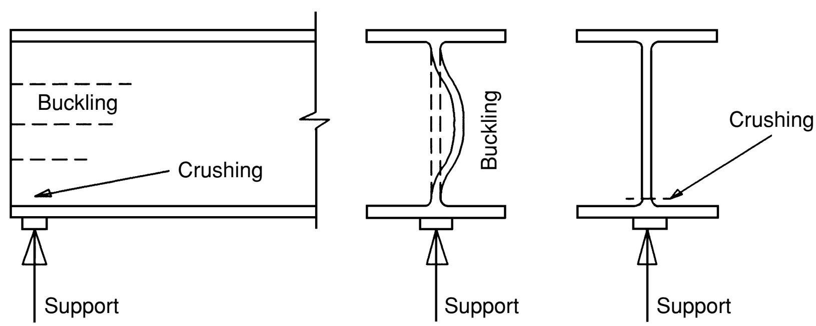


Fig. 4.7 *Web buckling and web bearing failures.*

its edge, as it is held as a cantilever – it will tend to twist and deflect sideways. This is illustrated in *Fig. 4.8*. Where a beam is not prevented from moving sideways, by a floor, for instance, or the beam is not nominally torsionally restrained at supports, it is necessary to check that it is laterally stable under load. Nominal torsional restraint may be assumed to exist if web cleats, partial depth end plates or fin plates, for example, are present (*Fig. 4.9*).

4.8.1.7 Deflection

Although a beam cannot fail as a result of excessive deflection alone, it is necessary to ensure that deflections are not excessive under unfactored imposed loading. Excessive deflections are those

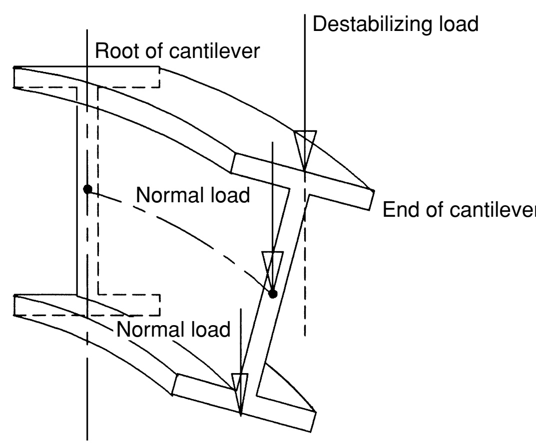


Fig. 4.8 *Lateral torsional buckling of cantilever.*

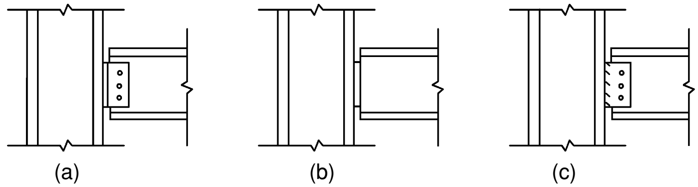


Fig. 4.9 *Nominal torsional restraint at beam support supplied by (a) web cleats (b) end plate (c) fin plate.*

resulting in severe cracking in finishes which would render the building unserviceable.

4.8.2 SUMMARY OF DESIGN PROCESS

The design process for a beam can be summarised as follows:

1. determination of design shear forces, F_v, and bending moments, M, at critical points on the element (see *Chapter 2*);
2. selection of UB or UC;
3. classification of section;
4. check shear strength; if unsatisfactory return to (2);
5. check bending capacity; if unsatisfactory return to (2);
6. check deflection; if unsatisfactory return to (2);
7. check web bearing and buckling at supports or concentrated load; if unsatisfactory provide web stiffener or return to (2);
8. check lateral torsional buckling (*section 4.8.11*); if unsatisfactory return to (2) or provide lateral and torsional restraints;
9. summarise results.

4.8.3 INITIAL SECTION SELECTION

It is perhaps most often the case in the design of skeletal building structures, that bending is the critical mode of failure, and so beam bending theory can be used to make an initial selection of section. Readers should refer to Chapter 2 for more clarification on bending theory if necessary.

To avoid bending failure, it is necessary to ensure that the design moment, M, does not exceed the moment capacity of the section, M_c, i.e.

$$M < M_c \tag{4.1}$$

Generally, the moment capacity for a steel section is given by

$$M_c = p_y S \tag{4.2}$$

where
p_y is the assumed design strength of the steel
S is the plastic modulus of the section

Combining the above equations gives an expression for S:

$$S > M/p_y \tag{4.3}$$

This can be used to select suitable universal beam sections from steel tables (*Appendix B*) with the plastic modulus of section S greater than the calculated value.

4.8.4 CLASSIFICATION OF SECTION

Having selected a suitable section, or proposed a suitable section fabricated by welding, it must be classified.

4.8.4.1 Strength classification

In making the initial choice of section, a steel strength will have been assumed. If grade S275 steel is to be used, for example, it may have been assumed that the strength is 275 N/mm^2. Now by referring to the flange thickness T from the steel tables, the design strength can be obtained from *Table 9* of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.3*.

If the section is fabricated from welded plate, the strength of the web and flange may be taken separately from *Table 9* of BS 5950 as that for the web thickness t and flange thickness T respectively.

4.8.4.2 Section classification

As previously noted, the bending strength of the section depends on how the section performs in bending. If the section is stocky, i.e. has thick flanges and web, it can sustain the formation of a plastic hinge. On the other hand, a slender section, i.e. with thin flanges and web, will fail by local buckling before the yield stress can be reached. Four classes of section are identified in clause 3.5.2 of BS 5950:

Class 1 Plastic cross sections are those in which a plastic hinge can be developed with significant rotation capacity (*Fig. 4.10*). If the plastic design method is used in the structural analysis, all members must be of this type.

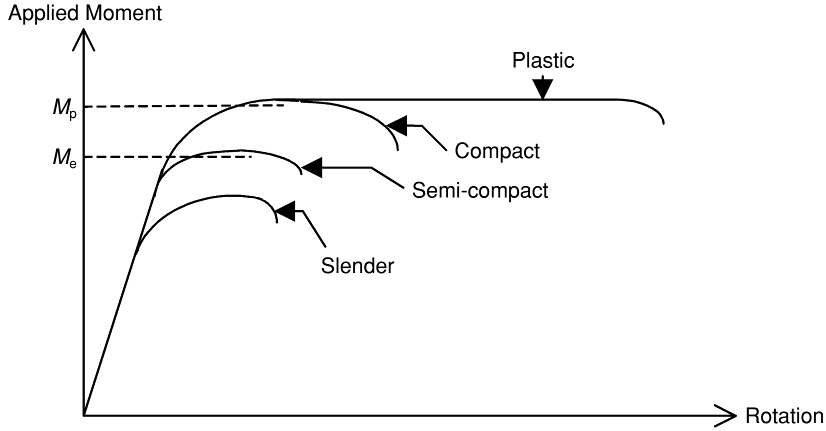


Fig. 4.10 *Typical moment/rotation characteristics of different classes of section.*

Class 2 Compact cross sections are those in which the full plastic moment capacity can be developed, but local buckling may prevent production of a plastic hinge with sufficient rotation capacity to permit plastic design.

Class 3 Semi-Compact cross sections can develop their elastic moment capacity, but local buckling may prevent the production of the full plastic moment.

Class 4 Slender cross sections contain slender elements subject to compression due to moment or axial load. Local buckling may prevent the full elastic moment capacity from being developed.

Limiting width to thickness ratios for elements for the above classes are given in *Table 11* of BS 5950, part of which is reproduced as *Table 4.4*. (Refer to *Fig. 4.2* for details of UB and UC dimensions.) Once the section has been classified, the various strength checks can be carried out to assess its suitability as discussed below.

4.8.5 SHEAR

According to clause 4.2.3 of BS 5950, the shear force, F_v, should not exceed the shear capacity of the section, P_v, i.e.

$$F_v \leq P_v \tag{4.5}$$

where

$$P_v = 0.6 p_y A_v \tag{4.6}$$

in which A_v is the shear area (= tD for rolled *I*-, *H*- and channel sections). Equation (4.6) assumes that the web carries the shear force alone.

Clause 4.2.3 also states that when the buckling ratio (d/t) of the web exceeds 70ε (see equation 4.4), then the web should be additionally checked for shear buckling. However, no British universal beam section, no matter what the grade, is affected.

Table 4.4 Limiting width to thickness ratios (elements which exceed these limits are to be taken as class 4, slender cross sections.) (based on Table 11, BS 5950)

Type of element (all rolled sections)	*Class of section*		
	(1) Plastic	*(2) Compact*	*(3) Semi-comp*
Outstand element of compression flange	$\frac{b}{T} \leq 9\varepsilon$	$\frac{b}{T} \leq 10\varepsilon$	$\frac{b}{T} \leq 15\varepsilon$
Web with neutral axis at mid-depth	$\frac{d}{t} \leq 80\varepsilon$	$\frac{d}{t} \leq 100\varepsilon$	$\frac{d}{t} \leq 120\varepsilon$
Web where the whole cross-section is subject to axial compression only	n/a	n/a	$\frac{d}{t} \leq 40\varepsilon$

Note. $\varepsilon = (275/p_y)^{1/2}$ (4.4)

4.8.6 LOW SHEAR AND MOMENT CAPACITY

As stated in clause 4.2.1.1 of BS 5950, at critical points the combination of (i) maximum moment and co-existent shear and (ii) maximum shear and co-existent moment, should be checked.

If the co-existent shear force F_v is less than $0.6P_v$, then this is a **low shear load**. Otherwise, if $0.6P_v < F_v < P_v$, then it is a **high shear load**.

When the shear load is low, the moment capacity of the section is calculated according to clause 4.2.5.2 of BS 5950 as follows:

For class 1 plastic or class 2 compact sections, the moment capacity

$$M_c = p_y S \le 1.2 p_y Z \qquad (4.7)$$

where

p_y design strength of the steel
S plastic modulus of the section
Z elastic modulus of the section

The additional check ($M_c \le 1.2p_yZ$) is to guard against plastic deformations under serviceability loads and is applicable to **simply supported and cantilever beams**. For other beam types this limit is $1.5p_yZ$.

For class 3 semi-compact sections

$$M_c = p_y Z \qquad (4.8)$$

or alternatively $M_c = p_y S_{eff} \le 1.2 p_y Z$ (4.9)

where S_{eff} is the effective plastic modulus (clause 3.5.6 of BS 5950) and the other symbols are as defined for equation 4.7.

Note that whereas equation 4.8 provides a conservative estimate of the moment capacity of class 3 compact sections, use of equation 4.9 is more efficient but requires additional computational effort.

For class 4 slender sections

$$M_c = p_y Z_{eff} \qquad (4.10)$$

where Z_{eff} is the effective elastic modulus (clause 3.6.2 of BS 5950).

In practice the above considerations do not prove to be much of a problem. Nearly all sections in grade S275 steel are plastic, and only a few sections in higher strength steel are semi-compact. No British rolled universal beam sections in pure bending, no matter what the strength class, are slender or have plastic or compact flanges and semi-compact webs.

Example 4.1 Selection of a beam section in grade S275 steel (BS 5950)

The simply supported beam in *Fig. 4.11* supports uniformly distributed characteristic dead and imposed loads of 5 kN/m each, as well as a characteristic imposed point load of 30 kN at mid-span. Assuming the beam is fully laterally restrained and there is nominal torsional restrain at supports, select a suitable UB section in S275 steel to satisfy bending and shear considerations.

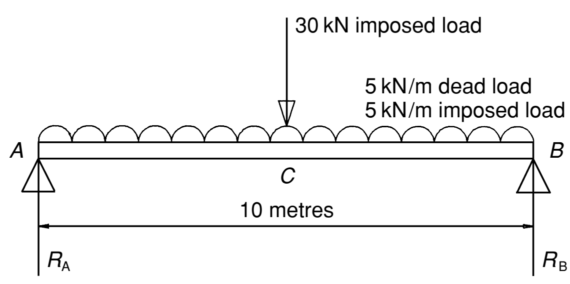


Fig. 4.11 *Loading for example 4.1.*

DESIGN BENDING MOMENT AND SHEAR FORCE

Total loading $= (30 \times 1.6) + (5 \times 1.4 + 5 \times 1.6)10$
$= 48 + 15 \times 10 = 198$ kN

Example 4.1 *continued*

Because the structure is symmetrical $R_A = R_B = 198/2 = 99$ kN. The central bending moment, M, is

$$M = \frac{W\ell}{4} + \frac{\omega\ell^2}{8}$$

$$= \frac{48 \times 10}{4} + \frac{15 \times 10^2}{8}$$

$$= 120 + 187.5 = 307.5 \text{ kN m}$$

Shear force and bending moment diagrams are shown in *Fig. 4.12*.

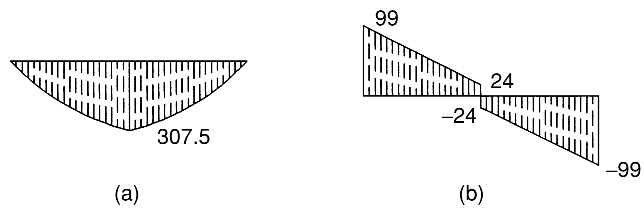


Fig. 4.12 *(a) Bending moment and (b) shear force diagrams.*

INITIAL SECTION SELECTION

Assuming $p_y = 275$ N/mm^2

$$S_x > \frac{M}{p_y} = \frac{307.5 \times 10^6}{275} = 1.118 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3 = 1118 \text{ cm}^3$$

From steel tables (*Appendix B*), suitable sections are:

1. 356 × 171 × 67 UB: $S_x = 1210$ cm^3;
2. 406 × 178 × 60 UB: $S_x = 1190$ cm^3;
3. 457 × 152 × 60 UB: $S_x = 1280$ cm^3.

The above illustrates how steel beam sections are specified. For section 1, for instance, **356 × 171** represents the serial size in the steel tables; **67** represents the mass per metre in kilograms; and UB stands for **universal beam.**

All the above sections give a value of plastic modulus about axis x–x, S_x, just greater than that required. Whichever one is selected will depend on economic and engineering considerations. For instance, if lightness were the primary consideration, perhaps section 3 would be selected, which is also the strongest (largest S_x). However, if minimising the depth of the member were the main consideration then section 1 would be chosen. Let us choose the compromise candidate, section 2.

CLASSIFICATION

Strength Classification

Because the flange thickness $T = 12.8$ mm (< 16 mm), then $p_y = 275$ N/mm^2 (as assumed) from *Table 4.3* and $\varepsilon = (275/p_y)^{1/2} = 1$ (*Table 4.4*).

Section classification

$b/T = 6.95$ which is less than $9\varepsilon = 9$. Hence from *Table 4.4*, flange is plastic. Also $d/t = 46.2$ which is less than $80\varepsilon = 80$. Hence from *Table 4.4*, web is plastic. Therefore 406 × 178 × 60 UB section is class 1 plastic.

Example 4.1 *continued*

SHEAR STRENGTH

As $d/t = 46.2 < 70\varepsilon$, shear buckling need not be considered. Shear capacity of section, P_v, is

$$P_v = 0.6p_yA_v = 0.6p_y tD = 0.6 \times 275 \times 7.8 \times 406.4$$
$$= 523 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 523 \text{ kN}$$

Now, as F_v(99 kN) < $0.6P_v = 0.6 \times 523 = 314$ kN (low shear load).

BENDING MOMENT

Moment capacity of section, M_c, is

$$M_c = p_yS = 275 \times 1190 \times 10^3$$
$$= 327 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 327 \text{ kN m}$$
$$\leq 1.2p_yZ = 1.2 \times 275 \times 1060 \times 10^3$$
$$= 349.8 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 349.8 \text{ kN m} \quad \text{OK}$$

Moment M due to imposed loading = 307.5 kN m. Extra moment due to self weight, M_{sw}, is

$$M_{sw} = 1.4 \times (60 \times 9.81/10^3)\frac{10^2}{8} = 10.3 \text{ kN m}$$

Total imposed moment $M_t = 307.5 + 10.3 = 317.8$ kN m < 327 kN m. Hence proposed section is suitable.

Example 4.2 Selection of a beam section in grade S460 steel (BS 5950)

Repeat the above design in grade S460 steel.

INITIAL SECTION SELECTION

Since section is of grade S460 steel, assume $p_y = 460$ N/mm^2

$$S_x > \frac{M}{p_y} = \frac{307.5 \times 10^6}{460} = 669 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3 = 669 \text{ cm}^3$$

Suitable sections (with classifications) are:

1. 305 × 127 × 48 UB: $S_x = 706$ cm^3, $p_y = 460$, plastic;
2. 305 × 165 × 46 UB: $S_x = 723$ cm^3, $p_y = 460$, compact;
3. 356 × 171 × 45 UB: $S_x = 774$ cm^3, $Z = 687$ cm^3, $p_y = 460$, semi-compact;
4. 406 × 140 × 39 UB: $S_x = 721$ cm^3, $Z = 627$ cm^3, $p_y = 460$, semi-compact.

Section 4 must be discounted. As it is semi-compact and Z is much less than 669 cm^3 it fails in bending. Section 3 is also semi-compact and Z is not sufficiently larger than 669 to take care of its own self weight. Section 2 looks the best choice, being the light of the two remaining, and with the greater strength.

SHEAR STRENGTH

As $d/t < 70\varepsilon$, no shear buckling check is required. Shear capacity of section, P_v, is

$$P_v = 0.6p_y tD = 0.6 \times 460 \times 6.7 \times 307.1$$
$$= 567.9 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 567.9 \text{ kN}$$

Now, as F_v(99 kN) < $0.6P_v = 340.7$ kN (low shear load).

Example 4.2 *continued*

BENDING MOMENT

Moment capacity of section subject to low shear load, M_c, is

$$\begin{aligned} M_c = p_y S &= 460 \times 723 \times 10^3 \\ &= 332.6 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 332.6 \text{ kN m} \\ &\leq 1.2 p_y Z = 1.2 \times 460 \times 648 \times 10^3 \\ &= 357.7 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 357.7 \text{ kN m} \quad \text{OK} \end{aligned}$$

Moment M due to dead and imposed loading = 307.5 kN m. Extra moment due to self weight, M_{sw}, is

$$M_{sw} = 1.4 \times (46 \times 9.81/10^3)\frac{10^2}{8} = 7.9 \text{ kN m}$$

Total imposed moment $M_t = 307.5 + 7.9 = 315.4$ kN m, which is less than the section's moment of resistance M_c = 332.6 kN m. This section is satisfactory.

4.8.7 HIGH SHEAR AND MOMENT CAPACITY

When the shear load is high, i.e. $F_v > 0.6P_v$, the moment-carrying capacity of the section is reduced. This is because the web cannot take the full tensile or compressive stress associated with the bending moment as well as a sustained substantial shear stress due to the shear force. Thus, according to clause 4.2.5.3 of BS 5950, the moment capacity of UB and UC sections, M_c, should be calculated as follows:

For class 1 plastic and compact sections

$$M_c = p_y(S - \rho S_v) \tag{4.11}$$

For class 3 semi-compact sections

$$M_c = p_y(S - \rho S_v/1.5) \quad \text{or alternatively}$$

$$M_c = p_y(S_{eff} - \rho S_v) \tag{4.12}$$

For class 4 slender sections

$$M_c = p_y(Z_{eff} - \rho S_v/1.5) \tag{4.13}$$

where $\rho = [2(F_v/P_v) - 1]^2$ and S_v for sections with equal flanges, is the plastic modulus of the shear area of section equal to $tD^2/4$. The other symbols are as previously defined in *section 4.8.6*.

Note the effect of the ρ factor is to reduce the moment-carrying capacity of the web as the shear load rises from 50 to 100% of the web's shear capacity. However, the resulting reduction in moment capacity is negligible when $F_v < 0.6P_v$.

4.8.8 DEFLECTION

A check should be carried out on the maximum deflection of the beam due to the most adverse realistic combination of **unfactored imposed**

Example 4.3 Selection of a cantilever beam section (BS 5950)

A proposed cantilever beam 1 m long is to be built into a concrete wall as shown in *Fig. 4.13*. It supports characteristic dead and imposed loading of 450 kN/m and 270 kN/m respectively. Select a suitable UB section in S275 steel to satisfy bending and shear criteria only.

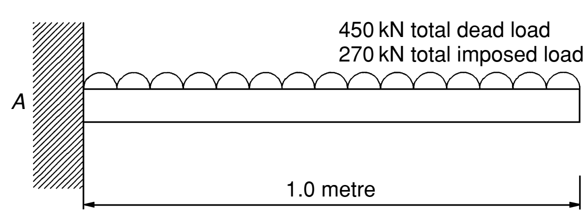


Fig. 4.13

Example 4.3 *continued*

DESIGN BENDING MOMENT AND SHEAR FORCE

Shear force F_v at A is

$$(450 \times 1.4) + (270 \times 1.6) = 1062 \text{ kN}$$

Bending Moment M at A is

$$\frac{W\ell}{2} = \frac{1062 \times 1}{2} = 531 \text{ kN m}$$

INITIAL SECTION SELECTION

Assuming $p_y = 275$ N/mm^2

$$S_x > \frac{M}{p_y} = \frac{531 \times 10^6}{275} = 1931 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3 = 1931 \text{ cm}^3$$

Suitable sections (with classifications) are:

1. 457 × 191 × 89 UB: $S_x = 2010$ cm^3, $p_y = 265$, plastic;
2. 533 × 210 × 82 UB: $S_x = 2060$ cm^3, $p_y = 275$, plastic.

SHEAR STRENGTH

Shear capacity of 533 × 210 × 82 UB section, P_v, is

$$P_v = 0.6p_y tD = 0.6 \times 275 \times 9.6 \times 528.3$$
$$= 837 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 837 \text{ kN} < 1062 \text{ kN} \quad \text{Not OK}$$

In this case, because the length of the cantilever is so short, the selection of section will be determined from the shear strength, which is more critical than bending. Try a new section:

$$610 \times 229 \times 113 \text{ UB: } S_x = 3290 \text{ cm}^3, \quad p_y = 265, \text{ plastic}$$
$$P_v = 0.6 \times 265 \times 607.3 \times 11.2 = 1081 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$
$$= 1081 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK but high shear load}$$

BENDING MOMENT

From above

$$\rho = [2(F_v/P_v) - 1]^2 = [2(1062/1081) - 1]^2 = 0.93$$
$$M_c = p_y(S_x - \rho S_v)$$
$$= 265(3290 \times 10^3 - 0.93[11.2 \times 607.3^2/4])$$
$$= 617 \times 10^6 = 617 \text{ kN m}$$
$$\leq 1.2p_yZ = 1.2 \times 265 \times 2880 \times 10^3$$
$$= 915.8 \times 10^6 = 915.8 \text{ kN m} \quad \text{OK}$$
$$M_{sw} = 1.4 \times (113 \times 9.81/10^3)\frac{1^2}{2} = 0.8 \text{ kN m}$$
$$M_t = M + M_{sw} = 531 + 0.8 = 532 \text{ kN m} < M_c$$

This section is satisfactory.

serviceability loading. In BS 5950 this is covered by clause 2.5.2 and *Table 8*, part of which is reproduced as *Table 4.5*. *Table 8* outlines recommended limits to these deflections, compliance with which should avoid significant damage to the structure and finishes.

Calculation of deflections from first principles has to be done using the area-moment method,

Table 4.5 Suggested vertical deflection limits on beams due to imposed load (based on Table 8, BS 5950)

Cantilevers	Length/180
Beams carrying plaster or other brittle finish	Span/360
Other beams (except purlins and sheeting rails)	Span/200

Macaulay's method, or some other similar approach, a subject which is beyond the scope of this book.

The reader is referred to a suitable structural analysis text for more detail on this subject. However, many calculations of deflection are carried out using formulae for standard cases, which can be combined as necessary to give the answer for more complicated situations. *Figure 4.14* summarises some of the more useful formulae.

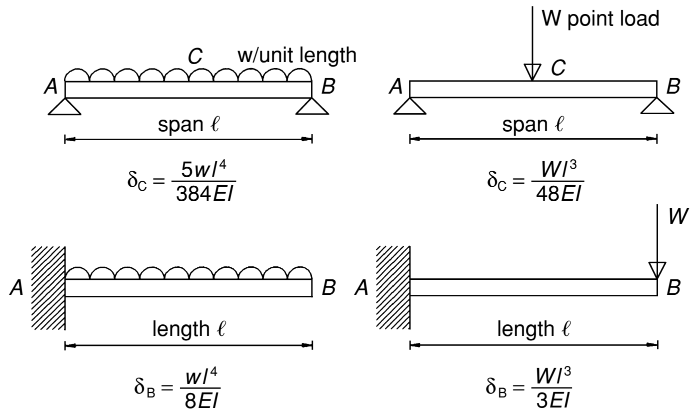


Fig. 4.14 *Deflections for standard cases. E = elastic modulus of steel (205 kN/mm²) and I = second moment of area (x–x) of section.*

Example 4.4 Deflection checks on steel beams (BS 5950)

Carry out a deflection check for Examples 4.1–4.3 above.

FOR EXAMPLE 4.1

$$\delta_C = \frac{5\omega\ell^4}{384EI} + \frac{W\ell^3}{48EI}$$

$$= \frac{5 \times 5 \times 10^4}{384 \times 205 \times 10^6 \times 21500 \times 10^{-8}} + \frac{30 \times 10^3}{48 \times 205 \times 10^6 \times 21500 \times 10^{-8}}$$

$$= 0.0148 + 0.0142 = 0.029 \text{ m} = 29 \text{ mm}$$

From *Table 4.5*, the recommended maximum deflection for beams carrying plaster is span/360 which equals 10000/360 = 27.8 mm, and for other beams span/200 = 10000/200 = 50 mm. Therefore if the beam was carrying a plaster finish one might consider choosing a larger section.

FOR EXAMPLE 4.2

$$\delta_C = \frac{5\omega\ell^4}{384EI} + \frac{W\ell^3}{48EI}$$

$$= \frac{5 \times 5 \times 10^4}{384 \times 205 \times 10^6 \times 9950 \times 10^{-8}} + \frac{30 \times 10^3}{48 \times 205 \times 10^6 \times 9950 \times 10^{-8}}$$

$$= 0.0319 + 0.0306 = 0.0625 \text{ m} = 62.5 \text{ mm}$$

Example 4.4 *continued*

The same recommended limits from *Table 4.5* apply as above. This grade S460 beam therefore fails the deflection test. This partly explains why the higher strength steel beams are not particularly popular.

FOR EXAMPLE 4.3

$$\delta_B = \frac{\omega\ell^4}{8EI} = \frac{270 \times 1^4}{8 \times 205 \times 10^6 \times 87400 \times 10^{-8}}$$

$$= 0.00019 \text{ m} = 0.19 \text{ mm}$$

The recommended limit from *Table 4.5* is

Length/180 = 5.6 mm.

So deflection is no problem for this particular beam.

4.8.9 WEB BEARING AND WEB BUCKLING

Clause 4.5 of BS 5950 covers all aspects of web bearing, web buckling and stiffener design. Usually most critical at the position of a support or concentrated load is the problem of web buckling. The buckling resistance of a web is obtained via the web bearing capacity as discussed below.

4.8.9.1 Web bearing

Figure 4.15 (a) illustrates how concentrated loads are transmitted through the flange/web connection in the span, and at supports when the distance to the end of the member from the end of the stiff bearing is zero. According to Clause 4.5.2 of BS 5950, the bearing resistance P_{bw} is given by:

$$P_{bw} = (b_1 + nk)tp_{yw} \tag{4.15}$$

where

- b_1 is the stiff bearing length
- n is as shown in Figure 4.15(a): $n = 5$ except at the end of a member and $n = 2 + 0.6b_e/k \leq 5$ at the end of the member
- b_e is the distance to the end of the member from the end of the stiff bearing (*Fig. 4.15(b)*)
- k $= (T + r)$ for rolled I- or H-sections
- T is the thickness of the flange
- t is the web thickness
- p_{yw} is the design strength of the web

This is essentially a simple check which ensures that the stress at the critical point on the flange/web connection does not exceed the strength of the steel.

It should also be checked that the contact stresses between load or support and flange do not exceed p_y.

4.8.9.2 Web buckling

According to clause 4.5.3.1 of BS 5950, provided the distance α_e from the concentrated load or reaction to the nearer end of the member is at least 0.7d, and if the flange through which the load or reaction is applied is effectively restrained against both

(a) rotation relative to the web
(b) lateral movement relative to the other flange (*Fig. 4.16*),

the buckling resistance of an unstiffened web is given by

$$P_x = \frac{25\varepsilon t}{\sqrt{(b_1 + nk)d}} P_{bw} \tag{4.16}$$

The reader is referred to Appendix C for the background and derivation of this equation.

Alternatively, when $\alpha_e < 0.7d$, the buckling resistance of an unstiffened web is given by

$$P_x = \frac{\alpha_e + 0.7d}{1.4d} \frac{25\varepsilon t}{\sqrt{(b_1 + nk)d}} P_{bw} \tag{4.17}$$

If the flange is not restrained against rotation and/or lateral movement the buckling resistance of the web is reduced to P_{xr}, given by

$$P_{xr} = \frac{0.7d}{L_E} P_x \tag{4.18}$$

in which L_E is the effective length of the web determined in accordance with *Table 22* of BS 5950.

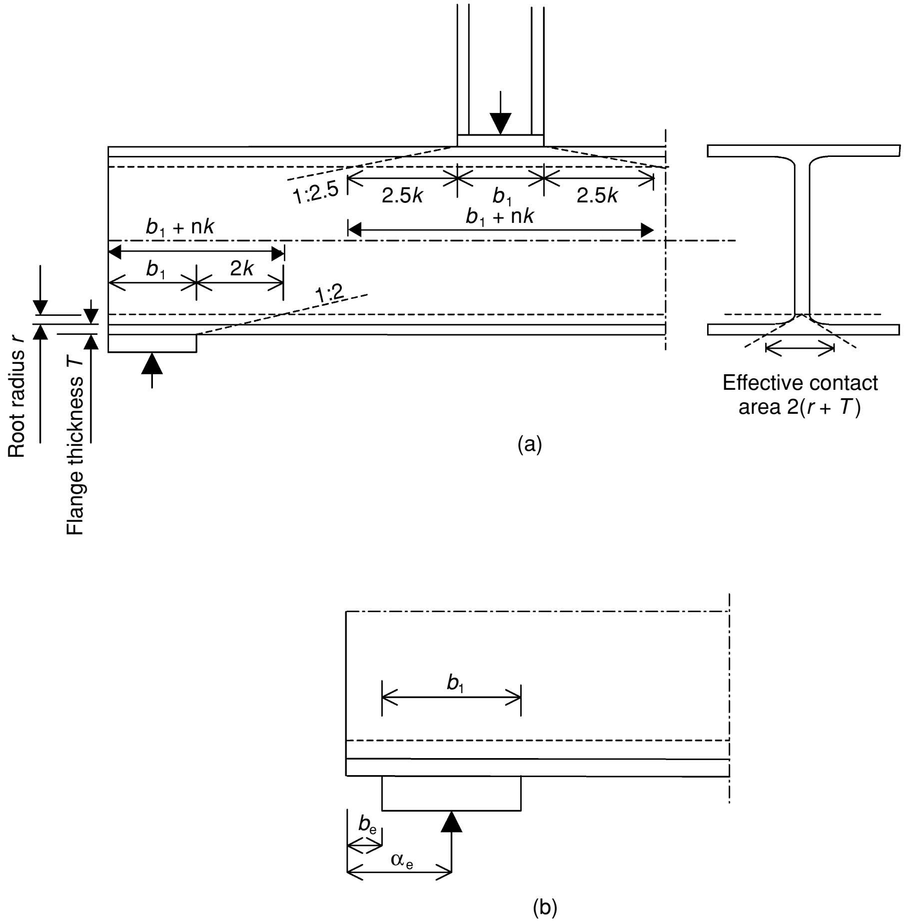


Fig. 4.15 Web bearing.

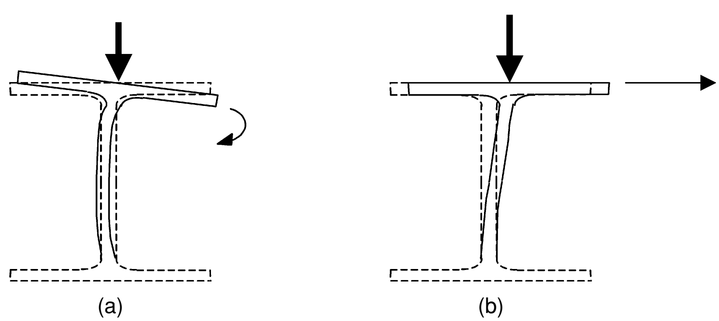


Fig. 4.16

Example 4.5 Checks on web bearing and buckling for steel beams (BS 5950)

Check web bearing and buckling for *Example 4.1*, assuming the beam sits on 100 mm bearings at each end.

WEB BEARING AT SUPPORTS

$$\begin{aligned} P_{bw} &= (b_1 + nk)tp_{yw} \\ &= (100 + 2 \times 23)7.8 \times 275 \\ &= 313 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 313 \text{ kN} > 99 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK} \end{aligned}$$

where
$k = T + r = 12.8 + 10.2 = 23$ mm
$n = 2 + 0.6b_e/k = 2$ (since $b_e = 0$)

CONTACT STRESS AT SUPPORTS

$$\begin{aligned} P_{cs} &= (b_1 \times 2(r + T))p_y = (100 \times 46) \times 275 \\ &= 1265 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 1265 \text{ kN} > 99 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK} \end{aligned}$$

WEB BUCKLING AT SUPPORT

Since α_e (= 50 mm) < $0.7d = 0.7 \times 360.5 = 252$ mm, buckling resistance of the web is

$$\begin{aligned} P_x &= \frac{\alpha_e + 0.7d}{1.4d} \frac{25\varepsilon t}{\sqrt{(b_1 + nk)d}} P_{bw} \\ &= \frac{50 + 252}{1.4 \times 360.5} \times \frac{25 \times 1 \times 7.8}{\sqrt{(100 + 2 \times 23)360.5}} 313 = 159 \text{ kN} > 99 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK} \end{aligned}$$

So no web stiffeners are required at supports.

A web check at the concentrated load should also be carried out, but readers can confirm that this aspect is not critical in this case.

4.8.10 STIFFENER DESIGN

If it is found that the web fails in buckling or bearing, it is not always necessary to select another section; larger supports can be designed, or load-carrying stiffeners can be locally welded between the flanges and the web. Clause 4.5 of BS 5950 gives guidance on the design of such stiffeners and the following example illustrates this.

Example 4.6 Design of a steel beam with web stiffeners (BS 5950)

A simply supported beam is to span 5 metres and support uniformly distributed characteristic dead and imposed loads of 200 kN/m and 100 kN/m respectively. The beam sits on 150 mm long bearings at supports, and both flanges are laterally and torsionally restrained (*Fig. 4.17*). Select a suitable UB section to satisfy bending, shear and deflection criteria. Also check web bearing and buckling at supports, and design stiffeners if they are required.

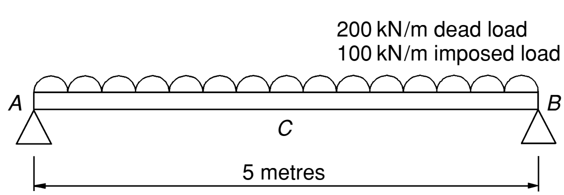


Fig. 4.17

Example 4.6 *continued*

DESIGN SHEAR FORCE AND BENDING MOMENT

Factored loading $= (200 \times 1.4) + (100 \times 1.6) = 440$ kN/m
Reactions $R_A = R_B = 440 \times 5 \times 0.5 = 1100$ kN

Bending moment, $M = \dfrac{\omega\ell^2}{8} = \dfrac{440 \times 5^2}{8} = 1375$ kN m

INITIAL SECTION SELECTION

Assuming $p_y = 275$ N/mm^2

$$S_x > \frac{M}{p_y} = \frac{1375 \times 10^6}{275} = 5000 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3 = 5000 \text{ cm}^3$$

From *Appendix B*, suitable sections (with classifications) are:

1. $610 \times 305 \times 179$ UB: $S_x = 5520$ cm^3, $p_y = 265$ plastic;
2. $686 \times 254 \times 170$ UB: $S_x = 5620$ cm^3, $p_y = 265$ plastic;
3. $762 \times 267 \times 173$ UB: $S_x = 6200$ cm^3, $p_y = 265$ plastic;
4. $838 \times 292 \times 176$ UB: $S_x = 6810$ cm^3, $p_y = 265$ plastic.

Section 2 looks like a good compromise; it is the lightest section, and its depth is not excessive.

SHEAR STRENGTH

$$P_v = 0.6p_y tD = 0.6 \times 265 \times 14.5 \times 692.9$$
$$= 1597 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 1597 \text{ kN} > 1100 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

However as F_v (= 1100 kN) > $0.6P_v$ (= 958 kN), high shear load.

BENDING MOMENT

As the shear force is zero at the centre, the point of maximum bending moment, M_c is obtained from

$$M_c = p_y S = 265 \times 5620 \times 10^3$$
$$= 1489.3 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 1489.3 \text{ kN m}$$
$$\leq 1.2p_y Z = 1.2 \times 265 \times 4910 \times 10^3$$
$$= 1561.3 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 1561.3 \text{ kN m} \quad \text{OK}$$

$$M_{sw} = 1.4 \times (170 \times 9.81/10^3)\frac{5^2}{8} = 7.3 \text{ kN m}$$

Total moment $M_t = 1375 + 7.3 = 1382.3$ kN m < 1489.3 kN m. OK

DEFLECTION

Calculated deflection, δ_C, is

$$\delta_C = \frac{5\omega\ell^4}{384EI} = \frac{5 \times 100 \times 5^4}{384 \times 205 \times 10^6 \times 170000 \times 10^{-8}}$$
$$= 0.0023 \text{ m} = 2.3 \text{ mm}$$

Maximum recommended deflection limit for a beam carrying plaster from *Table 4.5* = span/360 = 13.8 mm OK

Example 4.6 *continued*

WEB BEARING

$$k = T + r = 23.7 + 15.2 = 38.9 \text{ mm}$$

$$n = 2 + 0.6b_e/k = 2 \text{ (since } b_e = 0)$$

$$P_{bw} = (b_1 + nk)tp_{yw}$$
$$= (150 + 2 \times 38.9)14.5 \times 275$$
$$= 908 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 908 \text{ kN}$$

The web's bearing resistance P_{bw} (= 908 kN) < R_A (= 1100 kN), and so load-carrying stiffeners are required. BS 5950 stipulates that load-carrying stiffeners should be checked for both bearing and buckling.

STIFFENER BEARING CHECK

Let us propose 12 mm thick stiffeners each side of the web and welded continuously to it. As the width of section $B = 255.8$ mm, the stiffener outstand is effectively limited to 120 mm.

The actual area of stiffener in contact with the flange, if a 15 mm fillet is cut out for the root radius, $A_{s,net} = (120 - 15)2 \times 12 = 2520 \text{ mm}^2$

The bearing capacity of the stiffener, P_s, is given by (clause 4.5.2.2)

$$P_s = A_{s,net}\,p_y = 2520 \times 275$$
$$= 693 \times 10^3 \text{ N} > \text{external reaction} = (R_A - P_{bw} = 1100 - 908 =)\ 192 \text{ kN}$$

Hence the stiffener provided is adequate for web bearing.

WEB BUCKLING

Since α_e (= 75 mm) < $0.7d = 0.7 \times 692.9 = 485$ mm, buckling resistance of the web is

$$P_x = \frac{\alpha_e + 0.7d}{1.4d}\,\frac{25\varepsilon t}{\sqrt{(b_1 + nk)d}}\,P_{bw}$$

$$= \frac{75 + 485}{1.4 \times 692.9} \times \frac{25 \times 1 \times 14.5}{\sqrt{(150 + 2 \times 38.9)692.9}}\,908 = 478.3 \text{ kN} < 1100 \text{ kN}$$

Therefore, web stiffeners capable of resisting an external (buckling) load, F_x, of $F_x = (F_v - P_x) = 1100 - 478.3 = 621.7$ kN are required.

STIFFENER BUCKLING CHECK

The buckling resistance of a stiffener, P_{xs}, is given by

$$P_{xs} = A_s\,p_c$$

The plan of the web and stiffener at the support position is shown in *Fig. 4.18*. Note that a length of web on each side of the centre line of the stiffener not exceeding 15 times the web thickness should be included in calculating the buckling resistance (clause 4.5.3.3). Hence, second moment of area (I_s) of the effective section (shown cross-hatched in *Fig. 4.18*) (based on $bd^3/12$) for stiffener buckling about the z–z axis is

$$I_s = \frac{12 \times (120 + 120 + 14.5)^3}{12} + \frac{(217.5 + 69) \times 14.5^3}{12} = 16.56 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4$$

Effective area of buckling section, A_s, is

$$A_s = 12 \times (120 + 120 + 14.5) + (217.5 + 69) \times 14.5$$
$$= 7208 \text{ mm}^2$$

Example 4.6 *continued*

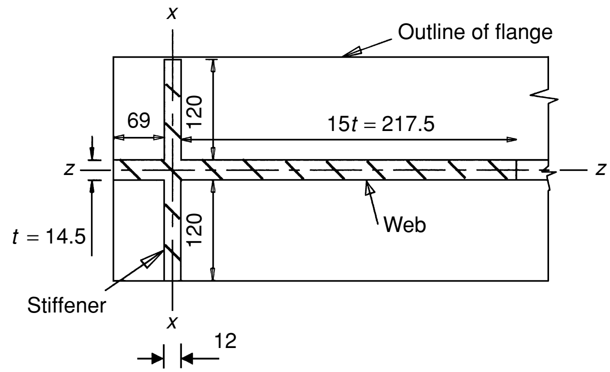


Fig. 4.18 *Plan of web and stiffener.*

Radius of gyration $r = (I_s/A_s)^{0.5}$

$= (16.56 \times 10^6/7208)^{0.5}$

$= 47.9$ mm

According to Clause 4.5.3.3 of BS 5950, the effective length (L_E) of load carrying stiffeners when the compression flange is laterally restrained = $0.7L$, where L = length of stiffener (= d)

$$= 0.7 \times 615.1$$

$$= 430.6 \text{ mm}$$

$$\lambda = L_E/r = 430.6/47.9 = 9$$

Then from *Table 24(c)* (*Table 4.14*) $p_c = p_y = 275$ N/mm^2

$$\text{Then } P_{xs} = A_s p_c = 7208 \times 275$$

$$= 1982 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

$$= 1982 \text{ kN} > F_x = 621.7 \text{ kN}$$

Hence the stiffener is also adequate for web buckling.

4.8.11 LATERAL TORSIONAL BUCKLING

If the loaded flange of a beam is not effectively restrained against lateral movement relative to the other flange, by a concrete floor fixed to the beam, for instance, and against rotation relative to the web, by web cleats or fin plates, for example, it is possible for the beam to twist sideways under a load less than that which would cause the beam to fail in bending, shear or deflection. This is called **lateral torsional buckling** which is covered by Clause 4.3 of BS 5950. It is illustrated by *Fig. 4.19* for a cantilever, but readers can experiment with this phenomenon very easily using a scale rule or ruler loaded on its edge. They will see that although the problem occurs more readily with a cantilever, it also applies to beams supported at each end. Keen experimenters will also find that the more restraint they provide at the beam supports, the higher the load required to make the beam twist sideways. This effect is taken into account by using the concept of 'effective length', as discussed below.

4.8.11.1 Effective length

The concept of **effective length** is introduced in clause 4.3.5 of BS 5950. For a beam supported at its ends only, with no intermediate lateral restraint, and standard restraint conditions at supports, the effective length is equal to the actual length between supports. When a greater degree of lateral and torsional restraint is provided at supports, the effective length is less than the actual length, and vice versa. The effective length appropriate to different end restraint conditions is specified in Table 13 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.6*, and

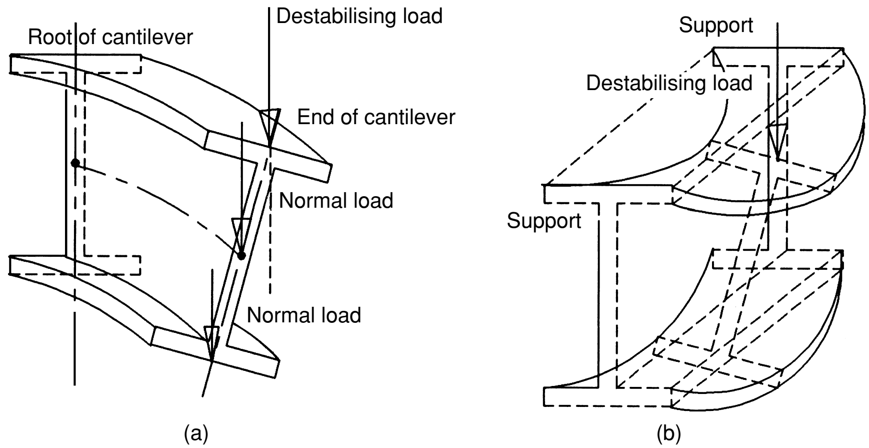


Fig. 4.19 *Lateral torsional buckling: (a) cantilever beam; (b) simply supported beam.*

Table 4.6 Effective length, L_E, for beams (Table 13, BS 5950)

Conditions of restraint at supports	*Loading conditions*	
	Normal	*Destab.*
Comp. flange laterally restrained		
Nominal torsional restraint against rotation about longitudinal axis		
Both flanges fully restrained against rotation on plan	$0.7L_{LT}$	$0.85L_{LT}$
Compression flange fully restrained against rotation on plan	$0.75L_{LT}$	$0.9L_{LT}$
Both flanges partially restrained against rotation on plan	$0.8L_{LT}$	$0.95L_{LT}$
Compression flange partially restrained against rotation on plan	$0.85L_{LT}$	$1.0L$
Both flanges free to rotate on plan	$1.0L_{LT}$	$1.2L_{LT}$
Comp. flange laterally unrestrained		
Both flanges free to rotate on plan		
Partial torsional restraint against rotation about longitudinal axis provided by connection of bottom flange to supports	$1.0L_{LT} + 2D$	$1.2L_{LT} + 2D$
Partial torsional restraint against rotation about longitudinal axis provided only by pressure of bottom flange onto supports	$1.2L_{LT} + 2D$	$1.4L_{LT} + 2D$

illustrated in *Fig. 4.20*. The table gives different values of effective length depending on whether the load is normal or destabilising. This is perhaps best explained using *Fig. 4.19*, in which it can readily be seen that a load applied to the top of the beam will cause it to twist further, thus worsening the situation. If the load is applied below the centroid of the section, however, it has a slightly restorative effect, and is conservatively assumed to be normal.

Determining the effective length for real beams, when it is difficult to define the actual conditions of restraint, and whether the load is normal or destabilising, is perhaps one of the greatest problems in the design of steelwork. It is an aspect that was amended in the 1990 edition of BS 5950 and once again in the 2000 edition in order to relate more to practical circumstances.

4.8.11.2 Lateral torsional buckling resistance

Checking of lateral torsional buckling for rolled UB sections can be carried out in two different ways. Firstly, there is a slightly conservative, but quite simple check in clause 4.3.7 of BS 5950, which only applies to equal flanged rolled sections. The approach is similar to that for struts (*section 4.9.1*), and involves determining the bending strength for the section, p_b, from Table 20 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.7*, via the slenderness value $(\beta_w)^{0.5}L_E/r_y$ and D/T.

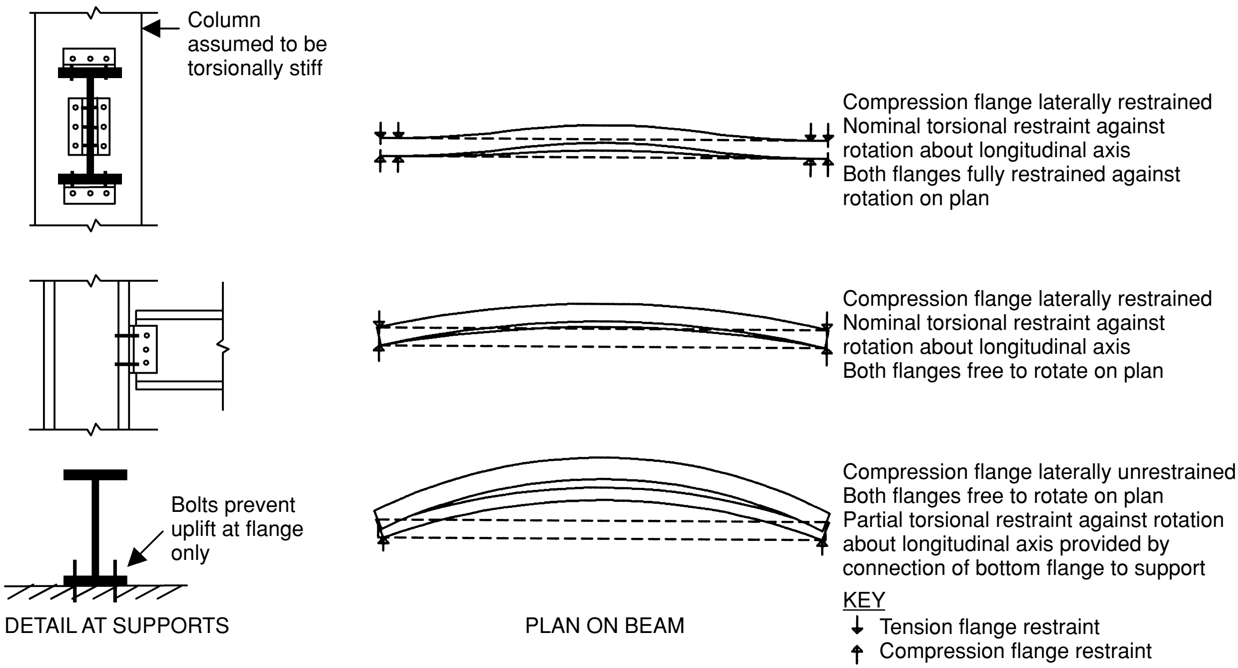


Fig. 4.20 *Restraint conditions.*

Table 4.7 Bending strength p_b (N/mm^2) for rolled sections with equal flanges (Table 20, BS 5950)

1) Grade S275 steel ≤ 16 mm (p_y = 275 N/mm^2)

$(\beta_w)^{0.5}L_E/r_y$	*D/T*									
	5	*10*	*15*	*20*	*25*	*30*	*35*	*40*	*45*	*50*
30	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275
35	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275
40	275	275	275	275	274	273	272	272	272	272
45	275	275	269	266	264	263	263	262	262	262
50	275	269	261	257	255	253	253	252	252	251
55	275	263	254	248	246	244	243	242	241	241
60	275	258	246	240	236	234	233	232	231	230
65	275	252	239	232	227	224	223	221	221	220
70	274	247	232	223	218	215	213	211	210	209
75	271	242	225	215	209	206	203	201	200	199
80	268	237	219	208	201	196	193	191	190	189
85	265	233	213	200	193	188	184	182	180	179
90	262	228	207	193	185	179	175	173	171	169
95	260	224	201	186	177	171	167	164	162	160
100	257	219	195	180	170	164	159	156	153	152
105	254	215	190	174	163	156	151	148	146	144
110	252	211	185	168	157	150	144	141	138	136
115	250	207	180	162	151	143	138	134	131	129
120	247	204	175	157	145	137	132	128	125	123
125	245	200	171	152	140	132	126	122	119	116
130	242	196	167	147	135	126	120	116	113	111
135	240	193	162	143	130	121	115	111	108	106

Table 4.7 (*cont'd*)

$(\beta_w)^{0.5}L_E/r_y$	*D/T*									
	5	*10*	*15*	*20*	*25*	*30*	*35*	*40*	*45*	*50*
140	238	190	159	139	126	117	111	106	103	101
145	236	186	155	135	122	113	106	102	99	96
150	233	183	151	131	118	109	102	98	95	92
155	231	180	148	127	114	105	99	94	91	88
160	229	177	144	124	111	101	95	90	87	84
165	227	174	141	121	107	98	92	87	84	81
170	225	171	138	118	104	95	89	84	81	78
175	223	169	135	115	101	92	86	81	78	75
180	221	166	133	112	99	89	83	78	75	72
185	219	163	130	109	96	87	80	76	72	70
190	217	161	127	107	93	84	78	73	70	67
195	215	158	125	104	91	82	76	71	68	65
200	213	156	122	102	89	80	74	69	65	63
210	209	151	118	98	85	76	70	65	62	59
220	206	147	114	94	81	72	66	62	58	55
230	202	143	110	90	78	69	63	58	55	52
240	199	139	106	87	74	66	60	56	52	50
250	195	135	103	84	72	63	57	53	50	47
2) Grade S275 steel > 16 mm ≤ 40 mm (p_y = 265 N/mm^2)										
30	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265
35	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265	265
40	265	265	265	265	265	264	264	264	263	263
45	265	265	261	258	256	255	254	254	254	254
50	265	261	253	249	247	246	245	244	244	244
55	265	255	246	241	238	236	235	235	234	234
60	265	250	239	233	229	227	226	225	224	224
65	265	245	232	225	221	218	216	215	214	214
70	265	240	225	217	212	209	207	205	204	204
75	263	235	219	210	204	200	198	196	195	194
80	260	230	213	202	196	191	189	187	185	184
85	257	226	207	195	188	183	180	178	176	175
90	254	222	201	188	180	175	171	169	167	166
95	252	217	196	182	173	167	163	160	158	157
100	249	213	190	176	166	160	156	153	150	149
105	247	209	185	170	160	153	148	145	143	141
110	244	206	180	164	154	147	142	138	136	134
115	242	202	176	159	148	140	135	132	129	127
120	240	198	171	154	142	135	129	125	123	121
125	237	195	167	149	137	129	124	120	117	115
130	235	191	163	144	132	124	119	114	111	109
135	233	188	159	140	128	119	114	109	106	104
140	231	185	155	136	124	115	109	105	102	99
145	229	182	152	132	120	111	105	101	97	95
150	227	179	148	129	116	107	101	97	93	91
155	225	176	145	125	112	103	97	93	89	87
160	223	173	142	122	109	100	94	89	86	83
165	221	170	139	119	106	97	91	86	83	80
170	219	167	136	116	103	94	88	83	80	77
175	217	165	133	113	100	91	85	80	77	74
180	215	162	130	110	97	88	82	77	74	71
185	213	160	128	108	95	86	79	75	71	69

Table 4.7 *(cont'd)*

$(\beta_w)^{0.5}L_E/r_y$	*D/T*									
	5	*10*	*15*	*20*	*25*	*30*	*35*	*40*	*45*	*50*
190	211	157	125	105	92	83	77	73	69	66
195	209	155	123	103	90	81	75	70	67	64
200	207	153	120	101	88	79	73	68	65	62
210	204	148	116	96	84	75	69	64	61	58
220	200	144	112	93	80	71	65	61	58	55
230	197	140	108	89	77	68	62	58	54	52
240	194	136	104	86	74	65	59	55	52	49
250	190	132	101	83	71	63	57	52	49	47

For class 1 plastic or class 2 compact sections, the buckling resistance moment, M_b, is obtained from

$$M_b = p_b S_x \tag{4.19}$$

For class 3 semi-compact sections, M_b, is given by

$$M_b = p_b Z_x \tag{4.20}$$

where
S_x plastic modulus about the major axis
Z_x elastic modulus about the major axis
β_w a ratio equal to 1 for class 1 plastic or class 2 compact sections and Z_x/S_x for class 3 semi-compact sections
D depth of the section
r_y radius of gyration about the y–y axis
T flange thickness

Example 4.7 Design of a laterally unrestrained steel beam (simple method) (BS 5950)

Assuming the beam in Example 4.1 is not laterally restrained, determine whether the selected section is suitable, and if not, select one which is. Assume the compression flange is laterally restrained and the beam fully restrained against torsion at supports, but both flanges are free to rotate on plan. The loading is normal.

EFFECTIVE LENGTH

Since beam is pinned at both ends, from *Table 4.6*, $L_E = 1.0L_{LT} = 10$ m

BUCKLING RESISTANCE

Using the conservative approach of clause 4.3.7

$$(\beta_w)^{0.5}\frac{L_E}{r_y} = (1.0)^{0.5}\frac{10000}{39.7} = 252$$

$$\frac{D}{T} = \frac{406.4}{12.8} = 31.75$$

From *Table 4.7*, $p_b = 60$ N/mm^2 (approx).

$$M_b = p_b S_x = 60 \times 1190 \times 10^3$$
$$= 71.4 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 71.4 \text{ kN m} << 317.8 \text{ kN m}$$

As the buckling resistance moment is much less than the actual imposed moment, this beam would fail by lateral torsional buckling. Using trial and error, a more suitable section can be found.

Example 4.7 *continued*

Try 305 × 305 × 137 UC; $p_y = 265$, plastic.

$$(\beta_w)^{0.5}\frac{L_E}{r_y} = (1.0)^{0.5}\frac{10000}{78.2} = 128$$

$$\frac{D}{T} = \frac{320.5}{21.7} = 14.8$$

Then from *Table 4.7*, $p_b = 165.7$ N/mm^2

$$M_b = p_b S_x = 165.7 \times 2300 \times 10^3 = 381 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 381 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_{sw} = 1.4(137 \times 9.81/10^3)\frac{10^2}{8} = 23.5 \text{ kN m}$$

Total imposed moment $M_t = 307.5 + 23.5 = 331$ kN m $<$ 381 kN m OK

So this beam, actually a column section, is suitable. Readers may like to check that there are not any lighter UB sections. Because the column has a greater r_y, it is laterally stiffer than a UB section of the same weight and is more suitable than a beam section in this particular situation.

4.8.11.3 Equivalent slenderness and uniform moment factors

The more rigorous approach for calculating values of M_b is covered by clauses 4.3.6.2 to 4.3.6.9 of BS 5950. It involves calculating an equivalent slenderness ratio, λ_{LT}, given by

$$\lambda_{LT} = u\nu\lambda\sqrt{\beta_w} \quad (4.21)$$

in which

$$\lambda = \frac{L_E}{r_y}$$

where

L_E effective length for lateral torsional buckling
r_y radius of gyration about the minor axis
u buckling parameter = 0.9 for rolled *I*- and *H*-sections
ν slenderness factor from Table 19 of BS 5950, part of which is reproduced as *Table 4.8*, given in terms of λ/x in which x torsional index = D/T where D is the depth of the section and T is the flange thickness
β_w = 1.0 for class 1 plastic or class 2 compact sections;
= Z_x/S_x for class 3 semi-compact sections if $M_b = p_b Z_x$;
= $S_{x,eff}/S_x$ for class 3 semi-compact sections if $M_b = p_b S_{x,eff}$;
= $Z_{x,eff}/S_x$ for class 4 slender cross-sections.

Knowing λ_{LT} and the design strength, p_y, the bending strength, p_b, is then read from *Table 16* for rolled sections, reproduced as *Table 4.9*. The

Table 4.8 Slenderness factor ν for beams with equal flanges (based on Table 19, BS 5950)

$\frac{\lambda}{x}$	$N = 0.5$
0.5	1.00
1.0	0.99
1.5	0.97
2.0	0.96
2.5	0.93
3.0	0.91
3.5	0.89
4.0	0.86
4.5	0.84
5.0	0.82
5.5	0.79
6.0	0.77
6.5	0.75
7.0	0.73
7.5	0.72
8.0	0.70
8.5	0.68
9.0	0.67
9.5	0.65
10.0	0.64
11.0	0.61
12.0	0.59
13.0	0.57
14.0	0.55
15.0	0.53
16.0	0.52
17.0	0.50
18.0	0.49
19.0	0.48
20.0	0.47

Table 4.9 Bending strength p_b (N/mm^2) for rolled sections (Table 16, BS 5950)

λ_{LT}	*Steel grade and design strength, p_y (N/mm^2)*														
	S275					*S355*					*S460*				
	235	*245*	*255*	*265*	*275*	*315*	*325*	*335*	*345*	*355*	*400*	*410*	*430*	*440*	*460*
25	235	245	255	265	275	315	325	335	345	355	400	410	430	440	460
30	235	245	255	265	275	315	325	335	345	355	395	403	421	429	446
35	235	245	255	265	273	307	316	324	332	341	378	386	402	410	426
40	229	238	246	254	262	294	302	309	317	325	359	367	382	389	404
45	219	227	235	242	250	280	287	294	302	309	340	347	361	367	381
50	210	217	224	231	238	265	272	279	285	292	320	326	338	344	356
55	199	206	213	219	226	251	257	263	268	274	299	305	315	320	330
60	189	195	201	207	213	236	241	246	251	257	278	283	292	296	304
65	179	185	190	196	201	221	225	230	234	239	257	261	269	272	279
70	169	174	179	184	188	206	210	214	218	222	237	241	247	250	256
75	159	164	168	172	176	192	195	199	202	205	219	221	226	229	234
80	150	154	158	161	165	178	181	184	187	190	201	203	208	210	214
85	140	144	147	151	154	165	168	170	173	175	185	187	190	192	195
90	132	135	138	141	144	153	156	158	160	162	170	172	175	176	179
95	124	126	129	131	134	143	144	146	148	150	157	158	161	162	164
100	116	118	121	123	125	132	134	136	137	139	145	146	148	149	151
105	109	111	113	115	117	123	125	126	128	129	134	135	137	138	140
110	102	104	106	107	109	115	116	117	119	120	124	125	127	128	129
115	96	97	99	101	102	107	108	109	110	111	115	116	118	118	120
120	90	91	93	94	96	100	101	102	103	104	107	108	109	110	111
125	85	86	87	89	90	94	95	96	96	97	100	101	102	103	104
130	80	81	82	83	84	88	89	90	90	91	94	94	95	96	97
135	75	76	77	78	79	83	83	84	85	85	88	88	89	90	90
140	71	72	73	74	75	78	78	79	80	80	82	83	84	84	85
145	67	68	69	70	71	73	74	74	75	75	77	78	79	79	80
150	64	64	65	66	67	69	70	70	71	71	73	73	74	74	75
155	60	61	62	62	63	65	66	66	67	67	69	69	70	70	71
160	57	58	59	59	60	62	62	63	63	63	65	65	66	66	67
165	54	55	56	56	57	59	59	59	60	60	61	62	62	62	63
170	52	52	53	53	54	56	56	56	57	57	58	58	59	59	60
175	49	50	50	51	51	53	53	53	54	54	55	55	56	56	56
180	47	47	48	48	49	50	51	51	51	51	52	53	53	53	54
185	45	45	46	46	46	48	48	48	49	49	50	50	50	51	51
190	43	43	44	44	44	46	46	46	46	47	48	48	48	48	48
195	41	41	42	42	42	43	44	44	44	44	45	45	46	46	46
200	39	39	40	40	40	42	42	42	42	42	43	43	44	44	44
210	36	36	37	37	37	38	38	38	39	39	39	40	40	40	40
220	33	33	34	34	34	35	35	35	35	36	36	36	37	37	37
230	31	31	31	31	31	32	32	33	33	33	33	33	34	34	34
240	28	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	30	31	31	31	31	31
250	26	27	27	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	29	29	29	29	29
λ_{L0}	37.1	36.3	35.6	35	34.3	32.1	31.6	31.1	30.6	30.2	28.4	28.1	27.4	27.1	26.5

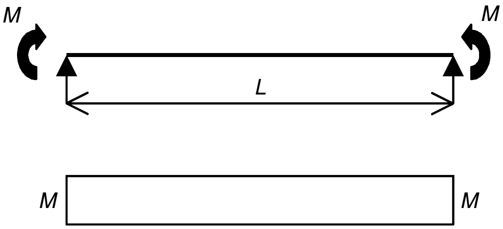


Fig. 4.21 Standard case for buckling.

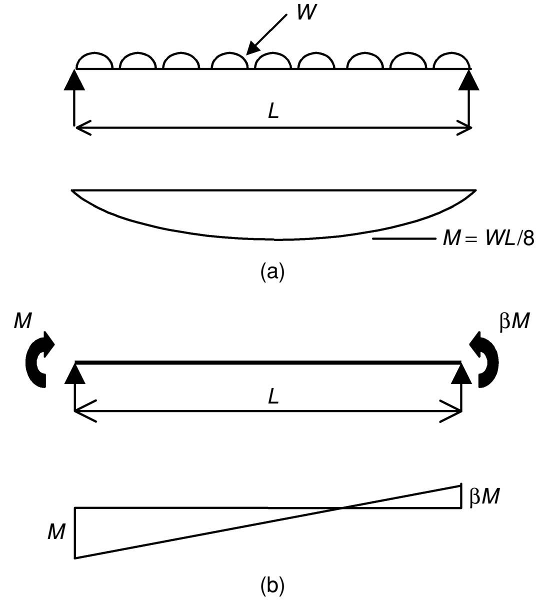


Fig. 4.22 Load cases less susceptible to buckling.

buckling resistance moment, M_b, is obtained from the following:

For class 1 plastic or cass 2 compact sections

$$M_b = p_b S_x \tag{4.22}$$

For class 3 semi-compact sections, M_b, is given by

$$M_b = p_b Z_x \tag{4.23}$$

or alternatively $$M_b = p_b S_{x,eff} \tag{4.24}$$

For class 4 slender sections

$$M_b = p_b Z_{x,eff} \tag{4.25}$$

where

S_x plastic modulus about the major axis
Z_x elastic modulus about the major axis
$S_{x,eff}$ effective plastic modulus about the major axis (see clause 3.5.6)
$Z_{x,eff}$ effective section modulus about the major axis (see clause 3.6.2)

This value of the buckling moment assumes the beam is acted on by a uniform, single curvature moment (*Fig. 4.21*), which is the most severe arrangement in terms of lateral stability. However, where the beam is acted on by variable moments (*Fig. 4.22(a)*) or unequal end moments (*Fig. 4.22(b)*), the maximum moment about the major axis, M_x, must satisfy the following conditions:

$$M_x \le M_b/m_{LT} \text{ and } M_x \le M_{cx} \tag{4.26}$$

where

m_{LT} equivalent uniform moment factor for lateral torsional buckling read from *Table 18* of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.10*. For the destabilising loading condition $m_{LT} = 1$
M_{cx} moment capacity of the section about the major axis

Example 4.8 Design of a laterally unrestrained beam – rigorous method (BS 5950)

Repeat Example 4.7 using the more rigorous method.

As previously noted the 305 × 305 × 137 UC section is class 1 plastic has a design strength, $p_y = 265$ N/mm². From steel tables (*Appendix B*), $r_y = 78.2$ mm, $D = 320.5$ mm and $T = 21.7$ mm. The slenderness ratio, λ, is

$$\lambda = \frac{L_E}{r_y} = \frac{10000}{78.2} = 127.9$$

$$\frac{\lambda}{x} = \frac{127.9}{320.5/21.7} = 8.7$$

From *Table 4.8*, ν = 0.678. Since the section is class 1 plastic, $\beta_w = 1.0$ and the equivalent slenderness ratio, λ_{LT}, is

$$\lambda_{LT} = u\nu\lambda\sqrt{\beta_w} = 0.9 \times 0.678 \times 127.9 \times \sqrt{1.0} = 78$$

Example 4.8 *continued*

From *Table 4.9*, $p_b = 165.4$ N/mm², hence

$$M_b = p_b S_x = 165.4 \times 2300 \times 10^3$$
$$= 380.4 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 380.4 \text{ kN m}$$

m_{LT} from *Table 4.10* = 0.89 (approx.), by interpolation between 0.85 and 0.925

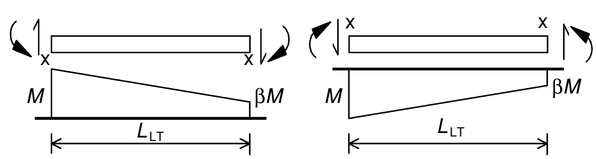
$$\frac{M_b}{m_{LT}} = \frac{380.4}{0.89} = 427.4 \text{ kN m} < M_{cx} \; (= p_y S_x = 265 \times 2300 \times 10^{-3}) = 609.5 \text{ kN m}$$

This gives, in this case, a buckling moment approximately 10% greater than in *Example 4.7*. This may enable a lighter member to be selected, but for rolled sections it may not be really worth the additional effort.

Table 4.10 Equivalent uniform moment factor m_{LT} for lateral torsional buckling (based on Table 18, BS 5950)

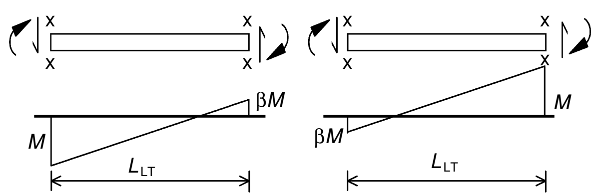
Segments with end moments only

β positive



x Lateral restraint

β negative



β	m_{LT}
1.0	1.00
0.9	0.96
0.8	0.92
0.7	0.88
0.6	0.84
0.5	0.80
0.4	0.76
0.3	0.72
0.2	0.68
0.1	0.64
0.0	0.60
−0.1	0.56
−0.2	0.52
−0.3	0.48
−0.4	0.46
−0.5	0.44
−0.6	0.44
−0.7	0.44
−0.8	0.44
−0.9	0.44
−1.0	0.44

Specific cases (no intermediate lateral restraints)

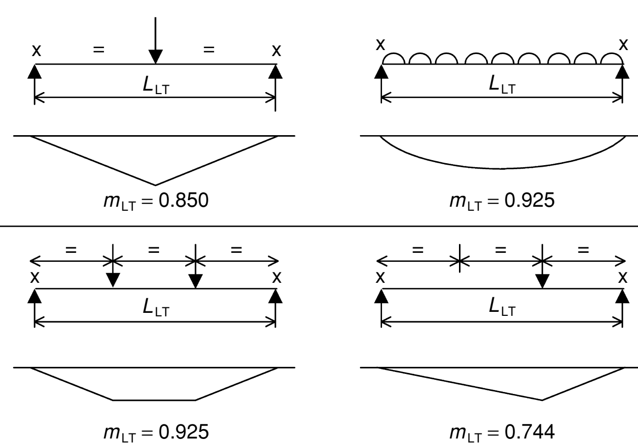
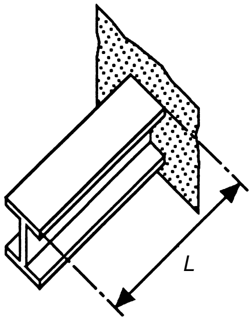


Table 4.11 Effective length, L_E, for cantilevers without intermediate constraint (based on Table 14, BS 5950)

Restraint conditions at supports	*Restraint conditons at tip*	*Loading conditions*	
		Normal	*Destabilising*
Restrained laterally, torsionally and against rotation on plan	1) Free	$0.8L$	$1.4L$
	2) Lateral restraint to top flange	$0.7L$	$1.4L$
	3) Torsional restraint	$0.6L$	$0.6L$
	4) Lateral and torsional restraint	$0.5L$	$0.5L$



Example 4.9 Checking for lateral instability in a cantilever steel beam (BS 5950)

Continue *Example 4.3* to determine whether the cantilever is laterally stable. Assume the load is destabilising.

From *Table 4.11*, $L_E = 1.4L = 1.4$ m

For 610 × 229 × 113 UB

$$\lambda = \frac{L_E}{r_y} = \frac{1400}{48.8} = 28.7$$

$$\frac{\lambda}{x} = \frac{28.7}{607.3/17.3} = 0.82 \Rightarrow \nu = 0.99 \quad (\textit{Table 4.8})$$

$$\lambda_{LT} = u\nu\lambda\sqrt{\beta_w} = 0.9 \times 0.99 \times 28.7 \times \sqrt{1.0} = 28.4$$

From *Table 4.9*, $p_b = 265$ N/mm^2 $= p_y$, and so lateral torsional buckling is not a problem with this cantilever.

4.8.11.4 Cantilever beams

For cantilevers, the effective length is given in clear diagrammatical form in Table 14 of BS 5950, part of which is reproduced as *Table 4.11*.

4.8.11.5 Summary of design procedures

The two alternative methods for checking lateral torsional buckling of beams can be summarised as follows.

Conservative method

1. Calculate the design shear force, F_v, and bending moment, M_x, at critical points along the beam.
2. Select and classify UB or UC section.
3. Check shear and bending capacity of section. If unsatisfactory return to (2).
4. Determine the effective length of the beam, L_E, using *Table 4.6*.

5. Determine S_x, r_y, D and T from steel tables (*Appendix B*).
6. Calculate the slenderness value, $\lambda = (\beta)^{0.5}L_E/r_y$.
7. Determine the bending strength, p_b, from *Table 4.7* using λ and D/T.
8. Calculate the buckling resistance moment, M_b, via equation 4.18 or 4.19.
9. Check $M_x \le M_b$. If unsatisfactory return to (2).

Rigorous method

1. Steps (1)–(4) as for conservative method.
2. Determine S_x and r_y from steel tables; determine x and u from either steel tables or for UB and UCs assuming $x = D/T$ and $u = 0.9$.
3. Calculate slenderness ratio, $\lambda = L_E/r_y$.
4. Determine ν from *Table 4.8* using λ/x and $N = 0.5$.
5. Calculate equivalent slenderness ratio, $\lambda_{LT} = u\nu\lambda\sqrt{\beta_w}$.
6. Determine p_b from *Table 4.9* using λ_{LT}.
7. Calculate M_b via equations 4.22–4.25.
8. Obtain the equivalent uniform moment factor, m_{LT}, from *Table 4.10*.
9. Check $M_x \le M_b/m_{LT}$. If unsatisfactory return to (2).

4.9 Design of compression members

4.9.1 STRUTS

Steel compression members, commonly referred to as stanchions, include struts and columns. A strut is a member subject to direct compression only. A column, on the other hand, refers to members subject to a combination of compressive loading and bending. Although most columns in real structures resist compressive loading and bending, the strut is a convenient starting point.

Struts (and columns) differ fundamentally in their behaviour under axial load depending on whether they are **slender** or **stocky**. Most real struts and columns can neither be regarded as slender nor stocky, but as something in between, but let us look at the behaviour of stocky and slender struts first.

Stocky struts will fail by crushing or squashing of the material. For stocky struts the 'squash load', P_s is given by the simple formula

$$P_s = p_y A_g \tag{4.27}$$

where

p_y design strength of steel
A_g gross cross sectional area of the section

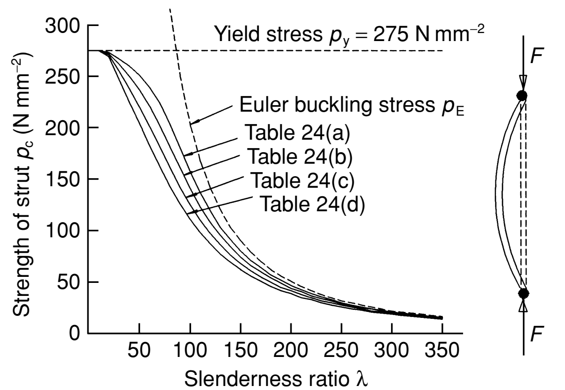


Fig. 4.23

Slender struts will fail by buckling. For elastic slender struts pinned at each end, the 'Euler load', at which a perfect strut buckles elastically is given by

$$P_E = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{L^2} = \frac{\pi^2 E A_g r_y^2}{L^2} = \frac{\pi^2 E A_g}{\lambda^2} \tag{4.28}$$

using $r = \sqrt{\dfrac{I}{A}}$ and $\lambda = \dfrac{L}{r}$.

If the compressive strength, p_c, which is given by

$$p_c = P_s/A_g \quad \text{(for stocky struts)} \tag{4.29}$$

and

$$p_c = P_E/A_g \quad \text{(for slender struts)} \tag{4.30}$$

are plotted against λ (*Fig. 4.23*), the area above the two dotted lines represents an impossible situation in respect of these struts. In this area, the strut has either buckled or squashed. Struts which fall below the dotted lines are theoretically able to withstand the applied load without either buckling or squashing. In reality, however, this tends not to be the case because of a combination of manufacturing and practical considerations. For example, struts are never completely straight, or are subject to exactly concentric loading. During manufacture, stresses are locked into steel members which effectively reduce their load-carrying capacities. As a result of these factors, failure of a strut will not be completely due to buckling or squashing, but a combination, with partially plastic stresses appearing across the member section. These non-ideal factors or imperfections are found in practice, and laboratory tests have confirmed that in fact the failure line for real struts lies along a series of lines such as a,b,c and d in *Fig. 4.23*. These are derived from the Perry-Robertson equation which includes allowances for the various imperfections.

Whichever of the lines a–d is used depends on the shape of section and the axis of buckling. Table 23 of BS 5950, part of which is reproduced as *Table 4.12*, specifies which of the lines is appropriate for the shape of section, and Tables 24(a), (b), (c) and (d) enable values of p_c to be read off appropriate to the section used. (Tables 24(b) and (c) of BS 5950 have been reproduced as *Tables 4.13* and *4.14* respectively.) Alternatively, Appendix C of BS 5950 gives the actual Perry-Robertson equations which may be used in place of the tables if considered necessary.

Table 4.12 Strut table selection (based on Table 23, BS 5950)

Type of section	*Thickness*[a]	*Axis of buckling*	
		x–x	*y–y*
Hot-finished structural hollow section		24(a)	24(a)
Rolled *I*-section	Up to 40 mm	24(a)	24(b)
Rolled *H*-section	Up to 40 mm	24(b)[b]	24(c)[c]
	Over 40 mm	24(c)	24(d)

Notes. [a] For thicknesses between 40 and 50 mm the value of p_c may be taken as the average of the values for thicknesses up to 40 mm and over 40 mm.
[b] Reproduced as Table 4.13.
[c] Reproduced as Table 4.14.

Table 4.13 Compressive strength, p_c (N/mm^2) with $\lambda < 110$ for strut curve b (Table 24(b), BS 5950)

λ	*Steel grade and design strength p_y (N/mm^2)*														
	S275					*S355*					*S460*				
	235	*245*	*255*	*265*	*275*	*315*	*325*	*335*	*345*	*355*	*400*	*410*	*430*	*440*	*460*
15	235	245	255	265	275	315	325	335	345	355	399	409	428	438	457
20	234	243	253	263	272	310	320	330	339	349	391	401	420	429	448
25	229	239	248	258	267	304	314	323	332	342	384	393	411	421	439
30	225	234	243	253	262	298	307	316	325	335	375	384	402	411	429
35	220	229	238	247	256	291	300	309	318	327	366	374	392	400	417
40	216	224	233	241	250	284	293	301	310	318	355	364	380	388	404
42	213	222	231	239	248	281	289	298	306	314	351	359	375	383	399
44	211	220	228	237	245	278	286	294	302	310	346	354	369	377	392
46	209	218	226	234	242	275	283	291	298	306	341	349	364	371	386
48	207	215	223	231	239	271	279	287	294	302	336	343	358	365	379
50	205	213	221	229	237	267	275	283	290	298	330	337	351	358	372
52	203	210	218	226	234	264	271	278	286	293	324	331	344	351	364
54	200	208	215	223	230	260	267	274	281	288	318	325	337	344	356
56	198	205	213	220	227	256	263	269	276	283	312	318	330	336	347
58	195	202	210	217	224	252	258	265	271	278	305	311	322	328	339
60	193	200	207	214	221	247	254	260	266	272	298	304	314	320	330
62	190	197	204	210	217	243	249	255	261	266	291	296	306	311	320
64	187	194	200	207	213	238	244	249	255	261	284	289	298	302	311
66	184	191	197	203	210	233	239	244	249	255	276	281	289	294	301
68	181	188	194	200	206	228	233	239	244	249	269	273	281	285	292
70	178	185	190	196	202	223	228	233	238	242	261	265	272	276	282
72	175	181	187	193	198	218	223	227	232	236	254	257	264	267	273
74	172	178	183	189	194	213	217	222	226	230	246	249	255	258	264
76	169	175	180	185	190	208	212	216	220	223	238	241	247	250	255
78	166	171	176	181	186	203	206	210	214	217	231	234	239	241	246

Table 4.13 *(cont'd)*

λ	Steel grade and design strength p_y (N/mm^2)														
	S275					*S355*					*S460*				
	235	*245*	*255*	*265*	*275*	*315*	*325*	*335*	*345*	*355*	*400*	*410*	*430*	*440*	*460*
80	163	168	172	177	181	197	201	204	208	211	224	226	231	233	237
82	160	164	169	173	177	192	196	199	202	205	217	219	223	225	229
84	156	161	165	169	173	187	190	193	196	199	210	212	216	218	221
86	153	157	161	165	169	182	185	188	190	193	203	205	208	210	213
88	150	154	158	161	165	177	180	182	185	187	196	198	201	203	206
90	146	150	154	157	161	172	175	177	179	181	190	192	195	196	199
92	143	147	150	153	156	167	170	172	174	176	184	185	188	189	192
94	140	143	147	150	152	162	165	167	169	171	178	179	182	183	185
96	137	140	143	146	148	158	160	162	164	165	172	173	176	177	179
98	134	137	139	142	145	153	155	157	159	160	167	168	170	171	173
100	130	133	136	138	141	149	151	152	154	155	161	162	164	165	167
102	127	130	132	135	137	145	146	148	149	151	156	157	159	160	162
104	124	127	129	131	133	141	142	144	145	146	151	152	154	155	156
106	121	124	126	128	130	137	138	139	141	142	147	148	149	150	151
108	118	121	123	125	126	133	134	135	137	138	142	143	144	145	147
110	115	118	120	121	123	129	130	131	133	134	138	139	140	141	142
112	113	115	117	118	120	125	127	128	129	130	134	134	136	136	138
114	110	112	114	115	117	122	123	124	125	126	130	130	132	132	133
116	107	109	111	112	114	119	120	121	122	122	126	126	128	128	129
118	105	106	108	109	111	115	116	117	118	119	122	123	124	124	125
120	102	104	105	107	108	112	113	114	115	116	119	119	120	121	122
122	100	101	103	104	105	109	110	111	112	112	115	116	117	117	118
124	97	99	100	101	102	106	107	108	109	109	112	112	113	114	115
126	95	96	98	99	100	103	104	105	106	106	109	109	110	111	111
128	93	94	95	96	97	101	101	102	103	103	106	106	107	107	108
130	90	92	93	94	95	98	99	99	100	101	103	103	104	105	105
135	85	86	87	88	89	92	93	93	94	94	96	97	97	98	98
140	80	81	82	83	84	86	87	87	88	88	90	90	91	91	92
145	76	77	78	78	79	81	82	82	83	83	84	85	85	86	86
150	72	72	73	74	74	76	77	77	78	78	79	80	80	80	81
155	68	69	69	70	70	72	72	73	73	73	75	75	75	76	76
160	64	65	65	66	66	68	68	69	69	69	70	71	71	71	72
165	61	62	62	62	63	64	65	65	65	65	66	67	67	67	68
170	58	58	59	59	60	61	61	61	62	62	63	63	63	64	64
175	55	55	56	56	57	58	58	58	59	59	60	60	60	60	60
180	52	53	53	53	54	55	55	55	56	56	56	57	57	57	57
185	50	50	51	51	51	52	52	53	53	53	54	54	54	54	54
190	48	48	48	48	49	50	50	50	50	50	51	51	51	51	52
195	45	46	46	46	46	47	47	48	48	48	49	49	49	49	49
200	43	44	44	44	44	45	45	45	46	46	46	46	47	47	47
210	40	40	40	40	41	41	41	41	42	42	42	42	42	43	43
220	36	37	37	37	37	38	38	38	38	38	39	39	39	39	39
230	34	34	34	34	34	35	35	35	35	35	35	36	36	36	36
240	31	31	31	31	32	32	32	32	32	32	33	33	33	33	33
250	29	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
260	27	27	27	27	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28
270	25	25	25	25	25	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26
280	23	23	23	23	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24
290	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	23	23	23	23	23
300	20	20	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
310	19	19	19	19	19	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	–
320	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19
330	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	18	18	18	18	18	18
340	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	17	17	17	17	17	17	17
350	15	15	15	15	15	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16

Table 4.14 Compressive strength, p_c (N/mm^2) for strut curve c (Table 24(c), BS 5950)

λ	*Steel grade and design strength p_y (N/mm^2)*														
	S275					*S355*					*S460*				
	235	*245*	*255*	*265*	*275*	*315*	*325*	*335*	*345*	*355*	*400*	*410*	*430*	*440*	*460*
15	235	245	255	265	275	315	325	335	345	355	398	408	427	436	455
20	233	242	252	261	271	308	317	326	336	345	387	396	414	424	442
25	226	235	245	254	263	299	308	317	326	335	375	384	402	410	428
30	220	228	237	246	255	289	298	307	315	324	363	371	388	396	413
35	213	221	230	238	247	280	288	296	305	313	349	357	374	382	397
40	206	214	222	230	238	270	278	285	293	301	335	343	358	365	380
42	203	211	219	227	235	266	273	281	288	296	329	337	351	358	373
44	200	208	216	224	231	261	269	276	284	291	323	330	344	351	365
46	197	205	213	220	228	257	264	271	279	286	317	324	337	344	357
48	195	202	209	217	224	253	260	267	274	280	311	317	330	337	349
50	192	199	206	213	220	248	255	262	268	275	304	310	323	329	341
52	189	196	203	210	217	244	250	257	263	270	297	303	315	321	333
54	186	193	199	206	213	239	245	252	258	264	291	296	308	313	324
56	183	189	196	202	209	234	240	246	252	258	284	289	300	305	315
58	179	186	192	199	205	229	235	241	247	252	277	282	292	297	306
60	176	183	189	195	201	225	230	236	241	247	270	274	284	289	298
62	173	179	185	191	197	220	225	230	236	241	262	267	276	280	289
64	170	176	182	188	193	215	220	225	230	235	255	260	268	272	280
66	167	173	178	184	189	210	215	220	224	229	248	252	260	264	271
68	164	169	175	180	185	205	210	214	219	223	241	245	252	256	262
70	161	166	171	176	181	200	204	209	213	217	234	238	244	248	254
72	157	163	168	172	177	195	199	203	207	211	227	231	237	240	246
74	154	159	164	169	173	190	194	198	202	205	220	223	229	232	238
76	151	156	160	165	169	185	189	193	196	200	214	217	222	225	230
78	148	152	157	161	165	180	184	187	191	194	207	210	215	217	222
80	145	149	153	157	161	176	179	182	185	188	201	203	208	210	215
82	142	146	150	154	157	171	174	177	180	183	195	197	201	203	207
84	139	142	146	150	154	167	169	172	175	178	189	191	195	197	201
86	135	139	143	146	150	162	165	168	170	173	183	185	189	190	194
88	132	136	139	143	146	158	160	163	165	168	177	179	183	184	187
90	129	133	136	139	142	153	156	158	161	163	172	173	177	178	181
92	126	130	133	136	139	149	152	154	156	158	166	168	171	173	175
94	124	127	130	133	135	145	147	149	151	153	161	163	166	167	170
96	121	124	127	129	132	141	143	145	147	149	156	158	160	162	164
98	118	121	123	126	129	137	139	141	143	145	151	153	155	157	159
100	115	118	120	123	125	134	135	137	139	140	147	148	151	152	154
102	113	115	118	120	122	130	132	133	135	136	143	144	146	147	149
104	110	112	115	117	119	126	128	130	131	133	138	139	142	142	144
106	107	110	112	114	116	123	125	126	127	129	134	135	137	138	140
108	105	107	109	111	113	120	121	123	124	125	130	131	133	134	136
110	102	104	106	108	110	116	118	119	120	122	126	127	129	130	132
112	100	102	104	106	107	113	115	116	117	118	123	124	125	126	128
114	98	100	101	103	105	110	112	113	114	115	119	120	122	123	124
116	95	97	99	101	102	108	109	110	111	112	116	117	118	119	120
118	93	95	97	98	100	105	106	107	108	109	113	114	115	116	117
120	91	93	94	96	97	102	103	104	105	106	110	110	112	112	113

Table 4.14 *(cont'd)*

λ	*Steel grade and design strength p_y (N/mm²)*														
	S275					*S355*					*S460*				
	235	*245*	*255*	*265*	*275*	*315*	*325*	*335*	*345*	*355*	*400*	*410*	*430*	*440*	*460*
122	89	90	92	93	95	99	100	101	102	103	107	107	109	109	110
124	87	88	90	91	92	97	98	99	100	100	104	104	106	106	107
126	85	86	88	89	90	94	95	96	97	98	101	102	103	103	104
128	83	84	86	87	88	92	93	94	95	95	98	99	100	100	101
130	81	82	84	85	86	90	91	91	92	93	96	96	97	98	99
135	77	78	79	80	81	84	85	86	87	87	90	90	91	92	92
140	72	74	75	76	76	79	80	81	81	82	84	85	85	86	87
145	69	70	71	71	72	75	76	76	77	77	79	80	80	81	81
150	65	66	67	68	68	71	71	72	72	73	75	75	76	76	76
155	62	63	63	64	65	67	67	68	68	69	70	71	71	72	72
160	59	59	60	61	61	63	64	64	65	65	66	67	67	67	68
165	56	56	57	58	58	60	60	61	61	61	63	63	64	64	64
170	53	54	54	55	55	57	57	58	58	58	60	60	60	60	61
175	51	51	52	52	53	54	54	55	55	55	56	57	57	57	58
180	48	49	49	50	50	51	52	52	52	53	54	54	54	54	55
185	46	46	47	47	48	49	49	50	50	50	51	51	52	52	52
190	44	44	45	45	45	47	47	47	47	48	49	49	49	49	49
195	42	42	43	43	43	45	45	45	45	45	46	46	47	47	47
200	40	41	41	41	42	43	43	43	43	43	44	44	45	45	45
210	37	37	38	38	38	39	39	39	40	40	40	40	41	41	41
220	34	34	35	35	35	36	36	36	36	36	37	37	37	37	38
230	31	32	32	32	32	33	33	33	33	34	34	34	34	34	35
240	29	29	30	30	30	30	31	31	31	31	31	31	32	32	32
250	27	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	29	29	29	29	29	29	29
260	25	25	26	26	26	26	26	26	27	27	27	27	27	27	27
270	23	24	24	24	24	24	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25
280	22	22	22	22	22	23	23	23	23	23	23	24	24	24	24
290	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22
300	19	19	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	21	21	21	21	21
310	18	18	18	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	20
320	17	17	17	17	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18
330	16	16	16	16	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17
340	15	15	15	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
350	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15

4.9.2 EFFECTIVE LENGTH

As mentioned in *section 4.9.1*, the compressive strength of struts is primarily related to their slenderness ratio. The slenderness ratio, λ, is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{L_E}{r} \tag{4.31}$$

where
L_E effective length of the member
r radius of gyration obtained from steel tables.

The concept of effective length was discussed in *section 4.8.11.1*, in the context of lateral torsional buckling, and is similarly applicable to the design of struts and columns. The effective length is simply a function of the actual length of the member and the restraint at the member ends.

The formulae in Appendix C of BS 5950 and the graph in *Fig. 4.23* relate to standard restraint conditions in which each end is pinned. In reality each end of the strut may be free, pinned, partially fixed,

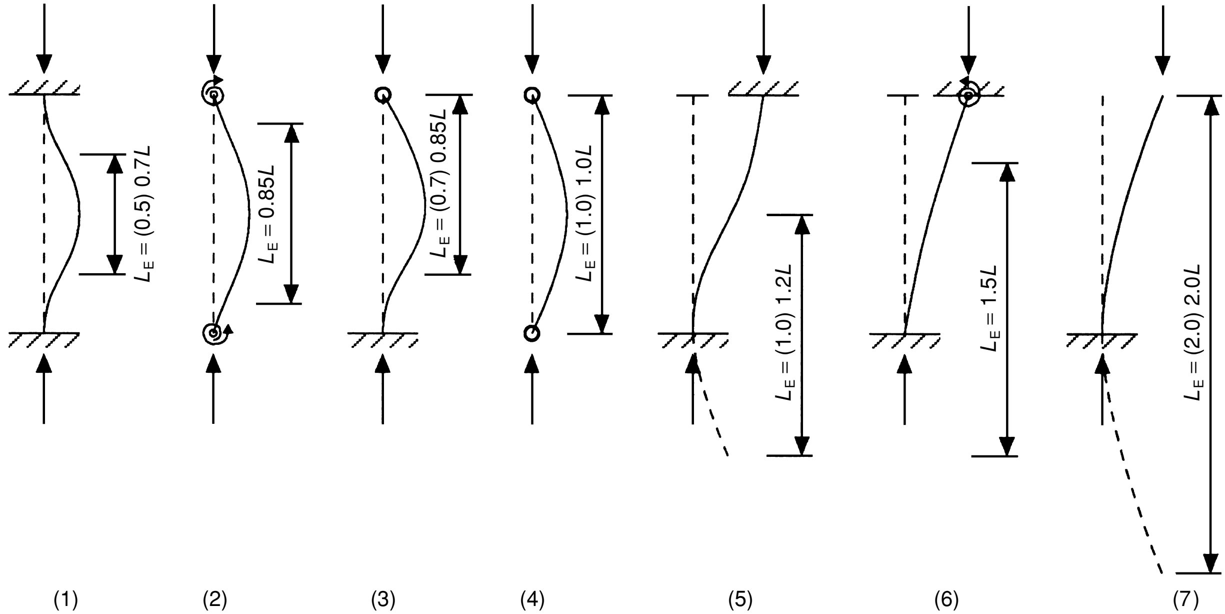


Fig. 4.24

Table 4.15 Nominal effective length, L_E, for a compression member (Table 22, BS 5950)

a) non-sway mode			
Restraint (in the plane under consideration) by other parts of the structure			L_E
Effectively held in position at both ends	Effectively restrained in direction at both ends (1)		$0.7L$
	Partially restrained in direction at both ends (2)		$0.85L$
	Restrained in direction at one end (3)		$0.85L$
	Not restrained in direction at either end (4)		$1.0L$
b) sway mode			
One end	*Other end*		
Effectively held in position and restrained in direction	Not held in position	Effectively restrained in direction (5)	$1.2L$
		Partially restrained in direction (6)	$1.5L$
		Not restrained in direction (7)	$2.0L$

or fully fixed (rotationally). Also, whether or not the top of the strut is allowed to move laterally with respect to the bottom end is important i.e. whether the structure is braced or unbraced. *Figure 4.24* summarises these restraints, and Table 22 of BS 5950, reproduced above as *Table 4.15* stipulates conservative assumptions of effective length L_E from which the slenderness λ can be calculated. Note that the design effective lengths are greater than the theoretical values where one or both ends of the member are partially or wholly restrained. This is because, in practice, it is difficult if not impossible to guarantee that some rotation of the member will not take place. Furthermore, the effective lengths are always less than the actual length of the compression member except when the structure is unbraced.

Example 4.10 Design of an axially loaded column (BS 5950)

A proposed 5 metre long internal column in a 'rigid' jointed steel structure is to be loaded concentrically with 1000 kN dead and 1000 kN imposed load (*Fig. 4.25*). Assuming that fixity at the top and bottom of the column gives effective rotational restraints, design column sections assuming the structure will be (a) braced and (b) unbraced.

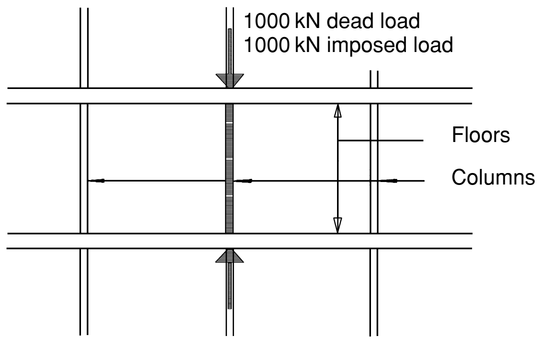


Fig. 4.25

BRACED COLUMN

Design axial loading

Factored loading, $F_c = (1.4 \times 1000) + (1.6 \times 1000) = 3000$ kN

Effective length

For the braced case the column is assumed to be effectively held in position at both ends, and restrained in direction at both ends. It will buckle about the weak (y–y) axis. From *Table 4.15* therefore, the effective length, L_E, is

$$L_E = 0.7L = 0.7 \times 5 = 3.5 \text{ m}$$

Section selection

This column design can only really be done by trial and error.
Initial trial. Try 254 × 254 × 107 UC:

$$p_y = 265 \text{ N/mm}^2 \quad r_y = 65.7 \text{ mm} \quad A_g = 13\,700 \text{ mm}^2 \quad b/T = 6.3 \quad d/t = 15.4$$

$$\lambda = L_E/r_y = 3500/65.7 = 53$$

From *Table 4.12*, use Table 24(c) of BS 5950 (i.e. *Table 4.14*), from which $p_c = 208$ N/mm^2. UC section is not slender since $b/T < 15\varepsilon = 15 \times (275/265)^{0.5} = 15.28$ and $d/t < 40\varepsilon = 40.74$ (*Table 4.4*). From clause 4.7.4 of BS 5950, compression resistance of column, P_c, is

$$P_c = A_g p_c = 13700 \times 208/10^3 = 2850 \text{ kN} < 3000 \text{ kN} \quad \text{Not OK}$$

Second trial. Try 305 × 305 × 118 UC:

$$p_y = 265 \text{ N/mm}^2 \quad r_y = 77.5 \text{ mm} \quad A_g = 15\,000 \text{ mm}^2 \quad b/T = 8.20 \quad d/t = 20.7$$

$$\lambda = L_E/r_y = 3500/77.5 = 45$$

Then from Table 24(c) of BS 5950 (i.e. *Table 4.14*), $p_c = 222$ N/mm^2. UC section is not slender then

$$P_c = A_g p_c = 15000 \times 222/10^3 = 3330 \text{ kN} > 3000 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 4.10 *continued*

UNBRACED COLUMN

For the unbraced case, $L_E = 1.2L = 6.0$ metres from *Table 4.15*, and the most economic member would appear to be 305 × 305 × 158 UC:

$$p_y = 265 \text{ N/mm}^2 \quad r_y = 78.9 \text{ mm} \quad A_g = 20\,100 \text{ mm}^2 \quad b/T = 6.21 \quad d/t = 15.7$$

$$\lambda = L_E/r_y = 6000/78.9 = 76$$

Then from *Table 4.14*, $p_c = 165$ N/mm^2. Section is not slender

$$P_c = A_g p_c = 20\,100 \times 165/10^3 = 3317 \text{ kN} > 3000 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, it can immediately be seen that for a given axial load, a bigger steel section will be required if the column is unbraced.

4.9.3 COLUMNS WITH BENDING MOMENTS

As noted earlier, most columns in steel structures are subject to both axial load and bending. According to clause 4.8.3.1 of BS 5950, such members should be checked (for yielding or local buckling) at the points of greatest bending moment and axial load, which usually occur at the member ends. In addition, the buckling resistance of the member as a whole should be checked.

4.9.3.1 Cross-section capacity check

The purpose of this check is to ensure that nowhere across the section does the steel stress exceed yield. Generally, except for class 4 slender cross-sections, clause 4.8.3.2 states that the following relationship should be satisfied:

$$\frac{F_c}{A_g p_y} + \frac{M_x}{M_{cx}} + \frac{M_y}{M_{cy}} \le 1 \qquad (4.32)$$

where

- F_c axial compression load
- A_g gross cross-sectional area of section
- p_y design strength of steel
- M_x applied major axis moment
- M_{cx} moment capacity about the major axis in the absence of axial load
- M_y applied minor axis moment
- M_{cy} moment capacity about the minor axis in the absence of axial load

When the section is slender the expression in clause 4.8.3.2 (c) should be used. Note that paragraph (b) of this clause gives an alternative expression for calculating the (local) capacity of compression members of class 1 plastic or class 2 compact cross-section, which yields a more exact estimate of member strength.

4.9.3.2 Buckling resistance check

Buckling due to imposed axial load, lateral torsional buckling due to imposed moment, or a combination of buckling and lateral torsional buckling are additional possible modes of failure in most practical columns in steel structures.

Clause 4.8.3.3.1 of BS 5950 gives a simplified approach for calculating the buckling resistance of columns which involves checking that the following relationships are both satisfied:

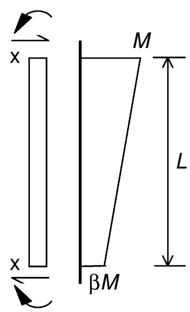
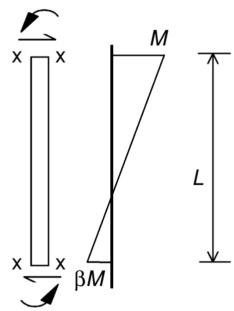
$$\frac{F_c}{P_c} + \frac{m_x M_x}{p_y Z_x} + \frac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y} \le 1 \qquad (4.33)$$

$$\frac{F_c}{P_{cy}} + \frac{m_{LT} M_{LT}}{M_b} + \frac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y} \le 1 \qquad (4.34)$$

where

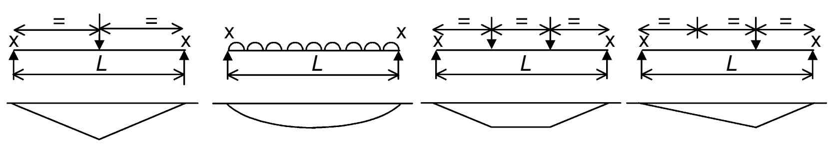
- P_c smaller of P_{cx} and P_{cy}
- P_{cx} compression resistance of member considering buckling about the major axis
- P_{cy} compression resistance of member considering buckling about the minor axis
- m_x equivalent uniform moment factor for major axis flexural buckling obtained from Table 26 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.16*
- m_y equivalent uniform moment factor for minor axis flexural buckling obtained from Table 26 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.16*
- m_{LT} equivalent uniform moment factor for lateral torsional buckling obtained from Table 18 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.10*
- M_{LT} maximum major axis moment in the segment length L_x governing P_{cx}
- M_b buckling resistance moment
- Z_x elastic modulus about the major axis
- Z_y elastic modulus about the minor axis and the other symbols are as above.

Table 4.16 Equivalent uniform moment factor *m* for flexural buckling (Table 26, BS 5950)

Segments with end moments only		β	m
β positive 	β negative 	1.0 0.9 0.8 0.7 0.6 0.5 0.4 0.3 0.2 0.1 0.0 −0.1 −0.2 −0.3 −0.4 −0.5 −0.6 −0.7 −0.8 −0.9 −1.0	1.00 0.96 0.92 0.88 0.84 0.80 0.76 0.72 0.68 0.64 0.60 0.58 0.56 0.54 0.52 0.50 0.48 0.46 0.44 0.42 0.40

Segments between intermediate lateral restraints

Specific cases



$m = 0.90$ $m = 0.95$ $m = 0.95$ $m = 0.80$

Example 4.11 Column resisting an axial load and bending (BS 5950)

Select a suitable column section in grade S275 steel to support a factored axial concentric load of 2000 kN and factored bending moments of 100 kN m about the major axis, and 20 kN m about the minor axis (*Fig. 4.26*), applied at both ends of the column. The column is 10 m long and is fully fixed against rotation at top and bottom, and the floors it supports are braced against sway.

INITIAL SECTION SELECTION

305 × 305 × 118 UC:

$p_y = 265$ N/mm², plastic	$S_x = 1950$ cm³	$Z_x = 1760$ cm³
$A_g = 150$ cm²	$S_y = 892$ cm³	$Z_y = 587$ cm³
$t = 11.9$ mm	$x = D/T = 314.5/18.7$	$u = 0.9$
$d = 246.6$ mm	$= 16.8$	
$r_y = 7.75$ cm		

Note: In this case the classification procedure is slightly different in respect of web classification. From Table 11 of BS 5950 $r_1 = F_c/dtp_y$ but $-1 < r_1 \le 1$

$$= 2 \times 10^6/246.6 \times 11.9 \times 265 = 2.87$$

Therefore, $r_1 = 1$. Limiting $d/t = 80\varepsilon/1 + r_1 = \dfrac{80}{1+1}\varepsilon = 40(276/265)^{1/2} = 40.75$

Example 4.11 *continued*

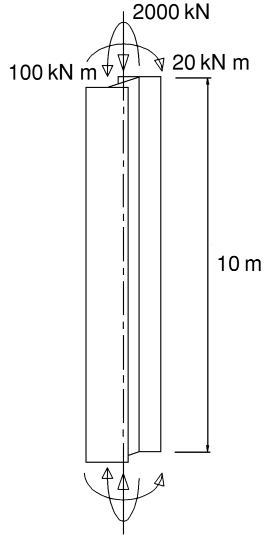


Fig. 4.26

Actual $d/t = 20.7$, hence web is plastic.
$b/T = 8.20 < 9\varepsilon = 9(275/265)^{1/2} = 9.17$, hence flange is plastic.

$$M_{cx} = p_y S_x = 265 \times 1\,950 \times 10^{-3} = 516.75 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_{cy} = p_y S_y = 265 \times 892 \times 10^{-3} = 236.38 \text{ kN m}$$

CROSS-SECTION CAPACITY CHECK

Substituting into $\dfrac{F_c}{A_g p_y} + \dfrac{M_x}{M_{cx}} + \dfrac{M_y}{M_{cy}}$ gives

$$\frac{2000 \times 10^3}{150 \times 10^2 \times 265} + \frac{100}{516.75} + \frac{20}{236.38} = 0.503 + 0.193 + 0.085 = 0.781 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

BUCKLING RESISTANCE CHECK

In-plane buckling

From *Table 4.15*, effective length $L_E = 0.7L = 7$ m

$$\lambda = L_E/r_y = 7000/77.5 = 90$$

From *Table 4.12*, for buckling about the x–x axis and y–y axis use, respectively, Table 24(b) of BS 5950 (*Table 4.13*) from which $p_{cx} = 157$ N/mm^2, and Table 24(c) of BS 5950 (*Table 4.14*) from which $p_{cy} = 139$ N/mm^2. Then

$$P_{cx} = A_g p_{cx} = 150 \times 10^2 \times 157 \times 10^{-3} = 2355 \text{ kN}$$

$$P_{cy} = A_g p_{cy} = 150 \times 10^2 \times 139 \times 10^{-3} = 2085 \text{ kN} = P_c$$

Ratio of end moments about both x–x and y–y axes, $\beta = 1$. Hence from *Table 4.16*, $m_x = m_y = 1$

Substituting into $\dfrac{F_c}{P_c} + \dfrac{m_x M_x}{p_y Z_x} + \dfrac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y}$ gives

$$\frac{2000}{2085} + \frac{1 \times 100}{265 \times 1760 \times 10^{-3}} + \frac{1 \times 20}{265 \times 587 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.96 + 0.21 + 0.13 = 1.30 > 1 \quad \text{Not OK}$$

Example 4.11 *continued*

Lateral torsional buckling

$$(\beta_w)^{0.5}\frac{L_E}{r_y} = (1.0)^{0.5}\frac{7000}{77.5} = 90 \quad \text{and} \quad D/T = 16.8$$

From *Table 4.7*, $p_b = 196$ N/mm^2

$$M_b = p_b S_x = 196 \times 1950 \times 10^{-3} = 382.2 \text{ kN m}$$

Ratio of end moments about both major axes, $\beta = 1$. Hence from *Table 4.10*, $m_{LT} = 1$

Substituting into $\dfrac{F_c}{P_{cy}} + \dfrac{m_{LT}M_{LT}}{M_b} + \dfrac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y}$ gives

$$\frac{2000}{2085} + \frac{1 \times 100}{382.2} + \frac{1 \times 20}{265 \times 587 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.96 + 0.26 + 0.13 = 1.35 > 1 \quad \text{Not OK}$$

Hence, a bigger section should be selected.

SECOND SECTION SELECTION

Try 356 × 368 × 177 UC:

$p_y = 265$ N/mm^2, plastic	$S_x = 3460$ cm^3	$Z_x = 3100$ cm^3
$A_g = 226$ cm^2	$S_y = 1670$ cm^3	$Z_y = 1100$ cm^3
$r_y = 9.52$ cm^3	$x = D/T = 368.3/23.8 = 15.5$	$u = 0.9$

$$M_{cx} = p_y S_x = 265 \times 3460 \times 10^{-3} = 916.9 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_{cy} = p_y S_y = 265 \times 1670 \times 10^{-3} = 442.55 \text{ kN m}$$

CROSS-SECTION CAPACITY CHECK

Again using $\dfrac{F_c}{A_g p_y} + \dfrac{M_x}{M_{cx}} + \dfrac{M_y}{M_{cy}}$ gives

$$\frac{2000 \times 10^3}{226 \times 10^2 \times 265} + \frac{100}{916.9} + \frac{20}{442.55} = 0.33 + 0.11 + 0.05 = 0.49 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

BUCKLING RESISTANCE CHECK

In-plane buckling

From *Table 4.15*, effective length $L_E = 0.7L = 7$ m

$$\lambda = L_E/r_y = 7000/95.2 = 73.5$$

From *Table 4.12*, for buckling about the x–x axis and y–y axis use, respectively, Table 24(b) of BS 5950 (*Table 4.13*) from which $p_{cx} = 190$ N/mm^2, and Table 24(c) of BS 5950 (*Table 4.14*) from which $p_{cy} = 169$ N/mm^2. Then

$$P_{cx} = A_g\, p_{cx} = 226 \times 10^2 \times 190 \times 10^{-3} = 4294 \text{ kN}$$

$$P_{cy} = A_g\, p_{cy} = 226 \times 10^2 \times 169 \times 10^{-3} = 3819.4 \text{ kN} = P_c$$

Ratio of end moments about both x–x and y–y axes, $\beta = 1$. Hence from *Table 4.16*, $m_x = m_y = 1$

Substituting into $\dfrac{F_c}{P_c} + \dfrac{m_x M_x}{p_y Z_x} + \dfrac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y}$ gives

$$\frac{2000}{3819.4} + \frac{1 \times 100}{265 \times 3100 \times 10^{-3}} + \frac{1 \times 20}{265 \times 1100 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.52 + 0.12 + 0.07 = 0.71 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 4.11 *continued*

Lateral torsional buckling

$$(\beta_w)^{0.5}\frac{L_E}{r_y} = (1.0)^{0.5}\frac{7000}{95.2} = 73.5 \quad \text{and} \quad D/T = 15.5$$

From *Table 4.7*, $p_b = 220$ N/mm^2

$$M_b = p_b S_x = 220 \times 3460 \times 10^{-3} = 761.2 \text{ kN m}$$

Ratio of end moments about both major axes, $\beta = 1$. Hence from *Table 4.10*, $m_{LT} = 1$

Substituting into $\dfrac{F_c}{P_{cy}} + \dfrac{m_{LT}M_{LT}}{M_b} + \dfrac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y} \le 1$ gives

$$\frac{2000}{3819.4} + \frac{1 \times 100}{761.2} + \frac{1 \times 20}{265 \times 1100 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.52 + 0.13 + 0.07 = 0.72 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence a 356 × 368 × 177 UC section is satisfactory.

Clause 4.8.3.3.2 of BS 5950 gives a more exact approach, but as in practice most designers tend to use the simplified approach, the more exact method is not discussed here.

4.9.4 COLUMN DESIGN IN 'SIMPLE' CONSTRUCTION

At first sight it would appear that columns in so-called 'simple construction' are not subject to moments, as the beams are all joined at connections which allow no moment to develop. In fact, in most cases there is a bending moment due to the eccentricity of the shear load from the beam. This is summarised in Clause 4.7.7 of BS 5950 and illustrated in *Fig. 4.27*. Note that where a beam sits on a column cap plate, for example at A (*Fig. 4.27(c)*), it can be assumed that the reaction from the beam acts at the face of the column. However, where the beam is connected to a column by means of a 'simple' connection, e.g. using web cleats, the reaction from the beam can be assumed to act 100 mm from the column (web or flange) face as illustrated in *Fig. 4.27(b)*.

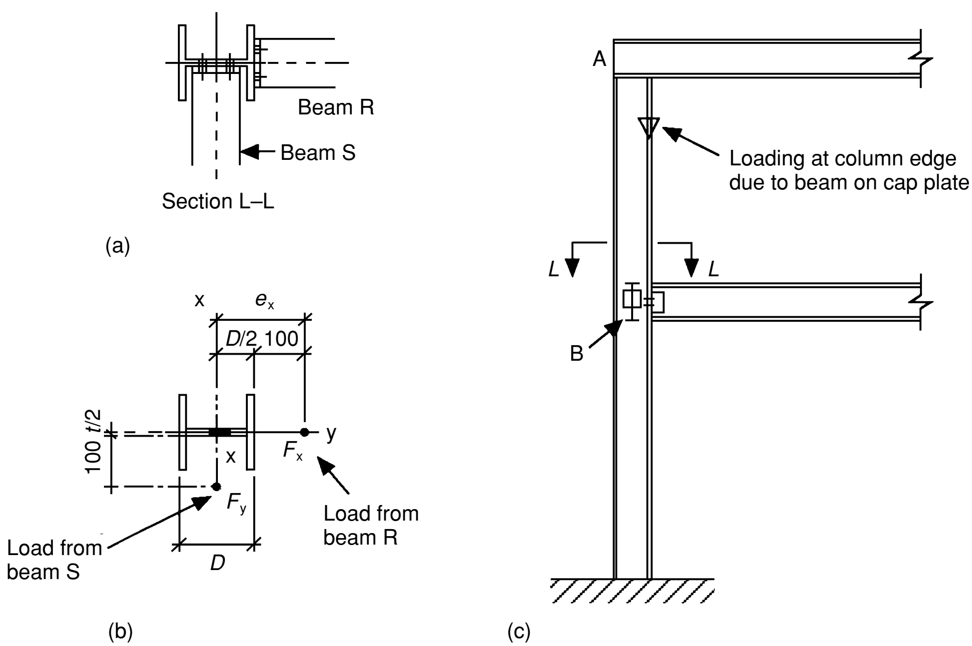


Fig. 4.27 Load eccentricity for columns in simple construction.

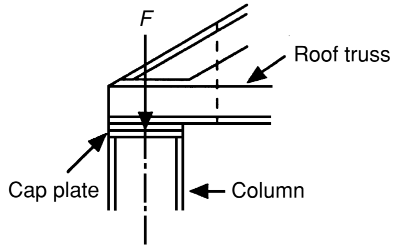


Fig. 4.28 *Column supporting a roof truss.*

When a roof truss is supported on a column cap plate (*Fig. 4.28*), and the connection is unable to develop significant moments, it can be assumed that the load from the truss is transmitted concentrically to the column.

Columns in simple construction will not need to be checked for local capacity but it will still be necessary to check for buckling, which involves satisfying the following relationship:

$$\frac{F_c}{P_c} + \frac{M_x}{M_{bs}} + \frac{M_y}{p_y Z_y} \leq 1 \qquad (4.35)$$

where

F_c axial compressive load

P_c $= A_g p_c$ – for all classes except class 4 (clause 4.7.4 of BS 5950) – in which A_g is the gross cross-sectional area of the section and p_c is the compressive strength, see *section 4.9.1*

M_x nominal major axis moment

M_y nominal minor axis moment

M_{bs} buckling resistance moment for 'simple' columns

p_y design strength of steel

Z_y elastic modulus about the minor axis.

Note that this expression is similar to that used for checking the buckling resistance of columns in continuous structures (equation 4.34), but with all equivalent moment factors taken as 1.0. For *I*- and *H*-sections $M_{bs} = M_b$ determined as discussed in *section 4.8.11.3* but using the equivalent slenderness of the column, λ_{LT}, given by

$$\lambda_{LT} = 0.5L/r_y \qquad (4.36)$$

where

L is the distance between levels at which the column is laterally restrained in both directions

r_y is the radius of gyration about the minor axis.

Example 4.12 Design of a steel column in 'simple' construction (BS 5950)

Select a suitable column section in S275 steel to support the ultimate loads from beams A and B shown in *Fig. 4.29*. Assume the column is 7 m long and is effectively held in position at both ends but only restrained in direction at the bottom.

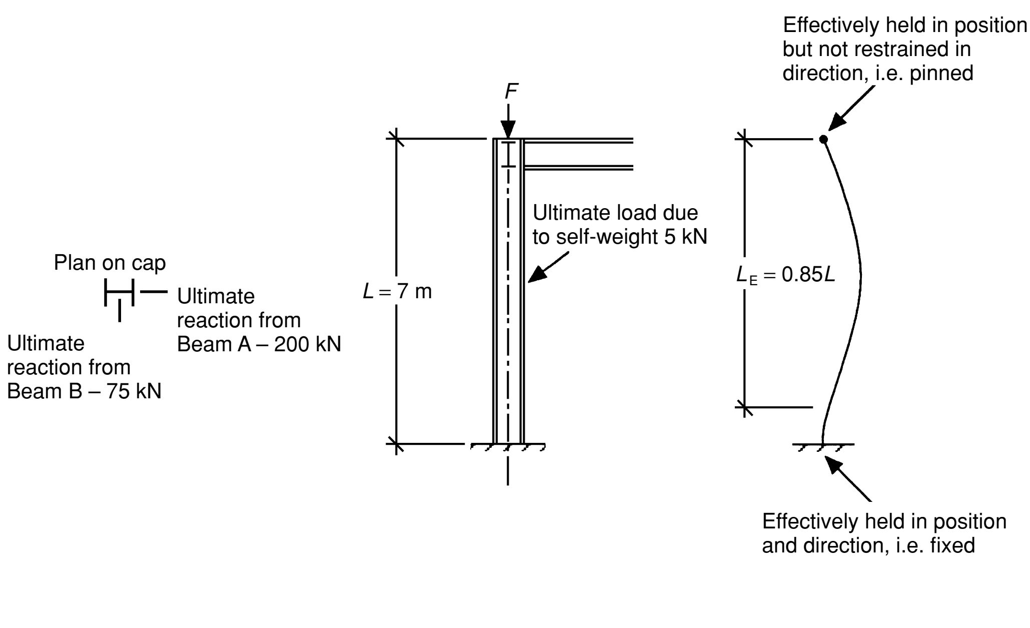


Fig. 4.29

Example 4.12 *continued*

SECTION SELECTION
This can only really be done by trial and error. Therefore, try a: 203 × 203 × 52 UC: $S_x = 568$ cm^3, plastic.

DESIGN LOADING AND MOMENTS
Ultimate reaction from beam A, $R_A = 200$ kN; ultimate reaction from beam *B*, $R_B = 75$ kN; assume self-weight of column = 5 kN. Ultimate axial load, *F*, is

$$F = R_A + R_B + \text{self-weight of column}$$
$$= 200 + 75 + 5 = 280 \text{ kN}$$

Load eccentricity for beam A,

$$e_x = D/2 + 100 = 206.2/2 + 100 = 203.1 \text{ mm}$$

Load eccentricity for beam B,

$$e_y = t/2 + 100 = 8/2 + 100 = 104 \text{ mm}$$

Moment due to beam A,

$$M_x = R_A e_x = 200 \times 10^3 \times 203.1 = 40.62 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm}$$

Moment due to beam B,

$$M_y = R_B e_y = 75 \times 10^3 \times 104 = 7.8 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm}$$

EFFECTIVE LENGTH
From *Table 4.15*, effective length coefficient = 0.85. Hence, effective length is

$$L_E = 0.85L = 0.85 \times 7000 = 5950 \text{ mm}$$

BENDING STRENGTH
From *Table 4.12*, relevant compressive strength values for buckling about the x–x axis are obtained from Table 24(b) (*Table 4.13*) and from Table 24(c) (*Table 4.14*) for bending about the y–y axis.

$$\lambda_x = L_E/r_x = 5950/89 = 66.8$$

From *Table 4.13*, $p_c = 208$ N/mm^2.

$$\lambda_y = L_E/r_y = 5950/51.6 = 115.3$$

From *Table 4.14*, $p_c = 103$ N/mm^2. Hence critical compressive strength of column is 103 N/mm^2.

BUCKLING RESISTANCE

$$\lambda_{LT} = 0.5L/r_y = 0.5 \times 7000/51.6 = 67.8$$

From *Table 4.9*, $p_b = 193$ N/mm^2. Buckling resistance moment capacity of column, M_{bs}, is given by

$$M_{bs} = M_b = p_b S_x = 193 \times 568 \times 10^3 = 109.6 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm}$$

Hence for stability,

$$\frac{F_c}{P_c} + \frac{M_x}{M_{bs}} + \frac{M_y}{p_y Z_y} \le 1$$

$$\frac{280 \times 10^3}{66.4 \times 10^2 \times 103} + \frac{40.6 \times 10^6}{109.6 \times 10^6} + \frac{7.8 \times 10^6}{275 \times 174 \times 10^3} = 0.41 + 0.37 + 0.16 = 0.94 < 1$$

Therefore, the 203 × 203 × 52 UC section is suitable.

4.9.5 SUMMARY OF DESIGN PROCEDURES FOR COMPRESSION MEMBERS

Axially loaded members

1. Determine ultimate axial load F_c.
2. Select trial section and check it is non-slender.
3. Determine r_x, r_y and A_g from steel tables.
4. Determine effective lengths, L_{EX} and L_{EY}, using *Table 4.15*.
5. Calculate slenderness ratios, λ_{EX} (= L_{EX}/r_x) and λ_{EY} (= L_{EY}/r_y).
6. Select suitable strut curves from *Table 4.12*.
7. Determine compressive strength, p_c, using *Table 4.13, 4.14* or similar.
8. Calculate compression resistance of member, $P_c = A_g p_c$.
9. Check $F_c \le P_c$. If unsatisfactory return to 2.

Members subject to axial load and bending

1. Determine ultimate axial load, F_c, and bending moments, M_x and M_y.
2. Select and classify trial section.
3. Calculate moment capacities of section, M_{cx} and M_{cy}. If either $M_x > M_{cx}$ or $M_y > M_{cy}$ return to 2.
4. Check cross-section capacity of section via equation 4.32. If unsatisfactory return to 2.
5. Determine effective lengths, L_{EX} and L_{EY}, using *Table 4.15*.
6. Calculate slenderness ratios, λ_{EX} (= L_{EX}/r_x) and λ_{EY} (= L_{EY}/r_y).
7. Select suitable strut curves from *Table 4.12*.
8. Determine the major and minor axes compressive strengths, p_{cx} and p_{cy}, using *Table 4.13, 4.14* or similar.
9. Calculate compressive resistances, P_{cx} (= $p_{cx}A_g$) and P_{cy} (= $p_{cy}A_g$).
10. Evaluate buckling resistance of section, M_b.
11. Determine equivalent uniform moment factors for flexural buckling, m_x and m_y, using *Table 4.16*.
12. Check buckling resistance of member using equations (4.33) and (4.34). If unsatisfactory return to 2.

Compression members in simple construction

1. Determine ultimate axial load, F_c, and bending moments, M_x and M_y.
2. Select and classify trial section.
3. Determine effective lengths, L_{EX} and L_{EY}, using *Table 4.15*.
4. Calculate slenderness ratios, λ_{EX} (= L_{EX}/r_x) and λ_{EY} (= L_{EY}/r_y).
6. Select suitable strut curves from *Table 4.12*.
7. Determine compressive strength, p_c, using *Table 4.13*, *4.14* or similar.
8. Calculate compression resistance, $P_c = A_g p_c$. If $P_c < F_c$ return to 2.
9. Calculate effective slenderness ratio, $\lambda_{LT} = 0.5L/r_y$.
10. Calculate buckling resistance of section, $M_{bs} = M_b = p_b S_x$.
11. Check buckling resistance of member using equation (4.35). If unsatisfactory return to (2).

4.9.6 DESIGN OF CASED COLUMNS

As discussed in *section 4.5*, steel columns are sometimes cased in concrete for fire protection. However, the concrete also increases the strength of the section, a fact which can be used to advantage in design provided that the conditions stated in Clause 4.14.1 of BS 5950 are met. Some of these conditions are illustrated in *Fig. 4.30*.

BS 5950 gives guidance on the design of UC sections encased in concrete for the following loading conditions which are discussed below.

(i) axially loaded columns
(ii) columns subject to axial load and bending.

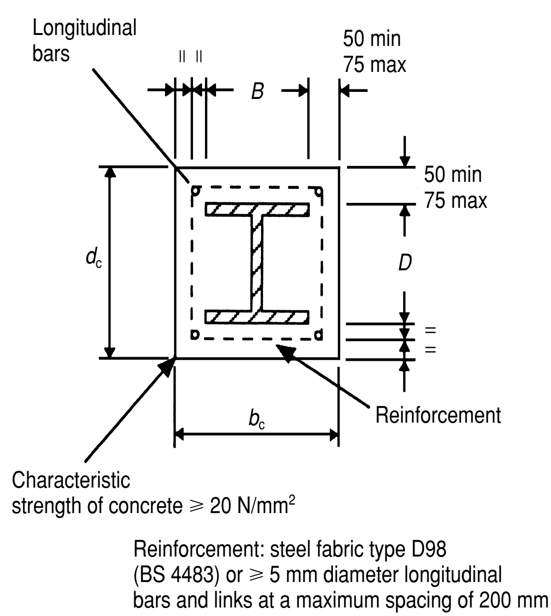


Fig. 4.30 *Cased UC section.*

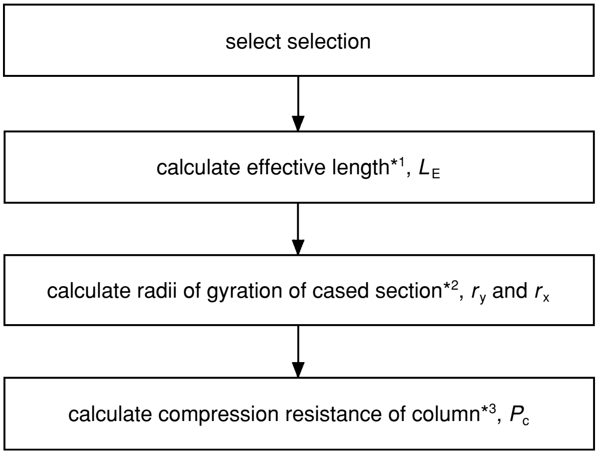


Fig. 4.31 *Design procedure for axially loaded cased columns.*

Notes to Fig. 4.31

1 The effective length, L_E, should not exceed the least of:
   (i) $40b_c$
   (ii) $\dfrac{100b_c^2}{d_c}$
   (iii) $250r$

   where b_c and d_c are as indicated in *Fig. 4.30* and r is the minimum radius of gyration of the uncased UC section i.e. r_y.

2 The radius of gyration of the cased section about the y–y axis, r_y, is taken as $0.2b_c$ but not more than $0.2(B + 150)$ mm and not less than that of the steel section alone.

   The radius of gyration of the cased section about the x–x axis, r_x, is taken as that of the steel section alone.

3 The compression resistance of the cased section, P_c, is given by

$$P_c = \left(A_g + \frac{0.45 f_{cu} A_c}{p_y}\right) p_c \qquad (4.37)$$

However, this should not be greater than the short strut capacity of the section, P_{cs}, which is given by:

$$P_{cs} = \left(A_g + \frac{0.25 f_{cu} A_c}{p_y}\right) p_y \qquad (4.38)$$

where

A_c is the gross sectional area of the concrete but neglecting any casing in excess of 75 mm from the overall dimensions of the UC section or any applied finish

A_g is the gross sectional area of the UC section

f_{cu} is the characteristic strength of the concrete which should not be greater than 40 N/mm^2

p_c is the compressive strength of the UC section determined as discussed for uncased columns (*section 4.9.1*), but using r_x and r_y for the cased section (see note 2) and taking $p_y \leq 355$ N/mm^2

p_y design strength of the UC section which should not exceed 355 N/mm^2.

4.9.6.1 Axially loaded columns

The design procedure for this case is shown in *Fig. 4.31*.

4.9.6.2 Cased columns subject to axial load and moment

The design procedure here is similar to that when the column is axially loaded but also involves checking the member's cross-section capacity and buckling resistance using the following relationships:

1. *Cross-section capacity check*

$$\frac{F_c}{P_{cs}} + \frac{M_x}{M_{cx}} + \frac{M_y}{M_{cy}} \leq 1 \qquad (4.39)$$

where

F_c axial compression load
P_{cs} short strut capacity (equation 4.38)
M_x applied moment about major axis
M_{cx} major axis moment capacity of steel section
M_y applied moment about minor axis
M_{cy} minor axis moment capacity of steel section

2. *Buckling resistance check*

Major axis $$\frac{F_c}{P_c} + \frac{m_x M_x}{p_y Z_x} + \frac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y} \leq 1 \qquad (4.40)$$

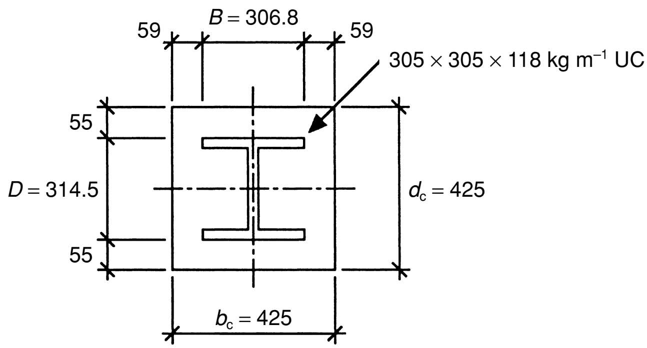
Minor axis $$\frac{F_c}{P_{cy}} + \frac{m_{LT} M_x}{M_b} + \frac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y} \leq 1 \qquad (4.41)$$

where

F_c maximum compressive axial force
P_c smaller of P_{cx} and P_{cy} (equation 4.37)
P_{cx} compression resistance of member considering buckling about the major axis
P_{cy} compression resistance of member considering buckling about the minor axis

Example 4.13 Encased steel column resisting an axial load (BS 5950)

Calculate the compression resistance of a 305 × 305 × 118 kg/m UC column if it is encased in concrete of compressive strength 20 N/mm^2 in the manner shown below. Assume that the effective length of the column about both axes is 3.5 m.



PROPERTIES OF UC SECTION

Area of UC section (A_g) = 15000 mm^2 (*Appendix B*)
Radius of gyration (r_x) = 136 mm
Radius of gyration (r_y) = 77.5 mm
Design strength (p_y) = 265 N/mm^2 (since T = 18.7 mm)
Effective length (L_E) = 3.5 m

EFFECTIVE LENGTH

Check that the effective length of column (= 3500 mm) does not exceed the least of:

(i) $40b_c = 40 \times 425 = 17\,000$ mm

(ii) $\dfrac{100b_c^2}{d_c} = \dfrac{100 \times 425^2}{425} = 42\,500$ mm

(iii) $250r_y = 250 \times 77.5 = 19\,375$ mm OK

RADII OF GYRATION FOR THE CASED SECTION

For the cased section r_x is the same as for UC section = 136 mm
For the cased section $r_y = 0.2b_c = 0.2 \times 425 = 85$ mm $\not> 0.2(B + 150) = 0.2(306.8 + 150) = 91.36$ mm but not less than that for the uncased section (= 77.5 mm)
Hence r_y = 85 mm and r_x = 136 mm

COMPRESSION RESISTANCE

Slenderness ratio

$$\lambda_x = \frac{L_E}{r_x} = \frac{3500}{136} = 25.7$$

$$\lambda_y = \frac{L_E}{r_y} = \frac{3500}{85} = 41.2$$

Compressive strength

From *Table 4.12*, relevant compressive strength values for buckling about the x–x axis are obtained from Table 24(b) of BS 5950 (*Table 4.13*) and from Table 24(c) of BS 5950 (*Table 4.14*) for bending about the y–y axis.

Example 4.13 *continued*

For $\lambda_x = 25.7$ and $p_y = 265$ N/mm^2 compressive strength, $p_c = 257$ N/mm^2 (*Table 4.13*). For $\lambda_y = 41.2$ and $p_y = 265$ N/mm^2 compressive strength, $p_c = 228$ N/mm^2 (*Table 4.14*).
Hence, p_c is equal to 228 N/mm^2.

Compression resistance

$$A_g = 15\,000 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$A_c = d_c b_c = 425 \times 425 = 180\,625 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$p_y = 265 \text{ N/mm}^2 \quad (\text{since } T = 18.7 \text{ mm})$$

$$p_c = 228 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$f_{cu} = 20 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Compression resistance of encased column, P_c, is given by

$$P_c = \left(A_g + \frac{0.45 f_{cu} A_c}{p_y} \right) p_c$$

$$P_c = \left(15000 + \frac{0.45 \times 20 \times 180625}{265} \right) 228 = 4.81 \times 10^6 \text{ N} = 4810 \text{ kN}$$

which should not be greater than the short strut capacity, P_{cs}, given by

$$P_{cs} = \left(A_g + \frac{0.25 f_{cu} A_c}{p_y} \right) p_y$$

$$= \left(15000 + \frac{0.25 \times 20 \times 180625}{265} \right) 265 = 4.878 \times 10^6 \text{ N} = 4878 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence the compression resistance of the encased column is 4878 kN. Comparing this with the compression resistance of the uncased column (*Example 4.10*) shows that the load capacity of the column has been increased from 3300 kN to 4878 kN, which represents an increase of approximately 45%.

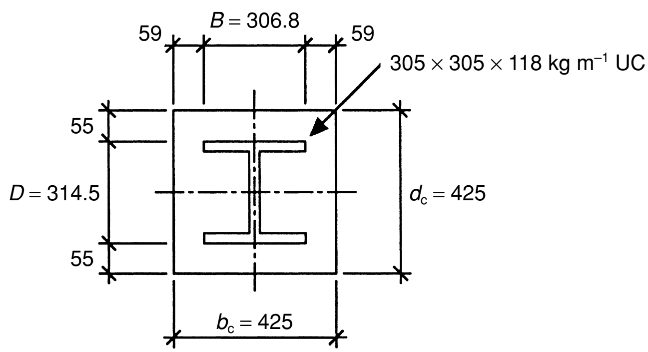
m_x, m_y	equivalent uniform moment factors for major axis and minor axis buckling respectively obtained from Table 26 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.16*
m_{LT}	equivalent uniform moment factor for lateral torsional buckling obtained from Table 18 of BS 5950, reproduced as *Table 4.10*
M_b	buckling resistance moment of the cased column = $S_x p_b \le 1.5 M_b$ for the uncased section. To determine p_b, r_y should be taken as the greater of r_y of the uncased section or 0.2(B + 100) mm (*Fig. 4.30*).
M_x, M_y	maximum moment about the major and minor axes respectively
Z_x, Z_y	elastic modulus about the major and minor axes respectively.

Example 4.14 Encased steel column resisting an axial load and bending (BS 5950)

In Example 4.11 it was found that a 305 × 305 × 118 kg/m UC column was incapable of resisting the design load and moments below:

Design axial load = 2000 kN
Design moment about x–x axis = 100 kN m
Design moment about y–y axis = 20 kN m

Assuming that the same column is now encased in concrete as show below, determine its suitability. The effective length of the column about both axes is 7 m.



PROPERTIES OF UC SECTION

Area of UC section, A_g = 15 000 mm^2
Radius of gyration about x–x axis, r_x = 136 mm
Radius of gyration about y–y axis, r_y = 77.5 mm
Elastic modulus about x–x axis, Z_x = 1760×10^3 mm^3
Elastic modulus about y–y axis, Z_y = 587×10^3 mm^3
Plastic modulus about x–x axis, S_x = 1950×10^3 mm^3
Design strength, p_y = 265 N/mm^2 (since T = 18.7 mm)
Effective length, L_E = 7 m

LOCAL CAPACITY

Axial load, F_c = 2000 kN
Applied moment about x–x axis, M_x = 100 kN m
Applied moment about y–y axis, M_y = 20 kN m

Short strut capacity, P_{cs}, is given by

$$P_{cs} = \left(A_g + \frac{0.25 f_{cu} A_c}{p_y} \right) p_y$$

$$= \left(15000 + \frac{0.25 \times 20 \times 425^2}{265} \right) 265 = 4.878 \times 10^6 \text{ N} = 4878 \text{ kN}$$

Moment capacity of column about the x–x axis, M_{cx}, is given by

$$M_{cx} = p_y Z_x = 265 \times 1760 \times 10^3 = 466.4 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 466.4 \text{ kN m}$$

Example 4.14 *continued*

Moment capacity of column about the y–y axis, M_{cy}, is given by

$$M_{cy} = p_y Z_y = 265 \times 587 \times 10^3 = 155.6 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 155.6 \text{ kN m}$$

$$\frac{F_c}{P_{cs}} + \frac{M_x}{M_{cx}} + \frac{M_y}{M_{cy}} = \frac{2000}{4878} + \frac{100}{466.4} + \frac{20}{155.6} = 0.41 + 0.21 + 0.13 = 0.75 < 1$$

Hence, the local capacity of the section is satisfactory.

BUCKLING RESISTANCE

Radii of gyration for cased section

For the cased section r_x is the same as for the UC section = 136 mm
For the cased section $r_y = 0.2b_c = 0.2 \times 425 = 85$ mm $\ngtr 0.2(B + 150) = 0.2(306.8 + 150) = 91.36$ mm but not less than that for the uncased section (= 77.5 mm)
Hence $r_y = 85$ mm and $r_x = 136$ mm.

Slenderness ratio

$$\lambda_x = \frac{L_E}{r_x} = \frac{7000}{136} = 51.5 \qquad \lambda_y = \frac{L_E}{r_y} = \frac{7000}{85} = 82.4$$

Compressive strength

For $\lambda_x = 51.5$ and $p_y = 265$ N/mm² compressive strength, $p_c = 226$ N/mm² (*Table 4.13*). For $\lambda_y = 82.4$ and $p_y = 265$ N/mm² compressive strength, $p_c = 153$ N/mm² (*Table 4.14*).
Hence, p_c is equal to 153 N/mm².

Compression resistance

$$A_g = 15\,000 \text{ mm}^2$$
$$A_c = d_c b_c = 425 \times 425 = 180\,625 \text{ mm}^2$$
$$p_y = 265 \text{ N/mm}^2 \quad (\text{since } T = 18.7 \text{ mm})$$
$$p_c = 153 \text{ N/mm}^2$$
$$f_{cu} = 20 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Compression resistance of encased column, P_c, is given by

$$P_c = \left(A_g + \frac{0.45 f_{cu} A_c}{p_y}\right) p_c$$

$$= \left(15000 + \frac{0.45 \times 20 \times 180625}{265}\right) 153 = 3.233 \times 10^6 \text{ N} = 3233 \text{ kN}$$

which is not greater than the short strut capacity, $P_{cs} = 4878$ kN (see above)   OK

Buckling resistance

For the **uncased** section,

$$\lambda_y = \frac{L_E}{r_y} = \frac{7000}{77.5} = 90$$

$$\frac{\lambda_y}{x} = \frac{90}{314.5/18.7} = 5.4 \Rightarrow \nu = 0.79 \quad (\textit{Table 4.8})$$

$$\lambda_{LT} = u\nu\lambda_y\sqrt{\beta_w} = 0.851 \times 0.79 \times 90\sqrt{1} = 61$$

From *Table 4.9*, $p_b = 205$ N/mm²

$$M_b = S_x p_b = 1950 \times 10^3 \times 205 \times 10^{-6} = 400 \text{ kN m}$$

Example 4.14 *continued*

For the **cased** section,

$$\lambda_y = \frac{L_E}{r_y} = \frac{7000}{85} = 82.4$$

$$\frac{\lambda_y}{x} = \frac{82.4}{314.5/18.7} = 4.9 \Rightarrow \nu = 0.82 \quad (\textit{Table 4.8})$$

$$\lambda_{LT} = u\nu\lambda_y\sqrt{\beta_w} = 0.851 \times 0.82 \times 82.4\sqrt{1} = 57.4$$

From *Table 4.9*, $p_b = 213$ N/mm^2

$$M_b = S_x p_b = 1950 \times 10^3 \times 213 \times 10^{-6} = 415 \text{ kN m}$$

Hence, M_b (for cased UC section = 415 kN m) < $1.5M_b$ (for uncased UC section = 1.5 × 400 = 600 kN m).

Checking buckling resistance

$$\frac{F_c}{P_c} + \frac{m_x M_x}{p_y Z_x} + \frac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y}$$

$$\frac{2000}{3233} + \frac{1 \times 100}{265 \times 1760 \times 10^{-3}} + \frac{1 \times 20}{265 \times 587 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.62 + 0.21 + 0.13 = 0.96 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\frac{F_c}{P_{cy}} + \frac{m_{LT} M_x}{M_b} + \frac{m_y M_y}{p_y Z_y}$$

$$\frac{2000}{3233} + \frac{1 \times 100}{415} + \frac{1 \times 20}{265 \times 587 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.62 + 0.24 + 0.13 = 0.99 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, the section is now just adequate to resist the design axial load of 2000 kN and design moments about the x–x and y–y axes of 100 kN m and 20 kN m respectively.

4.9.7 DESIGN OF COLUMN BASEPLATES

Clause 4.13 gives guidance on the design of concentrically loaded column slab baseplates, which covers most practical design situations. The plan area of the baseplate is calculated by assuming

a) the nominal bearing pressure between the baseplate and support is uniform and
b) the applied load acts over a portion of the baseplate known as the effective area, the extent of which for UB and UCs is as indicated on *Fig. 4.32*.

For concrete foundations the bearing strength may be taken as 0.6 times the characteristic cube strength of the concrete base or the bedding material (i.e. $0.6f_{cu}$), whichever is the lesser. The effective area of the baseplate, A_{be}, is then obtained from

$$A_{be} = \frac{\text{axial load}}{\text{bearing strength}} \qquad (4.42)$$

In determining the overall plan area of the plate allowance should be made for the presence of holding bolts.

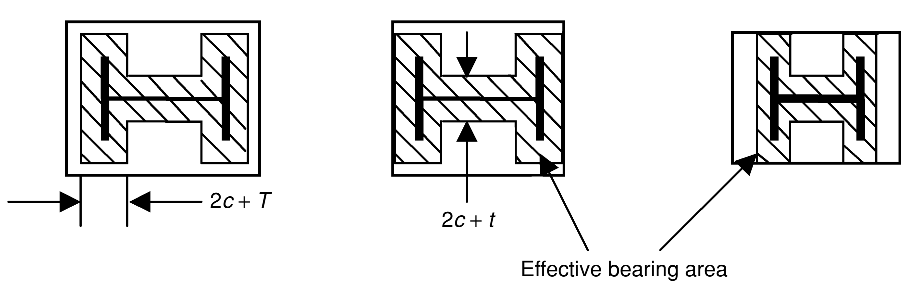


Fig. 4.32

The required minimum baseplate thickness, t_p, is given by

$$t_p = c[3\omega/p_{yp}]^{0.5} \qquad (4.43)$$

where

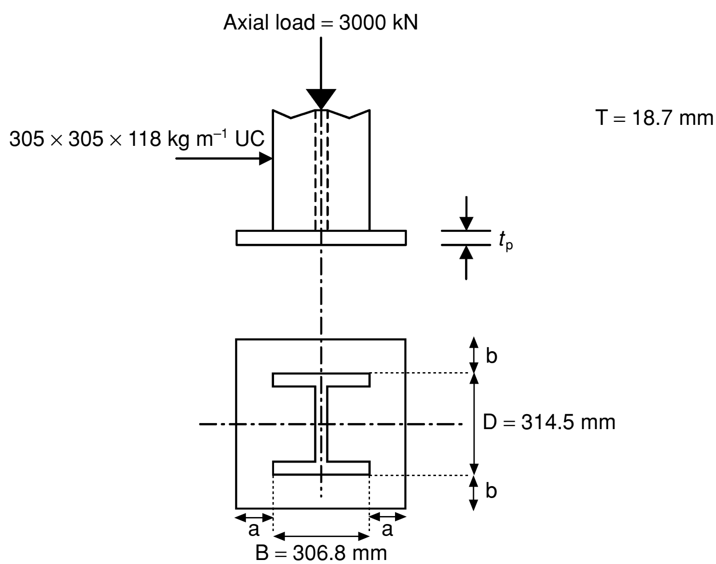
c is the largest perpendicular distance from the edge of the effective portion of the baseplate to the face of the column cross-section (*Fig. 4.32*)

ω pressure on the underside of the plate assuming a uniform distribution throughout the effective portion, but $\leq 0.6f_{cu}$

p_{yp} design strength of the baseplate which may be taken from *Table 4.3*

Example 4.15 Design of a steel column baseplate (BS 5950)

Design a baseplate for the axially loaded column shown below assuming it is supported on concrete of compression characteristic strength 30 N/mm^2.



AREA OF BASEPLATE

Effective area

$$A_{be} \geq \frac{\text{axial load}}{\text{bearing strength}} = \frac{3000 \times 10^3}{0.6 \times 30} = 1.666 \times 10^5 \text{ mm}^2$$

Actual area

$$A_{be} = (B + 2c)(D + 2c) - 2\{(D - 2[T + c])([B + 2c] - [t + 2c])\}$$

$$1.666 \times 10^5 = (306.8 + 2c)(314.5 + 2c) - 2\{(314.5 - 2[18.7 + c])(306.8 - 11.9)\} \Rightarrow c = 84.6 \text{ mm}$$

Minimum length of baseplate = $D + 2c = 314.5 + 2 \times 84.6 = 483.7$ mm
Minimum width of baseplate = $B + 2c = 306.4 + 2 \times 84.6 = 476$ mm
Provide 500 × 500 mm baseplate in grade S275 steel.

BASEPLATE THICKNESS

Assuming a baseplate thickness of less than 40 mm the design strength p_{yp} = 265 N/mm^2. The actual baseplate thickness, t_p, is

$$t_p = c[3\omega/p_{yp}]^{0.5} = 84.6[3 \times (0.6 \times 30)/265]^{0.5} = 34.9 \text{ mm}$$

Hence, a 500 mm × 500 mm × 35 mm thick baseplate in grade S275 steel should be suitable.

4.10 Floor systems for steel framed structures

In temporary steel framed structures such as car parks and Bailey bridges the floor deck can be formed from steel plates. In more permanent steel framed structures the floors generally comprise:

- precast, prestressed concrete slabs
- *in-situ* reinforced concrete slabs
- composite metal deck floors.

Precast floors are normally manufactured using prestressed hollow core planks, which can easily span up to 6–8 m (*Fig. 4.33(a)*). The top surface can be finished with a levelling screed or, if a composite floor is required, with an *in-situ* concrete structural topping. This type of floor slab offers a number of advantages over other flooring systems including:

- elimination of shuttering and propping
- reduced floor depth by supporting the precast units on shelf angles *Fig. 4.33(b)*
- rapid construction since curing or strength development of the concrete is unnecessary.

Precast floors are generally designed to act non-compositely with the supporting steel floor beams. Nevertheless, over recent years, hollow core planks that act compositely with the floor beams have been developed and are slowly beginning to be specified. A major drawback of precast concrete slabs, which restricts their use in many congested city centre developments, is that the precast units are heavy and cranage may prove difficult. In such locations, *in-situ* concrete slabs have invariably been found to be more practical.

In-situ reinforced concrete floor slabs can be formed using conventional removable shuttering and are normally designed to act compositely with the steel floor beams. Composite action is achieved by welding steel studs to the top flange of the steel beams and embedding the studs in the concrete when cast (*Fig. 4.34*). The studs prevent slippage and also enable shear stresses to be transferred between the slab and supporting beams. This increases both the strength and stiffnesses of the beams, thereby allowing significant reductions in construction depth and weight of steel beams to be achieved (see *Example 4.16*). Composite construction not only reduces frame loadings but also results in

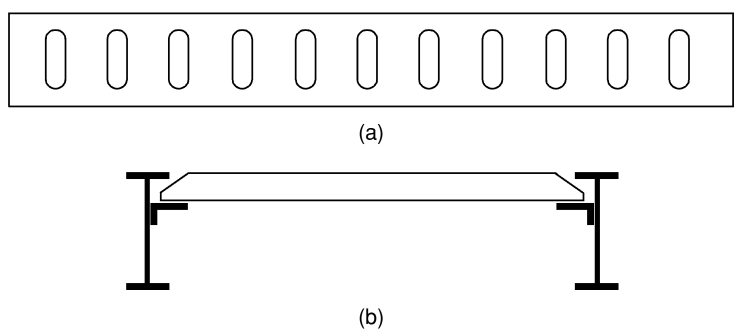


Fig. 4.33 *Precast concrete floor: (a) hollow core plank-section (b) precast concrete plank supported on shelf angles.*

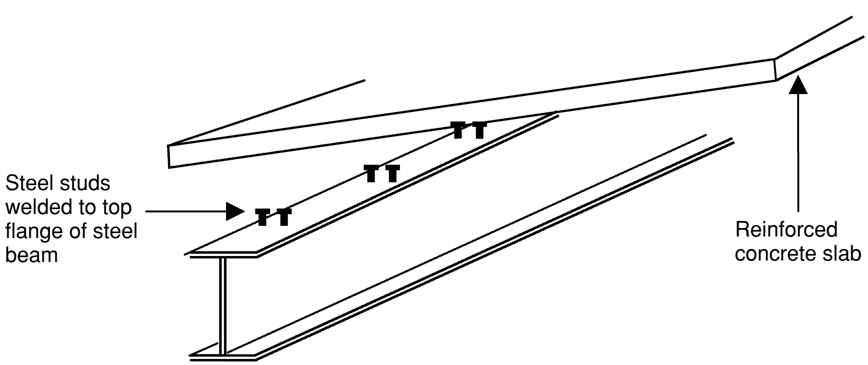
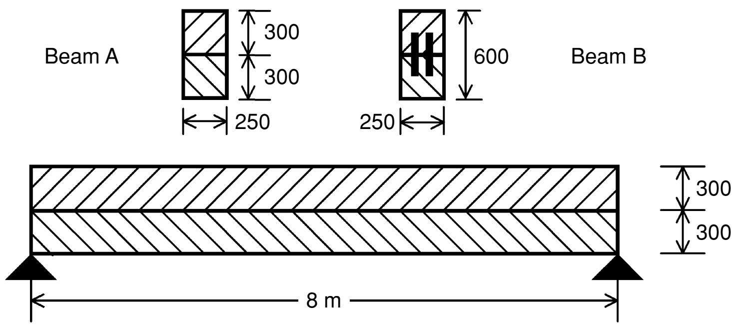


Fig. 4.34 *In-situ reinforced concrete slab.*

Example 4.16 Advantages of composite construction (BS 5950)

Two simply supported, solid steel beams 250 mm wide and 600 mm deep are required to span 8 m. Both beams are manufactured using two smaller beams, each 250 mm wide and 300 mm deep, positioned one above the other. In beam A the two smaller beams are not connected but act independently whereas in beam B they are fully joined and act together as a combined section.

(a) Assuming the permissible strength of steel is 165 N/mm^2, determine the maximum uniformly distributed load that Beam A and Beam B can support.
(b) Calculate the mid-span deflections of both beams assuming that they are subjected to a uniformly distributed load of 140 kN/m.



(A) LOAD CAPACITY

(i) Beam A

Elastic modulus of single 250 × 300 mm beam, Z_s, is

$$Z_s = \frac{I_s}{y} = \frac{bd^3/12}{d/2} = \frac{250 \times 300^2}{6} = 3.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3$$

Combined elastic modulus of two 250 × 300 mm beams acting separately, $Z_c = 2Z_s = 7.5 \times 10^6$ mm^3
Moment capacity of combined section, M, is

$$M = \sigma Z_c = 165 \times 7.5 \times 10^6 = 1.2375 \times 10^9 \text{ N mm}$$

Hence, load carrying capacity of Beam A, ω_A, is

$$M = \frac{\omega \ell^2}{8} = \frac{\omega_A (8 \times 10^3)^2}{8} = 1.2375 \times 10^9 \text{ N mm}$$

$$\Rightarrow \omega_A = 154.7 \text{ N/mm} = 154.7 \text{ kN/m}$$

(ii) Beam B

In beam B the two smaller sections act together and behave like a beam 250 mm wide and 600 mm deep. The elastic modulus of the combined section, Z, is

$$Z = \frac{I}{y} = \frac{bd^3/12}{d/2} = \frac{250 \times 600^2}{6} = 15 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3$$

Bending strength of beam, $M = \sigma Z = 165 \times 15 \times 10^6 = 2.475 \times 10^6$ N mm
Hence, load carrying capacity of Beam B, ω_B, is

$$M = \frac{\omega \ell^2}{8} = \frac{\omega_B (8 \times 10^3)^2}{8} = 2.475 \times 10^9 \text{ N mm}$$

$$\Rightarrow \omega_B = 309.4 \text{ N/mm} = 309.4 \text{ kN/m}$$

Example 4.16 *continued*

(B) DEFLECTION

Mid-span deflection of beam A (for a notional load of $\omega = 140$ kN/m), δ_A, is

$$\delta_A = \frac{5\omega\ell^4}{384EI} = \frac{5 \times 140 \times (8 \times 10^3)^4}{384 \times 205 \times 10^3 \times 2(5.625 \times 10^8)} = 32.3 \text{ mm}$$

Mid-span deflection of beam B, δ_B, is

$$\delta_B = \frac{5\omega\ell^4}{384EI} = \frac{5 \times 140 \times (8 \times 10^3)^4}{384 \times 205 \times 10^3 \times 4.5 \times 10^9} = 8 \text{ mm}$$

Hence, it can be seen that the load capacity has been doubled and the stiffness quadrupled by connecting the two beams, a fact which will generally be found to hold for other composite sections.

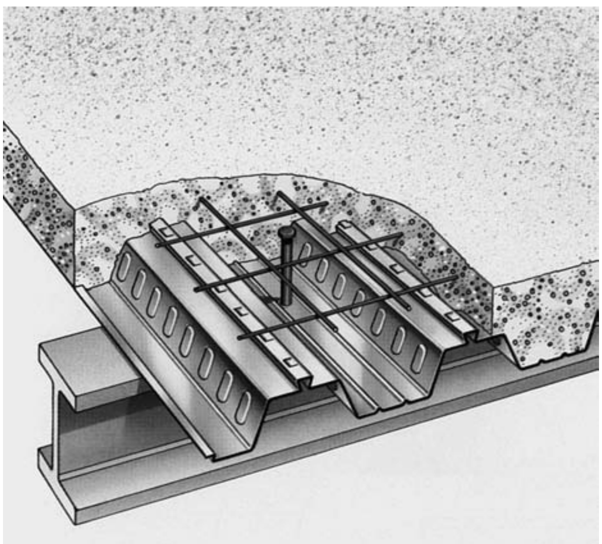


Fig. 4.35 *Composite metal deck floor.*

smaller and hence cheaper foundations. One drawback of this form of construction is that shuttering is needed and the slab propped until the concrete develops adequate strength.

A development of this approach, which can eliminate the need for tensile steel reinforcement and propping of the slab during construction, is to use profiled metal decking as permanent shuttering (*Fig. 4.35*). Three common types of metal decking used in composite slab construction are shown in *Fig. 4.36*. The metal decking is light and easy to work, which makes for simple and rapid construction. This system is most efficient for slab spans of between 3–4 m, and beam spans of up to around 12 m. Where longer spans and/or higher loads are to be supported, the steel beams may be substituted with cellular beams or stub-girders (*Fig. 4.37*). In structures where there is a need to reduce the depth of floor construction, for example tall buildings, the Slimflor system developed by British Steel can be used. Floor spans are limited to 7.5 m using this system, which utilises stiff steel beams, fabricated from universal column sections welded to a steel plate, and deep metal decking which rests on the bottom flange of the beam (*Fig. 4.38*).

Nowadays, almost all composite floors in steel framed buildings are formed using profiled metal decking and the purpose of the following sections is to discuss the design of (a) composite slabs and (b) composite beams.

4.10.1 COMPOSITE SLABS

Composite slabs (i.e. metal decking plus concrete) are normally designed to BS 5950: Part 4. Although explicit procedures are given in the standard, these tend to be overly conservative when compared with the results of full-scale tests. Therefore, designers mostly rely on load/span tables produced by metal deck manufacturers in order to determine the thickness of slab and mesh reinforcement required for a given floor arrangement, fire rating, method of construction, etc. *Table 4.17* shows an example of a typical load/span table available from one supplier of metal decking. Concrete grades in the range 30–40 N/mm^2 are common. Slab depths may vary between 100 and 200 mm. *Example 4.20* illustrates the use of this table.

4.10.2 COMPOSITE BEAMS

Once the composite slab has been designed, design of the primary and secondary composite beams (i.e. steel beams plus slab) can begin. This is normally

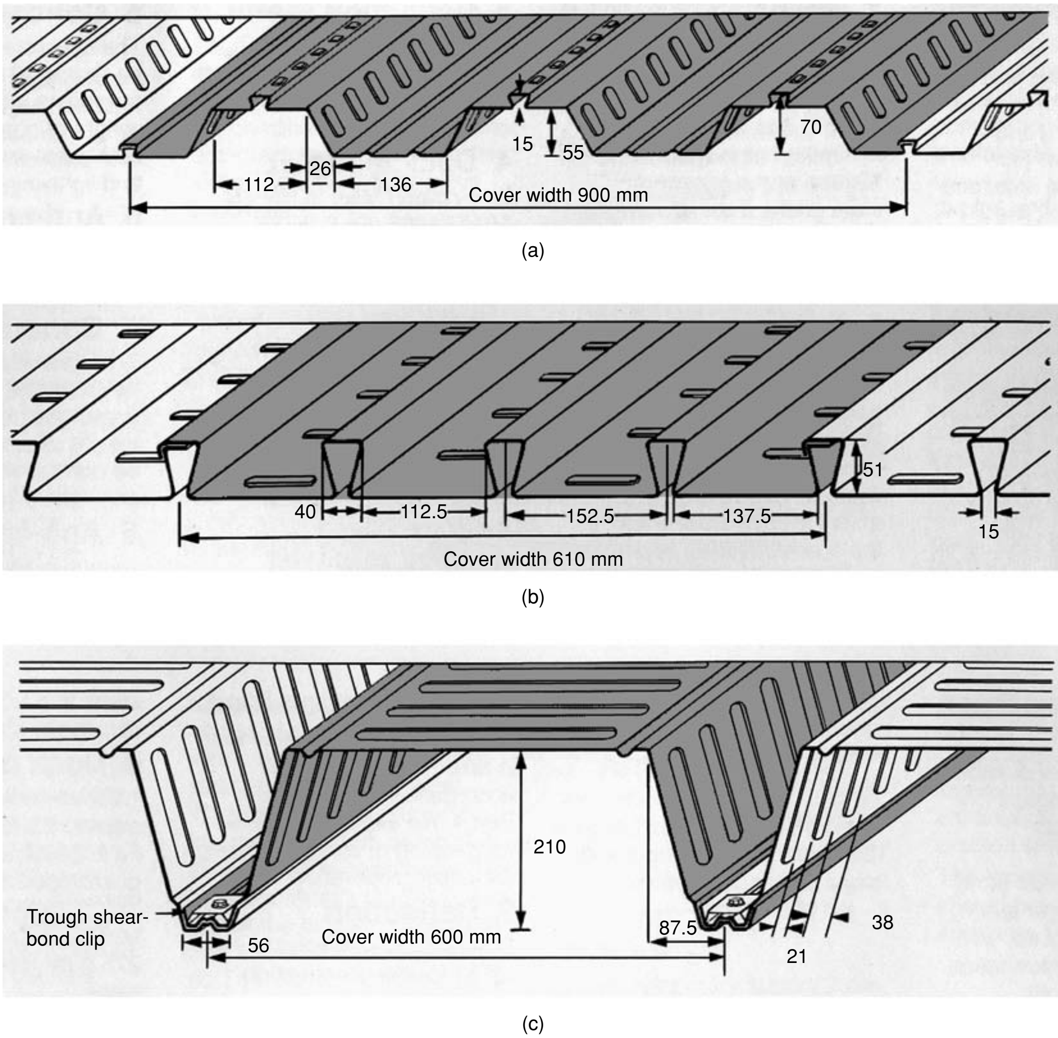
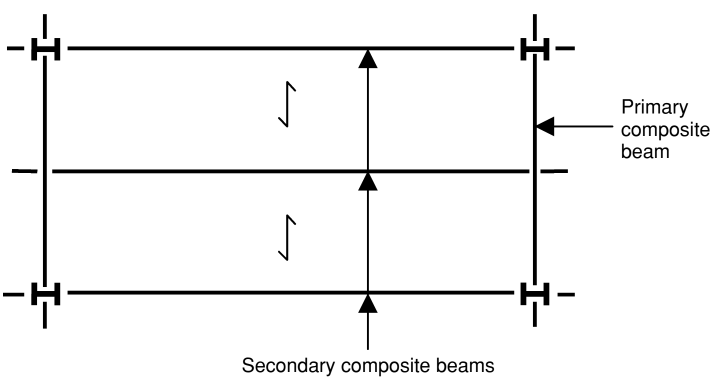


Fig. 4.36 *Steel decking: (a) re-entrant, (b) trapezoidal (c) deep deck.*

carried out in accordance with the recommendations in Part 3: Section 3.1 of BS 5950, hereafter referred to as BS 5950–3.1, and involves the following steps:



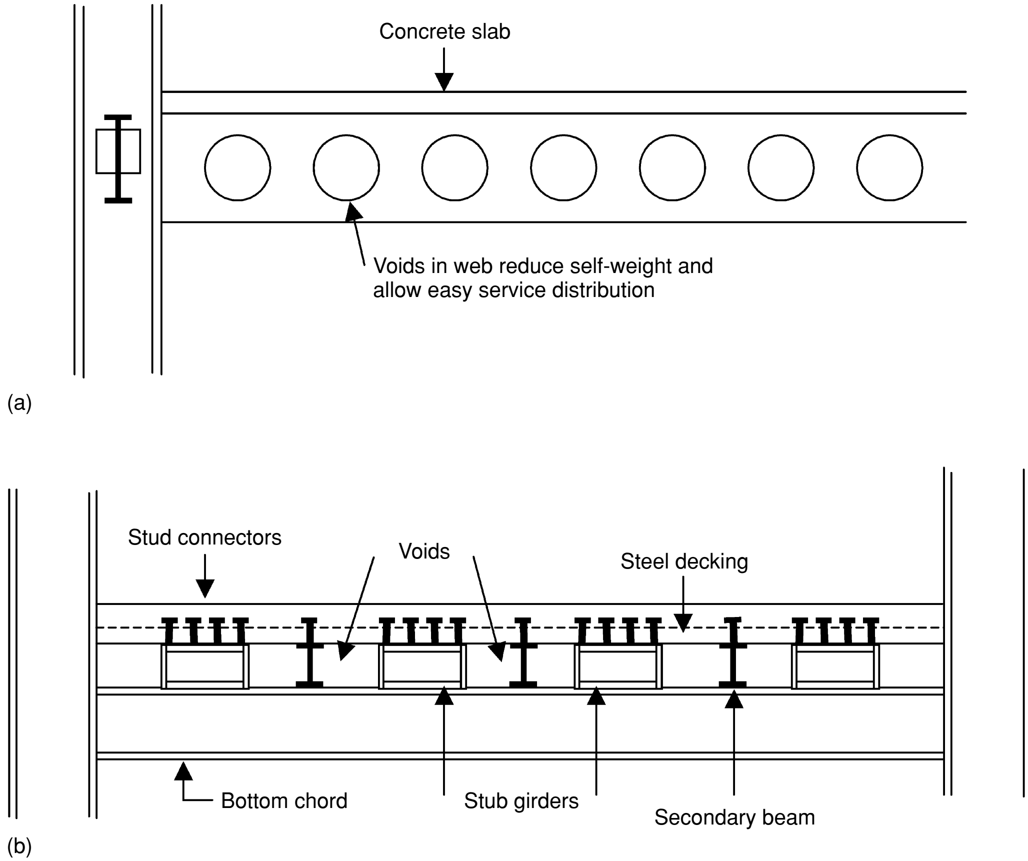


Fig. 4.37 *Long span structures: (a) cellular beams (b) stub-girder.*

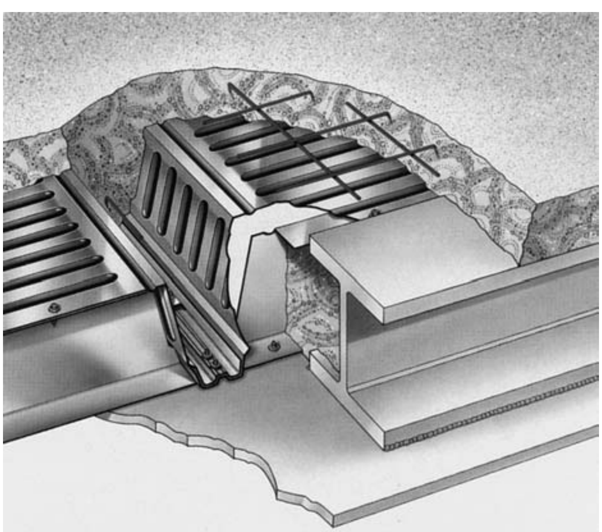


Fig. 4.38 *Slimflor system.*

1. Determine the effective breadth of the concrete slab.
2. Calculate the moment capacity of the section.
3. Evaluate the shear capacity of the section.
4. Design the shear connectors.
5. Assess the longitudinal shear capacity of the section.
6. Check deflection.

Each of these steps is explained below by reference to simply supported secondary beams of class 1 plastic UB section supporting a solid slab.

4.10.2.1 Effective breadth of concrete slab, B_e

According to BS 5950–3.1, the effective breadth of concrete slab, B_e, acting compositely with simply supported beams of length L should be taken as the lesser of $L/4$ and the sum of the effective breadths, b_e, of the portions of flange each side of the centreline of the steel beam (*Fig. 4.39*).

Table 4.17 Typical load/span table for design of unpropped double span slab and deck made of normal weight grade 35 concrete (PMF, CF70, Corus).

Fire Rating	*Slab Depth (mm)*	*Mesh*	*Maximum span (m)*					
			Deck thickness (mm)					
			0.9			*1.2*		
			Total applied load (kN/m²)					
			3.50	*5.00*	*10.0*	*3.50*	*5.00*	*10.0*
1 hr	125	A142	3.2	3.2	2.8	4.0	3.7	3.0
1½hr	135	A193	3.1	3.1	2.7	3.9	3.5	2.8
2 hr	150	A193	2.9	2.9	2.5	3.5	3.2	2.6
	200	A393	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.5	3.5	3.5
	250	A393	2.1	2.1	2.1	3.2	3.2	3.2

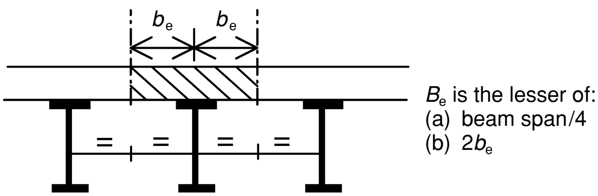


Fig. 4.39 *Effective breadth.*

4.10.2.2 Moment capacity

In the analysis of a composite section to determine its moment capacity the following assumptions can be made:

a) The stress block for concrete in compression at ultimate conditions is rectangular with a design stress of $0.45f_{cu}$
b) The stress block for steel in both tension and compression at ultimate conditions is rectangular with a design stress equal to p_y
c) The tensile strength of the concrete is zero
d) The ultimate moment capacity of the composite section is independent of the method of construction i.e. propped or unpropped.

The moment capacity of a composite section depends upon where the plastic neutral axis falls within the section. Three outcomes are possible, namely:

1. plastic neutral axis occurs within the concrete flange;
2. plastic neutral axis occurs within the steel flange;
3. plastic neutral axis occurs within the web (*Fig. 4.40*).

Only the first two cases will be discussed here.

(i) Case 1: $R_c > R_s$. *Figure 4.41* shows the stress distribution in a typical composite beam section when the plastic neutral axis lies within the concrete slab.

Since there is no resultant axial force on the section, the force in the concrete, R'_c, must equal the force in the steel beam, R_s. Hence

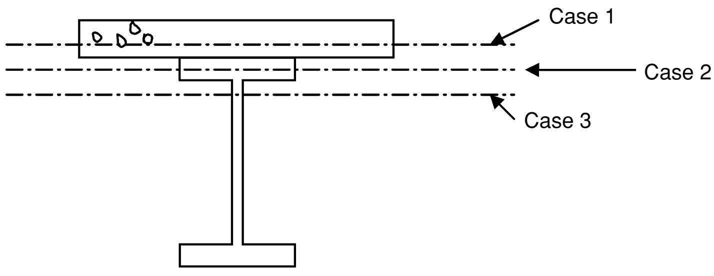


Fig. 4.40 *Plastic neutral axis positions.*

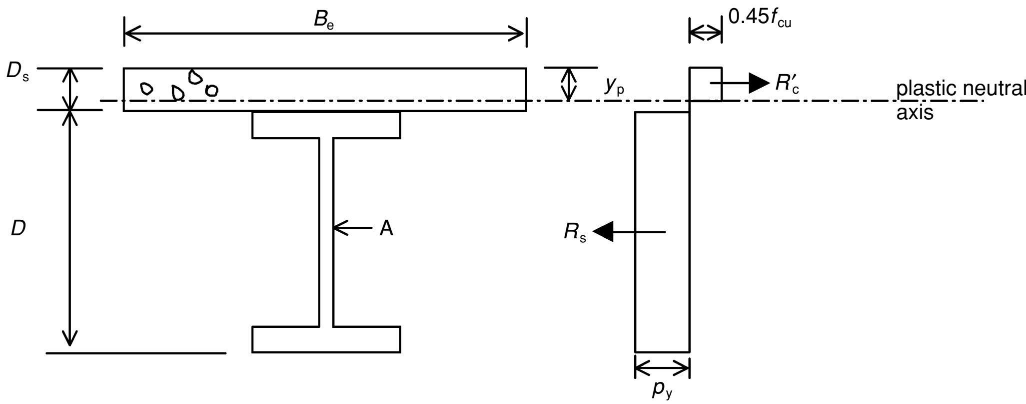


Fig. 4.41 *Stress distribution when plastic neutral axis lies within concrete flange.*

$$R'_c = R_s \tag{4.44}$$

where

R'_c = design stress in concrete × area of concrete in compression

$= (0.45f_{cu})(B_e y_p)$ (4.45)

R_s = steel design strength × area of steel section

$= p_y A$

The maximum allowable force in the concrete flange, R_c, is given by

$$R_c = \text{design stress in concrete} \times \text{area of concrete flange}$$

$$= (0.45f_{cu})(B_e D_s) \tag{4.46}$$

Eliminating $0.45f_{cu}$ from equations 4.45 and 4.46 gives

$$R'_c = \frac{R_c y_p}{D_s} \tag{4.47}$$

Combining equations 4.44 and 4.47 and rearranging obtains the following expression for depth of the plastic neutral axis, y_p

$$y_p = \frac{R_s}{R_c} D_s \le D_s \tag{4.48}$$

Taking moments about the top of the concrete flange and substituting for y_p, the moment capacity of the section, M_c, is given by

$$M_c = R_s\left(D_s + \frac{D}{2}\right) - R'_c \frac{y_p}{2}$$

$$= R_s\left(D_s + \frac{D}{2}\right) - R'_c \frac{R_s}{2R_c} D_s$$

$$= R_s\left(D_s + \frac{D}{2}\right) - \frac{R_s^2 D_s}{2R_c} \tag{4.49}$$

where

D = depth of steel section

D_s = depth of concrete flange

Note that the equation for M_c does not involve y_p. Nonetheless it should be remembered that this equation may only be used to calculate M_c provided that $y_p < D_s$. This condition can be checked either via equation 4.48 or, since $R'_c = R_s$ (equation 4.44) and $R_c > R'_c$, by checking that $R_c > R_s$. Clearly if $R_c < R_s$, it follows that the plastic neutral axis occurs within the steel beam.

(ii) Case 2: $R_c < R_s$. *Figure 4.42a* shows the stress distribution in the section when the plastic neutral axis lies within the steel flange.

By equating horizontal forces, the depth of plastic neutral axis below the top of the steel flange, y, is obtained as follows

$$R_c + p_y(By) = R_s - p_y(By)$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \frac{R_s - R_c}{2Bp_y}$$

Resistance of the steel flange, $R_f = p_y(BT) \Rightarrow p_y = \dfrac{R_f}{BT}$

Substituting into the above expression for y gives

$$y = \frac{R_s - R_c}{2R_f/T} \le T \tag{4.50}$$

The expression for moment capacity is derived using the equivalent stress distribution shown in *Fig. 4.42(b)*. Taking moments about the top of the steel flange, the moment capacity of the section is given by

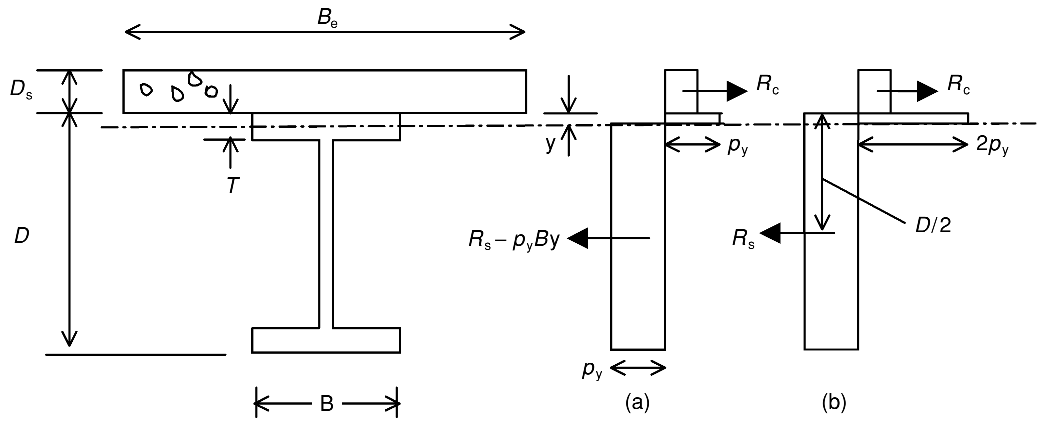


Fig. 4.42 *Stress distribution when plastic neutral axis lies within steel flange.*

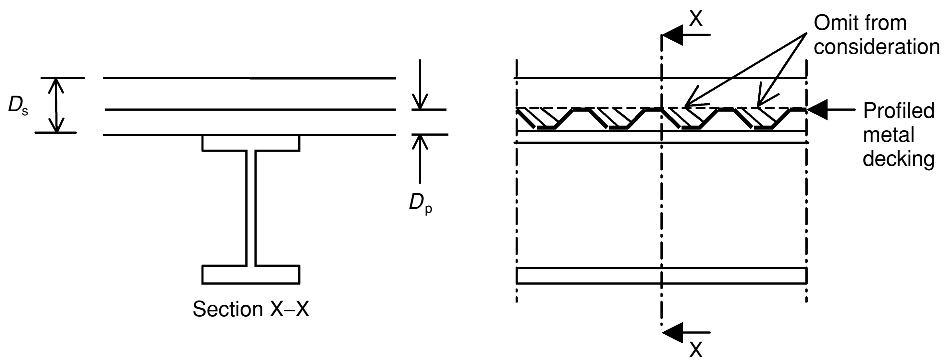


Fig. 4.43 *Slab thickness and depth of metal decking.*

$$M_c = R_s\frac{D}{2} + R_c\frac{D_s}{2} - (2p_yBy)\frac{y}{2}$$

$$= R_s\frac{D}{2} + R_c\frac{D_s}{2} - p_yBy^2$$

Substituting for p_y and y and simplifying gives

$$M_c = R_s\frac{D}{2} + R_c\frac{D_s}{2} - \frac{(R_s - R_c)^2}{4R_f}T \quad (4.51)$$

(iii) Moment capacity of composite beam incorporating metal decking. The moment capacity of composite beams incorporating profiled metal decking is given by the following:

Case 1: Plastic neutral axis is in the concrete flange

$$M_c = R_s\left[\frac{D}{2} + D_s - \frac{R_s}{R_c}\left(\frac{D_s - D_p}{2}\right)\right] \quad (4.52)$$

Case 2: Plastic neutral axis is in the steel flange

$$M_c = R_s\frac{D}{2} + R_c\left(\frac{D_s + D_p}{2}\right) - \frac{(R_s - R_c)^2}{R_f}\frac{T}{4} \quad (4.53)$$

These expressions are derived in the same way as for beams incorporating solid slabs but further assume that (a) the ribs of the metal decking run perpendicular to the beams and (b) the concrete within the depth of the ribs is ignored (*Fig. 4.43*). The stress distributions used to derive equations 4.52 and 4.53 are shown in *Fig. 4.44*. Note that the symbols in these equations are as previously defined except for R_c, which is given by

$$R_c = 0.45f_{cu}B_e(D_s - D_p) \quad (4.54)$$

where D_p is the overall depth of the profiled metal decking (*Fig. 4.43*).

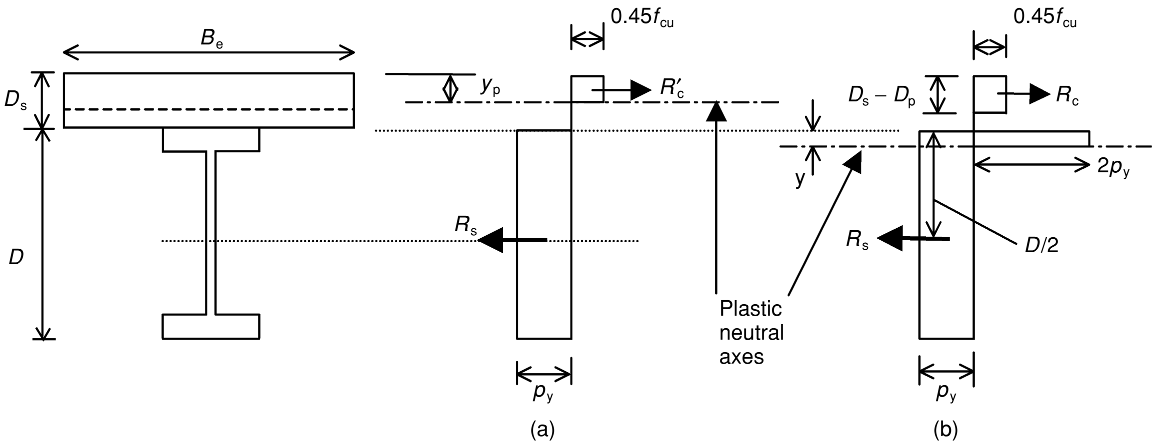


Fig. 4.44 *Stress distributions in composite beams incorporating profiled metal decking: (a) plastic neutral axis is within the concrete flange (b) plastic neutral axis is within the steel flange.*

4.10.2.3 Shear capacity

According to BS 5950–3.1, the steel beam should be capable of resisting the whole of the vertical shear force, F_v. As discussed in 4.8.5, the shear capacity, P_v, of a rolled *I*-section is given by

$$P_v = 0.6p_y tD$$

Like BS 5950: Part 1, BS 5950–3.1 recommends that where the co-existent shear force exceeds $0.5P_v$ the moment capacity of the section, M_{cv}, should be reduced in accordance with the following:

$$M_{cv} = M_c - (M_c - M_f)(2F_v/P_v - 1)^2 \qquad (4.55)$$

where

M_f is the plastic moment capacity of that part of the section remaining after deduction of the shear area A_v defined in Part 1 of BS 5950

P_v is the lesser of the shear capacity and the shear buckling resistance, both determined from Part 1 of BS 5950

4.10.2.4 Shear connectors

(i) Headed studs. For the steel beams and slab to act compositely and also to prevent separation of the two elements under load, they must be structurally tied. This is normally achieved by providing shear connectors in the form of headed studs as shown in *Fig. 4.45*. The shear studs are usually welded to the steel beams through the metal decking.

Shear studs are available in a range of diameters and lengths as indicated in *Table 4.18*. The 19 mm diameter by 100 mm high stud is by far the most common in buildings. In slabs comprising profiled metal decking and concrete, the heights of the studs should be at least 35 mm greater than the overall depth of the decking. Also, the centre-to-centre distance between studs along the beam should lie between 5ϕ and 600 mm or $4D_s$ if smaller, where ϕ is the shank diameter and D_s the depth of the concrete slab. Some of the other code recommendations governing the minimum size, transverse spacing and edge distances of shear connectors are shown in *Fig. 4.45*.

(ii) Design procedure. The shear strength of headed studs can be determined using standard push-out specimens consisting of a short section of beam and slab connected by two or four studs. *Table 4.18* gives the characteristic resistances, Q_k, of headed studs embedded in a solid slab of normal weight concrete. For positive (i.e. sagging) moments, the design strength, Q_p, should be taken as

$$Q_p = 0.8Q_k \qquad (4.56)$$

A limit of 80% of the static capacity of the shear connector is deemed necessary for design to ensure that full composite action is achieved between the slab and the beam.

The capacity of headed studs in composite slabs with the ribs running perpendicular to the beam should be taken as their capacity in a solid slab

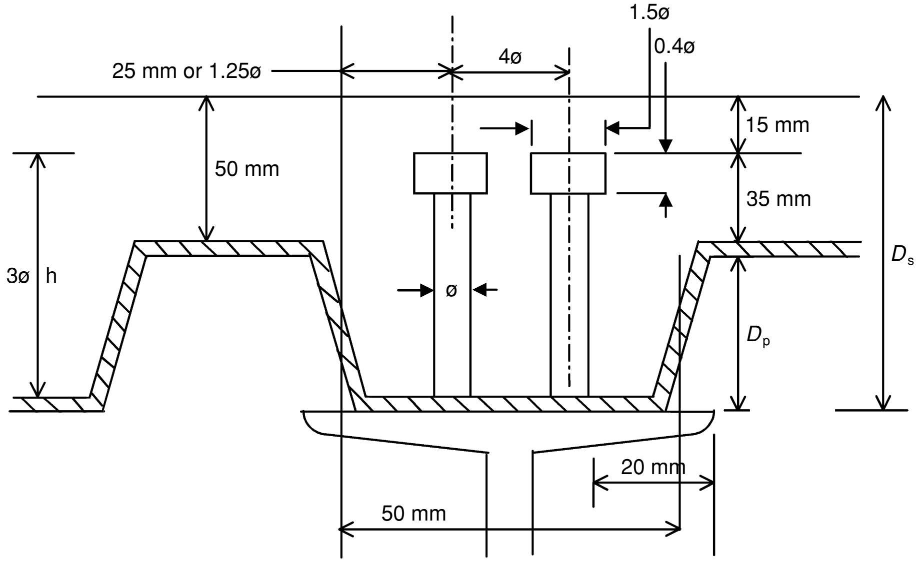


Fig. 4.45 Geometrical requirements for placing of studs (CIRIA Report 99).

Table 4.18 Characteristic resistance, Q_k, of headed studs in normal weight concrete (Table 5, BS 5950–3.1)

Shank diameter (mm)	*Height (mm)*	*Characteristic strength (N/mm^2)*			
		25	*30*	*35*	*40*
25	100	146	154	161	168 kN
22	100	119	126	132	139 kN
19	100	95	100	104	109 kN
19	75	82	87	91	96 kN
16	75	70	74	78	82 kN
13	65	44	47	49	52 kN

multiplied by a reduction factor, k, given by the following expressions:

for one stud per rib
$$k = 0.85(b_r/D_p)\{(h/D_p) - 1\} \leq 1$$

for two studs per rib
$$k = 0.6(b_r/D_p)\{(h/D_p) - 1\} \leq 0.8$$

for three or more studs per rib
$$k = 0.5(b_r/D_p)\{(h/D_p) - 1\} \leq 0.6$$

where
b_r breadth of the concrete rib
D_p overall depth of the profiled steel sheet
h overall height of the stud but not more than $2D_p$ or D_p + 75 mm, although studs of greater height may be used

For full shear connection, the total number of studs, N_p, required over half the span of a simply supported beam in order to develop the positive moment capacity of the section can be determined using the following expression:

$$N_p = F_c/Q_p \tag{4.57}$$

where
F_c = Ap_y (if plastic neutral axis lies in the concrete flange)
F_c = $0.45f_{cu}B_eD_s$ (if plastic neutral axis lies in the steel beam)
Q_p = design strength of shear studs = $0.8Q_k$ (in solid slab) and kQ_k (in a composite slab formed using ribbed profile sheeting aligned perpendicular to the beam)

In composite floors made with metal decking it may not always be possible to provide full shear connection between the beam and the slab because the top flange of the beam may be too narrow and/or the spacing of the ribs may be too great to accommodate the total number of studs required. In this case, the reader should refer to BS 5950–3.1: Appendix B, which gives alternative expressions for moment capacity of composite sections with partial shear connection.

Example 4.17 Moment capacity of a composite beam (BS 5950)

Determine the moment capacity of the section shown in *Fig. 4.46* assuming the UB is of grade S275 steel and the characteristic strength of the concrete is 35 N/mm^2.

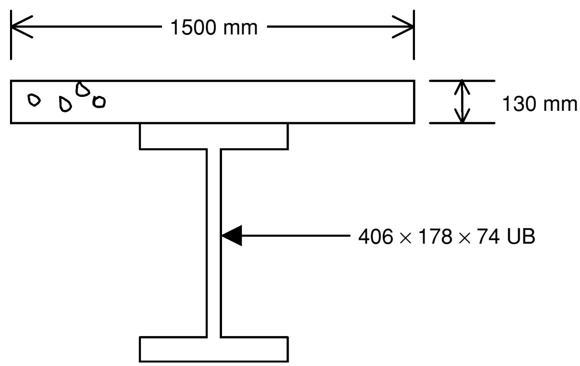


Fig. 4.46

(A) PLASTIC NEUTRAL AXIS OF COMPOSITE SECTION

Resistance of the concrete flange, R_c, is

$$R_c = (0.45f_{cu})B_eD_s = (0.45 \times 35)1500 \times 130 \times 10^{-3} = 3071.25 \text{ kN}$$

From *Table 4.3*, since T(= 16 mm) $\leq$ 16 mm and steel grade is S275, design strength of beam, p_y = 275 N/mm^2. Resistance of steel beam, R_s, is

$$R_s = Ap_y = 95 \times 10^2 \times 275 \times 10^{-3} = 2612.5 \text{ kN}$$

Since $R_c > R_s$, the plastic neutral axis falls within the concrete slab. Confirm this by calculating y_p:

$$y_p = \frac{Ap_y}{(0.45f_{cu})B_e} = \frac{2612.5 \times 10^3}{0.45 \times 35 \times 1500} = 110.6 \text{ mm} < D_s \quad \text{OK}$$

(B) MOMENT CAPACITY

Since $y_p < D_s$ use equation 4.49 to calculate the moment capacity of the section, M_c. Hence

$$M_c = Ap_y\left(D_s + \frac{D}{2} - \frac{R_s}{R_c}\frac{D_s}{2}\right) = 2612.5 \times 10^3\left(130 + \frac{412.8}{2} - \frac{2612.5}{3071.25} \times \frac{130}{2}\right)10^{-6} = 734.4 \text{ kN m}$$

Example 4.18 Moment capacity of a composite beam (BS 5950)

Repeat Example 4.17 assuming the beam is made of grade S355 steel. Also, design the shear connectors assuming the beam is 6 m long and that full composite action is to be provided.

PLASTIC NEUTRAL AXIS OF COMPOSITE SECTION

As before, the resistance of the concrete flange, R_c, is

$$R_c = (0.45f_{cu})A_c = (0.45 \times 35)1500 \times 130 \times 10^{-3} = 3071.25 \text{ kN}$$

From *Table 4.3*, since T (= 16 mm) $\leq$ 16 mm and steel grade is S355, design strength of beam, p_y = 355 N/mm^2.
Resistance of steel beam, R_s, is

$$R_s = Ap_y = 95 \times 10^2 \times 355 \times 10^{-3} = 3372.5 \text{ kN}$$

Since $R_c < R_s$, the plastic neutral axis will lie within the steel beam. Confirm this by calculating y:

$$y = \frac{R_s - R_c}{2Bp_y} = \frac{3372.5 \times 10^3 - 3071.25 \times 10^3}{2 \times 179.7 \times 355} = 2.4 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

MOMENT CAPACITY

Since $y < T$ use equation 4.51 to calculate moment capacity of the section, M_c.

$$\text{Resistance of steel flange, } R_f = BTp_y = 179.7 \times 16 \times 355 = 1.02 \times 10^6 \text{ N}$$

Moment capacity of composite section, M_c, is

$$M_c = R_s\frac{D}{2} + R_c\frac{D_s}{2} - \frac{(R_s - R_c)^2}{R_f}\frac{T}{4}$$
$$= 3372.5 \times 10^3\frac{412.8}{2} + 3071.25 \times 10^3\frac{130}{2} - \frac{((3372.5 - 3071.25) \times 10^3)^2}{1.02 \times 10^6}\frac{16}{4}$$
$$= 895.4 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 895.4 \text{ kN m}$$

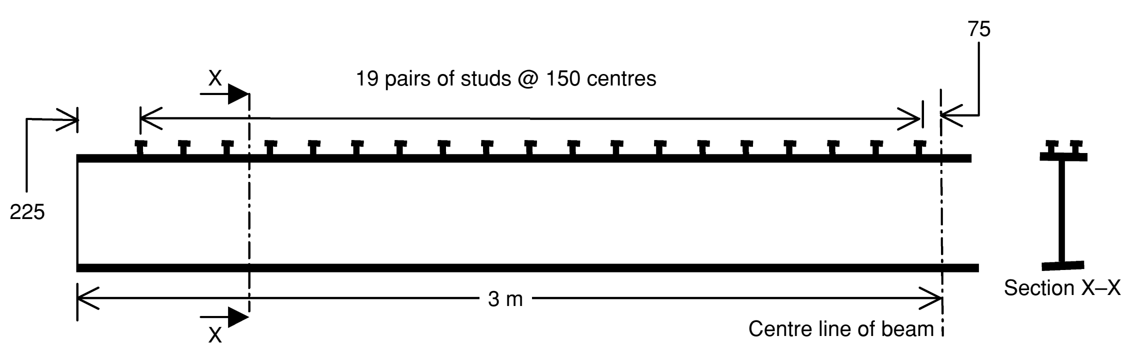
SHEAR STUDS

From *Table 4.18*, characteristic resistance, Q_k, of headed studs 19 mm diameter $\times$ 100 mm high embedded in grade 35 concrete is 104 kN.
Design strength of studs under positive moment, Q_p, is given by

$$Q_p = 0.8Q_k = 0.8 \times 104 = 83.2 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Number of studs required } = \frac{R_c}{Q_p} = \frac{3071.25}{83.2} \geq 36.9$$

Provide 38 studs, evenly arranged in pairs, in each half span of beam as shown.



4.10.2.5 Longitudinal shear capacity

A solid concrete slab, which is continuous over supports, will need to be reinforced with top and bottom steel to resist the sagging and hogging moments due to the applied loading. Over beam supports, this steel will also be effective in transferring longitudinal forces from the shear connectors to the slab without splitting the concrete. Design involves checking that the applied longitudinal shear force per unit length, ν, does not exceed the shear resistance of the concrete, ν_r.

The total longitudinal shear force per unit length, ν, is obtained using the following

$$\nu = NQ_p/s \qquad (4.58)$$

where

N number of shear connectors in a group
s longitudinal spacing centre-to-centre of groups of shear connectors
Q_p design strength of shear connectors

In a solid slab, the concrete shear resistance, ν_r, is obtained using the following:

$$\nu_r = 0.7A_{sv}f_y + 0.03\eta A_{cv}f_{cu} \le 0.8\eta A_{cv}\sqrt{f_{cu}} \qquad (4.59)$$

In slabs with profiled steel sheeting, ν_r, is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\nu_r &= 0.7A_{sv}f_y + 0.03\eta A_{cv}f_{cu} + \nu_p \\ &\le 0.8\eta A_{cv}\sqrt{f_{cu}} + \nu_p \qquad (4.60)\end{aligned}$$

where

f_{cu} characteristic strength of the concrete ≤ 40 N/mm^2
η 1.0 for normal weight concrete
A_{cv} mean cross-sectional area per unit length of the beam of the concrete surface under consideration
A_{sv} cross-sectional area, per unit length of the beam, of the combined top and bottom reinforcement crossing the shear surface (*Fig. 4.47*)
ν_p contribution of the profiled steel decking. Assuming the decking is continuous across the top flange of the steel beam and that the ribs are perpendicular to the span of the beam, ν_p is given by

$$\nu_p = t_p p_{yp} \qquad (4.61)$$

in which

t_p thickness of the steel decking
p_{yp} design strength of the steel decking obtained either from Part 4 of BS 5950 or manufacturer's literature

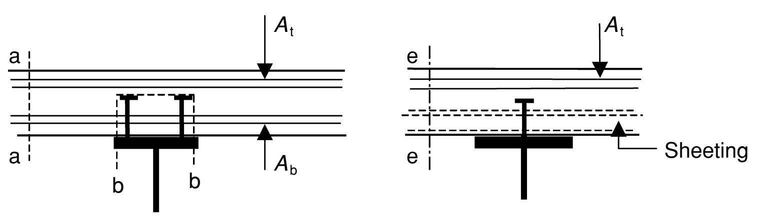
4.10.2.6 Deflection

The deflection experienced by composite beams will vary depending on the method of construction. Thus where steel beams are unpropped during construction, the total deflection, δ_T, will be the sum of the dead load deflection, δ_D, due to the self weight of the slab and beam, based on the properties of the steel beam alone, plus the imposed load deflection, δ_I, based on the properties of the composite section:

$$\delta_T = \delta_D + \delta_I$$

For propped construction the total deflection is calculated assuming that the composite section supports both dead and imposed loads.

The mid-span deflection of a simply supported beam of length L subjected to a uniformly distributed load, ω, is given by



(a) Solid slab

(b) Composite slab with the sheeting spanning perpendicular to the beam

Surface	A_{sv}
a–a	$A_b + A_t$
b–b	$2A_b$
e–e	A_t

Fig. 4.47

$$\delta = \frac{5\omega L^4}{384EI}$$

where

E elastic modulus = 205 kN/mm^2 for steel

I second moment of area of the section

Deflections of simply supported composite beams should be calculated using the gross value of the second moment of area of the uncracked section, I_g, determined using a modular ratio approach. The actual value of modular ratio, α_e, depends on the proportions of the loading which are considered to be long term and short term. Imposed loads on floors should be assumed to be 2/3 short term and 1/3 long term. On this basis, appropriate values of modular ratio for normal weight and lightweight concrete are 10 and 15, respectively. For composite beams with solid slabs I_g is given by

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e D_s^3}{12\alpha_e} + \frac{AB_e D_s(D + D_s)^2}{4(A\alpha_e + B_e D_s)} \quad (4.62)$$

where I_s is the second moment of area of the steel section.

Equation 4.62 is derived assuming that the concrete flange is uncracked and unreinforced (see *Appendix D*). In slabs with profiled steel sheeting the concrete within the depth of the ribs may conservatively be omitted and I_g is then given by:

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e(D_s - D_p)^3}{12\alpha_e} + \frac{AB_e(D_s - D_p)(D + D_s + D_p)^2}{4(A\alpha_e + B_e[D_s - D_p])} \quad (4.63)$$

The deflections under unfactored imposed loads should not exceed the limits recommended in BS 5590, as summarised in *Table 4.5*.

Example 4.19 Design of a composite floor (BS 5950)

Steel UBs at 3.5 m centres with 9 m simple span are to support a 150 mm deep concrete slab of characteristic strength 30 N/mm^2 (*Fig. 4.48*). If the imposed load is 4 kN/m^2 and the weight of the partitions is 1 kN/m^2

a) select a suitable UB section in grade S355 steel
b) check the shear capacity
c) determine the number and arrangement of 19 mm diameter × 100 mm long headed stud connectors required
d) assuming the slab is reinforced in both faces with H8@150 centres (A = 335 mm^2/m), check the longitudinal shear capacity of the concrete
e) calculate the imposed load deflection of the beam.

Assume that weight of the finishes, and ceiling and service loads are 1.2 kN/m^2 and 1 kN/m^2 respectively. The density of normal weight reinforced concrete, ρ_c, can be taken as 24 kN/m^3.

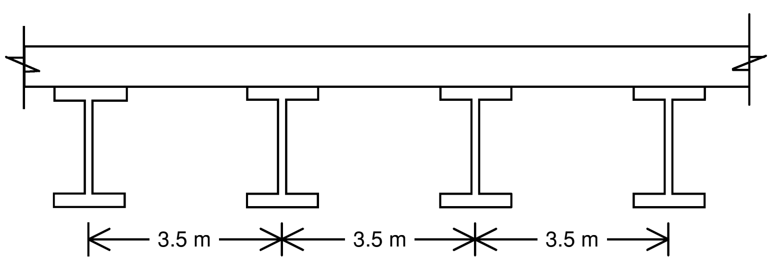


Fig. 4.48

BEAM SELECTION

Design moment

Beam span, L = 9 m

Slab span, ℓ = 3.5 m

Design load per beam, $\omega = 1.4(D_s\rho_c + \text{finishes} + \text{ceiling/services})\ell + 1.6(q_k + \text{partition loading})\ell$

$= 1.4(0.15 \times 24 + 1.2 + 1)3.5 + 1.6(4 + 1)3.5 = 56.4$ kN/m

Design moment, $M = \frac{\omega L^2}{8} = \frac{56.4 \times 9^2}{8} = 571$ kN m

Example 4.19 *continued*

Effective width of concrete slab

B_e is the lesser of beam span/4 (= 9000/4 = 2250 mm) and beam spacing (= 3500 mm)

$\therefore\ B_e = 2250$ mm

Moment capacity

Using trial and error, try 356 × 171 × 45 UB in grade S355 steel

Resistance of the concrete flange, R_c, is

$$R_c = (0.45 f_{cu}) B_e D_s = (0.45 \times 30)\ 2250 \times 150 \times 10^{-3} = 4556.3 \text{ kN}$$

From *Table 4.3*, since T (= 9.7 mm) < 16 mm and steel grade is S355, design strength of beam, $p_y = 355$ N/mm². Resistance of steel beam, R_s, is

$$R_s = Ap_y = 57 \times 10^2 \times 355 \times 10^{-3} = 2023.5 \text{ kN}$$

Since $R_c > R_s$, the plastic neutral axis will lie in the concrete slab. Confirm this by substituting into the following expression for y_p

$$\Rightarrow y_p = \frac{Ap_y}{(0.45 f_{cu})B_e} = \frac{2023.5 \times 10^3}{0.45 \times 30 \times 2250} = 66.6 \text{ mm} < D_s \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, moment capacity of composite section, M_c, is

$$M_c = Ap_y\left(D_s + \frac{D}{2} - \frac{R_s}{R_c}\frac{D_s}{2}\right) = 2023.5 \times 10^3\left(150 + \frac{352}{2} - \frac{2023.5}{4556.3} \times \frac{150}{2}\right)10^{-6} = 592.3 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_c > M + M_{sw} = 571 + (45 \times 9.8 \times 10^{-3})9^2/8 = 575.5 \text{ kN m} \quad \text{OK}$$

SHEAR CAPACITY

Shear force, $F_v = \frac{1}{2}\omega L = \frac{1}{2} \times 56.4 \times 9 = 253.8$ kN

Shear resistance, $P_v = 0.6 p_y t D = 0.6 \times 355 \times 6.9 \times 352 \times 10^{-3} = 517 \text{ kN} > F_v$ OK

At mid-span, F_v (= 0) < $0.5P_v$ (= 258 kN) and therefore the moment capacity of the section calculated above is valid.

SHEAR CONNECTORS

From *Table 4.18*, characteristic resistance, Q_k, of headed studs 19 mm diameter × 100 mm high is 100 kN.

Design strength of shear connectors, Q_p, is

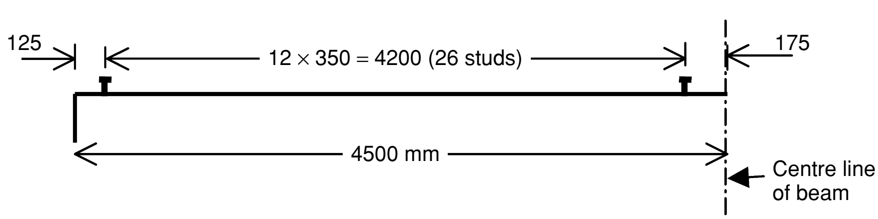
$$Q_p = 0.8 Q_k = 0.8 \times 100 = 80 \text{ kN}$$

Longitudinal force that needs to be transferred, F_c, is 2023.5 kN

$$\text{Number of studs required} = \frac{R_c}{Q_p} = \frac{2023.5}{80} \geq 25.3$$

Provide 26 studs, evenly arranged in pairs, in each half span of beam.

Spacing $= \frac{4500}{12} = 375$ mm, say 350 mm centres

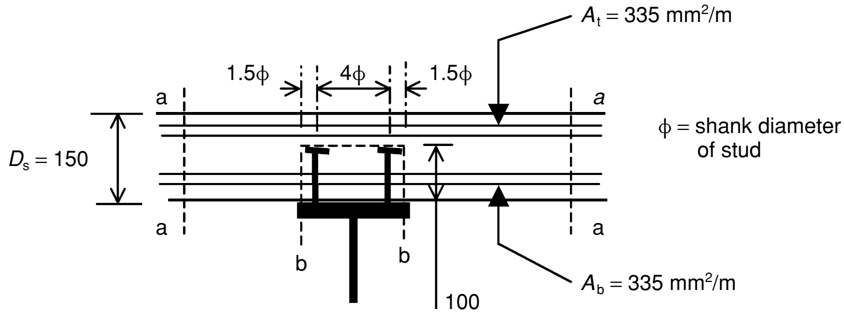


Example 4.19 *continued*

LONGITUDINAL SHEAR

Longitudinal force, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{NQ_p}{s} = \frac{2 \times 80 \times 10^3}{350} = 457 \text{ N/mm}$$



Shear failure surface a–a

Length of failure surface = 2 × 150 = 300 mm

Cross-sectional area of failure surface per unit length of beam, $A_{cv} = 300 \times 10^3$ mm^2/m

Cross-sectional area of reinforcement crossing potential failure surface, A_{sv}, is

$$A_{sv} = A_t + A_b = 2 \times 335 = 670 \text{ mm}^2\text{/m}$$

Hence shear resistance of concrete, υ_r, is

$$\upsilon_r = 0.7A_{sv}f_y + 0.03\eta A_{cv}f_{cu} \le 0.8\eta A_{cv}\sqrt{f_{cu}} = (0.8 \times 1.0 \times (300 \times 10^3\ \sqrt{30})/10^3 = 1315 \text{ N/mm}$$
$$= (0.7 \times 670 \times 500 + 0.03 \times 1.0 \times 300 \times 10^3 \times 30)/10^3 = 504.5 \text{ N/mm} > \upsilon \quad \text{OK}$$

Shear failure surface b–b

Length of failure surface = 2 times stud height + 7ϕ = 2 × 100 + 7 × 19 = 333 mm

Cross-sectional area of failure surface per unit length of beam, $A_{cv} = 333 \times 10^3$ mm^2/m

Cross-sectional area of reinforcement crossing potential failure surface, A_{sv}, is

$$A_{sv} = 2A_b = 2 \times 335 = 670 \text{ mm}^2\text{/mm}$$

Hence shear resistance of concrete, υ_r, is

$$\upsilon_r = 0.7A_{sv}f_y + 0.03\eta A_{cv}f_{cu} \le 0.8\eta A_{cv}\sqrt{f_{cu}} = (0.8 \times 1.0 \times (333 \times 10^3)\sqrt{30})/10^3\ 1459 \text{ N/m}$$
$$= (0.7 \times 670 \times 500 + 0.03 \times 1.0 \times 333 \times 10^3 \times 30)/10^3 = 534 \text{ N/mm} > \upsilon \quad \text{OK}$$

DEFLECTION

Since beam is simply supported use the gross value of second moment of area, I_g, of the uncracked section to calculate deflections.

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_eD_s^3}{12\alpha_e} + \frac{AB_eD_s(D + D_s)^2}{4(A\alpha_e + B_eD_s)}$$
$$= 12100 \times 10^4 + \frac{2250 \times 150^3}{12 \times 10} + \frac{57 \times 10^2 \times 2250 \times 150(352 + 150)^2}{4(57 \times 10^2 \times 10 + 2250 \times 150)} = 49150 \times 10^4 \text{ mm}^4$$

Example 4.19 *continued*

Mid-span deflection of beam, δ, is

$$\delta = \frac{5\omega L^4}{384EI} = \frac{5 \times (5 \times 3.5 \times 9)9^3 \times 10^{12}}{384 \times 205 \times 10^3 \times 49\,150 \times 10^4}$$

$$= 14.8 \text{ mm} < \frac{L}{360} = \frac{9000}{360} = 25 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

Therefore adopt 356 × 171 × 45 UB in grade S355 steel.

Example 4.20 Design of a composite floor incorporating profiled metal decking (BS 5950)

Figure 4.49 shows a part plan of a composite floor measuring 9 m × 6 m. The slab is to be constructed using profiled metal decking and normal weight, grade 35 concrete and is required to have a fire resistance of 60 mins. The longitudinal beams are of grade S355 steel with a span of 9 m and spaced 3 m apart. Design the composite slab and internal beam A2–B2 assuming the floor loading is as follows:

imposed load	= 4 kN/m^2
partition load	= 1 kN/m^2
weight of finishes	= 1.2 kN/m^2
weight of ceiling and services	= 1 kN/m^2

The density of normal weight reinforced concrete can be taken to be 24 kN/m^3.

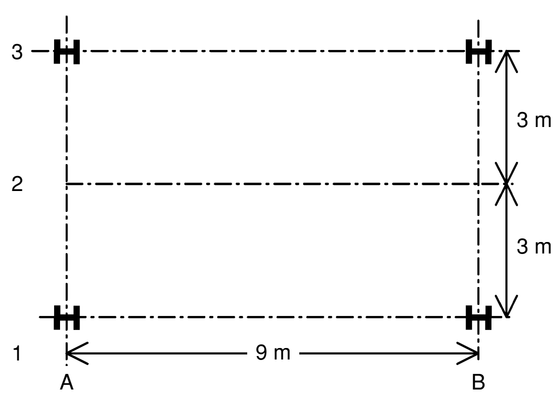


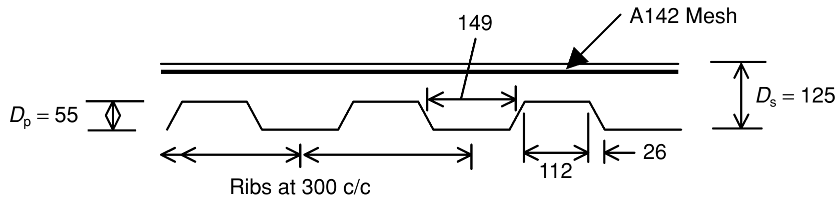
Fig. 4.49 *Part plan of composite floor.*

SLAB DESIGN

Assuming the slab is unpropped during construction, use *Table 4.17* to select suitable slab depth and deck gauge for required fire resistance of 1 hr. It can be seen that for a total imposed load of 7.2 kN/m^2 (i.e. occupancy, partition load, finishes, ceilings and services) and a slab span of 3 m, a 125 mm thick concrete slab reinforced with A142 mesh and formed on 1.2 mm gauge decking should be satisfactory.

Example 4.20 *continued*

A cross-section through the floor slab is shown below.



BEAM A2–B2

Beam selection

Design moment

Beam span, $L = 9$ m
Beam spacing, $\ell = 3$ m

From manufacturers' literature effective slab thickness, $D_{ef} = D_s - 26 = 125 - 26 = 91$ mm

Design load, $\omega = 1.4(D_{ef}\rho_c + \text{finishes} + \text{ceiling/services})\ell + 1.6(q_k + \text{partition loading})\ell$

$= 1.4(0.091 \times 24 + 1.2 + 1)3 + 1.6(4 + 1)3 = 42.4$ kN/m

Design moment, $M = \dfrac{\omega L^2}{8} = \dfrac{42.4 \times 9^2}{8} = 429.3$ kN m

Effective width of concrete slab

B_e is the lesser of $L/4$ (= 9000/4 = 2250 mm) and beam spacing (= 3000 mm)
$\therefore\ B_e = 2250$ mm

Moment capacity

Using trial and error, try 305 × 165 × 40 UB in grade S355 steel
Resistance of concrete flange, R_c, is

$$R_c = (0.45f_{cu})B_e(D_s - D_p) = (0.45 \times 35) \times 2250 \times (125 \times 55) \times 10^{-3} = 2480.6 \text{ kN}$$

From *Table 4.3*, since T (= 10.2 mm) < 16 mm and steel grade is S355, design strength of beam, $p_y = 355$ N/mm^2.
Resistance of steel beam, R_s, is

$$R_s = Ap_y = 51.5 \times 10^2 \times 355 \times 10^{-3} = 1828.3 \text{ kN}$$

Since $R_c > R_s$, plastic neutral axis lies within the slab. Confirm this by substituting into the following expression for y_p

$$y_p = \frac{Ap_y}{(0.45f_{cu})B_e} = \frac{1828.3 \times 10^3}{0.45 \times 35 \times 2250} = 51.6 \text{ mm} < D_s - D_p = 125 - 55 = 70 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, moment capacity of composite section, M_c, is

$$M_c = R_s\left[\frac{D}{2} + D_s - \frac{R_s}{R_c}\left(\frac{D_s - D_p}{2}\right)\right]$$

$$= 1828.3 \times 10^3\left[\frac{303.8}{2} + 125 - \frac{1828.3 \times 10^3}{2480.6 \times 10^3}\left(\frac{125 - 55}{2}\right)\right] \times 10^{-6} = 459 \text{ kN m}$$

$$M_c > M + M_{sw} = 429.3 + 1.4(40 \times 9.8 \times 10^{-3})9^2/8 = 434.9 \text{ kN m} \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 4.20 *continued*

Shear capacity

Shear force, $F_v = \dfrac{1}{2}\omega L = \dfrac{1}{2} \times 42.4 \times 9 = 190.8$ kN

Shear resistance, $P_v = 0.6p_y tD = 0.6 \times 355 \times 6.1 \times 303.8 \times 10^{-3} = 394.7 \text{ kN} > F_v$ OK
At mid-span $F_v = 0 < 0.5P_v$ (= 197.4 kN). Therefore moment capacity of section remains unchanged.

Shear connectors

Assume headed studs 19 mm diameter × 100 mm high are to be used as shear connectors.
From *Table 4.18*, characteristic resistance of studs embedded in a solid slab, $Q_k = 104$ kN
Design strength of studs under positive (i.e. sagging) moment, Q_p, is

$$Q_p = 0.8Q_k = 0.8 \times 104 = 83.2 \text{ kN}$$

Design strength of studs embedded in a slab comprising profiled metal decking and concrete, Q'_p, is

$$Q'_p = kQ_p$$

Assuming two studs are to be provided per trough, the shear strength reduction factor, k, is given by

$$k = 0.6(b_r/D_p)\ \{(h/D_p) - 1\} \leq 0.8$$
$$= 0.6(149/55)\{(95/55) - 1\} = 1.2$$
$$\therefore\ k = 0.8$$
$$\Rightarrow Q'_p = 0.8 \times 83.2 = 66.6 \text{ kN}$$

Maximum longitudinal force in the concrete, $F_c = 1828.3$ kN

$$\text{Total number of studs required} = \frac{R_c}{Q_p} = \frac{1828.3}{66.6} = 27.5$$

As the spacing of deck troughs is 300 mm, fifteen (= 4500/300) trough positions are available for fixing of the shear studs. Therefore, provide 30 studs in each half span of beam, i.e. two studs per trough.

Longitudinal shear

Longitudinal shear stress

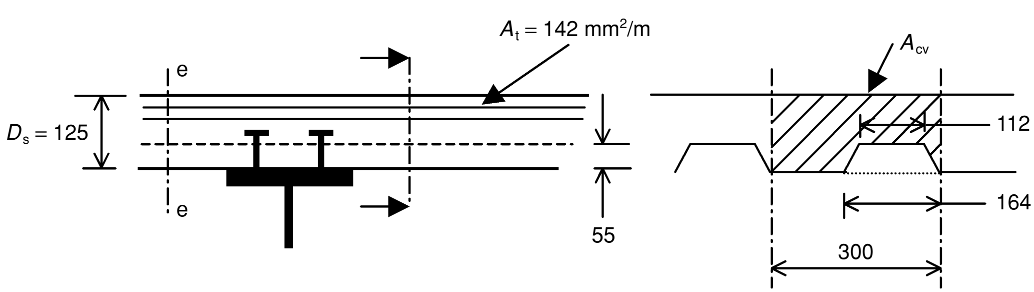
Longitudinal force, υ, is

$$\upsilon = \frac{NQ_p}{s} = \frac{2 \times 66.6 \times 10^3}{300} = 444 \text{ N/mm}$$

Shear failure surface e–e

Cross-sectional area of reinforcement crossing potential failure surface, A_{sv}, is

$$A_{sv} = A_t = 142 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$



Example 4.20 *continued*

Mean cross-sectional area of shear surface, A_{cv}, is

$$[125 \times 300 - {}^1\!/_2(164 + 112)55]/0.3 = 99.7 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^2/\text{m}$$

Hence shear resistance of concrete, υ_r, is

$$\upsilon_r = 0.7A_{sv} f_y + 0.03\eta A_{cv} f_{cu} + \upsilon_p \leq 0.8\eta A_{cv}\sqrt{f_{cu}} + \upsilon_p$$
$$= (0.7 \times 142 \times 500 + 0.03 \times 1.0 \times 99.7 \times 10^3 \times 35 + 1.2 \times 10^3 \times 280)/10^3 = 490 \text{ N/mm}$$
$$\leq (0.8 \times 1.0 \times 99.7 \times 10^3\sqrt{35} + 1.2 \times 10^3 \times 280)/10^3 = 808 \text{ N/mm} \quad \text{OK}$$
$$\upsilon_r = 490 \text{ N/mm} > \upsilon \quad \text{OK}$$

(Note $p_{yp} = 280$ N/mm^2 from the steel decking manufacturer's literature.)

Deflection

Since beam is simply supported use the gross value of second moment of area, I_g, of the uncracked section to calculate deflection.

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e(D_s - D_p)^3}{12\alpha_e} + \frac{AB_e(D_s - D_p)(D + D_s + D_p)^2}{4\{A\alpha_e + B_e(D_s - D_p)\}}$$
$$= 8520 \times 10^4 + \frac{2250(125 - 55)^3}{12 \times 10} + \frac{51.5 \times 10^2 \times 2250(125 - 55)(303.8 + 125 + 55)^2}{4\{51.5 \times 10^2 \times 10 + 2250(125 - 55)\}}$$
$$= 31873 \times 10^4 \text{ mm}^4$$

Mid-span deflection of beam, δ, is

$$\delta = \frac{5\omega L^4}{384EI} = \frac{5 \times (5 \times 3 \times 9)9^3 \times 10^{12}}{384 \times 205 \times 10^3 \times 31\,873 \times 10^4} = 19.6 \text{ mm} < \frac{L}{360} = \frac{9000}{360} = 25 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

Therefore adopt 305 × 165 × 40 UB in grade S355 steel.

4.11 Design of connections

There are two principal methods for connecting together steel elements of structure, and the various cleats, end plates, etc. also required.

1. Bolting, using ordinary or high strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, is the principal method of connecting together elements on site.
2. Welding, principally electric arc welding, is an alternative way of connecting elements on site, but most welding usually takes place in factory conditions. End plates and fixing cleats are welded to the elements in the fabrication yard. The elements are then delivered to site where they are bolted together in position.

Figure 4.50 shows some typical connections used in steel structures.

The aim of this section is to describe the design of some commonly used types of bolted and welded connections in steel structures. However, at the outset, it is worthwhile reiterating some general points relating to connection design given in clause 6 of BS 5950.

The first couple of sentences are vitally important – 'Joints should be designed on the basis of realistic assumptions of the distribution of internal forces. These assumptions should correspond with direct load paths through the joint, taking account of the relative stiffnesses of the various components of the joint'. Before any detailed design is embarked upon therefore, a consideration of how forces will be transmitted through the joint is essential.

'The connections between members should be capable of withstanding the forces and moments to which they are subject . . . without invalidating the design assumptions'. If, for instance, the structure is designed in 'simple construction', the beam-column joint should be designed accordingly to accept rotations rather than moments. A rigid joint would be completely wrong in this situation, as it

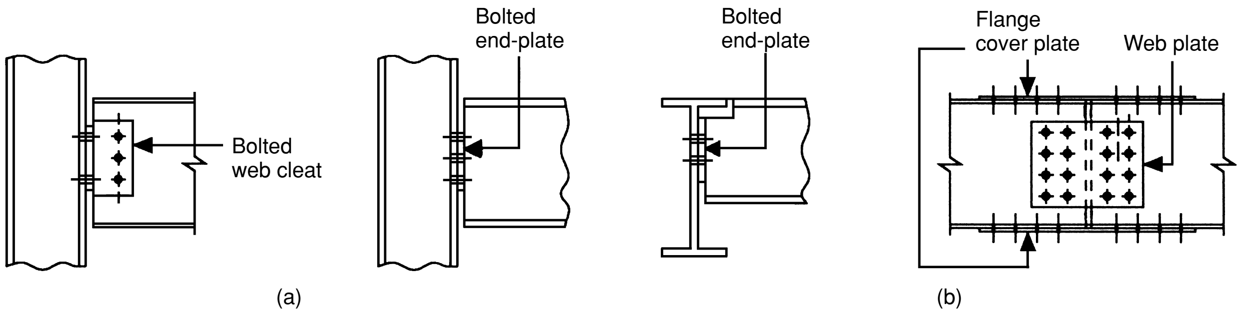


Fig. 4.50 Typical connections: (a) beam to column; (b) beam to beam.

would tend to generate a moment in the column for which it has not been designed.

'The ductility of steel assists in the distribution of forces generated within a joint.' This means that residual forces due to initial lack of fit, or due to bolt tightening, do not normally have to be considered.

4.11.1 BOLTED CONNECTIONS

As mentioned above, two types of bolts commonly used in steel structures are ordinary (or black) bolts and HSFG bolts. Black bolts sustain a shear load by the shear strength of the bolt shank itself, whereas HSFG bolts rely on a high tensile strength to grip the joined parts together so tightly that they cannot slide.

There are three grades of ordinary bolts, namely 4.6, 8.8 and 10.9. HSFG bolts commonly used in structural connections conform to the general grade and may be parallel shank fasteners designed to be non-slip in service or waisted shank fasteners designed to be non-slip under factored loads. The preferred size of steel bolts are 12, 16, 20, 22, 24 and 30 mm in diameter. Generally, in structural connections, grade 8.8 bolts having a diameter not less than 12 mm are recommended. In any case, as far as possible, only one size and grade of bolt should be used on a project.

The nominal diameter of holes for ordinary bolts, D_h, is equal to the bolt diameter, d_b, plus 1 mm for 12 mm diameter bolts, 2 mm for bolts between 16 and 24 mm in diameter and 3 mm for bolts 27 mm or greater in diameter (*Table 33*: BS 5950):

$$D_h = d_b + 1 \text{ mm} \quad \text{for } d_b = 12 \text{ mm}$$

$$D_h = d_b + 2 \text{ mm} \quad \text{for } 16 \le d_b \le 24 \text{ mm}$$

$$D_h = d_b + 3 \text{ mm} \quad \text{for } d_b \ge 27 \text{ mm}$$

4.11.2 FASTENER SPACING AND EDGE/END DISTANCES

Clause 6.2 of BS 5950 contains various recommendations regarding the distance between fasteners and edge/end distances to fasteners, some of which are illustrated in *Fig. 4.51* and summarised below:

1. Spacing between centres of bolts, i.e. pitch (p), in the direction of stress and not exposed to corrosive influences should lie within the following limits:

$$2.5d_b \le p \le 14t$$

   where d_b is the diameter of bolts and t the thickness of the thinner ply.
2. Minimum edge distance, e_1, and end distance, e_2, to fasteners should conform with the following limits:

   Rolled, machine flame cut, sawn or planed edge/end $\ge 1.25D_h$

   Sheared or hand flame cut edge/end $\ge 1.40D_h$

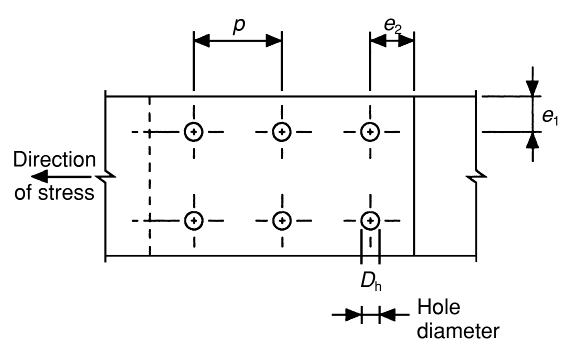


Fig. 4.51 Rules for fastener spacing and edge/end distances to fasteners.

where D_h is the diameter of the bolt hole. Note that the edge distance, e_1, is the distance from the centre line of the hole to the outside edge of the plate at right angles to the direction of the stress, whereas the end distance, e_2, is the distance from the centre line to the edge of the plate in the direction of stress.

3. Maximum edge distance, e_1, should not exceed the following:

$$e_1 \leq 11t\varepsilon$$

where t is the thickness of the thinner part and $\varepsilon = (275/p_y)^{1/2}$.

4.11.3 STRENGTH CHECKS

Bolted connections may fail due to various mechanisms including shear, bearing, tension and combined shear and tension. The following sections describe these failure modes and outline the associated design procedures for connections involving (a) ordinary bolts and (b) HSFG bolts.

4.11.3.1 Ordinary bolts

Shear and bearing. Referring to the connection detail shown in *Fig. 4.52*, it can be seen that the loading on bolt A between the web cleat and the column will be in shear, and that there are three principal ways in which the joint may fail. Firstly, the bolts can fail in shear, for example along surface x_1–y_1 (*Fig. 4.52(a)*). Secondly the bolts can fail in bearing as the web cleat cuts into the bolts (*Fig. 4.52(b)*). This can only happen when the bolts are softer than the metal being joined. Thirdly, the metal being joined, i.e. the cleat, can fail in bearing as the bolts cut into it (*Fig. 4.52(c)*). This is the converse of the above situation and can only happen when the bolts are harder than the metal being joined.

It follows, therefore, that the design shear strength of the connection should be taken as the least of:

1. Shear capacity of the bolt,

$$P_s = p_s A_s \tag{4.64}$$

2. Bearing capacity of bolt,

$$P_{bb} = d_b t_p p_{bb} \tag{4.65}$$

3. Bearing capacity of connected part,

$$P_{bs} = k_{bs} d_b t_p p_{bs} \leq 0.5 k_{bs} e t_p p_{bs} \tag{4.66}$$

where
p_s shear strength of the bolts (*Table 4.19*)
p_{bb} bearing strength of the bolts (*Table 4.20*)

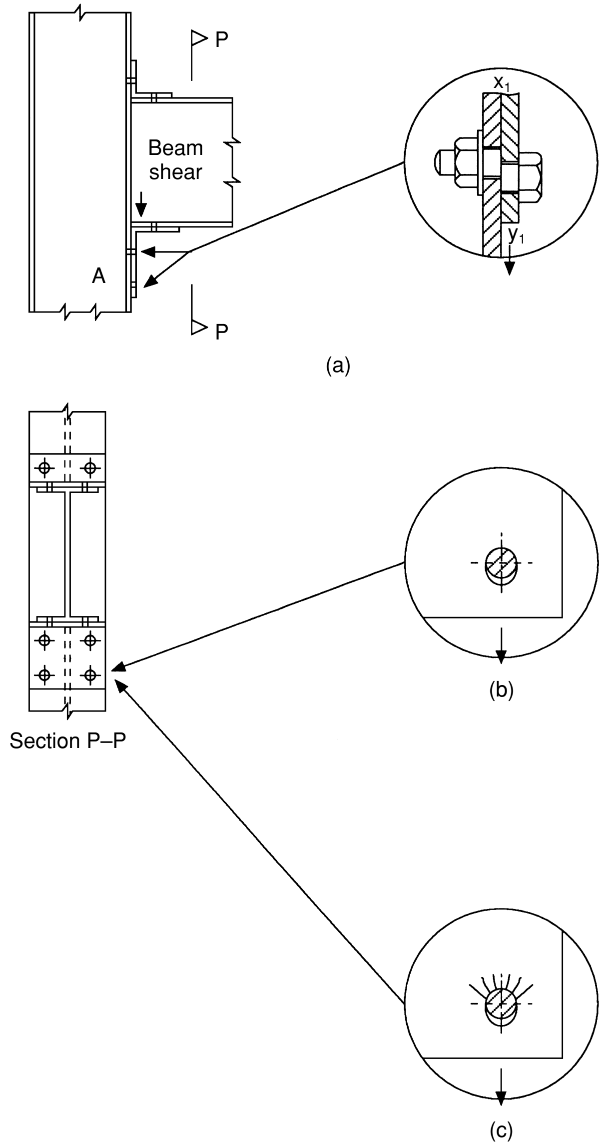


Fig. 4.52 *Failure modes of a beam-to-column connection: (a) single shear failure of bolt; (b) bearing failure of bolt; (c) bearing failure of cleat.*

p_{bs} bearing strength of the connected part (*Table 4.21*)
e end distance e_2
A_s effective area of bolts in shear, normally taken as the tensile stress area, A_t (*Table 4.22*)
t_p thickness of connected part
k_{bs} = 1.0 for bolts in standard clearance holes

Double shear. If a column supports two beams in the manner indicated in *Fig. 4.53*, the failure modes

Table 4.19 Shear strength of bolts (Table 30, BS 5950)

Bolt grade		*Shear strength p_s (N/mm²)*
4.6		160
8.8		375
10.9		400
General grade HSFG	≤ M24	400
to BS 4395–1	≥ M27	350
Higher grade HSFG to BS 4395–2		400
Other grades ($U_b \le 1000$ N/mm²)		$0.4U_b$

Note. U_b is the specified minimum tensile strength of the bolt.

Table 4.20 Bearing strength of bolts (Table 33, BS 5950)

Bolt grade		*Bearing strength p_{bb} (N/mm²)*
4.6		460
8.8		1000
10.9		1300
General grade HSFG	≤ M24	1000
to BS 4395–1	≥ M27	900
Higher grade HSFG to BS 4395–2		1300
Other grades ($U_b \le 1000$ N/mm²)		$0.7(U_b + Y_b)$

Note. U_b is the specified minimum tensile strength of the bolt and Y_b is the specified minimum yield strength of the bolt.

Table 4.21 Bearing strength of connected parts (Table 32)

Steel grade	S275	S355	S460	Other grades
Bearing strength p_{bs} (N/mm²)	460	550	670	$0.67(U_b + Y_b)$

Note. U_b is the specified minimum tensile strength of the bolt and Y_b is the specified minimum yield strength of the bolt.

Table 4.22 Tensile stress area, A_t

Nominal size and thread diameter (mm)	*Tensile stress area, A_t (mm²)*
12	84.3
16	157
20	245
22	303
24	353
27	459
30	561

essentially remain the same as for the previous case, except that the bolts (B) will be in 'double shear'. This means that failure of the bolts will only occur once surfaces x_2–y_2 and x_3–y_3 exceed the shear strength of the bolt (*Fig. 4.53(b)*).

The shear capacity of bolts in double shear, P_{sd}, is given by

$$P_{sd} = 2P_s \tag{4.67}$$

Thus, double shear effectively doubles the shear strength of the bolt.

Tension. Tension failure may arise in simple connections as a result of excessive tension in the bolts (*Fig. 4.54(a)*) or cover plates (*Fig. 4.54(b)*). The tension capacity of ordinary bolts may be calculated using a simple or more exact approach. Only the simple method is discussed here as it is both easy to use and conservative. The reader is referred to clause 6.3.4.3 of BS 5950 for guidance on the more exact method.

According to the simple method, the nominal tension capacity of the bolt, P_{nom}, is given by

$$P_{nom} = 0.8p_tA_t \tag{4.68}$$

where

p_t tension strength of the bolt (*Table 4.23*)
A_t tensile stress area of bolt (*Table 4.22*)

The tensile capacity of a flat plate is given by

$$P_t = \alpha_e p_y \tag{4.69}$$

where effective net area, α_e, is

$$\alpha_e = K_e\alpha_n < \alpha_g \tag{4.70}$$

in which

K_e = 1.2 for grade S275 steel plates
α_g gross area of plate = bt (*Fig. 4.54*)
α_n net area of plate = α_g – allowance for bolt holes (= D_ht, *Fig. 4.54(b)*).

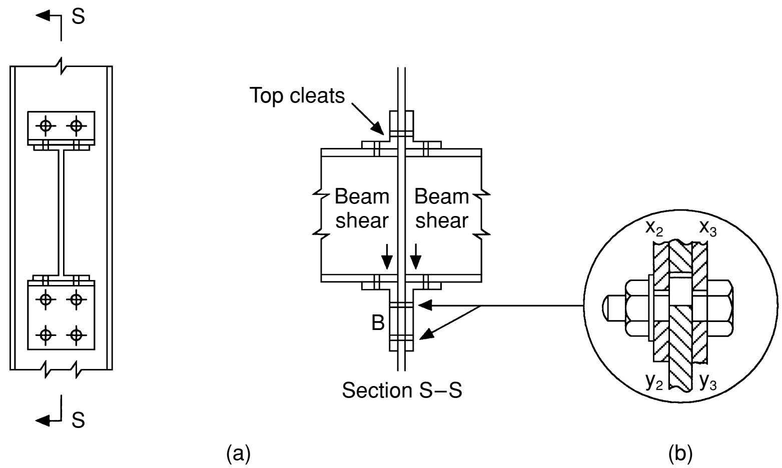


Fig. 4.53 *Double shear failure.*

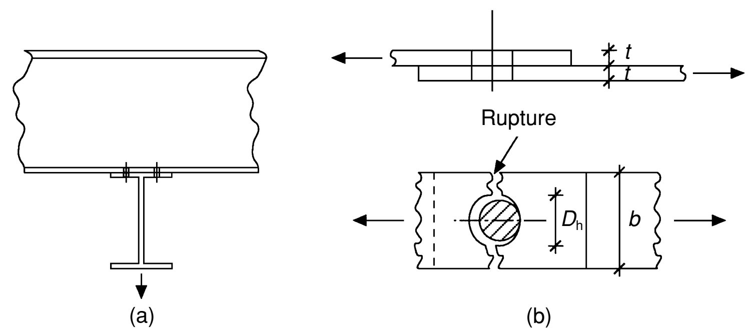


Fig. 4.54 *Typical tension failures: (a) bolts in tension; (b) cover plate in tension.*

Table 4.23 Tensile strength of bolts (Table 34, BS 5950)

Bolt grade		*Tension strength* p_t *(N/mm²)*
4.6		240
8.8		560
10.9		700
General grade HSFG	≤ M24	590
to BS 4395–1	≥ M27	515
Higher grade HSFG to BS 4395–2		700
Other grades ($U_b \le 1000$ N/mm²)		$0.7U_b$ but $\le Y_b$

Note. U_b is the specified minimum tensile strength of the bolt and Y_b is the specified minimum yield strength of the bolt.

Combined shear and tension. Where ordinary bolts are subject to combined shear and tension (*Fig. 4.55*), in addition to checking their shear and tension capacities separately, the following relationship should also be satisfied:

$$\frac{F_s}{P_s} + \frac{F_t}{P_{nom}} \le 1.4 \qquad (4.71)$$

where
F_s applied shear
F_t applied tension
P_s shear capacity (equation 4.64)
P_{nom} tension capacity (equation 4.68).

Note that this expression should only be used when the bolt tensile capacity has been calculated using the simple method.

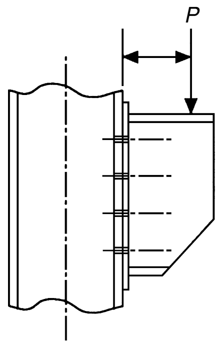


Fig. 4.55 *Bracket bolted to column.*

4.11.3.2 HSFG bolts

If parallel-shank or waisted-shank HSFG bolts, rather than ordinary bolts, were used in the connection detail shown in *Fig. 4.50*, failure of the connection would principally arise as a result of slip between the connected parts. Thus, all connections utilising friction grip fasteners should be checked for slip resistance. However, connections using parallel shank HSFG bolts designed to be non-slip in service, should additionally be checked for bearing capacity of the connected parts and shear capacity of the bolts after slip.

Slip resistance. According to clause 6.4.2, the slip resistance of HSFG bolts designed to be non-slip in service, P_{sL}, is given by

$$P_{sL} = 1.1K_s\mu P_o \tag{4.72}$$

and for HSFG bolts designed to be non-slip under factored loads by

$$P_{sL} = 0.9K_s\mu P_o \tag{4.73}$$

where
P_o minimum shank tension (proof load) (*Table 4.24*)
K_s = 1.0 for bolts in standard clearance holes
μ slip factor ≤ 0.5

Table 4.24 Proof load of HSFG bolts, P_o

Nominal size and thread diameter (mm)	*Minimum shank tension or proof load (kN)*
12	49.4
16	92.1
20	144
22	177
24	207
27	234
30	286
36	418

The slip factor depends on the condition of the surfaces being joined. According to Table 35 of BS 5950, shot or grit blasted surfaces have a slip factor of 0.5 whereas wire brushed and untreated surfaces have slip factors of 0.3 and 0.2 respectively.

Bearing. The bearing capacity of connected parts after slip, P_{bg}, is given by

$$P_{bg} = 1.5d_b t_p p_{bs} \le 0.5 e t_p p_{bs} \tag{4.74}$$

where
d_b bolt diameter
t_p thickness of connected part
p_{bs} bearing strength of connected parts (*Table 4.21*)
e end distance

Shear. As in the case of black bolts, the shear capacity of HSFG bolts, P_s, is given by

$$P_s = p_s A_s \tag{4.75}$$

where
p_s shear strength of the bolts (*Table 4.19*)
A_s effective area of bolts in shear, normally taken as the tensile stress area, A_t (*Table 4.22*)

Combined shear and tension. When parallel shank friction grip bolts designed to be non-slip in service, are subject to combined shear and tension, then the following additional check should be carried out:

$$\frac{F_s}{P_{sL}} + \frac{F_{tot}}{1.1P_o} \le 1 \quad \text{but} \quad F_{tot} \le A_t p_t \tag{4.76}$$

where
F_s applied shear
F_{tot} total applied tension in the bolt, including the calculated prying forces = $p_t A_t$ in which p_t is obtained from *Table 4.23* and A_t is obtained from *Table 4.22*
P_{sL} slip resistance (equation 4.72)
P_o minimum shank tension (*Table 4.24*).

4.11.4 BLOCK SHEAR

Bolted beam-to-column connection may fail as a result of block shear. Failure occurs in shear at a row of bolt holes parallel to the applied force, accompanied by tensile rupture along a perpendicular face. This type of failure results in a block of material being torn out by the applied shear force as shown in *Fig. 4.56*.

Block shear failure can be avoided by ensuring that the applied shear force, F_r, does not exceed the block shear capacity, P_r, given by

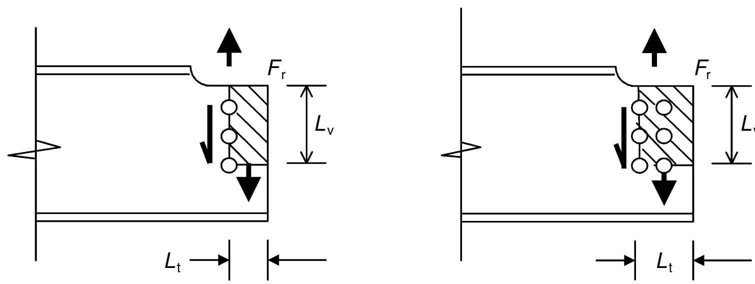


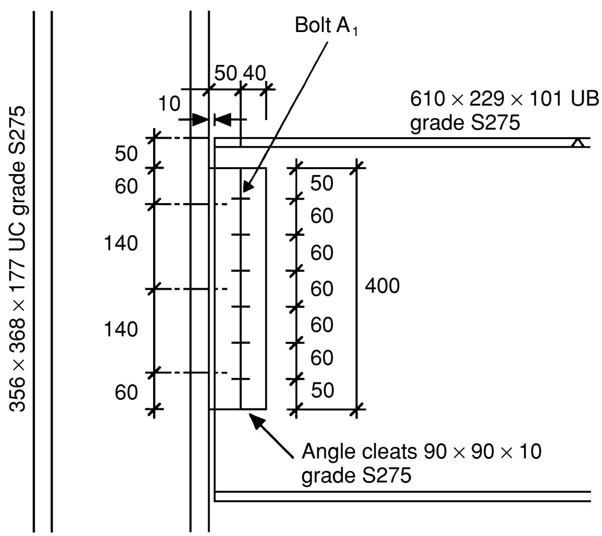
Fig. 4.56 *Block shear. (Based on Fig. 22, BS 5950)*

$$P_r = 0.6p_y t[L_v + K_e(L_t - kD_t)] \quad (4.77)$$

where
D_t is the hole size for the tension face
t is the thickness
L_t and L_v are the dimensions shown in *Fig. 4.56*
K_e is the effective net area coefficient
k = 0.5 for a single line of bolts parallel to the applied shear
= 2.5 for two lines of bolts parallel to the applied shear

Example 4.21 Beam-to-column connection using web cleats (BS 5950)

Show that the double angle web cleat beam-to-column connection detail shown below is suitable to resist the design shear force, *V*, of 400 kN. Assume the steel is grade S275 and the bolts are M20, grade 8.8 in 2 mm clearance holes.



CHECK FASTENER SPACING AND EDGE/END DISTANCES

Diameter of bolt, d_b = 20 mm
Diameter of bolt hole, D_h = 22 mm
Pitch of bolt, p = 140 mm and 60 mm
Edge distance, e_1 = 40 mm
End distance, e_2 = 60 mm and 50 mm
Thickness of angle cleat, t_p = 10 mm

Example 4.21 *continued*

The following conditions need to be met:

Pitch	$\geq 2.5d_b = 2.5 \times 20 = 50 < 140$ and 60 OK
Pitch	$\leq 14t_p = 14 \times 10 = 140 \leq 140$ and 60 OK
Edge distance e_1	$\geq 1.4D_h = 1.4 \times 22 = 30.8 < 40$ OK
End distance e_2	$\geq 1.4D_h = 1.4 \times 22 = 30.8 < 60$ and 50 OK
e_1 and e_2	$\leq 11t_p\varepsilon = 11 \times 10 \times 1 = 110 < 40, 50$ and 60 OK

(For grade S275 steel with $t_p = 10$ mm, $p_y = 275$ N/mm^2, $\varepsilon = 1$.) Hence all fastener spacing and edge/end distances to fasteners are satisfactory.

CHECK STRENGTH OF BOLTS CONNECTING CLEATS TO SUPPORTING COLUMN

Shear

6 No., M20 grade 8.8 bolts. Hence $A_s = 245$ mm^2 (*Table 4.22*) and $p_s = 375$ N/mm^2 (*Table 4.19*). Shear capacity of single bolt, P_s, is

$$P_s = p_s A_s = 375 \times 245 = 91.9 \times 10 = 91.9 \text{ kN}$$

Shear capacity of bolt group is

$$6P_s = 6 \times 91.9 = 551.4 \text{ kN} > V = 400 \text{ kN}$$

Hence bolts are adequate in shear.

Bearing

Bearing capacity of bolt, P_{bb}, is given by

$$P_{bb} = d_b t p_{bb} = 20 \times 10 \times 1000 = 200 \times 10^3 = 200 \text{ kN}$$

Since thickness of angle cleat (= 10 mm) < thickness of column flange (= 23.8 mm), bearing capacity of cleat is critical. Bearing capacity of cleat, P_{bs}, is given by

$$P_{bs} = k_{bs} d_b t p_{bs} = 1 \times 20 \times l0 \times 460 = 92 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 92 \text{ kN}$$

$$\leq 0.5k_{bs} e t p_{bs} = 0.5 \times 1 \times 60 \times 10 \times 460 = 138 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 138 \text{ kN}$$

Bearing capacity of connection is

$$6 \times 92 = 552 \text{ kN} > V = 400 \text{ kN}$$

Therefore bolts are adequate in bearing.

CHECK STRENGTH OF BOLT GROUP CONNECTING CLEATS TO WEB OF SUPPORTED BEAM

Shear

6 No., *M*20 grade 8.8 bolts; from above, $A_s = 245$ mm^2 and $p_s = 375$ N/mm^2. Since bolts are in double shear, shear capacity of each bolt is $2P_s = 2 \times 91.9 = 183.8$ kN

Loads applied to the bolt group are vertical shear, $V = 400$ kN and moment, $M = 400 \times 50 \times 10^{-3} = 20$ kN m.

Outermost bolt (A_l) subject to greatest shear force which is equal to the resultant of the load due to the moment, $M = 20$ kN m and vertical shear force, $V = 400$ kN. Load on the outermost bolt due to moment, F_{mb}, is given by

$$F_{mb} = \frac{M}{Z}A = \frac{20 \times 10^3}{420A}A = 47.6 \text{ kN}$$

where A is the area of bolt and Z the modulus of the bolt group given by

$$\frac{I}{y} = \frac{63\,000}{150}A = 420A \text{ mm}^3$$

Example 4.21 *continued*

in which I is the inertia of the bolt group equal to

$$2A(30^2 + 90^2 + 150^2) = 63000A \text{ mm}^4$$

Load on outermost bolt due to shear, F_{vb}, is given by

$$F_{vb} = V/\text{No. of bolts} = 400/6 = 66.7 \text{ kN}$$

Resultant shear force of bolt, F_s, is

$$F_s = (F_{vb}^2 + F_{mb}^2)^{1/2} = (66.7^2 + 47.6^2)^{1/2} = 82 \text{ kN}$$

Since F_s (= 82 kN) < $2P_s$ (= 183.8 kN) the bolts are adequate in shear.

Bearing
Bearing capacity of bolt, P_{bb}, is

$$P_{bb} = 200 \text{ kN (from above)} > F_s \quad \text{OK}$$

Bearing capacity of each cleat, P_{bs}, is

$$P_{bs} = 92 \text{ kN (from above)}$$

Bearing capacity of both cleats is

$$2 \times 92 = 184 \text{ kN} > F_s \quad \text{OK}$$

Bearing capacity of the web, P_{bs}, is

$$P_{bs} = k_{bs} d_b t_w p_{bs} = 1 \times 20 \times 10.6 \times 460 \times 10^{-3} = 97.52 \text{ kN} > F_s \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence bolts, cleats and beam web are adequate in bearing.

SHEAR STRENGTH OF CLEATS
Shear capacity of a single angle cleat, P_v, is

$$P_v = 0.6 p_y A_v = 0.6 \times 275 \times 3600 \times 10^{-3} = 594 \text{ kN}$$

where

$$A_v = 0.9A_o \text{ (clause 4.2.3 of BS 5950)} = 0.9 \times \text{thickness of cleat } (t_p) \times \text{length of cleat } (\ell_p)$$
$$= 0.9 \times 10 \times 400 = 3600 \text{ mm}^2.$$

Since shear force $V/2$ (= 200 kN) < P_v (= 594 kN) the angle is adequate in shear.

BENDING STRENGTH OF CLEATS

$$M = \frac{V}{2} \times 50 \times 10^{-3} = \frac{400}{2} \times 50 \times 10^{-3} = 10 \text{ kN m}$$

Assume moment capacity of one angle of cleat, M_c, is

$$M_c = p_y Z = 275 \times 266.7 \times 10^3 = 73.3 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 73.3 \text{ kN m} > M$$

where $Z = \dfrac{t_p \ell_p^2}{6} = \dfrac{10 \times 400^2}{6} = 266\,667 \text{ mm}^3$. Angle cleat is adequate in bending.

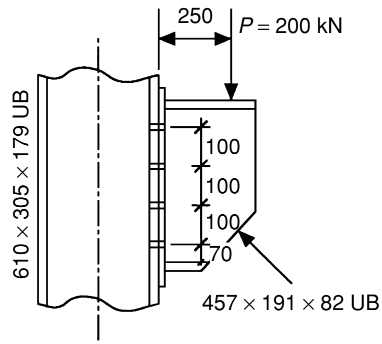
LOCAL SHEAR STRENGTH OF THE BEAM
Shear capacity of the supported beam, P_v, is

$$P_v = 0.6 p_y A_v = 0.6 \times 275 \times 6383.3 = 1053.2 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 1053.2 \text{ kN} > V \text{ (= 400 kN)}$$

where $A_v = t_w D = 10.6 \times 602.2 = 6383.3 \text{ mm}^2$. Hence supported beam at the end is adequate in shear.

Example 4.22 Analysis of a bracket-to-column connection (BS 5950)

Show that the bolts in the bracket-to-column connection below are suitable to resist the design shear force of 200 kN. Assume the bolts are all $M16$, grade 8.8.



Since the bolts are subject to combined shear and tension, the bolts should be checked for shear, tension and combined shear and tension separately.

SHEAR

Design shear force, $P = 200$ kN
Number of bolts, $N = 8$
Shear force/bolt, $F_s = P/N = 200/8 = 25$ kN

Shear capacity of bolt, P_s, is

$$P_s = p_s A_s = 375 \times 157 = 58.9 \times 10^3 = 58.9 \text{ kN} > F_s \quad \text{OK}$$

TENSILE CAPACITY

Maximum bolt tension, F_t, is

$$F_t = \text{Pey}_1/2\Sigma y^2$$
$$= 200 \times 250 \times 370/2(70^2 + 170^2 + 270^2 + 370^2)$$
$$= 38 \text{ kN}$$

Tension capacity, P_{nom}, is

$$P_{nom} = 0.8 p_t A_t = 0.8 \times 560 \times 157 = 70.3 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$
$$= 70.3 \text{ kN} > F_t \quad \text{OK}$$

COMBINED SHEAR AND TENSION

Combined check:

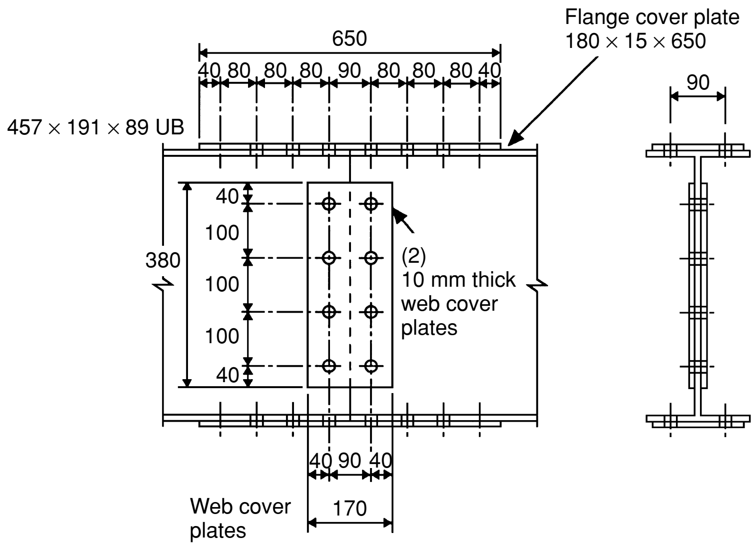
$$\frac{F_s}{P_s} + \frac{F_t}{P_{nom}} \le 1.4$$

$$\frac{25}{58.9} + \frac{38}{70.3} = 0.96 \le 1.4 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence the $M16$, grade 8.8 bolts are satisfactory.

Example 4.23 Analysis of a beam splice connection (BS 5950)

Show that the splice connection shown below is suitable to resist a design bending moment, M, and shear force, F, of 270 kN m and 300 kN respectively. Assume the steel grade is S275 and the bolts are general grade, M22, parallel-shank HSFG bolts. The slip factor, μ, can be taken as 0.5.



Assume that (1) flange cover plates resist the design bending moment, M and (2) web cover plates resist the design shear force, F, and the torsional moment (= Fe), where e is half the distance between the centroids of the bolt groups either side of the joint.

FLANGE SPLICE

Check bolts in flange cover plate

Single cover plate on each flange. Hence the bolts in the flange are subject to single shear and must resist a shear force equal to

$$\frac{\text{Applied moment}}{\text{Overall depth of beam}} = \frac{M}{D} = \frac{270 \times 10^3}{463.6} = 582.4 \text{ kN}$$

Slip resistance of single bolt in single shear, P_{sL}, is

$$P_{sL} = 1.1K_s\mu P_o = 1.1 \times 1.0 \times 0.5 \times 177 = 97.3 \text{ kN} \quad (P_o = 177 \text{ kN, } \textit{Table 4.24})$$

Since thickness of beam flange (= 17.7 mm) > thickness of cover plate (= 15 mm), bearing in cover plate is critical. Bearing capacity, P_{bg}, of cover plate is

$$1.5d_b t p_{bs} \leq 0.5etp_{bs}$$

$$1.5d_b t p_{bs} = 1.5 \times 22 \times 15 \times 460 = 227.7 \times 10^3 \text{ N } (p_{bs} = 460 \text{ N/mm}^2, \textit{ Table 4.21})$$

$$0.5etp_{bs} = 0.5 \times 40 \times 15 \times 460 = 138 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

Shear capacity of the bolts after slip, P_s, is

$$P_s = p_s A_s = 400 \times 303 \times 10^{-3} = 121.2 \text{ kN per bolt}$$

where $A_s = A_t = 303$ mm^2 (*Table 4.22*)

Example 4.23 *continued*

Hence shear strength based on slip resistance of bolts. Slip resistance of 8 No., *M*22 bolts = $8P_{sL}$ = 8 × 97.3 = 778.4 kN > shear force in bolts = 582.4 kN. Therefore the 8 No., *M*22 HSFG bolts provided are adequate in shear.

Check tension capacity of flange cover plate

Gross area of plate, α_g, is

$$\alpha_g = 180 \times 15 = 2700 \text{ mm}^2$$

Net area of plate, α_n, is

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_n &= \alpha_g - \text{area of bolt holes}\\ &= 2700 - 2(15 \times 24) = 1980 \text{ mm}^2\end{aligned}$$

Force in cover plate, F_t, is

$$F_t = \frac{M}{D + T_{fp}} = \frac{270 \times 10^3}{463.6 + 15} = 564.1\,\text{kN}$$

where T_{fp} is the thickness of flange cover plate = 15 mm.
Tension capacity of cover plate, P_t, is

$$P_t = \alpha_e p_y = 2376 \times 275 = 653.4 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 653.4 \text{ kN}$$

where $\alpha_e = K_e\alpha_n = 1.2 \times 1980 = 2376 \text{ mm}^2$.
Since $P_t > F_t$, cover plate is OK in tension.

Check compressive capacity of flange cover plate

Top cover plate in compression will also be adequate provided the compression flange has sufficient lateral restraint.

WEB SPLICE

Check bolts in web splice

Vertical shear F_v = 300 kN

Torsional moment = $F_v e_o$ (where e_o is half the distance between the centroids of the bolt groups either side of the joint in accordance with assumption (2) above)

$$= 300 \times 45 = 13\ 500 \text{ kN mm}$$

Maximum resultant force F_R occurs on outermost bolts, e.g. bolt *A*, and is given by the following expression:

$$F_R = \sqrt{F_{vs}^2 + F_{tm}^2}$$

where F_{vs} is the force due to vertical shear and F_{tm} the force due to torsional moment.

$$F_{vs} = \frac{F_v}{N} = \frac{300}{4} = 75 \text{ kN}$$

$$F_{tm} = \frac{\text{Torsional moment} \times A_b}{Z_b}$$

where
A_b area of single bolt
Z_b modulus of the bolt group which is given by

$$\frac{\text{Inertia of bolt group}}{\text{Distance of furthest bolt}} = \frac{2A_b(50^2 + 150^2)}{150} = 333.33A_b$$

Hence

$$F_{tm} = \frac{13\ 500A_b}{333.33A_b} = 40.5 \text{ kN}$$

Example 4.23 *continued*

and $$F_R = \sqrt{40.5^2 + 75^2} = 85.2 \text{ kN}$$

From above, slip resistance of $M22$ HSFG bolt, $P_{sL} = 97.3$ kN. Since two cover plates are present, slip resistance per bolt is

$$2P_{sL} = 2 \times 97.3 = 194.6 \text{ kN} > F_R$$

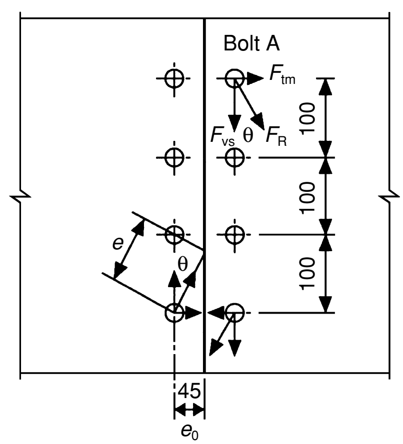
Therefore, slip resistance of bolts in web splice is adequate.
Similarly, shear capacity of bolt in double shear, $P_s = 2 \times 121.2 = 242.4 \text{ kN} > F_R$
Therefore, shear capacity of bolts in web splice after slip is also adequate.

Check web of beam

The forces on the edge of the holes in the web may give rise to bearing failure and must therefore be checked. Here e = edge distance for web and

$$\tan\theta = \frac{40.5}{75} \Rightarrow \theta = 28.37°$$

$$e = \frac{45}{\sin\theta} = \frac{45}{0.475} = 94.7$$



Bearing capacity of web, P_{bg}, is

$$= 1.5d_b t p_{bs} \le 0.5 e t p_{bs} = 0.5 \times 94.7 \times 10.6 \times 460 = 230.9 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 203.9 \text{ kN}$$

$$= 1.5 \times 22 \times 10.6 \times 460 = 160.9 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 160.9 \text{ kN} > F_R$$

Hence web of beam is adequate in bearing.

Check web cover plates

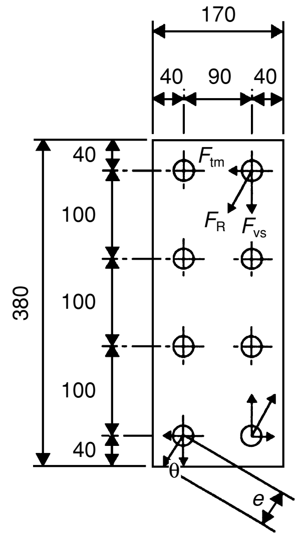
The force on the edge of the holes in the web cover plates may give rise to bearing failure and must therefore be checked. Here e = edge distance for web cover plates and $\theta = 28.37°$. Thus

$$e = \frac{40}{\cos\theta} = \frac{40}{0.88} = 45.5$$

Bearing capacity of one plate is

$$= 1.5d_b t p_{bs} \le 0.5 e t p_{bs} = 0.5 \times 45.5 \times 10 \times 460 = 104.7 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 104.7 \text{ kN}$$
$$= 1.5 \times 22 \times 10 \times 460 = 151.8 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 151.8 \text{ kN}$$

Example 4.23 *continued*



Thus bearing capacity of single web plate = 104.7 kN and bearing capacity of two web plates = 2 × 104.7 = 209 kN > F_R. Hence web cover plates are adequate in bearing.

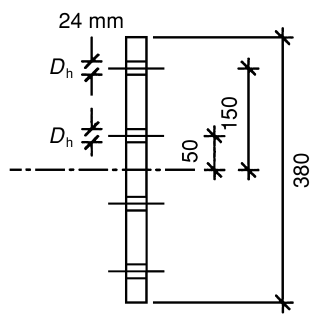
Check web cover plates for shear and bending

Check shear capacity. Shear force applied to one plate is

$$F_v/2 = 300/2 = 150 \text{ kN}$$

Torsional moment applied to one plate is

$$150 \times 45 = 6750 \text{ kN mm} = 6.75 \text{ kN m}$$



Shear capacity of one plate, P_v, is

$$P_v = 0.6p_y A_v = 0.6 \times 275 \times 0.9 \times 10(380 - 4 \times 24) = 421.7 \text{ kN} > 150 \text{ kN}$$

where $A_v = 0.9A_n$. Hence cover plate is adequate in shear.

Check moment capacity

Since applied shear force (= 150 kN) < $0.6P_v$ = 253 kN, moment capacity, $M_c = p_yZ$ where $Z = I/y$.

Referring to the above diagram, I of plate $= 10 \times 380^3/12 - 2(10 \times 24)50^2 - 2(10 \times 24)150^2 = 337 \times 10^5$ mm^2

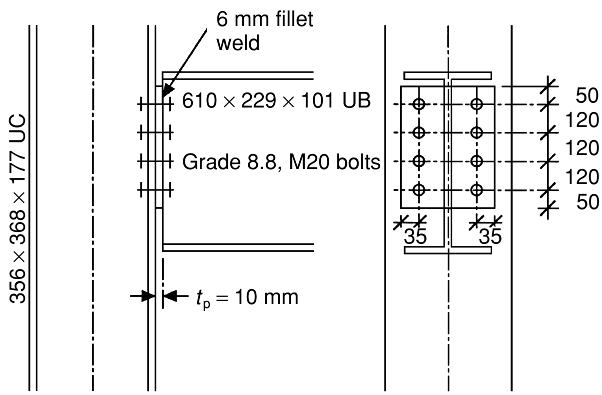
$$Z = I/y = 337 \times 10^5/190 = 177 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^2$$

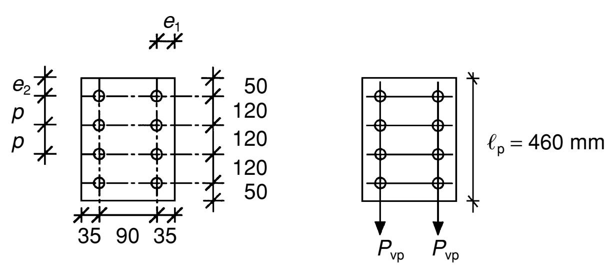
$$M_c = p_yZ = 275 \times 177 \times 10^3 = 48.7 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm} = 48.7 \text{ kN m} > 6.75 \text{ kN m}$$

Hence web cover plates are also adequate for bending.

Example 4.24 Analysis of a beam-to-column connection using an end plate (BS 5950)

Calculate the design shear resistance of the connection shown below, assuming that the steel is grade S275 and the bolts are *M*20, grade 8.8 in 2 mm clearance holes.





CHECK FASTENER SPACING AND EDGE/END DISTANCES

Diameter of bolt, d_b = 20 mm
Diameter of bolt hole, D_h = 22 mm
Pitch of bolt, p = 120 mm
Edge distance, e_1 = 35 mm
End distance, e_2 = 50 mm
Thickness of end plate, t_p = 10 mm

The following conditions need to be met:

Pitch $\geq 2.5d_b = 2.5 \times 20 = 50 < 120$ OK
Pitch $\leq 14t_p = 14 \times 10 = 140 > 120$ OK
Edge distance $e_1 \geq 1.4D_h = 1.4 \times 22 = 30.8 < 35$ OK
End distance $e_2 \geq 1.4D_h = 1.4 \times 22 = 30.8 < 50$ OK
e_1 and e_2 $\leq 11t_p\varepsilon = 11 \times 10 \times 1 = 110 > 35, 50$ OK

For grade S275 steel with $t_p = 10$ mm, $p_y = 275$ N/mm^2 (*Table 4.3*), $\varepsilon = 1$ (equation 4.4). Hence all fastener spacing and edge/end distances to fasteners are satisfactory.

Example 4.24 *continued*

BOLT GROUP STRENGTH

Shear

8 No., *M*20 grade 8.8 bolts; $A_s = 245$ N/mm^2 (*Table 4.22*) and $p_s = 375$ N/mm^2 (*Table 4.19*)
Shear capacity of single bolt, P_s, is

$$P_s = p_s A_s = 375 \times 245 = 91.9 \times 10^3 = 91.9 \text{ kN}$$

Shear capacity of bolt group is

$$8P_s = 8 \times 91.9 = 735 \text{ kN}$$

Bearing

Bearing capacity of bolt, P_{bb}, is given by

$$P_{bb} = d_b t_p p_{bb} = 20 \times 10 \times 1000 = 200 \times 10^3 = 200 \text{ kN}$$

End plate is thinner than column flange and will therefore be critical. Bearing capacity of end plate, P_{bs}, is given by

$$P_{bs} = k_{bs} d_b t_p p_{bs} = 1 \times 20 \times 10 \times 460 = 92 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 92 \text{ kN}$$

$$\leq 0.5 k_{bs} e_2 t_p p_{bs} = 0.5 \times 1 \times 50 \times 10 \times 460 = 115 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 115 \text{ kN}$$

Hence bearing capacity of connection = 8 × 92 = 736 kN.

END PLATE SHEAR STRENGTH

$$A_v = 0.9A_n = 0.9t_p(\ell_p - 4D_h) = 0.9 \times 10 \times (460 - 4 \times 22) = 3348 \text{ mm}^2$$

Shear capacity assuming single plane of failure, P_{vp}, is

$$P_{vp} = 0.6 p_y A_v = 0.6 \times 275 \times 3348 = 552.4 \times 10^3 = 552.4 \text{ kN}$$

Shear capacity assuming two failure planes is

$$2P_{vp} = 2 \times 552.4 = 1104.8 \text{ kN}$$

WELD STRENGTH

(Readers should refer to *section 4.11.5* before performing this check.) Fillet weld of 6 mm provided. Hence

$$\text{Leg length, } s = 6 \text{ mm}$$

Design strength, $p_w = 220$ N/mm^2 (assuming electrode strength = 42 N/mm^2, *Table 4.25*)
Throat size, $a = 0.7s = 0.7 \times 6 = 4.2$ mm
Effective length of weld, ℓ_w, is

$$\ell_w = 2(\ell_p - 2s) = 2(460 - 2 \times 6) = 896 \text{ mm}$$

Hence design shear strength of weld, V_w, is

$$V_w = p_w a \ell_w = 220 \times 4.2 \times 896 = 828 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 828 \text{ kN}$$

LOCAL SHEAR STRENGTH OF BEAM WEB AT THE END PLATE

$$P_{vb} = 0.6 p_y A_v = 0.6 \times 275(0.9 \times 10.6 \times 460) \times 10^{-3} = 724 \text{ kN}$$

Hence, strength of connection is controlled by shear strength of beam web and is equal to 724 kN.

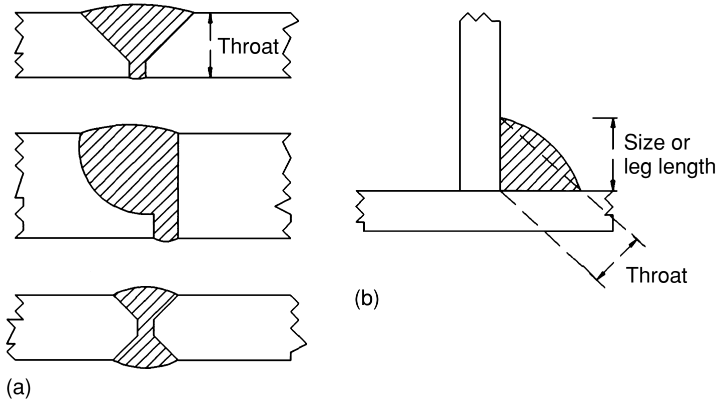


Fig. 4.57 *Types of weld; (a) butt weld; (b) fillet weld.*

4.11.5 WELDED CONNECTIONS

The two main types of welded joints are **fillet welds** and **butt welds**. Varieties of each type are shown in *Fig. 4.57*. Essentially the process of welding consists of heating and melting steel in and/or around the gap between the pieces of steel that are being welded together. Welding rods consist of a steel rod surrounded by a flux which helps the metal to melt and flow into the joint. Welding can be accomplished using oxy-acetylene equipment, but the easiest method uses electric arc welding.

4.11.5.1 Strength of welds

If welding is expertly carried out using the correct grade of welding rod, the resulting weld should be considerably stronger than the pieces held together. However, to allow for some variation in the quality of welds, it is assumed that the weld strength for fillet welds is as given in Table 37 of BS 5950, reproduced below as *Table 4.25*.

Table 4.25 Design strength of fillet welds, p_w (Table 37, BS 5950)

Steel grade	*Electrode classification*		
	35	*42*	*50*
	N/mm^2	N/mm^2	N/mm^2
S275	220	220[a]	220[a]
S355	220[b]	250	250[a]
S460	220[b]	250[b]	280

Notes. [a] Over matching electrodes.
[b] Under matching electrodes. Not to be used for partial penetration butt welds.

However, the design strength of the weld can be taken as the same as that for the parent metal if the joint is a butt weld, or alternatively a fillet weld satisfying the following conditions:

1. The weld is symmetrical as shown in *Fig. 4.58*.
2. It is made with suitable electrodes which will produce specimens at least as strong as the parent metal.
3. The sum of throat sizes (*Fig. 4.58*) is not less than the connected plate thickness.
4. The weld is principally subject to direct tension or compression (*Fig. 4.58*).

4.11.5.2 Design details

Figure 4.57 also indicates what is meant by the weld **leg length**, *s*, and the **effective throat size,** *a*, which should not be taken as greater than 0.7*s*.

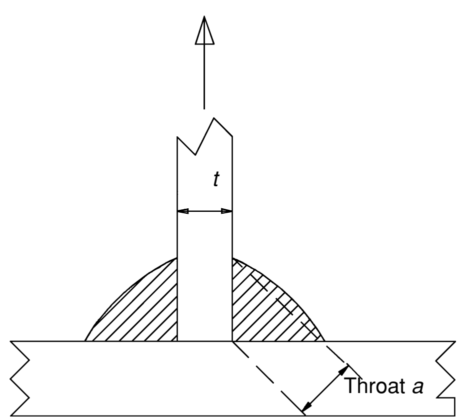


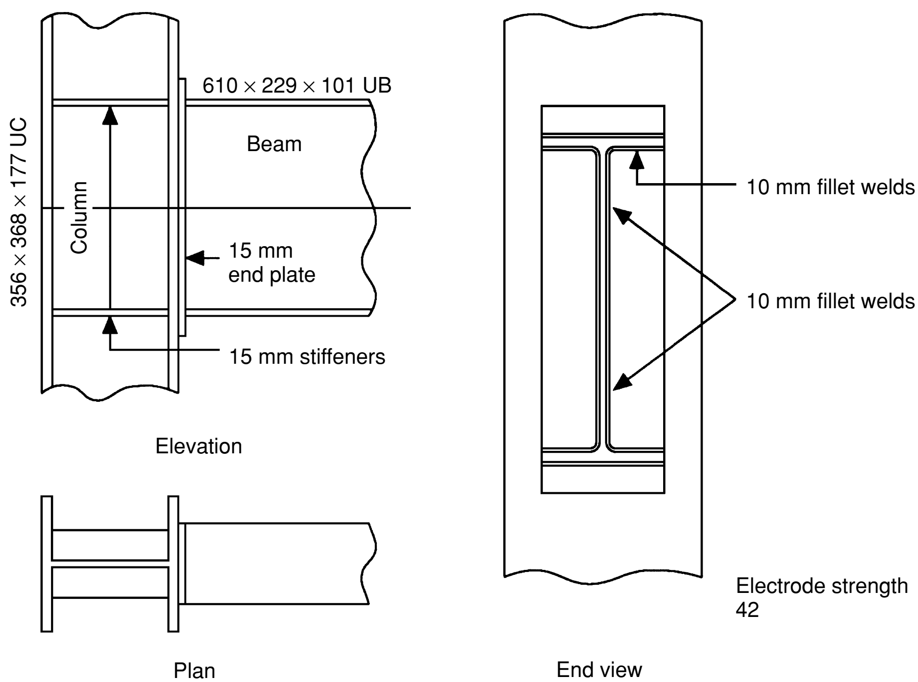
Fig. 4.58 *Special fillet weld.*

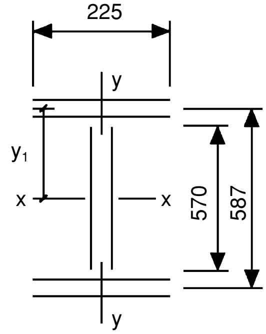
The **effective length** of a run of weld should be taken as the actual length, less one leg length for each end of the weld. Where the weld ends at a corner of the metal, it should be continued around the corner for a distance greater than $2s$. In a lap joint, the minimum lap length should be not less than $4t$, where t is the thinner of the pieces to be joined.

For fillet welds, the 'vector sum of the design stresses due to all forces and moments transmitted by the weld should not exceed the design strength, p_w'.

Example 4.25 Analysis of a welded beam-to-column connection (BS 5950)

A grade S275 steel 610 × 229 × 101 UB is to be connected, via a welded end plate onto a 356 × 368 × 177 UC. The connection is to be designed to transmit a bending moment of 500 kN m and a shear force of 300 kN. Show that the proposed welding scheme for this connection is adequate.





Example 4.25 *continued*

Leg length of weld, $s = 10$ mm. Effective length of weld is

$$4(\ell_w - 2s) + 2(h_w - 2s) = 4(225 - 2 \times 10) + 2(570 - 2 \times 10) = 1920 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{Weld force} = \frac{\text{shear force}}{\text{effective length of weld}} = \frac{300}{1920} = 0.16 \text{ kN/mm}$$

Weld second moment of area, I_{xx}, is

$$\begin{aligned} I_{xx} &= 4[1 \times (\ell_w - 2s)]y_1^2 + 2[1 \times (h_w - 2s)^3/12] \\ &= 4[(205)]293.5^2 + 2[1 \times (550)^3/12] \\ &= 98\,365\,812 \text{ mm}^4 \end{aligned}$$

Weld shear (moment) is

$$\frac{My}{I_{xx}} = \frac{500 \times 10^3 \times 293.5}{98\,365\,812} = 1.49 \text{ kN/mm}$$

where $y = D/2 = 587/2 = 293.5$ mm
Vectored force = $\sqrt{1.49^2 + 0.16^2} = 1.50$ kN/mm
Since the steel grade is S275 and the electrode strength is 42, the design strength of the weld is 220 N/mm^2 (*Table 4.25*).
Weld capacity of 10 mm fillet weld, p_{wc}, is

$$p_{wc} = ap_w = 0.7 \times 10 \times 220 \times 10^{-3} = 1.54 \text{ kN/mm} > 1.50 \text{ kN/mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

where throat thickness of weld, $a = 0.7s = 0.7 \times 10$ mm
Hence proposed welding scheme is just adequate.

4.12 Summary

This chapter has considered the design of a number of structural steelwork and composite elements, including beams, slabs, columns and connections, to BS 5950: *Structural use of steel work in buildings*. The ultimate limit state of strength and the serviceability limit state of deflection principally influence the design of steel elements. Many steel structures are still analaysed by assuming that individual elements are simply supported at their ends. Steel sections are classified as plastic, compact, semi-compact or slender depending on how the sections perform in bending. The design of flexural members generally involves considering the limit states of bending, shear, web bearing/buckling, deflection and if the compression flange is not fully restrained, lateral torsional buckling. Columns subject to axial load and bending are normally checked for cross-section capacity and buckling resistance.

The two principal methods of connecting steel elements of a structure are bolting and welding. It is vitally important that the joints are designed to act in accordance with the assumptions made in the design. Design of bolted connections, using ordinary (or black) bolts, usually involves checking that neither the bolt nor the elements being joined exceed their shear, bearing or tension capacities. Where HSFG bolts are used, the slip resistance must also be determined. Welded connections are most often used to weld end plates or cleats to members, a task which is normally performed in the fabrication yard rather than on site.

Questions

1. A simply-supported beam spanning 8 m has central point dead and imposed loads of 200 kN and 100 kN respectively. Assuming the beam is fully laterally restrained select and check suitable UB sections in (a) S275 and (b) S460 steel.
2. A simply-supported beam spanning 8 m has uniformly distributed dead and imposed loads of 20 kN/m and 10 kN/m respectively. Assuming the beam is fully laterally restrained select and check suitable universal beam sections in (a) grade S275 and (b) grade S460 steel.

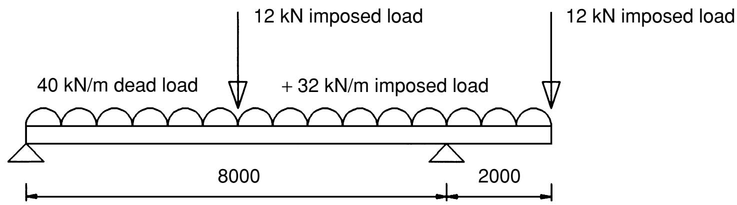


Fig. 4.59

3. For the fully laterally restrained beam shown in *Fig. 4.59* select and check a suitable UB section in grade S275 steel to satisfy shear, bending and deflection criteria.
4. If the above beam is laterally unrestrained, select and check a suitable section in grade S275 steel to additionally satisfy lateral torsional buckling, web bearing and buckling criteria. Assume that each support is 50 mm long and lateral restraint conditions at supports are as follows: –

   Compression flange laterally restrained.
   Beam fully restrained against torsion.
   Both flanges free to rotate on plan.
   Destabilising load conditions.

5. If two discrete lateral restraints, one at mid-span, and one at the cantilever tip, are used to stabilise the above beam, select and check a suitable section in grade S275 steel to satisfy all the criteria in question 4.
6. Carry out designs for the beams shown in *Fig. 4.60*.
7. (a) List and discuss the merits of floor systems used in steel framed structures.
   (b) A floor consists of a series of beams 8.0 m span and 4.0 m apart, supporting a reinforced concrete slab 120 mm thick. The superimposed load is 4 kN/m^2 and the weight of finishes is 1.2 kN/m^2.
      (i) Assuming the slab and support beams are not connected, select and check a suitable UB section in grade S355 steel.
      (ii) Repeat the above design assuming the floor is of composite construction. Comment on your results. Assume the unit weight of reinforced concrete is 24 kN/m^3.
8. (a) List and discuss the factors that influence the load carrying capacity of steel columns.
   (b) A 254 × 254 × 132 universal column in grade S275 steel is required to support an ultimate axial compressive load of 1400 kN and a major axis moment of 160 kN m applied at the top of the element. Assuming the column is 5 m long and effectively pin ended about both axes, check the suitability of the section.
9. A 305 × 305 × 137 UC section extends through a height of 3.5 m.
   (a) Check that the section is suitable for plastic design using grade S275 and grade S355 steel.
   (b) Calculate the squash load for grade S275 steel.
   (c) Calculate the full plastic moment of resistance for grade S275 steel about the major axis.
   (d) Find the reduced plastic moment of resistance about the major axis when F = 800 kN using grade S275 steel.

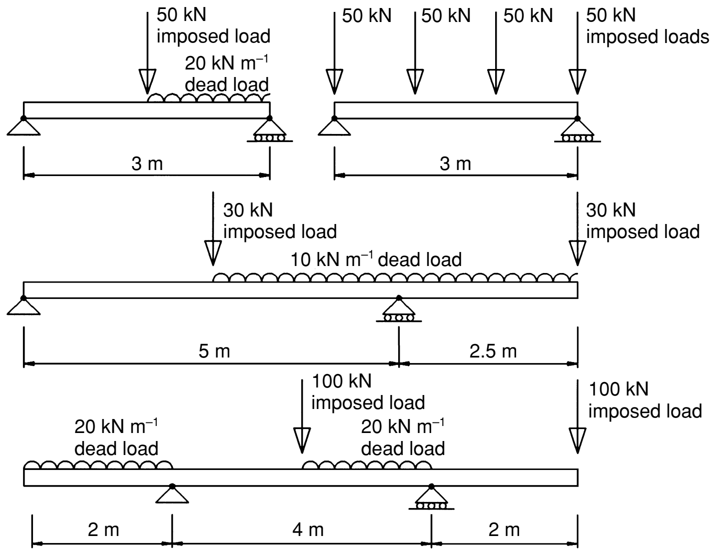
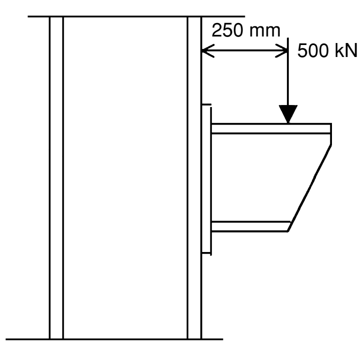


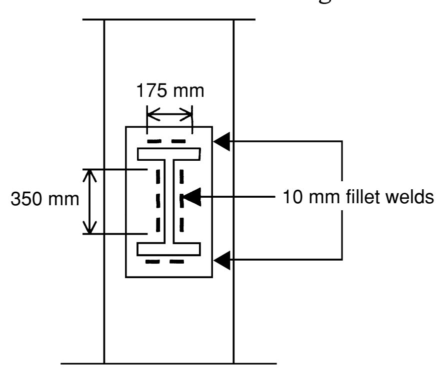
Fig. 4.60

(e) When $M_x = 500$ kN, check the local and overall capacity of the column assuming the base is pinned.

10. Select a suitable short column section in grade S275 steel to support a factored axial concentric load of 1000 kN and factored bending moments of 400 kN m about the major axis, and 100 kN m about the minor axis.
11. Select a suitable column section in grade S275 steel to support a factored axial concentric load of 1000 kN and factored bending moments of 400 kN m about the major axis, and 100 kN m about the minor axis, both applied at each end. The column is 10 m long and is fully fixed against rotation at top and bottom, and the floors it supports are braced against sway.
12. Design a splice connection for a 686 × 254 × 140 UB section in grade S275 steel to cater for half bending strength and half the shear capacity of the section.
13. (a) Explain with the aid of sketches the following terms used in welded connections:
    (i) fillet welds
    (ii) butt welds
    (iii) throat size.

    (b) A bracket made from a 406 × 178 × 60 universal beam is welded to a steel column as shown below. The bracket is designed to support an ultimate load of 500 kN. Show the proposed welding scheme for this connection is adequate. Assume the steel is of grade S275 and the electrode strength is 42.





Chapter 5

Design in unreinforced masonry to BS 5628

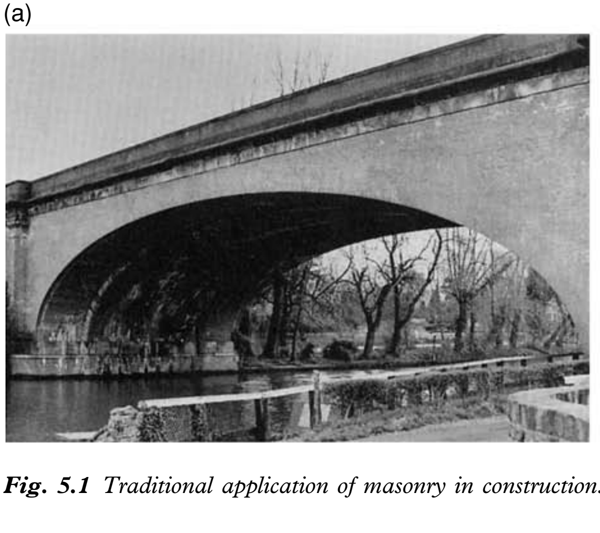
This chapter is concerned with the design of unreinforced masonry walls to BS 5628: Part 1. The chapter describes the composition and properties of the three main materials used in masonry construction: bricks, blocks and mortars. Masonry is primarily used nowadays in the construction of load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls. The primary aim of this chapter is to give guidance on the design of single leaf and cavity walls, with and without stiffening piers, subject to either vertical or lateral loading.

5.1 Introduction

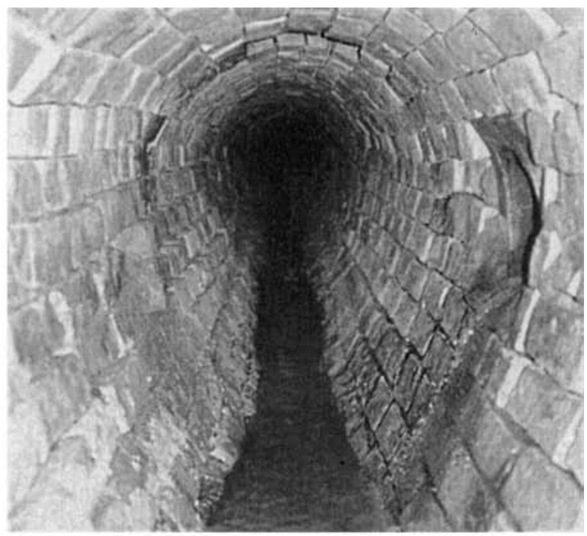
Structural masonry was traditionally very widely used in civil and structural works including tunnels, bridges, retaining walls and sewerage systems (*Fig. 5.1*). However, the introduction of steel and concrete with their superior strength and cost characteristics led to a sharp decline in the use of masonry for these applications.

Over the past two decades or so, masonry has recaptured some of the market lost to steel and concrete due largely to the research and marketing work sponsored in particular by the Brick Development Association. For instance, everybody now knows that 'brick is beautiful'. Less well appreciated,

(a)



(b)



(c)

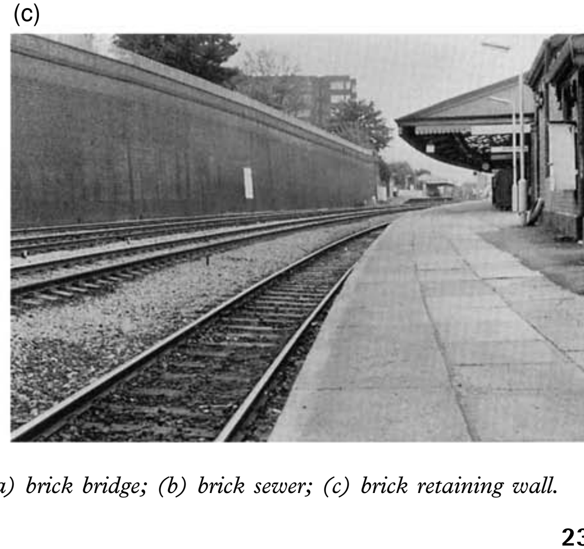


Fig. 5.1 *Traditional application of masonry in construction: (a) brick bridge; (b) brick sewer; (c) brick retaining wall.*

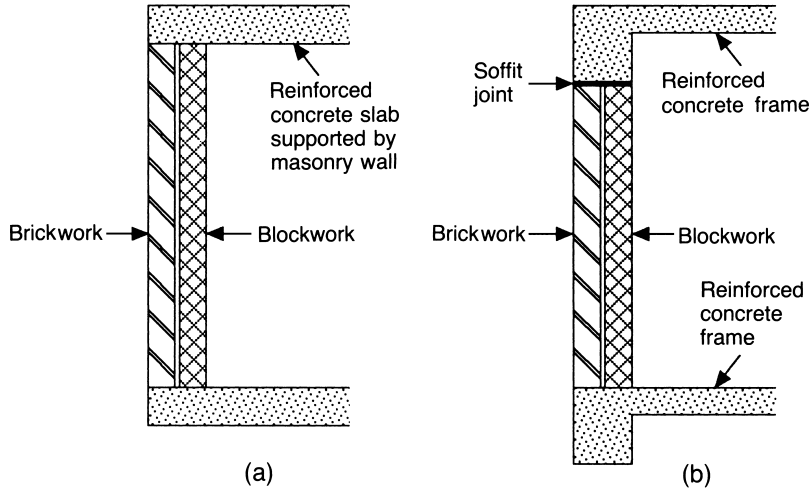


Fig. 5.2 *(a) Load-bearing and (b) non-load-bearing walls.*

perhaps, is the fact that masonry has excellent structural, thermal and acoustic properties. Furthermore, it displays good resistance to fire and the weather. There are undisputed advantages of using brickwork masonry in flood prone areas. On this basis it has been argued that it is faster and cheaper to build certain types of buildings using only masonry rather than using a combination of materials to provide these properties.

Brick manufacturers have also pointed out that, unlike steelwork, masonry does not require regular maintenance nor, indeed, does it suffer from the durability problems which have plagued concrete. The application of reinforcing and prestressing techniques to masonry has considerably improved its structural properties and hence the appeal of this material to designers.

Despite the above, masonry is primarily used nowadays for the construction of load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls (*Fig. 5.2*). These structures are principally designed to resist lateral and vertical loading. The lateral loading arises mainly from the wind pressure acting on the wall. The vertical loading is attributable to dead plus imposed loading from any supported floors, roofs, etc. and/or self-weight of the wall.

Design of masonry structures in the UK is carried out in accordance with the recommendations given in BS 5628: *Code of Practice for Use of Masonry*. This code is divided into three parts:

Part 1: *Structural Use of Unreinforced Masonry*
Part 2: *Structural Use of Reinforced and Prestressed Masonry*
Part 3: *Materials and Components, Design and Workmanship*

Part 1 was originally published in 1978 and Parts 2 and 3 were issued in 1985. This book only deals with the design of unreinforced masonry walls, subject to vertical or lateral loading. It should, therefore, be assumed that all references to BS 5628 refer to Part 1, unless otherwise noted.

Before looking in detail at the design of masonry walls, the composition and properties of the component materials are considered in the following sections.

5.2 Materials

Structural masonry basically consists of bricks or blocks bonded together using mortar or grout. In cavity walls, wall ties complying with BS EN 845-1 are also used to tie together the two skins of masonry. *Fig. 5.3* shows some examples of the wall ties used in masonry construction. In external walls, and indeed some internal walls depending on the type of construction, a damp proof course is also necessary to prevent moisture ingress to the building fabric (*Fig. 5.4*).

The following discussion will concentrate on the composition and properties of the three main components of structural masonry, namely (i) bricks, (ii) blocks and (iii) mortar. The reader is referred to BS 5628: Parts 1 and 3 and BS EN 845-1 for guidance on the design and specification of wall ties and damp-proof systems for normal applications.

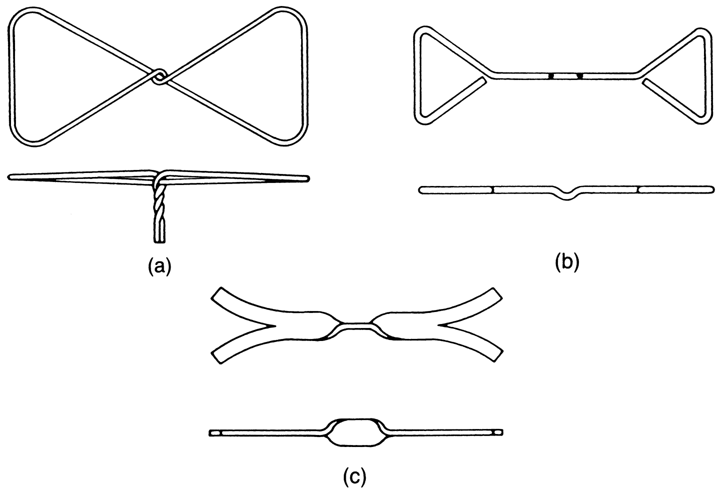


Fig. 5.3 *Wall ties to BS EN 845-1: (a) butterfly tie; (b) double triangle tie; (c) vertical twist tie.*

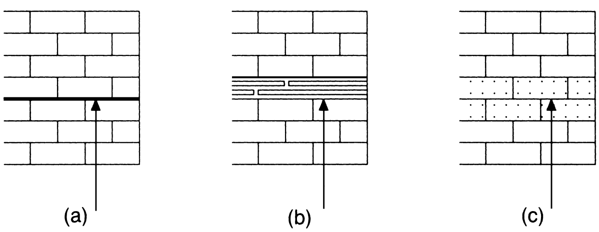


Fig. 5.4 *Damp proof courses: (a) lead, copper, polythene, bitumen polymer, mastic asphalt; (b) two courses of bonded slate; (c) two courses of d.p.c. bricks (based on Table 2, BS 5628: Part 3).*

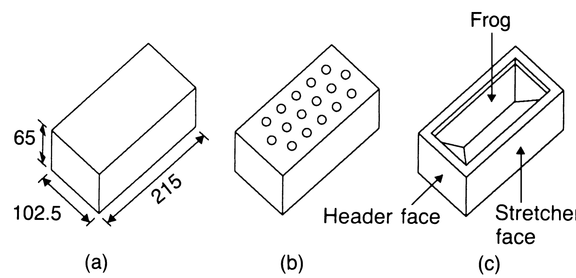


Fig. 5.5 *Types of bricks: (a) solid; (b) perforated; (c) frogged.*

5.2.1 BRICKS

Bricks are manufactured from a variety of materials such as clay, calcium silicate (lime and sand/flint), concrete and natural stone. Of these, clay bricks are by far the most commonly used variety in the UK.

Clay bricks are manufactured by shaping suitable clays to units of standard size, normally taken to be 215 × 102.5 × 65 mm (*Fig. 5.5*). Sand facings and face textures may then be applied to the 'green' clay. Alternatively, the clay units may be perforated or frogged in order to reduce the self-weight of the unit. Thereafter, the clay units are fired in kilns to a temperature in the range 900–1500 °C in order to produce a brick suitable for structural use. The firing process significantly increases both the strength and durability of the units.

In design it is normal to refer to the coordinating size of bricks. This is usually taken to be 225 × 112.5 × 75 mm and is based on the actual or work size of the brick, i.e. 215 × 102.5 × 65 mm, plus an allowance of 10 mm for the mortar joint (*Fig. 5.6*). Clay bricks are also manufactured in metric modular format having a coordinating size of 200 × 100 × 75 mm. Other cuboid and special shapes are also available (BS 4729).

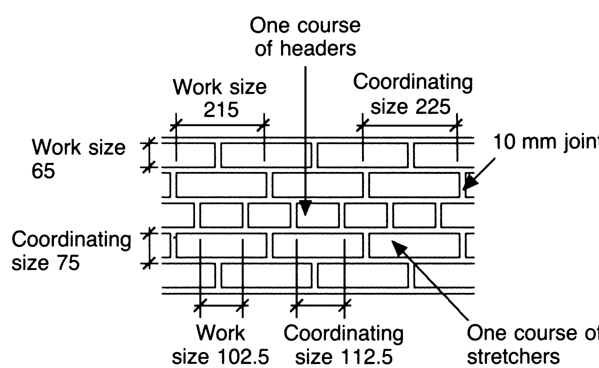


Fig. 5.6 *Coordinating and work size of bricks.*

According to BS EN 771-1, clay bricks can primarily be specified in terms of:

- density
- compressive strength
- durability
- active soluble salt content
- water absorption

Clay bricks with a gross density of less than or equal to 1000 kg/mm^3 are classified as LD (low density) units and those with a gross density exceeding 1000 kg/m^3 as HD (high density) units. Clay bricks available in the UK are generally HD type units.

The compressive strength of bricks is a function of the raw materials and the actual processes used to manufacture the units. Bricks are generally available with compressive strengths ranging from 5 N/mm^2 to more than 150 N/mm^2.

BS EN 771-1 defines three durability categories for clay bricks, namely F0, F1 and F2, which indicate their susceptibility to frost damage in saturated or near saturated conditions (*Table 5.1*). For example, external brickwork near ground level with a high risk of saturation, poorly drained with freezing, would typically be built using category F2 brick. On the other hand, internal walls could be made using category F0 bricks. There are also three categories of soluble salt content defined in the standard (*Table 5.2*). A high soluble salt content increases the risk of sulphate attack of the mortar and, possibly, of the bricks themselves, if there is a considerable amount of water movement through the masonry. A more common problem associated with soluble salts is that of efflorescence staining of brickwork. This is a white deposit caused by the crystallisation of soluble salts in brickwork as a result of wet masonry drying out. Efflorescence is not structurally significant but can mar brickwork's appearance. Magnesium sulphate may cause damage to the units and it is for this reason the magnesium content is specified separately.

Table 5.1 Durability categories for clay bricks

Durability category	*Frost resistance*
F0	Passive exposure
F1	Moderate exposure
F2	Severe exposure

Table 5.2 Soluble salt categories for clay bricks (Table 1, EN 771-1)

Category	*Total % by mass not greater than*	
	$Na^+ + K^+$	Mg^{2+}
S0	No requirements	No requirements
S1	0.17	0.08
S2	0.06	0.03

Brick manufacturers are also required to declare the water absorption category (expressed as a percentage increase in weight) of the unit as this influences flexural strength (see section 5.6). The water absorption categories for which flexural strength data is available in the UK are: less than 7 per cent, 7–12 per cent and > 12 per cent and are determined using the test procedure described in Annex C of BS EN 771-1.

Clay bricks are often referred to as commons, facing, engineering and DPC, which reflects their usage. Common bricks are those suitable for general construction work, with no special claim to give an attractive appearance. Facing bricks on the other hand are specially made or selected to give an attractive appearance on the basis of colour and texture. Engineering bricks tend to be high density and are designated class A and class B on the basis of strength, water absorption, frost resistance and the maximum soluble salt content (*Table 5.3*). Clay damp-proof course bricks (DPC 1 and DPC 2) are classified in terms of their water absorption property only.

Guidance on the selection of clay bricks most appropriate for particular applications can be found in *Table 12* of BS 5628: Part 3 (see below).

5.2.2 BLOCKS

Blocks are walling units but, unlike bricks, are normally made from concrete. They are available in two basic types: autoclaved aerated concrete (now referred to as aircrete) and aggregate concrete. The aircrete blocks are made from a mixture of sand, pulverised fuel ash, cement and aluminium powder. The latter is used to generate hydrogen bubbles in the mix; none of the powder remains after the reaction. The aggregate blocks have a composition similar to that of normal concrete, consisting chiefly of sand, coarse and fine aggregate and cement plus extenders. Aircrete blocks tend to have lower densities (typically 400–900 kg/m^3) than aggregate blocks (typically 1200–2400 kg/m^3) which accounts for the former's superior thermal properties, lower unit weight and lower strengths. Commonly produced compressive strength of

Table 5.3 Classification of clay engineering and DPC bricks (based on Table NA.6, BS EN 771-1)

Type	*Declared average compressive strength not less than (N/mm²)*	*Average absorption (% by weight) not greater than*	*Freeze/thaw resistance*	*Soluble sulphate*
Engineering A	125	4.5	F2	S2
Engineering B	75	7.0	F2	S2
Damp-proof course 1	–	4.5	–	–
Damp-proof course 2	–	7.0	–	–

Table 5.4 Work sizes of concrete blocks (Table NA.1, BS EN 771-3)

Length (mm)	*Height (mm)*	*Width (mm)*								
		75	*90*	*100*	*140*	*150*	*190*	*200*	*215*	*225*
390	190	–	x	x	x	–	x	x	–	–
440	215	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

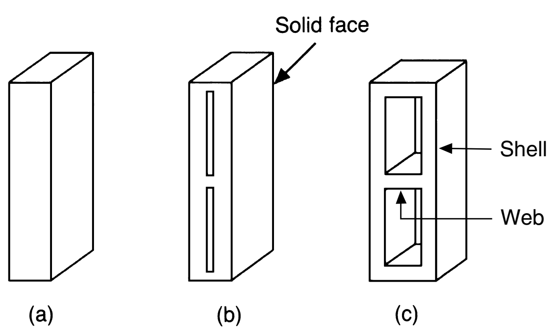


Fig. 5.7 *Concrete blocks: (a) solid; (b) cellular; (c) hollow.*

aircrete blocks are 2.9, 3.6, 4.2, 7.3 and 8.7 N/mm². Generally, aircrete blocks are more expensive than aggregate blocks.

Blocks are manufactured in three basic forms: solid, cellular and hollow (*Fig. 5.7*). Solid blocks have no formed holes or cavities other than those inherent in the material. Cellular blocks have one or more formed voids or cavities which do not pass through the block. Hollow blocks are similar to cellular blocks except that the voids or cavities pass through the block. As discussed in section 5.5.2.1, the percentage of formed voids in blocks (and formed voids or frogs in bricks) influences the characteristic compressive strength of masonry.

For structural design, the two most important properties of blocks are their size and compressive strength. *Tables 5.4* and *5.5* give the most commonly available sizes and compressive strengths of concrete blocks in the UK. The most frequently used block has a work face of 440 × 215 mm, width 100 mm and compressive strength 3.6 N/mm²; 2.9 N/mm² is a popular strength for aircrete blocks, and 7.3 N/mm² for aggregate concrete blocks as it can be used below ground. Guidance on the selection and specification of concrete blocks in masonry construction can be found in BS 5628: Part 3 and BS EN 771-3 respectively.

Table 5.5 Compressive strength of concrete blocks (BS EN 771-3)

Compressive strengths (N/mm²)
2.9
3.6
5.2
7.3
10.4
17.5
22.5
30.0
40.0

Table 5.6 Types of mortars (Table 1, BS 5628)

	Mortar designation	*Compressive strength class*	*Prescribed mortars (proportion of materials by volume)*				*Compressive strength at 28 days (N/mm^2)*
			Cement-lime-sand with or without air entrainment	*Cement-sand with or without air entrainment*	*Masonry cement[1]-sand*	*Masonry cement[2]-sand*	
↓ Increasing ability to accommodate movement, e.g. due to settlement, temperature and moisture changes	(i)	M12	1:0 to 1/4:3	–	–	–	12
	(ii)	M6	1:$^1/_2$:4 to 4$^1/_2$	1:3 to 4	1:2$^1/_2$ to 3$^1/_2$	1:3	6
	(iii)	M4	1:1:5 to 6	1:5 to 6	1:4 to 5	1:3$^1/_2$ to 4	4
	(iv)	M2	1:2:8 to 9	1:7 to 8	1:5$^1/_2$ to 6$^1/_2$	1:4$^1/_2$	2

Notes:
[1]Masonry cement with organic filler other than lime
[2]Masonry cement with lime

Table 5.7 Desirable minimum quality of brick, blocks and mortar for durability (based on Table 12, BS 5628: Part 3)

Location or type of wall	*Clay bricks*	*Concrete blocks*	*Mortar designations*	
			NF[a]	*FH*[a]
Internal non-load-bearing walls	NF[a] (F0)[b] FH[a] (F1)[b]	All types, $t \geq 75$ mm	(iv)	(iii)
Internal load-bearing walls, inner leaf of cavity walls	NF[a] (F0)[b] FH[a] (F1)[b]	All types, $t \geq 90$ mm S[d]	(iv)	(iii)
External walls; outer leaf of cavity walls	AD[c] (F1)[b] BD[c] (F2)[b]	All types, $t \geq 90$ mm S[d]	(iv)[e] (iii)[g]	(iii)[f] (iii)[g]
External freestanding walls (with coping)	F2[b]	S[d]	(iii)	(iii)
Earth retaining wall (back filled with free draining material)	F2[b]	S[d]	(ii)[g,h]	(ii)[g,h]

Notes:
[a]NF, no risk of frost during construction; FH, frost hazard a possibility during construction
[b]F0, passive exposure; F1, moderate exposure; F2, severe exposure
[c]AD, above damp proof course; BD, below damp proof course
[d]Blocks should comply with one of the following: net density ≥ 1500 kgm^{-3} or be made with dense aggregate or have a compressive strength ≥ 7.3 Nmm^{-2}
[e]For clay brickwork, mortar designation not less that (iii)
[f]If brickwork is to be rendered the use of plasticised mortars is desirable
[g]Where sulphates are present in the soil or ground water, use sulphate resisting Portland cement
[h]For clay bricks, mortar designation (i) should be used

5.2.3 MORTARS

The primary function of the mortar is to bind together the individual brick or block units, thereby allowing allow the transfer of compression, shear and tensile stresses between adjacent units, as well as provide an effective seal between masonry units against rain penetration. However, there are several other properties which the mortar must possess for ease of construction and maintenance. For instance, the mortar should be easy to spread and remain plastic for a sufficient length of time in order that the units can be accurately positioned before setting occurs. On the other hand, the setting time should not be too excessive otherwise the mortar may be squeezed out as successive courses of units are laid. The mortar should be able to resist water uptake by the absorbent bricks/blocks, e.g. by incorporating a water-retaining admixture and/or use of a mortar type that includes lime, otherwise hydration and hence full development of the mortar strength may be prevented. The mortar must also be durable. For example, if masonry remains wet for extended periods of time, the mortar may be susceptible to sulphate attack due to the presence of sulphate in clay masonry units, the groundwater or the soil. Masonry mortar is also susceptible to freeze/thaw attack, particularly when newly laid, which can adversely affect bond strength. It should be remembered too that the appearance of mortar is also important and that it should be in harmony with the masonry unit.

In its most basic form, mortar simply consists of a mixture of sand and ordinary Portland cement (OPC). However, such a mix is generally unsuitable for use in masonry (other than perhaps in foundations and below damp-proof courses) since it will tend to be too strong in comparison with the strength of the bricks/blocks. It is generally desirable to provide the lowest grade of mortar possible, taking into account the strength and durability requirements of the finished works. This is to ensure that any cracking which occurs in the masonry due to settlement of the foundations, thermal/moisture movements, etc. will occur in the mortar rather than the masonry units themselves. Cracks in the mortar tend to be smaller because the mortar is more flexible than the masonry units and, hence, are easier to repair.

In order to produce a more practicable mix, it is normal to add lime to cement-sand mortar. This has the effect of reducing the strength of the mix, but at the same time increasing its workability and bonding properties. However, the mortar becomes more susceptible to frost attack in saturated, or near saturated, conditions but this can be offset by adding an air-entraining (plasticising) agent. For most forms of masonry construction a 1:1:6 cement-lime-sand mortar is suitable. A simpler option may be to specify a masonry cement which consists of a mixture of approximately 75 per cent OPC, an integral air entraining agent and fine inorganic fillers, e.g. calcium carbonate, or lime. Such mixes will have similar properties to those displayed by cement-lime-sand plasticised mortars.

By varying the proportions of the constituents referred to above, mortars of differing compressive and bond strength, plasticity and frost resistant properties can be produced. *Table 5.6* shows the composition of recommended types of mortars for masonry construction. *Table 5.7*, which is based on *Table 12* of BS 5628: Part 3, gives guidance on the selection of masonry units and mortars for use in different applications.

5.3 Masonry design

The foregoing has summarised some of the more important properties of the component materials which are used in masonry construction. As noted at the beginning of this chapter, masonry construction is mostly used nowadays in the construction of load-bearing and panel walls. Load-bearing walls primarily resist vertical loading whereas panel walls primarily resist lateral loading. *Figure 5.8* shows some commonly used wall types.

The remainder of this chapter considers the design of (1) load-bearing walls, with and without stiffening piers, resisting vertical compression loading (section 5.5) and (2) panel walls resisting lateral loading (section 5.6).

5.4 Symbols

For the purposes of this chapter, the following symbols have been used. These have largely been taken from BS 5628.

GEOMETRIC PROPERTIES:

t	actual thickness of wall or leaf
h	height of panel between restraints
L	length of wall between restraints
A	cross-sectional area of loaded wall
Z	sectional modulus
t_{ef}	effective thickness of wall
h_{ef}	effective height of wall
K	effective thickness coefficient
e_x	eccentricity of loading at top of wall
SR	slenderness ratio
β	capacity reduction factor

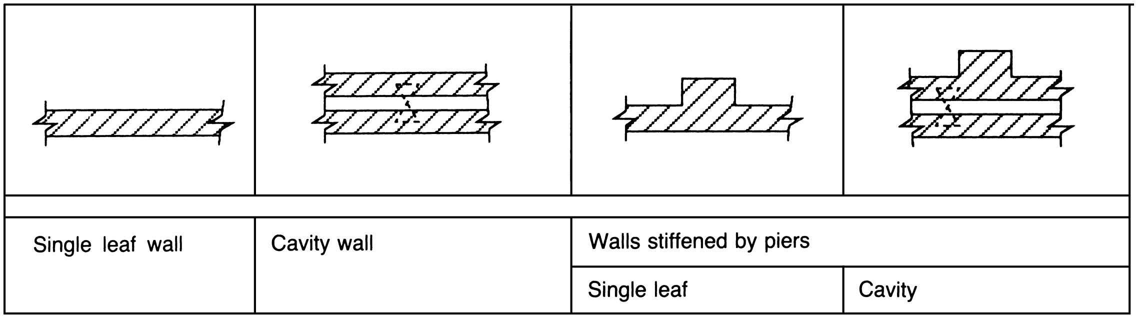


Fig. 5.8 *Masonry walls.*

COMPRESSION:

G_k	characteristic dead load
Q_k	characteristic imposed load
W_k	characteristic wind load
γ_f	partial safety factor for load
γ_m	partial safety factor for materials
f_k	characteristic compressive strength of masonry
N	ultimate design vertical load
N_R	ultimate design vertical load resistance of wall

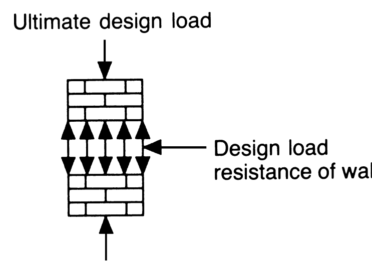
FLEXURE:

$f_{kx\ par}$	characteristic flexural strength of masonry with plane of failure parallel to bed joint
$f_{kx\ perp}$	characteristic flexural strength of masonry with plane of failure perpendicular to bed joint
α	bending moment coefficient
μ	orthogonal ratio
M	ultimate design moment
M_R	design moment of resistance
M_{par}	design moment with plane of failure parallel to bed joint
M_{perp}	design moment with plane of failure perpendicular to bed joint
$M_{k\ par}$	design moment of resistance with plane of failure parallel to bed joint
$M_{k\ perp}$	design moment of resistance with plane of failure perpendicular to bed joint

5.5 Design of vertically loaded masonry walls

In common with most modern codes of practice dealing with structural design, BS 5628: *Code of Practice for Use of Masonry* is based on the limit state philosophy (Chapter 1). This code states that the primary aim of design is to ensure an adequate margin of safety against the ultimate limit state being reached. In the case of vertically loaded walls this is achieved by ensuring that the ultimate design load (N) does not exceed the design load resistance of the wall (N_R):

$$N \le N_R \tag{5.1}$$



The ultimate design load is a function of the actual loads bearing down on the wall. The design load resistance is related to the design strength of the masonry wall. The following sub-sections discuss the procedures for estimating the:

1. ultimate design load,
2. design strength of masonry walls and
3. design load resistance of masonry walls.

5.5.1 ULTIMATE DESIGN LOADS, N

As discussed in section 2.3, the loads acting on a structure can principally be divided into three basic types, namely dead loads, imposed (or live) loads and wind loads. Generally, the ultimate design load is obtained by multiplying the characteristic (dead/imposed/wind) loads (F_k) by the appropriate partial safety factor for loads (γ_f)

$$N = \gamma_f F_k \tag{5.2}$$

Table 5.8 Partial factors of safety on loading, γ_f, for various load combinations

Load combinations	*Ultimate limit state*		
	Dead	*Imposed*	*Wind*
Dead and imposed	$1.4G_k$ or $0.9G_k$	$1.6Q_k$	
Dead and wind	$1.4G_k$ or $0.9G_k$		The larger of $1.4W_k$ or $0.015G_k$
Dead, imposed and wind	$1.2G_k$	$1.2Q_k$	The larger of $1.2W_k$ or $0.015G_k$

5.5.1.1 Characteristic loads (clause 17, BS 5628)

The characteristic values of dead loads (G_k) and imposed loads (Q_k) are obtained from the following: (i) BS 648: *Schedule of Weights for Building Materials*; (ii) BS 6399: *Design Loadings for Buildings*, Part 1: *Code of Practice for Dead and Imposed Loads*, Part 3: *Code of Practice for Imposed Roof Loads*. The characteristic wind load (W_k) is calculated in accordance with BS 6399: Part 2: *Wind loads*.

5.5.1.2 Partial safety factors for loads (γ_f) (clause 18, BS 5628)

As discussed in section 2.3.2, the applied loads may be greater than anticipated for a number of reasons. Therefore, it is normal practice to factor up the characteristic loads. *Table 5.8* shows the partial safety factors on loading for various load combinations. Thus, with structures subject to only dead and imposed loads the partial safety factors for the ultimate limit state are usually taken to be 1.4 and 1.6 respectively. The ultimate design load for this load combination is given by

$$N = 1.4G_k + 1.6Q_k \tag{5.3}$$

In assessing the effect of dead, imposed and wind load for the ultimate limit state, the partial safety factor is generally taken to be 1.2 for all the load types. Hence

$$N = 1.2(G_k + Q_k + W_k) \tag{5.4}$$

5.5.2 DESIGN COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH

The design compressive strength of masonry is given by

$$\text{Design compressive strength} = \frac{\beta f_k}{\gamma_m} \tag{5.5}$$

where
f_k characteristic compressive strength of masonry
γ_m partial safety factor for materials subject to compression
β capacity reduction factor

Each of these factors is discussed in the following sections.

5.5.2.1 Characteristic compressive strengths of masonry, f_k (clause 19, BS 5628)

The basic characteristic compressive strengths of normally bonded masonry constructed under laboratory conditions and tested at an age of 28 days are given in *Table 5.9*. As will be noted from the table, the compressive strength is a function of several factors including the type and size of masonry unit, percentage of formed voids or frogs, compressive strength of the unit and designation/strength class of the mortar used. The following discusses how the characteristic strength of masonry constructed from (a) bricks and (b) concrete blocks is determined using *Table 5.9*.

(a) Brickwork. The basic characteristic strengths of masonry built with standard format bricks and mortar designations (i)–(iv) (*Table 5.6*) are obtained from *Table 5.9(a)*. Standard format bricks are bricks having no more than 25 per cent of formed voids or 20 per cent frogs. The values in the table may be modified where the following conditions, amongst others, apply:

1. If the horizontal cross-sectional area of the loaded wall (A) is less than 0.2 m^2, the basic compressive strength should be multiplied by the factor (0.7 + 1.5A) (clause 19.1.2, BS 5628).
2. When brick walls are constructed so that the thickness of the wall or loaded inner leaf of a cavity wall is equal to the width of a standard format brick, the characteristic compressive strength obtained from *Table 5.9(a)* may be multiplied by 1.15 (clause 19.1.3, BS 5628).

(b) Blockwork. *Table 5.9(c)*, *(d)* and *(f)* are used, singly or in combination, to determine the basic characteristic compressive strength of concrete blockwork masonry. As in the case of brick masonry, the values given in these tables may be

Table 5.9 Characteristic compressive strength of masonry, f_k (based on Table 2, BS 5628)
(a) Constructed with standard format bricks of clay and calcium silicate

Mortar strength class/designation	*Compressive strength of unit (N/mm²)*										
	5	*10*	*15*	*20*	*30*	*40*	*50*	*75*	*100*	*125*	*150*
(i)	2.5	4.0	5.3	6.4	8.3	10.0	11.6	15.2	18.3	21.2	23.9
(ii)	2.5	3.8	4.8	5.6	7.1	8.4	9.5	12.0	14.2	16.1	17.9
(iii)	2.5	3.4	4.3	5.0	6.3	7.4	8.4	10.5	12.3	14.0	15.4
(iv)	2.2	2.8	3.6	4.1	5.1	6.1	7.1	9.0	10.5	11.6	12.7

(c) Constructed with aggregate concrete blocks having a height to least horizontal dimensions of 0.6

Mortar strength class/designation	*Compressive strength of unit (N/mm²)*								
	2.9	*3.6*	*5.2*	*7.3*	*10.4*	*17.5*	*22.5*	*30*	*40 or greater*
(i)	1.4	1.7	2.5	3.4	4.4	6.3	7.5	9.5	11.2
(ii)	1.4	1.7	2.5	3.2	4.2	5.5	6.5	7.9	9.3
(iii)	1.4	1.7	2.5	3.2	4.1	5.1	6.0	7.2	8.2
(iv)	1.4	1.7	2.2	2.8	3.5	4.6	5.3	6.2	7.1

(d) Constructed with aggregate concrete blocks having not more than 25 per cent of formed voids (i.e. solid) and a ratio of height to least horizontal dimensions of between 2 and 4.5

Mortar strength class/designation	*Compressive strength of unit (N/mm²)*								
	2.9	*3.6*	*5.2*	*7.3*	*10.4*	*17.5*	*22.5*	*30*	*40 or greater*
(i)	2.8	3.5	5.0	6.8	8.8	12.5	15.0	18.7	22.1
(ii)	2.8	3.5	5.0	6.4	8.4	11.1	13.0	15.9	18.7
(iii)	2.8	3.5	5.0	6.4	8.2	10.1	12.0	14.5	16.8
(iv)	2.8	3.5	4.4	5.6	7.0	9.1	10.5	12.5	14.5

(f) Constructed with aggregate concrete blocks having more than 25 per cent but less than 60 per cent of formed voids (i.e. hollow blocks) and a ratio of height to least horizontal dimensions of between 2.0 and 4.5

Mortar designation	*Compressive strength of unit (N/mm²)*							
	2.8	*3.5*	*5.0*	*7.0*	*10*	*15*	*20*	*35 or greater*
(i)	2.8	3.5	5.0	5.7	6.1	6.8	7.5	11.4
(ii)	2.8	3.5	5.0	5.5	5.7	6.1	6.5	9.4
(iii)	2.8	3.5	5.0	5.4	5.5	5.7	5.9	8.5
(iv)	2.8	3.5	4.4	4.8	4.9	5.1	5.3	7.3

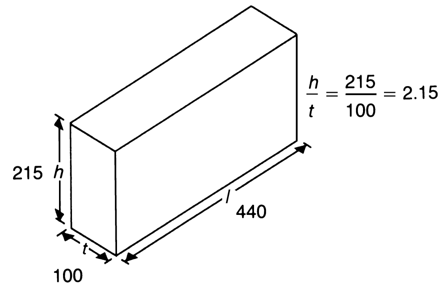


Fig. 5.9 *Principal dimensions of blocks.*

modified where the cross-sectional area of loaded wall is less than 0.2 m^2 (see above).

Table 5.9(c) applies to masonry constructed using any type of aggregate concrete block having a ratio of height to least horizontal dimension of 0.6 (*Fig. 5.9*). *Table 5.9(d)* applies to masonry constructed using solid concrete blocks (i.e. blocks having not more than 25 per cent of formed voids) and a ratio of height to least horizontal dimension of between 2 and 4.5. *Table 5.9(f)* applies to masonry constructed using hollow blocks (i.e. blocks having more than 25 per cent but less than 60 per cent of formed voids) and a ratio of height to least horizontal dimension of between 2 and 4.5.

When walls are constructed using aggregate concrete blocks having less than 25 per cent of formed voids and a ratio of height to least horizontal dimension of between 0.6 and 2.0, the characteristic strengths should be determined by interpolating between the values in *Table 5.9(c)* and *(d)*.

When walls are constructed using aggregate concrete blocks having more than 25 per cent and less than 60 per cent of formed voids and a ratio of height to least horizontal dimension of between 0.6 and 2.0, the characteristic strengths should be determined by interpolating between the values in *Table 5.9(c)* and *5.9(f)*.

5.5.2.2 Partial safety factor for materials (γ_m)

Table 5.10 shows recommended values of the partial safety factor for materials, γ_m, for use in determining the design compressive strength of masonry. The table also gives values of γ_m to be used in assessing the design strength of masonry in flexural. Note that the values of γ_m used for flexure are generally lower than the corresponding values for compression. This is different from the 1978 edition of BS 5628 in which they are identical.

It will be seen from *Table 5.10* that γ_m depends on (i) the quality of the masonry units and (ii) the quality control during construction. Moreover, there are two levels of control in each case. The quality of masonry units may be Category I or Category II, which indicates the consistency of the strength of the units. Category I units are those with a declared compressive strength with a probability of failure to reach that strength not exceeding 5 per cent whereas Category II units are those that do not conform to this condition. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to declare the category of the masonry units supplied. The categories of masonry construction control are 'normal' and 'special'. For design purposes it is usual to assume that the category of construction control is 'normal' unless the provisions outlined in clause 23.2.2.2 (BS 5628) relating to the 'special' category can clearly be met.

5.5.2.3 Capacity reduction factor (β)

Masonry walls which are tall and slender are likely to be less stable under compressive loading than walls which are short and stocky. Similarly, eccentric loading will reduce the compressive load capacity of the wall. In both cases, the reduction in load capacity reflects the increased risk of failure due to instability rather than crushing of the materials. These two effects are taken into account by means of the capacity reduction factor, β (*Table 5.11*). This factor generally reduces the

Table 5.10 Partial safety factors for materials, γ_m (Table 4, BS 5628)

	Category of masonry units	*Category of construction control*	
		Special	*Normal*
Compression, γ_m	Category I	2.5	3.1
	Category II	2.8	3.5
Flexure, γ_m	Category I and II	2.5	3.0

Table 5.11 Capacity reduction factor, β (Table 7, BS 5628)

Slenderness ratio	*Eccentricity at top of wall, e_x, up to*			
h_{ef}/t_{ef}	*0.05t*	*0.1t*	*0.2t*	*0.3t*
0	1.00	0.88	0.66	0.44
6	1.00	0.88	0.66	0.44
8	1.00	0.88	0.66	0.44
10	0.97	0.88	0.66	0.44
12	0.93	0.87	0.66	0.44
14	0.89	0.83	0.66	0.44
16	0.83	0.77	0.64	0.44
18	0.77	0.70	0.57	0.44
20	0.70	0.64	0.51	0.37
22	0.62	0.56	0.43	0.30
24	0.53	0.47	0.34	
26	0.45	0.38		
27	0.40	0.33		

design compressive strength of elements such as walls and columns, in some cases by as much as 70 per cent, and is a function of the following factors which are discussed below: (a) slenderness ratio and (b) eccentricity of loading.

(a) Slenderness ratio (SR). The slenderness ratio indicates the type of failure which may arise when a member is subject to compressive loading. Thus, walls which are short and stocky will have a low slenderness ratio and tend to fail by crushing. Walls which are tall and slender will have higher slenderness ratios and will also fail by crushing. However, in this case, failure will arise as a result of excessive bending of the wall rather than direct crushing of the materials. Similarly, walls which are rigidly fixed at their ends will tend to have lower slenderness ratios and hence higher design strengths than walls which are partially fixed or unrestrained.

As can be appreciated from the above, the slenderness ratio depends upon the height of the member, the cross-sectional area of loaded wall and the restraints at the member ends. BS 5628 defines slenderness ratio, SR, as:

$$\text{SR} = \frac{\text{effective height}}{\text{effective thickness}} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} \qquad (5.6)$$

The following discusses how the (i) effective height and (ii) effective thickness of masonry walls are determined.

(i) Effective height (h_{ef}). The effective height of a load-bearing wall depends on the actual height of the member and the type of restraint at the wall ends. Such restraint that exists is normally provided by any supported floors, roofs, etc. and may be designated 'simple' (i.e. pin-ended) or 'enhanced' (i.e. partially fixed), depending on the actual construction details used. *Figures 5.10* and *5.11* show typical examples of horizontal restraints which provide simple and enhanced resistance respectively.

According to clause 24.3.2.1 of BS 5628 the effective height of a wall may be taken as:

1. 0.75 times the clear distance between lateral supports which provide enhanced resistance to lateral movements; or
2. the clear distance between lateral supports which provide simple resistance to lateral movement.

(ii) Effective thickness (t_{ef}). For single leaf walls the effective thickness is taken as the actual thickness (t) of the wall (*Fig. 5.12(a)*):

$$t_{ef} = t \quad \text{(single leaf wall)}$$

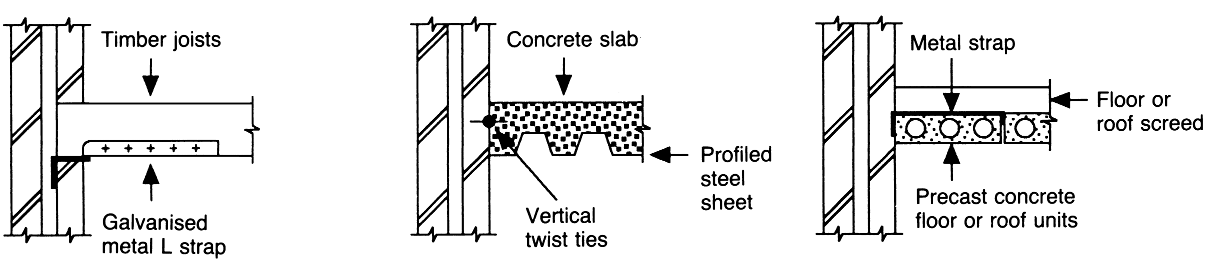


***Fig. 5.10** Details of horizontal supports providing simple resistance.*

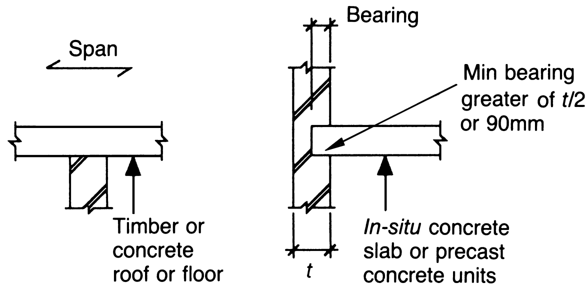


Fig. 5.11 *Details of horizontal supports providing enhanced resistance.*

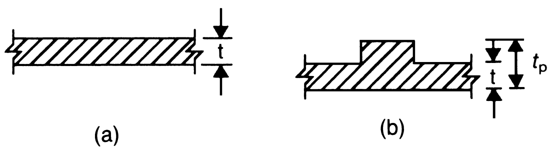


Fig. 5.12 *Effective thickness: (a) single leaf wall; (b) single leaf wall stiffened with piers (based on Fig. 2 of BS 5628).*

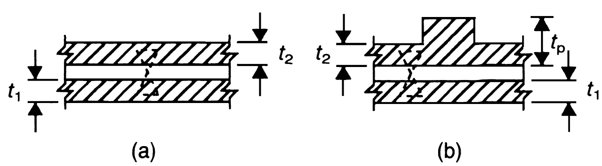


Fig. 5.13 *Effective thickness: (a) cavity wall; (b) cavity wall stiffened with piers (based on Fig. 2 of BS 5268).*

Table 5.12 Stiffness coefficient for walls stiffened by piers (Table 5, BS 5628)

Ratio of pier spacing (centre to centre) to pier width	*Ratio t_p/t of pier thickness to actual thickness of wall to which it is bonded*		
	1	*2*	*3*
6	1.0	1.4	2.0
10	1.0	1.2	1.4
20	1.0	1.0	1.0

Note: Liner interpolation between the values given in the table is permissible, but not extrapolation outside the limits given.

If the wall is stiffened with piers (*Fig. 5.12(b)*) in order to increase its load capacity, the effective thickness is given by

$$t_{ef} = tK \quad \text{(single leaf wall stiffened with pier)}$$

where K is obtained from *Table 5.12*.

For cavity walls the effective thickness should be taken as the greater of (i) two-thirds the sum of the actual thickness of the two leaves, i.e. $2/3(t_1 + t_2)$) or (ii) the actual thickness of the thicker leaf, i.e. t_1 or t_2 (*Fig. 5.13(a)*). Where the cavity wall is stiffened by piers, the effective thickness of the wall is taken as the greatest of (i) $2/3\ (t_1 + Kt_2)$ or (ii) t_1 or (iii) Kt_2 (*Fig. 5.13b*).

(b) Eccentricity of vertical loading. In addition to the slenderness ratio, the capacity reduction factor is also a function of the eccentricity of loading. When considering the design of walls it is not realistic to assume that the loading will be applied truly axially but rather that it will occur at some eccentricity to the centroid of the wall. This eccentricity is normally expressed as a fraction of the wall thickness.

Clause 27 of BS 5628 recommends that the loads transmitted to a wall by a single floor or roof acts at one third of the length of the bearing surface from the loaded edge (*Fig. 5.14*). This is based on the assumption that the stress distribution under the bearing surface is triangular in shape as shown in *Fig. 5.14*.

Where a uniform floor is continuous over a wall, each span of the floor should be taken as being supported individually on half the total bearing area (*Fig. 5.15*).

5.5.3 DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALLS (N_R)

The foregoing has discussed how to evaluate the design compressive strength of a masonry wall being equal to the characteristic strength (f_k) multiplied by the capacity reduction factor (β) and divided by the appropriate factor of safety for materials (γ_m). The characteristic strengths and factors of safety for materials are obtained from *Tables 5.9* and *5.10* respectively. The effective thickness and effective height of the member are used to determine the slenderness ratio and thence, together with the eccentricity of loading, the capacity reduction factor via *Table 5.11*.

The design strength is used to estimate the vertical load resistance of a wall per metre length, N_R, which is given by

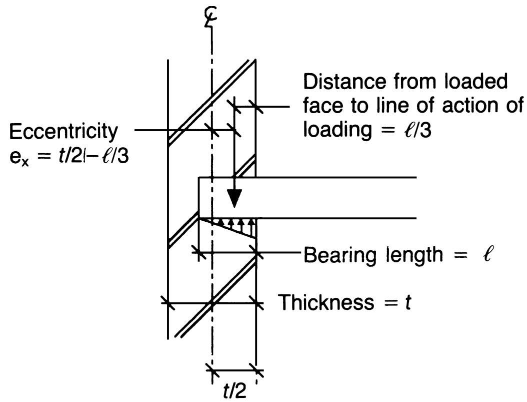


Fig. 5.14 *Eccentricity for wall supporting single floor.*

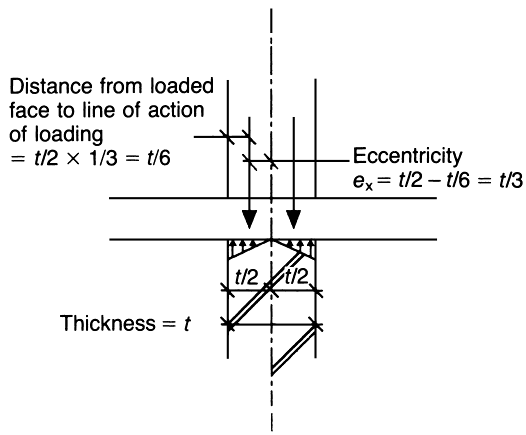


Fig. 5.15 *Eccentricity for wall supporting continuous floor.*

$$N_R = \text{design compression stress} \times \text{area}$$

$$= \frac{\beta f_k}{\gamma_m} \times t \times 1 = \frac{\beta t f_k}{\gamma_m} \tag{5.7}$$

As stated earlier, the primary aim of design is to ensure that the ultimate design load does not exceed the design load resistance of the wall. Thus from equations 5.1, 5.2 and 5.7:

$$N \le N_R$$

$$\gamma_f(G_k \text{ plus } Q_k, \text{ and/or } W_k) \le \frac{\beta t f_k}{\gamma_m} \tag{5.8}$$

Equation 5.8 provides the basis for the design of vertically loaded walls. The full design procedure is summarised in *Fig. 5.16*.

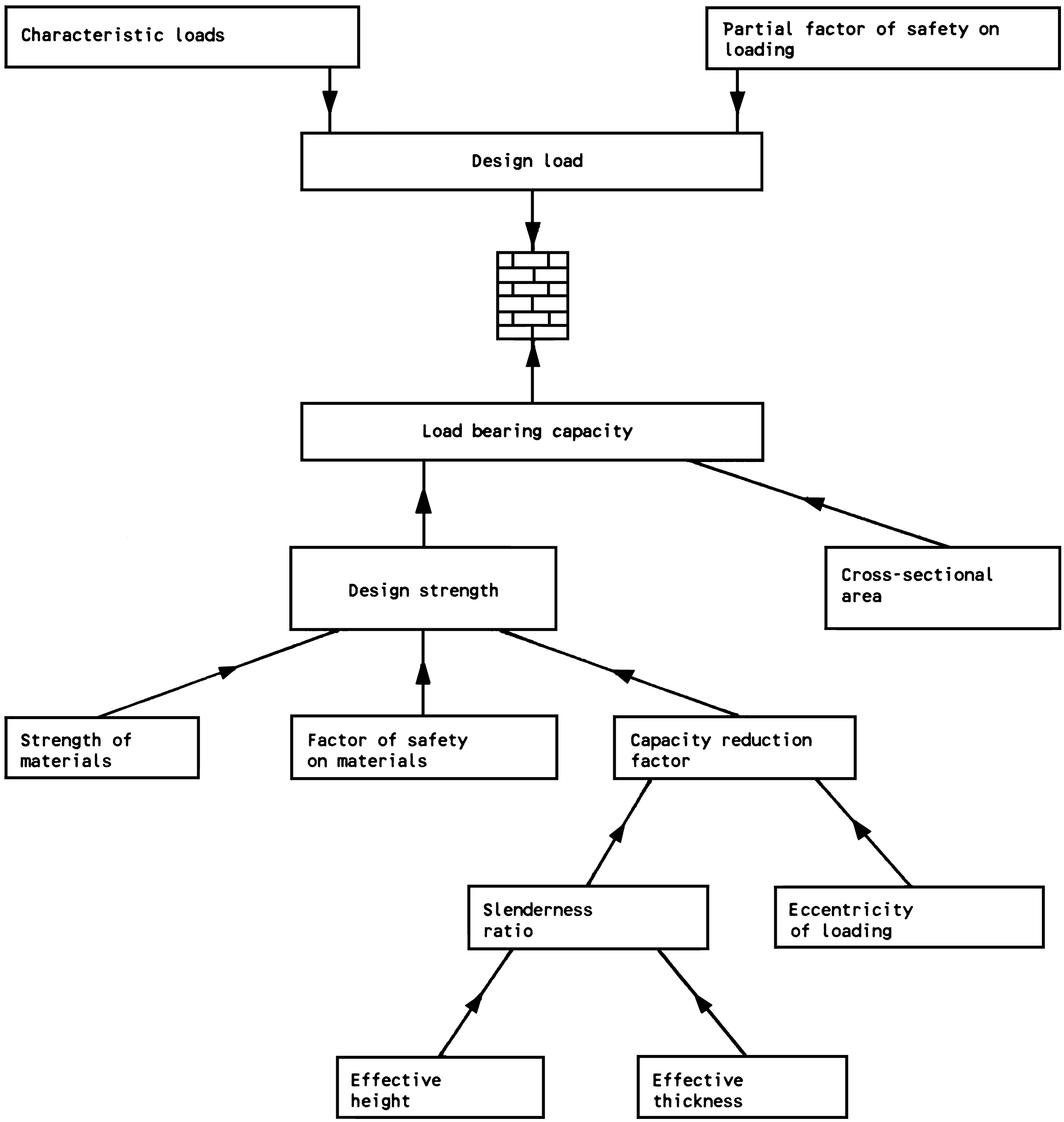


Fig. 5.16 *Design procedure for vertically loaded walls.*

Example 5.1 Design of a load-bearing brick wall (BS 5628)

The internal load-bearing brick wall shown in *Fig. 5.17* supports an ultimate axial load of 140 kN per metre run including self-weight of the wall. The wall is 102.5 mm thick and 4 m long. Assuming the masonry units conform to Category II and the construction control category is 'normal', design the wall.

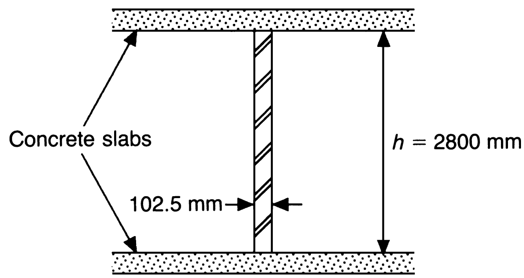


Fig. 5.17

LOADING

Ultimate design load, $N = 140$ kN m^{-1} = 140 N mm^{-1}

DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALL

Characteristic compressive strength

$$\text{Basic value} = f_k$$

Check modification factor

Small plan area – modification factor does not apply since horizontal cross-sectional area of wall, $A = 0.1025 \times 4.0 = 0.41 \text{ m}^2 > 0.2 \text{ m}^2$.

Narrow brick wall – modification factor is 1.15 since wall is one brick thick.

Hence modified characteristic compressive strength is $1.15f_k$

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

Manufacture and construction controls categories are, respectively, 'II' and 'normal'. Hence from *Table 5.10*, γ_m for compression = 3.5

Capacity reduction factor (β)

Eccentricity
Since wall is axially loaded assume eccentricity of loading, $e_x < 0.05t$

Slenderness ratio (SR)
Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall:

$$h_{ef} = 0.75 \times \text{height} = 0.75 \times 2800 = 2100 \text{ mm}$$

$$t_{ef} = \text{actual thickness (single leaf)} = 102.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2100}{102.5} = 10.05 < \text{permissible} = 27$$

Hence, from *Table 5.11*, $\beta = 0.68$.

Example 5.1 *continued*

Design vertical load resistance of wall (N_R)

$$N_R = \frac{\beta \times \text{modified characteristic strength} \times t}{\gamma_m}$$
$$= \frac{0.68 \times (1.15 f_k) \times 102.5}{3.5}$$

DETERMINATION OF f_k
For structural stability

$$N_R \geq N$$
$$\frac{0.68 \times (1.15 f_k) \times 102.5}{3.5} \geq 140$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{140}{22.9} = 6.1\text{N mm}^{-2}$$

SELECTION OF BRICK AND MORTAR TYPE
From *Table 5.9(a)*, any of the following brick/mortar combinations would be appropriate:

Compressive strength of bricks (N mm^{-2})	*Mortar designation*	*f_k (N mm^{-2})*
40	(iv)	6.1
30	(iii)	6.3
20	(i)	6.4

The actual brick type that will be specified on the working drawings will depend not only upon the structural requirements but also durability, acoustics, fire resistance, buildability and cost, amongst others. In this particular case the designer may specify the minimum requirements as HD clay units, compressive strength 30 N mm^{-2}, F0 (i.e. passive environment) and S0 (i.e. no limit on soluble salt content) in mortar designation (iii). Assuming the wall will be plastered on both sides, the appearance of the bricks is not an issue.

Example 5.2 Design of a brick wall with 'small' plan area (BS 5628)

Redesign the wall in Example 5.1 assuming that it is only 1.5 m long.

The calculations for this case are essentially the same as for the 4 m long wall except for the fact the plan area of the wall, A, is now less than 0.2 m^2, being equal to 0.1025 × 1.5 = 0.1538 m^2. Hence, the 'plan area' modification factor is equal to

$$(0.70 + 1.5A) = 0.7 + 1.5 \times 0.1538 = 0.93$$

The 1.15 factor applicable to narrow brick walls is still appropriate, and therefore the modified characteristic compressive strength of masonry is given by

$$0.93 \times 1.15 f_k = 1.07 f_k$$

Example 5.2 *continued*

From the above $\gamma_m = 3.5$ and $\beta = 0.68$. Hence, the required characteristic compressive strength of masonry, f_k, is given by

$$\frac{0.68 \times (1.07 f_k) \times 102.5}{3.5} \geq 140 \text{ kNm}^{-1}$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{140}{21.3} = 6.6 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

From *Table 5.9a*, any of the following brick/mortar combinations would be appropriate:

Compressive strength of bricks (N mm^{-2})	*Mortar designation*	f_k *(N mm^{-2})*
50	(iv)	7.1
40	(iii)	7.4
30	(ii)	7.1

Hence it can be immediately seen that walls having similar construction details but a plan area of < 0.2 m^2 will have a lower load-carrying capacity.

Example 5.3 Analysis of brick walls stiffened with piers (BS 5628)

A 3.5 m high wall shown in cross-section in *Fig. 5.18* is constructed from clay bricks having a compressive strength of 30 N mm^{-2} laid in a 1:1:6 mortar. Calculate the ultimate load-bearing capacity of the wall assuming the partial safety factor for materials is 3.5 and the resistance to lateral loading is (A) 'enhanced' and (B) 'simple'.

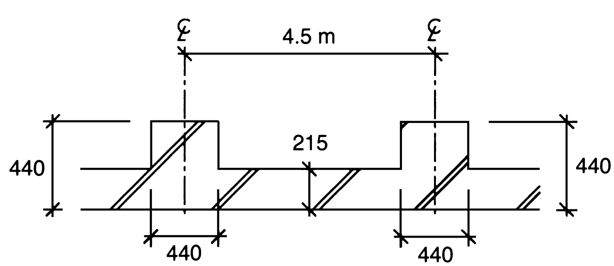


Fig. 5.18

ASSUMING 'ENHANCED' RESISTANCE

Characteristic compressive strength (f_k)

From *Table 5.6*, a 1:1:6 mix corresponds to mortar designation (iii). Since the compressive strength of the bricks is 30 N mm^{-2}, this implies that f_k = 6.3 N mm^{-2} (*Table 5.9a*)

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

$$\gamma_m = 3.5$$

Example 5.3 *continued*

Capacity reduction factor (β)

Eccentricity
Assume wall is axially loaded. Hence $e_x < 0.05t$

Slenderness ratio (SR)
With 'enhanced' resistance

$$h_{ef} = 0.75 \times \text{height} = 0.75 \times 3500 = 2625\text{mm}$$

$$\frac{\text{Pier spacing}}{\text{Pier width}} = \frac{4500}{440} = 10.2$$

$$\frac{\text{Pier thickness}}{\text{Thickness of wall}} = \frac{440}{215} = 2.0$$

Hence from *Table 5.12*, $K = 1.2$. The effective thickness of the wall, t_{ef}, is equal to

$$t_{ef} = tK = 215 \times 1.2 = 258 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2625}{258} = 10.2 < \text{permissible} = 27$$

Hence, from *Table 5.11*, $\beta = 0.96$.

Design vertical load resistance of wall (N_R)

$$N_R = \frac{\beta f_k t}{\gamma_m} = \frac{0.96 \times 6.3 \times 215}{3.5}$$

$$= 371 \text{ N mm}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

$$= 371 \text{ kN m}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

Hence the ultimate load capacity of wall, assuming enhanced resistance, is 371 kN m^{-1} run of wall.

ASSUMING 'SIMPLE' RESISTANCE

The calculation for this case is essentially the same as for 'enhanced' resistance except

$$h_{ef} = \text{actual height} = 3500 \text{ mm}$$

$$t_{ef} = 258 \text{ mm} \quad \text{(as above)}$$

Hence

$$SR = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{3500}{258} = 13.6$$

Assuming $e_x < 0.05t$ (as above), this implies that $\beta = 0.9$ (*Table 5.11*). The design vertical load resistance of the wall, N_R, is given by:

$$N_R = \frac{\beta f_k t}{\gamma_m} = \frac{0.9 \times 6.3 \times 215}{3.5}$$

$$= 348 \text{ N mm}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

$$= 348 \text{ kN m}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

Hence it can be immediately seen that, all other factors being equal, walls having simple resistance have a lower resistance to failure.

Example 5.4 Design of single leaf brick and block walls (BS 5628)

Design the single leaf load-bearing wall shown in *Fig. 5.19* using mortar designation (iii) and either (a) standard format bricks or (b) solid concrete blocks of length 390 mm, height 190 mm and thickness 100 mm. Assume the masonry units conform to Category I and the construction control category is 'normal'.

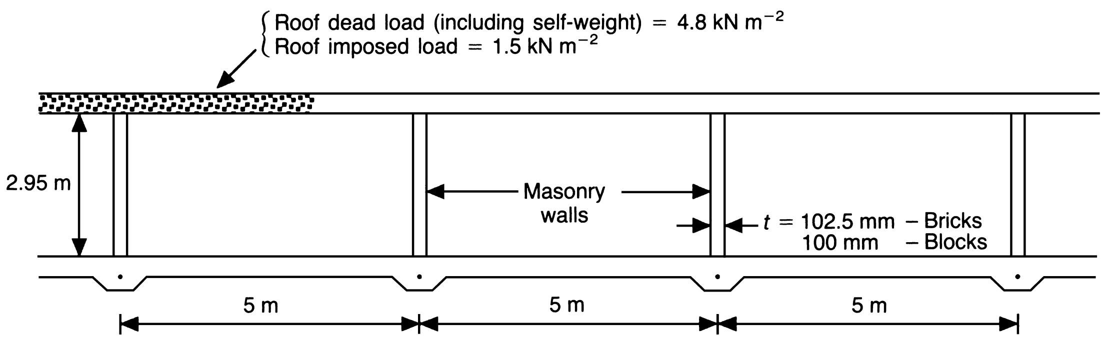


Fig. 5.19

DESIGN FOR STANDARD FORMAT BRICKS

Loading

Characteristic dead load g_k
Assuming that the bricks are made from clay, the density of the brickwork can be assumed to be 55 kg m^{-2} per 25 mm thickness (*Table 2.1*) or (55 × (102.5/25) 9.81 × 10^{-3} =) 2.2 kN m^{-2}. Therefore self-weight of wall is

$$SW = 2.2 \times 2.95 \times 1 = 6.49 \text{ kN/metre run of wall.}$$

$$\text{Dead load due to roof} = \frac{(5+5)\times 4.8}{2} = 24 \text{ kN m}^{-1}\text{ run}$$

$$g_k = SW + \text{roof load}$$
$$= 6.49 + 24 = 30.49 \text{ kN m}^{-1}\text{ run of wall}$$

Characteristic imposed load, q_k

$$q_k = \text{roof load}$$
$$= \frac{(5+5)\times 1.5}{2} = 7.5 \text{ kN m}^{-1}\text{ run of wall}$$

Ultimate design load, N

$$N = 1.4g_k + 1.6q_k$$
$$= 1.4 \times 30.49 + 1.6 \times 7.5 = 54.7 \text{ kN m}^{-1}\text{ run of wall}$$

Design vertical load resistance of wall

Characteristic compressive strength

$$\text{Basic value} = f_k$$

Example 5.4 *continued*

Check modification factor

Small plan area – modification factor will not apply provided loaded plan area $A > 0.2$ m^2, i.e provided that the wall length exceeds 2 m ≈ 0.2 m^2/0.1025 m

Narrow brick wall – since wall is one brick thick, modification factor = 1.15

Hence, modified characteristic compressive strength = $1.15f_k$

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)
Category of masonry unit is 'I' and the category of construction control is 'normal'. Hence from *Table 5.10* $\gamma_m = 3.1$.

Capacity reduction factor (β)

Eccentricity
Assuming the wall is symmetrically loaded, eccentricity of loading, $e_x < 0.05t$

Slenderness ratio (SR)
Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall:

$$h_{ef} = 0.75 \times \text{height} = 0.75 \times 2950 = 2212.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$t_{ef} = \text{actual thickness (single leaf)} = 102.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2212.5}{102.5} = 21.6$$

Hence from *Table 5.11*, $\beta = 0.63$.

Design vertical load resistance of wall (N_R)

$$N_R = \frac{\beta \times \text{modified characteristic strength} \times t}{\gamma_m}$$

$$= \frac{0.63 \times (1.15f_k) \times 102.5}{3.1}$$

Determination of f_k
For structural stability

$$N_R \geq N$$

$$\frac{0.63 \times (1.15f_k) \times 102.5}{3.1} \geq 54.7$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{54.7}{23.95} = 2.3 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Selection of brick and mortar type
From *Table 5.9(a)*, any of the following brick/mortar combinations would be appropriate:

Compressive strength of bricks (N mm^{-2})	*Mortar designation*	*f_k (N mm^{-2})*
10	(iv)	2.8
5	(iii)	2.5

Example 5.4 *continued*

DESIGN FOR SOLID CONCRETE BLOCKS

Loading

Assuming that the density of the blockwork is the same as that for brickwork, i.e. 55 kg m^{-2} per 25 mm thickness (*Table 2.1*), self-weight of wall is 6.49 kN m^{-1} run of wall.

Dead load due to roof = 24 kN m^{-1} run of wall

Imposed load from roof = 7.5 kN m^{-1} run of wall

Ultimate design load, $N = 1.4(6.49 + 24) + 1.6 \times 7.5$

$= 54.7$ kN per m run of wall

Design vertical load resistance of wall

Characteristic compressive strength

Characteristic strength is f_k assuming that plan area of wall is greater than 0.2 m^2. Note that the narrow wall modification factor only applies to brick walls.

Safety factor for materials

$$\gamma_m = 3.1$$

Capacity reduction factor

Eccentricity

$$e_x < 0.05t$$

Slenderness ratio (SR)

Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall

$$h_{ef} = 0.75 \times \text{height} = 0.75 \times 2950 = 2212.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$t_{ef} = \text{actual thickness (single leaf)} = 100 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2212.5}{100} = 22.1$$

Hence from *Table 5.11*, $\beta = 0.61$.

Design vertical load resistance of wall (N_R)

$$N_R = \frac{\beta \times \text{modified characteristic strength} \times t}{\gamma_m}$$

$$= \frac{0.61 \times (f_k) \times 100}{3.1}$$

Determination of f_k

For structural stability

$$N_R \geq N$$

$$\frac{0.61 \times f_k \times 100}{3.1} \geq 54.7$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{54.7}{19.68} = 2.8 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Example 5.4 *continued*

Selection of block and mortar type

$$\frac{\text{height of block}}{\text{least horizontal dimension of block (i.e. thickness)}} = \frac{190}{100} = 1.9$$

Ratio of height to least horizontal dimension	0.6	1.9	2.0
Compressive strength of masonry, f_k (Nmm^{-2})	1.7 (from *Table 5.9c*)	3.3	3.5 (from *Table 5.9d*)

Interpolating between *Tables 5.9(c)* and *(d)* a solid block of compressive strength 3.6 N mm^{-2} used with mortar designation (iv) would produce masonry of approximate compressive strength 3.3 N mm^{-2} which would be appropriate here.

Example 5.5 Design of a cavity wall (BS 5628)

A cavity wall of length 6 m supports the loads shown in *Fig. 5.20*. The inner load-bearing leaf is built using concrete blocks of length 440 mm, height 215 mm, thickness 100 mm and faced with plaster, and the outer leaf from standard format clay bricks. Design the wall assuming the masonry units are category I and the construction control category is normal. The self-weight of the blocks and plaster can be taken to be 2.4 kN m^{-2}.

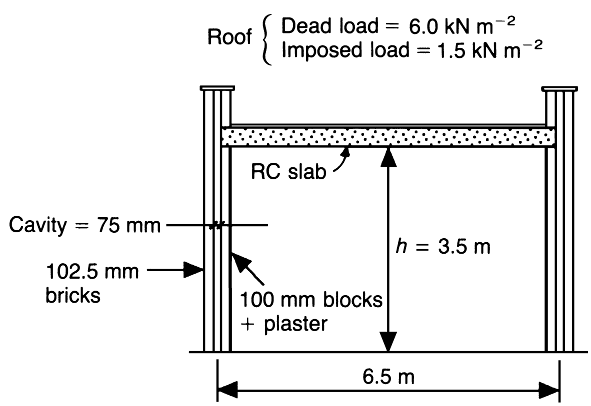


Fig. 5.20

Clause 25.2.1 of BS 5628 on cavity walls states that 'where the load is carried by one leaf only, the load-bearing capacity of the wall should be based on the horizontal cross-sectional area of that leaf alone, although the stiffening effect of the other leaf can be taken into account when calculating the slenderness ratio'. Thus, it should be noted that the following calculations relate to the design of the inner load-bearing leaf.

LOADING

Characteristic dead load g_k

$$g_k = \text{roof load} + \text{self weight of wall}$$

$$= \frac{(6.5 \times 1) \times 6}{2} + (3.5 \times 1) \times 2.4$$

$$= 19.5 + 8.4 = 27.9 \text{ kN per m run of wall}$$

Example 5.5 *continued*

Characteristic imposed load, q_k

$$q_k = \text{roof load}$$
$$= \frac{(6.5 \times 1)1.5}{2} = 4.9 \text{ kN per m run of wall}$$

Ultimate design load, N

$$N = 1.4g_k + 1.6q_k$$
$$= 1.4 \times 27.9 + 1.6 \times 4.9 = 46.9 \text{ kN m}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALL

Characteristic compressive strength

$$\text{Basic value} = f_k$$

Check modification factors

Small plan area – modification factor does not apply since loaded plan area, A > 0.2 m^2 where A = 6 × 0.1 = 0.6 m^2
Narrow brick wall – modification factor does not apply since inner leaf wall is blockwork

Safety factor for materials

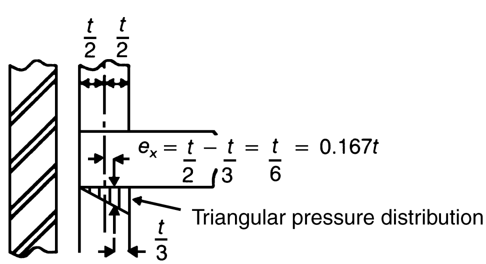
Masonry units are category I and category of masonry construction control is normal. Hence, from *Table 5.10*, $\gamma_m = 3.1$.

Capacity reduction factor

Eccentricity
The load from the concrete roof will be applied eccentrically as shown in the figure. The eccentricity is given by:

$$e_x = \frac{t}{2} - \frac{t}{3} = \frac{t}{6} = 0.167t$$

$$SR = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2625}{135} = 19.4 < \text{permissible} = 27$$



Slenderness ratio (SR)
Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall:

$$h_{ef} = 0.75 \times \text{height} = 0.75 \times 3500 = 2625 \text{ mm}$$
$$t_{ef} = 135 \text{ mm}$$

since t_{ef} is the greater of

$$2/3(t_1 + t_2)[= 2/3(102.5 + 100) = 135 \text{ mm}] \text{ and } t_1 [= 102.5 \text{ mm}] \text{ or } t_2 [= 100 \text{ mm}]$$

Example 5.5 *continued*

$$SR = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2625}{135} = 19.4 < \text{permissible} = 27$$

Slenderness ratio h_{ef}/t_{ef}	*Eccentricity at top of wall,* e_x		
	0.1t	*0.167t*	*0.2t*
18	0.70		0.57
19.4	0.658	0.570	0.528
20	0.64		0.51

Hence by interpolating between the values in *Table 5.11*, $\beta = 0.57$.

Design vertical load resistance of wall (N_R)

$$N_R = \frac{\beta f_k t}{\gamma_m} = \frac{0.57 f_k 100}{3.1}$$

DETERMINATION OF f_k

For structural stability

$$N_R \geq N$$

$$\frac{0.57 f_k 100}{3.1} \geq 46.9$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{46.9}{18.39} = 2.6 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

SELECTION OF BLOCK, BRICK AND MORTAR TYPE

$$\frac{\text{height}}{\text{thickness}} \text{ of block} = \frac{215}{100} = 2.15$$

From *Table 5.9(d)*, a solid concrete block with a compressive strength of 2.9 N mm^{-2} used with mortar type (iv) would be appropriate. The bricks and mortar for the outer leaf would be selected on the basis of appearance and durability (*Table 5.7*).

5.6 Design of laterally loaded wall panels

A non-load-bearing wall which is supported on a number of sides is usually referred to as a panel wall. Panel walls are very common in the UK and are mainly used to clad framed buildings. These walls are primarily designed to resist lateral loading from the wind.

The purpose of this section is to describe the design of laterally loaded panel walls. This requires an understanding of the following factors which are discussed below:

1. characteristic flexural strength
2. orthogonal ratio
3. support conditions
4. limiting dimensions
5. basis of design

5.6.1 CHARACTERISTIC FLEXURAL STRENGTH OF MASONRY (f_{kx})

The majority of panel walls tend to behave as a two-way bending plate when subject to lateral loading (*Fig. 5.21*). However, it is more convenient to understand the behaviour of such walls if the bending processes in the horizontal and vertical directions are studied separately.

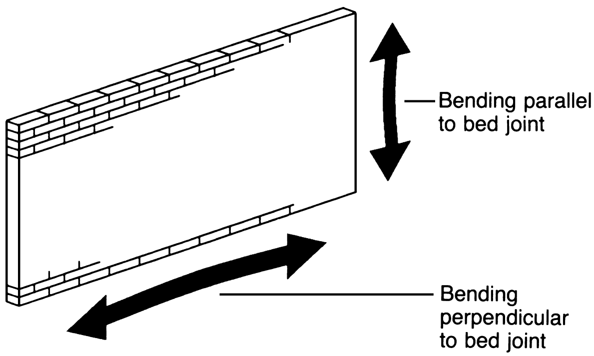


Fig. 5.21 *Panel wall subject to two-way bending.*

Bending tests carried out on panel walls show that the flexural strength of masonry is significantly greater when the plane of failure occurs perpendicular to the bed joint rather than when failure occurs parallel to the bed joint (*Fig. 5.22*). This is because, in the former case, failure is a complex mix of shear, etc. and end bearing, while in the latter case cracks need only form at the mortar/masonry unit interface.

Table 5.13 shows the characteristic flexural strengths of masonry constructed using a range of brick/block types and mortar designations for the two failure modes. Note that for masonry built with clay bricks, the flexural strengths are primarily related to the water-absorption properties of the brick, but for masonry built with concrete blocks the flexural strengths are related to the compressive strengths and thicknesses of the blocks.

5.6.2 ORTHOGONAL RATIO, μ

The orthogonal ratio is the ratio of the characteristic flexural strength of masonry when failure occurs parallel to the bed joints ($f_{kx\ par}$) to that when failure occurs perpendicular to the bed joint ($f_{kx\ perp}$):

$$\mu = \frac{f_{kx\ par}}{f_{kx\ perp}} \tag{5.9}$$

As will be discussed later, the orthogonal ratio is used to calculate the size of the bending moment in panel walls.

For masonry constructed using clay, calcium silicate or concrete bricks a value of 0.3 for μ can normally be assumed in design. No such unique value exists for masonry walls built with concrete blocks and must, therefore, be determined for individual block types.

5.6.3 SUPPORT CONDITIONS

In order to assess the lateral resistance of masonry panels it is necessary to take into account the support conditions at the edges. Three edge conditions are possible:

(a) a free edge
(b) a simply supported edge
(c) a restrained edge.

A free edge is one that is unsupported (*Fig. 5.23*). A restrained edge is one that, when the panel is loaded, will fail in flexure before rotating. All other supported edges are assumed to be simply supported. This is despite the fact that some degree of fixity may actually exist in practice.

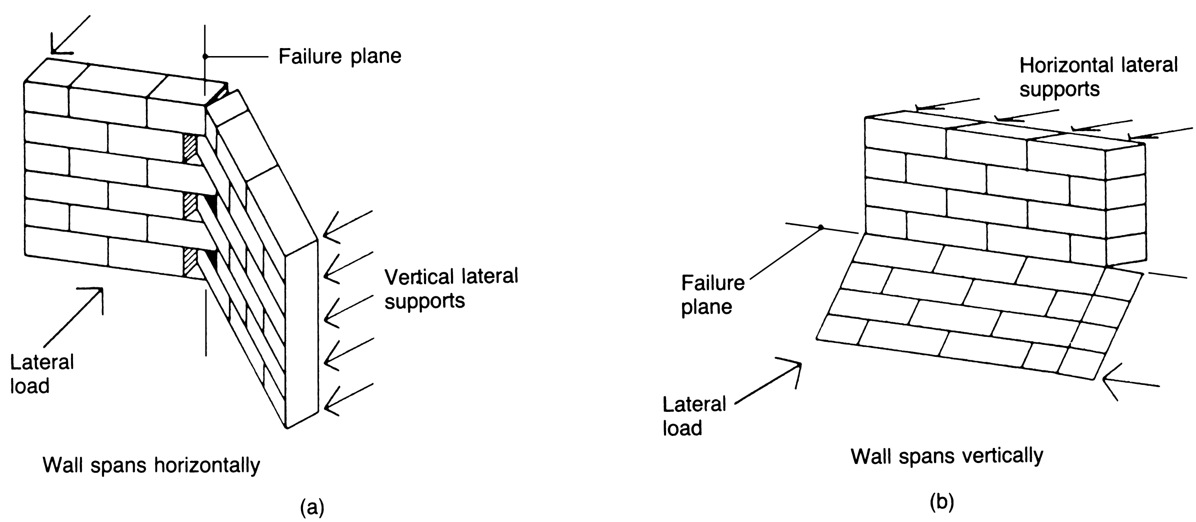
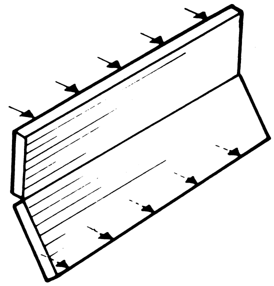
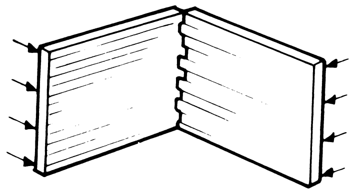


Fig. 5.22 *Failure modes of walls subject to lateral loading: (a) failure perpendicular to bed joint; (b) failure parallel to bed joint.*

Table 5.13 Characteristic flexural strength of masonry, f_{kx} in N mm^{-2} (Table 3, BS 5628)

	Plane of failure parallel to bed joints 			*Plane of failure perpendicular to bed joints* 		
Mortar strength class/designation	*M12 (i)*	*M6 and M4 (ii) and (iii)*	*M2 (iv)*	*M12 (i)*	*M6 and M4 (ii) and (iii)*	*M2 (iv)*
Clay bricks having a water absorption						
less than 7%	0.7	0.5	0.4	2.0	1.5	1.2
between 7% and 12%	0.5	0.4	0.35	1.5	1.1	1.0
over 12%	0.4	0.3	0.25	1.1	0.9	0.8
Calcium silicate bricks	0.3		0.2	0.9		0.6
Concrete bricks	0.3		0.2	0.9		0.6
Concrete blocks (solids or hollow) of compressive strength in Nmm^{-2}:						
2.9 used in walls of				0.40		0.4
3.6 thickness[a]	0.25		0.2	0.45		0.4
7.3 up to 100 mm				0.60		0.5
2.9 used in walls of				0.40		0.2
3.6 thickness[a]	0.15		0.1	0.45		0.2
7.3 250 mm of greater				0.60		0.3
10.4 used in walls of any				0.75		0.6
17.5 thickness[a]	0.25		0.2	0.90[b]		0.7[b]
and over						

[a]The thickness should be taken to be the thickness of the wall, for a single-leaf wall, or the thickness of the leaf, for a cavity wall.
[b]When used with flexural strength in parallel direction, assume the orthogonal ratio μ = 0.3.

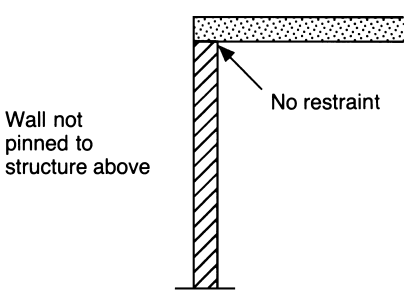


***Fig. 5.23** Detail providing free edge.*

Figures 5.24 and *5.25* show typical details providing simple and restrained support conditions respectively.

5.6.4 LIMITING DIMENSIONS

Clause 32.3 of BS 5628 lays down various limits on the dimensions of laterally loaded panel walls depending upon the support conditions. These are chiefly in respect of (i) the area of the panel and (ii) the height and length of the panel. Specifically, the code mentions the following limits:

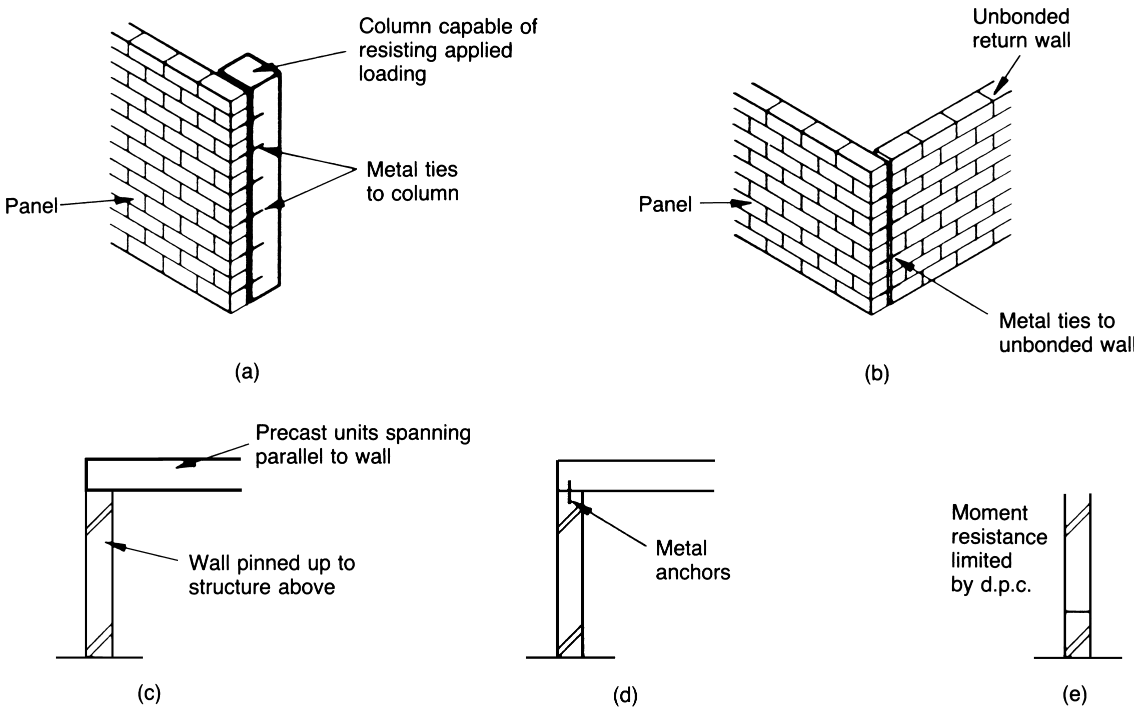


Fig. 5.24 *Details providing simple support conditions: (a) and (b) vertical supports; (c)–(e) horizontal support (based on Figs 6 and 7, BS 5628).*

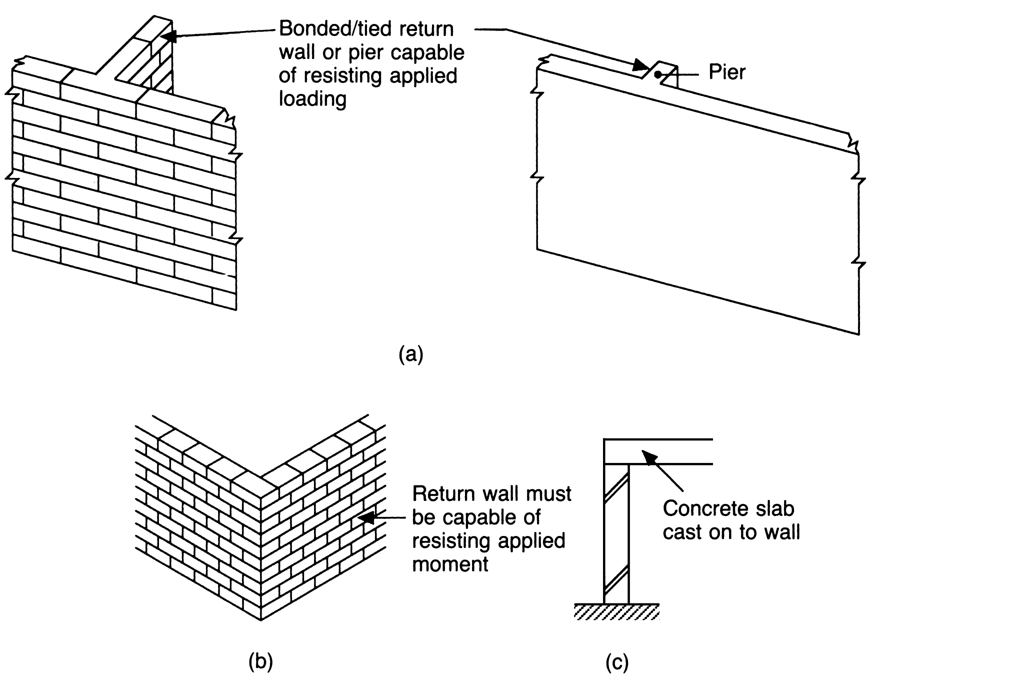


Fig. 5.25 *Details providing restrained support conditions: (a) and (b) vertical support; (c) horizontal support at head of wall (based on Figs 6 and 7, BS 5628).*

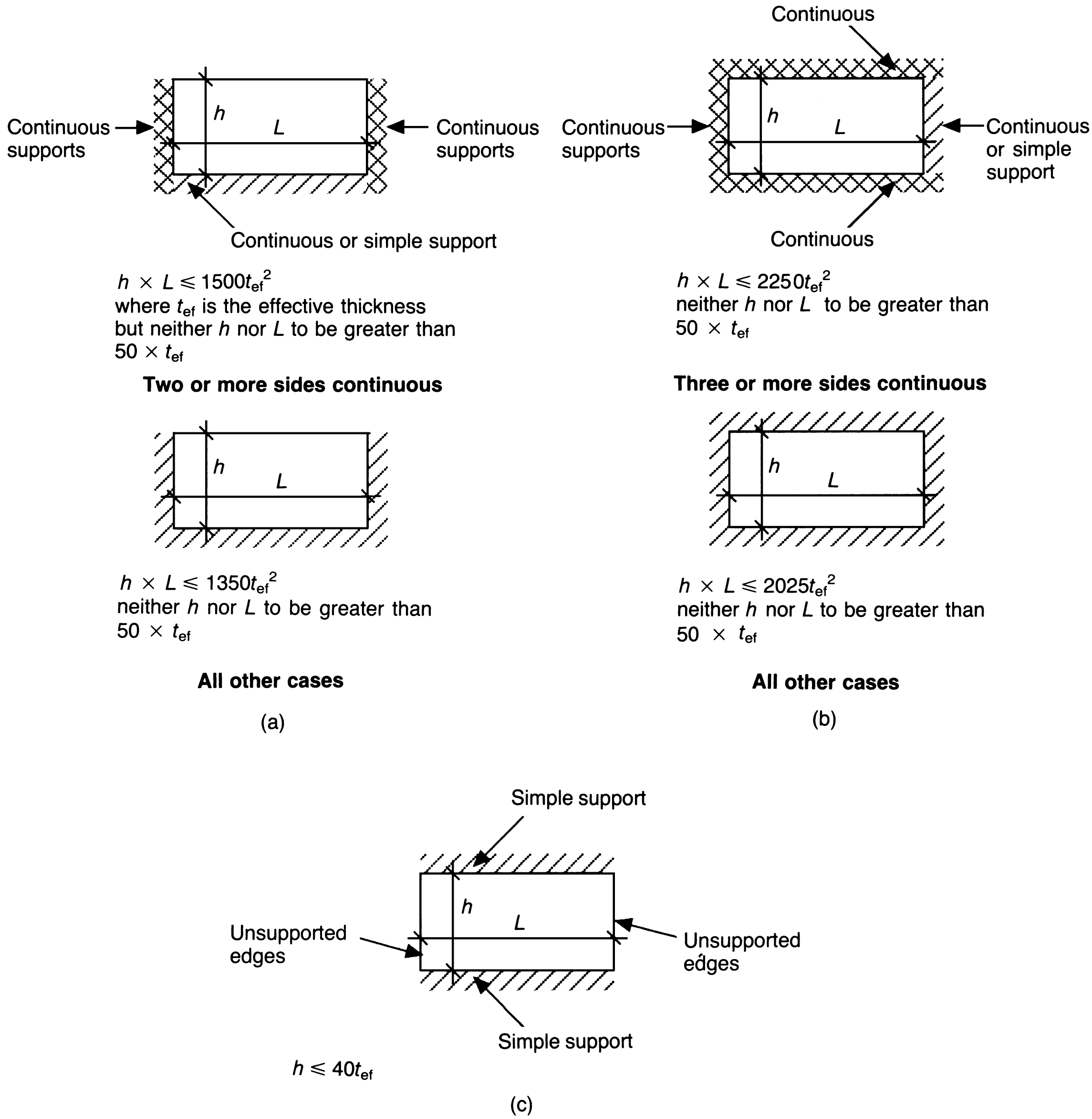


Fig. 5.26 *Panel sizes: (a) panels supported on three sides; (b) panels supported on four edges; (c) panel simply supported top and bottom.*

1. *Panel supported on three edges*
   (a) *two or more sides continuous*:
   height × length equal to $1500t_{\text{ef}}^2$ or less;
   (b) *all other cases*:
   height × length equal to $1350t_{\text{ef}}^2$ or less.
2. *Panel supported on four edges*
   (a) *three or more sides continuous*:
   height × length equal to $2250t_{\text{ef}}^2$ or less;
   (b) *all other cases*:
   height × length equal to $2025t_{\text{ef}}^2$ or less.
3. *Panel simply supported at top and bottom*
   Height equal to $40t_{\text{ef}}$ or less.

Figure 5.26 illustrates the above limits on panel sizes. The height and length restrictions referred to in (ii) above only apply to panels which are supported on three or four edges, i.e. (1) and (2). In such cases the code states that no dimension should exceed 50 times the effective thickness of the wall (t_{ef}).

5.6.5 BASIS OF DESIGN (CLAUSE 32.4, BS 5628)

The preceding sections have summarised much of the background material needed to design laterally loaded panel walls. This section now considers the design procedure in detail.

The principal aim of design is to ensure that the ultimate design moment (M) does not exceed the design moment of resistance of the panel (M_d):

$$M \leq M_d \tag{5.10}$$

Since failure may take place about either axis (*Fig. 5.21*), for a given panel, there will be two design moments and two corresponding moments of resistance. The ultimate design moment per unit height of a panel when the plane of failure is perpendicular to the bed joint, M_{perp} (*Fig. 5.22*), is given by:

$$M_{perp} = \alpha W_k \gamma_f L^2 \tag{5.11}$$

The ultimate design moment per unit height of a panel when the plane of bending is parallel to the bed joint, M_{par}, is given by

$$M_{par} = \mu \alpha W_k \gamma_f L^2 \tag{5.12}$$

where

μ orthogonal ratio
α bending moment coefficient taken from *Table 5.14*
γ_f partial safety factor for loads (*Table 5.8*)
L length of the panel between supports
W_k characteristic wind load per unit area

The corresponding design moments of resistance when the plane of bending is perpendicular, $M_{k\,perp}$, or parallel, $M_{k\,par}$, to the bed joint is given by equations 5.13 and 5.14 respectively:

$$M_{k\,perp} = \frac{f_{kx\,perp} Z}{\gamma_m} \tag{5.13}$$

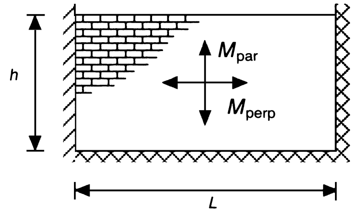
$$M_{k\,par} = \frac{f_{kx\,par} Z}{\gamma_m} \tag{5.14}$$

where

$f_{kx\,perp}$ characteristic flexural strength perpendicular to the plane of bending
$f_{kx\,par}$ characteristic flexural strength parallel to the plane of bending (*Table 5.13*)
Z section modulus
γ_m partial safety factor for materials (*Table 5.10*)

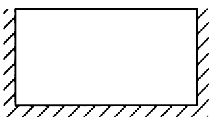
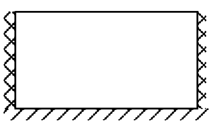
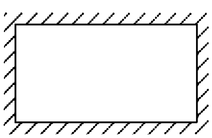
Equations 5.10–5.14 form the basis for the design of laterally loaded panel walls. It should be noted, however, since by definition $\mu = f_{kx\,par}/f_{kx\,perp}$, $M_{k\,par} = \mu M_{k\,perp}$ (by dividing equation 5.14 by equation 5.13) and $M_{par} = \mu M_{perp}$ (by dividing equation 5.11 by equation 5.12) that either equations 5.11 and 5.13 or equations 5.12 and 5.14 can be used in design. These equations ignore the presence of vertical loading acting on panel walls. The vertical loading arises from the self-weight of the wall and dead load from upper levels in multi-storey buildings. The presence of vertical loading will enhance the flexural strength parallel to bed joints as the tendency for flexural tension failure is reduced. The full design procedure is summarised in *Fig. 5.27* and illustrated by means of the following examples.

Table 5.14 Bending moment coefficients in laterally loaded wall panels (based on Table 8, BS 5628)



Key to support conditions

- denotes free edge
- simply supported edge
- an edge over which full continuity exists

Support conditions		μ	*Values of* α, *h/L* = *0.30*	*0.50*	*0.75*	*1.00*	*1.25*	*1.50*	*1.75*
		1.00	0.031	0.045	0.059	0.071	0.079	0.085	0.090
		0.90	0.032	0.047	0.061	0.073	0.081	0.087	0.092
		0.80	0.034	0.049	0.064	0.075	0.083	0.089	0.093
		0.70	0.035	0.051	0.066	0.077	0.085	0.091	0.095
	A	0.60	0.038	0.053	0.069	0.080	0.088	0.093	0.097
		0.50	0.040	0.056	0.073	0.083	0.090	0.095	0.099
		0.40	0.043	0.061	0.077	0.087	0.093	0.098	0.101
		0.35	0.045	0.064	0.080	0.089	0.095	0.100	0.103
		0.30	0.048	0.067	0.082	0.091	0.097	0.101	0.104
		1.00	0.020	0.028	0.037	0.042	0.045	0.048	0.050
		0.90	0.021	0.029	0.038	0.043	0.046	0.048	0.050
		0.80	0.022	0.031	0.039	0.043	0.047	0.049	0.051
		0.70	0.023	0.032	0.040	0.044	0.048	0.050	0.051
		0.60	0.024	0.034	0.041	0.046	0.049	0.051	0.052
	C	0.50	0.025	0.035	0.043	0.047	0.050	0.052	0.053
		0.40	0.027	0.038	0.044	0.048	0.051	0.053	0.054
		0.35	0.029	0.039	0.045	0.049	0.052	0.053	0.054
		0.30	0.030	0.040	0.046	0.050	0.052	0.054	0.054
		1.00	0.008	0.018	0.030	0.042	0.051	0.059	0.066
		0.90	0.009	0.019	0.032	0.044	0.054	0.062	0.068
		0.80	0.010	0.021	0.035	0.046	0.056	0.064	0.071
		0.70	0.011	0.023	0.037	0.049	0.059	0.067	0.073
	E	0.60	0.012	0.025	0.040	0.053	0.062	0.070	0.076
		0.50	0.014	0.028	0.044	0.057	0.066	0.074	0.080
		0.40	0.017	0.032	0.049	0.062	0.071	0.078	0.084
		0.35	0.018	0.035	0.052	0.064	0.074	0.081	0.086
		0.30	0.020	0.038	0.055	0.068	0.077	0.083	0.089

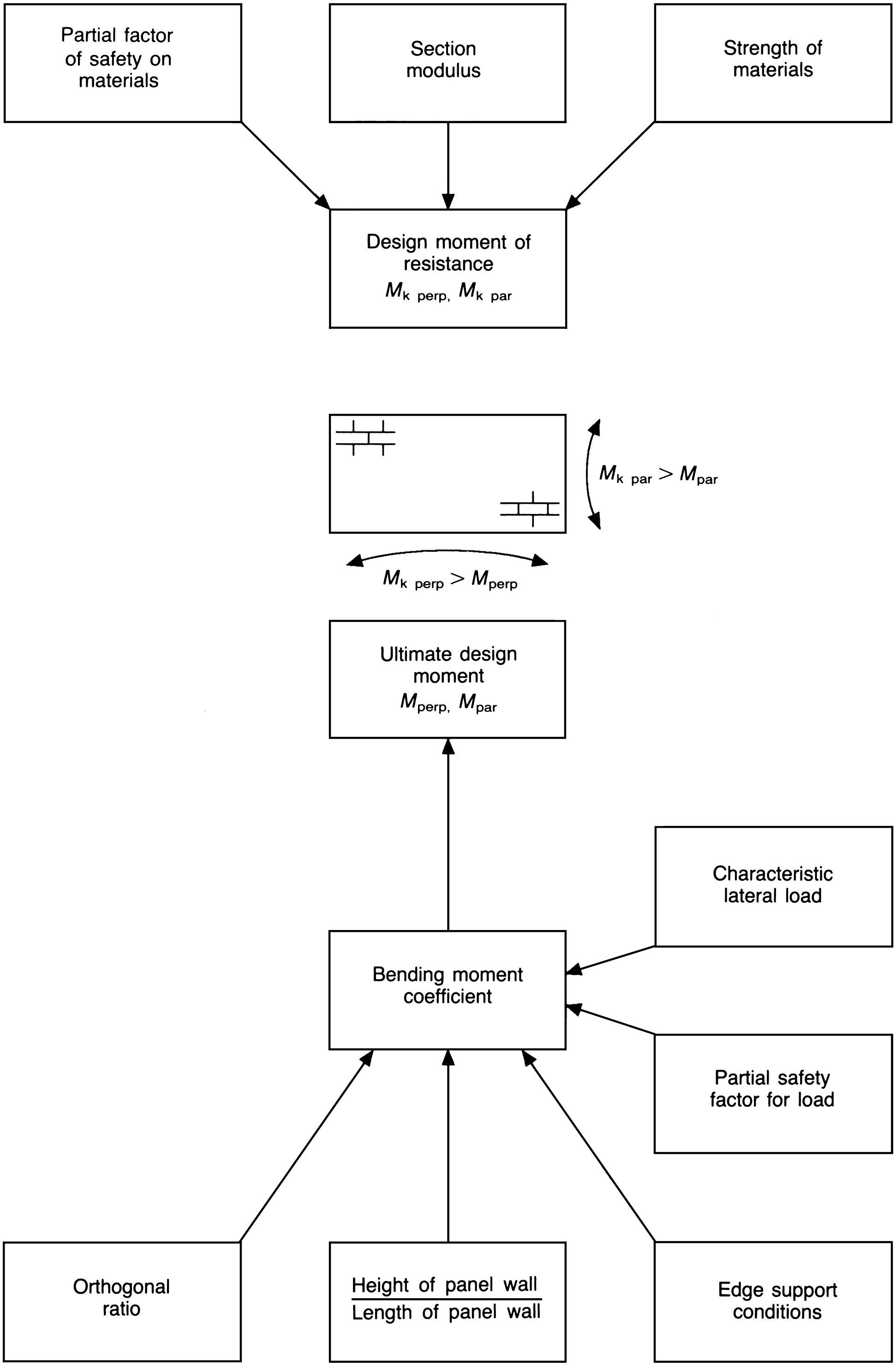
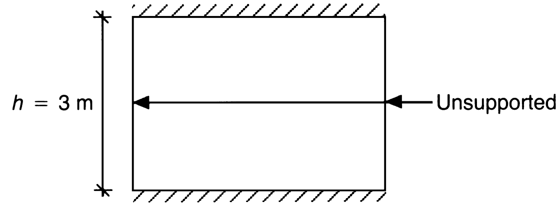


Figure 5.27 *Design procedure for laterally loaded panel walls.*

Example 5.6 Analysis of a one-way spanning wall panel (BS 5628)

Estimate the characteristic wind pressure that the cladding panel shown below can resist assuming that it is constructed using bricks having a water absorption of < 7% and mortar designation (iii). Assume $\gamma_f = 1.2$ and $\gamma_m = 3.0$.



ULTIMATE DESIGN MOMENT (M)

Since the vertical edges are unsupported, the panel must span vertically and, therefore, equations 5.11 and 5.12 cannot be used to determine the design moment here. The critical plane of bending will be parallel to the bed joint and the ultimate design moment at mid-height of the panel, M, is given by (clause 32.4.2 of BS 5628)

$$M = \frac{\text{Ultimate load} \times \text{height}}{8}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Ultimate load on the panel} &= \text{wind pressure} \times \text{area}\\ &= (\gamma_f W_k)(\text{height} \times \text{length of panel})\\ &= 1.2W_k 3000 \times 1000 = 3.6W_k 10^6 \text{ N m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$M = \frac{3.6W_K \times 10^6 \times 3000}{8} = 1.35 \times 10^9\ W_k \text{ N mm m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

MOMENT OF RESISTANCE (M_d)

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 102.5^2}{6} = 1.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3\ \text{m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance

The design moment of resistance, M_d, is equal to the moment of resistance when the plane of bending is parallel to the bed joint, $M_{k\ par}$. Hence

$$M_d = M_{k\ par} = \frac{f_{kx\ par} Z}{\gamma_m} = \frac{0.5 \times 1.75 \times 10^6}{3.0} = 0.292 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm m}^{-1}$$

where $f_{kx\ par} = 0.5$ N mm^{-2} from *Table 5.13*, since water absorption of bricks < 7% and the mortar is designation (iii).

DETERMINATION OF CHARACTERISTIC WIND PRESSURE (W_k)

For structural stability:

$$M \le M_d$$

$$1.35 \times 10^9 W_k \le 0.292 \times 10^6$$

$$W_k \le 0.216 \times 10^{-3} \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Hence the characteristic wind pressure that the panel can resist is 0.216×10^{-3} N mm^{-2} or 0.216 kN m^{-2}.

Example 5.7 Analysis of a two-way spanning panel wall (BS 5628)

The panel wall shown in *Fig. 5.28* is constructed using clay bricks having a water absorption of greater than 12 per cent and mortar designation (ii). If the masonry units are category II and the construction control category is normal, calculate the characteristic wind pressure, W_k, the wall can withstand. Assume that the wall is simply supported on all four edges.

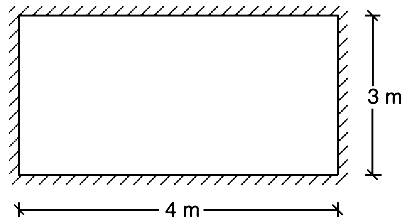


Fig. 5.28

ULTIMATE DESIGN MOMENT (M)

Orthogonal ratio (μ)

$$\mu = \frac{f_{kx\ par}}{f_{kx\ perp}} = \frac{0.3}{0.9} = 0.33 \quad (\textit{Table 5.13})$$

Bending moment coefficient (α)

$$\frac{h}{L} = \frac{3}{4} = 0.75$$

Hence, from *Table 5.14(E)*, $\alpha = 0.053$

Ultimate design moment

$$M = M_{perp} = \alpha\gamma_f W_k L^2 = 0.053 \times 1.2W_k \times 4^2 \text{ kN m m}^{-1} \text{ run} = 1.0176 \times 10^6 W_k \text{ N mm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

MOMENT OF RESISTANCE (M_d)

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

$$\gamma_m = 3.0 \quad (\textit{Table 5.10})$$

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 102.5^2}{6} = 1.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3 \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance (M_d)

$$M_d = M_{k\ perp} = \frac{f_{kx\ perp}Z}{\gamma_m} = \frac{0.9 \times 1.75 \times 10^6}{3.0} = 0.525 \times 10^6 \text{ N mm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

DETERMINATION OF CHARACTERISTIC WIND PRESSURE (W_k)

For structural stability

$$M \le M_d$$

$$1.0176 \times 10^6 W_k \le 0.525 \times 10^6$$

$$\Rightarrow W_k \le 0.516 \text{ kN m}^{-2}$$

Hence the panel is able to resist a characteristic wind pressure of 0.516 kN m^{-2}.

Example 5.8 Design of a two-way spanning single-leaf panel wall (BS 5628)

A 102.5 mm brick wall is to be designed to withstand a characteristic wind pressure, W_k, of 0.65 kN m^{-2}.

Assuming the edge support conditions are as shown in *Fig. 5.29* and the masonry units are category II and the construction control category is 'normal', determine suitable brick/mortar combination(s) for the wall.

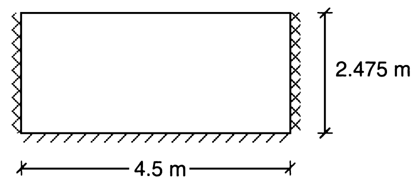


Fig. 5.29

ULTIMATE DESIGN MOMENT (M)

Orthogonal ratio (μ)

$$\text{assume } \mu = 0.35$$

Bending moment coefficient (α)

$$\frac{h}{L} = \frac{2475}{4500} = 0.55$$

Hence, from *Table 5.14(C)*, $\alpha = 0.04$

Ultimate design moment

$$M = M_{perp} = \alpha\gamma_f W_k L^2 = 0.040 \times 1.2 \times 0.65 \times 4.5^2 \text{ kNm m}^{-1}\text{ run}$$
$$= 0.632 \text{ kNm/m run} = 0.632 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm m}^{-1}\text{ run}$$

MOMENT OF RESISTANCE (M_d)

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

$$\gamma_m = 3.0 \quad (\textit{Table 5.10})$$

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 102.5^2}{6} = 1.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3\text{ m}^{-1}\text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance (M_d)

$$M_d = M_{k\,perp} = \frac{f_{kx\,perp} Z}{\gamma_m} = \frac{1.75 \times 10^6}{3.0} f_{kx\,perp}$$
$$= 0.583 \times 10^6 \ f_{kx\,perp} \text{ N mm m}^{-1}\text{ run}$$

DETERMINATION OF $f_{kx\,perp}$

For structural stability:

$$M \le M_d$$
$$0.632 \times 10^6 \le 0.583 \times 10^6 f_{kx\,perp}$$
$$\Rightarrow f_{kx\,perp} \ge 1.08 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Example 5.8 *continued*

SELECTION OF BRICK AND MORTAR TYPE

From *Table 5.13*, any of the following brick/mortar combination would be appropriate:

Clay brick having a water absorption:	*Mortar designation*	$f_{\text{kx perp}}$ *(N mm^{-2})*
< 7%	(iv)	1.2
7%–12%	(iii)	1.1
> 12%	(i)	1.1

Note that the actual value of μ for the above brick/mortar combinations is 0.33 and not 0.35 as assumed. However, this difference is insignificant and will not affect the choice of the brick/mortar combinations shown in the above table.

Example 5.9 Analysis of a two-way spanning cavity panel wall (BS 5628)

Determine the characteristic wind pressure, W_k, which can be resisted by the cavity wall shown in *Fig. 5.30* if the construction details are as follows:

1. *Outer leaf*: clay brick having a water absorption < 7% laid in a 1:1:6 mortar (i.e. designation (iii)).
2. *Inner leaf*: solid concrete blocks of compressive strength 3.5 N/mm^2 and length 390 mm, height 190 mm and thickness 100 mm also laid in a 1:1:6 mortar.

Assume that the top edge of the wall is unsupported but that the base and vertical edges are simply supported. It can also be assumed that the masonry units are category II and the construction control category is 'normal'.

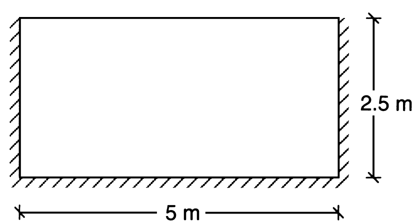


Fig. 5.30

The design wind pressure, W_k, depends upon the available capacities of both leaves of the wall. Therefore, it is normal practice to work out the capacities of the outer and inner leaf separately, and to then sum them in order to determine W_k.

OUTER LEAF

Ultimate design moment (*M*)

Orthogonal ratio (μ)

$$\mu = \frac{f_{\text{kx par}}}{f_{\text{kx perp}}} = \frac{0.5}{1.5} = 0.33 \quad (\textit{Table 5.13})$$

Example 5.9 *continued*

Bending moment coefficient (α)

$$\frac{h}{L} = \frac{2.5}{5.0} = 0.5$$

Hence from *Table 5.14(A)*, $\alpha = 0.064$

Ultimate design moment

$$M = M_{\text{perp}} = \alpha\gamma_f W_k L^2 = 0.064 \times 1.2(W_k)_{\text{outer}} \times 5^2 \text{ kN m m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$
$$= 1.92 \times 10^6 (W_k)_{\text{outer}} \text{ Nmm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

Moment of resistance (M_d)

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

$$\gamma_m = 3.0 \quad (\textit{Table 5.10})$$

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 102.5^2}{6} = 1.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3 \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance (M_d)

$$M_d = M_{\text{k perp}} = \frac{f_{\text{kx perp}} Z}{\gamma_m} = \frac{1.5 \times 1.75 \times 10^6}{3.0} = 0.875 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm m}^{-1}$$

Maximum permissible wind pressure on outer leaf ($(W_k)_{\text{outer}}$)

For structural stability:

$$M \le M_d$$
$$1.92(W_k)_{\text{outer}} \times 10^6 \le 0.875 \times 10^6$$
$$(W_k)_{\text{outer}} \le 0.45 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} = 0.45 \text{ kN m}^{-2}$$

INNER LEAF

Ultimate design moment (M)

Orthogonal ratio (μ)

$$\mu = \frac{f_{\text{kx par}}}{f_{\text{kx perp}}} = \frac{0.25}{0.45} = 0.55 \quad (\textit{Table 5.13})$$

Bending moment coefficient (α)

$$\frac{h}{L} = \frac{2.5}{5.0} = 0.5$$

Hence from *Table 5.14(A)*, $\alpha = 0.055$

Ultimate design moment

$$M = M_{\text{perp}} = \alpha\gamma_f W_k L^2 = 0.055 \times 1.2(W_k)_{\text{inner}} \times 5^2 \text{ kNm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$
$$= 1.65 \times 10^6 (W_k)_{\text{inner}} \text{ Nmm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

Example 5.9 *continued*

Moment of resistance (M_d)

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

$$\gamma_m = 3.0 \quad (\textit{Table 5.10})$$

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 100^2}{6} = 1.67 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3 \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance (M_d)

$$M_d = M_{k\,perp} = \frac{f_{kx\,perp} Z}{\gamma_m} = \frac{0.45 \times 1.67 \times 10^6}{3.0} = 0.25 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm m}^{-1}$$

Maximum permissible wind pressure on inner leaf $(W_k)_{inner}$

For structural stability:

$$M \le M_d$$

$$1.65(W_k)_{inner} \times 10^6 \le 0.25 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

$$(W_k)_{inner} \le 0.15 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} = 0.15 \text{ kN m}^{-2}$$

Hence, characteristic wind pressure that the panel can withstand, W_k, is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} W_k &= (W_k)_{inner} + (W_k)_{outer} \\ &= 0.15 + 0.45 \\ &= 0.6 \text{ kN m}^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

5.7 Summary

This chapter has explained the basic properties of the materials used in unreinforced masonry and the procedures involved in the design of (a) single leaf and cavity walls, with and without stiffening piers, subject to vertical loading and (b) panel walls resisting lateral loading. The design procedures outlined are in accordance with BS 5628: Part 1: *Structural use of Unreinforced Masonry* which is based on limit state philosophy. In the case of vertically loaded walls it was found that the design process simply involves ensuring that the ultimate design load does not exceed the design strength. Panel walls, on the other hand, are normally subject to two-way bending and the plane of failure may occur parallel or perpendicular to bed joints. Therefore, the designer must consider the design moments about both axes and check that they do not exceed the corresponding moment of resistance of the panel.

Questions

1. (a) Discuss why there was a decline and what factors have led to a revival in the use of masonry in construction over recent years.
   (b) The 4.0 m high wall show below is constructed from clay bricks having a compressive strength of 20 Nmm^{-2} laid in a 1:1:6 mortar. Calculate the design load resistance of the wall assuming the partial safety factor for materials is 3.5 and the resistance to lateral loading is simple.

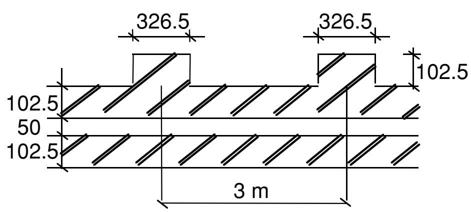


Fig. Q1

2. (a) Discuss the factors to be considered in the selection of brick, block and mortar types for particular applications.
   (b) Design the external cavity wall and internal single leaf load-bearing wall for the single-storey building shown below. Assume that the internal wall is made from solid concrete blocks of length 390 mm, height 190 mm and thickness 100 mm and that the external wall consists of 102.5 mm thick brick outer leaf with 390 × 190 × 100 concrete block. Assume that the manufacturing and construction controls are special and normal respectively and that the self-weight of the brick and blockwork is 2.2 kN m^{-2}.
3. (a) Explain the difference between simple and enhanced resistance and sketch typical construction details showing examples of both types of restraint.
   (b) The brick cavity wall shown below supports an ultimate axial load of 200 kNm^{-1}. Assuming that the load is equally shared by both leaves and the masonry units are category II and the category of construction control is normal, design the wall.

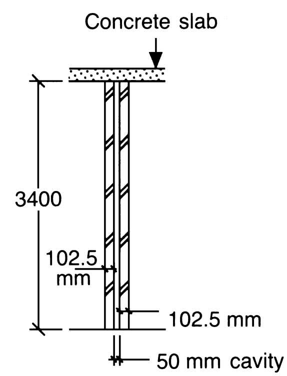


Fig. Q3

4. (a) Explain with the use of sketches the limiting dimensions of laterally loaded panel walls.

Roof dead load (including self weight) = 5.5 kNm^{-2}
Roof imposed load = 1.5 kNm^{-2}

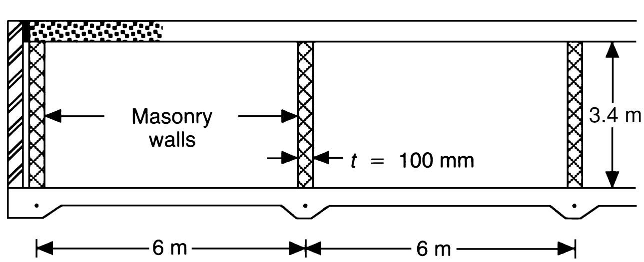


Fig. Q2

(b) A 102.5 mm brick wall is to be designed to withstand a wind pressure of 550 N m^{-2}. For the support conditions shown in (i) and (ii) below, determine suitable brick/mortar combinations for the two cases. Assume the masonry units are category II and the category of construction control is normal.

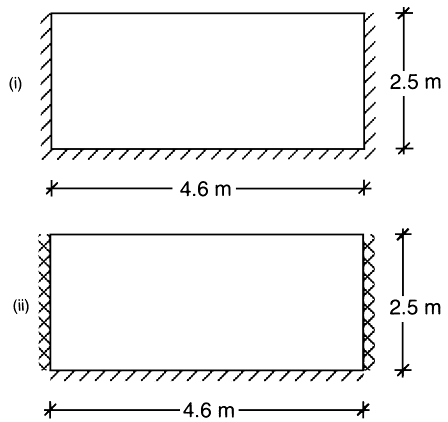


Fig. Q4

5. (a) In all the examples on the design of laterally loaded panel wall discussed in this chapter the self-weight of the wall has been ignored. What effect do you think that including the self-weight would have on the design compressive strength of masonry?

(b) Determine the characteristic wind pressure that can be resisted by the cavity wall shown below if the construction details are as follows:

1. outer leaf: clay bricks having a water absorption 7%–12% laid in mortar designation (ii);
2. inner leaf: solid concrete blocks of compressive strength 3.6 Nmm^{-2} and length 390 mm, height 190 mm and thickness 100 mm also laid in mortar designation (ii).

Assume that the masonry units are category I, the category of construction control is normal and the vertical edges are unsupported.

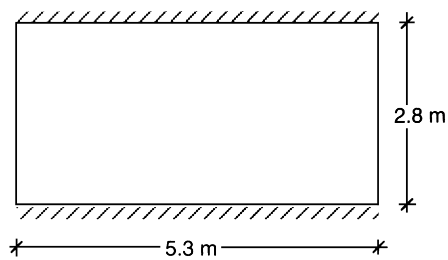


Fig. Q5

Chapter 6

Design in timber to BS 5268

This chapter is concerned with the design of timber elements to British Standard 5268: Part 2, which is based on the permissible stress philosophy. The chapter describes how timber is specified for structural purposes and discusses some of the basic concepts involved such as stress grading, grade stresses and strength classes. The primary aim of this chapter is to give guidance on the design of flexural members, e.g. beams and joists, compression members, e.g. posts and columns and load sharing systems, e.g. stud walling.

6.1 Introduction

Wood is a very versatile raw material and is still widely used in construction, especially in countries such as Canada, Sweden, Finland, Norway and Poland, where there is an abundance of good-quality timber. Timber can be used in a range of structural applications including marine works: construction of wharves, piers, cofferdams; heavy civil works: bridges, piles, shoring, pylons; domestic housing: roofs, floors, partitions; shuttering for precast and *in situ* concrete; falsework for brick or stone construction.

Of all the construction materials which have been discussed in this book, only timber is naturally occurring. This makes it a very difficult material to characterise and partly accounts for the wide variation in the strength of timber, not only between different species but also between timber of the same species and even from the same log. Quite naturally, this led to uneconomical use of timber which was costly for individuals and the nation as a whole. However, this problem has now been largely overcome by specifying stress graded timber (*section 6.2*).

There is an enormous variety of timber species. They are divided into softwoods and hardwoods, a botanical distinction, not on the basis of mechanical strength. Softwoods are derived from trees with needle-shaped leaves and are usually evergreen, e.g. fir, larch, spruce, hemlock, pine. Hardwoods are derived from trees with broad leaves and are usually deciduous, e.g. ash, elm, oak, teak, iroko, ekki, greeheart. Obviously the suitability of a particular timber type for any given purpose will depend upon various factors such as performance, cost, appearance and availability. This makes specification very difficult. The task of the structural engineer has been simplified, however, by grouping timber species into sixteen strength classes for which typical design parameters, e.g. grade stresses and moduli of elasticity, have been produced (*section 6.3*). Most standard design in the UK is with softwoods.

Design of timber elements is normally carried out in accordance with BS 5268: *Structural Use of Timber*. This is divided into the following parts:

Part 2: *Code of Practice for Permissible Stress Design, Materials and Workmanship*.
Part 3: *Code of Practice for Trussed Rafter Roofs*.
Part 4: *Fire Resistance of Timber Structures*.
Part 5: *Code of Practice for the Preservative Treatment of Structural Timber*.
Part 6: *Code of Practice for Timber Frame Walls*.
Part 7: *Recommendations for the Calculation Basis for Span Tables*.

The design principles which will be outlined in this chapter are based on the contents of Part 2 of the code. It should therefore be assumed that all future references to BS 5268 refer exclusively to Part 2. As pointed out in Chapter 1 of this book, BS 5268 is based on permissible stress design rather than limit state design. This means in practice that a partial safety factor is applied only to material properties, i.e. the permissible stresses (*section 6.4*) and not the loading.

Specifically, this chapter gives guidance on the design of timber beams, joists, columns and stud walling. The design of timber formwork is not covered here as it was considered to be rather too specialised a topic and, therefore, inappropriate for a book of this nature. However, before discussing the design process in detail, the following sections will expand on the more general aspects mentioned above, namely:

a) stress grading
b) grade stress and strength class
c) permissible stress.

6.2 Stress grading

The strength of timber is a function of several parameters including the moisture content, density, size of specimen and the presence of various strength-reducing characteristics such as knots, slope of grain, fissures and wane. Prior to the introduction of BS 5268 the strength of timber was determined by carrying out short-term loading tests on small timber specimens free from all defects. The data were used to estimate the minimum strength which was taken as the value below which not more than 1% of the test results fell. These strengths were multiplied by a reduction factor to give basic stresses. The reduction factor made an allowance for the reduction in strength due to duration of loading, size of specimen and other effects normally associated with a safety factor such as accidental overload, simplifying assumptions made during design and design inaccuracies, together with poor workmanship. Basic stress was defined as the stress which could safely be permanently sustained by timber free from any strength-reducing characteristics. Basic stress, however, was not directly applicable to structural size timber since structural size timber invariably contains defects, which further reduces its strength. To take account of this, timber was visually classified into one of four grades, namely 75, 65, 50 and 40, which indicated the percentage free from defects. The grade stress for structural size timber was finally obtained by multiplying the grade designations expressed as a percentage (e.g. 75%, 65% etc.) by the basic stress for the timber.

With the introduction of BS 5268 the concept of basic stress was largely abandoned and a revised procedure for assessing the strength of timber adopted. From then on, the first step involved grading structural size timber. Grading was still carried out visually, although it was now common practice to do this mechanically. The latter approach offered the advantage of greater economy in the use of timber since it took into account the density of timber which significantly influences its strength.

Mechanical stress grading is based on the fact that there is a direct relationship between the modulus of elasticity measured over a relatively short span, i.e. stiffness, and bending strength. The stiffness is assessed non-destructively by feeding individual pieces of timber through a series of rollers on a machine which automatically applies small transverse loads over short successive lengths and measures the deflections. These are compared with permitted deflections appropriate to given stress grades and the machine assesses the grade of the timber over its entire length.

When BS 5268 was published in 1984 the numbered grades (i.e. 75, 65, 50 and 40) were withdrawn and replaced by two visual grades: General Structural (GS) and Special Structural (SS) and four machine grades: MGS, MSS, M75 and M50. The SS grade timber was used as the basis for strength and modulus of elasticity determinations by subjecting a large number of structural sized specimens to short-term load tests. The results were used to obtain the fifth percentile stresses, defined as the value below which not more than 5% of test results fell (*Fig. 6.1*). The fifth percentile values for other grades of the same species were derived using grade relativity factors established from the same series of tests. Finally, the grade stresses were obtained by dividing the fifth percentile stresses by a reduction factor, which included adjustments for a standard depth of specimen of 300 mm, duration of load and a factor of safety. The two visual grades are still referred to in the latest revision of BS 5268 published in 2002. However, machine graded timber is now graded directly to one of sixteen strength classes defined in BS EN 519, principally on the basis of bending stress, mean modulus of elasticity and characteristic density, and marked accordingly.

6.3 Grade stress and strength class

Table 6.1 shows typical timber species/grade combinations and associated grade stresses and moduli of elasticity. This information would enable the designer to determine the size of a timber member given the intensity and distribution of the loads to be carried. However, it would mean that the contractor's choice of material would be limited to one particular species/grade combination, which could be difficult to obtain. It would obviously be better if a range of species/grade combinations could

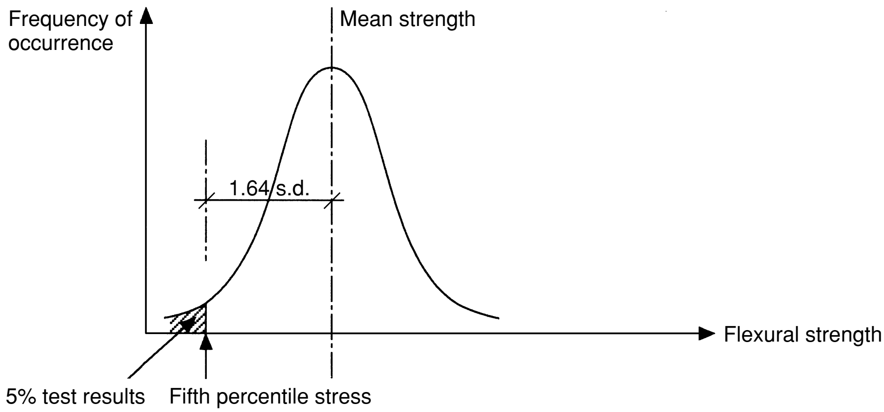


Fig. 6.1 *Frequency distribution curve for flexural strength of timber.*

Table 6.1 Grade stresses for softwoods graded in accordance with BS 4978: for service classes 1 and 2 (Table 10, BS 5268)

Standard name	*Grade*	*Bending parallel to grain*[a]	*Tension parallel to grain*[a]	*Compression*		*Shear parallel to grain*	*Modulus of elasticity*	
				Parallel to grain	*Perpendicular to grain*[b]		*Mean*	*Minimum*
		N/mm²	*N/mm²*	*N/mm²*	*N/mm²*	*N/mm²*	*N/mm²*	*N/mm²*
Redwood/whitewood	SS	7.5	4.5	7.9	2.1	0.82	10 500	7 000
(imported)	GS	5.3	3.2	6.8	1.8	0.82	9 000	6 000
British larch	SS	7.5	4.5	7.9	2.1	0.82	10 500	7 000
	GS	5.3	3.2	6.8	1.8	0.82	9 000	6 000
British pine	SS	6.8	4.1	7.5	2.1	0.82	10 500	7 000
	GS	4.7	2.9	6.1	1.8	0.82	9 000	6 000
British spruce	SS	5.7	3.4	6.1	1.6	0.64	8 000	5 000
	GS	4.1	2.5	5.2	1.4	0.64	6 500	4 500
Douglas fir	SS	6.2	3.7	6.6	2.4	0.88	11 000	7 000
(British grown)	GS	4.4	2.6	5.2	2.1	0.88	9 500	6 000
Parana pine	SS	9.0	5.4	9.5	2.4	1.03	11 000	7 500
(imported)	GS	6.4	3.8	8.1	2.2	1.03	9 500	6 000
Pitch pine	SS	10.5	6.3	11.0	3.2	1.16	13 500	9 000
(Caribbean)	GS	7.4	4.4	9.4	2.8	1.16	11 000	7 500
Western red cedar	SS	5.7	3.4	6.1	1.7	0.63	8 500	5 500
(imported)	GS	4.1	2.5	5.2	1.6	0.63	7 000	4 500
Douglas fir-larch	SS	7.5	4.5	7.9	2.4	0.85	11 000	7 500
(Canada and USA)	GS	5.3	3.2	6.8	2.2	0.85	10 000	6 500
Hem-fir	SS	7.5	4.5	7.9	1.9	0.68	11 000	7 500
(Canada and USA)	GS	5.3	3.2	6.8	1.7	0.68	9 000	6 000
Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7.5	4.5	7.9	1.8	0.68	10 000	6 500
(Canada and USA)	GS	5.3	3.2	6.8	1.6	0.68	8 500	5 500
Sitka spruce	SS	6.6	4.0	7.0	1.7	0.66	10 000	6 500
(Canada)	GS	4.7	2.8	6.0	1.5	0.66	8 000	5 500
Western whitewoods	SS	6.6	4.0	7.0	1.7	0.66	9 000	6 000
(USA)	GS	4.7	2.8	6.0	1.5	0.66	7 500	5 000
Southern pine	SS	9.6	5.8	10.2	2.5	0.98	12 500	8 500
(USA)	GS	6.8	4.1	8.7	2.2	0.98	10 500	7 000

Notes. [a] Stresses applicable to timber 300 mm deep (or wide): for other section sizes see 2.10.6 and 2.12.2 of BS 5268.
[b] When the specifications specifically prohibit wane at bearing areas, the SS grade compression perpendicular to grain stress may be multiplied by 1.33 and used for all grades.

Table 6.2 Softwood combinations of species and visual grades which satisfy the requirements for various strength classes

Standard name	*Strength classes*						
	C14	*C16*	*C18*	*C22*	*C24*	*C27*	*C30*
Imported							
Parana pine		GS			SS		
Caribbean pitch pine			GS			SS	
Redwood		GS			SS		
Whitewood		GS			SS		
Western red cedar	GS		SS				
Douglas fir-larch (Canada and USA)		GS			SS		
Hem-fir (Canada and USA)		GS			SS		
Spruce-pine-fir (Canada and USA)		GS			SS		
Sitka spruce (Canada)	GS		SS				
Western whitewoods (USA)	GS		SS				
Southern pine (USA)			GS		SS		
British grown							
Douglas fir	GS		SS				
Larch		GS			SS		
British pine	GS			SS			
British spruce	GS		SS				

be specified and the contractor could then select the most economical one. Such an approach forms the basis of grouping timber species/grade combinations with similar strength characteristics into strength classes (*Table 6.2*).

In all there are sixteen strength classes, C14, C16, C18, C22, C24, TR26, C27, C30, C35, C40, D30, D35, D40, D50, D60 and D70, with C14 having the lowest strength characteristics. The strength class designations indicate the bending strength of the timber. Strength classes C14 to C40 and TR26 are for softwoods and D30 to D70 are for hardwoods. Strength class TR26 is intended for use in the design of trussed rafters. The grade stresses and moduli of elasticity associated with each strength class are shown in *Table 6.3*. In the UK structural timber design is normally based on strength classes C16 to C27. These classes cover a wide range of softwoods which display good structural properties and are both plentiful and cheap.

6.4 Permissible stresses

The grade stresses given in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* were derived assuming particular conditions of service and loading. In order to take account of the actual conditions that individual members will be subject to during their design life, the grade stresses are multiplied by modification factors known as *K*-factors. The modified stresses are termed permissible stresses.

BS 5268 lists over 80 *K*-factors. However, the following subsections consider only those modification factors relevant to the design of simple flexural and compression members, namely:

K_2: Moisture content factor
K_3: Duration of loading factor
K_5: Notched ends factor
K_7: Depth factor
K_8: Load-sharing systems factor
K_{12}: Compression member stress factor.

6.4.1 MOISTURE CONTENT, K_2

The strength and stiffness of timber decreases with increasing moisture content. This effect is taken into account by assigning timber used for structural work to a service class. BS 5628 recognises three service classes as follows:

Service class 1 is characterised by a moisture content in the material corresponding to a temperature

Table 6.3 Grade stresses and moduli of elasticity for various strength classes: for service classes 1 and 2 (based on Tables 8 and 9, BS 5268)

Strength class	*Bending parallel to grain* ($\sigma_{m,g,\|\|}$) *N/mm²*	*Tension parallel to grain* *N/mm²*	*Compression parallel to grain* ($\sigma_{c,g,\|\|}$) *N/mm²*	*Compression perpendicular to grain*[1] ($\sigma_{c,g,\perp}$) *N/mm²*	*N/mm²*	*Shear parallel to grain* (τ_g) *N/mm²*	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{mean} *N/mm²*	E_{min} *N/mm²*	*Characteristic density*[2] ρ_k *kg/m³*	*Average density*[2] ρ_{mean} *kg/m³*
C14	4.1	2.5	5.2	2.1	1.6	0.60	6 800	4 600	290	350
C16	5.3	3.2	6.8	2.2	1.7	0.67	8 800	5 800	310	370
C18	5.8	3.5	7.1	2.2	1.7	0.67	9 100	6 000	320	380
C22	6.8	4.1	7.5	2.3	1.7	0.71	9 700	6 500	340	410
C24	7.5	4.5	7.9	2.4	1.9	0.71	10 800	7 200	350	420
TR26	10.0	6.0	8.2	2.5	2.0	1.10	11 000	7 400	370	450
C27	10.0	6.0	8.2	2.5	2.0	1.10	12 300	8 200	370	450
C30	11.0	6.6	8.6	2.7	2.2	1.20	12 300	8 200	380	460
C35	12.0	7.2	8.7	2.9	2.4	1.30	13 400	9 000	400	480
C40	13.0	7.8	8.7	3.0	2.6	1.40	14 500	10 000	420	500
D30	9.0	5.4	8.1	2.8	2.2	1.40	9 500	6 000	530	640
D35	11.0	6.6	8.6	3.4	2.6	1.70	10 000	6 500	560	670
D40	12.5	7.5	12.6	3.9	3.0	2.00	10 800	7 500	590	700
D50	16.0	9.6	15.2	4.5	3.5	2.20	15 000	12 600	650	780
D60	18.0	10.8	18.0	5.2	4.0	2.40	18 500	15 600	700	840
D70	23.0	13.8	23.0	6.0	4.6	2.60	21 000	18 000	900	1 080

[1] When the specification specifically prohibits wane at bearing areas, the higher values may be used.
[2] For the calculation of dead load, the average density should be used.

of 20°C and the relative humidity of the surrounding air only exceeding 65% for a few weeks per year. Timbers used internally in a continuously heated building normally experience this environment. In such environments most timbers will attain an average moisture content not exceeding 12%.

Service class 2 is characterised by a moisture content in the material corresponding to a temperature of 20°C and the relative humidity of the surrounding air only exceeding 85% for a few weeks per year. Timbers used in covered buildings will normally experience this environment. In such environments most timbers will attain an average moisture content not exceeding 20%.

Service class 3, due to climatic conditions, is characterised by higher moisture contents than service class 2 and is applicable to timbers used externally and fully exposed.

The grade stresses and moduli of elasticity shown in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* apply to timber exposed to service classes 1 and 2. According to clause 2.6.2 of BS 5268 where service class 3 exists, the values in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* should be multiplied by a modification factor K_2 given in *Table 16* of BS 5268, reproduced here as *Table 6.4*. Clause 2.6.1 also notes that because it is difficult to dry thick timber, service class 3 stresses and moduli should be used for solid timber members more than 100 mm thick, unless they have been specially dried.

Table 6.4 Modification factor K_2 by which stresses and moduli for service classes 1 and 2 should be multiplied to obtain stresses and moduli applicable to service class 3 (Table 16, BS 5268)

Property	K_2
Bending parallel to grain	0.8
Tension parallel to grain	0.8
Compression parallel to grain	0.6
Compression perpendicular to grain	0.6
Shear parallel to grain	0.9
Mean and minimum modulus of elasticity	0.8

6.4.2 DURATION OF LOADING, K_3

The stresses given in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* apply to long-term loading. Where the applied loads will act for shorter durations e.g. snow and wind, the

Table 6.5 Modification factor K_3 for duration of loading (Table 17, BS 5268)

Duration of loading	*Value of* K_3
Long term (e.g. dead + permanent imposed[a])	1.00
Medium term (e.g. dead + snow, dead + temporary imposed)	1.25
Short term (e.g. dead + imposed + wind[b], dead + imposed + snow + wind[b])	1.50
Very short term (e.g. dead + imposed + wind[c])	1.75

Notes. [a] For uniformly distributed imposed floor loads K_3 = 1.00 except for type C3 occupancy (Table 1, BS 6399: Part 1: 1996) where for foot traffic on corridors, hallways, landings and stairways only, K_3 may be assumed to be 1.5.
[b] For wind where the largest diagonal dimension of the loaded area *a*, as defined in BS 6399: Part 2, exceeds 50 m.
[c] For wind, very short-term category applies to classes A and B (3 s or 5 s gust) as defined in CP3 : Chapter V : Part 2 or, where the largest diagonal dimension of the loaded area *a*, as defined in BS 6399: Part 2, does not exceed 50 m.

grade stresses can be increased. Table 17 of BS 5268, reproduced here as *Table 6.5*, gives the modification factor K_3 by which these values should be multiplied for various load combinations.

6.4.3 NOTCHED ENDS, K_5

Notches at the ends of flexural members will result in high shear concentrations which may cause structural failure and must, therefore, be taken into account during design (*Fig. 6.2*).

In notched members the grade shear stresses parallel to the grain (*Tables 6.1* and *6.3*) are multiplied by a modification factor K_5 calculated as follows:

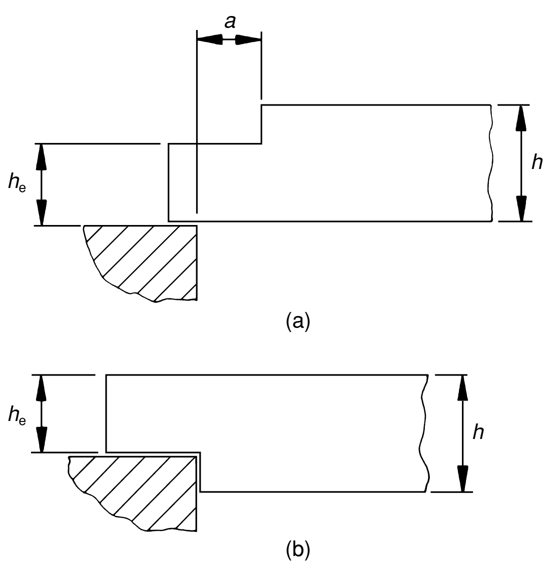


Fig. 6.2 *Notched beams: (a) beam with notch on top edge; (b) beam with notch on underside (Fig. 2, BS 5268).*

1. For a notch on the top edge (*Fig. 6.2(a)*):

$$K_5 = \frac{h(h_e - a) + ah_e}{h_e^2} \quad \text{for } a \le h_e \qquad (6.1)$$

$$K_5 = 1.0 \quad \text{for } a > h_e \qquad (6.2)$$

2. For a notch on the underside (*Fig. 6.2(b)*):

$$K_5 = \frac{h_e}{h} \qquad (6.3)$$

Clause 2.10.4 of BS 5268 also notes that the effective depth, h_e, should not be less than 0.5 h, i.e. $K_5 \ge 0.5$.

6.4.4 DEPTH FACTOR, K_7

The grade bending stresses given in *Table 6.3* only apply to timber sections having a depth *h* of 300 mm. For other depths of beams, the grade bending stresses are multiplied by the depth factor K_7, defined in clause 2.10.6 of BS 5268 as follows:

K_7 = 1.17 for solid beams having a depth $\le$ 72 mm

$$K_7 = \left(\frac{300}{h}\right)^{0.11} \text{ for solid beams with}$$

$$72 \text{ mm} < h < 300 \text{ mm} \qquad (6.4)$$

$$K_7 = \frac{0.81(h^2 + 92\,300)}{(h^2 + 56\,800)} \text{ for solid beams}$$

with $h > 300$ mm

6.4.5 LOAD-SHARING SYSTEMS, K_8

The grade stresses given in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* apply to individual members, e.g. isolated beams and columns, rather than assemblies. When four or more members such as rafters, joists or wall studs, spaced a maximum of 610 mm centre to centre act together to resist a common load, the grade stress should be multiplied by a load-sharing factor K_8 which has a value of 1.1 (clause 2.9, BS 5268).

6.4.6 COMPRESSION MEMBERS, K_{12}

The grade compression stresses parallel to the grain given in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* are used to design struts and columns. These values apply to compression members with slenderness ratios less than 5 which would fail by crushing. Where the slenderness ratio of the member is equal to or greater than 5 the grade stresses should be multiplied by the modification factor K_{12} given in Table 22 of BS 5268, reproduced here as *Table 6.6*. Alternatively Appendix B of BS 5268 gives a formula for K_{12} which could be used. This is based on the Perry-Robertson equation which is also used to model the behaviour of steel compression members (section 4.9). The factor K_{12} takes into account the tendency of the member to fail by buckling and allows for imperfections such as out of straightness and accidental load eccentricities.

The factor K_{12} is based on the minimum modulus of elasticity, E_{min}, irrespective of whether the compression member acts alone or forms part of a load-sharing system and the compression stress, $\sigma_{c,||}$, is given by:

$$\sigma_{c,||} = \sigma_{c,g,||}K_3 \tag{6.5}$$

6.5 Timber design

Having discussed some of the more general aspects, the following sections will consider in detail the design of:

1. flexural members
2. compression members
3. stud walling.

6.6 Symbols

For the purposes of this chapter, the following symbols have been used. These have largely been taken from BS 5268.

GEOMETRICAL PROPERTIES

b	breadth of beam
h	depth of beam
A	total cross-sectional area
i	radius of gyration
I	second moment of area
Z	elastic modulus

BENDING

L	effective span
M	design moment
M_R	moment of resistance
$\sigma_{m,a,\vert\vert}$	applied bending stress parallel to grain
$\sigma_{m,g,\vert\vert}$	grade bending stress parallel to grain
$\sigma_{m,adm,\vert\vert}$	permissible bending stress parallel to grain

DEFLECTION

δ_t	total deflection
δ_m	bending deflection
δ_v	shear deflection
δ_p	permissible deflection
E	modulus of elasticity
E_{mean}	mean modulus of elasticity
E_{min}	minimum modulus of elasticity
G	shear modulus

SHEAR

F_v	design shear force
τ_a	applied shear stress parallel to grain
τ_g	grade shear stress parallel to grain
τ_{adm}	permissible shear stress parallel to grain

BEARING

F	bearing force
l_b	length of bearing
$\sigma_{c,a,\perp}$	applied compression stress perpendicular to grain
$\sigma_{c,g,\perp}$	grade compression stress perpendicular to grain
$\sigma_{c,adm,\perp}$	permissible bending stress perpendicular to grain

COMPRESSION

L_e	effective length of a column
λ	slenderness ratio
N	axial load
$\sigma_{c,a,\vert\vert}$	applied compression stress parallel to grain
$\sigma_{c,g,\vert\vert}$	grade compression stress parallel to grain
$\sigma_{c,adm,\vert\vert}$	permissible compression stress parallel to grain
$\sigma_{c,\vert\vert}$	compression stress = $\sigma_{c,g,\vert\vert}K_3$
σ_e	Euler critical stress

Table 6.6 Modification factor K_{12} for compression members (Table 22, BS 5268)

$E/\sigma_{c,\|\|}$	*Value of K_{12}*																		
	Values of slenderness ratio λ (= L_e/i)																		
	< 5	*5*	*10*	*20*	*30*	*40*	*50*	*60*	*70*	*80*	*90*	*100*	*120*	*140*	*160*	*180*	*200*	*220*	*240*	*250*
	Equivalent L_e/b (for rectangular sections)																		
	< 1.4	*1.4*	*2.9*	*5.8*	*8.7*	*11.6*	*14.5*	*17.3*	*20.2*	*23.1*	*26.0*	*28.9*	*34.7*	*40.5*	*46.2*	*52.0*	*57.8*	*63.6*	*69.4*	*72.3*
400	1.000	0.975	0.951	0.896	0.827	0.735	0.621	0.506	0.408	0.330	0.271	0.225	0.162	0.121	0.094	0.075	0.061	0.051	0.043	0.040
500	1.000	0.975	0.951	0.899	0.837	0.759	0.664	0.562	0.466	0.385	0.320	0.269	0.195	0.148	0.115	0.092	0.076	0.063	0.053	0.049
600	1.000	0.975	0.951	0.901	0.843	0.774	0.692	0.601	0.511	0.430	0.363	0.307	0.226	0.172	0.135	0.109	0.089	0.074	0.063	0.058
700	1.000	0.975	0.951	0.902	0.848	0.784	0.711	0.629	0.545	0.467	0.399	0.341	0.254	0.195	0.154	0.124	0.102	0.085	0.072	0.067
800	1.000	0.975	0.952	0.903	0.851	0.792	0.724	0.649	0.572	0.497	0.430	0.371	0.280	0.217	0.172	0.139	0.115	0.096	0.082	0.076
900	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.904	0.853	0.797	0.734	0.665	0.593	0.522	0.456	0.397	0.304	0.237	0.188	0.153	0.127	0.106	0.091	0.084
1000	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.904	0.855	0.801	0.742	0.677	0.609	0.542	0.478	0.420	0.325	0.255	0.204	0.167	0.138	0.116	0.099	0.092
1100	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.905	0.856	0.804	0.748	0.687	0.623	0.559	0.497	0.440	0.344	0.272	0.219	0.179	0.149	0.126	0.107	0.100
1200	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.905	0.857	0.807	0.753	0.695	0.634	0.573	0.513	0.457	0.362	0.288	0.233	0.192	0.160	0.135	0.116	0.107
1300	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.905	0.858	0.809	0.757	0.701	0.643	0.584	0.527	0.472	0.378	0.303	0.247	0.203	0.170	0.144	0.123	0.115
1400	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.906	0.859	0.811	0.760	0.707	0.651	0.595	0.539	0.486	0.392	0.317	0.259	0.214	0.180	0.153	0.131	0.122
1500	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.906	0.860	0.813	0.763	0.712	0.658	0.603	0.550	0.498	0.405	0.330	0.271	0.225	0.189	0.161	0.138	0.129
1600	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.906	0.861	0.814	0.766	0.716	0.664	0.611	0.559	0.508	0.417	0.342	0.282	0.235	0.198	0.169	0.145	0.135
1700	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.906	0.861	0.815	0.768	0.719	0.669	0.618	0.567	0.518	0.428	0.353	0.292	0.245	0.207	0.177	0.152	0.142
1800	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.906	0.862	0.816	0.770	0.722	0.673	0.624	0.574	0.526	0.438	0.363	0.302	0.254	0.215	0.184	0.159	0.148
1900	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.907	0.862	0.817	0.772	0.725	0.677	0.629	0.581	0.534	0.447	0.373	0.312	0.262	0.223	0.191	0.165	0.154
2000	1.000	0.976	0.952	0.907	0.863	0.818	0.773	0.728	0.681	0.634	0.587	0.541	0.455	0.382	0.320	0.271	0.230	0.198	0.172	0.160

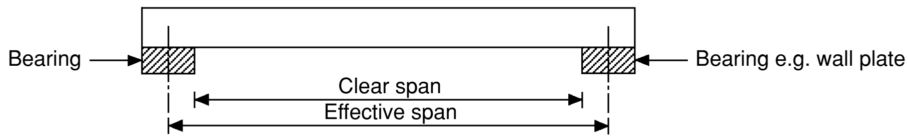


Fig. 6.3 *Effective span of simply supported beams.*

6.7 Flexural members

Beams, rafters and joists are examples of flexural members. All calculations relating to their design are based on the effective span and principally involves consideration of the following aspects which are discussed below:

1. bending
2. deflection
3. lateral buckling
4. shear
5. bearing.

Generally, for medium-span beams the design process follows the sequence indicated above. However, deflection is usually critical for long-span beams and shear for heavily loaded short-span beams.

6.7.1 EFFECTIVE SPAN

According to clause 2.10.3 of BS 5268, for simply supported beams, the effective span is normally taken as the distance between the centres of bearings (*Fig. 6.3*).

6.7.2 BENDING

If flexural members are not to fail in bending, the design moment, M, must not exceed the moment of resistance, M_R

$$M \leq M_R \qquad (6.6)$$

The design moment is a function of the applied loads. The moment of resistance for a beam can be derived from the theory of bending (equation 2.5, *Chapter 2*) and is given by

$$M_R = \sigma_{m,adm,||} Z_{xx} \qquad (6.7)$$

where

$\sigma_{m,adm,||}$ permissible bending stress parallel to grain
Z_{xx} section modulus

For rectangular sections $Z_{xx} = \dfrac{bd^2}{6}$ (*Fig. 6.4*)

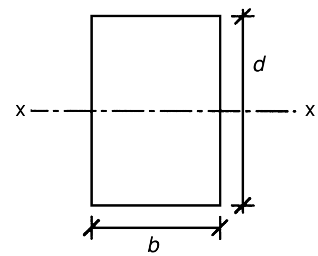


Fig. 6.4 *Section modulus.*

where
b breadth of section
d depth of section

The permissible bending stress is calculated by multiplying the grade bending stress, $\sigma_{m,g,||}$, by any relevant K-factors:

$$\sigma_{m,adm,||} = \sigma_{m,g,||} K_2 K_3 K_7 K_8 \quad \text{(as appropriate)} \qquad (6.8)$$

For a given design moment the minimum required section modulus, Z_{xx} req, can be calculated using equation 6.9, obtained by combining equations 6.6 and 6.7:

$$Z_{xx} \text{ req} \geq \frac{M}{\sigma_{m,adm,||}} \qquad (6.9)$$

A suitable timber section can then be selected from Tables NA.2, NA.3 and NA.4 of BS EN 336: *Structural timber. Sizes permitted deviations.* These tables give the commonly available sizes of, respectively, sawn timber, timber machined on the width and timber machined on all four sides. Table NA.2 is reproduced here as *Table 6.7*. *Table 6.8* is an expanded version which includes a number of useful section properties to aid design. Finally, the chosen section should be checked for deflection, lateral buckling, shear and bearing to assess its suitability as discussed below.

Table 6.7 Commonly available target sizes of sawn softwood structural timber (based on Table NA.2, BS EN 336)

Thickness (mm) (to tolerance class 1)	*Width (to tolerance class 1) (mm)*								
	75	*100*	*125*	*150*	*175*	*200*	*225*	*250*	*300*
22		x							
38		x		x	x	x	x		
47	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
63				x	x	x	x		
75		x		x	x	x	x	x	x
100		x		x		x	x	x	x
150				x					x
300								x	x

Note 1 Timber in other sizes is available to order
Note 2 In the UK the above sizes are commonly available in strength classes C16 and C24

Table 6.8 Geometrical properties of sawn softwoods

Customary target size★	*Area*	*Section Modulus*		*Second of moment area*		*Radius of gyration*	
		About x–x	*About y–y*	*About x–x*	*About y–y*	*About x–x*	*About y–y*
mm	*10^3mm^2*	*10^3mm^3*	*10^3mm^3*	*10^6mm^4*	*10^6mm^4*	*mm*	*mm*
22 × 100	2.20	36.6	8.1	1.83	0.089	28.9	6.35
38 × 100	3.80	63.3	24.1	3.17	0.457	28.9	11.0
38 × 150	5.70	143	36.1	10.7	0.686	43.3	11.0
38 × 175	6.54	194	42.1	17.0	0.800	50.5	11.0
38 × 200	7.60	253	48.1	25.3	0.915	57.7	11.0
38 × 225	8.55	321	54.2	36.1	1.03	65.0	11.0
47 × 75	3.53	44.1	27.6	1.65	0.649	21.7	13.6
47 × 100	4.70	78.3	36.8	3.92	0.865	28.9	13.6
47 × 125	5.88	122	46.0	7.65	1.08	36.1	13.6
47 × 150	7.05	176	55.2	13.2	1.30	43.3	13.6
47 × 175	8.23	240	64.4	21.0	1.51	50.5	13.6
47 × 200	9.40	313	73.6	31.3	1.73	57.7	13.6
47 × 225	10.6	397	82.8	44.6	1.95	65.0	13.6
47 × 250	11.8	490	92.0	61.2	2.16	72.2	13.6
47 × 300	14.1	705	110	106	2.60	86.6	13.6
63 × 150	9.45	236	99.2	17.7	3.13	43.3	18.2
63 × 175	11.0	322	116	28.1	3.65	50.5	18.2
63 × 200	12.6	420	132	42.0	4.17	57.7	18.2
63 × 225	14.2	532	149	59.8	4.69	65.0	18.2

Table 6.8 *(cont'd)*

*Customary target size**	*Area*	*Section Modulus*		*Second moment of area*		*Radius of gyration*	
		About x–x	*About y–y*	*About x–x*	*About y–y*	*About x–x*	*About y–y*
mm	*10^3mm^2*	*10^3mm^3*	*10^3mm^3*	*10^6mm^4*	*10^6mm^4*	*mm*	*mm*
75 × 100	7.50	125	93.8	6.25	3.52	28.9	21.7
75 × 150	11.3	281	141	21.1	5.27	43.3	21.7
75 × 175	13.1	383	164	33.5	6.15	50.5	21.7
75 × 200	15.0	500	188	50.0	7.03	57.7	21.7
75 × 225	16.9	633	211	71.2	7.91	65.0	21.7
75 × 250	18.8	781	234	97.7	8.79	72.2	21.7
75 × 300	22.5	1130	281	169	10.5	86.6	21.7
100 × 100	10.0	167	167	8.33	8.33	28.9	28.9
100 × 150	15.0	375	250	28.1	12.5	43.3	28.9
100 × 200	20.0	667	333	66.7	16.7	57.7	28.9
100 × 225	22.5	844	375	94.9	18.8	65.0	28.9
100 × 250	25.0	1010	417	130	20.8	72.2	28.9
100 × 300	30.0	1500	500	225	25.0	86.6	28.9
150 × 150	20.0	563	563	42.2	42.2	43.3	43.3
150 × 300	30.0	2250	1130	338	84.4	86.6	43.3
300 × 300	90.0	4500	4500	675	675	86.6	86.6

Note. * Desired size of timber measured at 20% moisture content

6.7.3 DEFLECTION

Excessive deflection of flexural members may result in damage to surfacing materials, ceilings, partitions and finishes, and to the functional needs as well as aesthetic requirements.

Clause 2.10.7 of BS 5268 recommends that generally such damage can be avoided if the total deflection, δ_t, of the member when fully loaded does not exceed the permissible deflection, δ_p:

$$\delta_t \le \delta_p \tag{6.10}$$

The permissible deflection is generally given by

$$\delta_p = 0.003 \times \text{span} \tag{6.11}$$

but for longer-span domestic floor joists, i.e. spans over 4.67 m, should not exceed 14 mm:

$$\delta_p \le 14 \text{ mm} \tag{6.12}$$

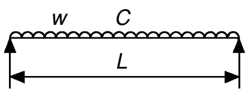
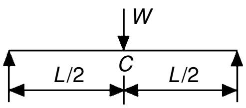
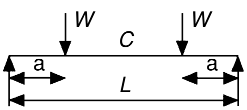
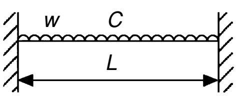
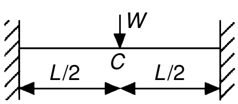
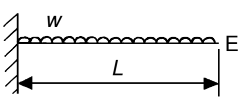
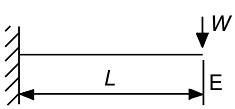
The total deflection, δ_t, is the summation of the bending deflection, δ_m, plus the shear deflection, δ_v:

$$\delta_t = \delta_m + \delta_v \tag{6.13}$$

Table 6.9 gives the bending and shear deflection formulae for some common loading cases for beams of rectangular cross-section. The formulae have been derived by assuming that the shear modulus is equal to one-sixteenth of the permissible modulus of elasticity in accordance with clause 2.7 of BS 5268.

For solid timber members acting alone the deflections should be calculated using the minimum modulus of elasticity, but for load-sharing systems the deflections should be based on the mean modulus of elasticity.

Table 6.9 Bending and shear deflections assuming $G = E/16$

Load distribution and supports	*Deflection at Centre C or end E*	
	Bending	*Shear*
	$\frac{5}{384} \times \frac{wL^4}{EI}$	$\frac{12}{5} \times \frac{wL^2}{EA}$
	$\frac{WL^3}{48EI}$	$\frac{24}{5} \times \frac{WL}{EA}$
	$\frac{Wa}{EI}\left[\frac{L^2}{8} - \frac{a^2}{6}\right]$	$\frac{96}{5} \times \frac{Wa}{EA}$
	$\frac{wL^4}{384EI}$	$\frac{12}{5} \times \frac{wL^2}{EA}$
	$\frac{WL^3}{192EI}$	$\frac{24}{5} \times \frac{WL}{EA}$
	$\frac{wL^4}{8EI}$	$\frac{48}{5} \times \frac{wL^2}{EA}$
	$\frac{WL^3}{3EI}$	$\frac{96}{5} \times \frac{WL}{EA}$

6.7.4 LATERAL BUCKLING

If flexural members are not effectively laterally restrained, it is possible for the member to twist sideways before developing its full flexural strength (*Fig. 6.5*), thereby causing it to fail in bending, shear or deflection. This phenomenon is called lateral buckling and can be avoided by ensuring that the depth to breadth ratios given in *Table 6.10* are complied with.

6.7.5 SHEAR

If flexural members are not to fail in shear, the applied shear stress parallel to the grain, τ_a, should not exceed the permissible shear stress, τ_{adm}:

$$\tau_a \le \tau_{adm} \tag{6.14}$$

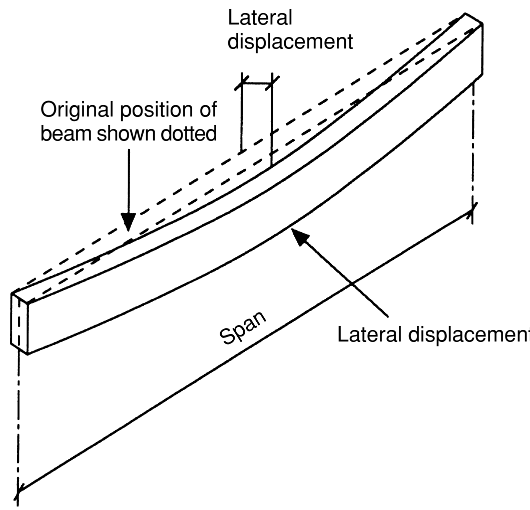


Fig. 6.5 *Lateral buckling.*

Table 6.10 Maximum depth to breadth ratios (Table 19, BS 5268)

Degree of lateral support	*Maximum depth to breadth ratio*
No lateral support	2
Ends held in position	3
Ends held in position and member held in line, as by purlins or tie-rods at centres not more than 30 times the breadth of the member	4
Ends held in position and compression edge held in line, as by direct connection of sheathing, deck or joists	5
Ends held in position and compression edge held in line, as by direct connection of sheathing, deck or joists, together with adequate bridging or blocking spaced at intervals not exceeding six times the depth	6
Ends held in position and both edges held firmly in line	7

For a beam with a rectangular cross-section, the maximum applied shear stress occurs at the neutral axis and is given by:

$$\tau_a = \frac{3F_v}{2A} \tag{6.15}$$

where
F_v applied maximum vertical shear force
A cross-sectional area

The permissible shear stress is given by

$$\tau_{adm} = \tau_g K_2 K_3 K_5 K_8 \quad \text{(as appropriate)} \tag{6.16}$$

where τ_g is the grade shear stress parallel to the grain (*Tables 6.1* and *6.3*).

6.7.6 BEARING PERPENDICULAR TO GRAIN

Bearing failure may arise in flexural members which are supported at their ends on narrow beams or wall plates. Such failures can be avoided by ensuring that the applied bearing stress, $\sigma_{c,a,\perp}$, never exceeds the permissible compression stress perpendicular to the grain, $\sigma_{c,adm,\perp}$:

$$\sigma_{c,a,\perp} \leq \sigma_{c,adm,\perp} \tag{6.17}$$

The applied bearing stress is given by

$$\sigma_{c,a,\perp} = \frac{F}{bl_b} \tag{6.18}$$

where
F bearing force (usually maximum reaction)
b breadth of section
l_b bearing length.

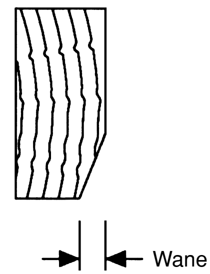


Fig. 6.6 *Wane.*

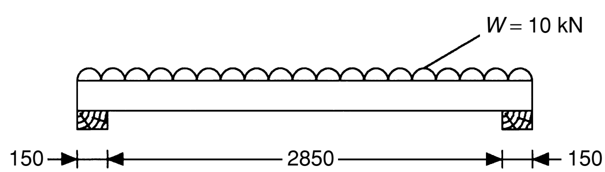
The permissible compression stress is obtained by multiplying the grade compression stress perpendicular to the grain, $\sigma_{c,g,\perp}$, by the K-factors for moisture content (K_2), load duration (K_3) and load sharing (K_8) as appropriate:

$$\sigma_{c,adm,\perp} = \sigma_{c,g,\perp} K_2 K_3 K_8 \tag{6.19}$$

It should be noted that the grade compression stresses perpendicular to the grain given in *Tables 6.1* and *6.3* apply to (i) bearings of any length at the ends of members and (ii) bearings 150 mm or more in length at any position. Moreover, two values for the grade compression stress perpendicular to the grain are given for each strength class (*Table 6.3*). The lower value takes into account the amount of wane which is permitted within each stress grade (*Fig. 6.6*). If, however, the specification prohibits wane from occurring at bearing areas the higher value may be used.

Example 6.1 Design of a timber beam (BS 5268)

A timber beam with a clear span of 2.85 m supports a uniformly distributed load of 10 kN including self-weight of beam. Determine a suitable section for the beam using timber of strength class C16 under service class 1. Assume that the bearing length is 150 mm and that the ends of the beam are held in position and compression edge held in line.



EFFECTIVE SPAN

Distance between centres of bearing (l) = 3000 mm

Example 6.1 *continued*

GRADE STRESS AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY FOR C16

Values in N/mm^2 are as follows

Bending parallel to grain $\sigma_{m,g,\|\|}$	*Shear parallel to grain* τ_g	*Compression perpendicular to grain* $\sigma_{c,g,\perp}$	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{min}
5.3	0.67	1.7	5800

MODIFICATION FACTORS

K_2, moisture content factor does not apply since the beam is subject to service class 1
K_3, duration of loading factor = 1.0
K_8, load sharing factor, does not apply since there is only a single beam

K_7, depth factor = $\left(\dfrac{300}{h}\right)^{0.11}$

Assume $h = 250$, $K_7 = 1.020$

BENDING

$$M = \frac{Wl}{8} = \frac{10 \times 3}{8} = 3.75 \text{ kN m}$$

$$\sigma_{m,adm,||}(\text{assuming } h = 250) = \sigma_{m,g,||}K_3K_7 = 5.3 \times 1.0 \times 1.020 = 5.406 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$Z_{xx}\text{req} \geq \frac{M}{\sigma_{m,adm,||}} = \frac{3.75 \times 10^6}{5.406} = 694 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3$$

DEFLECTION

Permissible deflection (δ_p) = 0.003 × span
The deflection due to shear (δ_s) is likely to be insignificant in comparison to the bending deflection (δ_b) and may be ignored in order to make a first estimate of the total deflection (δ_t):

$$\delta_t(\text{ignoring shear deflection}) = \frac{5Wl^3}{384E_{min}I_{xx}} \quad (\textit{Table 6.9})$$
$$= \frac{5 \times 10^4 \times 3000^3}{384 \times 5800 \times I_{xx}}$$

Since $\delta_p \geq \delta_t$

$$0.003 \times 3000 \geq \frac{5 \times 10^4 \times 3000^3}{384 \times 5800 \times I_{xx}}$$

$$I_{xx}\text{req} \geq 67.3 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4$$

From *Table 6.8*, section 75 × 250 provides

$$Z_{xx} = 781 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3 \qquad I_{xx} = 97.7 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4 \qquad A = 18.8 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence total deflection including shear deflection can now be calculated and is given by

$$\frac{5Wl^3}{384E_{min}I_{xx}} + \frac{12Wl}{5E_{min}A} = \frac{5 \times 10^4 \times 3000^3}{384 \times 5800 \times 97.7 \times 10^6} + \frac{12 \times 10^4 \times 3000}{5 \times 5800 \times 18.8 \times 10^3}$$
$$= 6.2 \text{ mm} + 0.7 \text{ mm} = 6.9 \text{ mm} \leq \delta_p = 0.003 \times 3000 = 9 \text{ mm}$$

Therefore a beam with a 75 × 250 section is adequate for bending and deflection.

Example 6.1 *continued*

LATERAL BUCKLING

Permissible $\dfrac{d}{b} = 5$ (*Table 6.10*)

Actual $\dfrac{d}{b} = \dfrac{250}{75} = 3.3 <$ permissible

Hence the section is adequate for lateral buckling.

SHEAR

Permissible shear stress is

$$\tau_{adm} = \tau_g K_3 = 0.67 \times 1.0 = 0.67 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Maximum shear force is

$$F_v = \frac{W}{2} = \frac{10 \times 10^3}{2} = 5 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

Maximum shear stress at neutral axis is

$$\tau_a = \frac{3}{2}\frac{F_v}{A} = \frac{3}{2} \times \frac{5 \times 10^3}{18.8 \times 10^3} = 0.4 \text{ N/mm}^2 < \text{permissible}$$

Therefore the section is adequate in shear.

BEARING

Permissible bearing stress is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,\perp} = \sigma_{c,g,\perp} K_3 = 1.7 \times 1.0 = 1.7 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

End reaction, F, is

$$\frac{W}{2} = \frac{10 \times 10^3}{2} = 5 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

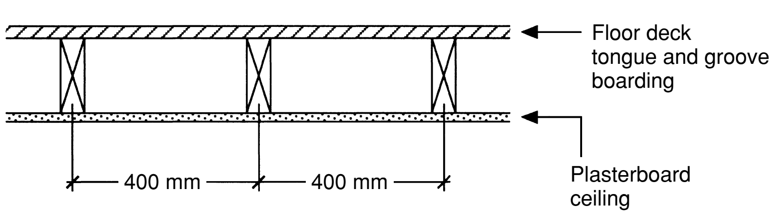
$$\sigma_{c,a,\perp} = \frac{F}{bl_b} = \frac{5 \times 10^3}{75 \times 150} = 0.44 \text{ N/mm}^2 < \text{permissible}$$

Therefore the section is adequate in bearing. Since all the checks are satisfactory, use 75 mm × 250 mm sawn C16 beam.

Example 6.2 Design of timber floor joists (BS 5268)

Design the timber floor joist for a domestic dwelling using timber of strength class C18 given that:

a) the joists are spaced at 400 mm centres;
b) the floor has an effective span of 3.8 m;
c) the flooring is tongue and groove boarding with a self-weight of 0.1 kN/m^2;
d) the ceiling is of plasterboard with a self weight of 0.2 kN/m^2.



Example 6.2 *continued*

DESIGN LOADING

Tongue and groove boarding	$= 0.10\ \text{kN/m}^2$
Ceiling	$= 0.20\ \text{kN/m}^2$
Joists (say)	$= 0.10\ \text{kN/m}^2$
Imposed floor load for domestic dwelling (*Table 2.2*)	$= 1.50\ \text{kN/m}^2$
Total load	$= 1.90\ \text{kN/m}^2$

Uniformly distributed load/joist (W) is

$$W = \text{joist spacing} \times \text{effective span} \times \text{load}$$

$$= 0.4 \times 3.8 \times 1.9 = 2.9\ \text{kN}$$

GRADE STRESSES AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY FOR C18

Values in N/mm^2 are as follows

Bending parallel to grain $\sigma_{m,g,\|\|}$	*Compression perpendicular to grain* $\sigma_{c,g,\perp}$	*Shear parallel to grain* τ_g	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{mean}
5.8	1.7	0.67	9100

MODIFICATION FACTORS

K_2, moisture content factor does not apply since joists are exposed to service class 2
K_3, duration of loading $= 1.0$
K_8, load-sharing system $= 1.1$

$$K_7,\ \text{depth factor} = \left(\frac{300}{h}\right)^{0.11}$$

where
$h = 225,\ K_7 = 1.032$
$h = 200,\ K_7 = 1.046$
$h = 175,\ K_7 = 1.061$

BENDING

$$\text{Bending moment } (M) = \frac{Wl}{8} = \frac{2.9 \times 3.8}{8} = 1.4\ \text{kN m}$$

$$\sigma_{m,adm,\|\|}(\text{ignoring } K_7) = \sigma_{m,g,\|\|}K_3K_8 = 5.8 \times 1.0 \times 1.1 = 6.38\ \text{N/mm}^2$$

$$Z_{xx}\text{req} \geq \frac{M}{\sigma_{m,adm,\|\|}} = \frac{1.4 \times 10^6}{6.38}$$

$$= 219 \times 10^3\ \text{mm}^3$$

From *Table 6.8* a 47 × 200 mm joist would be suitable ($Z_{xx} = 313 \times 10^3\ \text{mm}^3$, $I_{xx} = 31.3 \times 10^6\ \text{mm}^4$, $A = 9.4 \times 10^3\ \text{mm}^2$). Hence $K_7 = 1.046$. Therefore

$$Z_{xx}\text{req} = \frac{219 \times 10^3}{1.046} = 209 \times 10^3\ \text{mm}^3 < \text{provided} \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 6.2 *continued*

DEFLECTION

Permissible deflection = 0.003 × span
= 0.003 × 3800 = 11.4 mm

Total deflection (δ_t) = bending deflection (δ_m) + shear deflection (δ_v)

$$= \frac{5Wl^3}{384E_{mean}I_{xx}} + \frac{12Wl}{5E_{mean}A}$$

$$= \frac{5 \times 2.9 \times 10^3 \times (3.8 \times 10^3)^3}{384 \times 9.1 \times 10^3 \times 31.3 \times 10^6} + \frac{12 \times 2.9 \times 10^3 \times 3.8 \times 10^3}{5 \times 9.1 \times 10^3 \times 9.4 \times 10^3}$$

$$= 7.3 \text{ mm} + 0.3 \text{ mm} = 7.6 \text{ mm} < \text{permissible}$$

Therefore 47 mm × 200 mm joist is adequate in bending and deflection.

LATERAL BUCKLING

Permissible $\frac{d}{b} = 5$ (*Table 6.10*)

Actual $\frac{d}{b} = \frac{200}{47} = 4.3 <$ permissible

Therefore joist is satisfactory in lateral buckling.

SHEAR

Permissible shear stress is

$$\tau_{adm} = \tau_g K_3 K_8 = 0.67 \times 1.0 \times 1.1 = 0.737 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Maximum shear force is

$$F_v = \frac{W}{2} = \frac{2.9 \times 10^3}{2} = 1.45 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

Maximum shear stress at neutral axis is

$$\tau_a = \frac{3}{2}\frac{F_v}{A} = \frac{3}{2} \times \frac{1.45 \times 10^3}{9.4 \times 10^3} = 0.23 \text{ N/mm}^2 < \text{permissible}$$

Therefore joist is adequate in shear.

BEARING

Permissible compression stress perpendicular to grain is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,\perp} = \sigma_{c,g,\perp} K_3 K_8 = 1.7 \times 1.0 \times 1.1 = 1.87 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Maximum end reaction is

$$F = \frac{W}{2} = \frac{2.9 \times 10^3}{2} = 1.45 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

Assuming that the floor joists span on to 100 mm wide wall plates the bearing stress is given by

$$\sigma_{c,a,\perp} = \frac{F}{bl_b} = \frac{1.45 \times 10^3}{47 \times 100} = 0.31 \text{ N/mm}^2 < \text{permissible}$$

Therefore joist is adequate in bearing.

Example 6.2 *continued*

CHECK ASSUMED SELF-WEIGHT OF JOISTS

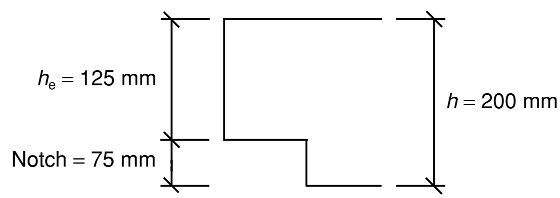
From *Table 6.3*, the average density of timber of strength class C18 is 380 kg/m^3. Hence, self-weight of the joists is

$$\frac{(47 \times 200 \times 10^{-3}) \times 380 \text{ kg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \times 10^{-3}}{0.4} = 0.088 \text{ kN/m}^2 < 0.10 \text{ kN/m}^2 \quad \text{(assumed)}$$

Since all the checks are satisfactory use 47 mm × 200 mm C18 sawn floor joists.

Example 6.3 Design of a notched floor joist (BS 5268)

The joists in *Example 6.2* are to be notched at the bearings with a 75 m deep notch as shown below. Check that the notched section is still adequate.



The presence of the notch affects only the shear stresses in the joists. For a notched member the permissible shear stress is given by

$$\tau_{adm} = \tau_g K_3 K_5 K_8$$

where

$$K_5 = \frac{h_e}{h} = \frac{125}{200} = 0.625 > \text{min. } (= 0.5)$$

Hence

$$\tau_{adm} = 0.67 \times 1.0 \times 0.625 \times 1.1 = 0.46 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Applied shear parallel to grain, τ_a (from above) is

$$0.23 \text{ N/mm}^2 < \text{permissible}$$

Therefore the 47 mm × 200 mm sawn joists are also adequate when notched with a 75 mm deep bottom edge notch at the bearing.

Example 6.4 Analysis of a timber roof (BS 5268)

A flat roof spanning 4.5 m is constructed using timber joists of grade GS whitewood with a section size of 47 mm × 225 mm and spaced at 450 mm centres. The total dead load due to the roof covering and ceiling including the self-weight of the joists is 1 kN/m^2. Calculate the maximum imposed load the roof can carry assuming that the duration of loading is (a) long term (b) medium term.

DESIGN LOADING

$$\text{Dead load} = 1 \text{ kN/m}^2$$
$$\text{Live load} = q \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Uniformly distributed load/joist, W, is

$$W = \text{joist spacing} \times \text{effective span} \times (\text{dead} + \text{live}) = 0.45 \times 4.5\ (1 + q)$$

Example 6.4 *continued*

GRADE STRESSES AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

Grade GS whitewood timber belongs to strength class C16 (*Table 6.2*). Values in N/mm^2 are as follows:

Bending parallel to grain $\sigma_{m,g,\|\|}$	*Compression perpendicular to grain* $\sigma_{c,g,\perp}$	*Shear parallel to grain* τ_g	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{mean}
5.3	1.7	0.67	8800

MODIFICATION FACTORS

K_3, duration of loading (*Table 6.5*) = 1.0 (long term) = 1.25 (medium term)
K_8, load-sharing system = 1.1

$$K_7\text{, depth factor} = \left(\frac{300}{h}\right)^{0.11}$$

where $h = 225$, $K_7 = 1.032$

GEOMETRICAL PROPERTIES

From *Table 6.8*, 47 × 225 section provides:

Cross-sectional area, A $= 10.6 \times 10^3$ mm^2
Elastic modulus about x–x, Z_{xx} $= 397 \times 10^3$ mm^3
Second moment of area about x–x, $I_{xx} = 44.6 \times 10^6$ mm^4

BENDING

Long term

Permissible bending stress parallel to grain is

$$\sigma_{m,adm,\|\|} = \sigma_{m,g,\|\|}K_3K_7K_8 = 5.3 \times 1.0 \times 1.032 \times 1.1 = 6.02 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Moment of resistance, M_R, is

$$M_R = \sigma_{m,adm,\|\|}Z_{xx} = 6.02 \times 397 \times 10^3 \times 10^{-6} = 2.39 \text{ kN m}$$

Design moment, $M = \dfrac{Wl}{8} = 0.45 \times 4.5(1+q)\dfrac{4.5}{8} = 1.139(1+q)$

Equating $M_R = M$,

$$2.39 = 1.139\ (1+q) \Rightarrow q = 1.09 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Medium term

From above

$$\sigma_{m,adm,\|\|} = 6.02K_3(\text{medium term}) = 6.02 \times 1.25 = 7.52 \text{ N/mm}^2$$
$$M_R = 7.52 \times 397 \times 10^3 \times 10^{-6} = 2.98 \text{ kNm}$$

Equating $M_R = M$,

$$2.98 = 1.139(1+q) \Rightarrow q = 1.62 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

DEFLECTION

Maximum total deflection = bending deflection (δ_m) + shear deflection (δ_v)

$$0.003L = \frac{5WL^3}{384E_{mean}I_{xx}} + \frac{12WL}{5E_{mean}A}$$

Example 6.4 *continued*

$$0.003 = W\left[\frac{5 \times (4.5 \times 10^3)^2}{384 \times 8800 \times 44.6 \times 10^6} + \frac{12}{5 \times 8800 \times 10.6 \times 10^3}\right]$$

$$= 6.975 \times 10^{-7}\ W$$

$$W = 4300 \text{ N per joist}$$

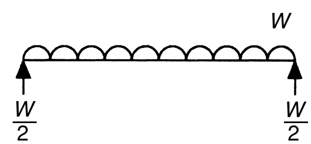
Load per unit area is

$$\frac{W}{\text{joist spacing} \times \text{span}} = \frac{4.3}{0.45 \times 4.5} = 2.12 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Hence

$$q = 2.12 - \text{dead load} = 2.12 - 1 = 1.12 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

SHEAR



Permissible shear parallel to grain is

$$\tau_{adm} = \tau_g K_3 K_8 = 0.67 \times 1.0 \times 1.1 = 0.737 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\text{Maximum shear force } F_v = \frac{2}{3}\tau_{adm} A \quad \text{(equation 6.15)}$$

$$= \left(\frac{2}{3} \times 0.737 \times 10.6 \times 10^3\right) \times 10^{-3} = 5.2 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Total load per joist} = 2F_v = 10.4 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Load per unit area} = \frac{10.4}{0.45 \times 4.5} = 5.13 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Hence

$$q = 5.13 - 1 = 4.13 \text{ kN/m}^2 \quad \text{(long term)}$$

and

$$q = 5.43 \text{ kN/mm}^2 \quad (\text{medium term, } K_3 = 1.25)$$

Hence the safe long-term imposed load that the roof can support is 1.09 kN/m^2 (bending critical) and the safe medium-term imposed load is 1.12 kN/m^2 (deflection critical).

6.8 Design of compression members

Struts and columns are examples of compression members. For design purposes BS 5268 divides compression members into two categories (1) members subject to axial compression only and (2) members subject to combined bending and axial compression.

The principal considerations in the design of compression members are:

1. slenderness ratio
2. axial compressive stress
3. permissible compressive stress.

The following subsections consider these more general aspects before describing in detail the design of the above two categories of compression members.

6.8.1 SLENDERNESS RATIO

The load-carrying capacity of compression members is a function of the slenderness ratio, λ, which is given by

Table 6.11 Effective length of compression members (Table 21, BS 5268)

End conditions	Effective length / Actual length (L_e/L)
(a) Restrained at both ends in position and in direction	0.7
(b) Restrained at both ends in position and one end in direction	0.85
(c) Restrained at both ends in position but not in direction	1.0
(d) Restrained at one end in position and in direction and at the other end in direction but not in position	1.5
(e) Restrained at one end in position and in direction and free at the other end	2.0

$$\lambda = \frac{L_e}{i} \tag{6.20}$$

where
L_e effective length
i radius of gyration

According to clause 2.11.4 of BS 5268, the slenderness ratio should not exceed 180 for compression members carrying dead and imposed loads other than loads resulting from wind in which case a slenderness ratio of 250 may be acceptable.

The radius of gyration, i, is given by

$$i = \sqrt{I/A} \tag{6.21}$$

where
I moment of inertia
A cross-section area.

For rectangular sections

$$i = b/\sqrt{12} \tag{6.22}$$

where b is the least lateral dimension.

The effective length, L_e, of a column is obtained by multiplying the actual length, L, by a coefficient taken from *Table 6.11* which is a function of the fixity at the column ends.

$$L_e = L \times \text{coefficient} \tag{6.23}$$

In *Table 6.11* end condition (a) models the case of a column with both ends fully fixed and no relative horizontal motion possible between the column ends. End condition (c) models the case of a pin-ended column with no relative horizontal motion possible between column ends. End condition (e) models the case of a column with one end fully fixed and the other free. *Figure 6.7* illustrates all five combinations of end fixities.

6.8.2 AXIAL COMPRESSIVE STRESS

The axial compressive stress is given by

$$\sigma_{c,a,||} = \frac{F}{A} \tag{6.24}$$

where
F axial load
A cross-sectional area.

6.8.3 PERMISSIBLE COMPRESSIVE STRESS

According to clause 2.11.5 of BS 5268, for compression members with slenderness ratios of less than 5, the permissible compressive stress should be taken as the grade compression stress parallel to the grain, $\sigma_{c,g,||}$, modified as appropriate for moisture content, duration of loading and load sharing:

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||} = \sigma_{c,g,||}K_2K_3K_8 \quad \text{for } \lambda < 5 \tag{6.25}$$

For compression members with slenderness ratios equal to or greater than 5, the permissible compressive stress is obtained in the same way but should additionally be modified by the factor K_{12}

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||} = \sigma_{c,g,||}K_2K_3K_8K_{12} \quad \text{for } \lambda \geq 5 \tag{6.26}$$

6.8.4 MEMBER DESIGN

Having discussed these common aspects it is now possible to describe in detail the design of compression members. As pointed out earlier, BS 5268 distinguishes between two categories of members, that is, those subject to (a) axial compression only and (b) axial compression and bending.

6.8.4.1 Members subject to axial compression only

This category of compression member is designed so that the applied compressive stress, $\sigma_{c,a,||}$, does not exceed the permissible compressive stress parallel to the grain, $\sigma_{c,adm,||}$:

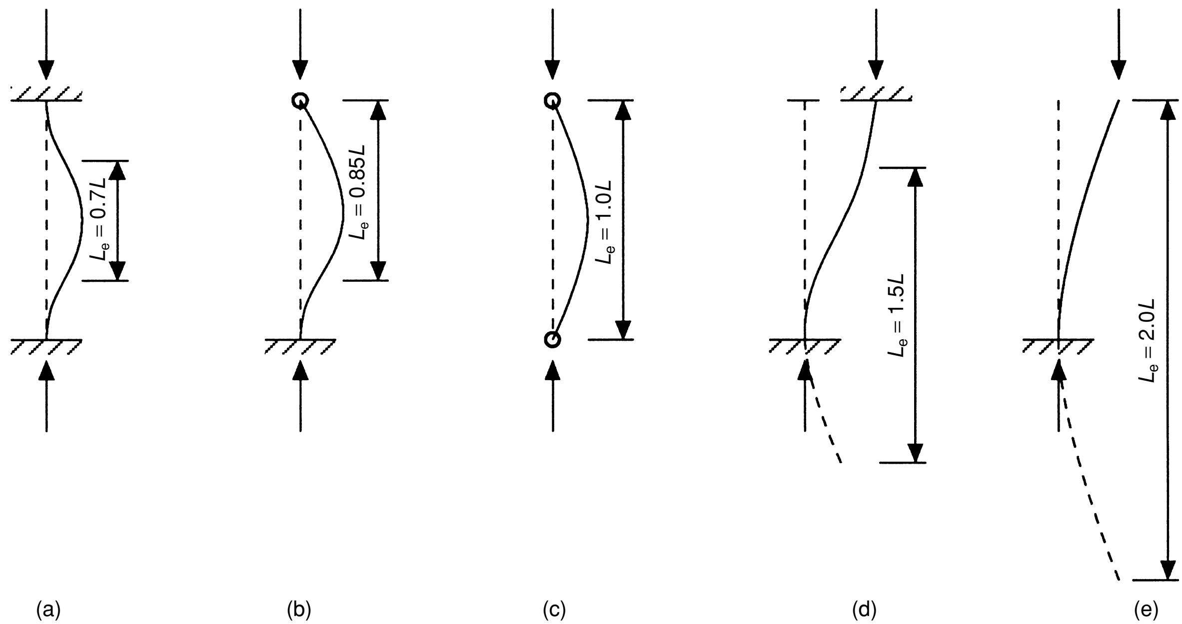


Fig. 6.7 *End conditions.*

$$\sigma_{c,a,||} \le \sigma_{c,adm,||} \quad (6.27)$$

The applied compressive stress is calculated using equation 6.24 and the permissible compressive stress is given by equations 6.25 or 6.26 depending upon the slenderness ratio.

6.8.4.2 Members subject to axial compression and bending

This category includes compression members subject to eccentric loading which can be equated to an axial compression force and bending moment. According to clause 2.11.6 of BS 5268, members which are restrained at both ends in position but not direction, which covers most real situations, should be so proportioned that

$$\frac{\sigma_{m,a,||}}{\sigma_{m,adm,||}\left(1 - \dfrac{1.5\sigma_{c,a,||}}{\sigma_e}K_{12}\right)} + \frac{\sigma_{c,a,||}}{\sigma_{c,adm,||}} \le 1 \quad (6.28)$$

where

$\sigma_{m,a,||}$ applied bending stress
$\sigma_{m,adm,||}$ permissible bending stress
$\sigma_{c,a,||}$ applied compression stress
$\sigma_{c,adm,||}$ permissible compression stress (including K_{12})
σ_e Euler critical stress = $\pi^2 E_{min}/(L_e/i)^2$

Equation 6.28 is the normal interaction formula used to ensure that lateral instability does not arise in compression members subject to axial force and bending. Thus if the column was subject to compressive loading only, i.e. $M = 0$ and $\sigma_{m,a,||} = 0$, the designer would simply have to ensure that $\sigma_{c,a,||}/\sigma_{c,adm,||} \le 1$. Alternatively, if the column was subject to bending only, i.e. $F = \sigma_{c,a,||} = 0$, the designer should ensure that $\sigma_{m,a,||}/\sigma_{m,adm,||} \le 1$. However, if the column was subject to combined bending and axial compression, then the deflection as a result of the moment M would lead to additional bending due to the eccentricity of the force F as illustrated in *Fig. 6.8*. This is allowed for by the factor

$$\frac{1}{[1 - (1.5\sigma_{c,a,||}K_{12})/\sigma_e]}$$

in the above expression.

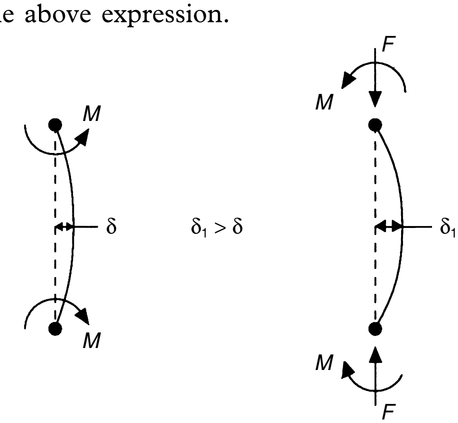
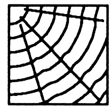


Fig. 6.8 *Bending in timber columns.*

Example 6.5 Timber column resisting an axial load (BS 5268)

A timber column of redwood GS grade consists of a 100 mm square section which is restrained at both ends in position but not in direction. Assuming that the actual height of the column is 3.75 m, calculate the maximum axial long-term load that the column can support.



SLENDERNESS RATIO

$$\lambda = L_e / i \Rightarrow L_e = 1.0 \times h = 1.0 \times 3750 = 3750 \text{ mm}$$

$$i = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}} = \sqrt{\frac{db^3/12}{db}} = \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{12}} = \frac{100}{\sqrt{12}} = 28.867$$

$$\lambda = \frac{3750}{28.867} = 129.9 < 180 \quad \text{OK}$$

GRADE STRESSES AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

Grade GS redwood belongs to strength class C16 (*Table 6.2*). Values in N/mm^2 are as follows

Compression parallel to grain $\sigma_{c,g,||}$	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{min}
6.8	5800

MODIFICATION FACTOR

K_3, duration of loading is 1.0

$$\frac{E_{min}}{\sigma_{c,||}} = \frac{5800}{6.8 \times 1.0} = 852.9 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda = 129.9$$

From *Table 6.6* by interpolation K_{12} is found to be 0.261.

$\frac{E_{min}}{\sigma_{c,||}}$	λ		
	120	*129.9*	*140*
800	0.280		0.217
852.9	0.293	*0.261*	0.228
900	0.304		0.237

AXIAL LOAD CAPACITY

Permissible compression stress parallel to grain is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||} = \sigma_{c,g,||} K_3 K_{12} = 6.8 \times 1.0 \times 0.261 = 1.77 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Hence the long-term axial load capacity of column is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||} A = 1.77 \times 10^4 \times 10^{-3} = 17.7 \text{ kN}$$

Example 6.6 Timber column resisting an axial load and moment (BS 5268)

Check the adequacy of the column in Example 6.5 to resist a long-term axial load of 10 kN and a bending moment of 350 kN mm.

SLENDERNESS RATIO

$$\lambda = L_e/i = 129.9 < 180 \quad (\textit{Example 6.5})$$

GRADE STRESSES AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

Values in N/mm^2 for timber of strength class C16 are as follows

Bending parallel to grain $\sigma_{mg,\|\|}$	*Compression parallel to grain* $\sigma_{c,g,\|\|}$	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{min}
5.3	6.8	5800

MODIFICATION FACTORS

$K_3 = 1.0$

$$K_7 = \left(\frac{300}{h}\right)^{0.11} = \left(\frac{300}{100}\right)^{0.11} = 1.128$$

$K_{12} = 0.261$ (see *Example 6.5*)

COMPRESSION AND BENDING STRESSES

Permissible compression stress is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||} = \sigma_{c,g,||}K_3K_{12} = 6.8 \times 1.0 \times 0.261 = 1.77 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Applied compression stress is

$$\sigma_{c,a,||} = \frac{\text{axial load}}{A} = \frac{10 \times 10^3}{10^4} = 1 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Permissible bending stress is

$$\sigma_{m,adm,||} = \sigma_{m,g,||}K_3K_7 = 5.3 \times 1.0 \times 1.128 = 5.98 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Applied bending stress is

$$\sigma_{m,a,||} = \frac{M}{Z} = \frac{350 \times 10^3}{167 \times 10^3} = 2.10 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Euler critical stress is

$$\sigma_e = \frac{\pi^2 E_{min}}{(L_e/i)^2} = \frac{\pi^2 \times 5800}{(129.9)^2} = 3.39 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Since column is restrained at both ends, in position but not in direction, check that the column is so proportioned that

$$\frac{\sigma_{m,a,||}}{\sigma_{m,adm,||}\left(1 - \dfrac{1.5\sigma_{c,a,||}}{\sigma_e}K_{12}\right)} + \frac{\sigma_{c,a,||}}{\sigma_{c,adm,||}} \le 1$$

Example 6.6 *continued*

Substituting

$$\frac{2.10}{5.98\left(1 - \dfrac{1.5 \times 1}{3.39} \times 0.261\right)} + \frac{1}{1.77}$$

$$= 0.397 + 0.565 = 0.962 < 1$$

Therefore a 100 × 100 column is adequate to resist a long-term axial load of 10 kN and a bending moment of 350 kN mm.

6.9 Design of stud walls

In timber frame housing the loadbearing walls are normally constructed using stud walls (*Fig. 6.9*). These walls can be designed to resist not only the vertical loading but also loads normal to the wall due to wind, for example. Stud walls are normally designed in accordance with the requirements of BS 5268: Part 6: *Code of Practice for Timber Frame Walls; Section 6.1: Dwellings not exceeding four storeys*. They basically consist of vertical timber members, commonly referred to as studs, which are held in position by nailing them to timber rails or plates, located along the top and bottom of the studs. The most common stud sizes are 100 × 50, 47, 38 mm and 75 × 50, 47, 38 mm. The studs are usually placed at 400 or 600 mm centres depending upon preference, or on the loads they are required to transmit.

The frame is usually covered by a cladding material such as plasterboard which may be required for aesthetic reasons, but will also provide lateral restraint to the studs about the y–y axis. If the wall is not surfaced or only partially surfaced, the studs may be braced along their lengths by internal noggings. Bending about the x–x axis of the stud is assumed to be unaffected by the presence of the cladding material.

Since the centre-to-centre spacing of the stud is normally less than 610 mm, the load-sharing factor K_8 will apply to the design of stud walls. The design of stud walling is illustrated in the following example.

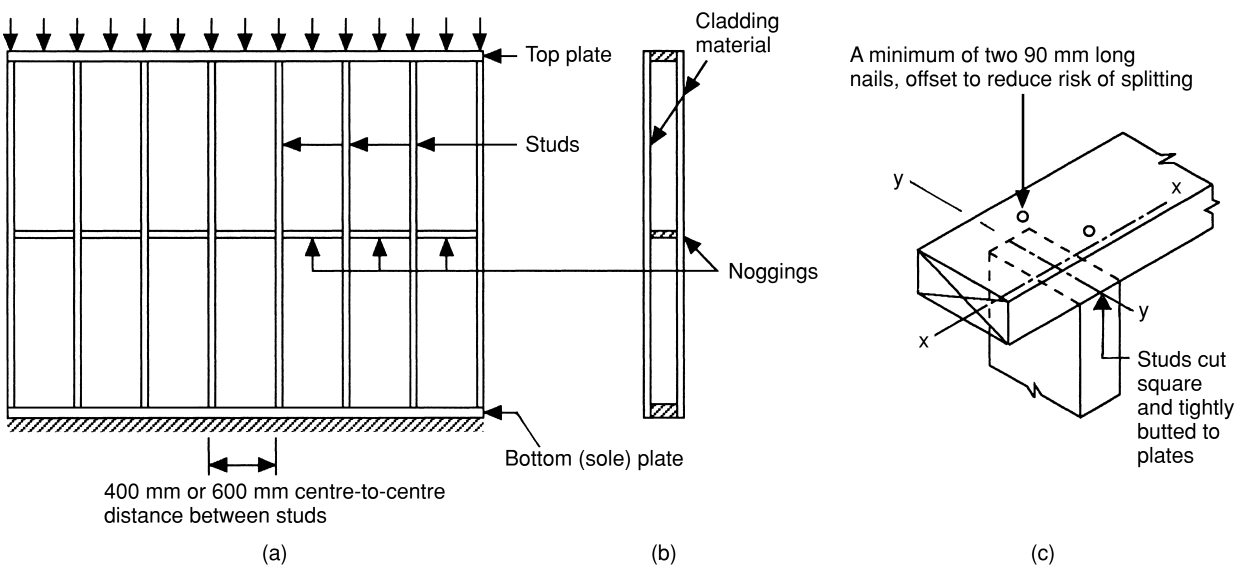
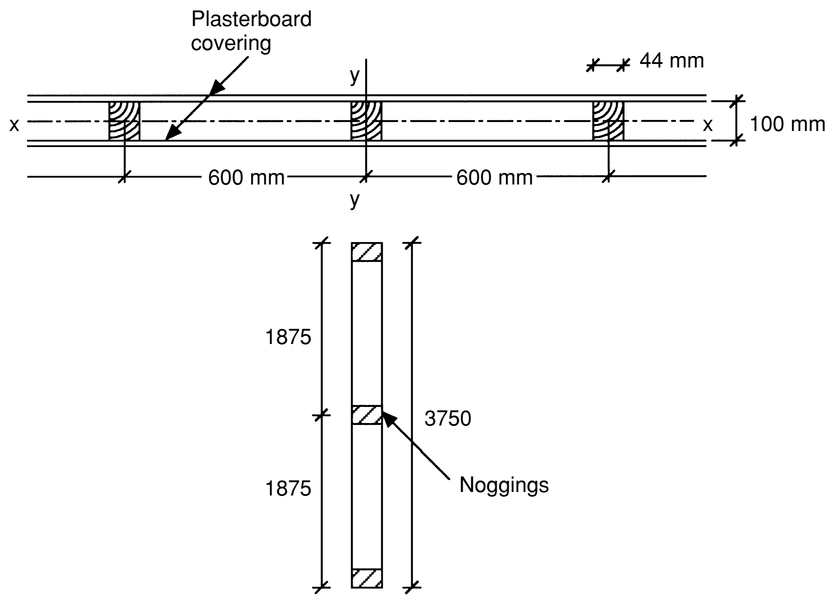


Fig. 6.9 *Details of a typical stud wall: (a) elevation; (b) section; (c) typical fixing of top and bottom plates to studs.*

Example 6.7 Analysis of a stud wall (BS 5268)

A stud wall panel has an overall height of 3.75 m including top and bottom rails and vertical studs at 600 mm centres with nogging pieces at mid-height. Assuming that the studs, rail framing and nogging pieces comprise 44 × 100 mm section of strength class C22, calculate the maximum uniformly distributed long term total load the panel is able to support.



SLENDERNESS RATIO

Effective height

$$L_{ex} = \text{coefficient} \times L = 1.0 \times 3750 = 3750 \text{ mm}$$

$$L_{ey} = \text{coefficient} \times L/2 = 1.0 \times 3750/2 = 1875 \text{ mm}$$

Radius of gyration

$$i_{xx} = \sqrt{\frac{I_{xx}}{A}} = \sqrt{\frac{(1/12) \times 44 \times 100^3}{44 \times 100}} = \frac{100}{\sqrt{12}}$$

$$i_{yy} = \sqrt{\frac{I_{yy}}{A}} = \sqrt{\frac{(1/12) \times 100 \times 44^3}{44 \times 100}} = \frac{44}{\sqrt{12}}$$

Slenderness ratio

$$\lambda_{xx} = \frac{L_{ex}}{i_{xx}} = \frac{3750}{100/\sqrt{12}} = 129.9 < 180$$

$$\lambda_{yy} = \frac{L_{ey}}{i_{yy}} = \frac{1875}{44/\sqrt{12}} = 147.6 < 180 \quad \text{(critical)}$$

Note that where two values of λ are possible the larger value must always be used to find $\sigma_{c,adm,||}$.

Example 6.7 *continued*

GRADE STRESSES AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

For timber of strength class C22, values in N/mm^2 are as follows:

Compression parallel to grain $\sigma_{c,g,\|\|}$	*Modulus of elasticity* E_{min}
7.5	6500

MODIFICATION FACTORS

$$K_3 = 1.0 \qquad K_8 = 1.1$$

$$\frac{E_{min}}{\sigma_{c,||}} = \frac{E_{min}}{\sigma_{c,g,||}K_3} = \frac{6500}{7.5 \times 1.0} = 866.7 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda = 147.6$$

From *Table 6.6* $K_{12} = 0.212$ by interpolation.

$\frac{E_{min}}{\sigma_{c,\|\|}}$	λ		
	140	*147.6*	*160*
800	0.217		0.172
866.7	0.230	*0.212*	0.183
900	0.237		0.188

AXIAL STRESSES

Permissible compression stress parallel to grain $\sigma_{c,adm,||}$ is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||} = \sigma_{c,g,||}K_3K_8K_{12} = 7.5 \times 1.0 \times 1.1 \times 0.212 = 1.75 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Axial load capacity of stud is

$$\sigma_{c,adm,||}A = 1.75 \times 44 \times 100 \times 10^{-3} = 7.7 \text{ kN}$$

Hence uniformly distributed load capacity of stud wall panel is

$$7.7/0.6 = 12.8 \text{ kN/m}$$

Note that the header spans 0.6 m and that this should also be checked as a beam in order to make sure that it is capable of supporting the above load.

6.10 Summary

This chapter has attempted to explain the concepts of stress grading and strength classes and the advantages that they offer to designers and contractors alike involved in specifying timber for structural purposes. The chapter has described the design of flexural and compression members and stud walling, to BS 5628: Part 2: *Structural Use of Timber*, which is based on permissible stress principles. In the case of flexural members (e.g. beams, rafters and joints), bending, shear and deflection are found to be the critical factors in design. With compression members (e.g. struts and columns), the slenderness ratio has a major influence on load-carrying capacity. Stud walls are normally designed on the assumption that the compression members act together to support a common load.

Questions

1. (a) Discuss the factors which influence the strength of timber and explain how the strength of timber is assessed in practice.
   (b) A simply supported timber roof beam spanning 5 m supports a total uniformly distributed load of 11 kN. Determine a suitable section for the beam using timber of strength class C16. Assume that the bearing length is 125 mm and that the compression edge is held in position.
2. (a) Give typical applications of timber in the construction industry and for each case discuss possible desirable properties.
   (b) Redesign the timber joists in *Example 6.2* using timber of strength class C22.
3. (a) Distinguish between softwood and hardwood and grade stress and permissible stress.
   (b) Calculate the maximum long term imposed load that a flat roof can support assuming the following construction details:
      – roof joists are 50 mm × 225 mm of strength class C16 at 600 mm centres
      – effective span is 4.2 m
      – unit weight of woodwool (50 mm thick) is 0.3 kN/m^2
      – unit weight of boarding, bitumen and roofing felt is 0.45 kN/m^2
      – unit weight of plasterboard and skim is 0.22 kN/m^2
4. (a) Discuss the factors accounted for by the modification factor K_{12} in the design of timber compression members.
   (b) Design a timber column of effective length 2.8 m, capable of resisting the following loading:
      (i) medium term axial load of 37.5 kN
      (ii) long term axial load of 30 kN and a bending moment of 300 kN mm.
5. (a) Explain with the aid of sketches connection details which will give rise to the following end conditions:
      (i) restrained in position and direction
      (ii) restrained in position but not in direction
      (iii) unrestrained in position and direction.
   (b) Design a stud wall of length 4.2 m and height 3.8 m, using timber of strength class C16 to support a long-term uniformly distributed load of 14 kN/m.

PART THREE

STRUCTURAL DESIGN TO THE EUROCODES

Part Two of this book has described the design of a number of structural elements in the four media: concrete, steel, masonry and timber to BS 8110, BS 5950, BS 5628 and BS 5268 respectively. The principal aim of this part of the book is to describe the salient features of the structural Eurocodes for these media, Eurocodes 2, 3, 6 and 5 respectively, and highlight the significant differences between the British Standard and the corresponding Eurocode.

The subject-matter has been divided into five chapters as follows:

1. *Chapter 7* introduces the Eurocodes and provides answers to some general questions regarding their nature, role, method of production and layout.
2. *Chapter 8* describes the contents of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 2 for the design of concrete buildings and illustrates the new procedures for designing beams, slabs, pad foundations and columns.
3. *Chapter 9* describes the contents of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 3 for the design of steel buildings and illustrates the new procedures for designing beams, columns and connections.
4. *Chapter 10* describes the contents of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 6 for the design of masonry structures and illustrates the new procedures for the design of unreinforced load-bearing and panel walls.
5. *Chapter 11* describes the contents of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 5 for the design of timber structures and illustrates the new procedures for designing flexural and compression members.

Chapter 7

The structural Eurocodes: An introduction

This chapter provides a brief introduction to the Eurocodes. It describes the nature, benefits and mechanics of producing the Eurocodes. It describes the general format of the documents and discusses some difficulties associated with drafting these codes together with how these difficulties were resolved. The roles of the National Annex and NCCIs in the Eurocode system are also highlighted.

7.1 Scope

The Eurocodes are a family of ten European codes of practice for the design of building and civil engineering structures in concrete, steel, timber and masonry, amongst other materials. *Table 7.1* lists the reference numbers and titles of the ten Eurocodes. Like the present UK codes of practice, Eurocodes will come in a number of parts, each containing rules relevant to the design of a range of structures including buildings, bridges, water retaining structures, silos and tanks. EN 1991 provides characteristic values of loads (termed 'actions' in Eurocode-speak) needed for design. EN 1990, the head Eurocode, is the world's first material-independent design code and provides guidance on determining the design value of actions and combination of actions, including partial safety factors for actions. EN 1997 covers the geotechnical aspect of foundation design. EN 1998 is devoted to earthquake design and provides guidance on achieving earthquake resistance of buildings, bridges, towers, geotechnical structures, amongst others.

Table 7.1 The structural Eurocodes

EuroNorm reference	*Title*
EN1990	Eurocode: Basis of design
EN1991	Eurocode 1: Actions on structures
EN1992	Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures
EN1993	Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures
EN1994	Eurocode 4: Design of composite steel and concrete structures
EN1995	Eurocode 5: Design of timber structures
EN1996	Eurocode 6: Design of masonry structures
EN1997	Eurocode 7: Geotechnical design
EN1998	Eurocode 8: Design of structures for earthquake resistance
EN1999	Eurocode 9: Design of aluminium structures

Eurocodes will have the same legal standing as the national equivalent design standard or code of practice do eventually. Actually under UK law there is no prescribed set of acceptable codes, merely a list of Approved Documents. Thus in due course Eurocodes will attain this status when it is expected that reference to BS codes will be omitted.

Eurocodes were published first as preliminary standards, known as ENV (*Norme Vornorme Européenne*), beginning in 1992. Now, after several years, following comments received on the preliminary versions, they have been revised and reissued as full European standards, known as EN (*Norme Européenne*), together with a National Annex which contains supplementary information specific to each Member State. Following a few years of co-existence, the EN Eurocodes will become mandatory in the sense that all conflicting standards must be withdrawn. In this context 'withdrawn' means that the codes will no longer be maintained and in time will become obsolete.

7.2 Benefits of Eurocodes

The establishment of international codes of practice for structural design is not a new idea. Indeed, the first draft of Eurocode 2 for concrete structures was based on the CEB (Comité Européen du Beton) *Model Code* of 1978 produced by a number of experts/enthusiasts from various European countries. Similarly Eurocode 3 was based on the 1977 *Recommendations for Design of Steel Structures* published by ECCS (European Convention for Constructional Steelwork), which was the work of several expert committees drawn from various countries from Europe and beyond. The original motivation for this work was to improve the art and science of structural design. However, the drive towards the political and economic unification of countries in the EC has broadened the aims and objectives of these documents, which no doubt has also influenced their final shape.

There are several advantages to be gained from having design standards which are accepted by all Member States. The first and foremost reason is that the provision of Eurocodes and the associated European standards for construction products will help lower trade barriers between the Member States. This will allow contractors and consultants from all Member States to compete fairly for work within Europe as well as help facilitate the marketing and use of structural materials, components, kits and design aids/software, right across Europe. Hopefully this will lead to a pooling of resources and the sharing of expertise, thereby lowering production costs. It is further believed that their existence will boost the international standing of European engineers which should help in increasing their chances of winning work abroad. A further benefit of having Eurocodes is that they will make it easier for European engineers to practise throughout Europe.

7.3 Production of Eurocodes

Generally, each Eurocode has been drafted by a small team of experts from various Member States. These groups were formerly under contract to the EC Commission but in 1989 responsibility for preparation and publication of the Eurocodes passed to CEN (Comité Européen de Normalisation), the European Standards Organisation, whose members are the National Standards Bodies, e.g. British Standards Institute in the UK. During the ENV stage of production a liaison engineer from each Member State was involved in evaluating the final document and discussing with the drafting team the acceptability of the Eurocode in relation to the national code. During the conversion to EN status, BSI has established mirror committees for each Eurocode, through which all UK comments are routed. These committees consider both the technical aspects as well as the economic impacts of the Eurocodes and manage the task of calibrating the code.

7.4 Format

Fig. 7.1 shows the general layout of each Eurocode. Each consists of the full text of the Eurocode, including any annexes approved by CEN, which is normally preceded by a national title page and national foreword. The latter lists the national standard(s) having the same scope as the Eurocode and provides some information on the accompanying National Annex, e.g. scope, publisher, general date of availability.

7.5 Problems associated with drafting the Eurocodes

Inevitably, there were many problems faced by committee members responsible for drafting the Eurocodes. These centred on agreeing a common terminology acceptable to all the Member States, resolving differing opinions on technical issues, taking into account national differences in construction materials and products and design and construction practices, and regional differences in climatic conditions. In addition, it was also considered essential that all Eurocodes should be comprehensive yet concise. The following subsections outline how some of these issues were resolved without compromising the clarity or, indeed, simplicity of the codes.

7.5.1 TERMINOLOGY

At the outset of this work it was necessary to standardise the terminology used in the Eurocodes. Generally, this is similar to that found in the equivalent UK national standards. However, there are some minor differences; for example, as previously noted, loads are now called actions while dead and live loads are referred to as permanent and variable actions, respectively. Similarly, bending moments and axial loads are now called internal moments and internal forces respectively. These changes were adopted to avoid problems during translation of the codes. They are so minor that they are unlikely to present any problems to UK engineers.

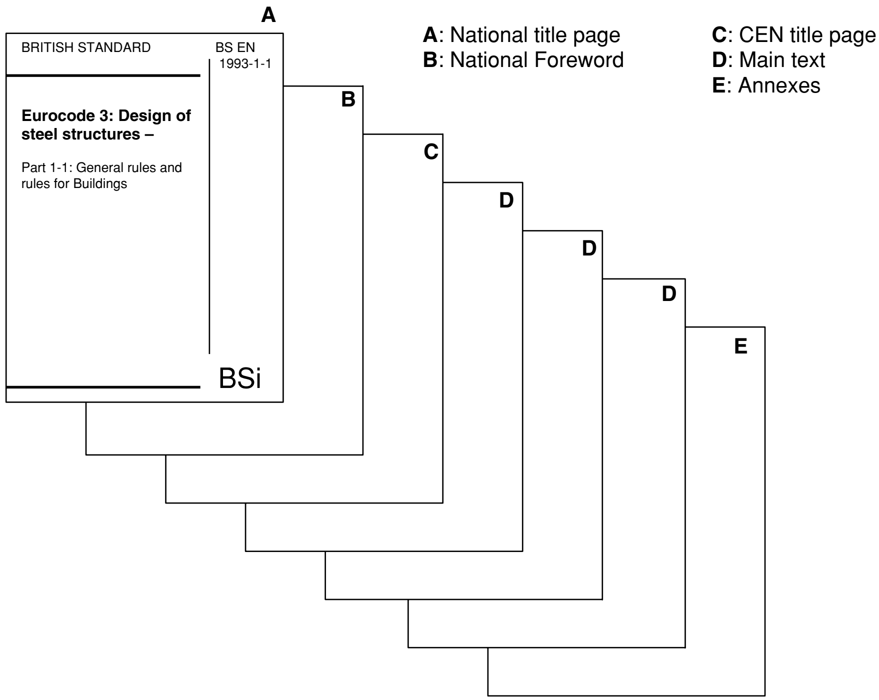


Fig. 7.1 *Layout of Eurocodes*

7.5.2 PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATION RULES

In order to produce documents which are (a) concise, (b) describe the overall aims of design and (c) provide specific guidance as to how these aims can be achieved in practice, the material in the Eurocodes is divided into 'Principles' and 'Application rules'.

Principles comprise general statements, definitions, requirements and models for which no alternative is permitted. Principles are indicated by the letter P after the clause number. The Application rules are generally recognised rules which follow the statements and satisfy the requirements given in the Principles (*Fig. 7.2*). The absence of the letter P after the clause number indicates an Application rule. The use of alternative application rules to those recommended in the Eurocode is permitted provided it can be shown that the alternatives are at least equivalent and do not adversely affect other design requirements. It is worth noting, however, that if an alternative Application rule is used the resulting design will not be deemed Eurocode compliant.

7.3.2 Minimum reinforcement areas

(1)P If crack control is required, a minimum amount of bonded reinforcement is required to control cracking in areas where tension is expected. The amount may be estimated from equilibrium between the tensile force in concrete just before cracking and the tensile force in reinforcement at yielding or at a lower stress if necessary to limit the crack width.

(2) Unless a more rigorous calculation shows lesser areas to be adequate, the required minimum areas of reinforcement may be calculated as follows. In profiled cross sections like T-beams and box girders, minimum reinforcement should be determined for the individual parts of the section (webs, flanges).

$$A_{s,min}\sigma_s = k_c k f_{ct,eff} A_{ct} \tag{7.1}$$

Fig. 7.2 *Example of Principle and Application Rule (Cl 2.4 Durability, EN 1990, pp. 26–27)*

7.5.3 NATIONALLY DETERMINED PARAMETERS AND NATIONAL ANNEXES

Possible differences in construction material/products and design and construction practices, and regional differences in climatic conditions, e.g. wind and snow loading, has meant that some parameters, e.g. partial safety factors, allowance in design for deviation of concrete cover, a particular method or application rule if several are proposed in the EN, etc., may be determined at the national level. Where a national choice is allowed this is indicated in a note in the normative text under the relevant clause. The note may include the recommended value of the parameter, or preferred method, etc. but the actual value, methodology, etc., to be used in a particular Member State will be given in an accompanying National Annex. In the UK, BSI is responsible for producing and publishing National Annexes. The recommended values of these parameters and design method/procedures are collectively referred to as Nationally Determined Parameters (NDPs). The NDPs determine various aspects of design but perhaps most importantly the level of safety of structures during execution (Eurocode terminology for construction/fabrication) and in-service, which remains the responsibility of individual nations. The European Commission wants the NDPs to be harmonised so that their number is kept to a minimum.

7.5.4 ANNEXES

Some procedures which are not used in everyday design have been included in annexes. Some of the annexes are labelled 'normative' while others are labelled 'informative'. The majority fall into the latter category. The material which appears in the 'normative' annexes has the same status as the rest of the Eurocode but appears there rather than the body of the code in order to make the document as 'user friendly' as possible. The material in the 'informative' annexes, however, does not have any status but has been included merely for information. The National Annex should be consulted for decisions on the use of informative annexes in a country.

7.5.5 NON CONTRADICTORY COMPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (NCCI)

To assist designers to use Eurocodes, the system allows the National Annex to refer to sources of non-contradictory complementary information (NCCI). An example of an NCCI relevant to concrete design is Published Document (PD) 6687. It was prepared and published by BSI and includes the following:

- background to the values chosen for some of the NDPs in EN 1992
- commentary on some specific code clauses
- requirements, which are additional to those in the code and National Annex, to comply with the UK Building Regulations.

A number of NCCIs for steel design have been produced by the Steel Construction Institute and will be referred to in Chapter 9 of this book.

7.6 Decimal point

In the Eurocodes the decimal point has been replaced by a comma. However, for consistency with the other chapters in this book the use of the decimal point has been retained.

7.7 Implementation

All the Eurocode Parts have now been published but guidance on the timing and the circumstances under which the Eurocodes must be used is still not available. Present indications would suggest that Eurocodes will be listed in the Approved Documents as a means of meeting the requirements of the Building Regulations by 2010. Some client organisations, e.g. the UK Highways Agency and the Rail Standards Authority, are keen to incorporate Eurocodes in their specifications as soon as possible. Nevertheless, if the experiences of those familiar with similar changes in design practice is anything to go by this transition will occur over a much longer time frame. For example it took at least ten years to introduce CP110 into the design office. Hearsay evidence suggests that some engineers still continue to submit calculations to BS 449 for building approval despite the publication of BS 5950 in 1985.

7.8 Maintenance

The precise mechanism by which the Eurocodes will be maintained remains unclear. All that can be said on this point is that under CEN rules all ENs should be reviewed every five years.

7.9 Difference between national standards and Eurocodes

Inevitably there are many differences between Eurocodes and the national codes. This is bound to cause confusion and will no doubt increase design time. The change in technical approval procedures are fairly minor, thanks largely to the work put in by the UK members of the various drafting panels. Consequently it should not take much time for engineers to become familiar with design procedures in the Eurocodes and subsequently to use them. The problem is not so much about using the design rules but finding them in the first place. Designers will now have to refer to a much larger number of documents in order to design the simplest of structures. For example to design a steel beam a designer will now have to refer to EN 1990 to determine the value of design loading, EN 1993-1-1 for design guidance on bending and shear, and EN 1993-1-5 for web and stiffener design. Connection design has been separated into EN 1993-1-8. Currently all the design rules are available in one document: BS 5950: Part 1. Moreover the design rules in Eurocodes are sequenced on the basis of structural phenomena rather than type of element, which means that designers must have a good understanding of structural behaviour in order to use the code.

Having discussed these more general aspects, the following chapters will describe the contents of EN 1992, EN 1993, EN 1995 and EN 1996 for, respectively, concrete, steel, timber and masonry design, and the significant differences between the Eurocode and the corresponding British Standard. Chapter 8 on concrete design to EN 1992 also includes a discussion on EN 1990 and EN 1991.

Chapter 8

Eurocodes 2: Design of concrete structures

This chapter describes the contents of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 2, the new European standard for the design of buildings in concrete, which is expected to replace BS 8110 by about 2010. The chapter highlights the principal differences between Eurocode 2: Part 1.1 and BS 8110 and illustrates the new design procedures by means of a number of worked examples on beams, slabs, pad foundation and columns. To help comparison, but primarily to ease understanding of the Eurocode, the material has been presented in a way familiar to users of BS 8110, rather than strictly adhering to the sequence of chapters and clauses adopted in the Eurocode.

8.1 Introduction

Eurocode 2 applies to the design of buildings and civil engineering works in concrete. It is based on limit state principles and comes in four parts as shown in *Table 8.1*.

Part 1.1 of Eurocode 2 gives a general basis for the design of structures in plain, reinforced, lightweight, pre-cast and prestressed concrete. In addition, it gives some detailing rules which are mainly applicable to ordinary buildings. It is largely similar in scope to BS 8110 which it will replace by about 2010. Design of building structures cannot wholly be undertaken using Part 1.1 of Eurocode 2, however. Reference will have to be made to a number of other documents, notably EN 1990 (Eurocode 0) and Eurocode 1 to determine the design values of actions (*section 8.5*), BS 4449 for mechanical properties of reinforcing steel (*section 8.4.1*), Part 1.2 of Eurocode 2 for fire design (*section 8.7.1*), BS 8500 and EN 206 for durability design (*section 8.7.2*) and Eurocode 7 for foundation design (*Fig. 8.1*). The main reason cited for structuring the information in this way is to avoid repetition and make the design guidance in Part 1.1 more concise than BS 8110.

Table 8.1 Scope of Eurocode 2: Design of Concrete Structures

Part	*Subject*
1.1	General rules and rules for buildings
1.2	Structural fire design
2	Reinforced and prestressed concrete bridges
3	Liquid retaining and containment structures

Part 1.1 of Eurocode 2, hereafter referred to as EC 2, was issued as a preliminary standard or ENV in 1992 and in final form as BS EN 1992-1-1 in 2004. The following subjects are covered in EC 2:

Section 1: General
Section 2: Basis of design
Section 3: Materials
Section 4: Durability and cover to reinforcement
Section 5: Structural analysis
Section 6: Ultimate limit states
Section 7: Serviceability limit states
Section 8: Detailing of reinforcement and prestressing tendons – General
Section 9: Detailing of members and particular rules
Section 10: Additional rules for precast concrete elements and structures
Section 11: Lightweight aggregate concrete structures
Section 12: Plain and lightly reinforced concrete structures

Also included are ten annexes which provide supplementary information on a range of topics including creep and shrinkage, reinforcing steel, durability design and analysis of flat slabs and shear walls.

The purpose of this chapter is to describe the contents of EC 2 and to highlight the principal differences between EC 2 and BS 8110. A number of examples covering the design of beams, slabs, pad foundation and columns have also been included to illustrate the new design procedures.

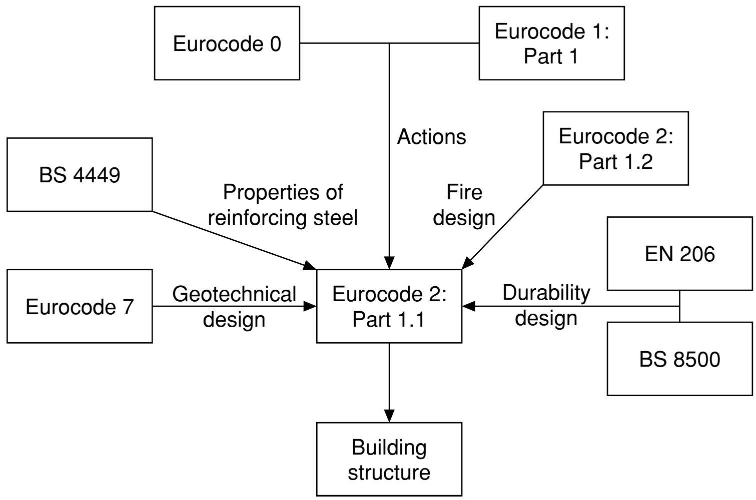


Fig. 8.1 *Eurocode 2: Part 1.1 supporting documents.*

8.2 Structure of EC 2

Although the ultimate aim of EC 2 and BS 8110 is largely the same, namely to principally provide guidance on the structural use of reinforced and prestressed concrete in building structures, the organisation of material in the two documents is rather different.

For example, BS 8110 contains separate chapters on the design of beams, slabs, columns, bases, etc. However, EC 2 divides the material on the basis of structural action, i.e. bending, shear, deflection, torsion, etc., which may apply to any element. Furthermore, prestressed concrete is not dealt with separately in EC 2 as in BS 8110, but each section on bending, shear, deflection, etc., contains rules relevant to the design of prestressed members.

There is a slight departure from this principle in chapters 5 and 9 of EC 2 which give guidance on the analysis and detailing respectively of specific member types.

8.3 Symbols

The following symbols which have largely been taken from EC 2 have been used in this chapter.

GEOMETRIC PROPERTIES:

b	width of section
d	effective depth of the tension reinforcement
h	overall depth of section
x	depth to neutral axis
z	lever arm
l_{eff}	effective span of beams and slabs
l_n	clear distance between the faces of the supports
a_1, a_2	allowance at supports used for calculating the effective span of a member
c_{nom}	nominal cover to reinforcement
d_2	effective depth to compression reinforcement

BENDING:

g_k, G_k	characteristic permanent action
q_k, Q_k	characteristic variable action
w_k, W_k	characteristic wind load
z	lever arm
f_{ck}	characteristic compressive cylinder strength of concrete at 28 days
f_{yk}	characteristic yield strength of reinforcement
f_{cd}	design compressive strength of concrete
f_{yd}	design yield strength of reinforcement
F_d	design action
F_k	characteristic action
F_{rep}	representative action
X_k	characteristic strength
X_d	design strength
γ_C	partial factor for concrete
γ_f, γ_F	partial factor for actions
γ_S	partial factor for steel
γ_G	partial factor for permanent actions
γ_Q	partial factor for variable actions
γ_M	partial factor for material properties

α_{cc}	a coefficient taking account of sustained compression
C	concrete strength class
K_0	coefficient given by $M/f_{ck}bd^2$
K'_0	coefficient given by $M_{Rd}/f_{ck}bd^2 = 0.167$
M_{Ed}	design ultimate moment
M_{Rd}	design ultimate moment of resistance
A_{s1}	area of tension reinforcement
A_{s2}	area of compression reinforcement

SHEAR:

k	a coefficient relating to section depth
s	spacing of stirrups
z	$\approx 0.9d$
α	angle of shear reinforcement to the longitudinal axis
θ	angle of the compression strut to the longitudinal axis
ρ_1	reinforcement ratio corresponding to A_{s1}
$\rho_{w,min}$	minimum shear reinforcement ratio
ν_1	strength reduction factor for concrete cracked in shear
σ_{cp}	average compressive stress in concrete due to axial force
f_{ywd}	design yield strength of shear reinforcement
V_{Ed}	design value of the applied shear force
$V_{Rd,c}$	shear resistance of member without shear reinforcement
$V_{Rd,max}$	maximum shear force, limited by crushing resistance of compression strut
$V_{Rd,s}$	shear force sustained by yielding of shear reinforcement
A_{sw}	cross-sectional area of the shear reinforcement

COMPRESSION:

b	width of cross-section
h	depth of cross-section
l	clear height between end restraints
l_o	effective length
k_1, k_2	relative flexibilities of rotational restraints at column ends
i	radius of gyration
λ_{lim}	limiting slenderness ratio for ignoring second order effects
θ	inclination used to represent imperfections of the structure
e_o	minimum eccentricity = h/30 but not less than 20 mm
M_{01},M_{02}	respectively the numerically lower and higher values of the first order end moments at ultimate limit states, i.e. ($\lvert M_{01}\rvert \le \lvert M_{02}\rvert$) including allowance for imperfections
e_i	eccentricity due to geometrical imperfections
e_2	deflection due to second order effects
N_{Ed}	design axial load
n	$= N_{Ed}/A_c f_{cd}$
n_u	$= 1 + \omega$ where $\omega = A_s f_{yd}/(A_c f_{cd})$
n_{bal}	$= 0.4$
M_{0Ed}	equivalent first order moment including the effect of imperfections ($= M_{0e}$)
M_{Ed}	design bending moment
A_c	cross-sectional area of the concrete
A_s	area of longitudinal reinforcement

8.4 Material properties

8.4.1 CHARACTERISTIC STRENGTHS

Concrete (Cl. 3.1, EC 2)

Unlike BS 8110, the design rules in EC 2 are based on the characteristic (5 per cent) compressive cylinder strength of concrete at 28 days (f_{ck}). Equivalent cube strengths ($f_{ck,cube}$) are included in EC 2 but they are only regarded as an alternative method to prove compliance. Generally, the cylinder strength is approximately 0.8 × the cube strength of concrete i.e. $f_{ck} \approx 0.8 \times f_{ck,cube}$. The design rules in EC 2 are valid for concrete of strength classes up to C90/105, i.e. cylinder strength 90 MPa and cube strength 105 MPa. However, this book only discusses the rules relevant to concrete strength classes up to C50/60 as these are the classes most often used in reinforced concrete design.

Table 8.2 shows the actual strength classes commonly used in reinforced concrete design. Also included in the table are two formulae for calculating the mean tensile strength (f_{ctm}) and the 5 per cent fractile tensile strength ($f_{ctk,0.05}$) of concrete, which are referred to later in this chapter.

Reinforcing steel (Cl. 3.2, EC 2)

According to Annex C, the design rules in EC 2 are applicable to steel reinforcement with characteristic yield strength in the range 400–600 N mm^{-2}. Details of the actual yield strength of steel available in the UK for the reinforcement of concrete can be found in BS 4449: 2005. This document indicates that steel reinforcement will now be manufactured in three grades, all of 500 N mm^{-2} characteristic yield strength, but with differing ductility (*Table 8.3*). Plain round bars of characteristic yield strength

Table 8.2 Concrete strength classes and properties (based Table 3.1, EC 2)

Strength Classes for Concrete	*C20/25*	*C25/30*	*C28/35*	*C30/37*	*C32/40*	*C35/45*	*C40/50*	*C45/55*	*C50/60*
f_{ck}	20	25	28	30	32	35	40	45	50
$f_{ck,cube}$	25	30	35	37	40	45	50	55	60
f_{ctm}	$f_{ctm} = 0.3 \times f_{ck}^{(2/3)}$ N mm^{-2} (8.1)								
$f_{ctk,0.05}$	$f_{ctk,0.05} = 0.7 \times f_{ctm}$ N mm^{-2} (8.2)								

Table 8.3 Tensile and other properties of steel for the reinforcement of concrete

Property	*Ductility Class*		
	A	*B*	*C*
Characteristic yield strength, f_{yk} (N mm^{-2})		500	
Young's modulus (kN mm^{-2})		200	
Characteristic strain at ultimate force, ε_{uk} (%)	≥ 2.5	≥ 5.0	≥ 7.5

250 N mm^{-2} are not covered in this standard, and this will presumably cease to be produced in the UK. Present indication would suggest that ductility classes B and C will be the most widely available and specified steel in the UK. Ductility class A, in sizes 12 mm and below, in coil form is widely used by reinforcement fabricators for use on automatic link bending machines (see CARES information sheet on 'Design, manufacture and supply of reinforcement steel').

8.4.2 DESIGN STRENGTHS (CL. 2.4.2.4, EC 2)

Generally, design strengths (X_d) are obtained by dividing the characteristic strength (X_k) by the appropriate partial safety factor for materials (γ_M):

$$X_d = \frac{X_k}{\gamma_M} \tag{8.3}$$

The partial safety factors for concrete and steel reinforcement for persistent and transient design situations are shown in *Table 8.4*. Note that in EC 2 the partial safety factor for ultimate limit states has a single value of 1.5. This is different to BS 8110 where the partial safety factor is a function of the stress type under consideration (see *Table 3.3*, Chapter 3).

Table 8.4 Partial safety factors for materials (based on Table 2.1N, EC 2)

Limit state	γ_C *for concrete*	γ_S *for reinforcing and prestressing steel*
Ultimate	1.5	1.15
Serviceability	1.0	1.0

8.5 Actions (Cl. 2.3.1, EC 2)

Action is the Eurocode terminology for load. EC 2 defines an action (F) as a set of forces, deformations (e.g. differential settlement and temperature effects) or accelerations acting on the structure. Actions may be 'permanent' (G), e.g. self-weight of structure, fittings and fixed equipment, or 'variable' (Q), e.g. weight of occupants, wind and snow loads. The following discusses how the **characteristic** and **design values** of actions on building structures *not involving geotechnical actions* for the ultimate limit state of equilibrium and strength are assessed. Actions on/from structures involving geotechnical actions, e.g. retaining walls and foundations are assessed somewhat differently and the reader is referred to EN 1990 and Eurocode 7 for further details.

8.5.1 CHARACTERISTIC ACTIONS (CL. 2.3.1.1, EC 2)

The characteristic values of both permanent and variable actions (F_k) are specified in BS EN 1991: *Actions on Structures* (EC 1). EC 1 includes material traditionally found in documents such as BS 6399: *Loading for buildings* and BS 648: *Schedule for weights of building materials*, but its scope is far wider as it provides information on actions relevant to the design of all civil engineering structures, not just buildings. EC 1 is published in ten parts as listed in *Table 8.5*. Parts 1-1 to 1-7 are the most relevant to the design of building structures.

Table 8.5 Scope of Eurocode 1: Actions on Structures

Document No	*Subject*
BS EN 1991-1-1	Densities, self-weight and imposed loads
BS EN 1991-1-2	Actions on structures exposed to fire
BS EN 1991-1-3	Snow loads
BS EN 1991-1-4	Wind loads
BS EN 1991-1-5	Thermal actions
BS EN 1991-1-6	Actions during execution
BS EN 1991-1-7	Accidental actions due to impact and explosions
BS EN 1991-2	Traffic loads on bridges
BS EN 1991-3	Actions induced by cranes and machinery
BS EN 1991-4	Actions in silos and tanks

8.5.2 DESIGN VALUES OF ACTIONS (CL. 2.4.1, EC 2 / CL. 6, EN 1990)

In general, the design value of an action (F_d) is obtained by multiplying the representative value (F_{rep}) by the appropriate partial safety factor for actions (γ_f):

$$F_d = \gamma_f . F_{rep} \tag{8.4}$$

Tables 8.6 and *8.7* show the recommended values of partial safety factor for permanent, γ_G, and variable actions, γ_Q, for the ultimate limit states of equilibrium (EQU) and strength (STR). It can be seen that the maximum values of γ_G and γ_Q are 1.35 and 1.5 respectively. The comparable values in BS 8110 are 1.4 and 1.6. It can also be seen that the partial safety factors for actions depend on a number of other aspects including the category of limit state as well as the effect of the action on the design situation under consideration. For example, when checking for the limit states of

Table 8.6 Partial safety factors for the ultimate limit state of equilibrium

Limit state	*Load Type*				
	Permanent, G_k		*Imposed, Q_k*		*Wind, W_k*
	Unfavourable	*Favourable*	*Unfavourable*	*Favourable*	*Unfavourable*
Equilibrium	1.10	0.9	1.5	0	$1.5\Psi_0$

Table 8.7 Load combinations and partial safety/combination factors for the ultimate limit state of strength

Limit state/Load combination	*Load Type*				
	Permanent, G_k		*Imposed, Q_k*		*Wind, W_k*
	Unfavourable	*Favourable*	*Unfavourable*	*Favourable*	
Strength:					
1. Permanent and variable	$1.35/1.35\xi$*	1.0	1.5	0	–
2. Permanent and wind	$1.35/1.35\xi$	1.0	–	–	1.5
3. Permanent, imposed and wind					
(a)	1.35	1.0	$1.5\psi_{0,1}$		$1.5\psi_{0,2}$
(b)	$1.35/1.35\xi$	1.0	1.5	0	$1.5\psi_0$
(c)	$1.35/1.35\xi$	1.0	$1.5\psi_0$	0	1.5

* See equation (8.9) later

equilibrium and strength, the maximum values of γ_G are 1.1 and 1.35, respectively. However, when checking for equilibrium alone, γ_G is taken to be 1.1 if the action increases the risk of instability (unfavourable action) or 0.9 if the action reduces the risk of instability (favourable action). For a given limit state several combinations of loading may have to be considered in order to arrive at the value of the design action on the structure (see *Table 8.7*) and guidance on this aspect of design is discussed in section 8.5.3.

In equation 8.4, F_{rep} may be the characteristic value of a permanent or leading variable action (F_k), or the accompanying value (ΨF_k) of a variable action. In turn, the accompanying value of a variable action may be the combination value ($\Psi_0 F_k$), the frequent value ($\Psi_1 F_k$) or the quasi-permanent value ($\Psi_2 F_k$). The frequent value and the quasi-permanent values are used to determine values of accidental actions, e.g. impact and explosions, and to check serviceability criteria (deflection and cracking). The combination value is given by

$$\text{Combination value} = \Psi_0 F_k \tag{8.5}$$

where Ψ_0 is the combination factor obtained from *Table 8.8* and is a function of the type of variable action. The factor Ψ_0 has been introduced to take account of the fact that where a structure is subject to, say, two independent variable actions, it is unlikely that both will reach their maximum value simultaneously. Under these circumstances, it is assumed that the 'leading' variable action (i.e. $Q_{k,1}$) is at its maximum value and any 'accompanying' variable actions will attain a reduced value, i.e. $\Psi_0 Q_{k,i}$, where i > 1. Leading and accompanying variable actions are assigned by trial and error as discussed below.

Table 8.8 Ψ_0, Ψ_2 values

Variable actions	Ψ_0	Ψ_2
Imposed loads		
Dwellings	0.7	0.3
Offices	0.7	0.3
Shopping and congregation areas	0.7	0.6
Storage	1.0	0.8
Parking (vehicle weight ≤ 30 kN)	0.7	0.6
Snow loads (where latitudes ≤ 1000 m above sea level)	0.5	0.0
Wind loads	0.5	0.0

8.5.3 COMBINATION EXPRESSIONS

Having determined the design values of individual actions acting on the structure it is necessary to consider the effect of possible combination of actions. According to EN 1990 the design value of action effects, E_d, assuming the structure is subjected to both permanent and a single variable action (e.g. dead load plus imposed load or dead load plus wind load) can be assessed using the following expression

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ “+” } \gamma_{Q,1} Q_{k,1} \tag{8.6}$$

where
"+" implies 'to be combined with'
Σ implies 'the combined effect of'

Using the partial safety factors given in *Table 8.7*, the design value of the action effect is given by

$$E_d = 1.35G_k + 1.5Q_k$$
(load combinations 1 and 2, *Table 8.7*)

The design value of an action effect due to permanent and two (or more) variable actions, e.g. dead plus imposed and wind load, is obtained from equation 8.7.

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ “+” } \gamma_{Q,1} Q_{k,1} \text{ “+” } \sum_{i>1} \gamma_{Q,i} \psi_{0,i} Q_{k,i} \tag{8.7}$$

Note that this expression yields two (or more) estimates of design actions and the most onerous should be selected for design. For example, if a structure is subjected to permanent, office and wind loads of G_k, Q_k and W_k the values of the design actions are:

$$E_d = 1.35G_{k,j} \text{ “+” } 1.5Q_k \text{ “+” } 1.5 \times 0.5W_k$$
(load combination 3(b), *Table 8.7*)

and

$$E_d = 1.35G_{k,j} \text{ “+” } 1.5 \times 0.7Q_k \text{ “+” } 1.5W_k$$
(load combination 3(c), *Table 8.7*)

Equations 8.6 and 8.7 are based on expression 6.10 in EN 1990. This document also includes two alternative expressions, namely 6.10a and 6.10b (reproduced as equations 8.8 and 8.9 respectively) for calculating the design values of actions, use of which may improve structural efficiency, particularly for heavier structural materials such as concrete.

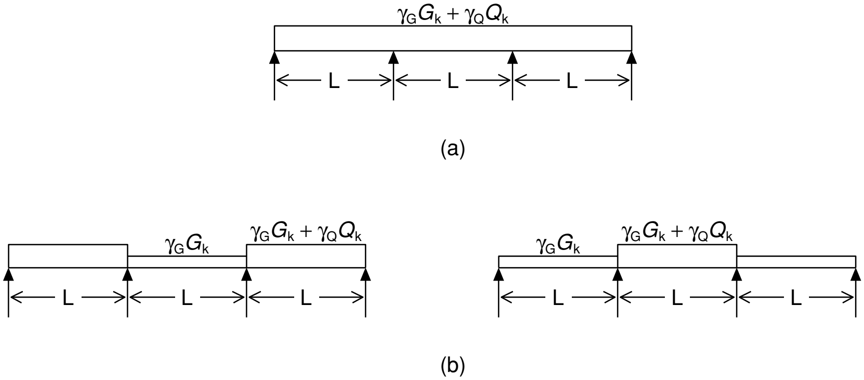


Fig. 8.2 *Load Set 2: (a) all spans carrying the design permanent and variable loads and (b) alternate spans carrying the design permanent and variable load, other spans carrying only the design permanent load.*

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ “+” } \gamma_{Q,1}\psi_{0,1}Q_{k,1} \text{ “+” } \sum_{i>1} \gamma_{Q,i}\psi_{0,i}Q_{k,i} \tag{8.8}$$

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \xi_j \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ “+” } \gamma_{Q,1}Q_{k,1} \text{ “+” } \sum_{i>1} \gamma_{Q,i}\psi_{0,i}Q_{k,i} \tag{8.9}$$

where

ξ is a reduction factor for unfavourable permanent actions. The value of ξ recommended in the National Annex to EC 2 is 0.925.

Note that equation 8.8 yields only one estimate of E_d (i.e. load combination 3(a) in *Table 8.7*) whereas equation 8.9 yields two (i.e. load combinations 3(b) and 3(c) in *Table 8.7*). For UK building structures, designers may use the output from either equation 8.6 or 8.7 (depending on the number of variable actions present) or the more onerous output from equations 8.8 and 8.9.

Use of actions determined via equations 8.6 / 8.7 should lead to designs with comparable levels of safety to that currently achieved using BS 8110. However, use of equations 8.8 and 8.9 may improve structural efficiency, as illustrated in example 8.1.

8.5.3 LOADING ARRANGEMENTS

As discussed in section 3.6.2, design of continuous beams (and slabs) will require consideration of load arrangements. This term refers to the way in which variable actions should be positioned in order to produce the most onerous design conditions. The National Annex to EC 2 suggests two alternative loading arrangements for continuous beams: Load Set 1 and Load Set 2. Generally, Load Set 2 (*Fig. 8.2*) will be used in the UK as it is similar to existing recommendations in BS 8110 (i.e. all spans fully loaded and maximum and minimum design loads on alternate spans) and requires consideration of a fewer number of load cases. However, unlike BS 8110, clause 2.4.3 of EC 2 recommends that the same value of γ_G (either 1.0 or 1.35 whichever gives the most unfavourable effect) is used for all spans.

Load Set 2(a) can also be used to determine the design conditions on continuous slabs provided the following assumptions are satisfied:

(i) In a one-way spanning slab the area of each bay exceeds 30 m^2 (see *Fig. 3.62* for definition of bay)
(ii) The ratio of the characteristic variable load to the characteristic permanent load does not exceed 1.25
(iii) The characteristic imposed load does not exceed 5 kNm^{-2}, excluding partitions.

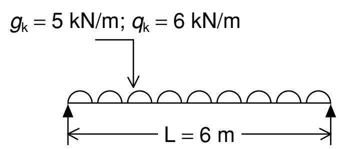
According to the National Annex to EC 2 when slabs are analysed using this load arrangement, the resulting support moments except those at the supports of cantilevers should be reduced by 20 per cent with a consequential increase in the span moments (*Table 1* of National Annex to EC 2).

Example 8.1 Design actions for simply supported beam (EN 1990)

A simply supported beam for an office building has a span of 6 m. Calculate the values of the design bending moments, $M_{E,d}$, assuming

(a) the beam supports uniformly distributed permanent and variable actions of 5 kNm^{-1} and 6 kNm^{-1} respectively
(b) in addition to the actions described in (a) the beam also supports an independent variable concentrated load of 20 kN at mid-span.

LOAD CASE A



Since the beam is subjected to only one variable action use equation 8.6 to determine E_d where

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ "+" } \gamma_{Q,1} Q_{k,1}$$

$$\Rightarrow F_{E,d} = 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times (6 \times 6) = 94.5 \text{ kN}$$

Hence, $M_{E,d} = \dfrac{F_{E,d}L}{8} = \dfrac{94.5 \times 6}{8} = 70.9 \text{ kNm}$

An alternative estimate of $M_{E,d}$ can be obtained using equations 8.8 and 8.9, respectively

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ "+" } \gamma_{Q,1} \psi_{0,1} Q_{k,1} \text{ "+" } \sum_{i>1} \gamma_{Q,i} \psi_{0,i} Q_{k,i}$$

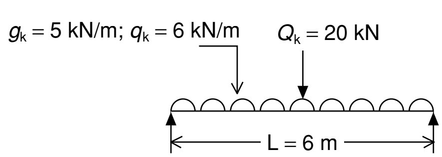
$$\Rightarrow F_{E,d} = 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times 0.7 \times (6 \times 6) + 0 = 78.3 \text{ kN}$$

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1} \xi_j \gamma_{G,j} G_{k,j} \text{ "+" } \gamma_{Q,1} Q_{k,1} \text{ "+" } \sum_{i>1} \gamma_{Q,i} \psi_{0,i} Q_{k,i}$$

$$\Rightarrow F_{E,d} = 0.925 \times 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times (6 \times 6) + 0 = 91.5 \text{ kN (critical)}$$

Hence $F_{E,d}$ is 91.5 kN and $M_{E,d} = \dfrac{F_{E,d}L}{8} = \dfrac{91.5 \times 6}{8} = 68.6 \text{ kNm}$.

LOAD CASE B



Example 8.1 *continued*

The extra complication here is that it is not clear if q_k or Q_k is the leading variable action. This can only be determined by trial and error. This time use equation 8.7 to evaluate E_d, since there are two independent variable actions are present.
Assuming q_k is the leading variable action gives

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1}\gamma_{G,j}G_{k,j} \text{ "+" } \gamma_{Q,1}Q_{k,1} \text{ "+" } \sum_{i>1}\gamma_{Q,i}\psi_{0,i}Q_{k,i}$$

$$F_{E,d} = [1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times (6 \times 6)] + 1.5 \times 0.7 \times 20$$

$$= 94.5(F_{E,d1}) + 21(F_{E,d2}) = 115.5 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{and } M_{E,d} = \frac{F_{E,d1}L}{8} + \frac{F_{E,d2}L}{4} = \frac{94.5 \times 6}{8} + \frac{21 \times 6}{4} = 102.4 \text{ kNm}$$

Assuming Q_k is the leading variable action gives

$$F_{E,d} = 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times 20 + 1.5 \times 0.7 \times (6 \times 6)$$

$$= 40.5(F_{E,d1}) + 30(F_{E,d2}) + 37.8(F_{E,d3}) = 108.3 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{and } M_{E,d} = \frac{(F_{E,d1} + F_{E,d3})L}{8} + \frac{F_{E,d2}L}{4} = \frac{(40.5 + 37.8) \times 6}{8} + \frac{30 \times 6}{4} = 103.7 \text{ kNm (maximum moments)}$$

Alternatively use equations 8.8 and 8.9 to estimate $F_{E,d}$. Assuming q_k is the leading variable action and substituting into 8.8 gives

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1}\gamma_{G,j}G_{k,j} \text{ "+" } \gamma_{Q,1}\psi_{0,1}Q_{k,1} \text{ "+" } \sum_{i>1}\gamma_{Q,i}\psi_{0,i}Q_{k,i}$$

$$F_{E,d} = 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times 0.7 \times (6 \times 6) + 1.5 \times 0.7 \times 20 = 99.3 \text{ kN}$$

$F_{E,d}$ is unchanged if Q_k is taken as the leading variable action and in both cases $M_{E,d} = 90.2$ kNm.
Repeating this procedure using equation 8.9 and assuming, first, that q_k is the leading variable action and Q_k is the accompanying variable action and, second, Q_k is the leading variable action and q_k is the accompanying variable action gives, respectively

$$E_d = \sum_{j\geq 1}\xi_j\gamma_{G,j}G_{k,j} \text{ "+" } \gamma_{Q,1}Q_{k,1} \text{ "+" } \sum_{i>1}\gamma_{Q,i}\psi_{0,i}Q_{k,i}$$

$$F_{E,d} = [0.925 \times 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times (6 \times 6)] + [1.5 \times 0.7 \times 20]$$

$$= 91.5 + 21 = 112.5 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{and } M_{E,d} = \frac{F_{E,d1}L}{8} + \frac{F_{E,d2}L}{4} = \frac{91.5 \times 6}{8} + \frac{21 \times 6}{4} = 100.1 \text{ kNm}$$

$$F_{E,d} = [0.925 \times 1.35 \times (5 \times 6) + 1.5 \times 20 + 1.5 \times 0.7 \times (6 \times 6)$$

$$= 37.5 + 30 + 37.8 = 105.3 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{and } M_{E,d} = \frac{(F_{E,d1} + F_{E,d3})L}{8} + \frac{F_{E,d2}L}{4} = \frac{(37.5 + 37.8) \times 6}{8} + \frac{30 \times 6}{4} = 101.5 \text{ kNm (maximum moment)}$$

Again, the most structurally economical solution is found via equation 8.9, which will normally be the case for concrete structures provided that permanent actions are not greater than 4.5 times variable actions except for storage loads. However, this saving has to be weighed against the additional design effort required. Moreover, the output from equations 8.8 and 8.9 should not be used to perform stability calculations and the reader is referred to EN1990 for further information on this aspect. Note that the value of 1.35 for γ_G is conservative and used throughout this chapter.

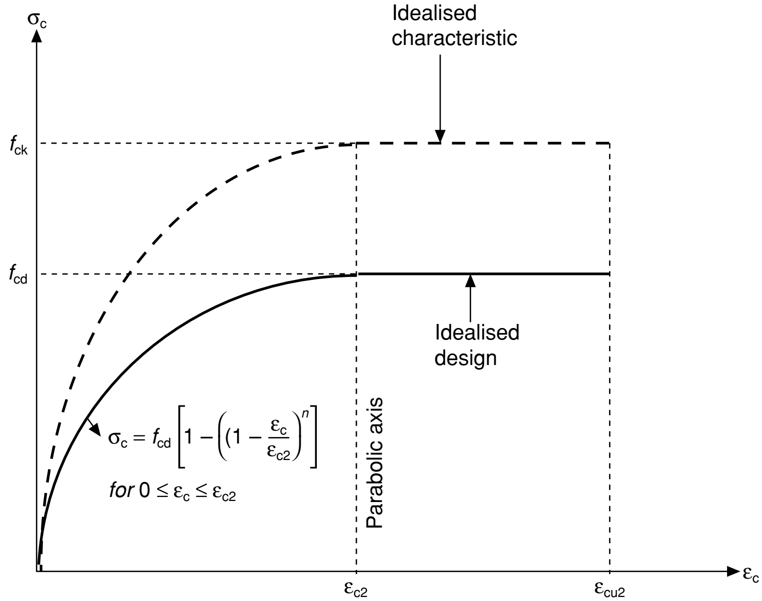


Fig. 8.3 *Parabolic-rectangular stress-strain diagram for concrete ($f_{ck} \le 50$ N mm^{-2}) in compression (Fig. 3.3, EC 2).*

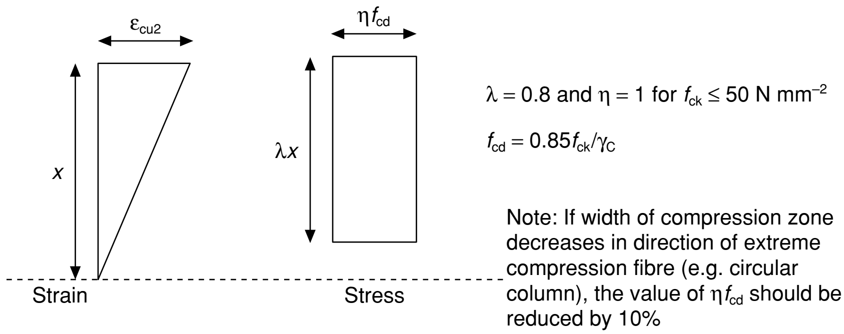


Fig. 8.4 *Simplified stress block for concrete at the ultimate limit state (based on Fig. 3.5, EC 2).*

8.6 Stress-strain diagrams

8.6.1 CONCRETE (CL. 3.1.7, EC 2)

Figure 8.3 shows the idealised (characteristic and design) stress-strain relationships for concrete in compression. The basic shapes of the curves, i.e. parabolic-rectangular, are similar to that adopted in BS 8110. The ultimate strain (ε_{cu2}) of the concrete in compression is taken as 0.0035 in both codes but the position of the parabolic axis is fixed in EC 2 i.e. $\varepsilon_{c2} = 0.002$ for $f_{ck} \le 50$ N mm^{-2}, whereas in BS 8110 it is a function of the compressive strength of concrete (*Fig. 3.7*).

The design compressive strength of concrete, f_{cd}, is defined as

$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc} f_{ck}/\gamma_C \tag{8.10}$$

where

α_{cc} coefficient taking account of long term effects on the compressive strength = 0.85

γ_C partial safety factor for concrete = 1.5 (*Table 8.4*)

Like BS 8110, EC 2 allows the use of an equivalent rectangular stress distribution for the design of cross-sections as shown in *Fig. 8.4*. This is slightly different to the rectangular distribution

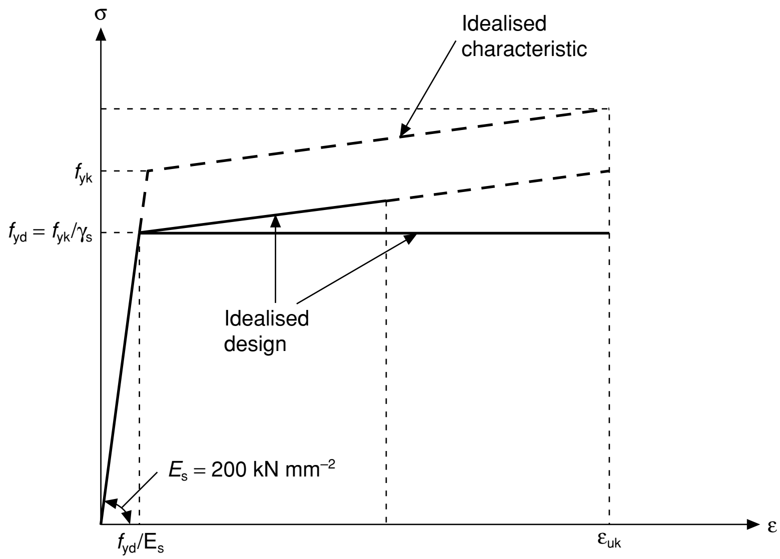


Fig. 8.5 *Design stress strain diagram for steel reinforcement (Fig 3.8, EC 2).*

recommended in BS 8110, as the former is based on cylinder rather than the cube strength of concrete. Note that for $f_{ck} \leq 50$ N mm^{-2} the depth of compression zone is $0.8x$ and the effective strength is $0.85f_{ck}/1.5$ ($= 0.567f_{ck}$) as $\eta = 1$.

8.6.2 REINFORCING STEEL

The design steel stresses, f_{yd}, are derived from the idealised (characteristic) stresses, f_{yk}, by dividing by the partial safety factor for steel, γ_s:

$$f_{yd} = \frac{f_{yk}}{\gamma_S} \tag{8.11}$$

Figure 8.5 shows the idealised and design stress-strain curves for reinforcing steel recommended in EC 2. The idealised curve has an inclined top branch. But for design either an inclined top branch curve with a strain limit of ε_{ud} ($= 0.9\varepsilon_{uk}$, see *Table 8.3*) or a horizontal top branch curve with no limit to the steel strain and a maximum design stress of f_{yk}/γ_s can be used. The design equations which have been developed later in this chapter assume the stress-strain curve for steel has a horizontal top branch.

8.7 Cover, fire, durability and bond (Cl 4, EC 2)

In EC 2 the cover to reinforcement is principally a function of

1. Fire resistance
2. Durability
3. Bond

Other factors include the quality of construction control and the quality of the surface against which the reinforcement is cast. EC 2 requirements in relation to each of these aspects are discussed below.

8.7.1 FIRE

As previously noted, fire design is covered in Part 1.2 of Eurocode 2 (EC 2-1-2). Exposure of members to high temperatures in the event of a fire can result in reduction of strength of both the concrete and embedded steel reinforcement, as well as spalling of the concrete cover. The fire resistance of concrete members is principally related to the size and shape of element as well as the cover to centre of reinforcing bars i.e. axis distance (see *Fig. 8.6*). In the case of columns it is also a function of the load supported. The risk of spalling is

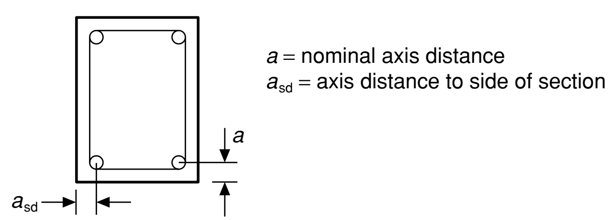


Fig. 8.6 *Axis distance.*

Table 8.9 Minimum dimensions and axial distances to meet specified periods of fire resistance

Fire resistance (min)	*Beam*		*One-way solid slab*		*Braced column* ([6]μ_{fi} = 0.7) – [7]*Method A*	
	Simply supported [1]b_{min}/[2]a *(mm)*	[3]*Continuous* [1]b_{min}/a *(mm)*	*Simply supported* [4]h_s/a *(mm)*	[3]*Continuous* [4]h_s/a *(mm)*	*Exposed on one side* [5]b_{min}/a *(mm)*	*Exposed on more than one side* [5]b_{min}/a *(mm)*
R60	120/40 160/35 200/30 300/25	120/25 200/12	80/20	80/10	155/25	250/46 350/40
R90	150/55 200/45 300/40 400/35	150/35 250/25	100/30	100/15	155/25	350/53 [8]450/40
R120	200/65 240/60 300/55 500/50	200/45 300/35 450/35 500/30	120/40	200/20	175/35	[8]350/57 [8]450/51
R240	280/90 350/80 500/75 700/70	280/75 500/60 650/60 700/50	175/65	280/40	295/70	

Notes:
[1]b_{min} = beam width
[2]a = axis distance
[3]Applicable where specified detailing rules are observed and moment redistribution does not exceed 15%. Otherwise, consider as simply supported.
[4]h_s = depth of slab
[5]b_{min} = column width
[6]Ratio of the design axial load under fire conditions to the design resistance at normal temperature conditions conservatively taken as 0.7
[7]Assumes (i) the effective length of the column under fire conditions $l_{0,fi} \le 3$ m where $l_{0,fi} = 0.5 \times$ actual length (l) for intermediate floors and $0.5l \le l_{0,fi} \le 0.7l$ for the upper floor (ii) the first order end eccentricity under fire conditions, $e = M_{0Ed,fi}/N_{0Ed,fi} \le 0.15$b where $M_{0Ed,fi}$ and $N_{0Ed,fi}$ are the first order end moment and axial load under fire conditions and (iii) $A_s \le 0.04A_c$
[8]Minimum of 8 bars required

related to the type of aggregate used in the mix, with concrete made of siliceous aggregate more vulnerable to this form of damage.

EC 2-1-2 describes a number of methods for verifying the fire resistance of concrete members including a method based on tabulated data which is similar to the current approach recommended in BS 8110. *Table 8.9* shows values of minimum dimensions and associated axis distances for common element types, necessary to achieve specified periods of fire resistance. The tabulated values are valid for normal weight concrete made of siliceous aggregate.

8.7.2 BOND AND DURABILITY

The nominal cover to reinforcement, c_{nom}, is obtained from the minimum cover, c_{min}, by adding an allowance for likely deviations during construction, Δc_{dev} i.e.

$$c_{nom} = c_{min} + \Delta c_{dev} \tag{8.12}$$

The recommended value of Δc_{dev} for reinforced concrete is normally taken as 10 mm but for concrete cast against uneven surfaces should be increased by allowing larger deviations in design. According to clause 4.4.1.3, the minimum cover should be taken as 40 mm for concrete cast on

Table 8.10 Minimum cover to reinforcement for durability, $c_{min,dur}$

Exposure class	[1]*Minimum cover (mm)*							
X0	*Not recommended for reinforced concrete*							
XC1	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15
XC2	–	25	25	25	25	25	25	25
XC3/4	–	35	30	25	25	20	20	20
XD1	–	–	[2]35	[2]30	30	[2]25	25	25
XD2	–	–	[3]40	[3]35	[2]35	[3]30	30	30
XD3	–	–	–	–	[3]50	[3]45	[2]40	40
XS1	–	–	–	–	[2]40	[2]35	35	30
XS2	–	–	[3]40	[3]35	[2]35	[3]30	30	30
XS3	–	–	–	–	–	[3]50	[2]45	45
Maximum free water/cement ratio	0.70	0.65	0.60	0.55	0.5	0.45	0.40	0.35
Minimum cement content (kgm^{-3})	240	260	280	300	320	340	360	380
[4]Lowest concrete class	C20/25	C25/30	C28/35	C32/40	C35/45	C40/50	C45/55	C50/60

Notes:
[1]Based on a design life of 50 years
[2]Increase minimum cement content by 20 kgm^{-3}
[3]Increase minimum cement content by 40 kgm^{-3} and reduce the free water/cement ratio by 0.05
[4]Concrete classes are for OPC concrete

prepared ground (including blinding) and 65 mm where concrete is cast directly against soil.

The minimum cover to reinforcement is given by the following expression

$$c_{min} = \max\{c_{min,dur};\ c_{min,b};\ 10\text{ mm}\} \quad (8.13)$$

where
$c_{min,dur}$ is the minimum cover for durability
$c_{min,b}$ is the minimum cover for bond

From equation 8.13 it can be seen that the minimum cover should not be less than 10 mm. In clause 4.4.1.2(3) it is further recommended that in order to transmit bond forces safely and to ensure adequate compaction of the concrete, the minimum cover should not be less than $c_{min,b}$ where

$c_{min,b}$ = diameter of bar, ϕ, provided the nominal maximum aggregate size, $d_g \leq 32$ mm

The route to estimating $c_{min,dur}$ is more complex and, like BS 8110, principally depends on

1. Environmental conditions
2. Concrete quality

With regard to environmental conditions, EC 2 defines six major exposure classes and eighteen sub-classes to which a structure could be subject during its design life. They are identical to those used in BS 8110 (see *Table 3.5*) and may occur singly or in combination. As with BS 8110, the designer must turn to EN 206: *Concrete – Performance, Production, Placing and Compliance Criteria* and the complementary British Standard BS 8500: Part 1: *Method of specifying and guidance for the specifier* in order to determine the minimum concrete quality and minimum cover to reinforcement necessary to achieve the design life of the structure. *Table 8.10* which is based on advice in these documents gives for particular exposure classes a summary of the minimum concrete quality (in terms of maximum water/cement ratio and minimum cement content) and minimum covers to reinforcement necessary to achieve a design life of 50 years for OPC concrete. If blended mixes are used it is possible to reduce the depth of concrete cover and/or the quality of the concrete indicated in *Table 8.10* as discussed in section 3.8.1 of this book.

Finally it is worth noting that in clause 7.3.1 of EC 2 it is also suggested that the presence of cracks can impair concrete durability and, like BS 8110, recommends that the maximum surface crack width should not generally exceed 0.3 mm in reinforced concrete members. This limiting crack width is achieved in practice by (a) providing a minimum area of reinforcement and (b) limiting either the maximum bar spacing or the maximum bar diameter. These requirements are discussed individually for beams, slabs and columns in sections 8.8.4, 8.9.2 and 8.11.6, respectively.

8.8 Design of singly and doubly reinforced rectangular beams

8.8.1 BENDING (CL. 6.1, EC 2)

When determining the ultimate moment of resistance of concrete cross-sections, Cl. 6.1 of EC 2 recommends that the following assumptions are made:

1. plane sections remain plane
2. the strain in bonded reinforcement is the same as that in the surrounding concrete
3. the tensile strength of concrete is ignored
4. the compressive stresses in the concrete are derived from the parabolic-rectangular stress–strain relationship shown in *Fig. 8.3* or other simplified stress–strain relationships, provided they are effectively equivalent to *Fig. 8.3*, e.g. the rectangular stress distribution shown in *Fig. 8.4*.
5. the stresses in the reinforcement are derived from *Fig. 8.5*.
6. the compressive strain in the concrete should not exceed 0.0035.

These assumptions are similar to those listed in Cl. 3.4.4.1 of BS 8110 with the possible omission of the $0.95d$ limit on the lever arm i.e. $z \le 0.95d$. However, if this condition is observed, the steel strain does not exceed 2.5 per cent which means that all classes of reinforcement are suitable (*Table 8.3*), provided moment redistribution does not exceed 20 per cent.

Fig. 8.7 shows the simplified stress blocks which are used in BS 8110 and EC 2 to develop the design equations for bending. As previously noted, in EC 2 the maximum concrete compressive stress is taken as $0.85f_{ck}/1.5$ and the depth of the compression block is taken as $0.8x$ for $f_{ck} \le 50$ N mm^{-2}, where x is the depth of the neutral axis. The corresponding values in BS 8110 are $0.67f_{cu}/1.5$ and $0.9x$ as shown in *Fig. 8.7(c)*.

The following sub-sections derive the equations relevant to the design of singly and doubly reinforced beams according to EC 2. The corresponding equations in BS 8110 were derived in section 3.9.1.1 to which the reader should refer for detailed explanations and the notation used.

8.8.1.1 Singly reinforced beam design

(i) Ultimate moment of resistance (M_{Rd})

$$M_{Rd} = F_c z \tag{8.14}$$

$$F_c = \frac{0.85f_{ck}}{1.5}0.8xb \tag{8.15}$$

$$z = d - 0.4x \tag{8.16}$$

Cl. 5.6.3 of EC 2 limits the depth of the neutral axis (x) to $0.45d$ for concrete strength classes less than or equal to C50/60 (and $0.35d$ for concrete classes C55/67 and greater) in order to provide a ductile, i.e. under reinforced, section. Thus

$$x = 0.45d \tag{8.17}$$

Note that the corresponding value for x in BS 8110 is $0.5d$.

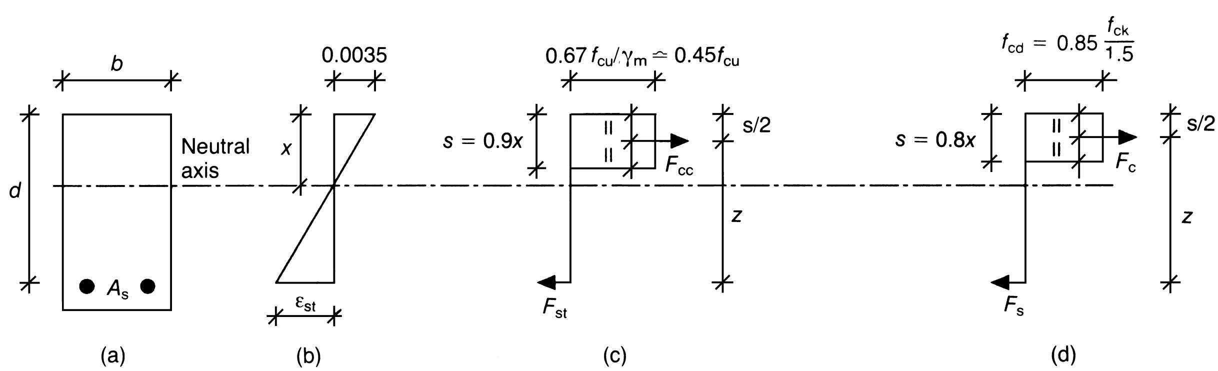


Fig. 8.7 *Singly reinforced section with rectangular stress block (a) Section (b) Strains (c) Stress Block (BS 8110) (d) Stress Block (EC 2)*

Combining equations (8.14), (8.15), (8.16) and (8.17) gives

$$M_{Rd} = 0.167 f_{ck} bd^2 \quad (8.18)$$

c.f. $M_u = 0.156 f_{cu} bd^2$ (BS 8110)

(ii) Area of tensile steel (A_{s1})

$$M = F_s z \quad (8.19)$$

$$F_s = \frac{f_{yk}}{1.15} A_{s1} \quad (8.20)$$

$$A_{s1} = \frac{M}{0.87 f_{yk} z} \quad (8.21)$$

c.f. $A_s = \dfrac{M}{0.87 f_y z}$ (BS 8110)

Equation 8.21 can be used to calculate the area of tension reinforcement provided that the design ultimate moment, $M_{Ed} \le M_{Rd}$.

(iii) Lever arm (z)

$$M = F_c z$$

$$= \frac{0.85 f_{ck}}{1.5}(0.8xb)z \quad \text{(from equation 8.15)}$$

$$= \frac{3.4}{3} f_{ck} b(d - z)z \quad \text{(from equation 8.16)}$$

Solving for z gives

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}] \quad (8.22)$$

where $K_o = \dfrac{M}{f_{ck} bd^2}$

c.f. $z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - K/0.9)}]$ (BS 8110)

where $K = \dfrac{M}{f_{cu} bd^2}$

8.8.1.2 Doubly reinforced beams

If the design ultimate moment is greater than the ultimate moment of resistance i.e. $M_{Ed} > M_{Rd}$, then compression reinforcement is required. Provided that

$d_2/x \le 0.38$ (i.e. compression steel has yielded)

where

d_2 is the depth of the compression steel from the compression face and

$$x = (d - z)/0.4$$

the area of compression reinforcement, A_{s2}, is given by:

$$A_{s2} = \frac{M - M_{Rd}}{0.87 f_{yk}(d - d_2)} \quad (8.23)$$

and the area of tension reinforcement, A_{s1}, is given by:

$$A_{s1} = \frac{M_{Rd}}{0.87 f_{yk} z} + A_{s2} \quad (8.24)$$

where $z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K'_o/3.4)}]$

$K'_o = 0.167$

Equations 8.23 and 8.24 have been derived using the stress block shown in *Fig. 8.8*. This is similar to that used to derive the equations for the design of singly reinforced beams (*Fig. 8.6d*) except for the additional force due to the steel in the compression face.

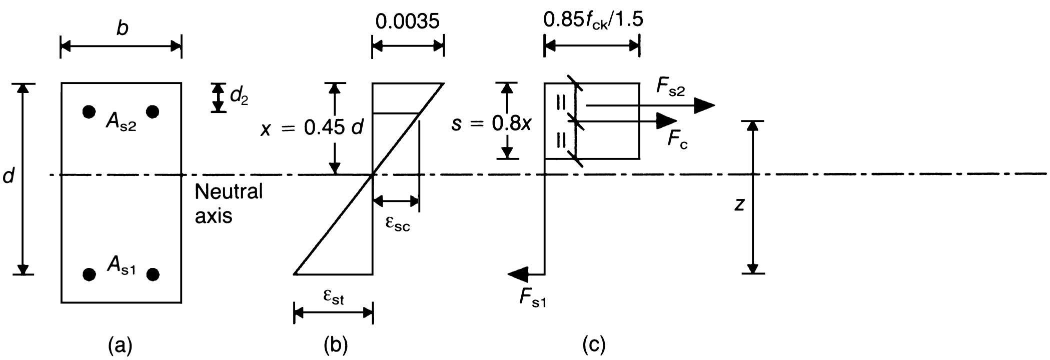
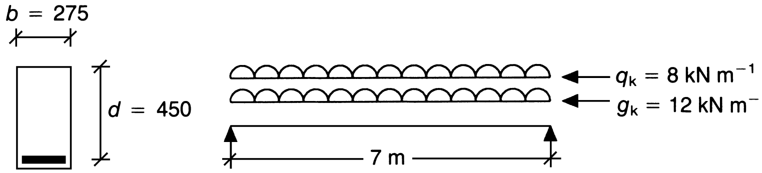


Fig. 8.8 *Doubly reinforced section (a) Section (b) Strains (c) Stress Block (EC 2).*

Example 8.2 Bending reinforcement for a singly reinforced beam (EC 2)

Determine the area of main steel, A_{s1}, required for the beam assuming the following material strengths: $f_{ck} = 25$ N mm^{-2} and $f_{yk} = 500$ N mm^{-2}



$$\text{Ultimate load } (w) = 1.35g_k + 1.5q_k$$
$$= 1.35 \times 12 + 1.5 \times 8 = 28.2 \text{ kNm}^{-1}$$

$$\text{Design moment } (M_{Ed}) = \frac{w\ell^2}{8} = \frac{28.2 \times 7^2}{8} = 172.7 \text{ kNm}$$

$$\text{Ultimate moment of resistance } (M_{Rd}) = 0.167 f_{ck} b d^2$$
$$= 0.167 \times 25 \times 275 \times 450^2 \times 10^{-6} = 232.5 \text{ kNm}$$

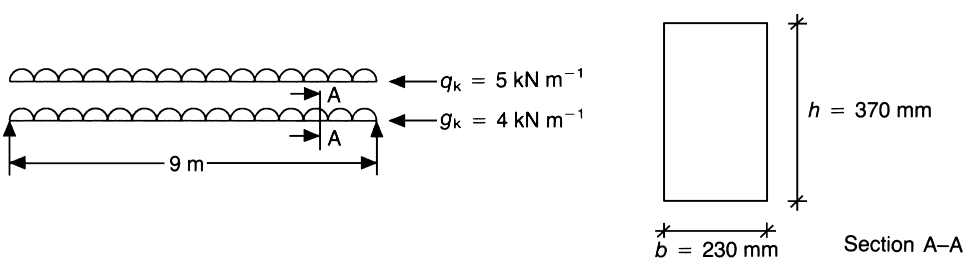
Since $M_{Rd} > M_{Ed}$ design as a singly reinforced beam

$$K_o = \frac{M_{Ed}}{f_{ck} b d^2} = \frac{172.7 \times 10^6}{25 \times 275 \times 450^2} = 0.124$$
$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}]$$
$$= 450[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3 \times 0.124/3.4)}] = 393.7 \text{ mm}$$
$$A_{s1} = \frac{M_{Ed}}{0.87 f_{yk} z} = \frac{172.7 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 393.7} = 1008 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.10*, provide 4H20 ($A_{s1} = 1260$ mm^2)

Example 8.3 Bending reinforcement for a doubly reinforced beam (EC 2)

Design the bending reinforcement for the beam assuming the cover to the main steel is 40 mm, $f_{ck} = 25$ N mm^{-2} and $f_{yk} = 500$ N mm^{-2}



DESIGN MOMENT (M)

$$\text{Total ultimate load } (W) = (1.35g_k + 1.5q_k)\text{span} = (1.35 \times 4 + 1.5 \times 5)9 = 116.1 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Design moment } (M_{Ed}) = \frac{W\ell}{8} = \frac{116.1 \times 9}{8} = 130.6 \text{ kNm}$$

Example 8.3 *continued*

ULTIMATE MOMENT OF RESISTANCE (M_{Rd})

Effective depth
Assume diameter of main bar (ϕ) = 25 mm
Effective depth (d) = $h - c - \phi/2 = 370 - 40 - 12.5 = 317$ mm

Ultimate moment
Ultimate moment of resistance (M_{Rd}) = $0.167 f_{ck} b d^2 = 0.167 \times 25 \times 230 \times 317^2 \times 10^{-6} = 96.5$ kNm
Since $M_{Rd} < M_{Ed}$ design as a doubly reinforced beam.

COMPRESSION REINFORCEMENT (A_{s2})

Assume diameter of compression bars (ϕ') = 16 mm
Effective depth (d_2) = cover + $\phi'/2 = 40 + 16/2 = 48$ mm

$$\frac{d_2}{x} = \frac{48}{0.45d} = \frac{48}{0.45 \times 317} = 0.34 < 0.38 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\text{Hence, } A_{s2} = \frac{M_{Ed} - M_{Rd}}{0.87 f_{yk}(d - d_2)} = \frac{(130.6 - 96.5)10^6}{0.87 \times 500(317 - 48)} = 291\,\text{mm}^2$$

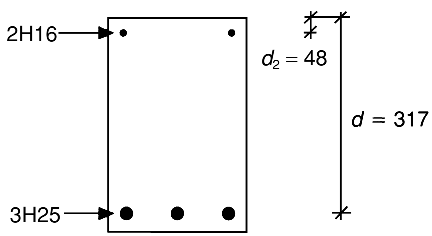
Provide 2H16 (A_{s2} = 402 mm^2 from *Table 3.10*)

TENSION REINFORCEMENT (A_{s1})

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}\,] = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3 \times 0.167/3.4)}] = 0.82d$$

$$\text{Hence, } A_{s1} = \frac{M_{Rd}}{0.87 f_{yk} z} + A_{s2} = \frac{96.5 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 0.82 \times 317} + 291 = 1144\,\text{mm}^2$$

Provide 3H25 (A_{s1} = 1470 mm^2 from *Table 3.10*).



8.8.2 SHEAR (CL. 6.2, EC 2)

EC 2 uses the so called variable strut inclination method for shear design. It is slightly more complex than the procedure in BS 8110 but can result in savings in the amount of shear reinforcement required. Like BS 8110, EC 2 models shear behaviour on the truss analogy in which the concrete acts as the diagonal struts (shown in broken line and labelled D_C in *Fig. 8.9*), the stirrups act as the vertical ties, V_T, the tension reinforcement forms the bottom chord, B_T and the compression steel/concrete forms the top chord, T_C. Whereas in BS 8110 the strut angle, θ, has a fixed value of 45° in EC 2 it can vary between 21.8° and 45° and it is this feature which is responsible for possible reductions in the volume of shear reinforcement as illustrated in *Fig. 8.10*. Here it can be seen that for a given design shear strength, V, EC 2 generally requires fewer links than BS 8110.

It is worth noting, however, that using a reduced value of strut angle also results in a concomitant increase in tensile force in the bottom chord (B_T) which necessitates that longitudinal reinforcement extends further in the span than required for bending alone. Thus, any potential savings in the volume of shear reinforcement has to be offset

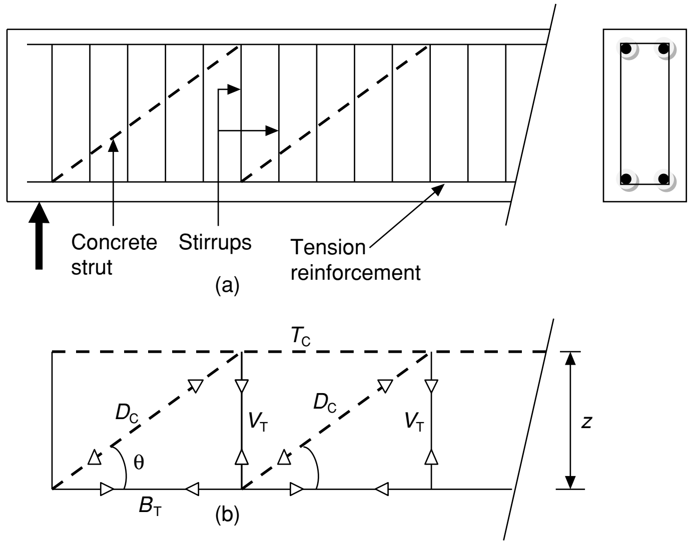


Fig. 8.9 *(a) Beam and reinforcement (b) analogous truss.*

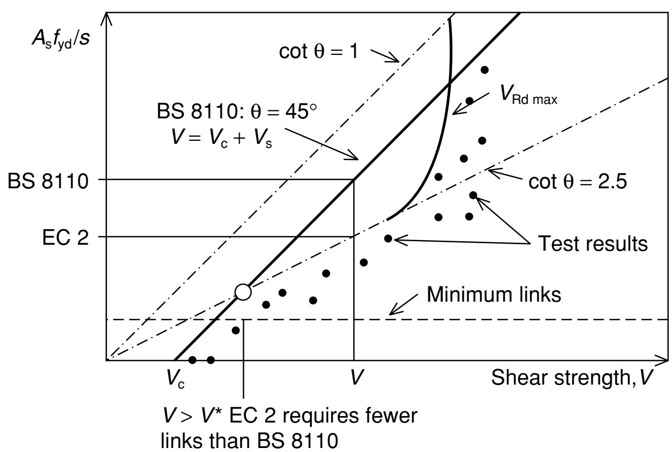


Fig. 8.10 *Influence of links on shear strength.*

against increases in the volume of longitudinal reinforcement. Other major differences in design procedure are:

1. EC 2 compares shear forces rather than shear stresses.
2. The maximum shear capacity of concrete is not a fixed value (i.e. the lesser of $0.8\sqrt{f_{cu}}$ or 5 N mm^{-2} as in BS 8110) but depends on the applied shear.
3. Where the applied shear exceeds the shear resistance of the concrete, the shear reinforcement should be capable of resisting all the shear acting on the section.

EC 2 identifies four basic shear forces for design purposes, namely V_{Ed}, $V_{Rd,c}$, $V_{Rd,max}$ and $V_{Rd,s}$. V_{Ed} is the design shear force and is a function of the applied loading. It is normally determined at a distance, *d*, from the face of supports (*Fig. 8.11*).

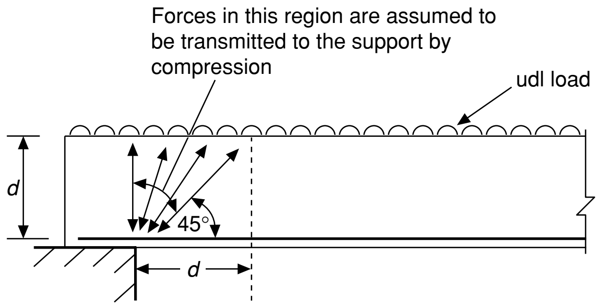


Fig. 8.11

$V_{Rd,c}$ is the design shear resistance of the member without shear reinforcement and is given by:

$$V_{Rd,c} = [C_{Rd,c}k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}]b_w d \geq (\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp})b_w d \quad (8.25)$$

where

$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_c$

$k = 1 + \sqrt{\dfrac{200}{d}} < 2.0$ with the effective depth, d in mm

$\rho_1 = \dfrac{A_{sl}}{b_w d} < 0.02$

in which

A_{sl} is the area of the tensile reinforcement, which extends $\geq (l_{bd} + d)$ beyond the section considered

b_w is the smallest width of the cross-section in the tensile area

$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2}$

$k_1 = 0.15$

$\sigma_{cp} = N_{Ed}/A_c < 0.2f_{cd}$

in which

N_{Ed} is the axial force in the cross-section

A_c is the cross-sectional area of concrete

Expression 8.25 is empirical and not too dissimilar to the expression which appears at the bottom of *Table 3.8* of BS 8110 and is used to determine the design concrete shear stress (*Table 3.8*).

If $V_{Ed} < V_{Rd,c}$ no shear reinforcement is required except, possibly, in beams where it is normal to provide a minimum amount of shear links. However, if $V_{Ed} > V_{Rd,c}$ shear failure may occur as a result of either compressive failure of the diagonal concrete strut or diagonal tension failure of the member (*Fig. 3.21*).

The concrete strut capacity, $V_{Rd,max}$, is given by:

$$V_{Rd,max} = b_w z \nu_1 f_{cd}/(\cot\theta + \tan\theta) \quad (8.26)$$

where

$z \approx 0.9d$

$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc}f_{ck}/\gamma_m = 0.85f_{ck}/1.5$ (for $f_{ck} \leq 50$ N/mm^2) (Note: $\alpha_{cc} = 1.0$ may be used here.)

$\nu_1 = 0.6(1 - f_{ck}/250)$ for $f_{ck} \leq 50$ N/mm^2

θ is the angle between the concrete strut and the axis of the beam (*Fig. 8.9*)

According to EC 2, the strut angle (and hence the strut capacity) is not unique but can vary between $\cot\theta = 2.5$ (i.e. 21.8°) and $\cot\theta = 1$ (i.e. 45°), depending on the value of the applied shear. Using the identity

$$\frac{1}{\cot\theta + \tan\theta} = \sin\theta\cos\theta = 0.5\sin 2\theta$$

expression 8.26 can be transposed to make the concrete strut angle the subject of the formula as follows

$$\theta = 0.5\sin^{-1}\frac{(V_{Rd,max}/b_w d)}{0.153f_{ck}(1 - f_{ck}/250)} \quad (8.27)$$

Expression 8.27 can be used to calculate the minimum strut angle for a given value of applied shear by equating $V_{Rd,max} = V_{Ed}$ subject to the condition that $\cot\theta$ lies between 1.0 and 2.5.

As noted above, if $V_{Ed} > V_{Rd,c}$ shear reinforcement must be provided. Provided $V_{Ed} \leq V_{Rd,max}$, the area of shear reinforcement can be estimated from the following expression by equating $V_{Ed} = V_{Rd,s}$

$$V_{Rd,s} = \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd}\cot\theta \quad (8.28)$$

where

$V_{Rd,s}$ is the shear resistance of the member governed by 'failure' of the stirrups

A_{sw} is the cross-sectional area of the shear reinforcement

s is the spacing of shear reinforcement (see 8.8.2.2)

f_{ywd} is the design yield strength of the shear reinforcement.

Expressions 8.26 and 8.28 are not empirical but can be derived via the analogous truss, as follows. Consider a reinforced concrete beam with stirrups uniformly spaced at a distance s, subject to a design shear force V_{Ed} as shown in *Fig. 8.12*. The resulting strut angle is θ. Assuming the height of the analogous truss is z, the number of links per strut is equal to $z\cot\theta/s$ and, hence, the shear resistance of the member, controlled by yielding of the shear reinforcement (i.e. leading to 'failure' of V_T), $V_{Rd,s}$, is given by

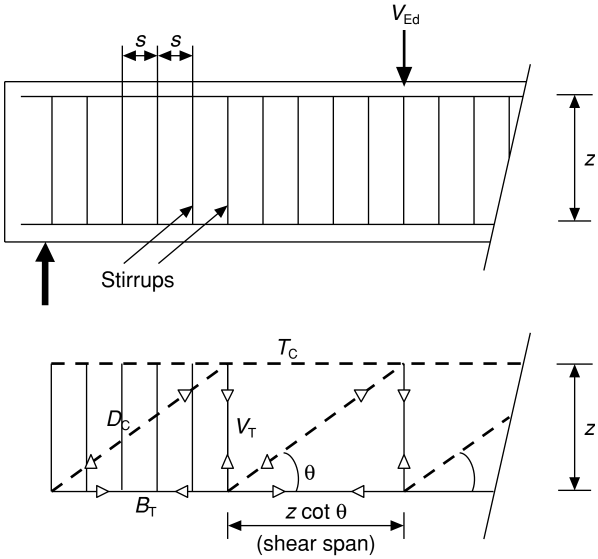


Fig. 8.12

$$V_{Rd,s} = \text{number of links in shear span} \times \text{total cross-sectional area} \times \text{design stress}$$

$$= [(z \cot \theta)/s] \times A_{sw} \times f_{ywd}$$

$$= \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd} \cot \theta \quad \text{(equation 6.8, EC 2)}$$

From *Fig. 8.13* it can be seen that the concrete struts are b_w wide and ($z \cos \theta$) deep. Hence, the compressive capacity of each strut, D_C, is given by

$$D_C = \text{cross-sectional area of strut} \times \text{design strength of concrete cracked in shear}$$

$$= b_w(z \cos \theta) \times (\nu_1 f_{cd})$$

Shear failure of the strut will not occur provided D_C equals or exceeds the design shear force acting on the strut equal to $V/\sin \theta$ (*Fig. 8.14*), i.e.

$$\frac{V}{\sin \theta} \leq D_C = (\nu_1 f_{cd}) b_w (z \cos \theta)$$

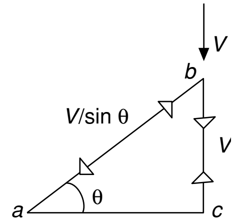


Fig. 8.14

Hence the shear resistance of the member controlled by crushing of compression struts, $V_{Rd,max}$, is given by

$$V_{Rd,max} = D_C \sin \theta = (\nu_1 f_{cd}) b_w (z \cos \theta) \sin \theta$$

Using the identity $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$ gives

$$V_{Rd,max} = (\nu_1 f_{cd}) b_w z \cos \theta \sin \theta/(\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta)$$

Dividing top and bottom by $\cos \theta \sin \theta$ and simplifying gives

$$= (\nu_1 f_{cd}) b_w z \frac{\cos \theta \sin \theta/\cos \theta \sin \theta}{(\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta)/(\cos \theta \sin \theta)}$$

$$= (\nu_1 f_{cd}) b_w z \frac{1}{\cot \theta + \tan \theta} \quad \text{(equation 6.9, EC 2)}$$

From *Fig. 8.14* it can be seen that for equilibrium a tensile force of $V/\tan \theta$ also acts on the section. Assuming that half of this force acts in the bottom chord, the additional tensile force present in the longitudinal reinforcement, ΔF_{td}, is given by

$$\Delta F_{td} = 0.5 V_{Ed}/\tan \theta \tag{8.29}$$

The presence of this additional longitudinal force is responsible for the shift rule discussed in section 8.8.4.4, necessitating that longitudinal tension steel extend further in the span than required for bending alone. Also since the tensile force in the longitudinal steel due to bending is M_{Ed}/z, the total force in the tension reinforcement, F_s, is given by

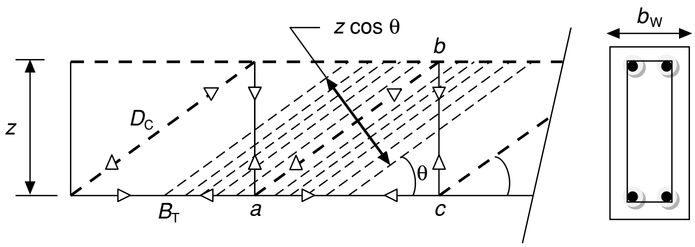


Fig. 8.13

F_s = Force due to bending + Force due to shear = $M_{Ed}/z + \Delta F_{td}$

Its value should not exceed $M_{Ed,max}$ where $M_{Ed,max}$ is the maximum moment within the hogging or sagging region that contains the section considered.

The design process can be summarised as follows:

1. Calculate the design shear force, V_{Ed}.
2. Determine the design shear resistance of the member without shear reinforcement, $V_{Rd,c}$.
3. If $V_{Ed} < V_{Rd,c}$ shear reinforcement can be omitted except in beams where a minimum area of shear reinforcement must be provided (see 8.8.2.1).
4. If $V_{Ed} > V_{Rd,c}$ all the shear force must be resisted by the shear reinforcement. Provided $V_{Ed} < V_{Rd,max}$, the area of shear reinforcement can be determined using expression 8.28. $V_{Rd,max}$ is estimated from (8.26) assuming initially cot θ = 2.5. However, if the result is $V_{Ed} > V_{Rd,max}$ a larger strut angle, θ, may be used. The maximum allowable value of θ is 45° (i.e. cot θ = 1). The minimum value of the strut angle for a given design shear force, V_{Ed}, can be determined from (8.27) and used, in turn, to calculate the area of shear reinforcement from (8.28).
5. If the strut angle exceeds 45°, however, a deeper concrete section or higher concrete strength must be provided and steps (2)–(4) repeated.

8.8.2.1 Shear reinforcement areas (ρ_w) (Cl. 9.2.2, EC 2)

As noted above, minimum reinforcement should be provided in beams where $V_{Ed} < V_{Rd,c}$. The minimum shear reinforcement ratio, ρ_w, is obtained from

$$\rho_w = A_{sw}/(sb_w \sin \alpha) \geq \rho_{w,min} \qquad (8.30)$$

where

A_{sw} is the area of shear reinforcement within length s

s is the spacing of the shear reinforcement

b_w is the breadth of the member

α = 90° for vertical stirrups ⇒ sin α = 1

$\rho_{w,min}$ is the minimum area of shear reinforcement $= (0.08\sqrt{f_{ck}})/f_{yk}$ (8.31)

8.8.2.2 Spacing of shear reinforcement (Cl. 9.2.2, EC 2)

EC 2 recommends that the maximum longitudinal spacing of shear reinforcement ($s_{l,max}$) should not exceed $0.75d(1 + \cot \alpha)$

where

α = 90° for vertical stirrups ⇒ cot α = 0

Example 8.4 Design of shear reinforcement for a beam (EC 2)

Design the shear reinforcement for the beam in *Example 8.2*.

DESIGN SHEAR FORCE, V_{Ed}

This should be determined at distance d from the face of the support but for simplicity has been calculated at the centre of supports.

$$V_{Ed} = 0.5(\omega\ell) = 0.5 \times 28.2 \times 7 = 98.7 \text{ kN}$$

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE ($V_{Rd,c}$)

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_C = 0.18/1.5 = 0.12 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$k = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{450}} = 1.67 < 2.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

Assuming all the tension reinforcement is taken onto supports and anchored

$$\rho_1 = \frac{A_{sl}}{b_w d} = \frac{1260}{275 \times 450} = 0.0102 < 0.02 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\sigma_{cp} = 0$$

$$v_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2} = 0.035 \times 1.67^{3/2} \times 25^{1/2} = 0.378$$

Example 8.4 *continued*

$$V_{Rd,c} = [C_{Rd,c}k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}]b_w d$$
$$= [0.12 \times 1.67(100 \times 0.0102 \times 25)^{1/3}]275 \times 450$$
$$= 72\ 994\ \text{N} \geq (\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp})b_w d = 0.378 \times 275 \times 450 = 46\ 778\ \text{N}$$

Since $V_{Rd,c} < V_{Ed}$, shear reinforcement must be provided.

COMPRESSION CAPACITY OF COMPRESSION STRUT, $V_{RD,MAX}$, ASSUMING $\theta = 21.8°$

$$\nu_1 = 0.6(1 - f_{ck}/250) = 0.6(1 - 25/250) = 0.54$$
$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc} f_{ck}/\gamma_c = 0.85 \times 25/1.5 = 14.2\ \text{N mm}^{-2} \quad \text{(Note } \alpha_{cc} = 1.0 \text{ may be used.)}$$
$$V_{Rd,max} = b_w z \nu_1 f_{cd}/(\cot\theta + \tan\theta)$$
$$= [275 \times (0.9 \times 450) \times 0.54 \times 14.2/(2.5 + 0.4)] \times 10^{-3} = 294.5\ \text{kN} > V_{Ed} \quad \text{OK}$$

DIAMETER AND SPACING OF LINKS

(i) Where $V_{Ed} < V_{Rd,c}$, provide minimum shear reinforcement, $\rho_{w,min}$, according to

$$\rho_{w,min} = (0.08\sqrt{f_{ck}})/f_{yk} = (0.08\sqrt{25})/500 = 8 \times 10^{-4}$$
$$\rho_{w,min} = A_{sw}/sb_w \sin\alpha$$
$$\Rightarrow A_{sw}/s = 8 \times 10^{-4} \times 275 \times 1 = 0.22\ \text{mm} \quad \text{(assuming the use of vertical links)}$$

Maximum spacing of links, s_{max}, is

$$s_{max} = 0.75d = 0.75 \times 450 = 338\ \text{mm}$$

Hence, from *Table 3.13* provide H8 at 300 mm centres, $A_{sw}/s = 0.335$ mm.

(ii) Where $V_{Ed} > V_{Rd,c}$ provide shear reinforcement according to:

$$V_{Rd,s} = \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd} \cot\theta = 98700\ \text{N}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{A_{sw}}{s} = \frac{98700}{(0.9 \times 450)(500/1.15) \times 2.5} = 0.224$$

Hence provide H8 at 300 mm centres ($A_{sw}/s = 0.335$) throughout.

Example 8.5 Design of shear reinforcement at beam support (EC 2)

Design the shear reinforcement for the beam shown in *Fig. 8.15*, assuming it resists an ultimate shear force at distance d from the face of the support of 450 kN. The characteristic material strengths are $f_{ck} = 25$ N mm^{-2} and $f_{ywv} = 500$ N mm^{-2}.

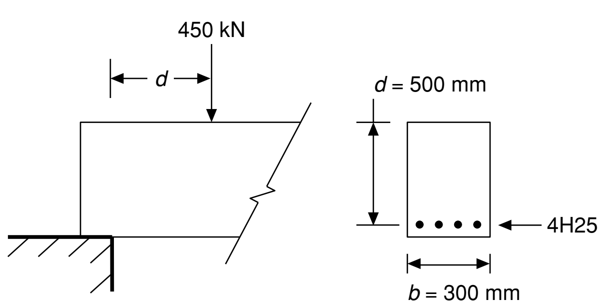


Fig. 8.15

Example 8.5 *continued*

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE ($V_{Rd,c}$)

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_C = 0.18/1.5 = 0.12 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$k = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{500}} = 1.63 < 2.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\rho_1 = \frac{A_{sl}}{b_w d} = \frac{1960}{300 \times 500} = 0.013 < 0.02 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\sigma_{cp} = 0$$

$$\nu_{min} = 0.035 k^{3/2} f_{ck}^{1/2} = 0.035 \times 1.63^{3/2} \times 25^{1/2} = 0.364$$

$$\begin{aligned} V_{Rd,c} &= [C_{Rd,c} k (100 \rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1 \sigma_{cp}] b_w d \\ &= [0.12 \times 1.63 (100 \times 0.013 \times 25)^{1/3}] 300 \times 500 \times 10^{-3} \\ &= 93.6 \text{ kN} \geq (\nu_{min} + k_1 \sigma_{cp}) b_w d = 0.364 \times 300 \times 500 \times 10^{-3} = 54.6 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

Since $V_{Rd,c} < V_{Ed} = 450$ kN, shear reinforcement must be provided.

CHECK COMPRESSION CAPACITY OF COMPRESSION STRUT, $V_{Rd,max}$, ASSUMING $\theta = 21.8°$

$$\nu_1 = 0.6(1 - f_{ck}/250) = 0.6(1 - 25/250) = 0.54$$

$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc} f_{ck}/\gamma_c = 0.85 \times 25/1.5 = 14.2 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad \text{(Note } \alpha_{cc} = 1.0 \text{ may be used.)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} V_{Rd,max} &= b_w z \nu_1 f_{cd}/(\cot\theta + \tan\theta) \\ &= [300 \times (0.9 \times 500) \times 0.54 \times 14.2/(2.5 + 0.4)] \times 10^{-3} = 357 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

Since $V_{Rd,max} < V_{Ed}$, strut angle > 21.8°. From equation 8.27

$$\theta = 0.5 \sin^{-1} \frac{(V_{Rd,max}/b_w d)}{0.153 f_{ck}(1 - f_{ck}/250)} = 0.5 \sin^{-1} \frac{(450 \times 10^3/300 \times 500)}{0.153 \times 25(1 - 25/250)} = 30.3°$$

DIAMETER AND SPACING OF LINKS

Provide shear reinforcement according to:

$$V_{Rd,s} = \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd} \cot\theta = 450 \text{ kN}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{A_{sw}}{s} = \frac{450000}{(0.9 \times 500)(500/1.15) \times \cot 30.3°} = 1.344$$

Maximum spacing of links, s_{max}, is

$$s_{max} = 0.75d = 0.75 \times 500 = 375 \text{ mm}$$

Therefore H12 at 150 mm centres ($A_{sw}/s = 1.507$) would be suitable.

Note. If longitudinal reinforcement is fully anchored at support and $V_{Ed} = 450 \text{ kN} \leq 0.5 b_w d \nu f_{cd} = 0.5 \times 300 \times 500 \times 0.54 \times 14.2 \times 10^{-3} = 575$ kN (OK), shear force may be reduced to $(a_v/2d) \times 450 = 225$ kN. In this case $\theta = 21.8°$ is OK and shear reinforcement is reduced by over 50 per cent.

8.8.3 DEFLECTION

Crack and deflection control are the two main serviceability checks required by EC 2. EC 2 also includes a check on the stress in the concrete and steel reinforcement under specified loadings but past performance of concrete structures would seem to suggest that this check is almost certainly unnecessary in the UK and is therefore not discussed.

Like BS 8110, EC 2 recommends that surface crack widths should not generally exceed 0.3 mm in order to avoid poor durability. As previously mentioned, this is normally achieved by observing the rules on minimum steel areas and either the maximum bar spacing or the maximum bar diameter. The rules for beams are presented in section 8.8.4.

EC 2 requirements for deflection control appear to be less onerous than those in BS 8110, namely

1. the calculated sag of a beam, slab or cantilever under quasi-permanent loading should not exceed span/250.
2. the deflection occurring after construction of the element should not exceed span/500.

It is true that the creep component of deflection is related to quasi-permanent loads and if appearance is the only criterion it would be reasonable to base the deflection check on this load combination. However, if function, including possible damage to finishes, cladding and partitions is of concern, then the use of characteristic load would seem more appropriate.

Although it is possible to estimate actual deflections of concrete elements in order to check compliance it is more practical to use limiting span/depth ratios as in BS 8110. *Table 8.11* shows basic span/depth ratio for commonly occurring reinforced concrete members and support conditions. They have been obtained using equations 8.32 and 8.33.

$$\frac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho}\right) + 3.2\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho} - 1\right)^{3/2}\right] \quad \text{if } \rho \le \rho_o \qquad (8.32)$$

$$\frac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho - \rho'}\right) + \frac{1}{12}\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho'}{\rho_o}\right)^{1/2}\right] \quad \text{if } \rho > \rho_o \qquad (8.33)$$

where

l/d is the limiting span/depth ratio
K is the factor to take into account the different structural systems, given in *Table 8.11*
ρ_o $= \sqrt{f_{ck}} \times 10^{-3}$
ρ is the required tension reinforcement ratio
ρ' is the required compression reinforcement ratio

The values in *Table 8.11* assume the steel stress at the critical section, σ_s, is 310 N mm^{-2}, corresponding roughly to the stress under characteristic load when f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}. Where other steel stresses are used, the values in the table can be multiplied by $310/\sigma_s$. It will normally be conservative to assume that

$$\sigma_s = \frac{310 f_{yk} A_{s,req}}{500 A_{s,prov}} \qquad (8.34)$$

where

$A_{s,req}$ is the area of steel required
$A_{s,prov}$ is the area of steels provided

For flanged sections where the ratio of the flange breadth to the rib width, b_{eff}/b_w, exceeds 3, the values in the table should be multiplied by 0.8. Linear interpolation may be used to estimate values of l/d for intermediate values of b_{eff}/b_w. For beams and slabs, other than flat slabs (see *Fig. 3.52*), where

Table 8.11 Basic span/depth ratios for reinforced concrete members

Structural system	*K*	*Highly stressed concrete* ρ = *1.5%*	*Lightly stressed concrete* ρ = *0.5%*
Simply supported beams and slabs	1.0	14	20
End span of continuous beams and slabs	1.3	18	26
Interior spans of continuous beams and slabs	1.5	20	30
Cantilever beams and slabs	0.4	6	8

span lengths exceed 7 m, the values of l/d should be multiplied by $7/l_{\text{eff}}$.

where

l_{eff} effective span of the member $= l_n + a_1 + a_2$ (Cl. 5.3.2.2)

in which

l_n is the clear distance between the faces of supports

a_1, a_2 are the distances at each end of the span shown in *Fig. 8.16*

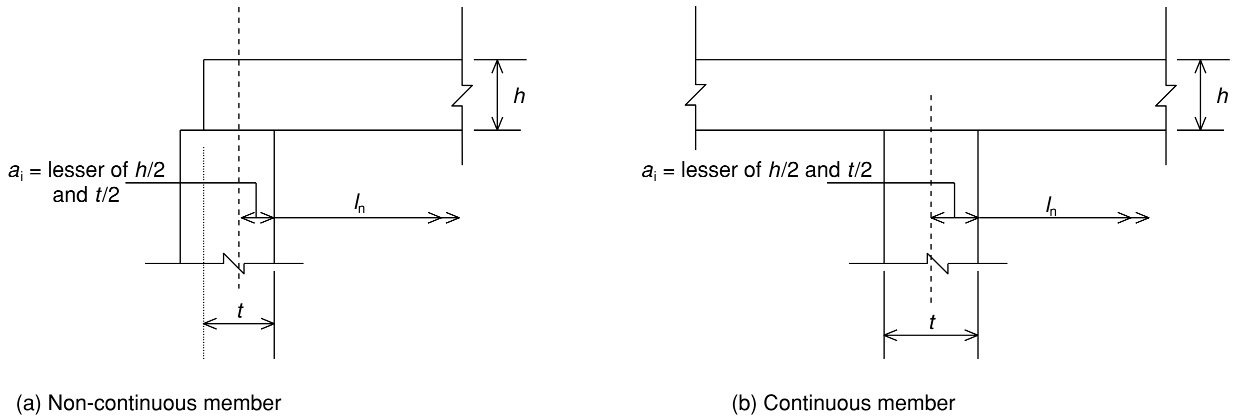


Fig. 8.16 *Definition of a_1 and a_2 (a) Non-continuous member (b) Continuous member (based on Fig. 5.4, EC 2).*

Example 8.6 Deflection check for concrete beams (EC 2)

Carry out a deflection check for *Examples 8.2* and *8.3*.

FOR EXAMPLE 8.2

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \Rightarrow \rho_o = \sqrt{f_{ck}} \times 10^{-3} = \sqrt{25} \times 10^{-3} = 5 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\rho = \frac{A_{sl}}{bd} = \frac{1008}{275 \times 450} = 8.15 \times 10^{-3}$$

Since $\rho > \rho_o$, use equation 8.33

$$\frac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho - \rho'}\right) + \frac{1}{12}\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho'}{\rho_o}\right)^{1/2}\right] = 1.0\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{25}\left(\frac{5 \times 10^{-3}}{8.15 \times 10^{-3} - 0}\right)\right] = 15.6$$

$$\sigma_s = \frac{310 f_{yk} A_{s,req}}{500 A_{s,prov}} = \frac{310 \times 500 \times 1008}{500 \times 1260} = 248 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Allowable span/depth ratio = basic $l/d \times 310/\sigma_s = 15.6 \times 310/248 = 19.5$
Actual span/depth ratio = 7000/450 = 15.6 < allowable OK

FOR EXAMPLE 8.3

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \Rightarrow \rho_o = \sqrt{f_{ck}} \times 10^{-3} = \sqrt{25} \times 10^{-3} = 5 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\rho = \frac{A_{s1}}{bd} = \frac{1144}{230 \times 317} = 15.69 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\rho' = \frac{A_{s2}}{bd} = \frac{291}{230 \times 317} = 3.99 \times 10^{-3}$$

Example 8.6 *continued*

Since $\rho > \rho_o$,

$$\frac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho - \rho'}\right) + \frac{1}{12}\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho'}{\rho_o}\right)^{1/2}\right]$$

$$= 1.0\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{25}\left(\frac{5 \times 10^{-3}}{15.69 \times 10^{-3} - 3.99 \times 10^{-3}}\right) + \frac{1}{12}\sqrt{25}\left(\frac{3.99 \times 10^{-3}}{5 \times 10^{-3}}\right)^{1/2}\right] = 14.5$$

$$\sigma_s = \frac{310 f_{yk} A_{s,req}}{500 A_{s,prov}} = \frac{310 \times 500 \times 1144}{500 \times 1470} = 241\,\text{N mm}^{-2}$$

Allowable span/depth ratio = basic $l/d \times 310/\sigma_s \times 7/\text{span} = 14.5 \times 310/241 \times 7/9 = 18.6$
Actual span/depth ratio = 9000/317 = 28.4 > allowable Not OK

8.8.4 REINFORCEMENT DETAILS FOR BEAMS

This section outlines EC 2 requirements regarding the detailing of beams with respect to:

1. reinforcement percentages
2. spacing of reinforcing bars
3. anchorage lengths
4. curtailment of reinforcement
5. lap lengths.

For a brief discussion on each of these aspects refer to section 3.9.1.6 of this book.

8.8.4.1 Reinforcement percentages (Cl. 9.2.1.1, EC 2)

The cross-sectional area of the longitudinal tensile reinforcement, A_{s1}, in beams should not be less than the following:

$$A_{s1} = 0.26\frac{f_{ctm}}{f_{yk}}b_t d \geq 0.0013 b_t d$$

where
b_t is the breadth of section
d effective depth
f_{ctm} mean tensile strength of concrete (see *Table 8.2*)
f_{yk} characteristic yield stress of reinforcement (= 500 N mm^{-2})

The area of the tension, A_{s1}, and of the compression reinforcement, A_{s2}, should not be greater than the following other than at laps:

$$A_{s1}, A_{s2} \leq 0.04 A_c$$

where
A_c is the cross-sectional area of concrete.

8.8.4.2 Spacing of reinforcement (Cl. 8.2, EC 2)

The clear horizontal or vertical distance between reinforcing bars should not be less than the following:

(a) maximum bar diameter
(b) maximum aggregate size, d_g + 5 mm
(c) 20 mm

To ensure that the maximum crack width does not exceed 0.3 mm EC 2 recommends that the minimum reinforcement necessary to control cracking should be provided and either the maximum bar spacing or the maximum bar diameter should not exceed the values shown in *Table 8.12*. The steel stress, σ_s, can conservatively be estimated using equation 8.35.

$$\sigma_s = \frac{f_{yk} m A_{s,req}}{\gamma_s n A_{s,prov}} \tag{8.35}$$

where
f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}
γ_s = 1.15
m quasi-permanent load (= $g_k + \Psi_2 q_k$)
n design ultimate load (= $\gamma_G g_k + \gamma_Q q_k$)
$A_{s,req}$ area of steel required
$A_{s,prov}$ area of steel provided

8.8.4.3 Anchorage (Cl. 8.4.3, EC 2)

EC 2 distinguishes between basic and design anchorage lengths. The basic anchorage length, $l_{b,rqd}$, is the length of bar required to resist the maximum force in the reinforcement, $A_s.\sigma_{sd}$. Assuming a constant bond stress of f_{bd} the basic anchorage length of a straight bar is given by:

$$l_{b,rqd} = (\phi/4)(\sigma_{sd}/f_{bd}) \tag{8.36}$$

Table 8.12 Maximum bar spacing and bar diameter for crack control (based on Table 7.2N and 7.3N, EC 2)

Steel Stress (N mm^{-2})	*Maximum bar spacing (mm)* $w_k = 0.3$ *mm*	*Maximum bar size (mm)* ϕ_s $w_k = 0.3$ *mm*
160	300	32
200	250	25
240	200	16
280	150	12
320	100	10
360	50	8

Note: The values in the table assume c_{nom} = 25 mm and f_{ck} = 30 N mm^{-2}

where

ϕ diameter of bar to be anchored

σ_{sd} design stress of the bar at the position from where the anchorage is measured

f_{bd} ultimate bond stress $= 2.25\eta_1\eta_2 f_{ctd}$ (8.37)

where

η_1 coefficient related to the quality of the bond between the concrete and steel. EC 2 states that bond conditions are considered to be good for:

(a) all bars in members with an overall depth (h) of less than or equal to 250 mm (*Fig. 8.17a*)

(b) all bars located within the lower 250 mm depth in members with an overall depth exceeding 250 mm (*Fig. 8.17b*)

(c) all bars located at a depth greater than or equal to 300 mm in members with an overall depth exceeding 600 mm (*Fig. 8.17c*).

η_1 = 1.0 when good bond exists and 0.7 for all other conditions

η_2 is related to bar diameter and is 1.0 for $\phi \le 32$ mm and $(132 - \phi)/100$ for $\phi > 32$ mm

f_{ctd} is the design value of the concrete tensile strength $= \alpha_{ct} f_{ctk,0.05}/\gamma_C$

in which

α_{ct} = 1.0

$f_{ctk,0.05}$ is the 5% fractile characteristic axial tensile strength of concrete (see *Table 8.2*)

Table 8.13 shows values of the ultimate bond stress for a range of concrete strengths assuming

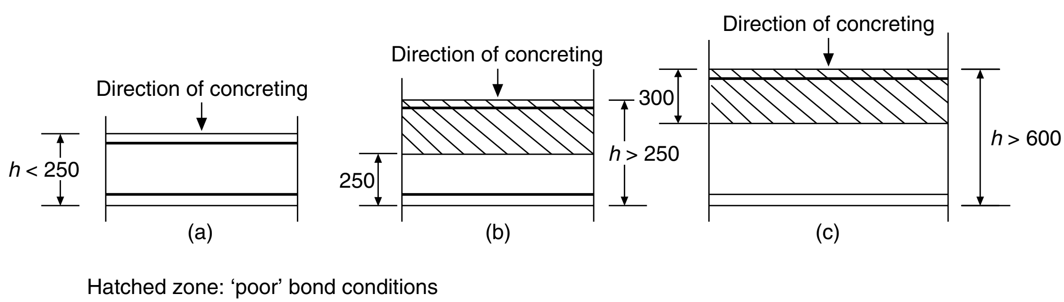


Fig. 8.17 *Definition of bond conditions (Fig. 8.2, EC 2).*

Table 8.13 Ultimate bond stress, f_{bd} (N mm^{-2}), assuming good bond conditions

f_{ck} *(N mm^{-2})*	*12*	*16*	*20*	*25*	*30*	*35*	*40*	*45*	*50*
f_{bd} where $\phi \le 32$ mm	1.65	2.00	2.32	2.69	3.04	3.37	3.68	3.98	4.35

good bond conditions and $\phi \leq 32$ mm. When bond conditions are poor the values in the table should be multiplied by 0.7.

The design anchorage length, l_{bd}, is used to determine the curtailment of longitudinal reinforcement in beams as discussed in section 8.8.4.4 and is given by:

$$l_{bd} = \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\alpha_4\alpha_5 l_{b,rqd} \geq l_{b,min} \quad (8.38)$$

where

α_1–α_5 are coefficients which take account of, respectively, shape of bar, concrete cover/spacing between bars, transverse reinforcement not welded to the main reinforcement, transverse reinforcement welded to the main reinforcement and pressure transverse to the reinforcement. The product of α_1–α_5 can conservatively be taken as 1.

$l_{b,min}$ minimum anchorage length given by:
$l_{b,min}$ = maximum of $\{0.3.l_{b,rqd}$; 10ϕ; 100 mm$\}$ (for anchorages in tension)
$l_{b,min}$ = maximum of $\{0.6.l_{b,rqd}$; 10ϕ; 100 mm$\}$ (for anchorages in compression)

As a simplification for the shapes shown in *Fig. 8.18(b)* to *(d)* an equivalent anchorage length, $l_{b,eq}$, may be used where $l_{b,eq}$ is given by

$$l_{b,eq} = \alpha_1 l_{b,rqd} \quad (8.39)$$

in which

α_1 = 1.0 for straight and curved bars in compression
= 1.0 for straight bars in tension
= 0.7 for curved bars in tension if $c_d > 3.0\phi$

where

c_d is as shown in *Fig. 8.19* for straight and curved bars

ϕ is the diameter of the bar to be anchored

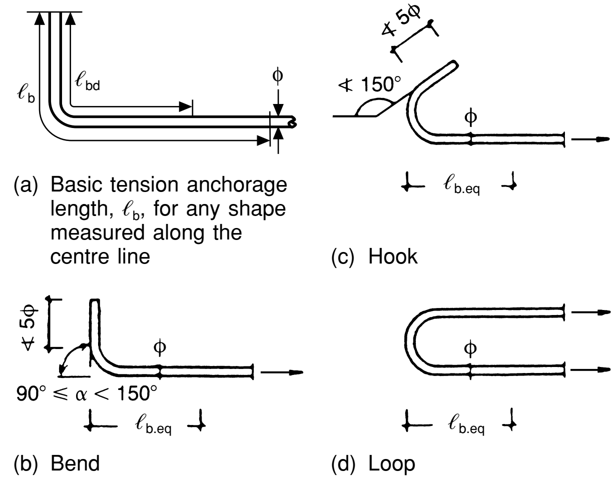


Fig. 8.18 *Common methods of anchorage. Equivalent anchorage lengths for bends, hooks and loops (based on Fig. 8.1, EC 2)*

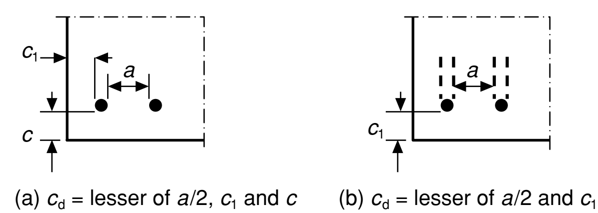


Fig. 8.19 *Values of c_d for beams and slabs (a) straight bars (b) bent or hooked bars (based on Fig. 8.3, EC 2).*

Table 8.14 shows the design anchorage lengths for straight and curved bars as multiples of bar diameters for high yield bars (f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}) embedded in a range of concrete strengths. Note that the values in the table apply to good bond

Table 8.14 Design anchorage lengths, $l_{bd,}$ as multiples of bar diameters assuming $\phi \leq 32$ mm and good bond conditions for a range of concrete strengths

Steel Grade		*Concrete Class*						
		C20/25	*C25/30*	*C30/37*	*C35/45*	*C40/50*	*C45/55*	*C50/60*
Deformed bars type 2	Straight bars in tension or compression	47	41	36	33	30	28	25
f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}	Curved bars in tension*	33	29	25	23	21	20	18
	Curved bars in compression	47	41	36	33	30	28	25

*In the anchorage region, $c_d > 3\phi$

conditions and to bar sizes less than or equal to 32 mm. Where bond conditions are poor the values in the table should be divided by 0.7 and where the bar diameter exceeds 32 mm the values should be divided by $[(132 - \phi)/100]$. The minimum radii to which reinforcement may be bent is shown in *Table 8.15* whilst the anchorage lengths for straights, hooks, bends and loops are shown in figure 8.18.

Table 8.15 Minimum diameter of bends, hooks and loops (Table 8.1N, EC 2)

Bar diameter	*Minimum mandrel diameter*
$\phi \le 16$ mm	4ϕ
$\phi > 16$ mm	7ϕ

Example 8.7 Calculation of anchorage lengths (EC 2)

Calculate the anchorage lengths for straight and curved bars in tension as multiples of bar size assuming:

1. The bars are high yield of diameter, $\phi \le 32$ mm
2. Concrete strength class is C20/25
3. Bond conditions are good
4. $c_d > 3\phi$.

STRAIGHT BARS

High yield bars, f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}
Concrete strength, f_{ck} = 20 N mm^{-2}
Ultimate bond stress, f_{bd} = 2.32 (*Table 8.13*)
Design strength of bars, $f_{yd} = f_{yk}/\gamma_S = 500/1.15$

The basic anchorage length, $l_{b,rqd}$, is

$$l_{b,rqd} = (\phi/4)(f_{yd}/f_{bd})$$
$$= (\phi/4)(500/1.15)/2.32 \approx 47\phi$$

Hence, the anchorage length, l_{bd}, is

$$l_{bd} = \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\alpha_4\alpha_5 l_{b,rqd} = 1.0 \times 47\phi = 47\phi \quad \text{(see } \textit{Table 8.14}\text{)}$$

CURVED BARS

The calculation is essentially the same for this case except that $\alpha_1 = 0.7$ for curved bars and therefore, l_{bd}, is

$$l_{bd} = l_{b,eq} = \alpha_1 l_{b,rqd} = 0.7 \times 47\phi \approx 33\phi \quad \text{(see } \textit{Table 8.14}\text{)}$$

8.8.4.4 Curtailment of bars (Cl. 9.2.1.3, EC 2)

The curtailment length of bars in beams is obtained from *Fig. 8.20*. The theoretical cut-off point is based on the design bending moment curve which has been horizontally displaced by an amount a_1 in the direction of decreasing bending moment, a consequence of the additional longitudinal force in the tension steel due to the applied shear force. This is sometimes referred to as the 'shift rule'. It is also necessary to ensure that the bar extends an anchorage length beyond the point where it is fully required for bending and shear. Thus in relation to the bending moment envelope, bar should extend $(a_1 + l_{bd})$ beyond the point where fully required and a_1 beyond the point where no longer required.

If the shear resistance is calculated according to the 'variable strut inclination method' the shift, a_1, is given by:

$$a_1 = \frac{z}{2}(\cot\theta - \cot\alpha) \tag{8.40}$$

where
θ is the angle of the concrete strut to the longitudinal axis
α is the angle of the shear reinforcement to the longitudinal axis.
$z \approx 0.9d$

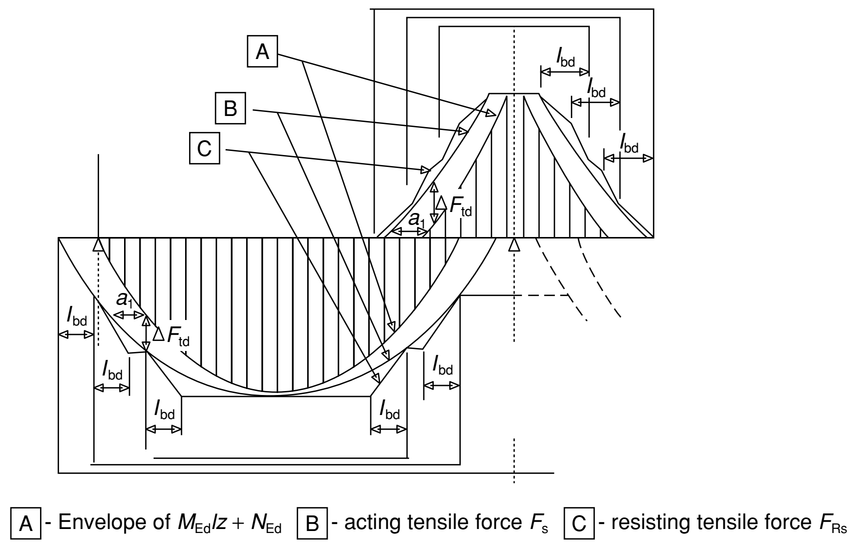


Fig. 8.20 *Envelope line for curtailment of reinforcement in flexural members (based on Fig. 9.2, EC 2).*

For members with vertical links a_1 will be equal to:

$$a_1 = \frac{z}{2}(\cot\theta - \cot 90°) = \frac{z}{2}\cot\theta$$

Since, in practice, the strut angle often takes the value $\cot\theta = 2.5$ the shift, a_1, is given by

$$a_1 = 1.25z$$

EC 2 also recommends the following rules for the curtailment of reinforcement in beams subjected to predominantly uniformly distributed loads.

(i) Top reinforcement at end supports. In monolithic construction, even where simple supports have been assumed in design, the section at supports should be designed for a bending moment arising from partial fixity of at least 25 per cent of the maximum bending moment in the span.

(ii) Bottom reinforcement at end supports. When there is little or no fixity at end supports, at least 25 per cent of the reinforcement provided at mid-span should be taken into the support and anchored as shown in *Fig. 8.21*. The tensile force to be anchored, F_E, is given by:

$$F_E = |V_{Ed}|.a_1/z + N_{Ed} \qquad (8.41)$$

where
V_{Ed} is the shear force at the end support
a_1 is obtained from equation 8.40
N_{Ed} is the axial force in the member

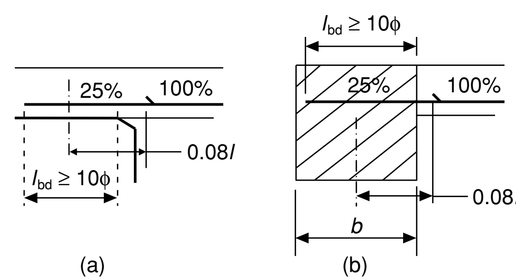


Fig. 8.21 *Curtailments and anchorages of bottom reinforcement at end supports (based on Fig. 9.3, EC 2).*

(iii) Bottom reinforcement at intermediate supports. At least 25 per cent of the reinforcement required at mid-span should extend to intermediate supports. The anchorage length should not be less than 10ϕ for straight bars.

The reinforcement required to resist possible positive moments due to, for example, accidental actions such as explosions and collisions, should be continuous which may be achieved by means of lapped bars as shown in *Fig 8.22a* or *8.22b*.

Fig. 8.23 shows the simplified rules for curtailment of reinforcement in simply supported and continuous beams recommended in The Concrete Centre publication 'How to design concrete structures using Eurocode 2'.

8.8.4.5 Lap lengths (Cl. 8.7.3, EC 2)

Lap length, l_o, is given by:

$$l_o = \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\alpha_5\alpha_6 l_{b,rqd} \geq l_{o,min} = 0.3\alpha_6 l_{b,rqd} \qquad (8.42)$$

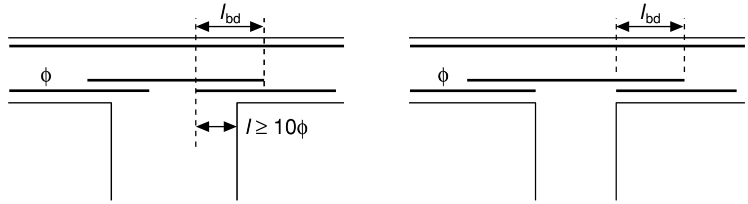


Fig. 8.22 Anchorage at intermediate supports (Fig. 9.4, EC 2).

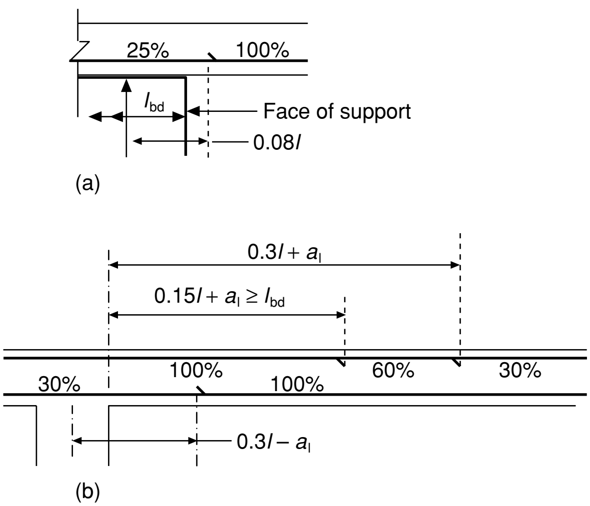


Fig. 8.23 Simplified detailing rules for beams (a) simple end supports (b) internal supports of continuous beams.

where

$l_{b,rqd}$ anchorage length
$l_{o,min}$ minimum lap length which should be not less than 15ϕ or 200 mm
α_1–α_5 are as for equation 8.38
α_6 = $(\rho_1/25)^{0.5}$: $1.0 \leq \alpha_6 \leq 1.5$ (*Table 8.15*)

in which

ρ_1 percentage of reinforcement lapped within $0.65l_o$ from the centre of the lap length considered

Table 8.16 shows the compression and tension lap lengths as multiples of bar size for grade 500 bars (f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}) embedded in a range of concrete strengths. Note that the values in the table apply to good bond conditions and to bar sizes less than or equal to 32 mm. Where the bond conditions are poor the values in the table should be divided by 0.7 and where the bar diameter exceeds 32 mm the values should be divided by [(132 − ϕ)/100].

Table 8.16 Lap lengths as multiples of bar size for grade 500 (f_{yk} = 500 N mm^{-2}) deformed bars

	% of lapped bars relative to the total x-section area, ρ_1	α_6	*Concrete class*				
			C20/25	*C25/30*	*C30/37*	*C35/45*	*C40/45*
Compression & tension laps	< 25%	1	47	41	36	33	30
	33%	1.15	54	48	42	38	35
	50%	1.4	66	58	51	47	42
	> 50%	1.5	71	62	54	50	45

Example 8.8 Design of a simply supported beam (EC 2)

Design the longitudinal and link reinforcement for the beam shown in *Fig. 8.24* assuming Class XC1 exposure. The beam is made of class C25/30 concrete of bulk density 25 kNm^{-3} and grade 500 steel.

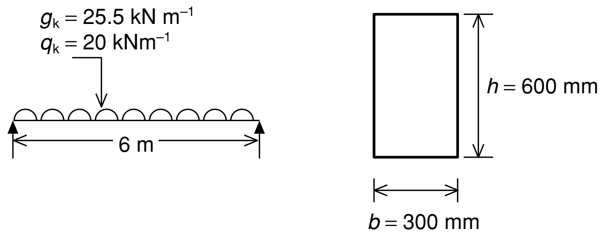


Fig. 8.24

DESIGN MOMENT (M)

Loading

Permanent
Self weight of beam = 0.6 × 0.3 × 25 = 4.5 kNm^{-1}
Total permanent load, g_k = 4.5 + 25.5 = 30 kNm^{-1}

Variable
Total variable load, q_k = 20 kNm^{-1}

Ultimate load
Total ultimate load, $\omega = 1.35g_k + 1.5q_k = 1.35 \times 30 + 1.5 \times 20 = 70.5$ kNm^{-1}

Design moment

$$M_{Ed} = \frac{\omega \ell^2}{8} = \frac{70.5 \times 6^2}{8} = 317.25\,\text{kNm}$$

ULTIMATE MOMENT OF RESISTANCE, M_{Rd}

Effective depth

$$\text{Minimum cover, } c_{min} = \max\{c_{min,dur};\ c_{min,b};\ 10\text{ mm}\}$$

For Class XC1 exposure, $c_{min,dur}$ = 15 mm (*Table 8.10*)
Assume diameter of longitudinal reinforcement is 25 mm, hence $c_{min,b}$ = 25 mm
Nominal cover to main steel = $c_{min,b} + \Delta c_{dev}$ = 25 + 10 = 35 mm

Assuming diameter of links = 8 mm, nominal cover to links = 35 − 8 = 27 mm > nominal cover for durability (= 15 + 10 = 25 mm). Hence, effective depth, d, is

$$d = 600 - 27 - 8 - 25/2 = 552\text{ mm}$$

[Note that, in practice, spacers in multiples of 5 mm are fixed to links. Nominal cover to links will be either 25 mm or 30 mm (to ensure at least 35 mm to main bars).]

Ultimate moment
$M_{Rd} = 0.167 f_{cu} bd^2 = 0.167 \times 25 \times 300 \times 552^2 \times 10^{-6} = 381.6$ kNm
Since $M_{Rd} > M_{Ed}$ design as a singly reinforced beam.

Example 8.8 *continued*

MAIN STEEL, A_{S1}

$$K_o = \frac{M}{f_{ck}bd^2} = \frac{317.25 \times 10^6}{25 \times 300 \times 552^2} = 0.139$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}]$$

$$= 552[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3 \times 0.139/3.4)}] = 473 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_{s1} = \frac{M}{0.87f_{yk}z} = \frac{317.25 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 473} = 1542\,\text{mm}^2$$

Therefore, from *Table 3.10* provide 4H25 (A_{s1} = 1960 mm^2)

CHECK MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM STEEL AREAS AND MINIMUM BAR SPACING

$$0.04A_c \geq A_s \geq 0.26\frac{f_{ctm}}{f_{yk}}b_t d \geq 0.0013b_t d$$

$$0.04A_c = 0.04 \times bh = 0.04 \times 300 \times 600 = 7200 \text{ mm}^2 > A_{s1} \quad \text{OK}$$

$$0.26\frac{f_{ctm}}{f_{yk}}b_t d = 0.26\frac{0.3 \times 25^{2/3}}{500} = 300 \times 552 = 221\,\text{mm}^2$$

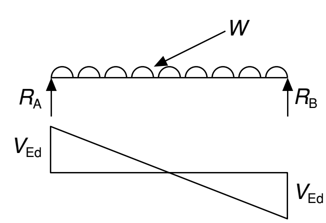
$$\geq 0.0013b_t d = 0.0013 \times 300 \times 552 = 215 \text{ mm}^2 < A_{s1} \quad \mathit{OK}$$

Clear distance between bars = 1/3[b − (2 × cover) − 4ϕ]

= 1/3[300 − 2 × 35 − 4 × 25] = 43 mm

> min{ϕ; d_g (say 20 mm) + 5 mm; 20 mm]   OK

SHEAR REINFORCEMENT



Design shear force, V_{Ed}

$$V_{Ed} = 0.5(\omega\ell) = 0.5 \times 70.5 \times 6 = 211.5 \text{ kN}$$

Shear resistance of concrete ($V_{Rd,c}$)

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_c = 0.18/1.5 = 0.12 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$k = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{552}} = 1.6 < 2.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 8.8 *continued*

$$\rho_1 = \frac{A_{sl}}{b_w d} = \frac{1960}{300 \times 552} = 0.0118 < 0.02 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\sigma_{cp} = 0$$

$$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2} = 0.035 \times 1.6^{3/2} \times 25^{1/2} = 0.354 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$V_{Rd,c} = [C_{Rd,c}k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}]b_w d$$

$$= [0.12 \times 1.6(100 \times 0.0118 \times 25)^{1/3}]300 \times 552$$

$$= 98243 \text{ N} \geq (\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp})b_w d = 0.354 \times 300 \times 552 = 58\,622 \text{ N} \quad \text{OK}$$

Since $V_{Rd,c} < V_{Ed}$, shear reinforcement must be provided.

Check compression capacity of compression strut, $V_{Rd,max}$, assuming $\theta = 21.8°$

$$\nu = 0.6(1 - f_{ck}/250) = 0.6(1 - 25/250) = 0.54$$

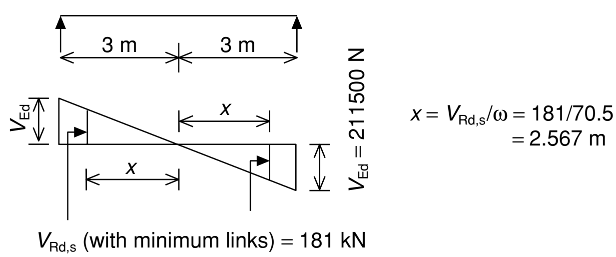
$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc}f_{ck}/\gamma_c = 0.85 \times 25/1.5 = 14.2 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$V_{Rd,max} = b_w z \nu f_{cd}/(\cot\theta + \tan\theta)$$

$$= [300 \times (0.9 \times 552) \times 0.54 \times 14.2 / (2.5 + 0.4)] \times 10^{-3}$$

$$= 394.2 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed} \quad \text{OK}$$

Diameter and spacing of links



Where $V_{Ed} < V_{Rd,c}$, provide minimum shear reinforcement, $\rho_{w,min}$, according to

$$\rho_{w,min} = (0.08\sqrt{f_{ck}})/f_{yk} = (0.08\sqrt{25})/500 = 8 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$\rho_{w,min} = A_{sw}/sb_w \sin\alpha$$

$$\Rightarrow A_{sw}/s = 8 \times 10^{-4} \times 300 \times 1 = 0.24$$

Maximum spacing of links, s_{max}, is

$$s_{max} = 0.75d = 0.75 \times 552 = 414 \text{ mm}$$

Hence, from *Table 3.13* provide H8 at 300 mm centres, $A_{sw}/s = 0.335$

$$V_{Rd,s} = 0.335 \times 497 \times (500/1.15) \times 2.5 \times 10^{-3} = 181 \text{ kN}$$

Where $V_{Ed} > 181$ kN provide shear reinforcement according to:

$$V_{Rd,s} = \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd} \cot\theta = 211500 \text{ N}$$

Example 8.8 *continued*

However, it can be seen that $V_{Ed} = 181$ kN occurs at $x = 2.567$ m which is less than d from the face of the support, and there is therefore no need to reduce the link spacing beyond this point.

DEFLECTION

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \Rightarrow \rho_o = \sqrt{f_{ck}} \times 10^{-3} = \sqrt{25} \times 10^{-3} = 5 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\rho = \frac{A_{s1}}{bd} = \frac{1542}{300 \times 552} = 9.3 \times 10^{-3}$$

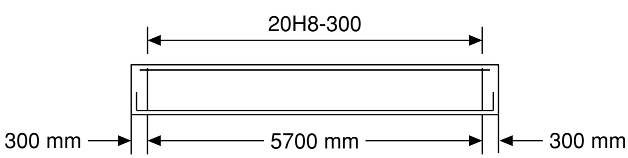
Since $\rho > \rho_o$, $\dfrac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\dfrac{\rho_o}{\rho - \rho'}\right) + \dfrac{1}{12}\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\dfrac{\rho'}{\rho_o}\right)^{1/2}\right] = 1.0\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{25}\left(\dfrac{5 \times 10^{-3}}{9.3 \times 10^{-3} - 0}\right)\right] = 15$

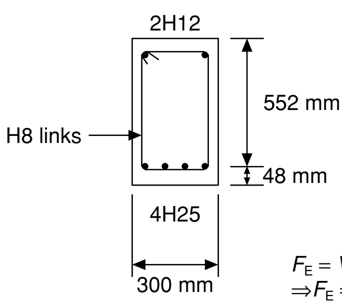
$$\sigma_s = \frac{310 f_{yk} A_{s,req}}{500 A_{s,prov}} = \frac{310 \times 500 \times 1542}{500 \times 1960} = 243.9 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

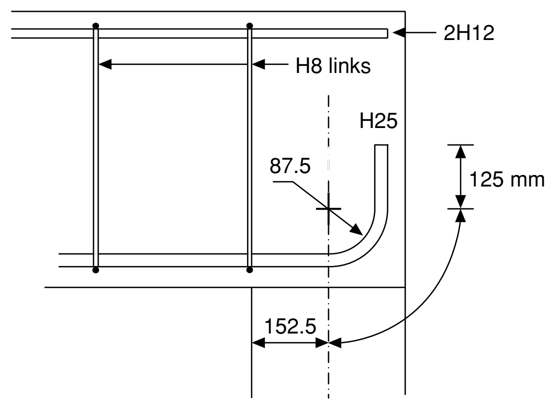
Allowable span/depth ratio = basic $1/d \times 310/\sigma_s = 15 \times 310/243.9 = 19$
Actual span/depth ratio = $6000/552 = 10.9 <$ allowable OK

REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

The sketches below show the main reinforcement requirements for the beam. For reasons of buildability the actual reinforcement details may well be slightly different.





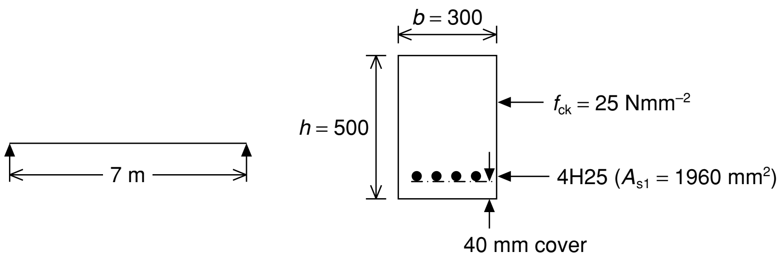


$F_E = V_{Ed} a_l / z = (V_{Ed} \cot\theta)/2 = 1.25 V_{Ed}$ for $\cot\theta = 2.5$
$\Rightarrow F_E = 1.25 \times 211.5 = 264.4$ kN

$A_{s,req} = (264.4 \times 10^3)/(500/1.15) = 608 \text{ mm}^2$
$l_{bd} = (41 \times 25) \times 608/1960 = 318$ mm measured from front face of support to end of bar
$\geq 0.3 l_{bd,req} = 0.3 \times (41 \times 25) = 308$ mm OK

Example 8.9 Analysis of a singly reinforced beam (EC 2)

Calculate the maximum variable load that the beam shown below can carry assuming that the load is (i) uniformly distributed or (ii) occurs as a point load at mid-span.



MOMENT CAPACITY OF SECTION

Effective depth, d, is

$$d = h - \text{cover} - \phi/2 = 500 - 40 - 25/2 = 447 \text{ mm}$$

$$K_o = \frac{M}{f_{ck}bd^2} = \frac{M}{25 \times 300 \times 447^2}$$

$$z = d[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}]$$

$$= 447[0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3 \times M/3.4 \times 25 \times 300 \times 447^2)}] \quad (1)$$

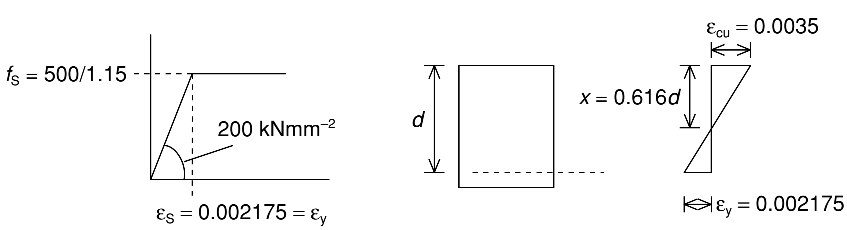
$$A_s = \frac{M}{0.87 f_{yk} z} = \frac{M}{0.87 \times 500 \times z} = 1960 \text{ mm}^2 \quad (2)$$

Solving equations (1) and (2) simultaneously gives

$M = 295.6$ kNm and $z = 346.7$ mm

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{d - z}{0.4} = \frac{447 - 346.7}{0.4} = 250.7 \text{ mm} \le 0.616d \text{ (to ensure section is under-reinforced)}$$

$$= 0.616 \times 447 = 275 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$



MAXIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LOAD, q_K

Permanent load, $g_k = 0.5 \times 0.3 \times 25 = 3.75$ kNm^{-1}

Total ultimate load, $\omega = 1.35g_k + 1.5q_k$

$$= 1.35 \times 3.75 + 1.5 \times q_k$$

Example 8.9 *continued*

Substituting into

$$M = \frac{\omega \ell^2}{8}$$

$$295.6 = \frac{(1.35 \times 3.75 + 1.5q_k) \times 7^2}{8}$$

Hence

$$q_k = 28.8 \text{ kNm}^{-1}$$

MAXIMUM POINT LOAD, Q_K

Factored permanent load, $W_P = (1.35g_k)$ span
$= (1.35 \times 3.75)\ 7 = 35.44$ kN

Factored variable load, $W_v = 1.5Q_k$

Substituting into

$$M = \frac{W_P \ell}{8} + \frac{W_V \ell}{4}$$

$$295.6 = \frac{35.44 \times 7}{8} + \frac{1.5Q_k \times 7}{4}$$

Hence $Q_k = 100.8$ kN

8.9 Design of one-way solid slabs

8.9.1 DEPTH, BENDING, SHEAR

EC 2 requires a slightly different approach to BS 8110 for designing one-way spanning solid slabs. To calculate the depth of the slab, the designer must first estimate the percentage of steel required in the slab for bending. Generally, most slabs will be lightly reinforced, i.e. $\rho < 0.5\%$. The percentage of reinforcement can be used, together with the support conditions, to calculate an appropriate span/depth ratio using equations 8.32 and 8.33. The effective depth of the slab is obtained by multiplying this ratio by the span (see Example 8.10). The actual area of steel required in the slab for bending is calculated using the equations developed in section 8.8.1. Provided this agrees with the assumed value, the calculated depth of the slab is acceptable.

The designer will also need to check that the slab will not fail in shear. The shear resistance of the slab can be calculated as for beams (see section 8.8.2). According to Cl. 6.2.1(3), where the design shear force (V_{Ed}) is less than the design shear resistance of the concrete alone ($V_{Rd,c}$) no shear reinforcement is necessary. The same requirement appears in BS 8110.

Where $V_{Ed} > V_{Rd,c}$, all the shear force must be resisted by the shear reinforcement. The actual area of shear reinforcement in slabs can be calculated as for beams (section 8.8.2). This should not be less than the minimum value, $\rho_{w,min}$, given by

$$\rho_{w,min} = (0.08\sqrt{f_{ck}})/f_{yk}$$

For members with vertical shear reinforcement, the maximum longitudinal spacing of successive series of shear links, s_{max}, should not exceed

$$s_{max} = 0.75d$$

Moreover, the maximum transverse spacing of link reinforcement should not exceed $1.5d$. Cl. 9.3.2(1) also notes that shear reinforcement should not be provided in slabs less than 200 mm deep.

8.9.2 REINFORCEMENT DETAILS FOR SOLID SLABS

This section outlines EC 2 requirements regarding the detailing of slabs with respect to:

1. reinforcement percentages
2. spacing of reinforcement
3. anchorage and curtailment of reinforcement
4. crack control

1. Reinforcement areas (Cl. 5.4.2.1.1, EC 2)
In EC 2, the maximum and minimum percentages of longitudinal steel permitted in beams and slabs are the same, namely:

$$A_{s1} \geq 0.26\frac{f_{ctm}}{f_{yk}}b_t d \geq 0.0013 b_t d$$

$$A_{s1}, A_{s2} \leq 0.04 A_c$$

where
b breadth of section
d effective depth
A_c cross-sectional area of concrete (bh)
f_{yk} characteristic yield stress of reinforcement

The area of transverse or secondary reinforcement should not generally be less than 20 per cent of the principal reinforcement, i.e.:

$$A_s \text{ (trans)} \geq 0.2 \times A_s \text{ (main)}$$

2. Spacing of reinforcement
The clear distance between reinforcing bar should not be less than the following:

(a) maximum bar diameter
(b) 20 mm
(c) d_g + 5 mm where d_g is the maximum aggregate size.

The maximum bar spacing in slabs, s_{max}, for the main reinforcement should not exceed the following:

$s_{max} = 3h \leq 400$ mm generally and $2h \leq 250$ mm in areas of maximum moment

where h denotes the overall depth of the slab.

The maximum bar spacing in slabs, s_{max}, for the secondary reinforcement should not exceed the following:

$s_{max} = 3.5h \leq 450$ mm generally and $3h \leq 400$ mm in areas of maximum moment

3. Anchorage and curtailment (Cl 9.2.1.3 & 9.3.1.2)
For detailing the main reinforcement in slabs, similar provisions to those outlined earlier for beams apply.

Cl. 9.3.1.2 recommends that where end supports are simply supported, 50 per cent of the calculated span reinforcement should continue up to the support and be anchored to resist a force, F_E, given by

$$F_E = |V_{Ed}|.a_1/z + N_{Ed}$$

where $|V_{Ed}|$, z and N_{Ed} are as defined for equation 8.41 and a_1 is equal to d if the slab is not reinforced for shear or is given by equation 8.40 if shear reinforcement is provided.

If partial fixity exists along an edge of a slab top reinforcement should be provided capable of resisting at least 25 per cent of the maximum moment in the adjacent span. This reinforcement should extend at least 0.2 times the length of the adjacent span as shown in *Fig. 8.25* and be anchored. At an end support the moment to be resisted may be reduced to 15 per cent of the maximum moment in the adjacent span.

The Concrete Centre publication 'How to design concrete structures using Eurocode 2' recommends that the simplified curtailment rules for continuous slabs shown in *Fig. 8.26* should be used.

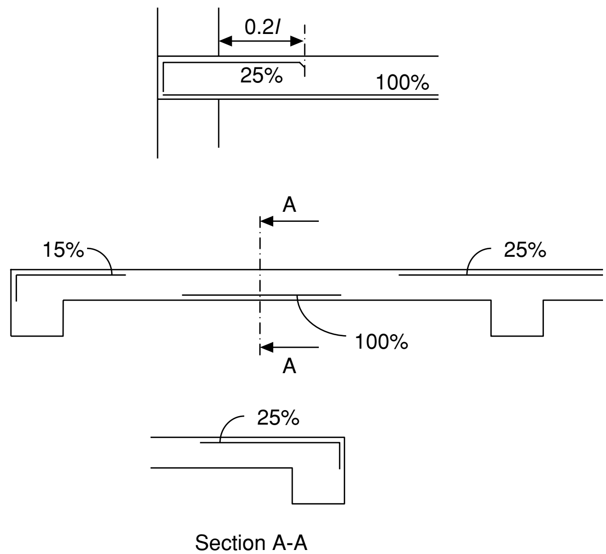


Fig. 8.25

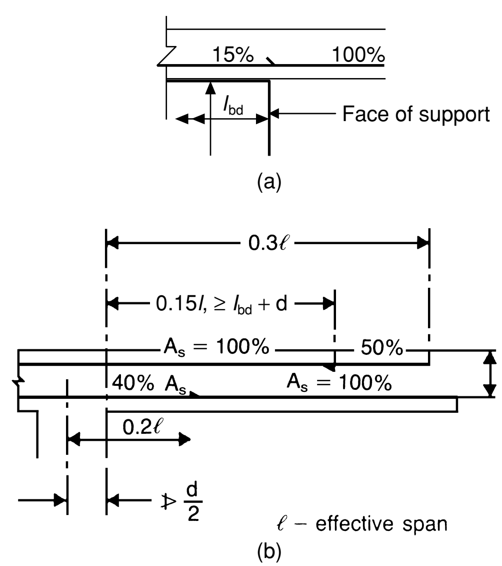


Fig. 8.26 *Simplified curtailment rules for slabs (a) simple support (b) continuous member.*

4. Crack widths (Cl. 7.3.3, EC 2)
According to EC 2, where the overall depth of the slab does not exceed 200 mm and the code provisions with regard to reinforcement areas, spacing of reinforcement, anchorage and curtailment of bars, etc., discussed above have been applied, no further measures specifically to control cracking are necessary.

Furthermore, where at least the minimum reinforcement area has been provided, the limitation of crack width to less than 0.3 mm for reinforced concrete may generally be achieved by either limiting the maximum bar spacing or maximum bar diameter in accordance with the values given in *Table 8.12*.

Example 8.10 Design of a one-way spanning floor (EC 2)

Design the floor shown in *Fig. 8.27* for an imposed load of 4 kN mm^{-2}, assuming the following material strengths: f_{ck} = 30 Nmm^{-2}, f_{yk} = 500 Nmm^{-2}. The environmental conditions fall within exposure class XC1.

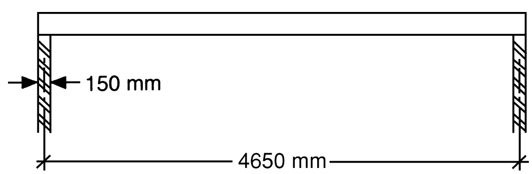


Fig. 8.27

DETERMINE EFFECTIVE DEPTH OF SLAB AND AREA OF MAIN STEEL

Estimate overall depth of slab

Assume reinforcement ratio, ρ, is 0.35%. From equation 8.32, basic span/effective depth ratio for a simply supported slab is approximately 31.

$$\text{Minimum effective depth, } d = \frac{\text{span}}{\text{basic ratio}} = \frac{4650}{31} \approx 150\,\text{mm}$$

Hence, take d = 155 mm

$$\text{Minimum cover, } c_{min} = \max\{c_{min,dur};\ c_{min,b};\ 10\text{ mm}\}$$

For Class XC1 exposure, $c_{min,dur}$ = 15 mm (*Table 8.10*)
Assume diameter of main steel, Φ = 10 mm, therefore $c_{min,b}$ = 10 mm
Nominal cover to reinforcement, $c_{nom} = c_{min} + \Delta c_{dev}$ = 15 + 10 = 25 mm
Overall depth of slab (h) = $d + \Phi/2 + c_{nom}$ = 155 + 10/2 + 25 = 185 mm

Loading

Permanent

$$\text{Self weight of slab } (g_k) = 0.185 \times 25(\text{kNm}^{-3}) = 4.625\text{ kNm}^{-2}$$

Variable

Total variable load (q_k) = 4 kNm^{-2}

Ultimate load

For 1m width of slab total ultimate load = $(1.35g_k + 1.5q_k)$span

$$= (1.35 \times 4.625 + 1.5 \times 4)4.65 = 56.93\text{ kN}$$

Example 8.10 *continued*

Design moment

Design moment, $M_{Ed} = \frac{Wl}{8} = \frac{56.93 \times 4.65}{8}$ 33.1 kNm

Ultimate moment

Ultimate moment of resistance (M_{Rd}) = $0.167 f_{ck} bd^2$

$$= 0.167 \times 30 \times 1000 \times 155^2 \times 10^{-6} = 120 \text{ kNm}$$

Since $M_{Rd} > M_{Ed}$ no compression reinforcement is required.

Main reinforcement (A_{s1})

$$K_o = \frac{M}{f_{ck} bd^2} = \frac{33.1 \times 10^6}{30 \times 1000 \times 155^2} = 0.046$$

$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}) \le 0.95d = 0.95 \times 155 = 147.3 \text{ mm}$$

$$= 155(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3 \times 0.046/3.4)}) = 155 \times 0.957$$

$$A_{s1} = \frac{M}{0.87 f_{yk} z} = \frac{33.1 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 147.3} = 517 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence from *Table 3.22*, H10 at 150 mm centres (A_{s1} = 523 mm^2 m^{-1}) would be suitable.
The required reinforcement ratio, ρ, in this case is

$$\rho = \frac{A_{s1}}{bd} = \frac{517}{1000 \times 155} = 0.00334 = 0.334\%$$

Check estimated effective depth of slab

Design service stress, $\sigma_s \approx \frac{5}{8} \times f_{yk} \times \frac{A_{req}}{A_{prov}} = \frac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \frac{517}{523} = 308.9 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$

Modification factor = $\frac{310}{\sigma_s} = \frac{310}{308.9} = 1.0$

Basic span/effective depth ratio is given by

$$\frac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho}\right) + 3.2\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho} - 1\right)^{3/2}\right]$$

$$= 1.0\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{30}\left(\frac{\sqrt{30} \times 10^{-3}}{3.34 \times 10^{-3}}\right) + 3.2 \times \sqrt{30}\left(\frac{\sqrt{30} \times 10^{-3}}{3.34 \times 10^{-3}} - 1\right)^{3/2}\right] = 33.4$$

Modified span/effective depth ratio = basic ratio × modification factor

$$= 26.4 \times 1.0 = 33.4$$

Actual span/effective depth ratio $= \frac{4650}{155} = 30 <$ allowable OK

Therefore, use a slab with an effective depth = 155 mm, overall depth = 185 mm and main steel = H10 at 150 mm centres.

Check bar spacing and steel area

Maximum bar spacing for main steel < 3h = 3 × 185 = 555 mm ≤ 250 mm (in areas of maximum moment) OK
Maximum area of steel, $A_{s,max} = 0.04A_c = 0.04 \times 185 \times 10^3 = 7400$ mm^2 m^{-1} OK

Example 8.10 *continued*

Minimum reinforcement area, $A_{s,min} = 0.26\dfrac{f_{ctm}}{f_{yk}}b_t d \geq 0.0013 b_t d$

$$= 0.26\frac{0.3 \times 30^{2/3}}{500}10^3 \times 155 = 233\,\text{mm}^2\text{m}^{-1}$$

$$\geq 0.0013\text{bd} = 0.0013 \times 10^3 \times 155 = 202\ \text{mm}^2\ \text{m}^{-1} > A_{s1} \quad \text{OK}$$

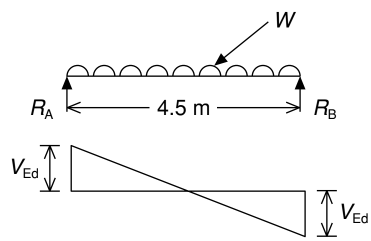
SECONDARY REINFORCEMENT

Provide H8 at 300 mm centres ($A_{s\ (tras)} = 168\ \text{mm}^2\ \text{m}^{-1}$)

$$A_{s\ (trans)} \geq 0.2A_{s\ (main)} = 0.2 \times 523 = 105\ \text{mm}^2\ \text{m}^{-1}\ \text{OK}$$

Maximum bar spacing < 3.5h = 3.5 × 185 = 648 mm ≤ 400 mm (in areas of maximum moment) OK

SHEAR REINFORCEMENT



Ultimate load (W) = 51.7 kN

Design shear force (V_{Ed})

$$V_{Ed} = \frac{W}{2} = \frac{56.93}{2} = 28.5\,\text{kN}$$

Shear resistance of concrete alone, $V_{Rd,c}$

$$f_{ck} = 30\ \text{N mm}^{-2}$$

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_c = 0.18/1.5 = 0.12\ \text{N mm}^{-2}$$

$$k = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{155}} = 2.1 \leq 2.0$$

Assuming 50 per cent of mid-span steel does not extend to the supports $A_{s1} = 260\ \text{mm}^2\ \text{m}^{-1}$. Hence

$$\rho_1 = \frac{A_{s1}}{b_w d} = \frac{260}{10^3 \times 155} = 0.00168 < 0.02 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\sigma_{cp} = 0$$

$$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2} = 0.035 \times 2^{3/2} \times 30^{1/2} = 0.542$$

$$V_{Rd,c} = [C_{Rd,c}k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}]b_w d$$

$$= [0.12 \times 2(100 \times 0.00168 \times 30)^{1/3}]10^3 \times 155$$

$$= 63780\ \text{N} \geq (\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp})b_w d = 0.542 \times 10^3 \times 155 = 84010\ \text{N}$$

Since $V_{Rd,c}$ (= 84 kN) > V_{Ed} (28.5 kN) no shear reinforcement is required which is normally the case for slabs.

Example 8.10 *continued*

REINFORCEMENT DETAILS

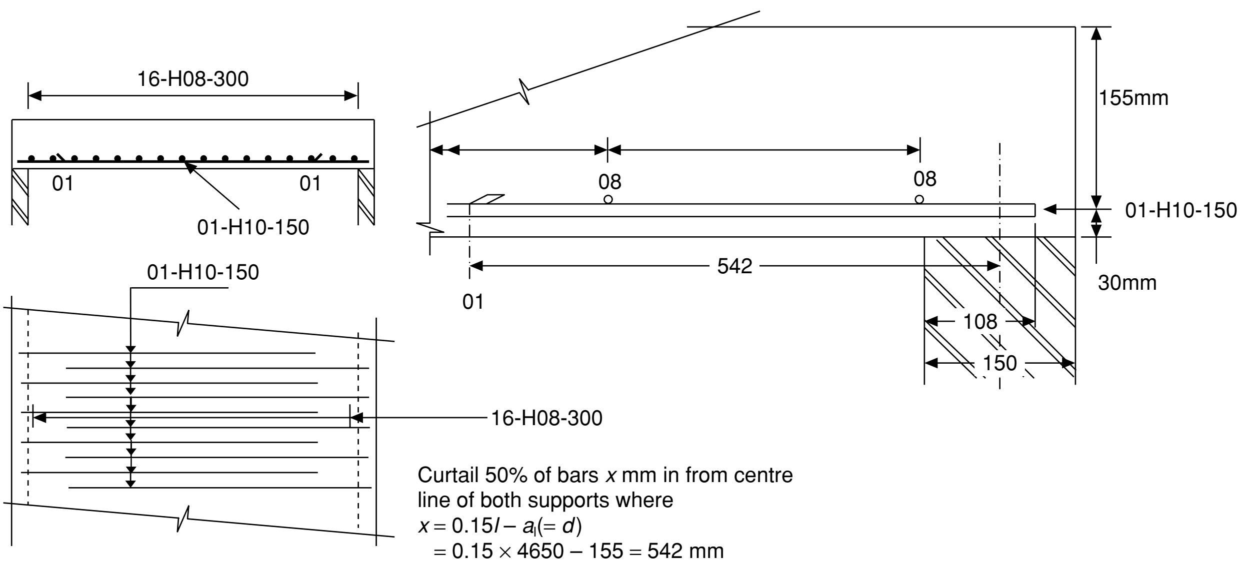
The sketches below show the main reinforcement requirements for the slab.

Reinforcement areas and bar spacing

Minimum reinforcement areas and bar spacing rules were checked above and found to be satisfactory.

Crack width

Since the overall depth of the slab does not exceed 200 mm and the rest of the code provision have been met, no further measures specifically to control cracking are necessary.

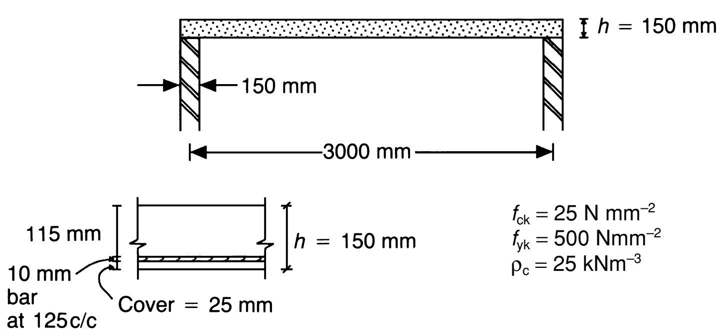


$F_E = V_{Ed}(d/z) = 28.5/0.9 = 31.7$ kN

$A_{s,req} = (31.7 \times 10^3)/(500/1.15) = 73$ mm^2
$l_{bd} = (36 \times 10) \times 73/260 = 101$ mm measured from front face of support to end of bar
$\geq 0.3 l_{b,min} = 0.3 \times (36 \times 10) = 108$ mm

Example 8.11 Analysis of one-way spanning floor (EC 2)

Calculate the maximum uniformly distributed variable load that the floor shown below can carry.



Example 8.11 *continued*

EFFECTIVE SPAN

From Cl 5.3.2.2. of EC 2, effective span of slab, l_{eff}, is

$$l_{eff} = l_n + a_1 + a_2$$

where

l_n clear distance between the face of supports

a_1, a_2 are the lesser of half the width of the support, $t/2$, (= 150/2 = 75 mm) or half the overall depth of the slab, $h/2$ (= 150/2 = 75 mm) at the ends of the slab

$$\Rightarrow\ l_{eff} = 2850 + \frac{150}{2} + \frac{150}{2} = 3000\ \text{mm}$$

VARIABLE LOAD CAPACITY

This can only really be estimated by trial and error. Try $q_k = 11.4$ kNm^{-1}.

Check bending

Self weight of slab (g_k) = 0.15 × 25 kNm^{-3} = 3.75 kNm^{-2}

Ultimate load (ω) $= 1.35g_k + 1.5q_k$

$= 1.35 \times 3.75 + 1.5 \times 11.4$

Design moment, $M = \dfrac{\omega\ell^2}{8} = \dfrac{(1.35 \times g_k + 1.5q_k)\ell^2}{8} = \dfrac{(1.35 \times 3.75 + 1.5 \times 11.4)3^2}{8} = 24.9\ \text{kNm}$

Effective depth of slab (d) = h − cover − Φ/2 = 150 − 25 − 10/2 = 120 mm

$$K_o = \frac{M}{f_{ck}bd^2} = \frac{24.9 \times 10^6}{25 \times 1000 \times 120^2} = 0.0692$$

$$z = d(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3K_o/3.4)}) = 120(0.5 + \sqrt{(0.25 - 3 \times 0.0692/3.4)}) = 112\ \text{mm}$$

$$A_{s1} = \frac{M}{0.87f_y z} = \frac{24.9 \times 10^6}{0.87 \times 500 \times 112} = 511\ \text{mm}^2 < \text{provided} = 628\ \text{mm}^2$$

Check deflection

Design service stress, $\sigma_s \approx \dfrac{5}{8} \times f_{yk} \times \dfrac{A_{s,req}}{A_{s,prov}} = \dfrac{5}{8} \times 500 \times \dfrac{511}{628} = 254.3\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$

Modification factor $= \dfrac{310}{\sigma_s} = \dfrac{310}{254.3} = 1.22$

$$\rho = \frac{A_{s1}}{bd} = \frac{511}{1000 \times 120} = 0.00426 = 4.26 \times 10^{-3} < \rho_o = \sqrt{f_{ck}} \times 10^{-3} = \sqrt{25} \times 10^{-3}$$

The basic span/effective depth ratio is given by

$$\frac{\ell}{d} = K\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho}\right) + 3.2\sqrt{f_{ck}}\left(\frac{\rho_o}{\rho} - 1\right)^{3/2}\right]$$

$$= 1.0\left[11 + 1.5\sqrt{25}\left(\frac{\sqrt{25} \times 10^{-3}}{4.26 \times 10^{-3}}\right) + 3.2\sqrt{25}\left(\frac{\sqrt{25} \times 10^{-3}}{4.26 \times 10^{-3}} - 1\right)^{3/2}\right] = 21$$

Allowable span/effective depth ratio = basic ratio × modification factor

= 21 × 1.22 = 25.6 > actual (3000/120 = 25) OK

Example 8.11 *continued*

Check shear capacity

Design shear force, V_{Ed1}, is

$$V_{Ed} = \frac{\omega\ell}{2} = \frac{(1.35 \times 3.75 + 1.5 \times 11.4)3}{2} = 33.24 \text{ kNm}$$

Shear resistance of concrete alone, $V_{Rd,c}$

$$f_{ck} = 25 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_c = 0.18/1.5 = 0.12 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$k = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{120}} = 2.3 \leq 2.0$$

Assuming all bars are taken onto supports

$$\rho_1 = \frac{A_{s1}}{b_w d} = \frac{628}{10^3 \times 120} = 0.00523 < 0.02 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\sigma_{cp} = 0$$

$$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2} = 0.035 \times 2^{3/2} \times 25^{1/2} = 0.495$$

$$V_{Rd,c} = [C_{Rd,c}k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}]b_w d$$

$$= [0.12 \times 2(100 \times 0.00523 \times 25)^{1/3}]10^3 \times 120$$

$$= 67848 \text{ N} \geq (\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp})b_w d = 0.495 \times 10^3 \times 120 = 59400 \text{ N}$$

$$V_{Rd,c} (= 67.85 \text{ kN}) > V_{Ed} (= 33.24 \text{ kN}) \quad \text{OK}$$

Thus the slab is capable of supporting a uniformly distributed variable load of 11.4 kNm^{-2}.

8.10 Design of pad foundations

The design of pad foundations was discussed in section 3.11.2.1 and found to be similar to that for slabs in respect of bending. However, the designer must also check that the pad will not fail due to face, transverse or punching shear. EC 2 requirements in respect of these three modes of failure are discussed below.

8.10.1 FACE SHEAR (CL. 6.4.5, EC 2)

According to Cl. 6.4.5, adjacent to the column the applied ultimate shear stress, ν_{Ed}, should not exceed the maximum allowable shear resistance, $\nu_{Rd,max}$ where ν_{Ed} and $\nu_{Rd,max}$ are given by, respectively, equations 8.43 and 8.44:

$$\nu_{Ed} = \beta\frac{V_{Ed}}{u_0 d} \quad \text{(see } \textit{Fig. 3.75}\text{, Chapter 3)} \qquad (8.43)$$

where

V_{Ed} applied shear force

d mean effective depth of the slab, which may be taken as $(d_y + d_z)/2$ where d_y, d_z effective depth of section in the y and z directions respectively

u_0 length of column periphery

β = 1 where no eccentricity of loading exists

$$\nu_{Rd,max} = 0.5\nu f_{cd} \qquad (8.44)$$

where

$$\nu = 0.6[1 - (f_{ck}/250)]$$

$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc}\frac{f_{ck}}{\gamma_c}$$

8.10.2 TRANSVERSE SHEAR (CL. 6.4.4, EC 2)

The critical section for transverse shear failure normally occurs a distance d from the face of the column. Shear reinforcement is not necessary provided the ultimate design shear stress, ν_{Ed}, is less that the design shear resistance, ν_{Rd} where ν_{Ed} and ν_{Rd} are given by, respectively, equations 8.45 and 8.46:

$$\nu_{Ed} = \frac{V_{Ed,red}}{ud} \qquad (8.45)$$

where

u is the perimeter being considered

d is the mean effective depth of the section

$V_{Ed,red} = V_{Ed} - \Delta V_{Ed}$

in which

V_{Ed} is the applied shear force

ΔV_{Ed} is the net upward force within the control perimeter

The design shear resistance, $\nu_{Rd,c}$, is given by

$$\nu_{Rd} = C_{Rd,c} k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} \times (2d/a) \geq \nu_{min} \times (2d/a) \quad (8.46)$$

where

$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_C$

$k = 1 + \sqrt{\dfrac{200}{d}} \leq 2.0$

f_{ck} characteristic concrete strength

$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2} f_{ck}^{1/2}$

d is the effective depth of the section

a is the distance from the periphery of the column to the control perimeter considered

$$\rho_1 = \sqrt{\rho_{1y}\rho_{1z}} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{A_{sl,y}}{bd_y}\right) \times \left(\frac{A_{sl,z}}{bd_z}\right)} \leq 0.02$$

in which

ρ_{1y}, ρ_{1z} tension steel ratio in the y and z directions

d_y, d_z effective depth of section in the y and z directions

8.10.3 PUNCHING SHEAR (CL. 6.4.3 & 6.4.4, EC 2)

No punching shear reinforcement is required if the applied shear stress, ν_{Ed}, is less than the design punching shear resistance of concrete, ν_{Rd}, where ν_{Ed} and ν_{Rd} are calculated using, respectively, equations 8.47 and 8.48:

$$\nu_{Ed} = \beta \frac{V_{Ed}}{u_1 d} \quad (8.47)$$

where

V_{Ed} ultimate design shear force. For a foundation this is normally calculated along the perimeter of the base of the truncated punching shear cone, assumed to form at 26.6° (*Fig. 8.28*)

u_1 is the basic control perimeter (*Fig. 8.29*)

β is a coefficient which takes account of the effects of eccentricity of loading. In cases where no eccentricity of loading is possible, β may be taken as 1.0.

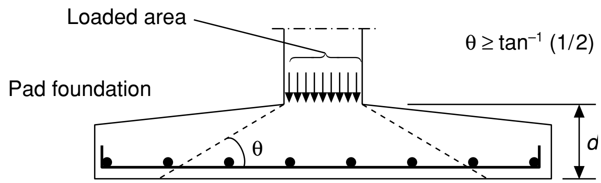


Fig. 8.28 *Design model for punching shear at ULS (Fig. 6.16, EC 2).*

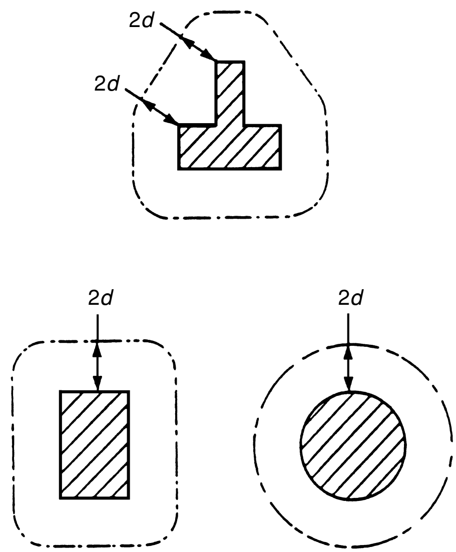


Fig. 8.29 *Critical perimeters (Fig. 6.13, EC 2).*

$$\nu_{Rd} = [C_{Rd,c} k(100\rho f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}] \times (2d/a) \geq [\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp}] \times (2d/a) \quad (8.48)$$

where

$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_C$

$k = 1 + \sqrt{\dfrac{200}{d}} \leq 2.0$

$k_1 = 0.1$

f_{ck} characteristic concrete strength

$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2} f_{ck}^{1/2}$

$$\rho = \sqrt{\rho_{1y}\rho_{1z}} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{A_{sl,y}}{bd_y}\right) \times \left(\frac{A_{sl,z}}{bd_z}\right)} \leq 0.02$$

in which

ρ_{1y}, ρ_{1z} tension steel ratio in the y and z directions

d_y, d_z effective depth of section in the y and z directions

$$\sigma_{cp} = (\sigma_{cy} + \sigma_{cz})/2$$

in which
σ_{cy}, σ_{cz} respectively, N_{Edy}/A_{cy} and N_{Edz}/A_{cz}

where
N_{Ed} longitudinal force
A_c area of concrete

Where ν_{Ed} exceeds ν_{Rd}, shear reinforcement will need to be provided such that $\nu_{Ed} \leq \nu_{Rd,cs}$

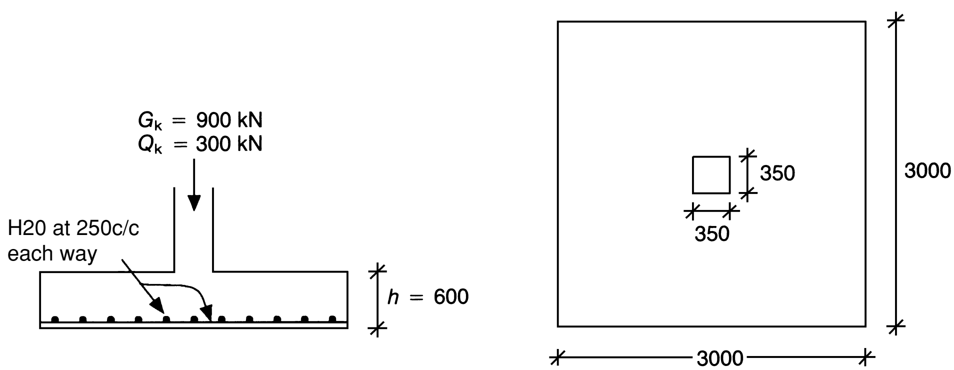
where
$\nu_{Rd,cs}$ is the design value of punching shear resistance of slab with shear reinforcement calculated in accordance with Cl. 6.4.5 of EC 2.

Example 8.12 Design of a pad foundation (EC 2)

The pad footing shown below supports a column which is subject to axial characteristic permanent and variable actions of 900 kN and 300 kN respectively. Assuming the following material strengths, check the suitability of the design in shear.

$$f_{ck} = 30 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$f_{yk} = 500 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$



Shear failure could arise:

(a) at the face of the column
(b) at a distance d from the face of the column
(c) punching failure of the slab

FACE SHEAR

Load on footing due to column is 1.35 × 900 + 1.5 × 300 = 1665 kN
Design shear stress at the column perimeter, ν_{Ed}, is

$$\nu_{Ed} = \beta \frac{V_{Ed}}{u_o d} = 1.0 \times \frac{1665 \times 10^3}{(4 \times 350) \times 530} = 2.24 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

where $d = h$ − cover − diameter of bar = 600 − 50 − 20 = 530 mm. Maximum punching shear resistance at the column perimeter, $\nu_{Rd,max}$, is

$$\nu_{Rd,max} = 0.5\nu f_{cd} = 0.5 \times 0.528 \times 20 = 5.28 \text{ N mm}^{-2} > \nu_{Ed} \quad \text{OK}$$

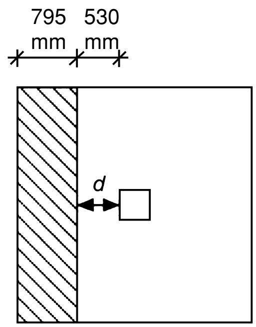
where

Example 8.12 *continued*

$$\nu = 0.6[1 - (f_{ck}/250)] = 0.6[1 - (30/250)] = 0.528$$

$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc}\frac{f_{ck}}{\gamma_c} = 1.0 \times \frac{30}{1.5} = 20\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

TRANSVERSE SHEAR



From above, design shear force on footing, $V_{Ed} = 1665$ kN

Earth pressure, $p_E = \dfrac{V_{Ed}}{\text{base area}} = \dfrac{1665}{3^2} = 185\,\text{kNm}^{-2}$

Ultimate load on shaded area is

$\Delta V_{Ed} = p_E(3 \times [3 - 0.795]) = 1223.8$ kN

Applied shear force is

$V_{Ed,red} = V_{Ed} - \Delta V_{Ed} = 1665 - 1223.8 = 441.2$ kN

Design transverse shear stress, ν_{Ed}, is

$$\nu_{Ed} = \frac{V_{Ed,red}}{bd} = \frac{441.2 \times 10^3}{3000 \times 530} = 0.28\,\text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

where b = width of footing = 3 m

$f_{ck} = 30$ N mm^{-2}

$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18/\gamma_c = 0.18/1.5 = 0.12$ N mm^{-2}

$$k = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{530}} = 1.61 < 2.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\rho_1 = \sqrt{\rho_{1y}\rho_{1x}} = \sqrt{\frac{A_{sl,y}}{bd} \times \frac{A_{sl,x}}{bd}} = \sqrt{\frac{1260}{10^3 \times 530} \times \frac{1260}{10^3 \times 530}} = 0.00238 < 0.02 \quad \textit{OK}$$

$\sigma_{cp} = 0$

$\nu_{min} = 0.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2} = 0.035 \times 1.61^{3/2} \times 30^{1/2} = 0.39$

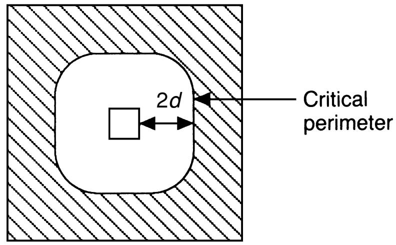
Design shear resistance of concrete, $\nu_{Rd,c}$, is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\nu_{Rd,c} &= [C_{Rd,c}k(100\rho_1 f_{ck})^{1/3} + k_1\sigma_{cp}] \times (2d/a)\\ &= [0.12 \times 1.61(100 \times 0.00238 \times 30)^{1/3} + 0] \times 2\\ &= 0.74\text{ N mm}^{-2} \geq [\nu_{min} + k_1\sigma_{cp}] \times (2d/a) = 0.39 \times 2 = 0.78\text{ Nmm}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

Since ν_{Ed} (= 0.28 Nmm^{-2}) < $\nu_{Rd,c}$ (= 0.78 Nmm^{-2}) no shear reinforcement is required.

Example 8.12 *continued*

PUNCHING SHEAR



Check punching shear at $2d$ from face of column. Basic control perimeter, u_1, is

$$u_1 = \text{column perimeter} + 2\pi(2d)$$
$$= 4 \times 350 + 2\pi(2 \times 530) = 8060 \text{ mm}$$

Area within critical perimeter, $A = 4 \times 350(2 \times 530) + 350^2 + \pi(2 \times 530)^2 = 5.14 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^2$
Ultimate load on shaded area, $\Delta V_{Ed} = p_E \times A = 185 \times 5.14 = 950.9$ kN

$$\text{Applied shear force, } V_{Ed,red} = V_{Ed} - \Delta V_{Ed} = 1665 - 950.9 = 714.1 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Punching shear stress, } v_{Ed} = \frac{V_{Ed,red}}{u_1 d} = \frac{714.1 \times 10^3}{8060 \times 530} = 0.17 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < v_{Rd,c} = 0.39 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, no shear reinforcement is required.

8.11 Design of columns

Column design is largely covered within sections 5.8 and 6.1 of EC 2. The design procedures in EC 2 are perhaps slightly more complex than those used in BS 8110, although the final result is similar in both codes.

Column design generally involves determining the slenderness ratio, λ, of the member. If it lies below a critical value, λ_{lim}, the column can simply be designed to resist the axial action and moment obtained from an elastic analysis, but including the effect of geometric imperfections. These are termed first order effects. However, when the column slenderness exceeds the critical value, additional (second order) moments caused by structural deformations can occur and must also be taken into account. In EC 2, the slenderness ratio above which columns are subjected to second order effects has to be evaluated while in BS 8110 it is taken as 15 for braced columns and 10 for unbraced columns.

In this chapter only the design of the most common types of columns found in building structures, namely braced columns, will be described. A column may be considered to be braced in a given plane if the bracing element or system (e.g. core or shear walls) is sufficiently stiff to resist all the lateral forces in that plane. Thus braced columns are assumed to not contribute to the overall horizontal stability of a structure and as such are only designed to resist axial load and bending due to vertical loading. For further information on braced columns refer to section 3.13.3. The design of braced columns involves consideration of the following aspects which are discussed individually below:

(a) slenderness ratio, λ
(b) threshold slenderness, λ_{lim}
(c) first order effects
(d) second order moments
(e) reinforcement details.

8.11.1 SLENDERNESS RATIO (CL. 5.8.3.2, EC 2)

In EC 2 the slenderness ratio, λ, is defined as:

$$\lambda = \frac{l_o}{i} \tag{8.49}$$

where
l_o is the effective length of the column
i is the radius of gyration of the uncracked concrete section

Note that in BS 8110 the slenderness ratio is based on the section depth (b or h) and not its radius of gyration.

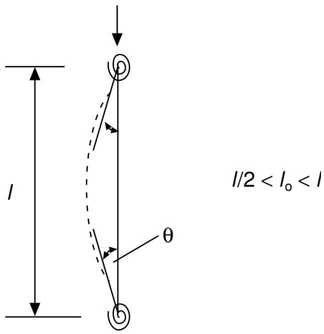


Fig. 8.30 *Effective length of columns partially restrained at both ends (based on Fig. 5.7f, EC 2).*

8.11.2 EFFECTIVE LENGTH

Fig. 5.7(f) from EC 2, reproduced as *Fig. 8.30*, suggests that the effective length of a braced member (l_o) can vary between half and the full height of the member depending on the degree of rotational restraint at column ends i.e.

$$l/2 < l_o < l$$

The actual value of effective length can be estimated using the following expression

$$l_o = 0.5l\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{k_1}{0.45 + k_1}\right)\left(1 + \frac{k_2}{0.45 + k_2}\right)} \quad (8.50)$$

where

k_1, k_2 are the relative flexibilities of rotational restraints at ends 1 and 2 respectively

in which

k = $(\theta/M)/(EI/l)$

θ is the rotation of restraining members for bending moment M (see *Fig. 8.30*)

EI is the bending stiffness of compression members

l is the clear height of compression member between end restraints

Note that in theory, $k = 0$ for fully rigid rotational restraint and $k = \infty$ for no restraint at all, i.e. pinned support. Since fully rigid restraint is rare in practice, EC 2 recommends a minimum value of 0.1 for k_1 and k_2.

It is not an easy matter to determine the values of k_1 and k_2 in practice because (a) the guidance in EC 2 is somewhat ambiguous with regard to the effect of stiffness of columns attached to the column under consideration and (b) the effect of cracking on the stiffness of the restraining member. The background paper to the UK National Annex to EC 2, PD 6687, recommends that when calculating the effective height of a column in which the stiffness of adjacent columns do not vary significantly, k_1 and k_2 should be calculated ignoring the contribution of the attached columns. Moreover, the contribution of the attached beams should be modelled as 2(EI/L), irrespective of end conditions at their remote ends, to allow for the effect of cracking. Calibration exercises suggest that use of these recommendations will lead to effective lengths which are similar to those currently obtained using the coefficients in *Table 3.19* of BS 8110 (reproduced as *Table 3.27*), and which could therefore be used as an alternative method of estimating the effective lengths of braced columns, if desired.

8.11.3 RADIUS OF GYRATION

The radius of gyration (i) is defined by:

$$i = \sqrt{(I/A)} \quad (8.51)$$

where

I moment of inertia of the uncracked concrete section (see *Table 2.4*)

A area of the uncracked concrete section

8.11.4 THRESHOLD SLENDERNESS RATIO, λ_{lim} (CL. 5.8.3.1, EC 2)

As noted above, the threshold slenderness value, λ_{lim}, is a key element of the design procedure as it provides a simple and convenient way of determining when to take account of first order effects only and when to include second order effects. The value of λ_{lim} is given by:

$$\lambda_{lim} = 20ABC/\sqrt{n} \quad (8.52)$$

where

A = $1/(1 + 0.2\varphi_{ef})$ (if φ_{ef} is not known, $A = 0.7$ may be assumed)

B = $\sqrt{(1 + 2\omega)}$ (if ω is not known, $B = 1.1$ may be used)

C = $1.7 - r_m$ (if r_m is not known, $C = 0.7$ may be used)

φ_{ef} effective creep coefficient

ω mechanical reinforcement ratio = $A_s f_{yd}/(A_c f_{cd})$

A_s total area of longitudinal reinforcement

n relative normal force = $N_{Ed}/(A_c f_{cd})$

r_m moment ratio = M_{01}/M_{02} taken positive when moments produce tension on the same face, otherwise negative

M_{01},M_{02} first order end moments, $|M_{02}| \geq |M_{01}|$

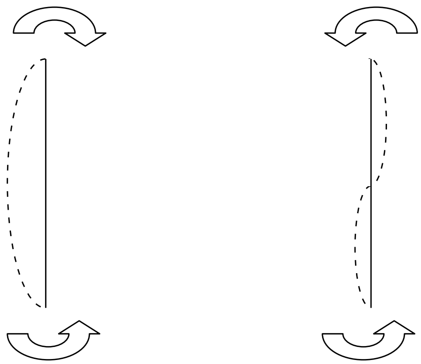


Fig. 8.31 *Column buckling modes.*

The value of the creep coefficient, φ_{ef}, can be calculated using the guidance in Cl. 5.8.4 of EC 2. However, in many cases the extra design effort required may not be justified and the recommended value of 0.7 for factor A should be used. Factor B depends upon the area of longitudinal steel, which will be unknown at the design stage. It would seem reasonable therefore to use the recommended value of 1.1, at least for the first iteration. Factor C arguably has the largest influence on λ_{lim} and it is worthwhile calculating its value accurately rather than simply assuming it is equal to 0.7. Factor C gives an indication of the column's susceptibility to buckling under the action of applied moments. Thus buckling is more likely where the end moments act in opposite senses as they will produce tension on the same face. Conversely, buckling is less likely when the end moments act in the same sense as the member will be in double curvature (*Fig. 8.31*).

8.11.5 DESIGN OF BRACED COLUMNS

Having determined the value of λ_{lim} it is possible to design the column. The following sub-sections discuss the procedures recommended in EC 2 for the design of braced columns when:

(a) $\lambda < \lambda_{lim}$
(b) $\lambda > \lambda_{lim}$

8.11.5.1 Design of columns when $\lambda < \lambda_{lim}$ (Cl. 6.1, EC 2)

According to clause 5.8.3.1 of EC 2, if the slenderness, λ, is less than λ_{lim} the column should be designed for the applied axial action, N_{Ed}, and the moment due to first order effects, M_{Ed}, being numerically equal to the sum of the larger elastic end moment, M_{02}, plus any moment due to geometric imperfection, $N_{Ed}.e_i$, as follows:

$$M_{Ed} = M_{02} + N_{Ed}.e_i \tag{8.53}$$

where

e_i is the geometric imperfection $= \left(\theta_i \dfrac{\ell_0}{2}\right)$ in which θ_i is the angle of inclination and can be taken as 1/200 for isolated braced columns and l_0 is the effective length (clause 5.2(7)). According to clause 6.1(4) the minimum design eccentricity, e_0, is $h/30$ but not less than 20 mm where h is the depth of the section. Note that in BS 8110 the corresponding limit is $h/20$.

Once N_{Ed} and M_{Ed} have been determined, the area of longitudinal steel can be calculated by strain compatibility using an iterative procedure as discussed in example 3.19 of this book. However, this approach may not be practical for everyday design and therefore The Concrete Centre has produced a series of design charts, similar to those in BS 8110:Part 3, which can be used to determine the area of longitudinal steel. Two typical column design charts are shown in *Fig. 8.32*. Example 8.13 illustrates the design procedure involved.

8.11.5.2 Design of columns when $\lambda > \lambda_{lim}$ (Cl. 5.8.8, EC 2)

When $\lambda > \lambda_{lim}$, critical conditions may occur at the top, middle or bottom of the column. The values of the design moments at these positions are, respectively:

(i) M_{02}
(ii) $M_{0Ed} + M_2$
(iii) $M_{01} + 0.5M_2$

M_{0Ed} is the equivalent first order moment including the effect of imperfections at about mid-height of the column and may be taken as M_{0e} as follows:

$$M_{0e} = (0.6M_{02} + 0.4M_{01}) \geq 0.4M_{02} \tag{8.54}$$

where M_{01} and M_{02} are the first order end moments including the effect of imperfections acting on the column and M_{02} is the numerically larger of the elastic end moment acting on the column i.e. $|M_{02}| > |M_{01}|$.

M_2 is the nominal second order moment acting on the column and is given by

$$M_2 = N_{Ed}.e_2 \tag{8.55}$$

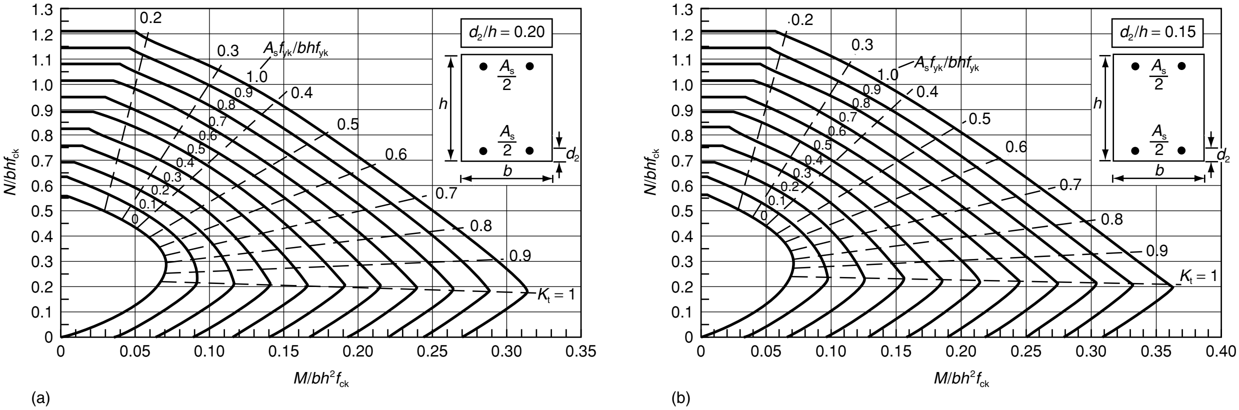
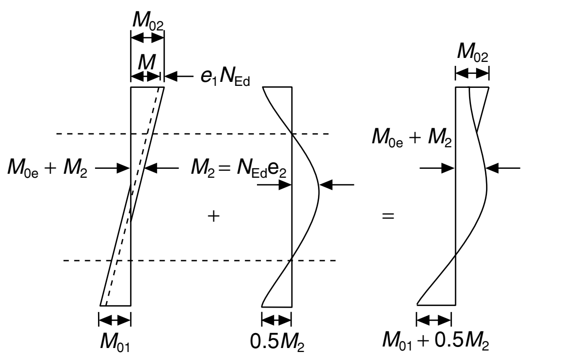


Fig. 8.32 *Typical column design charts for use with EC 2.*



(a) First order moments for 'stocky' columns (b) Additional second order moments for 'slender' columns (c) Total moment diagram for 'slender' columns

Fig. 8.33

where

N_{Ed} is the design axial load at ULS

e_2 is the deflection $= \left(\frac{1}{r}\right)\ell_0^2/10$ (8.56)

in which

$$\frac{1}{r} = K_r K_\varphi \left(\frac{1}{r_o}\right) \quad (8.57)$$

where

$$K_r = \frac{n_u - n}{n_u - n_{bal}} \leq 1.0 \quad (8.58)$$

in which $n_u = 1 + \omega$
(where $\omega = A_s f_{yd}/A_c f_{cd}$) (8.59)

n relative axial force $= N_{Ed}/A_c f_{cd}$ (8.60)
n_{bal} $= 0.4$
K_φ $= 1 + \beta\varphi_{ef} \geq 1.0$ (8.61)

in which

φ_{ef} effective creep coefficient determined via clause 5.8.4

$$\beta = 0.35 + f_{ck}/200 - \lambda/150 \quad (8.62)$$

λ slenderness ratio $= \frac{\ell_o}{i}$

and where

$$\frac{1}{r_o} = \frac{\varepsilon_{yd}}{0.45d} \quad (8.63)$$

in which

ε_{yd} design yield strain of reinforcement: $= \frac{f_{yd}}{E_s}$

d effective depth of section

Once N_{Ed} and M_{Ed} are known, the area of longitudinal steel can be evaluated using appropriate column design charts (*see Example 8.13*).

8.11.6 BIAXIAL BENDING (5.8.9, EC 2)

Columns subjected to axial load and bi-axial bending can be checked using the following expression

$$\left(\frac{M_{Edz}}{M_{Rdz}}\right)^a + \left(\frac{M_{Edy}}{M_{Rdy}}\right)^a \leq 1.0 \quad (8.64)$$

where

$M_{Edz/y}$ design moment around the respective axis, including a 2nd order moment

$M_{Rdz/y}$ moment of resistance in the respective direction

Table 8.17 Exponent a for rectangular cross-sections

N_{Ed}/N_{Rd}	*0.1*	*0.7*	*1.0*
$a =$	1.0	1.5	2.0

a is the exponent; $a = 2$ for circular cross sections and for rectangular sections is obtained from *Table 8.17* in which N_{Rd} is the design axial resistance of section $= A_c f_{cd} + A_s f_{yd}$ where A_c is the gross area of the concrete section and A_s is the area of longitudinal steel

For rectangular sections, use of this equation assumes that the ratio of the relative first order eccentricities, namely e_y/h and e_z/b, satisfies the following relationship

$$0.2 \leq (e_y/h) \div (e_z/b) \leq 5 \qquad (8.65)$$

Unlike BS 8110, the design procedure in EC 2 is iterative and involves estimating an area of longitudinal steel which is then checked using expression 8.64. To cut down the number of iterations it would be sensible to use the approach currently recommended in BS 8110 (section 3.13.5.2(ii)) to obtain an initial estimate of the required area of longitudinal steel, which can be verified using equation 8.64, as shown in example 8.17.

8.11.7 REINFORCEMENT DETAILS FOR COLUMNS

8.11.7.1 Longitudinal reinforcement (Cl. 9.5.2, EC 2)

Diameter of bars. EC 2 recommends that the minimum diameter of longitudinal bars in columns is 12 mm.

Reinforcement percentages. The area of longitudinal reinforcement, A_s, should lie within the following limits:

$$\text{greater of } \frac{0.10N_{Ed}}{f_{yd}} \text{ and } 0.002\,A_c < A_s < 0.04A_c$$

where

f_{yd} design yield strength of the reinforcement
N_{Ed} design axial compression force
A_c cross-section of the concrete

Note that the upper limit should be increased to $0.08A_c$ at laps.

8.11.7.2 Transverse reinforcement (links) (Cl. 9.5.3, EC 2)

Size and spacing of links. The diameter of the links should not be less than 6 mm or one quarter of the maximum diameter of the longitudinal bar, whichever is the greater.

The spacing of links along the column should not exceed the least of the following three dimensions:

(i) 20 times the minimum diameter of the longitudinal bars
(ii) the lesser lateral dimension of the column
(iii) 400 mm

Arrangement of links. With regard to the arrangement of links around the longitudinal reinforcement, EC 2 recommends that:

(a) every longitudinal bar placed in a corner should be supported by a link passing around the bar and
(b) no bar within a compression zone should be further than 150 mm from a restrained bar.

Example 8.13 Column supporting an axial load and uni-axial bending (EC 2)

An internal column in a multi-storey building is subjected to an ultimate axial load (N_{Ed}) of 1600 kN and bending moment (M) of 60 kNm including effect of imperfections. Design the column cross-section assuming $f_{ck} = 30$ N mm^{-2}, $f_{yk} = 500$ N mm^{-2} and $\Delta c_{dev} = 5$ mm.

CROSS-SECTION

Since the design bending moment is relatively small, use equation 8.59 to size the column:

$$n_u = 1 + \omega = 1 + A_s f_{yd}/A_c f_{cd}$$

Clause 9.5.2 of EC 2 stipulates that the percentage of longitudinal reinforcement, A_s, should generally lie within the following limits:

$$\text{greater of } \frac{0.10N_{Ed}}{f_{yd}} \text{ and } 0.002A_c < A_s < 0.04A_c$$

Assuming that the percentage of reinforcement is equal to, say, 2 per cent gives

$$A_{sc} = 0.02A_c$$

Substituting this into the above equation gives

$$\frac{1.6 \times 10^6}{A_c(0.85 \times 30/1.5)} = 1 + \frac{0.02A_c(500/1.15)}{A_c(0.85 \times 30/1.5)}$$

Hence, $A_c = 62267$ mm^2.
For a square column $b = h = \sqrt{62267} = 250$ mm.
Therefore a 300 mm square column is suitable.

LONGITUDINAL STEEL

Design moment, M_{Ed}

Minimum eccentricity, $e_0 = \dfrac{h}{30} = \dfrac{300}{30} = 10\text{ mm} \geq 20\text{ mm}$
Minimum design moment $= e_0 N_{Ed} = 20 \times 10^{-3} \times 1.6 \times 10^3 = 32$ kNm $< M$
Hence $M_{Ed} = M = 60$ kNm assuming $\lambda < \lambda_{lim}$

Design chart

Minimum cover to links for exposure class XC1, $c_{min,dur} = 15$ mm (*Table 8.9*)
Assuming diameter of longitudinal bars (Φ) = 25 mm, minimum cover to main steel for bond, $c_{min,b} = 25$ mm and the nominal cover, $c_{nom} = c_{min,b} + \Delta c_{dev} = 25 + 5 = 30$ mm

Assuming diameter of links, (Φ') = 8 mm,
$\Rightarrow$ minimum cover to links $= c_{nom} - \Phi' - \Delta c_{dev} = 30 - 8 - 5 = 17$ mm $> c_{min,dur} = 15$ mm OK

Therefore, $d_2 = 30 + 25/2 = 42.5$ mm

$$\frac{d_2}{h} = \frac{42.5}{300} = 0.142$$

Round up to 0.15 and use chart no. 1 (*Fig. 8.32*).

Longitudinal steel area

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{1.6 \times 10^6}{300 \times 300 \times 30} = 0.593$$

$$\frac{M_{Ed}}{bh^2 f_{ck}} = \frac{60 \times 10^6}{300 \times 300^2 \times 30} = 0.074$$

Example 8.13 *continued*

$$\frac{A_s f_{yk}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{A_s \times 500}{300 \times 300 \times 30} \approx 0.28 \quad (\textit{Fig. 8.32})$$

$$\Rightarrow A_s = 1512 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 4H25 (1960 mm^2)
$\%A_{sc}/A_c = 1960/(300 \times 300) = 2.2\%$ (acceptable)

LINKS

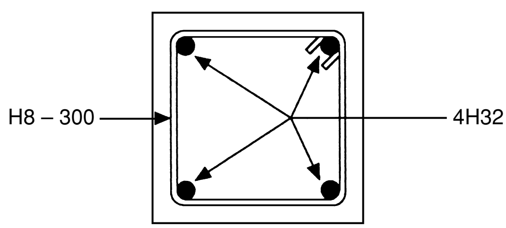
Diameter of links is the greater of:

(i) 6 mm
(ii) $^1/_4\Phi = {^1/_4} \times 25 = 6.25$ mm

Spacing of links should not exceed the lesser of:

(i) $20\Phi = 20 \times 25 = 500$ mm
(ii) least dimension of column = 300 mm
(iii) 400 mm

Therefore, provide H8 links at 300 mm centres.



Example 8.14 Classification of a column (EC 2)

Determine if column GH shown in *Fig. 8.34a* should be designed for first or second order effects assuming that it resists the design loads and moments in (b). Assume the structure is non-sway and $f_{ck} = 25$ Nmm^{-2}.

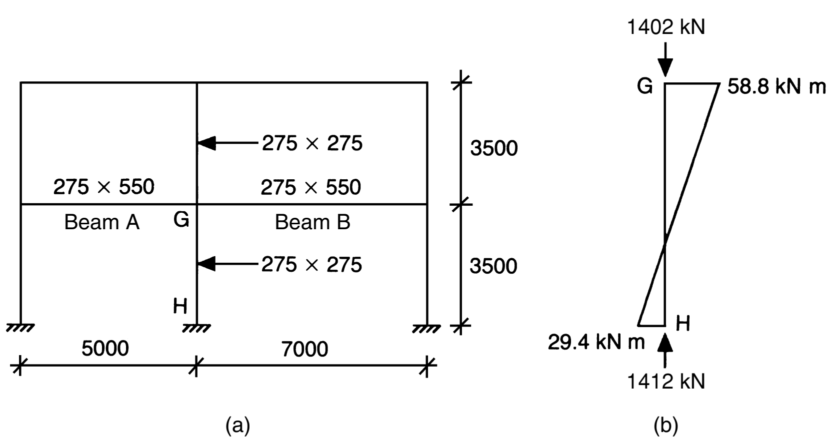


Fig. 8.34

Example 8.14 *continued*

SLENDERNESS RATIO OF COLUMN GH

Effective height

$$k_{\text{beam A}} = 2(EI/L)_A = 2E\left(\frac{275 \times 550^3}{12 \times 5 \times 10^3}\right) = 1.525 \times 10^6\ E$$

$$k_{\text{beam B}} = 2(EI/L)_B = 2E\left(\frac{275 \times 550^3}{12 \times 7 \times 10^3}\right) = 1.089 \times 10^6\ E$$

$$k_{\text{column GH}} = (EI/L)_{GH} = E\left(\frac{275 \times 275^3}{12 \times 3.5 \times 10^3}\right) = 1.362 \times 10^5\ E$$

$$k_G = \frac{k_{\text{column GH}}}{k_{\text{beamA}} + k_{\text{beamB}}} = \frac{1.362 \times 10^5 E}{1.525 \times 10^6 E + 1.089 \times 10^6 E} = 0.052 \geq 0.1$$

$k_H = 0.1$ (since column is assumed to be fully fixed at the base)

$$l_o = 0.5l\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{k_1}{0.45 + k_1}\right)\left(1 + \frac{k_2}{0.45 + k_2}\right)}$$

$$l_o = 0.5 \times 3500\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{0.1}{0.45 + 0.1}\right)\left(1 + \frac{0.1}{0.45 + 0.1}\right)} = 0.59l = 2068 \text{ mm}$$

(Note that using *Table 3.21* of BS 8110, $\beta = 0.75 \Rightarrow l_o = \beta . l_{col} = 0.75 \times (3500 - 550) = 2212.5$ mm)

Radius of gyration
Radius of gyration, i, is given by

$$i = \sqrt{(I/A)}$$

$$= \sqrt{[(bh^3/12)/(bh)]} = h/\sqrt{12} = 275/\sqrt{12} = 79.4 \text{ mm}$$

Slenderness ratio
Slenderness ratio, λ, is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{l_o}{i} = \frac{2067}{79.4} = 26$$

CRITICAL SLENDERNESS RATIO, λ_{lim}

$$A = 0.7$$

$$B = 1.1$$

$$C = 1.7 - r_m = 1.7 - (M_{01}/M_{02}) = 1.7 - (-29.4/58.8) = 2.2$$

$$n = N_{Ed}/A_c f_{cd} = 1402 \times 10^3/275 \times 275 \times (0.85/1.5) \times 25 = 1.31$$

$$\lambda_{lim} = 20ABC/\sqrt{n} = 20 \times 0.7 \times 1.1 \times 2.2/\sqrt{1.31} = 29.6$$

Since $\lambda < \lambda_{lim}$ only first order effects need to be considered.

Example 8.15 Classification of a column (EC 2)

Determine if column PQ should be designed for second order effects assuming it resists the design loads and moment shown in *Fig. 8.35b*. Further assume the structure is non-sway and $f_{ck} = 25$ Nmm^{-2}.

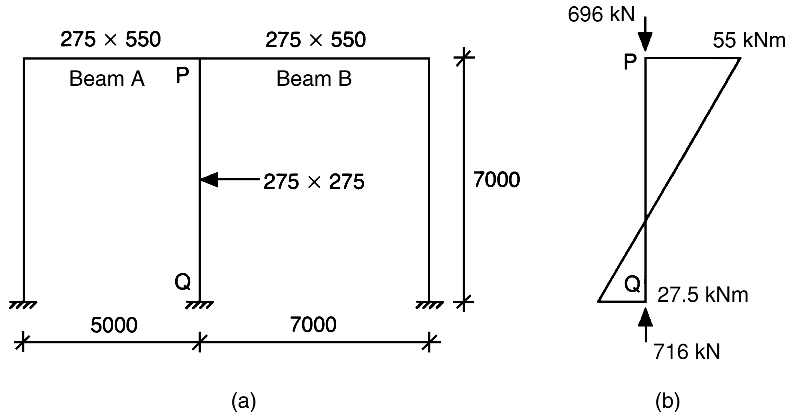


Fig. 8.35

SLENDERNESS RATIO OF COLUMN PQ

Effective height

$$k_{\text{beam A}} = 2(EI/L)_{\text{A}} = 2E\left(\frac{275 \times 550^3}{12 \times 5 \times 10^3}\right) = 1.525 \times 10^6\ E$$

$$k_{\text{beam B}} = 2(EI/L)_{\text{B}} = 2E\left(\frac{275 \times 550^3}{12 \times 7 \times 10^3}\right) = 1.089 \times 10^6\ E$$

$$k_{\text{column PQ}} = (EI/L)_{\text{PQ}} = E\left(\frac{275 \times 275^3}{12 \times 7 \times 10^3}\right) = 6.8085 \times 10^4\ E$$

$$k_{\text{P}} = \frac{k_{\text{column PQ}}}{k_{\text{beamA}} + k_{\text{beamB}}} = \frac{6.8085 \times 10^4 E}{1.525 \times 10^6 E + 1.089 \times 10^6 E} = 0.026 \geq 0.1$$

$k_{\text{Q}} = 0.1$ (since column is assumed to be fully fixed at the base)

$$l_o = 0.5l\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{k_1}{0.45 + k_1}\right)\left(1 + \frac{k_2}{0.45 + k_2}\right)}$$

$$l_o = 0.5 \times 7000\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{0.1}{0.45 + 0.1}\right)\left(1 + \frac{0.1}{0.45 + 0.1}\right)} = 0.59l = 4136 \text{ mm}$$

(Alternatively, using the coefficients in *Table 3.21* of BS 8110, $l_o = \beta . l_{col} = 0.75 \times (7000 - 550) = 4837.5$ mm)

Radius of gyration

Radius of gyration, i, is given by

$$i = \sqrt{(I/A)}$$

$$= \sqrt{[(bh^3/12)/(bh)]} = h/\sqrt{12} = 275/\sqrt{12} = 79.4 \text{ mm}$$

Example 8.15 *continued*

Slenderness ratio
Slenderness ratio, λ, is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{l_o}{i} = \frac{4136}{79.4} = 52$$

Critical slenderness ratio, λ_{lim}

$$A = 0.7$$

$$B = 1.1$$

$$C = 1.7 - r_m = 1.7 - (M_{01}/M_{02}) = 1.7 - (-27.5/55) = 2.2$$

$$n = N_{Ed}/A_c f_{cd} = 696 \times 10^3/275 \times 275 \times 0.567 \times 25 = 0.6493$$

$$\lambda_{lim} = 20ABC/\sqrt{n} = 20 \times 0.7 \times 1.1 \times 2.2/\sqrt{0.6493} = 42$$

Since $\lambda > \lambda_{lim}$ column will need to be designed for second order moments.

Example 8.16 Column design (i) $\lambda < \lambda_{lim}$; (ii) $\lambda > \lambda_{lim}$ (EC 2)

Design the columns in *Examples 8.14* and *8.15*. Assume the effective creep coefficient, φ_{ef}, is 0.87 and $\Delta c_{dev} = 5$ mm.

COLUMN GH

Longitudinal steel

Design moment, M_{Ed}

$$e_i = \left(\theta_i \frac{\ell_0}{2}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{200}\right) \times \left(\frac{2068}{2}\right) = 5.2 \text{ mm}$$

Minimum eccentricity, $e_0 = \dfrac{h}{30} = \dfrac{275}{30} = 9.2\,\text{mm} \geq 20\,\text{mm}$
Minimum design moment = $e_0 N_{Ed} = 20 \times 10^{-3} \times 1402 = 28$ kNm
First order end moment, $M_{02} = M + e_i.N_{Ed} = 58.8 + 5.2 \times 10^{-3} \times 1402 = 66.1$ kNm
Hence design moment, $M_{Ed} = 66.1$ kNm

Longitudinal steel area

Assume:
diameter of longitudinal steel, $\Phi = 32$ mm
diameter of links, $\Phi' = 8$ mm
minimum cover for durability, $c_{min,dur} = 25$ mm $> c_{min,b} = \Phi - \Phi'(= 32 - 8 = 24$ mm)
$\Rightarrow$ nominal cover to reinforcement, $c_{nom} = c + \Delta c_{dev} = 25 + 5 = 30$

Therefore, $d_2 = \Phi/2 + \Phi' + c_{nom} = 32/2 + 8 + 30 = 54$ mm

$$\frac{d_2}{h} = \frac{54}{275} = 0.196$$

Use graph with $d_2/h = 0.20$ (*Fig. 8.32a*)

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{1.402 \times 10^6}{275 \times 275 \times 25} = 0.742$$

Example 8.16 *continued*

$$\frac{M_{Ed}}{bh^2 f_{ck}} = \frac{66.1 \times 10^6}{275 \times 275^2 \times 25} = 0.127$$

$$\frac{A_s f_{yk}}{bh f_{ck}} = \frac{A_s \times 500}{275 \times 275 \times 25} \approx 0.7 \quad (\textit{Fig. 8.32})$$

$$\Rightarrow A_s = 2647 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 4H32 (3220 mm^2)

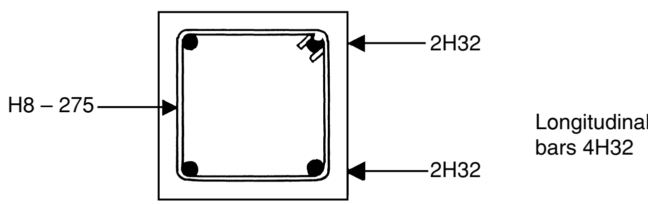
Links
Diameter of links is the greater of:

(i) 6 mm
(ii) $^1/_4\Phi = {}^1/_4 \times 32 = 8$ mm

Spacing of links should not exceed the lesser of:

(i) $20\Phi = 20 \times 32 = 640$ mm
(ii) least dimension of column = 275 mm
(iii) 400 mm

Therefore, provide H8 at 275 mm centres.



COLUMN PQ

First order end moments, M_{01}, M_{02}

$$e_i = \left(\theta_i \frac{\ell_0}{2}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{200}\right) \times \left(\frac{4136}{2}\right) = 10.34 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_i.N_{Ed} = 10.34 \times 10^{-3} \times 696 = 7.2 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{01} = M_Q + e_i.N_{Ed} = -27.5 + 7.2 = -20.3 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{02} = M_P + e_i.N_{Ed} = 55 + 7.2 = 62.2 \text{ kNm}$$

Equivalent first order moment, M_{0Ed}

$$M_{0Ed} = M_{0e} = (0.6M_{02} + 0.4M_{01}) \geq 0.4M_{02} = 0.4 \times 62.2 = 24.9 \text{ kNm}$$

$$= (0.6 \times 62.2 + 0.4 \times -20.3) = 29.2 \text{ kNm}$$

Nominal second order moment, M_2

Assume
diameter of longitudinal steel (Φ) = 20 mm
diameter of links (Φ') = 8 mm

Example 8.16 *continued*

minimum cover for durability, $c_{min,dur} = 30$ mm > $c_{min,b}$ (= $\Phi - \Phi' = 20 - 8 = 16$ mm)
$\Rightarrow$ nominal cover to reinforcement, $c_{nom} = c + \Delta c_{dev} = 30 + 5 = 35$
Thus

$$d = h - ((\Phi/2 + \Phi' + c_{nom})$$
$$= 275 - (20/2 + 8 + 35) = 222 \text{ mm}$$
$$\frac{1}{r_o} = \frac{\varepsilon_{yd}}{0.45d} = \frac{(500/1.15)/200 \times 10^3}{0.45 \times 222} = 2.176 \times 10^{-5}$$
$$\beta = 0.35 + f_{ck}/200 - \lambda/150 = 0.35 + 25/200 - 52/150 = 0.1283$$
$$K_\varphi = 1 + \beta\varphi_{ef} = 1 + 0.1283 \times 0.87 = 1.111 \geq 1.0$$

Assume $K_r = 0.8$

$$\frac{1}{r} = K_r K_\varphi \left(\frac{1}{r_o}\right) = 0.8 \times 1.111 \times 2.176 \times 10^{-5} = 1.934 \times 10^{-5}$$
$$e_2 = \left(\frac{1}{r}\right)\ell_0^2/10 = 1.934 \times 10^{-5} \times 4136^2/10 = 33.1 \text{ mm}$$
$$M_2 = N_{Ed}.e_2 = 696 \times 33.1 \times 10^{-3} = 23 \text{ kNm}$$

Design moment, M_{Ed}

$$M_{Ed} = \text{maximum of } \{M_{0Ed} + M_2;\ M_{02};\ M_{01} + 0.5M_2\}$$
$$M_{Ed} = \text{maximum of } \{29.2 + 23 = 52.2 \text{ kNm; } 62.2 \text{ kNm; } -20.3 + 0.5 \times -23 = 31.8 \text{ kNm}\}$$

Longitudinal steel area

$$d_2 = \Phi/2 + \Phi' + c_{nom} = 20/2 + 8 + 35 = 53 \text{ mm}$$
$$\frac{d_2}{h} = \frac{53}{275} = 0.193$$

Use graph with $d_2/h = 0.2$ (*Fig. 8.32*)

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{696 \times 10^3}{275 \times 275 \times 25} = 0.368$$
$$\frac{M_{Ed}}{bh^2 f_{ck}} = \frac{62.2 \times 10^6}{275 \times 275^2 \times 25} = 0.12$$
$$\frac{A_s f_{yk}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{A_s \times 500}{275 \times 275 \times 25} = 0.3$$
$$\Rightarrow A_s = 1134 \text{ mm}^2$$

Provide 4H20 (1260 mm^2)

Check assumed value of K_r

$$n_u = 1 + A_s f_{yd}/A_c f_{cd} = 1 + 1260 \times (0.87 \times 500)/(275 \times 275 \times 0.567 \times 25) = 1.51$$
$$n = N_{Ed}/A_c f_{cd} = 696 \times 10^3/(275 \times 275 \times (0.85/1.5) \times 25) = 0.65$$

Example 8.16 *continued*

$$K_r = \frac{n_u - n}{n_u - n_{bal}} = \frac{1.51 - 0.65}{1.51 - 0.4} = 0.775$$

Therefore assumed value is acceptable.

Links

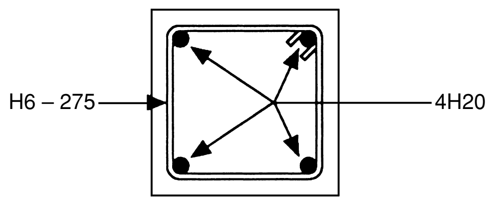
Diameter of links is the greater of:

(i) 6 mm
(ii) $^1/_4\Phi = ^1/_4 \times 20 = 5$ mm

Spacing of links should not exceed the lesser of:

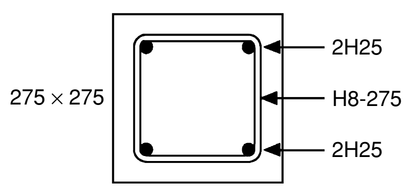
(i) $20\Phi = 20 \times 20 = 400$ mm
(ii) least dimension of column = 275 mm
(iii) 400 mm

Therefore, provide H6 links at 275 mm centres.



Example 8.17 Column subjected to combined axial load and biaxial bending (EC 2)

Check the column in *Example 3.22(b)* using the procedure in EC 2.



RELATIVE ECCENTRICITIES

The column is subject to an axial load, N_{Ed} = 1250 kN, a moment about the major axis (y-y), M_{Edy} = 35 kNm and a moment about the minor axis (z-z), M_{Edz} = 25 kNm

$$e_y = \frac{M_{Edy}}{N_{Ed}} = \frac{35 \times 10^6}{1250 \times 10^3} = 28 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_z = \frac{M_{Edz}}{N_{Ed}} = \frac{25 \times 10^6}{1250 \times 10^3} = 20 \text{ mm}$$

$$(e_y/h) \div (e_z/b) = (28/275) \div (20/275) = 1.4 > 0.2$$

Therefore check column for bi-axial bending

Example 8.17 *continued*

DESIGN ULTIMATE MOMENT OF RESISTANCE, M_{Rd}

$$d_2 = 35 + 8 + 25/2 = 55.5 \text{ mm and } d_2/h = 55.5/275 = 0.2$$

$$\frac{A_s f_{yk}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{1960 \times 500}{275 \times 275 \times 25} = 0.518$$

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{bhf_{ck}} = \frac{1250 \times 10^3}{275 \times 275 \times 25} = 0.66$$

$$\frac{M_{Rd}}{bh^2 f_{ck}} \approx 0.105 \quad (\textit{Fig. 8.32})$$

$$\Rightarrow M_{Rd} = 54.6 \text{ kNm}$$

EXPONENT, a

$$N_{Rd} = A_c f_{cd} + A_s f_{yd}$$
$$= [275^2 \times (0.85 \times 25/1.5) + 1960 \times (500/1.15)] \times 10^{-3}$$
$$= 1071.35 + 852.17 = 1923.5 \text{ kN}$$

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{Rd}} = \frac{1250}{1923.5} = 0.65$$

From *Table 8.17*, $a \approx 1.46$

RESISTANCE CHECK

$$\left(\frac{M_{Edz}}{M_{Rdz}}\right)^a + \left(\frac{M_{Edy}}{M_{Rdy}}\right)^a \leq 1 = \left(\frac{25 \times 10^6}{54.6 \times 10^6}\right)^{1.46} + \left(\frac{35 \times 10^6}{54.6 \times 10^6}\right)^{1.46} = 0.32 + 0.52 = 0.84 < 1$$

Chapter 9

Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures

This chapter describes the contents of selected sub-parts of Part 1 of Eurocode 3, the new European standard for the design of buildings in steel, which is expected to replace BS 5950 by about 2010. The chapter highlights the principal differences between Eurocode 3 and BS 5950 and illustrates the new design procedures by means of a number of worked examples on beams, columns and connections. To help comparison but primarily to ease understanding of the Eurocode, the material has here been presented in a similar order to that in Chapter 4 of this book on BS 5950.

9.1 Introduction

Eurocode 3 applies to the design of buildings and civil engineering works in steel. It is based on limit state principles and comes in several parts as shown in *Table 9.1*.

Part 1, which is the subject of this discussion, gives the basic rules for design of buildings in steel. It is largely similar in scope to BS 5950: Part 1, which it will replace by about 2010. Originally planned as a three sub-part document, the normative version was eventually published in twelve sub-parts as indicated in *Table 9.2*. This step was taken in order to avoid repetition of design guidance and provide a concise set of standards for design of steel buildings. But this also means that engineers will now have to refer to a number of standards in order to design even the simplest of elements. In the case of beams, for example, the designer will have to refer to Part 1.1, hereafter referred to as EC 3, for guidance on bending and shear, Part 1.5, hereafter referred to as EC 3–5, for web and stiffener design and Part 1.8, hereafter referred to as EC 3–8, for connection design. In addition, but like the other material-specific codes, i.e. EC 2–EC 6 and EC 9, the designer will have to refer to EN 1990 and Eurocode 1 to determine the design values of actions and combination of actions, including values of the partial factors for actions.

EC 3 was published in draft form in November 1990 and then as a voluntary standard, DD ENV 1993–1–1, in September 1992. It was finally issued as a Euronorm, EN 1993–1–1, but with a much reduced content, in 2004. EC 3 deals with the following subjects:

Table 9.1 Overall scope of Eurocode 3

Part	*Subject*
1	General rules and rules for buildings
2	Steel bridges
3	Towers, masts and chimneys
4	Silos, tanks and pipelines
5	Piling
6	Crane supporting structures

Table 9.2 Scope of Part 1 of Eurocode 3

Part	*Subject*
1.1	General rules and rules for buildings
1.2	Structural fire design
1.3	Cold formed thin gauge members and sheeting
1.4	Stainless steels
1.5	Plated structural elements
1.6	Strength and stability of shell structures
1.7	Strength and stability of planar plated structures transversely loaded
1.8	Design of joints
1.9	Fatigue strength of steel structures
1.10	Selection of steel for fracture toughness and through thickness properties
1.11	Design of structures with tension components made of steel
1.12	Supplementary rules for high strength steel

The purpose of the following discussion is principally to highlight the main differences between EC 3, EC 3–5, EC 3–8 and BS 5950: Part 1. A number of comparative design studies are also included to illustrate the new design procedures.

6.2.4 Compression

[AC1] (1)P The design value of the compression force N_{Ed} at each cross-section shall satisfy: [AC1]

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{c,Rd}} \leq 1{,}0 \tag{6.9}$$

(2) The design resistance of the cross-section for uniform compression $N_{c,Rd}$ should be determined as follows:

$$N_{c,Rd} = \frac{Af_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \quad \text{for class 1, 2, or 3 cross-sections} \tag{6.10}$$

$$N_{c,Rd} = \frac{A_{eff}f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \quad \text{for class 4 cross-sections} \tag{6.11}$$

Fig. 9.1 *Example of Principle and Application rules (Cl. 6.2.4, EC 3, p49).*

9.2 Structure of EC 3

Apart from the major re-packaging exercise referred to above, the organisation of material within individual sub-parts is also quite different to that used in BS 5950, as exemplified by the above contents list for EC 3. Thus, whereas BS 5950 contains separate sections on the design of different types of elements in building structures, e.g. beams, plate girders, compression members, etc., EC 3, on the other hand, divides the material on the basis of structural phenomena, e.g. tension, compression, bending, shear and buckling, which may apply to any element. This change has largely been implemented in order to avoid duplication of design rules and also to promote a better understanding of structural behaviour.

9.3 Principles and Application rules (Cl. 1.4, EC 3)

As with the other structural Eurocodes and for the reasons discussed in section 7.5.2, the clauses in EC 3 have been divided into Principles and Application rules. Principles comprise general statements, definitions, requirements and models for which no alternative is permitted. Principles are indicated by the letter P after the clause number. The Application rules are generally recognised rules which follow the statements and satisfy the requirements given in the Principles. The absence of the letter P after the clause number indicates an application rule. The use of alternative application rules to those recommended in the Eurocode is permitted provided it can be shown that the alternatives are at least equivalent and do not adversely affect other design requirements. It is worth noting, however, that if an alternative application rule is used the resulting design will not be deemed Eurocode compliant (*Fig. 9.1*).

9.4 Nationally Determined Parameters

Like the other structural Eurocodes, Eurocode 3 allows some parameters and design methods to be determined at the national level. Where a national choice is allowed this is indicated in a note in the normative text under the relevant clause. The note may include the recommended value of the parameter, or preferred method, etc., but the actual value, methodology, etc., to be used in a particular Member State country is/will be given in the appropriate National Annex. The recommended values of these parameters and design methods/procedures are collectively referred to as Nationally Determined Parameters (NDPs). The NDPs determine various aspects of design but perhaps most importantly the level of safety of structures during execution (i.e. construction/fabrication) and in-service, which remains the responsibility of individual nations.

The UK National Annexes to EC 3 and EC 3–5 were published in 2008 and 2005 respectively. The National Annex to EC 3–8 is still awaited. Thus the discussion and worked examples in sections 9.10 and 9.11 on, respectively, beam and column design, are based on the material in EC 3, EC 3–5 and the NDPs in the accompanying National Annexes whereas the material in section 9.12 on connections is based solely on the contents of EC 3–8.

9.5 Symbols (Cl. 1.6, EC 3)

The symbols used in EC 3 are extremely schematic but a little cumbersome. For example, $M_{pl,y,Rd}$ denotes the design plastic moment of resistance about the y–y (major) axis. Symbols such as this make many expressions and formulae much longer and seem more complex than they actually are.

A number of symbols which are used to identify particular dimensions of Universal sections have changed in Eurocode 3 as discussed in section 9.6. For example, the elastic and plastic moduli about the major axis are denoted in Eurocode 3 by the symbols $W_{el,y}$ and $W_{pl,y}$ respectively rather than Z_{xx} and S_{xx} as in BS 5950. Likewise, the elastic and plastic moduli about the minor axis are denoted in EC 3 by the symbols $W_{el,z}$ and $W_{pl,z}$, respectively, rather than Z_{yy} and S_{yy} as in BS 5950.

9.6 Member axes (Cl. 1.6.7, EC 3)

Member axes for commonly used steel members are shown in *Fig. 9.2*. This system is different to that used in BS 5950. Thus, x–x is the axis along the member, while axis y–y is what is termed in BS 5950 as axis x–x, the major axis. The minor axis of bending is taken as axis z–z in EC 3. Considering steel design in isolation, this change need not have happened. It was insisted on for consistency with the structural Eurocodes for other materials, e.g. concrete and timber.

9.7 Basis of design

Like BS 5950, EC 3 is based on the limit state method and for design purposes principally considers two categories of limit states: ultimate and serviceability. A separate (third) category of durability is also mentioned in clause 4 of EC 3 which covers the limit states of corrosion, mechanical wear and fatigue. Of these, corrosion is generally viewed as the most critical issue for steel building structures and involves taking into account the expected exposure conditions, the design working life of the structure, the composition and properties of the steel, structural detailing and protective measures, amongst other factors (clause 2.4, EN 1990).

The terms 'ultimate limit state' (ULS) and 'serviceability limit state' (SLS) apply in the same way as we understand them in BS 5950. Thus, ultimate limit states are those associated with collapse, or with other forms of structural failure which may endanger the safety of people while serviceability limit states concern states beyond which specified service criteria, for example the functioning of the structure or member, the comfort of people and appearance of the structure, are no longer met (clauses 3.3 and 3.4 of EN 1990).

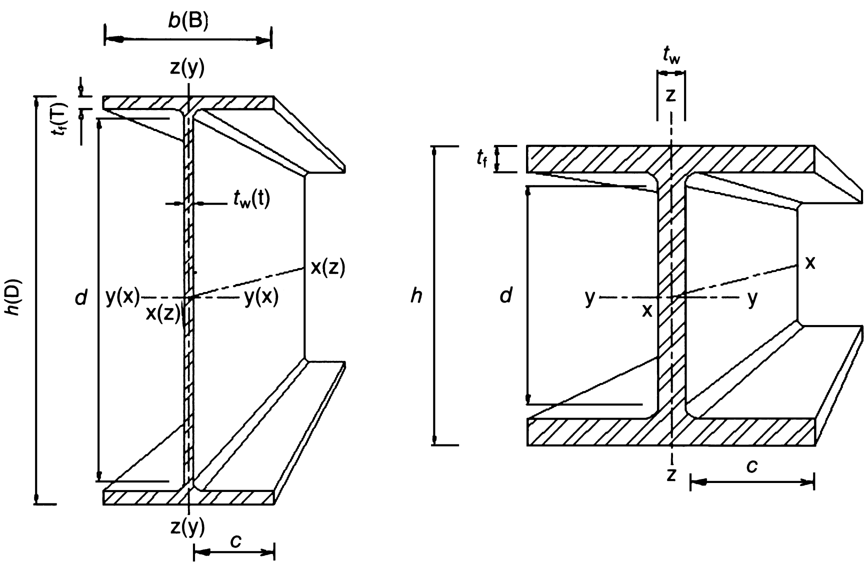


Fig. 9.2 *Member definitions and axes used in EC 3 (NB symbols in parentheses denote symbols used in BS 5950).*

The actual serviceability limit states relevant to steel building structures are outlined in section 7 of EC 3. The code provides very few details, however, as many SLS are not material specific and for relevant design guidance the designer must turn to clause A1.4 of EN 1990. The principal serviceability limit states recommended in EC 3 are listed below:

1. Deformations, e.g. vertical and horizontal deflections which cause damage to finishes or non-structural elements such as partitions and cladding, or adversely affect the comfort of people or appearance of the structure.
2. Dynamic effects, e.g. vibration, oscillation or sway which causes discomfort to the occupants of a building or damage to its contents.

Based on the recommendations given in clauses 3.2 and 3.3 of EN 1990, the ultimate limit states relevant to steel structures and components are:

(1) static equilibrium of the structure
(2) rupture, excessive deformation of a member, transformation of the structure into a mechanism
(3) instability induced by second order effects, e.g. lack of fit, thermal effects, sway
(4) fatigue
(5) accidental damage, e.g. exposure to fire, explosion and impact.

As can be appreciated, these are roughly similar to the ultimate limit states used in BS 5950 (*Table 4.1*) although there are slight changes in the terminology.

In the context of elemental design, the designer is principally concerned with the ultimate limit state of rupture (i.e. strength) and the serviceability limit state of deflection. EC 3 requirements in respect of these two limit states will be discussed later for individual element types.

In a similar way to BS 5950, clauses 1.5.3 and 5.1 of EC 3 distinguishes between three types of frames used for building structures and associated joint behaviour:

(a) simple frames in which the joint are not required to resist moments, i.e. the joints are pinned and by implication the structure is fully braced.
(b) continuous frames in which the joints are rigid (for elastic analysis) or full strength (for plastic analysis) and can transmit all moments and forces.
(c) semi-continuous frames in which the actual strength of the joints is taken into account.

9.8 Actions (Cl. 2.3, EC 3)

Actions is Eurocode terminology for loads and imposed deformations. Permanent actions, G, are all the fixed loads acting on the structure, including finishes, immovable partitions and the self weight of the structure. Variable actions, Q, include the imposed, wind and snow loads. Clause 2.3.1 of EC 3 recommends that the values of characteristic permanent, G_k, and variable, Q_k, actions should be taken from relevant parts of Eurocode 1: *Actions on structures*. Guidance on determining the design value of actions and combination of actions is given in EN 1990: *Basis of structural design*. These documents and topics are briefly discussed in section 8.5 of this book. As noted there, the design value of an action (F_d) is obtained by multiplying the representative value (F_{rep}) by the appropriate partial safety factor for actions (γ_f):

$$F_d = \gamma_f F_{rep} \tag{9.1}$$

Table 9.3 shows the relevant partial safety factors for the ultimate limit state of strength. Other safety factors will apply in other design situations. For example, the partial factors for the ultimate limit states of equilibrium are shown in *Table 8.6*. In equation 9.1, F_{rep} is generally taken as the characteristic value of a permanent or variable action (i.e. F_k). Assuming that the member being designed is subjected to one or more permanent actions and one variable action only, i.e. load combination 1 in *Table 9.3*, the partial safety factor for permanent actions, γ_G can conservatively be taken as 1.35 and for the variable action, γ_Q as 1.5. The corresponding values of the safety factors in BS 5950 are 1.4 and 1.6 respectively. As discussed in section 8.5.3, it is possible to improve structural efficiency by using expressions 6.10a and 6.10b of EN 1990 (respectively load combination 3(a) and 3(b)/3(c) in *Table 9.3*) to estimate the design values of actions but the value of 1.35 for γ_G is conservative and used throughout this chapter.

9.9 Materials

9.9.1 DESIGN STRENGTHS (CL. 2.4.3, EC 3)

The design strengths, X_d, are obtained by dividing the characteristic strengths, X_k, which can be taken as nominal values in calculations, by the material partial safety factor, γ_m, i.e.

$$X_d = \frac{X_k}{\gamma_m} \tag{9.2}$$

Table 9.3 Load combinations and partial safety/combination factors for the ultimate limit state of strength

Limit state/Load combination	*Load Type*				
	Permanent, G_k		*Imposed, Q_k*		*Wind, W_k*
	Unfavourable	*Favourable*	*Unfavourable*	*Favourable*	
Strength:					
1. Permanent and variable	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5	0	–
2. Permanent and wind	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	–	–	1.5
3. Permanent, imposed and wind					
(a)	1.35	1.0	$1.5\psi_{0,1}$	0	$1.5\psi_{0,2}$
(b)	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5	0	$1.5\psi_0$
(c)	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	$1.5\psi_0$	0	1.5

But this is in fact not used in EC 3. Instead, EC 3 divides the cross-section resistance, R_k, by a partial safety factor to give the design resistance, R_d for the member, i.e.

$$R_d = \frac{R_k}{\gamma_M} \tag{9.3}$$

where γ_M is the partial safety factor for the resistance. Thus, γ_M in EC 3 is not the same as γ_m in BS 5950. Here γ_m is applied to material strength; γ_M is applied to members or structures and takes account of both material and modelling/geometric uncertainties.

9.9.2 NOMINAL STRENGTHS (CL. 3.2, EC 3)

Table 9.4 shows the steel grades and associated nominal values of yield strength and ultimate tensile strength for hot rolled steel sections. The steel grades are the same as those mentioned in BS 5950 except grade S235 which is popular in Continental countries but not in the UK and was therefore not referred to in BS 5950. Note that the values of the yield strength shown in the table have been obtained from the product standard (EN 10025–2) and not from EC 3, as recommended in clause 2.4 of the National Annex.

9.9.3 PARTIAL FACTORS, γ_M (CL. 6.1, EC 3)

Values of the partial factor γ_M (section 9.9.1) applied to characteristic values of resistance to obtain design resistances are given in clause 6.1 of EC 3. The factor γ_M assumes different values depending on the type of resistance being verified as indicated below:

Table 9.4 Nominal values of yield strength f_y and ultimate tensile strength f_u for hot rolled structural steel to EN 10025–2 (Table 3.1, EC 3)

Nominal steel grade	*Nominal thickness of the element, t (mm)*			
	$t \leq 16$ mm		*16 mm $< t \leq 40$ mm*	
	f_y(N/mm²)	*f_u(N/mm²)*	*f_y(N/mm²)*	*f_u(N/mm²)*
S235	235	360	235	360
S275	275	410	265	410
S355	355	470	345	470
S450	440	550	430	550

resistance of cross-sections $\gamma_{M0} = 1.00$
resistance of member to instability $\gamma_{M1} = 1.0$
resistance of cross-section to fracture $\gamma_{M2} = 1.10$

The γ_M factors for joints are given in EC 3–8 as discussed in Section 9.13.

9.9.4 MATERIAL COEFFICIENTS (CL. 3.2.5, EC 3)

The following coefficients are specified in EC 3

Modulus of elasticity, $E = 210{,}000$ N mm^{-2}

Shear Modulus,

$$G = \frac{F}{2(1+\nu)} \approx 81000 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad (9.4)$$

Poisson's ratio, $\nu = 0.3$

Coefficient of linear thermal expansion, $\alpha = 12 \times 10^6$ per deg C

Density, $\rho = 7850$ kg m^{-3}

Note that the value of E is slightly higher than that specified in BS 5950 (205 kN mm^{-2}).

9.10 Classification of cross-sections (Cl. 5.5, EC 3)

Classification has the same purpose as in BS 5950, and the four classifications are identical:

Class 1 cross-sections: 'plastic' in BS 5950
Class 2 cross-sections: 'compact' in BS 5950
Class 3 cross-sections: 'semi-compact' in BS 5950
Class 4 cross-sections: 'slender' in BS 5950

Classification of a cross-section depends upon the proportions of each of its compression elements. The highest (least favourable) class number should be quoted for a particular section.

Appropriate sections of EC 3's classification are given in *Table 9.5*. Comparison with *Table 5.2* of EC 3 shows that the symbols are slightly different. This change has been carried to prevent any confusion as to which dimension is to be used to classify sections as EC 3 uses the same symbols to define different section dimensions. Comparison with the corresponding limits given in BS 5950 for rolled sections (*Table 4.4*) shows that the $c^\star/t_w$ (= d/t) ratios are slightly more onerous for webs, and c/t_f (= $(B - t_w - 2r)/2T$) ratios are perhaps slightly less onerous for outstand flanges. It should be noted that in EC 3 the factor ε is given by

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{0.5} \quad (9.5)$$

not $(275/p_y)^{0.5}$ as in BS 5950.

For Class 4 sections effective cross-sectional properties can be calculated using effective widths of plate which in some cases put the member back into Class 3. The expressions for calculating effective widths of hot rolled sections are given in EC 3–5.

Table 9.5 Maximum width-to-thickness ratios for compression elements (Table 5.2, EC3)

Type of element	*Class of element*		
	Class 1	*Class 2*	*Class 3*
Outstand flange for rolled section	$\frac{c}{t_f} \le 9\varepsilon$	$\frac{c}{t_f} \le 10\varepsilon$	$\frac{c}{t_f} \le 14\varepsilon$
Web with neutral axis at mid depth, rolled section	$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} \le 72\varepsilon$	$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} \le 83\varepsilon$	$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} \le 124\varepsilon$
Web subject to compression, rolled sections	$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} \le 33\varepsilon$	$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} \le 38\varepsilon$	$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} \le 42\varepsilon$
f_y	235	275	355
ε	1	0.92	0.81

$c^\star = d$; $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2$

9.11 Design of beams

As noted at the outset, the information needed for beam design is no longer in one place but dispersed in EC 3, EC 3–5 and EN 1990. To ease understanding of this material, as in Chapter 4 of this book, we will consider the design of fully laterally restrained and unrestrained beams separately. Thus, the following section (9.11.1) will consider the design of beams which are fully laterally restrained. Section 9.11.2 will then look at Eurocode 3: Part 1's rules for designing beams which are not laterally torsionally restrained.

9.11.1 FULLY LATERALLY RESTRAINED BEAMS

Generally, such members should be checked for

(1) resistance of cross-section to bending ULS
(2) resistance to shear buckling ULS
(3) resistance to flange-induced buckling ULS
(4) resistance of the web to transverse forces ULS
(5) deflection SLS.

9.11.1.1 Resistance of cross-sections-bending moment (Cl. 6.2.5, EC 3)

When shear force is absent or of a low value, the design value of the bending moment, M_{Ed}, at each section should satisfy the following:

$$\frac{M_{Ed}}{M_{c,Rd}} \leq 1.0 \tag{9.5}$$

where $M_{c,Rd}$ is the design resistance for bending about one principal axis taken as follows:

(a) the design plastic resistance moment of the gross section

$$M_{pl,Rd} = W_{pl} f_y / \gamma_{M0} \tag{9.6}$$

where W_{pl} is the plastic section modulus, for class 1 and 2 sections only;

(b) the design elastic resistance moment of the gross section

$$M_{el,Rd} = W_{el,min} f_y / \gamma_{M0} \tag{9.7}$$

where $W_{el,min}$ is the minimum elastic section modulus for class 3 sections;

(c) the design local buckling resistance moment of the gross section

$$M_{c,Rd} = W_{eff,min} f_y / \gamma_{M0} \tag{9.8}$$

where $W_{eff,min}$ is the minimum effective section modulus, for class 4 cross-sections only;

(d) the design ultimate resistance moment of the net section at bolt holes $M_{u,Rd}$, if this is less than the appropriate values above. In calculating this value, fastener holes in the compression zone do not need to be considered unless they are oversize or slotted and provided that they are filled by fasteners. In the tension zone holes do not need to be considered provided that

$$\frac{A_{f,net} 0.9 f_u}{\gamma_{M2}} \geq \frac{A_f f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \tag{9.9}$$

Consideration of fastener holes in bending is a difference from BS 5950.

9.11.1.2 Resistance of cross-sections – shear (Cl. 6.2.6, EC 3)

The design value of the shear force V_{Ed} at each cross-section should satisfy the following

$$\frac{V_{Ed}}{V_{c,Rd}} \leq 1.0 \tag{9.10}$$

where $V_{c,Rd}$ is the design shear resistance. For plastic design $V_{c,Rd}$ is taken as the design plastic shear resistance, $V_{pl,Rd}$, given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = A_v (f_y / \sqrt{3}) / \gamma_{M0} \tag{9.11}$$

where A_v is the shear area, which for rolled I and H sections, loaded parallel to the web is

$$A_v = A - 2bt_f + (t_w + 2r)t_f \geq \eta h_w t_f \tag{9.12}$$

where

A cross-sectional area
b overall breadth
r root radius
t_f flange thickness
t_w web thickness
h_w depth of the web
η conservatively taken as 1.0

Equation 9.12 will generally give a slightly higher estimate of the shear area than in BS 5950.

Fastener holes in the web do not have to be considered in the shear verification.

Shear buckling resistance for unstiffened webs must additionally be considered when

$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} > 72 \frac{\varepsilon}{\eta} \tag{9.13}$$

When the changed definition of ε is taken into account, this value is more onerous than the corresponding value in BS 5950.

For a stiffened web (clause 5.1, EC 3–5), shear buckling resistance will need to be considered when

$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} > \frac{31}{\eta} \varepsilon \sqrt{k_\tau} \tag{9.14}$$

where k_τ is the buckling factor for shear and is given by

for $a/h_w < 1$ (*Fig. 9.3*)

$$k_\tau = 4 + 5.34(h_w/a)^2 \tag{9.15}$$

for $a/h_w \geq 1$

$$k_\tau = 5.34 + 4(h_w/a)^2 \tag{9.16}$$

9.11.1.3 Resistance of cross-sections-bending and shear (Cl. 6.2.8, EC 3)

The plastic resistance moment of the section is reduced by the presence of shear. When the design value of the shear force, V_{Ed}, exceeds 50 per cent of the design plastic shear resistance, $V_{pl,Rd}$, the design resistance moment of the section, $M_{v,Rd}$, should be calculated using a reduced yield strength taken as

$$(1 - \rho) f_y \text{ for the shear area only} \tag{9.17}$$

where

$$\rho = \left(\frac{2V_{Ed}}{V_{pl,Rd}} - 1 \right)^2 \tag{9.18}$$

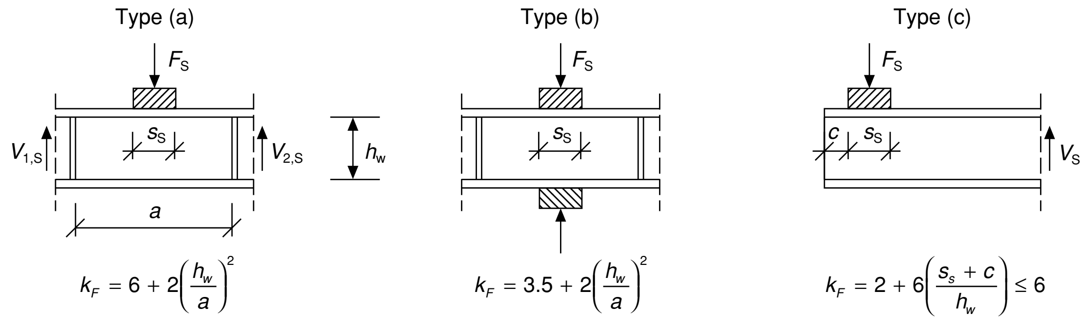


Fig. 9.3 *Different types of forces applied to a web and associated buckling coefficients (Fig. 6.1, EC 3–5).*

Thus, for rolled I and H sections the reduced design resistance moment for the section about the major axis, $M_{y,v,Rd}$, will be given by

$$M_{y,v,Rd} = f_y(W_{pl,y} - \rho A_v^2/4t_w)/\gamma_{M0} \le M_{y,c,Rd} \quad (9.19)$$

9.11.1.4 Shear buckling resistance (Cl. 6.2.6, EC 3)

As noted above the shear buckling resistance of unstiffened beam webs has to be checked when

$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} > 72\frac{\varepsilon}{\eta} \quad (9.20)$$

Clause 2.4 of the National Annex to EC 3–5 recommends a value of 1.0 for η for all steel grades up to and including S460. For standard rolled beams and columns this check is rarely necessary, however, as h_w/t_w is almost always less than 72ε and has therefore not been discussed in this section.

9.11.1.5 Flange-induced buckling (Cl. 8, EC 3–5)

To prevent the possibility of the compression flange buckling in the plane of the web, EC 3–5 requires that the ratio h_w/t_w of the web should satisfy the following criterion:

$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} \le k\frac{E}{f_{yf}}\sqrt{\frac{A_w}{A_{fc}}} \quad (9.21)$$

where

A_w is the area of the web = $(h - 2t_f)t_w$
A_{fc} is the area of the compression flange = bt_f
f_{yf} is the yield strength of the compression flange

The factor k assumes the following values:

Plastic rotation utilised, i.e. class 1 flanges: 0.3
Plastic moment resistance utilised, i.e. class 2 flanges: 0.4
Elastic moment resistance utilised, i.e. class 3 or class 4 flanges: 0.55

9.11.1.6 Resistance of the web to transverse forces (Cl. 6, EC 3–5)

EC 3–5 distinguishes between two types of forces applied through a flange to the web:

(a) forces resisted by shear in the web (*Fig. 9.3*, loading types (a) and (c)).
(b) forces transferred through the web directly to the other flange (*Fig. 9.3*, loading type (b)).

For loading types (a) and (c) the web is likely to fail as a result of

(i) crushing of the web close to the flange accompanied by yielding of the flange, the combined effect sometimes referred to as web crushing
(ii) localised buckling and crushing of the web beneath the flange, the combined effect sometimes referred to as web crippling (*Fig. 9.4a*).

For loading type (b) the web is likely to fail as a result of

(i) web crushing
(ii) buckling of the web over most of the depth of the member (*Fig. 9.4b*).

Provided that the compression flange is adequately restrained in the lateral direction, the design resistance of webs of rolled beams under transverse forces can be determined in accordance with the recommendations contained in clause 6 of EC 3–5.

Here it is stated that the design resistance of webs to local buckling is given by

$$F_{Rd} = \frac{f_{yw}L_{eff}t_w}{\gamma_{M1}} \quad (9.22)$$

where

f_{yw} is the yield strength of the web
t_w is the thickness of the web
γ_{M1} is the partial safety factor = 1.0
L_{eff} is the effective length of web which resists transverse forces = $\chi_F l_y$ (9.23)

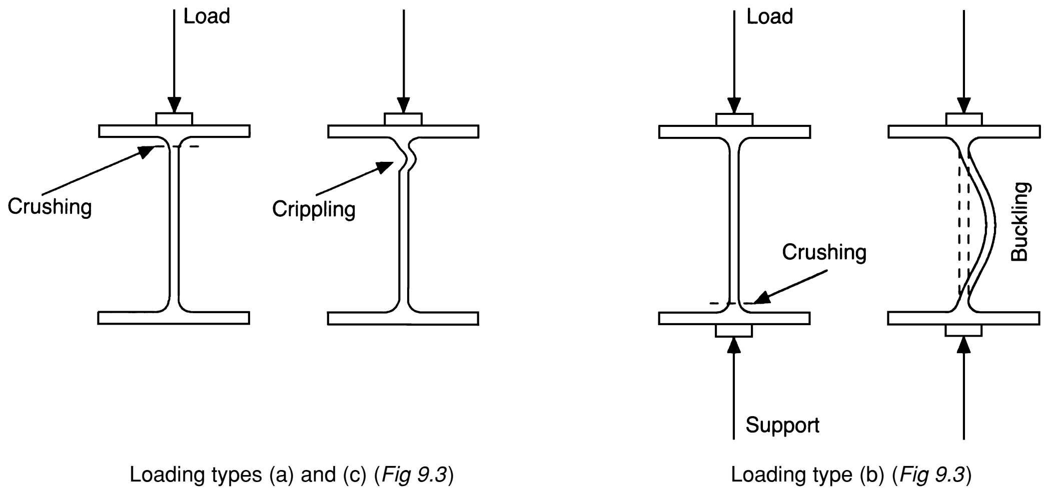


Fig. 9.4 *Web failure.*

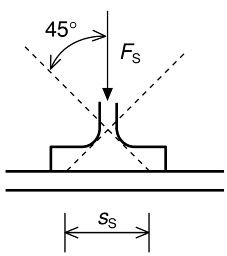


Fig. 9.5 *Length of stiff bearing (based on Fig. 6.2, EC 3–5).*

in which

χ_F is the reduction factor due to local buckling calculated as discussed below

l_y is the effective loaded length, appropriate to the length of the stiff bearing s_s. According to clause 6.3 of EC 3–5, s_s should be taken as the distance over which the applied load is effectively distributed at a slope of 1.1 as shown in *Fig. 9.5*, but $s_s \le h_w$.

Reduction factor, χ_F

According to clause 6.4 the reduction factor χ_F is given by

$$\chi_F = \frac{0.5}{\bar{\lambda}_F} \le 1 \tag{9.24}$$

where

$$\bar{\lambda}_F = \sqrt{\frac{\ell_y t_w f_{yw}}{F_{cr}}} \tag{9.25}$$

in which

$$F_{cr} = 0.9 k_F E \frac{t_w^3}{h_w} \tag{9.26}$$

For webs without longitudinal stiffeners k_F is obtained from *Fig. 9.3* and l_y is obtained as follows.

Effective loaded length, l_y

According to clause 6.5 for loading types (a) and (b) in *Fig. 9.3*, the effective loaded length, l_y, is given by

$$\ell_y = s_s + 2t_f\left(1 + \sqrt{m_1 + m_2}\right) \le a \tag{9.27}$$

where

$$m_1 = \frac{f_{yf} b_f}{f_{yw} t_w} \tag{9.28}$$

and if $\bar{\lambda}_F > 0.5$

$$m_2 = 0.02\left(\frac{h_w}{t_f}\right)^2 \tag{9.29}$$

or if $\bar{\lambda}_F \le 0.5$, $m_2 = 0$

For loading type (c) l_y is taken as the smallest value obtained from equations 9.30 and 9.31 as follows

$$\ell_y = \ell_e + t_f\sqrt{\frac{m_1}{2} + \left(\frac{\ell_e}{t_f}\right)^2 + m_2} \tag{9.30}$$

$$\ell_y = \ell_e + t_f\sqrt{m_1 + m_2} \tag{9.31}$$

where

$$\ell_e = \frac{k_F E t_w^2}{2 f_{yw} h_w} \le s_s + c \tag{9.32}$$

Interaction between shear force and bending moment

According to clause 7 of EC 3–5, where the web is also subject to bending the combined effect should satisfy the following

$$\eta_2 + 0.8\eta_1 \le 1.4 \tag{9.33}$$

where

$$\eta_1 = \frac{M_{Ed}}{\dfrac{f_y W_{pl}}{\gamma_{M0}}} \le 1.0 \tag{9.34}$$

$$\eta_2 = \frac{F_{Ed}}{\dfrac{f_{yw} L_{eff} t_w}{\gamma_{M1}}} \le 1.0 \tag{9.35}$$

9.11.1.7 Deflections (Cl. 7, EC 3)

Clause 7 of EC 3 highlights the need to check the SLS of deflection but provides few details on the subject other than to refer the designer to Annex A1.4 of EN 1990. Clause 7.2.1 of EC 3 makes clear, however, that the designer is responsible for specifying appropriate limits for vertical deflections, which should be agreed with the client.

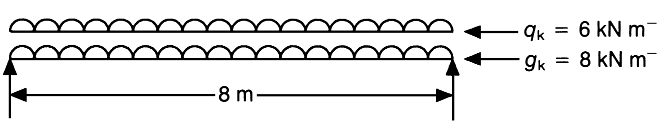
Several vertical deflections are defined in EN 1990. However, like BS 5950, the National Annex to EC 3 recommends that checks on the vertical deflections, δ, under unfactored imposed loading should be carried out and suggests that in the absence of other limits the limits shown in *Table 9.6* may be used.

Table 9.6 Recommended vertical deflection limits (Clause 2.24 of National Annex to EC 3)

Conditions	*Deflection limits*
Cantilevers	Length/180
Beams carrying plaster or other brittle finish	Span/360
Other beams (except purlins and sheeting rails)	Span/200
Purlins and sheeting rails	To suit the characteristics of particular cladding

Example 9.1 Analysis of a laterally restrained beam (EC 3)

Check the suitability of 356 × 171 × 51 kg m^{-1} UB section in S275 steel loaded by uniformly distributed loading g_k = 8 kN m^{-1} and q_k = 6 kN m^{-1} as shown below. Assume that the beam is fully laterally restrained and that the beam sits on 100 mm bearings at each end. Ignore self weight of beam.



DESIGN BENDING MOMENT

Design action (F_{Ed}) = ($\gamma_G g_k + \gamma_Q q_k$) × span

= (1.35 × 8 + 1.5 × 6)8 = 158.4 kN

Design bending moment (M_{Ed}) = $\dfrac{F_{Ed} l}{8} = \dfrac{158.4 \times 8}{8}$ = 158.4 kNm

STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Flange thickness, t_f = 11.5 mm, steel grade S275. Hence from *Table 9.4*, f_y = 275 N mm^{-2}

Example 9.1 *continued*

SECTION CLASSIFICATION

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{0.5} = (235/275)^{0.5} = 0.92$$

$$\frac{c}{t_f} = \frac{71.9}{11.5} = 6.25 < 9\varepsilon = 9 \times 0.92 = 8.28$$

(where $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2 = (171.5 - 7.3 - 2 \times 10.2)/2 = 143.8/2 = 71.9$ mm)

$$\frac{c^*}{t_w} = \frac{312.3}{7.3} = 42.8 < 72\varepsilon = 72 \times 0.92 = 66.2$$

Hence from *Table 9.5*, 356 × 171 × 51 UB belongs to Class 1.

RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTION

Bending moment

Since beam section belongs to class 1, plastic moment of resistance, $M_{pl,Rd}$, is given by

$$M_{pl,Rd} = \frac{W_{pl,y}f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{895 \times 10^3 \times 275}{1.00}$$
$$= 246.1 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$
$$= 246.1 \text{ kNm} > M_{Ed} \ (= 158.4 \text{ kNm}) \quad \text{OK}$$

Shear

Design shear force, V_{Ed}, is

$$V_{Ed} = \frac{F_{Ed}}{2} = \frac{158.4}{2} = 79.2 \text{ kN}$$

For class 1 section design plastic shear resistance, $V_{pl,Rd}$, is given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})/\gamma_{M0}$$

where $A_v = A - 2bt_f + (t_w + 2r)t_f \geq \eta h_w t_w = 1.0 \times (355.6 - 2 \times 11.5) \times 7.3 = 2428 \text{ mm}^2$

$= 64.6 \times 10^2 - 2 \times 171.5 \times 11.5 + (7.3 + 2 \times 10.2)11.5$

$= 2834 \text{ mm}^2$ OK

Hence, $V_{pl,Rd} = 2834(275/\sqrt{3})/1.00$

$= 540371 \text{ N} = 540.4 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed} \ (= 79.2 \text{ kN})$ OK

Bending and shear

According to EC 3 the theoretical plastic resistance moment of the section, i.e. $M_{pl,Rd}$, is reduced if

$$V_{Ed} > 0.5V_{pl,Rd}$$

But in this case

$$V_{Ed} = 0 \quad \text{(at mid-span)}$$

Hence, no check is required.

SHEAR BUCKLING RESISTANCE

$$\text{As } \frac{h_w}{t_w} = \frac{332.6}{7.3} = 45.6 < 72\frac{\varepsilon}{\eta} = 72 \times \frac{0.92}{1.0} = 66.24$$

Example 9.1 *continued*

where

$$h_w = h - 2t_f = 355.6 - 2 \times 11.5 = 332.6 \text{ mm}$$

No check on shear buckling is required.

FLANGE-INDUCED BUCKLING

A_w, area of web $= (h - 2t_f)t_w = (355.6 - 2 \times 11.5) \times 7.3 = 2428 \text{ mm}^2$
A_{fc}, area of compression flange $= bt_f = 171.5 \times 11.5 = 1972.2 \text{ mm}^2$

$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} = 45.6 \le k\frac{E}{f_{yf}}\sqrt{\frac{A_w}{A_{fc}}} = 0.3 \times \frac{210 \times 10^3}{275}\sqrt{\frac{2428}{1972.2}} = 254.2 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, no check is required.

WEB BUCKLING

At an unstiffened end support (i.e. load type (c) in *Fig. 9.3*)

$$k_F = 2 + 6\left(\frac{s_s + c}{h_w}\right) \le 6$$

$$= 2 + 6\left(\frac{100 + 0}{332.6}\right) = 3.80$$

$$F_{cr} = 0.9k_F E\frac{t_w^3}{h_w} = 0.9 \times 3.80 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times \frac{7.3^3}{332.6} = 840024 \text{ N}$$

$$m_1 = \frac{f_{yf}b_f}{f_{yw}t_w} = \frac{275 \times 171.5}{275 \times 7.3} = 23.5$$

Assuming $\bar{\lambda} > 0.5$

$$m_2 = 0.02\left(\frac{h_w}{t_f}\right)^2 = 0.02 \times \left(\frac{332.6}{11.5}\right)^2 = 16.73$$

$$\ell_e = \frac{k_F E t_w^2}{2f_{yw}h_w} \le s_s + c = 100 + 0 = 100 \text{ mm}$$

$$= \frac{3.80 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 7.3^3}{2 \times 275 \times 332.6} = 232.5 \text{ mm}$$

Hence $l_e = 100$ mm

$$\ell_y = \ell_e + t_f\sqrt{\frac{m_1}{2} + \left(\frac{\ell_e}{t_f}\right)^2 + m_2}$$

$$= 100 + 11.5\sqrt{\frac{23.5}{2} + \left(\frac{100}{11.5}\right)^2 + 16.7} = 217.3 \text{ mm}$$

$$\ell_y = \ell_e + t_f\sqrt{m_1 + m_2}$$

$$\ell_y = 100 + 11.5\sqrt{23.5 + 16.7} = 172.9 \text{ m}$$

Example 9.1 *continued*

Hence, $l_y = 172.9$ mm

$$\bar{\lambda}_F = \sqrt{\frac{\ell_y t_w f_{yw}}{F_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{172.9 \times 7.3 \times 275}{840024}} = 0.6428 > 0.5 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\chi_F = \frac{0.5}{\bar{\lambda}_F} = \frac{0.5}{0.6428} = 0.778 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$L_{eff} = \chi_F l_y = 0.778 \times 172.9 = 134.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$F_{Rd} = \frac{f_{yw} L_{eff} t_w}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{275 \times 134.5 \times 7.3}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 270 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed} \ (= 79.2 \text{ kN}) \quad \text{OK}$$

DEFLECTION

The maximum bending moment due to working load is:

$$M_{max} = \frac{(g_k + q_k)L^2}{8} = \frac{(8+6)8^2}{8} = 112 \text{ kNm}$$

Elastic resistance:

$$(M_{c,Rd})_{el} = \frac{W_{el,y} f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{796 \times 10^3 \times 275}{1.05} = 199 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} > M_{max}$$

Hence deflection can be calculated elastically.
Deflection due to variable loading (q_k) = 6 kNm^{-1} = 6 Nmm^{-1}

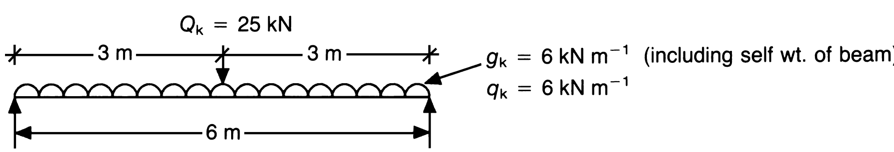
$$\delta = \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{\omega L^4}{EI} = \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{6 \times (8 \times 10^3)^4}{210 \times 10^3 \times 14200 \times 10^4} = 11 \text{ mm}$$

Assuming the beam supports brittle finishes the maximum permissible deflection is

$$\frac{\text{span}}{360} = \frac{8 \times 10^3}{360} = 22 \text{ mm} > \delta \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 9.2 Design of a laterally restrained beam (EC 3)

Select and check a suitable beam section using S 235 steel to support the loads shown below. Assume beam is fully laterally restrained and that it sits on 125 mm bearings at each end.



DESIGN BENDING MOMENT

Design action $(F_{Ed}) = (F_{Ed})_{udl} + (F_{Ed})_{pl}$

$$= (\gamma_G g_k + \gamma_Q q_k) \times \text{span} + \gamma_Q Q_k$$

$$= (1.35 \times 6 + 1.5 \times 6)6 + 1.5 \times 25$$

$$= 102.6 + 37.5 = 140.1 \text{ kN}$$

Example 9.2 *continued*

Design bending moment $M_{Ed} = \dfrac{(F_{Ed})_{udl} l}{8} + \dfrac{(F_{Ed})_{pl} l}{4} = \dfrac{102.6 \times 6}{8} + \dfrac{37.5 \times 6}{4} = 133.2\,\text{kNm}$

SECTION SELECTION

(Refer to Resistance of cross-sections: bending moments)

Assume suitable section belongs to class 1
Hence, the minimum required plastic moment of resistance about the major axis (y–y), $W_{pl,y}$, is given by

$$W_{pl,y} \geq \frac{M_{pl,Rd}\gamma_{M0}}{f_y}$$

Putting $M_{pl,Rd} = M_{Ed}$ and assuming $f_y = 235$ N mm^2 (*Table 9.4*) gives

$$W_{pl,y} \geq \frac{M_{pl,Rd}\gamma_{M0}}{f_y} = \frac{133.2 \times 10^6 \times 1.00}{235} = 566.8 \times 10^3\ \text{mm}^3 = 566.8\ \text{cm}^3$$

From the steel table (Appendix B), try 356 × 171 × 45 kg m^{-1} UB ($W_{pl,y} = 774$ cm^3)

CHECK STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Flange thickness (t_f) = 9.7 mm
Hence, from *Table 9.4* $f_y = 235$ N mm^{-2} as assumed

CHECK SECTION CLASSIFICATION

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{0.5} = (235/235)^{0.5} = 1.0$$

$$\frac{c}{t_f} = \frac{71.85}{9.7} = 7.41 < 9\varepsilon = 9 \times 1.0 = 9$$

(where $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2 = (171.0 - 6.9 - 2 \times 10.2)/2 = 143.7/2 = 71.85$ mm)

$$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} = \frac{312.3}{6.9} = 45.3 < 72\varepsilon = 72 \times 1.0 = 72$$

Hence from *Table 9.5*, section belongs to class 1 as assumed.

RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTION

Bending

Plastic moment of resistance, $M_{pl,Rd}$, of 356 × 171 × 45 UB is given by

$$M_{pl,Rd} = \frac{W_{pl,y} f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{774 \times 10^3 \times 235}{1.00}$$

$$= 181.9 \times 10^6\ \text{Nmm} = 181.9\ \text{kNm} > M_{Ed}\ (= 133.2\ \text{kNm}) \quad \text{OK}$$

Shear

Design shear force, V_{Ed}, is

$$V_{Ed} = \frac{F_{Ed}}{2} = \frac{140.1}{2} = 70\,\text{kN}$$

Example 9.2 *continued*

For class 1 section, design plastic shear resistance, $V_{pl,Rd}$, is given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})/\gamma_{M0}$$

where $A_v = A - 2bt_f + (t_w + 2r)t_f > \eta h_w t_w = 1.0 \times 332.6 \times 6.9 = 2295 \text{ mm}^2$

$= 57 \times 10^2 - 2 \times 171.0 \times 9.7 + (6.9 + 2 \times 10.2)9.7$

$= 2647.4 \text{ mm}^2$ OK

$(h_w = h - 2t_f = 352.0 - 2 \times 9.7 = 332.6 \text{ mm})$

Hence, $V_{pl,Rd} = 2647.4(235/\sqrt{3})/1.00$

$= 359192 \text{ N} = 359 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed}\ (= 70 \text{ kN})$ OK

Bending and shear
$V_{Ed} = 0$ at mid-span section, hence the moment of resistance of the section is unaffected.

SHEAR BUCKLING RESISTANCE

As $\dfrac{h_w}{t_w} = \dfrac{332.6}{6.9} = 48.2 < 72\dfrac{\varepsilon}{\eta} = 72 \times \dfrac{1.0}{1.0} = 72$, no check on shear buckling is required.

FLANGE INDUCED BUCKLING

A_w, area of web $= (h - 2t_f)t_w = (352 - 2 \times 9.7) \times 6.9 = 2294.9 \text{ mm}^2$
A_{fc}, area of compression flange $= bt_f = 171 \times 9.7 = 1658.7 \text{ mm}^2$

$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} = \frac{332.6}{6.9} = 48.2 \le k\frac{E}{f_{yf}}\sqrt{\frac{A_w}{A_{fc}}} = 0.3 \times \frac{210 \times 10^3}{235}\sqrt{\frac{2294.9}{1658.7}} = 315.3 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence, no check is required.

WEB BUCKLING

At an unstiffened end support

$$k_F = 2 + 6\left(\frac{s_s + c}{h_w}\right) \le 6$$

$$= 2 + 6\left(\frac{125 + 0}{332.6}\right) = 4.25$$

$$F_{cr} = 0.9k_F E\frac{t_w^3}{h_w} = 0.9 \times 4.25 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times \frac{6.9^3}{332.6} = 793370 \text{ N}$$

$$m_1 = \frac{f_{yf}b_f}{f_{yw}t_w} = \frac{235 \times 171.0}{235 \times 6.9} = 24.8$$

Assuming $\bar{\lambda}_F > 0.5$

$$m_2 = 0.02\left(\frac{h_w}{t_f}\right)^2 = 0.02 \times \left(\frac{332.6}{9.7}\right)^2 = 23.5$$

Example 9.2 *continued*

$$\ell_e = \frac{k_F E t_w^2}{2 f_{yw} h_w} \le s_s + c = 125 + 0 = 125\ \text{mm}$$

$$= \frac{4.25 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 6.9^2}{2 \times 235 \times 332.6} = 271.8\ \text{mm}$$

Hence $l_e = 125$ mm

$$\ell_y = \ell_e + t_f \sqrt{\frac{m_1}{2} + \left(\frac{\ell_e}{t_f}\right)^2 + m_2}$$

$$= 125 + 9.7\sqrt{\frac{24.8}{2} + \left(\frac{125}{9.7}\right)^2 + 23.5} = 262.8\ \text{mm}$$

$$\ell_y = \ell_e + t_f\sqrt{m_1 + m_2}$$

$$\ell_y = 125 + 9.7\sqrt{24.8 + 23.5} = 192.4\ \text{mm}$$

Hence, $l_y = 192.4$ mm

$$\bar{\lambda}_F = \sqrt{\frac{\ell_y t_w f_{yw}}{F_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{192.4 \times 6.9 \times 235}{793370}} = 0.627 > 0.5 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\chi_F = \frac{0.5}{\bar{\lambda}_F} = \frac{0.5}{0.627} = 0.8 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$L_{eff} = \chi_F l_y = 0.8 \times 192.4 = 153.9\ \text{mm}$$

$$F_{Rd} = \frac{f_{yw} L_{eff} t_w}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{235 \times 153.9 \times 6.9}{1.05} \times 10^{-3} = 237.6\ \text{kN} > V_{Ed}\ (= 70\ \text{kN}) \quad \text{OK}$$

DEFLECTION

Deflection due to variable uniformly distributed loading $q_k = 6$ kN m^{-1} = 6 Nmm^{-1} and variable point load, Q_k = 25000 N is

Hence, $$\delta_2 = \frac{5 q_k L^4}{384 EI} + \frac{Q_k L^3}{48 EI}$$

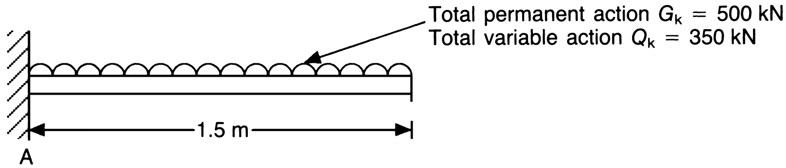
$$= \frac{5 \times 6 \times (6 \times 10^3)^4}{384 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 12100 \times 10^4} + \frac{25 \times 10^3 \times (6 \times 10^3)^3}{48 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 12100 \times 10^4}$$

$$= 4\ \text{mm} + 4.4\ \text{mm}$$

$$= 8\ \text{mm} < \text{allowable} = \left(\frac{\text{span}}{360} = \frac{6 \times 10^3}{360} = 16\ \text{mm}\right) \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 9.3 Design of a cantilever beam (EC 3)

A cantilever beam is needed to resist the loading shown below. Select a suitable UB section in S 275 steel to satisfy bending and shear criteria only assuming full lateral restraint.



DESIGN BENDING MOMENT AND SHEAR FORCE

Design action $(F_{Ed}) = \gamma_G g_k + \gamma_Q q_k$

$= 1.35 \times 500 + 1.5 \times 350 = 1200$ kN

Design bending moment at A, M_{Ed}, is

$$M_{Ed} = \frac{F_{Ed}l}{2} = 1200 \times \frac{1.5}{2} = 900 \text{ kNm}$$

Design shear force at A, V_{Ed}, is

$$V_{Ed} = F_{Ed} = 1200 \text{ kN}$$

SECTION SELECTION

Since the cantilever beam is relatively short and subject to fairly high shear forces, the bending capacity or the shear strength of the section may be critical and both factors will need to be considered in order to select an appropriate section.

Hence, plastic moment of section (assuming beam belongs to class 1), W_{pl}, must exceed the following to satisfy bending:

$$W_{pl,y} \geq \frac{M_{pl,Rd}\gamma_{M0}}{f_y} = \frac{900 \times 10^6 \times 1.00}{265} = 3396 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^2 = 3396 \text{ cm}^3$$

The shear area of the section, A_v, must exceed the following to satisfy shear:

$$A_v \geq \frac{V_{pl,Rd}\gamma_{M0}}{(f_y/\sqrt{3})} = \frac{1200 \times 10^3 \times 1.00}{(265/\sqrt{3})} = 7843 \text{ mm}^2$$

where $A_v = A - 2bt_f + (t_w + 2r)t_f > \eta h_w t_w$
Hence, try 610 × 305 × 149 kg m^{-1} UB section

CHECK STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Flange thickness (t_f) = 19.7 mm
Hence from *Table 9.4*, f_y = 265 N mm^{-2} as assumed

CHECK SECTION CLASSIFICATION

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{0.5} = (235/265)^{0.5} = 0.94$$

$$\frac{c}{t_f} = \frac{129.95}{19.7} = 6.59 < 9\varepsilon = 9 \times 0.94 = 8.46$$

Example 9.3 *continued*

(where $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2 = (304.8 - 11.9 - 2 \times 16.5)/2 = 259.9/2 = 129.95$ mm)

$$\frac{c^\star}{t_w} = \frac{537.2}{11.9} = 45.14 < 72\varepsilon = 72 \times 0.94 = 67.68$$

Hence from *Table 9.5*, section belongs to class 1 as assumed.

RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTION

Bending

Plastic moment of resistance of 610 × 305 × 149 UB about the major axis (y-y) is given by

$$M_{pl,Rd} = \frac{W_{pl,y} f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{4570 \times 10^3 \times 265}{1.00}$$

$$= 1211 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 1211 \text{ kNm} > M_{Ed} \ (= 900 \text{ kNm}) \quad \text{OK}$$

Shear

For Class 1 section, design plastic shear resistance, is given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})/\gamma_{M0}$$

where $A_v = A - 2bt_f + (t_w + 2r)t_f > \eta h_w t_w = 1.0 \times 570.2 \times 11.9 = 6785.38 \text{ mm}^2$

$= 190 \times 10^2 - 2 \times 304.8 \times 19.7 + (11.9 + 2 \times 16.5)19.7$

$= 7875.4 \text{ mm}^2$ OK

($h_w = h - 2t_f = 609.6 - 2 \times 19.7 = 570.2$ mm)

Hence, $V_{pl,Rd} = 7875.4\ (265/\sqrt{3})/1.00 = 1204.9 \times 10^3$ N

$= 1204.9 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed}$ (= 1200 kN) OK

Bending and shear

Since

$$V_{Ed} = 1200 \text{ kN} > 0.5V_{pl,Rd} = 0.5 \times 1204.9 = 602.5 \text{ kN}$$

the section is subject to a 'high shear load' and the design resistant moment of the section (about the major axis) should be reduced to $M_{y,V,Rd}$ which is given by

$$M_{y,V,Rd} = \frac{(W_{pl,y} - \rho A_w^2/4t_w)f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{(4570 \times 10^3 - 0.984 \times 6785.38^2/4 \times 11.9)265}{1.00}$$

$$= 958.8 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 958.8 \text{ kNm} > M_{Ed} \ (= 900 \text{ kNm}) \quad \text{OK}$$

where

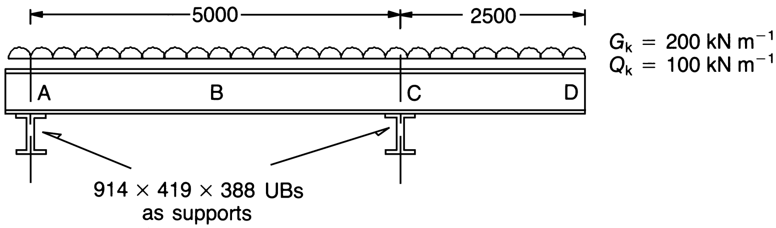
$$\rho = (2V_{Ed}/V_{pl,Rd} - 1)^2 = (2 \times 1200/1204.9 - 1)^2 = 0.984$$

$$A_w = h_w t_w = 570.2 \times 11.9 = 6785.38 \text{ mm}^2$$

Selected UB section, 610 × 305 × 149, is satisfactory in bending and shear.

Example 9.4 Design of a beam with stiffeners (EC 3)

The figure shows a simply supported beam and cantilever with uniformly distributed loads applied to it. Using grade S 275 steel and assuming full lateral restraint, select and check a suitable beam section.



DESIGN SUMMARY

Permanent action = 200 kN m^{-1}
Variable action = 100 kN m^{-1}
Grade S 275 steel
Full lateral restraint

ULTIMATE LIMIT STATE

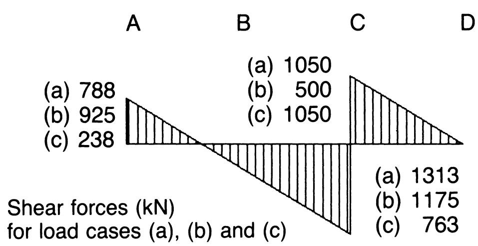
3 load cases:

(a) $1.35G_k + 1.5Q_k$ on span 1
$1.35G_k + 1.5Q_k$ on span 2
(b) $1.35G_k + 1.5Q_k$ on span 1
$1.0G_k + 0.0Q_k$ on span 2
(c) $1.0G_k + 0.0Q_k$ on span 1
$1.35G_k + 1.5Q_k$ on span 2

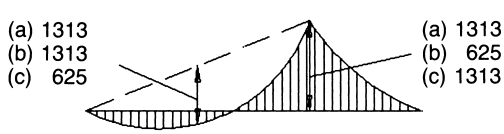
Static equilibrium (refer to Table 8.6)
Overturning moment = (1.1 × 200 + 1.5 × 100)2.5 × 1.25 = 1156.25 kNm (load case (c))
Restorative moment = (0.9 × 200)5 × 2.5 = 2250 kNm > 1156.25 kNm OK

SHEAR AND BENDING

Shear force and bending moment diagrams for the 3 load cases are shown below.



Shear forces (kN)
for load cases (a), (b) and (c)



Bending moments (kN m)
for load cases (a), (b) and (c)

Example 9.4 *continued*

SECTION SELECTION

For class 1 section

$$W_{pl,y} \geq \frac{M_{pl,Rd}\gamma_{M0}}{f_y} = \frac{1313 \times 10^6 \times 1.00}{265} = 4.955 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^2 = 4955 \text{ cm}^3$$

Try 762 × 267 × 173 UB section

STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Flange thickness = 21.6 mm, steel grade S 275. Hence from *Table 9.4*, $f_y = 265$ N mm^{-2}.

SECTION CLASSIFICATION

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{1/2} = (235/265)^{1/2} = 0.94$$

$$\frac{c}{t_f} = \frac{109.7}{21.6} = 5.08 < 9\varepsilon = 9 \times 0.94 = 8.46$$

(where $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2 = (266.7 - 14.3 - 2 \times 16.5)/2 = 219.4/2 = 109.7$ mm)

$$\frac{c^*}{t_w} = \frac{685.8}{14.3} = 47.9 < 72\varepsilon = 72 \times 0.94 = 67.7$$

Hence from *Table 9.5*, section belongs to class 1 as assumed.

RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTIONS

Shear resistance

For class 1 section, design plastic shear resistance, is given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})/\gamma_{M0}$$

where $A_v = A - 2bt_f + (t_w + 2r)t_f > \eta h_w t_w = 1.0 \times 718.8 \times 14.3 = 10278.8$ mm^2

$= 220 \times 10^2 - 2 \times 266.7 \times 21.6 + (14.3 + 2 \times 16.5)21.6$

$= 11500.2$ mm^2 OK

($h_w = h - 2t_f = 762 - 2 \times 21.6 = 718.8$ mm)

Hence, $V_{pl,Rd} = 11500.2(265/\sqrt{3})/1.00 = 1759.5 \times 10^3$ N

$= 1759.5$ kN $> V_{Ed}$ (= 1313 kN) OK

Bending and shear

$$V_{Ed} = 1313 \text{ kN} = 0.746V_{pl,Rd} > 0.5V_{pl,Rd}$$

Hence, beam is subject to HIGH SHEAR LOAD

$$M_{y,V,Rd} = \frac{(W_{pl,y} - \rho A_w^2/4t_w)f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{(6200 \times 10^3 - 0.243 \times 10278.8 \text{ mm}/4 \times 14.3)265}{1.00}$$

$= 1524 \times 10^6$ Nmm $= 1524$ kNm $> M_{Ed}$ (= 1313 kNm) OK

Example 9.4 *continued*

where

$$\rho = (2V_{Ed}/V_{pl,Rd} - 1)^2 = (2 \times 1313/1759.5 - 1)^2 = 0.243$$

$$A_w = h_w t_w = 718.8 \times 14.3 = 10278.8 \text{ mm}^2$$

Shear buckling resistance

As will be seen later, the web needs stiffeners. Hence, provided $c*/t_w$ for the web is less than $\frac{31}{\eta}\varepsilon\sqrt{k_\tau}$ (clause 5.1, EC 3–5) no check is required for resistance to shear buckling.

k_τ = 5.34 (assuming stiffeners needed only at supports)
ε = 0.94
η = 1.2

Hence, $\frac{31}{\eta}\varepsilon\sqrt{k_\tau} = \frac{31}{1.2} \times 0.94 \times \sqrt{5.34} = 56.1 > c*/t_w$ (= 48.0) OK

Flange-induced buckling

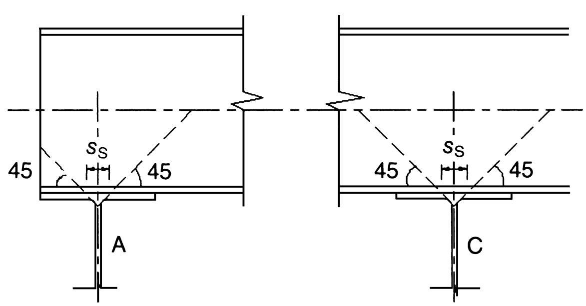
$$\frac{h_w}{t_w} = \frac{718.8}{14.3} = 50.3 \le k\frac{E}{f_{yf}}\sqrt{\frac{A_w}{A_{fc}}} = 0.3 \times \frac{210 \times 10^3}{265}\sqrt{\frac{10279}{5761}} = 317.6$$

where
A_w, area of web $= (h - 2t_f)t_w = (762 - 2 \times 21.6) \times 14.3 = 10279$ mm^2
A_{fc}, area of compression flange $= bt_f = 266.7 \times 21.6 = 5761$ mm^2

Hence, no check is required.

Resistance of web to transverse forces

The web capacity at supports A and C needs checking but by inspection it would seem that the web resistance at C is almost certainly more critical. Therefore only the calculations for this support are presented.



Stiff bearing length, $s_s \approx 2t_f + t_w + r = 2 \times 36.6 + 21.5 + 24.1 = 118.8$ mm
Since the load is applied through the flange and is resisted by shear forces in the web (i.e. load type (a) in *Fig. 9.3*), k_F is given by

$$k_F = 6 + 2\left(\frac{h_w}{a}\right)^2$$

Example 9.4 *continued*

As there are no web stiffeners, $a = \infty$ and therefore $h_w/a = 0$ and $k_F = 6$.

$$F_{cr} = 0.9k_F E\frac{t_w^3}{h_w} = 0.9 \times 6 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times \frac{14.3^3}{718.8} = 4613314.8\ \text{N}$$

$$m_1 = \frac{f_{yf}b_f}{f_{yw}t_w} = \frac{265 \times 266.7}{275 \times 14.3} = 18$$

Assuming $\bar{\lambda}_F > 0.5$

$$m_2 = 0.02\left(\frac{h_w}{t_f}\right)^2 = 0.02 \times \left(\frac{718.8}{21.6}\right)^2 = 22.1$$

$$\ell_y = s_s + 2t_f\left(1 + \sqrt{m_1 + m_2}\right)$$

$$= 118.8 + 2 \times 36.6\left(1 + \sqrt{18 + 22.1}\right)$$

$$= 655.5\ \text{mm}$$

$$\bar{\lambda}_F = \sqrt{\frac{\ell_y t_w f_{yw}}{F_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{655.5 \times 14.3 \times 275}{4613314.8}} = 0.75 > 0.5 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\chi_F = \frac{0.5}{\bar{\lambda}_F} = \frac{0.5}{0.75} = 0.67 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$L_{eff} = \chi_F l_y = 0.67 \times 655.5 = 439\ \text{mm}$$

$$F_{Rd} = \frac{f_{yw}L_{eff}t_w}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{275 \times 439 \times 14.3}{1.00} \times 10^{-3}$$

$$= 1726\ \text{kN} < F_{Ed}\ (= 2363\ \text{kN at C, load case (a)}) \quad \text{Not OK}$$

Where the member is subjected to a concentrated transverse force acting on the compression flange and bending, e.g. support C, clause 7.2 of EC 3–5 recommends the following additional check:

$$\eta_2 + 0.8\eta_1 \le 1.4$$

where

$$\eta_1 = \frac{M_{Ed}}{W_{pl,y}(f_y/\gamma_{M1})} = \frac{1313 \times 10^6}{6.2 \times 10^6(265/1.00)} = 0.80$$

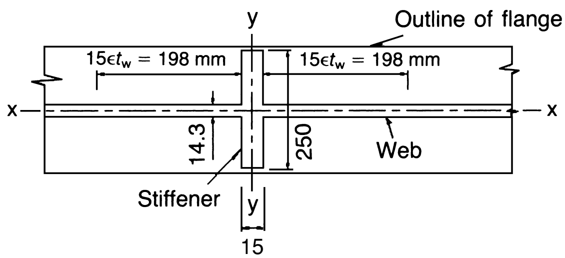
$$\eta_2 = \frac{F_{Ed}}{L_{eff}t_w(f_{yw}/\gamma_{M1})} = \frac{2363 \times 10^3}{439 \times 14.3(275/1.00)} = 1.37$$

$$\eta_2 + 0.8\eta_1 = 1.37 + 0.8 \times 0.80 = 2.0 > 1.4$$

Hence, this is also not satisfied. Stiffeners are therefore required at A and C with the stiffener at C being the more critical.

Example 9.4 *continued*

Stiffener design at C (Refer to Cl. 9, EC 3–5)
Assume a stiffener thickness, S_t, of 15 mm and width, S_w, of 250mm (see figure).



When checking the buckling resistance, the effective cross-section of a stiffener should be taken as including a width of web plate equal to $30\varepsilon t_w$, arranged with $15\varepsilon t_w = 15 \times (235/275)^{0.5} 14.3 = 198$ mm each side of the stiffener.
Buckling length, $l \geq 0.75h_w = 0.75 \times 718.8 = 539$ mm
Radius of gyration of stiffened section, i_x, is

$$i_x = (I/A)^{1/2} = [(15 \times 250^3/12)/(2 \times 198 \times 14.3 + 15 \times 250)]^{1/2}$$

$$= (19531250/9412.8)^{1/2} = 45.6 \text{ mm}$$

$$\lambda = l/i = 539/45.6 = 11.8$$

$$\lambda_1 = 93.9\varepsilon = 93.9 \times \sqrt{(235/f_y)} = 93.9 \times \sqrt{(235/275)} = 86.8$$

$$\bar{\lambda} = \lambda/\lambda_1$$

$$= 11.8/86.8 = 0.136 < 0.2$$

From *Fig. 6.4* of EC 3–1, reduction factor $\chi_c = 1.0$
Design buckling resistance, $N_{b,Rd}$, is given by (6.3.1.1(3))

$$N_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi A f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{1.0 \times 9412.8 \times 275}{1.00} = 2.558 \times 10^6\ N = 2558 \text{ kN } (> 2363 \text{ kN}) \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence double-sided stiffeners made of two plates 118 × 15 is suitable at support C. A similar stiffener should be provided at support A.

SERVICEABILITY LIMIT STATE

For a simply supported span

$$\delta = \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{\omega L^4}{EI}$$

where ω is the unfactored imposed load = 100 kN m^{-1} = 100 N mm^{-1}

$$\delta = \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{\omega L^4}{EI} = \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{100 \times (5 \times 10^3)^4}{210 \times 10^3 \times 2.05 \times 10^9} = 2mm = \frac{L}{2580} < \frac{L}{360} \quad \text{OK}$$

9.11.2 LATERAL TORSIONAL BUCKLING OF BEAMS (CL. 6.3.2, EC 3)

In order to prevent the possibility of a beam failure due to lateral torsional buckling, the designer needs to ensure that the buckling resistance, $M_{b,Rd}$ exceeds the design moment, M_{Ed}, i.e.

$$\frac{M_{Ed}}{M_{b,Rd}} \leq 1.0 \qquad (9.36)$$

The buckling resistance is determined using equation 9.45 and is a function of

(1) the elastic critical moment, M_{cr}
(2) the buckling factor, χ_{LT}

The following discusses how the design values of these parameters are assessed.

9.11.2.1 Elastic critical moment, M_{cr}

EC 3 provides no detailed information on how to calculate the design elastic critical moment of beams but rather leaves it to the designer to use something appropriate. No reason for this omission is provided in the code and on that basis the following formula for the elastic critical moment, M_{cr}, taken from the prestandard (i.e. ENV 1993–1–1, 1992), is recommended.

$$M_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_z}{L_{cr}^2}\left(\frac{I_w}{I_z} + \frac{L_{cr}^2 GI_t}{\pi^2 EI_z}\right)^{0.5} \qquad (9.37)$$

where

L_{cr} = length of beam between points which have lateral restraint
I_z = second moment of area about the minor axis (z–z)
I_y = second moment of area about the major axis (y–y)
I_t = torsional constant
I_w = warping constant
E = modulus of elasticity (210000 N mm^{-2})
G = shear modulus = $\dfrac{E}{2(1+\nu)} = \dfrac{210000}{2(1+0.3)}$
= 80769 Nmm^{-2} ≈ 81000 Nmm^{-2}

Equation 9.37 is based on the following assumptions:

1. The beam is of uniform section with equal flanges.
2. Beam ends are simply supported in the lateral plane and prevented from lateral movement and twisting about the longitudinal axis but are free to rotate on plan.
3. The section is subjected to equal and opposite in plane end moments.
4. The loads are not destabilising (*section* 4.8.11.1).

9.11.2.2 Buckling factor χ_{LT}

χ_{LT} is the reduction factor for lateral torsional buckling. Two methods of calculating χ_{LT} are provided in EC 3 as follows:

(1) The so called 'general case' mentioned in clause 6.3.2.2 is applicable to all members of constant cross-section.
(2) The approach detailed in clause 6.3.2.3 is applicable to rolled sections only.

(a) General case (Cl. 6.3.2.2, EC 3). According to the general case χ_{LT} is given by

$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}} \leq 1 \qquad (9.38)$$

where

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2] \qquad (9.39)$$

in which

α_{LT} is an imperfection factor (*Table 9.7*)

$$\bar{\lambda}_{LT} = \sqrt{\frac{W_y f_y}{M_{cr}}} \qquad (9.40)$$

where

W_y = $W_{pl,y}$ for class 1 or 2 sections
= $W_{el,y}$ for class 3 sections
= $W_{eff,y}$ for class 4 sections

Recommended values for imperfection factors for lateral torsional buckling, α_{LT}, are given in *Table 9.7*. Whichever of the buckling curves is used depends on the type and size of section used as indicated in *Table 9.8*.

Table 9.7 Imperfection factors (Table 6.3, EC 3)

Buckling curve	*a*	*b*	*c*	*d*
Imperfection factor α_{LT}	0.21	0.34	0.49	0.76

Table 9.8 Recommended values for lateral torsional buckling curves for rolled sections (based on Table 6.4, EC 3)

Cross-section	*Limits*	*Buckling curve*
Rolled I-sections	$h/b \leq 2$	*a*
	$h/b > 2$	*b*

(b) Buckling factor χ_{LT} for rolled sections (Cl. 6.3.2.3, EC 3). An alternative method of calculating the reduction factor for lateral torsional buckling χ_{LT} for rolled sections only is described in clause 6.3.2.3. Here χ_{LT} is given by

$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \beta\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}}$$

$$\text{but } \chi_{LT} \leq 1 \text{ and } \chi_{LT} \leq \frac{1}{\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2} \qquad (9.41)$$

where

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - \bar{\lambda}_{LT,0}) + \beta\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2] \qquad (9.42)$$

in which

α_{LT} is an imperfection factor
$\bar{\lambda}_{LT,0}$ = 0.4 (for rolled sections, clause 2.17 of UK National Annex to EC 3)
β = 0.75 (for rolled sections, clause 2.17 of UK National Annex to EC 3)

The value of the imperfection factor used in equation 9.42 is again taken from *Table 9.7*. But the appropriate buckling curve for the cross-section is determined from *Table 9.9*.

Table 9.9 Recommended values for lateral torsional buckling curves for rolled sections (based on clause 2.17 of the UK National Annex to EC 3)

Cross-section	*Limits*	*Buckling curve*
Rolled I-sections	$h/b \leq 2$	*b*
	$2 \leq h/b < 3.1$	*c*
	$h/b > 2$	*d*

In order to take account of the bending moment curve between points of lateral restraint the reduction factor χ_{LT} may be modified as follows:

$$\chi_{LT,mod} = \frac{\chi_{LT}}{f} \leq 1.0 \qquad (9.43)$$

where

$$f = 1 - 0.5(1 - k_c)[1 - 2.0(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - 0.8)^2] \leq 1.0 \qquad (9.44)$$

in which

$$k_c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{C_1}} \qquad (9.45)$$

where

$$C_1 = \frac{M_{cr} \text{ for the actual bending moment diagram}}{M_{cr} \text{ for a uniform bending moment diagram}}$$

obtained from *Table 9.10*.

9.11.2.3 Buckling resistance $M_{b,Rd}$ (Cl. 6.3.2.1, EC 3)

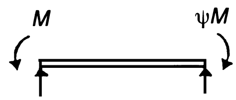
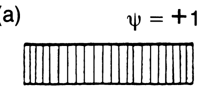
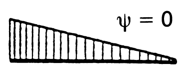
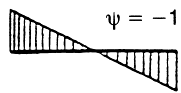
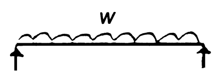
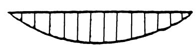
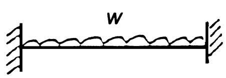
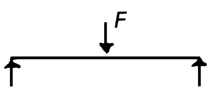
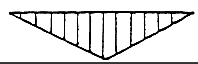
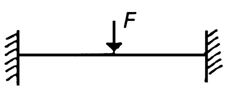
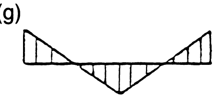
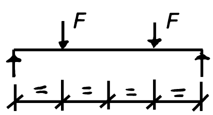
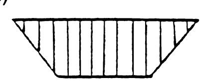
The design buckling resistance moment of a laterally unrestrained beam is given by

$$M_{b,Rd} = \chi_{LT}W_y\frac{f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} \qquad (9.45)$$

where

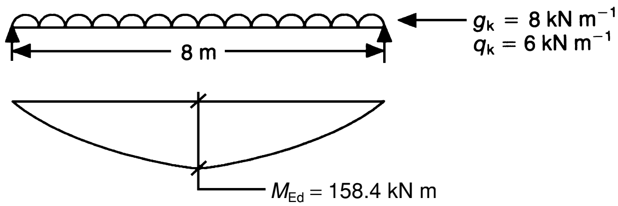
χ_{LT} is the reduction factor for lateral torsional buckling
W_y is the section modulus as follows
= $W_{pl,y}$ for class 1 or 2 sections
= $W_{el,y}$ for class 3 sections
= $W_{eff,y}$ for class 4 sections
f_y is the yield strength (*Table 9.4*)
γ_{M1} is the partial safety factor for buckling = 1.0 (section 9.9.3)

Table 9.10 Values of C_1 for various end moment or transverse loading combinations (based on Tables F.1.1 and F.1.2, ENV EC 3)

Loading and support conditions	*Bending moment diagram*	ψ	C_1
	(a) 	+1	1.000
	(b) 	0	1.879
	(c) 	−1	2.752
	(d) 	–	1.132
	(e) 	–	1.285
	(f) 	–	1.365
	(g) 	–	1.565
	(h) 	–	1.046

Example 9.5 Analysis of a beam restrained at supports (EC 3)

Assuming that the beam in Example 9.1 is only laterally and torsionally restrained at the supports, determine whether a 356 × 171 × 51 kg m^{-1} UB section in S275 steel is still suitable.



SECTION PROPERTIES

From steel tables (Appendix B)

Depth of section, h	= 355.6 mm
Width of section, b	= 171.5 mm
Thickness of flange, t_f	= 11.5 mm
Second moment of area about the minor axis, I_z	= 968 × 10^4 mm^4
Radius of gyration about z–z axis, i_z	= 38.7 mm
Elastic modulus about the major axis, $W_{el,y}$	= 796 × 10^3 mm^3
Plastic modulus about the major axis $W_{pl,y}$	= 895 × 10^3 mm^3
Warping constant, I_w	= 286 × 10^9 mm^6
Torsional constant, I_t	= 236 × 10^3 mm^4
Yield strength of S275 steel, f_y	= 275 N mm^{-2}
Shear modulus, G	= 81000 N mm^{-2}

Method for uniform members in bending – General case (Cl. 6.3.2.2)

Elastic critical moment, M_{cr}

Length of beam between points which are laterally restrained, L_{cr} = 8000 mm

$$M_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_z}{L_{cr}^2}\left(\frac{I_w}{I_z} + \frac{L_{cr}^2 GI_t}{\pi^2 EI_z}\right)^{0.5}$$

$$= \frac{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 968 \times 10^4}{(8 \times 10^3)^2}\left(\frac{286 \times 10^9}{968 \times 10^4} + \frac{8000^2 \times 81000 \times 236 \times 10^3}{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 968 \times 10^4}\right)^{0.5} = 9.4318 \times 10^7 \text{ Nmm}$$

For class 1 sections $W_y = W_{pl,y} = 895 \times 10^3$ mm^3

$$\bar{\lambda}_{LT} = \sqrt{\frac{W_y f_y}{M_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{895 \times 10^3 \times 275}{9.4318 \times 10^7}} = 1.615$$

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.34(1.615 - 0.2) + 1.615^2] = 2.045$$

$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}} = \frac{1}{2.045 + \sqrt{2.405^2 - 1.615^2}} = 0.261 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$M_{b,Rd} = \chi_{LT} W_y f_y/\gamma_{M1}$$

$$= 0.261 \times 895 \times 10^3 \times 275/1.00 = 64.2 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

$$= 64.2 \text{ kNm} < M_{Ed} = 158.4 \text{ kNm} \quad (\textit{Example } 9.1)$$

Since buckling resistance of the beam (= 64.2 kNm) is less than the design moment (M_{Ed} = 158.4 kNm), the beam section is unsuitable

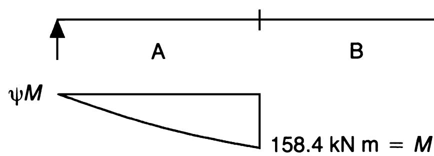
Example 9.6 Analysis of a beam restrained at mid-span and supports (EC 3)

Repeat Example 9.5, but this time assume that the beam is laterally and torsionally restrained at mid-span and at the supports.

SECTION PROPERTIES

See Example 9.5

ELASTIC CRITICAL MOMENT, M_{cr}



Length of beam between points which are laterally restrained, L_{cr} = 4000 mm.

$$M_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_z}{L_{cr}^2}\left(\frac{I_w}{I_z} + \frac{L_{cr}^2 GI_t}{\pi^2 EI_z}\right)^{0.5}$$

$$= \frac{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 968 \times 10^4}{4000^2}\left(\frac{286 \times 10^9}{968 \times 10^4} + \frac{4000^2 \times 81000 \times 236 \times 10^3}{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 968 \times 10^4}\right)^{0.5} = 2.6538 \times 10^8 \text{ Nmm}$$

For class 1 sections $W_y = W_{pl,y} = 895 \times 10^3$ mm^3

$$\bar{\lambda}_{LT} = \sqrt{\frac{W_y f_y}{M_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{895 \times 10^3 \times 275}{2.6538 \times 10^8}} = 0.963$$

LATERAL BUCKLING RESISTANCE

Using the provision of Cl. 6.3.2.2 (i.e. General case)

$\frac{h}{b} = \frac{355.6}{171.5} = 2.07$. From *Table 9.8* use buckling curve $b \Rightarrow \alpha_{LT} = 0.34$ (*Table 9.7*)

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.34(0.963 - 0.2) + 0.963^2] = 1.093$$

$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}} = \frac{1}{1.093 + \sqrt{1.093^2 - 0.963^2}} = 0.643 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$M_{b,Rd} = \chi_{LT} W_y f_y / \gamma_{M1}$$

$$= 0.643 \times 895 \times 10^3 \times 275/1.00 = 158.3 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

$$= 158.3 \text{ kNm} \approx M_{Ed} = 158.4 \text{ kNm} \quad (\textit{Example } 9.1)$$

Using the provision of clause 6.3.2.3 (i.e. procedure for rolled I or H sections)

From above $h/b = 2.07 > 2$. From *Table 9.9* use buckling curve $c \Rightarrow \alpha_{LT} = 0.49$ (*Table 9.7*)

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - \bar{\lambda}_{LT,0}) + \beta\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.49(0.963 - 0.4) + 0.75 \times 0.963^2] = 0.986$$

Example 9.6 *continued*

$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \beta\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{0.986 + \sqrt{0.986^2 - 0.75 \times 0963^2}} = 0.661 < 1.0 < \frac{1}{\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2} = \frac{1}{0.963} = 1.04 \quad \text{OK}$$

Ratio of end moments for spans A & B is ψ, where $\psi = 0/158.4 = 0$. Hence from *Table 9.10(b)* $C_1 = 1.879$.

$$k_c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{C_1}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1.879}} = 0.729$$

$$f = 1 - 0.5(1 - k_c)[1 - 2.0(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - 0.8)^2] = 1 - 0.5(1 - 0.729)[1 - 2 \times (0.963 - 0.8)^2] = 0.872$$

$$\chi_{LT,mod} = \frac{\chi_{LT}}{f} = \frac{0.661}{0.872} = 0.758 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$M_{b,Rd} = \chi_{LT,mod} W_y f_y / \gamma_{M1}$$

$$= 0.758 \times 895 \times 10^3 \times 275/1.00 = 186.6 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

$$= 186.6 \text{ kNm} > M_{Ed} = 158.4 \text{ kNm} \quad (\textit{Example } 9.1)$$

This approach gives a higher estimate of the buckling resistance of rolled sections which will generally be the case.

9.12 Design of columns

The design of columns is largely covered within chapter 6 of EC 3. However, unlike BS 5950, EC 3 does not include the design of cased columns, which is left to Eurocode 4 on Steel Concrete Composite Structures.

The following sub-sections will consider EC 3 requirements in respect of the design of

(i) compression members;
(ii) members resisting combined axial load and bending;
(iii) columns in simple construction;
(iv) simple column baseplates.

9.12.1 COMPRESSION MEMBERS

Compression members (i.e. struts) should be checked for

(1) resistance to compression
(2) resistance to buckling

9.12.1.1 Compression resistance of cross-sections (Cl. 6.2.4., EC 3)

For members in axial compression, the design value of the compression force N_{Ed} at each cross section should satisfy

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{c,Rd}} \leq 1.0 \qquad (9.46)$$

where $N_{c,Rd}$ is the design compression resistance of the cross-section, taken as

(a) the design plastic resistance of the gross cross-section

$$N_{c,Rd} = \frac{Af_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \qquad (9.47)$$

(for class 1, 2, and 3 cross-sections);

(b) the design local buckling resistance of the effective cross-section

$$N_{c,Rd} = \frac{A_{eff} f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \qquad (9.48)$$

(for class 4 cross-sections)

where A_{eff} is the effective area of section.

9.12.1.2 Buckling resistance of members (Cl. 6.3, EC 3)

A compression member should be verified against buckling as follows:

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{b,Rd}} \leq 1.0 \qquad (9.49)$$

where

N_{Ed} is the design value of the compression force
$N_{b,Rd}$ is the design buckling resistance of the compression member

The design buckling resistance of a compression member should be taken as:

$$N_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi A f_y}{\gamma_{M1}}$$

for class 1, 2 and 3 cross-sections (9.50)

The equivalent equation in BS 5950 is $P_c = p_c A$

$$N_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi A_{eff} f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} \quad \text{for class 4 cross-sections} \quad (9.51)$$

where

χ is the reduction factor for the relevant buckling mode, given by

$$\chi = \frac{1}{\Phi + \sqrt{\Phi^2 - \bar{\lambda}^2}} \leq 1.0 \quad (9.52)$$

in which

$$\Phi = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2] \quad (9.53)$$

where

α is an imperfection factor from *Table 9.11*. *Table 9.12* indicates which of the buckling curves is to be used.

Table 9.11 Imperfection factors for buckling curves (Table 6.1, EC 3)

Buckling curve	a_o	*a*	*b*	*c*	*d*
Imperfection factor α	0.13	0.21	0.34	0.49	0.76

$\bar{\lambda}$ is the non-dimensional slenderness, generally given by

$$\bar{\lambda} = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda_1}$$

For class 1, 2 and 3 cross-sections

$$\bar{\lambda} = \sqrt{\frac{A f_y}{N_{cr}}} = \frac{L_{cr}}{i} \times \frac{1}{\lambda_1} \quad (9.54)$$

and for class 4 cross-sections

$$\bar{\lambda} = \sqrt{\frac{A_{eff} f_y}{N_{cr}}} = \frac{L_{cr}}{i} \times \frac{\sqrt{A_{eff}/A}}{\lambda_1} \quad (9.55)$$

where

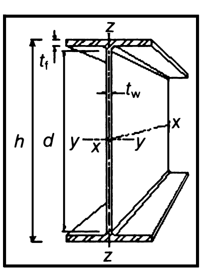
N_{cr} is the elastic critical buckling load for the relevant buckling mode based on the gross cross-sectional properties

$$\lambda_1 = \pi\sqrt{\frac{E}{f_y}} = 93.9 \quad (9.56)$$

$$\varepsilon = \sqrt{\frac{235}{f_y}} \quad (f_y \text{ in N mm}^{-2}) \quad (9.57)$$

In equations (9.54) and (9.55) L_{cr} is the buckling length of the member in the plane under consideration and i is the radius of gyration about the relevant axis. Values of radius of gyration for UB and UC sections can be obtained from steel tables (Appendix B). However, EC 3 provides little information on how to determine L_{cr}, which is in fact

Table 9.12 Selection of buckling curve for a cross-section (based Table 6.2, EC 3)

Cross-section	*Limits*	*Buckling about axis*	*Buckling curve*
Rolled sections	$h/b > 1.2$		
	$t_f \leq 40$ mm	y–y	*a*
		z–z	*b*
	40 mm $< t_f \leq 100$ mm	y–y	*b*
		z–z	*c*
	$h/b \leq 1.2$		
	$t_f \leq 100$ mm	y–y	*b*
		z–z	*c*
	$t_f > 100$ mm	y–y	*d*
		z–z	*d*

equivalent to effective length, L_E, in BS 5950. The guidance provided in the prestandard yielded values of buckling length which were identical to BS 5950 effective lengths, and therefore it would seem reasonable to use either the guidance in Annex E of the prestandard or *Table 22* of BS 5950 (*Table 4.15*) to determine L_{cr}.

9.12.2 MEMBERS SUBJECT TO COMBINED AXIAL FORCE AND BENDING

The design approach for members subject to combined axial (compression) force and bending recommended in EC 3 is based on the equivalent moment factor method, which necessitates that the following ultimate limit states are checked:

(1) resistance of cross-sections to the combined effects
(2) buckling resistance of member to the combined effects.

9.12.2.1 Resistance of cross-sections – bending and axial force (Cl. 6.2.9, EC 3)

Classes 1 and 2 cross-sections. For class 1 and 2 cross-sections subject to an axial force and **uniaxial bending** the criterion to be satisfied in the absence of shear force is

$$\frac{M_{Ed}}{M_{N,Rd}} \le 1 \qquad (9.58)$$

where $M_{N,Rd}$ is the reduced design plastic resistance moment allowing for the axial force, N_{Ed}. For bending about the y–y axis no reduction is necessary provided that the axial force does not exceed half the plastic tension resistance of the web (i.e. $\frac{0.5h_w t_w f_y}{\gamma_{M0}}$), or a quarter of the plastic tension resistance of the whole cross-section (i.e. $0.25N_{pl,Rd}$), whichever is the smaller.

For larger axial loads the following approximations can be used for standard rolled I and H sections

$$M_{N,y,Rd} = M_{pl,y,Rd}\frac{(1-n)}{(1-0.5a)} \le M_{pl,y,Rd} \qquad (9.59)$$

For $n \le a$: $\quad M_{N,z,Rd} = M_{pl,z,Rd} \qquad (9.60)$

For $n > a$: $\quad M_{N,z,Rd} = M_{pl,z,Rd}\left[1-\left(\frac{n-a}{1-a}\right)^2\right] \qquad (9.61)$

where
$n \;= N_{Ed}/N_{pl,Rd}$
$a \;= (A - 2bt_f)/A \le 0.5$

For **bi-axial bending**, the following approximate criterion can be used:

$$\left[\frac{M_{y,Ed}}{M_{N,y,Rd}}\right]^{\alpha} + \left[\frac{M_{z,Ed}}{M_{N,z,Rd}}\right]^{\beta} \le 1 \qquad (9.62)$$

where for I and H sections $\alpha = 2$ and $\beta = 5n$ but $\beta \ge 1$.

As a further conservative approximation for class 1, 2 and 3 cross-sections the following may be used (clause 6.2.1(7)):

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{Rd}} + \frac{M_{y,Ed}}{M_{y,Rd}} + \frac{M_{z,Ed}}{M_{z,Rd}} \le 1 \qquad (9.63)$$

where
$N_{Rd} \;= Af_y/\gamma_{M0}$
$M_{y,Rd} \;= W_y f_y/\gamma_{M0}$
$M_{z,Rd} \;= W_z f_y/\gamma_{M0}$

Class 3 cross-sections. In the absence of a shear force, class 3 cross-sections will be satisfactory if the maximum longitudinal stress does not exceed the design yield strength, i.e.

$$\sigma_{x,Ed} \le \frac{f_y}{\gamma_{M0}}$$

For cross-sections without fastener holes, this becomes (clauses 6.2.4 and 6.2.5)

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{Af_y/\gamma_{M0}} + \frac{M_{y,Ed}}{W_{el,y}f_y/\gamma_{M0}} + \frac{M_{z,Ed}}{W_{el,z}f_y/\gamma_{M0}} \le 1 \qquad (9.64)$$

Class 4 cross-sections. For class 4 cross-sections the above approach should also be used, but calculated using effective, rather than actual, widths of compression elements (Cl. 6.2.9.3(2)).

9.12.2.2 Buckling resistance of members – combined bending and axial compression (Cl. 6.3.3, EC 3)

Again this is presented in a rather cumbersome manner in EC 3. We will confine our remarks to class 1 and 2 members. Members which are subjected to combined bending and axial load should satisfy the following

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_y N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} + k_{yy}\frac{M_{y,Ed}}{\chi_{LT}M_{y,Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} + k_{yz}\frac{M_{z,Ed}}{M_{z,Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} \le 1 \qquad (9.65)$$

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_z N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} + k_{zy}\frac{M_{y,Ed}}{\chi_{LT}M_{y,Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} + k_{zz}\frac{M_{z,Ed}}{M_{z,Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} \le 1 \qquad (9.66)$$

where

N_{Ed}, M_{yEd} and $M_{\mathrm{z,Ed}}$	are respectively the design values of the compression force and the maximum moments about the y–y and z–z axis along the member
χ_{y} and χ_{z}	are the reduction factors due to flexural buckling as discussed in 9.12.1.2
χ_{LT}	is the reduction factor due to lateral torsional buckling as discussed in 9.11.2.2
k_{yy}, k_{yz}, k_{zy} and k_{zz}	are the interaction factors (see below)
N_{Rk}	$= Af_{\mathrm{y}}$ (for class 1 and 2 sections)
$M_{\mathrm{y,Rk}}$, $M_{\mathrm{z,Rk}}$	are respectively, $W_{\mathrm{pl,y}}f_{\mathrm{y}}$, $W_{\mathrm{pl,z}}f_{\mathrm{y}}$ (for class 1 and 2 sections)

Interaction factors. Two alternative methods for calculating values of the interaction factors used in equations 9.65 and 9.66 are presented in EC 3. Both methods are based on second-order in-plane elastic stability theory and have been validated using the same set of results of numerical simulations from finite element analysis and laboratory data. However, the emphasis in Method 1 appears to be on transparency of structural behaviour and precision whereas in the case of Method 2 some allowance for practical convenience has also been made. Consequently, only the formulation for Method 2, contained within Annex B, is presented here as it is somewhat simpler and therefore more amenable to hand calculations. The expressions relevant to the design of classes 1 and 2 rolled sections, susceptible to torsional deformation, are as follows:

$$k_{\mathrm{yy}} = C_{\mathrm{my}}\left(1 + [\bar{\lambda}_{\mathrm{y}} - 0.2]\frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{\chi_{\mathrm{y}}N_{\mathrm{Rk}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}}\right) \le C_{\mathrm{my}}\left(1 + 0.8\frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{\chi_{\mathrm{y}}N_{\mathrm{Rk}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}}\right) \tag{9.67}$$

$$k_{\mathrm{yz}} = 0.6k_{\mathrm{zz}} \tag{9.68}$$

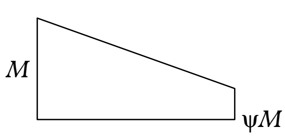
$$k_{\mathrm{zy}} = 1 - \frac{0.1\bar{\lambda}_{\mathrm{z}}}{C_{\mathrm{mLT}} - 0.25} \times \frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{\chi_{\mathrm{z}}N_{\mathrm{Rk}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}} \ge 1 - \frac{0.1}{C_{\mathrm{mLT}} - 0.25} \times \frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{\chi_{\mathrm{z}}N_{\mathrm{Rk}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}} \tag{9.69}$$

$$k_{\mathrm{zz}} = C_{\mathrm{mz}}\left(1 + [2\bar{\lambda}_{\mathrm{z}} - 0.6]\frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{\chi_{\mathrm{z}}N_{\mathrm{Rk}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}}\right) \le C_{\mathrm{mz}}\left(1 + 1.4\frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{\chi_{\mathrm{z}}N_{\mathrm{Rk}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}}\right) \tag{9.70}$$

where

C_{my}, C_{mz} and $C_{\mathrm{m,LT}}$ are the equivalent uniform moment factors determined from *Table 9.13* and account for the shape of the bending moment diagram between the relevant points of restraint.

Table 9.13 Equivalent uniform moment factors C_{m} for braced columns with linear applied moments between restraints (Table B3, EC 3)

Moment diagram	*Range*	*C_{my}, C_{mz} and C_{mLT}*
	$-1 \le \psi \le 1$	$0.6 + 0.4\psi \ge 0.4$

C_{my}, C_{mz} and C_{mLT} should be obtained according to the bending moment diagram between the relevant braced points as follows:

Moment factor	*bending axis*	*points braced in direction*
C_{my}	y–y	z–z
C_{mz}	z–z	y–y
C_{mLT}	y–y	y–y

The complexity of the above expressions largely arises from the fact that they model beam-column behaviour more closely than the models presented in BS 5950 and indeed ENV EC 3 with regard to:

1. torsional effects
2. buckling effects
3. instability effects.

9.12.3 COLUMNS IN SIMPLE CONSTRUCTION

A simplified conservative approach to the design of columns in simple construction has been developed by the Steel Construction Institute (SN 048b) which avoids the calculation of the interaction factors discussed above. It is suitable for classes 1–3, hot rolled UB and UC sections and involves checking the following expression is satisfied

$$\frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{N_{\mathrm{b,z,Rd}}}+\frac{M_{\mathrm{y,Ed}}}{M_{\mathrm{b,Rd}}}+1.5\frac{M_{\mathrm{z,Ed}}}{M_{\mathrm{z,Rd}}}\leq 1 \qquad (9.71)$$

where

$M_{\mathrm{b,Rd}} = \chi_{\mathrm{LT}} W_y f_y/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}$ (from clause 6.3.2.1, EC 3)

$M_{\mathrm{z,Rd}} = W_{\mathrm{pl,z}} f_y/\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}$

$N_{\mathrm{b,z,Rd}} = \dfrac{\chi_z A f_y}{\gamma_{\mathrm{M1}}}$

in which

χ_z is determined using equations (9.52)–(9.57) and *Tables 9.11* and *9.12*.

As no guidance is provided in EC 3 to evaluate the design moments acting on columns in simple construction, i.e. $M_{\mathrm{y,Ed}}$ and $M_{\mathrm{z,Ed}}$, it is recommended that the rules given in clause 4.7.7 of BS 5950 concerning values of eccentricities to the column face of beam reactions are used (section 4.9.4).

9.12.4 DESIGN OF COLUMN BASE PLATES (L.1, EC 3)

The following is based on the advice given in Annex L of the ENV version of EC 3.

Generally, column base plates should be checked to ensure

(1) the bearing pressure does not exceed the design bearing strength of the foundations
(2) the bending moment in the compression or tension region of the base plate does not exceed the resistance moment.

9.12.4.1 Bearing pressure and strength

The aim of design is to ensure that the bearing pressure does not exceed the bearing strength of the concrete, f_j, i.e.

$$\text{bearing pressure} = \frac{N_{\mathrm{Ed}}}{A_{\mathrm{eff}}} \leq f_j \qquad (9.72)$$

where

N_{Ed} is the design axial force on column
A_{eff} is the area in compression under the base plate.

The bearing strength of concrete foundations can be determined using

$$f_j = \beta_j k_j f_{\mathrm{cd}} \qquad (9.73)$$

where

f_{cd} is the design value of the concrete cylinder compressive strength of the foundation determined in conformity with Eurocode 2 = $\alpha_{\mathrm{cc}} f_{\mathrm{ck}}/\gamma_{\mathrm{C}}$
β_j is the joint (concrete) coefficient which may generally be taken as 2/3
k_j is the concentration factor which may generally be taken as 1.0.

Figure 9.7 shows the effective bearing areas under axially loaded column base plates. The additional bearing width x is given by

$$x = t\left[\frac{f_y}{3 f_j \gamma_{\mathrm{M0}}}\right]^{1/2} \qquad (9.74)$$

where

t is the thickness of the base plate
f_y is the yield strength of base plate material
f_j is the bearing strength of the foundations.

9.12.4.2 Resistant moment

To prevent bending failure, the bending moment in the baseplate, m_{sd}, must not exceed the resistance moment, m_{Rd}:

$$m_{\mathrm{sd}} < m_{\mathrm{Rd}} \qquad (9.75)$$

The bending moment in the base plate is given by

$$m_{\mathrm{sd}} = (x^2/2) N_{\mathrm{Sd}}/A_{\mathrm{eff}} \qquad (9.76)$$

The resistance moment is given by

$$m_{\mathrm{Rd}} = \frac{t^2 f_y}{6\gamma_{\mathrm{M0}}} \qquad (9.77)$$

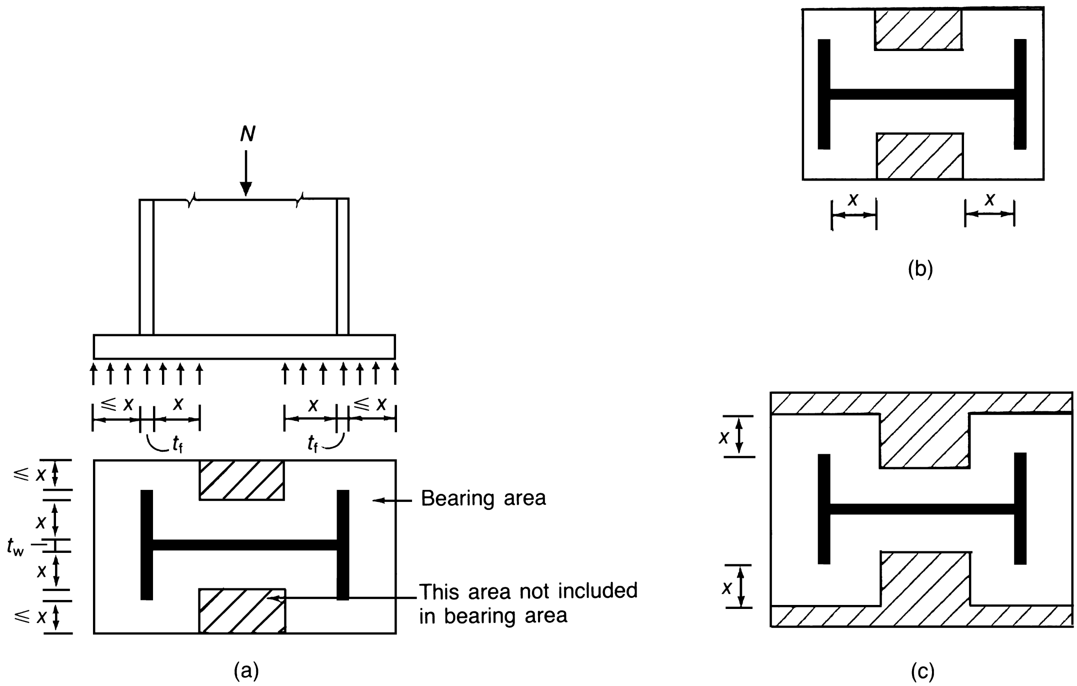
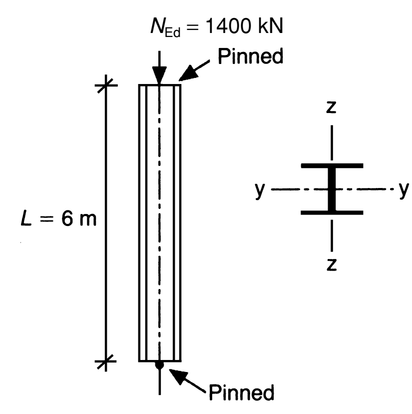


Fig. 9.7 Area in compression under base plate: (a) general case; (b) short projection; (c) large projetion (Fig. L. 1, ENV EC3).

Example 9.7 Analysis of a column resisting an axial load (EC 3)

Check the suitability of the 203 × 203 × 60 kg m^{-1} UC section in S275 steel to resist a design axial compression force of 1400 kN. Assume the column is pinned at both ends and that its height is 6m.



SECTION PROPERTIES

From steel tables (Appendix B)
Area of section, $A = 7580$ mm^2
Thickness of flange, $t_f = 14.2$ mm
Radius of gyration about the major axis (y–y), $i_y = 89.6$mm
Radius of gyration about the minor axis (z–z), $i_z = 51.9$mm

Example 9.7 *continued*

STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Flange thickness = 14.2 mm, steel grade S275
Hence from *Table 9.4*, $f_y = 275 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$

SECTION CLASSIFICATION

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{0.5} = (235/275)^{0.5} = 0.92$$

$$\frac{c}{t_f} = \frac{87.75}{14.2} = 6.18 < 9\varepsilon = 9 \times 0.92 = 8.28$$

(where $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2 = (205.2 - 9.3 - 2 \times 10.2)/2 = 175.5/2 = 87.75$ mm)
Also

$$\frac{c^*}{t_w} = \frac{d}{t} = \frac{160.9}{9.3} = 17.3 < 33\varepsilon = 33 \times 0.92 = 30.36$$

Hence from *Table 9.5*, section belongs to class 1.

RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTION – COMPRESSION

Design resistance for uniform compression, $N_{c,Rd}$, for class 1 section is given by

$$N_{c,Rd} = \frac{Af_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{7580 \times 275}{1.00} = 2084.5 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 2084.5 \text{ kN} > N_{Ed} = 1400 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

BUCKLING RESISTANCE OF MEMBER

Effective length of column about both axes is given by

$$L_{cr} = L_{cr\ y} = L_{cr\ z} = 1.0L = 1.0 \times 6000 = 6000 \text{ mm}$$

The column will buckle about the weak (z–z) axis. Slenderness value to determine relative slenderness, λ_1, is given by

$$\lambda_1 = \pi\sqrt{\frac{E}{f_y}} = \pi\sqrt{\frac{210 \times 10^3}{275}} = 86.8$$

Slenderness ratio about z–z axis (λ_z) is

$$\bar{\lambda}_z = \sqrt{\frac{Af_y}{N_{cr}}} = \frac{L_{cr}}{i_z} \times \frac{1}{\lambda_1} = \frac{6000}{51.9} \times \frac{1}{86.8} = 1.33$$

$\frac{h}{b} = \frac{209.6}{205.2} = 1.02 < 1.2$ and $t_f = 14.2$ mm < 100 mm. Hence, from *Table 9.12*, for buckling about z–z axis buckling curve c is appropriate and from *Table 9.11*, $\alpha = 0.49$

$$\Phi = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.49 \times (1.33 - 0.2) + 1.33^2] = 1.66$$

$$\chi = \frac{1}{\Phi + \sqrt{\Phi^2 - \bar{\lambda}^2}} = \frac{1}{1.66 + \sqrt{1.66^2 - 1.33^2}} = 0.377$$

Hence design buckling resistance, $N_{b,Rd}$, is given by

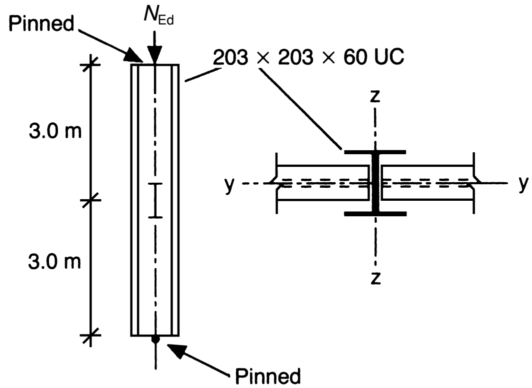
$$N_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi A f_y}{\gamma_{M1}}$$

$$= \frac{0.377 \times 7580 \times 275}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 785.8 \text{ kN} < 1400 \text{ kN}$$

The section is therefore unsuitable to resist the design force.

Example 9.8 Analysis of a column with a tie-beam at mid-height (EC 3)

Recalculate the axial compression resistance of the column in Example 9.7 if a tie-beam is introduced at mid-height such that in-plane buckling about the z–z axis is prevented (see below).



RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTION – COMPRESSION

Design resistance of section for uniform compression, $N_{c,Rd}$ = 2084.5 kN, as above.

BUCKLING RESISTANCE OF MEMBER

Buckling about y–y axis

Effective length of column about y-y axis is given by

$$L_{eff\ y} = 1.0L = 1.0 \times 6000 = 6000 \text{ mm}$$

Slenderness value to determine relative slenderness, λ_1, is given by

$$\lambda_1 = \pi\sqrt{\frac{E}{f_y}} = \pi\sqrt{\frac{210 \times 10^3}{275}} = 86.8$$

Slenderness ratio about y–y axis (λ_y) is

$$\bar{\lambda}_y = \sqrt{\frac{Af_y}{N_{cr}}} = \frac{L_{cr}}{i_y} \times \frac{1}{\lambda_1} = \frac{6000}{89.6} \times \frac{1}{86.8} = 0.77$$

$\frac{h}{b} = \frac{209.6}{205.2} = 1.02 < 1.2$ and t_f = 14.2 mm < 100 mm. Hence, from *Table 9.12*, buckling curve *b* is appropriate and from *Table 9.11*, $\alpha = 0.34$

$$\Phi = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2]$$

$$= 0.5[1 + 0.34 \times (0.77 - 0.2) + 0.77^2] = 0.893$$

$$\chi_y = \frac{1}{\Phi + \sqrt{\Phi^2 - \bar{\lambda}^2}} = \frac{1}{0.893 + \sqrt{0.893^2 - 0.77^2}} = 0.743$$

Hence design buckling resistance about the y–y axis is given by

$$N_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi A f_y}{\gamma_{M1}}$$

$$= \frac{0.743 \times 7580 \times 275}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 1548.8 \text{ kN} > 1400 \text{ kN}$$

Buckling about z–z axis

Effective length of column about z–z axis, $L_{cr\ z}$, is equal to 3000 mm

Example 9.8 *continued*

Slenderness ratio about z–z axis (λ_z) is

$$\bar{\lambda}_z = \sqrt{\frac{Af_y}{N_{cr}}} = \frac{L_{cr\,z}}{i_y} \times \frac{1}{\lambda_1} = \frac{3000}{51.9} \times \frac{1}{86.8} = 0.666$$

From above $h/b = 1.02 < 1.2$ and $t_f = 14.2$ mm. Hence, from *Table 9.12*, buckling curve *c* is appropriate and, from *Table 9.11*, $\alpha = 0.49$

$$\Phi = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.49 \times (0.666 - 0.2) + 0.666^2] = 0.836$$

$$\chi_z = \frac{1}{\Phi + \sqrt{\Phi^2 - \bar{\lambda}^2}} = \frac{1}{0.836 + \sqrt{0.836^2 - 0.666^2}} = 0.745$$

$$N_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi A f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{0.745 \times 7580 \times 275}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 1553\,\text{kN} > 1400\,\text{kN}$$

Hence, compression resistance of column is 1548.8 kN > 1400 kN OK

Example 9.9 Analysis of a column resisting an axial load and moment (EC 3)

A 305 × 305 × 137 UC section extends through a height of 3.5 metres and is pinned at both ends. Check whether this member is suitable to support a design axial permanent load of 600 kN together with a major axis variable bending moment of 300 kNm applied at the top of the element. Assume S275 steel is to be used and that all effective length factors are unity.

DESIGN SUMMARY

Axial permanent action = 600 kN
Axial variable action = 0 kN
Permanent bending action = 0 kN
Variable bending action = 300 kNm
Grade S275 steel
Effective length factors for both axial and lateral torsional buckling are unity

ACTIONS

Factored axial load is

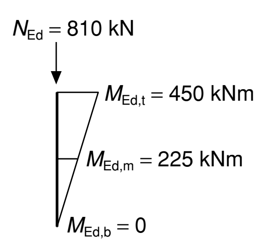
$$N_{Ed} = 600 \times 1.35 = 810 \text{ kN}$$

Factored bending moments at top, middle and bottom of column are

$$M_{Ed,t} = 300 \times 1.5 = 450 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{Ed,m} = 225 \text{ kNm}$$

$$M_{Ed,b} = 0 \text{ kNm}$$



Example 9.9 *continued*

STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

(from *Table 9.4*)
Flange thickness $t_f = 21.7$ mm, so $f_y = 265$ N mm^{-2}

SECTION CLASSFICATION

(From *Table 9.5*)

$$\varepsilon = (235/f_y)^{0.5} = (235/265)^{0.5} = 0.94$$

$$\frac{c}{t_f} = \frac{132.25}{21.7} = 6.09 < 9\varepsilon = 9 \times 0.94 = 8.46$$

(where $c = (b - t_w - 2r)/2 = (308.7 - 13.8 - 2 \times 15.2)/2 = 264.5/2 = 132.25$ mm)

Also

$$\frac{c*}{t_w} = \frac{d}{t} = \frac{246.6}{13.8} = 17.87 < 33\varepsilon = 33 \times 0.94 = 31$$

Hence from *Table 9.5*, section belongs to class 1.

RESISTANCE OF CROSS-SECTIONS: BENDING AND AXIAL FORCE

Since cross-section is class 1 check

$$M_{Ed} \leq M_{N,Rd}$$

$$0.25N_{pl,Rd} = 0.25 \times \frac{Af_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = 0.25 \times \frac{17500 \times 265}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 1159.4 \text{ kN} > N_{Ed} \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\frac{0.5h_w t_w f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{0.5 \times (320.5 - 2 \times 21.7) \times 13.8 \times 265}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 506.7 \text{ kN} < N_{Ed}$$

Hence, allowance needs to be made for the effect of axial load on the plastic moment of resistance moment about the y–y axis.

$$n = \frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{pl,Rd}} = \frac{N_{Ed}}{(Af_y/\gamma_{M0})} = \frac{810}{(17500 \times 265/1.00) \times 10^{-3}} = 0.175$$

$$a = \frac{(A - 2bt_f)}{A} = \frac{(17500 - 2 \times 308.7 \times 21.7)}{17500} = 0.234$$

$$M_{pl,y,Rd} = \frac{W_{pl,y}f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{2300 \times 10^3 \times 265}{1.00} \times 10^{-6} = 609.5 \text{ kNm}$$

Since $n < a$

$$M_{N,y,Rd} = M_{pl,y,Rd}\frac{(1-n)}{(1-0.5a)} = 609.5\frac{(1-0.175)}{(1-0.5 \times 0.234)} = 569.5 \text{ kNm} > M_{Ed} = 450 \text{ kNm} \quad \text{OK}$$

RESISTANCE OF MEMBER: COMBINED BENDING AND AXIAL COMPRESSION

For buckling about y–y
Effective length of column about y–y, $L_{cr\,y}$, is given by

$$L_{cr\,y} = 1.0L = 1.0 \times 3500 = 3500 \text{ mm}$$

Example 9.9 *continued*

$$N_{cr,y} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_y}{L^2_{cr,y}} = \frac{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 32800 \times 10^4}{3500^2} = 55495376 \text{ N}$$

$$\bar{\lambda}_y = \sqrt{\frac{Af_y}{N_{cr,y}}} = \sqrt{\frac{175 \times 10^2 \times 265}{55495376}} = 0.29$$

$\frac{h}{b} = \frac{320.5}{308.7} = 1.04 < 1.2$ and $t_f = 21.7$ mm. Hence from *Table 9.12*, for buckling about y–y axis buckling curve *b* is appropriate and from *Table 9.11*, $\alpha = 0.34$.

$$\Phi_y = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda}_y - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2_y] = 0.5[1 + 0.34 \times (0.29 - 0.2) + 0.29^2] = 0.56$$

$$\chi_y = \frac{1}{\Phi_y + \sqrt{\Phi^2_y - \bar{\lambda}^2}} = \frac{1}{0.56 + \sqrt{0.56^2 - 0.29^2}} = 0.96 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

For buckling about the minor axis, z–z

Effective length of column about z–z, $L_{cr,z}$, is given by

$$L_{cr\ z} = 1.0L = 1.0 \times 3500 = 3500 \text{ mm}$$

$$N_{cr,z} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_z}{L^2_{cr,z}} = \frac{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 10700 \times 10^4}{3500^2} = 18103674 \text{ N}$$

$$\bar{\lambda}_z = \sqrt{\frac{Af_y}{N_{cr,z}}} = \sqrt{\frac{175 \times 10^2 \times 265}{18103674}} = 0.51$$

$\frac{h}{b} = \frac{320.5}{308.7} = 1.04 < 1.2$ and $t_f = 21.7$ mm. From *Table 9.12*, for buckling about z–z axis use buckling buckling curve c. Hence, from *Table 9.11*, $\alpha = 0.49$.

$$\Phi_z = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda}_z - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2_z] = 0.5[1 + 0.49 \times (0.51 - 0.2) + 0.51^2] = 0.71$$

$$\chi_z = \frac{1}{\Phi_z + \sqrt{\Phi^2_z - \bar{\lambda}^2_z}} = \frac{1}{0.71 + \sqrt{0.71^2 - 0.51^2}} = 0.83 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

MEMBER BUCKLING RESISTANCE IN BENDING

$M_{y,Rk}$

$$M_{y,Rk} = W_y f_y = 2300 \times 10^3 \times 265 = 609.5 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 609.5 \text{ kNm}$$

where $W_y = W_{pl,y}$ (= 2300 cm^3) for class 1 cross-sections

χ_{LT}

$$M_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_z}{L^2_{cr}}\left(\frac{I_w}{I_z} + \frac{L^2_{cr} GI_t}{\pi^2 EI_z}\right)^{0.5}$$

$$= \frac{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 10700 \times 10^4}{(3500)^2}\left(\frac{2.38 \times 10^{12}}{10700 \times 10^4} + \frac{3500^2 \times 81000 \times 2.5 \times 10^6}{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 10700 \times 10^4}\right)^{0.5} = 3.31 \times 10^9 \text{ Nmm}$$

$$\bar{\lambda}_{LT} = \sqrt{\frac{W_y f_y}{M_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{609.5 \times 10^6}{3.31 \times 10^9}} = 0.43$$

Example 9.9 *continued*

From above, $h/b = 1.04 < 2$ and $t_f = 21.7$ mm. Hence, from *Table 9.8*, buckling curve *a* is appropriate $\Rightarrow \alpha_{LT} = 0.21$ (*Table 9.7*)

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2]$$
$$= 0.5[1 + 0.21(0.43 - 0.2) + 0.43^2] = 0.62$$
$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}}$$
$$= \frac{1}{0.62 + \sqrt{0.62^2 - 0.43^2}} = 0.94 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

***M*$_{z,Rk}$**

$$M_{z,Rk} = W_z f_y = W_{pl,z} f_y = 1050 \times 10^3 \times 265 = 278.25 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm} = 278.25 \text{ kNm}$$

Equivalent uniform moment factor, C_{mi} (*Table 9.13*)

$$C_{mi} = 0.6 + 0.4\psi \geq 0.4$$
$$\psi = 0 \text{ (for bending about y–y)}$$
$$\Rightarrow C_{my} = 0.6$$

Considering bending about y–y and out of plane supports

$$\psi = 0 \text{ (for bending about y–y)}$$
$$\Rightarrow C_{mLT} = 0.6$$

***k*$_{yy}$, *k*$_{zy}$**

For class 1 cross-sections

$$k_{yy} = C_{my}\left(1 + [\bar{\lambda}_y - 0.2]\frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_y N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}}\right) \leq C_{my}\left(1 + 0.8\frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_y N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}}\right)$$

$$= 0.6\left(1 + [0.29 - 0.2]\frac{810 \times 10^3}{0.96 \times 4637.5 \times 10^3/1.00}\right) = 0.61$$

$$\leq C_{my}\left(1 + 0.8\frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_y N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}}\right) = 0.6\left(1 + 0.8\frac{810 \times 10^3}{0.96 \times 4637.5 \times 10^3/1.00}\right) = 0.69$$

Hence $k_{yy} = 0.61$

$$k_{zy} = 1 - \frac{0.1\bar{\lambda}_z}{C_{mLT} - 0.25} \times \frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_z N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} \geq 1 - \frac{0.1}{C_{mLT} - 0.25} \times \frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_z N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}}$$

$$= 1 - \frac{0.1 \times 0.51}{0.6 - 0.25} \times \frac{810 \times 10^3}{0.83 \times 4637.5 \times 10^3/1.00} = 0.97$$

$$\geq 1 - \frac{0.1}{C_{mLT} - 0.25} \times \frac{N_{Ed}}{\chi_z N_{Rk}/\gamma_{M1}} = 1 - \frac{0.1}{0.6 - 0.25} \times \frac{810 \times 10^3}{0.84 \times 4637.5 \times 10^3/1.00} = 0.94$$

Hence $k_{zy} = 0.97$

Example 9.9 *continued*

Interaction equations

$$\frac{N_{\text{Ed}}}{\chi_y N_{\text{Rk}}/\gamma_{\text{M1}}} + k_{yy}\frac{M_{y,\text{Ed}}}{\chi_{\text{LT}} M_{y,\text{Rk}}/\gamma_{\text{M1}}} + k_{yz}\frac{M_{z,\text{Rd}}}{M_{z,\text{Rk}}/\gamma_{\text{M1}}}$$

$$= \frac{810 \times 10^3}{0.96 \times 4637.5 \times 10^3/1.00} + 0.61\frac{450 \times 10^6}{0.94 \times 609.5 \times 10^6/1.00} + 0$$

$$= 0.18 + 0.48 = 0.66 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$\frac{N_{\text{Ed}}}{\chi_z N_{\text{Rk}}/\gamma_{\text{M1}}} + k_{zy}\frac{M_{y,\text{Ed}}}{\chi_{\text{LT}} M_{y,\text{Rk}}/\gamma_{\text{M1}}} + k_{zz}\frac{M_{z,\text{Rd}}}{M_{z,\text{Rk}}/\gamma_{\text{M1}}}$$

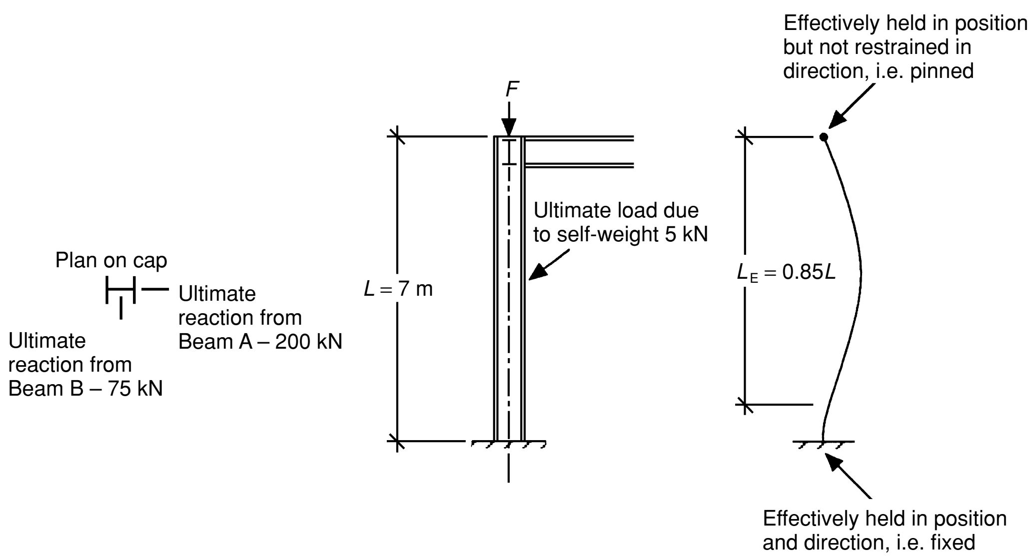
$$= \frac{810 \times 10^3}{0.83 \times 4637.5 \times 10^3/1.00} + 0.97\frac{450 \times 10^6}{0.94 \times 609.5 \times 10^6/1.00} + 0$$

$$= 0.21 + 0.76 = 0.97 < 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence the selected section is suitable.

Example 9.10 Analysis of a steel column in 'simple' construction (EC 3)

Check the column in Example 4.12 using the simplified approach discussed in 9.12.3.



SECTION SELECTION

As before, try a 203 × 203 × 52 UC.

DESIGN LOADINGS AND MOMENTS

Ultimate reaction from beam A, R_A = 200 kN; ultimate reaction from beam B, R_B = 75 kN; assume self-weight of column = 5 kN. Ultimate axial load, N_{Ed}, is

$$N_{\text{Ed}} = R_A + R_B + \text{self-weight of column}$$
$$= 200 + 75 + 5 = 280 \text{ kN}$$

Example 9.10 *continued*

Load eccentricity for beam A,

$$e_y = h/2 + 100 = 206.2/2 + 100 = 203.1 \text{ mm}$$

Load eccentricity for beam B,

$$e_z = t_w/2 + 100 = 8/2 + 100 = 104 \text{ mm}$$

Moment due to beam A,

$$M_y = R_A e_y = 200 \times 10^3 \times 203.1 = 40.62 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

Moment due to beam B,

$$M_z = R_B e_z = 75 \times 10^3 \times 104 = 7.8 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

AXIAL BUCKLING RESISTANCE

By inspection, buckling about z–z will determine the compression strength of the column.

$$t_f = 12.5 \text{ mm} \Rightarrow f_y = 275 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 9.4})$$

$$\varepsilon = \sqrt{\frac{235}{f_y}} = \sqrt{\frac{235}{275}} = 0.924$$

$$\lambda_1 = \pi\sqrt{\frac{E}{f_y}} = 93.9\varepsilon = 93.9 \times 0.924 = 86.8$$

$$L_{cr,z} = 0.85L = 0.85 \times 7000 = 5950 \text{ mm} \quad (\textit{Table 4.15})$$

$$\lambda_z = \frac{L_{cr,z}}{i_z} = \frac{5950}{51.6} = 115.3$$

$$\bar{\lambda}_z = \frac{\lambda_z}{\lambda_1} = \frac{115.3}{86.8} = 1.33$$

$$\frac{h}{b} = \frac{206.2}{203.9} = 1.01 < 1.2$$

Hence from *Table 9.12* for buckling about z–z use buckling curve *c* and from *Table 9.11* $\alpha = 0.49$.

$$\Phi = 0.5[1 + \alpha(\bar{\lambda} - 0.2) + \bar{\lambda}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.49(1.33 - 0.2) + 1.33^2] = 1.66$$

$$\chi_z = \frac{1}{\Phi + \sqrt{\Phi^2 - \bar{\lambda}^2}} = \frac{1}{1.66 + \sqrt{1.66^2 - 1.33^2}} = 0.38 \le 1.0 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$N_{b,z,Rd} = \frac{\chi_z A f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{0.38 \times 66.4 \times 10^2 \times 275}{1.0} \times 10^{-3} = 693.9 \text{ kN}$$

LATERAL TORSIONAL BUCKLING RESISTANCE $M_{b,Rd}$

Length of column between points which are laterally restrained, $L_{cr} = 5950$ mm.

$$M_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI_z}{L_{cr}^2}\left(\frac{I_w}{I_z} + \frac{L_{cr}^2 GI_t}{\pi^2 EI_z}\right)^{0.5}$$

$$= \frac{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 1770 \times 10^4}{5950^2}\left(\frac{166 \times 10^9}{1770 \times 10^4} + \frac{5950^2 \times 81000 \times 320 \times 10^3}{\pi^2 \times 210 \times 10^3 \times 1770 \times 10^4}\right)^{0.5} = 192 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm}$$

For class 1 sections $W_y = W_{pl,y} = 568 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3$

$$\bar{\lambda}_{LT} = \sqrt{\frac{W_y f_y}{M_{cr}}} = \sqrt{\frac{568 \times 10^3 \times 275}{192 \times 10^7}} = 0.90$$

Example 9.10 *continued*

From above $h/b = 1.01 < 2$. From *Table 9.9* use buckling curve $b \Rightarrow \alpha_{LT} = 0.34$ (*Table 9.7*)

$$\Phi_{LT} = 0.5[1 + \alpha_{LT}(\bar{\lambda}_{LT} - \bar{\lambda}_{LT,0}) + \beta\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2] = 0.5[1 + 0.34(0.9 - 0.4) + 0.75 \times 0.9^2] = 0.89$$

$$\chi_{LT} = \frac{1}{\Phi_{LT} + \sqrt{\Phi_{LT}^2 - \beta\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2}} = \frac{1}{0.89 + \sqrt{0.89^2 - 0.75 \times 09^2}} = 0.76 < 1.0 < \frac{1}{\bar{\lambda}_{LT}^2} = \frac{1}{0.9^2} = 1.2 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$M_{b,Rd} = \frac{\chi_{LT} W_y f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{0.76 \times 568 \times 10^3 \times 275}{1.0} \times 10^{-6} = 118.7 \text{ kNm}$$

BENDING RESISTANCE $M_{z,Rd}$

$$M_{z,Rd} = \frac{W_{pl,z} f_y}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{174 \times 10^3 \times 275}{1.0} \times 10^{-6} = 47.85 \text{ kNm}$$

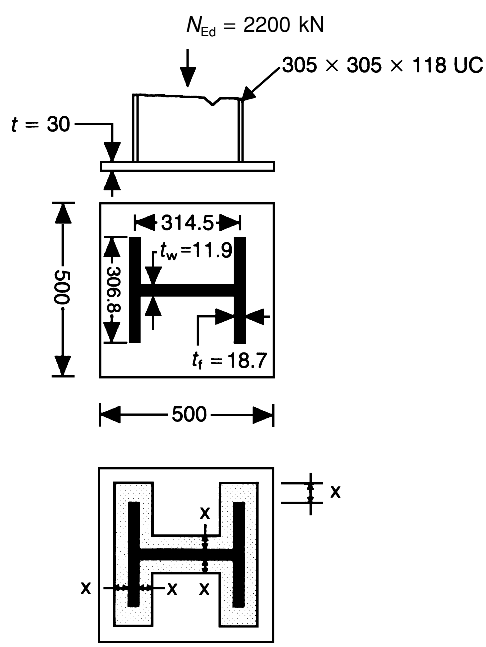
Interaction equation

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{b,z,Rd}} + \frac{M_{y,Ed}}{M_{b,Rd}} + 1.5\frac{M_{z,Ed}}{M_{z,Rd}} \le 1$$

$$\frac{280}{693.9} + \frac{40.4}{118.7} + 1.5 \times \frac{7.8}{47.85} = 0.40 + 0.34 + 0.245 = 0.985 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 9.11 Analysis of a column baseplate (EC 3)

Check that the column baseplate shown below is suitable to resist an axial design load, N_{Ed}, of 2200 kN. Assume that the foundations are of concrete of compressive cylinder strength, f_{ck}, of 30 N mm^{-2} and that the baseplate is made of S275 steel.



EFFECTIVE AREA

Since the plate is between 16–40 mm thick and is made of S275 steel, $f_y = 265$ Nmm^{-2} (*Table 9.4*)
Additional bearing width, x, is

Example 9.11 *continued*

$$x = t\left[\frac{f_y}{3f_j\gamma_{M0}}\right]^{1/2} = 30\left[\frac{265}{3 \times 13.3 \times 1.0}\right]^{1/2} = 77 \text{ mm} < 0.5(500 - 314.5) = 92 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

where

$$f_j = \beta_j k_j f_{cd} = 2/3 \times 1.0 \times (1.00 \times 30/1.5) = 13.3 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A_{eff} &= (2x + h)(2x + b) - (b - t_w)(h - 2t_f - 2x) \\ &= (2 \times 77 + 314.5)(2 \times 77 + 306.8) - (306.8 - 11.9)(314.5 - 2 \times 18.7 - 2 \times 77) \\ &= 215885 - 36302 = 179583 \text{ mm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

AXIAL LOAD CAPACITY

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Axial load capacity of baseplate} &= A_{eff}f_j \\ &= 179583 \times 13.3 \times 10^{-3} \\ &= 2388 \text{ kN} > N_{Ed} = 2200 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK} \end{aligned}$$

BENDING IN BASEPLATE

Bending moment per unit length in baseplate, m_{Ed}, is

$$m_{Ed} = (x^2/2)N_{Ed}/A_{eff} = (77^2/2)2200/179583 = 36.3 \text{ kNmm mm}^{-1}$$

Moment of resistance, m_{Rd} is

$$m_{Rd} = \frac{t^2 f_y}{6\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{30^3 \times 265}{6 \times 1.0} = 39750 \text{ N mm mm}^{-1} = 39.75 \text{ kN mm mm}^{-1} > m_{Ed} \quad \text{OK}$$

9.13 Connections

Connection design is covered in Part 1.8 of Eurocode 3 (EC 3–8). The guidance provided is more comprehensive than BS 5950, but the results seem broadly similar and the principles are essentially the same. One exception may be the design of friction grip fasteners, where the slip factor for untreated surfaces may have to be taken as 0.2 rather than 0.45 in BS 5950. In general the results for bolting and welding seem slightly more conservative than BS 5950. This is largely because of the larger partial safety factors for connections $\gamma_M = 1.25$.

To help comparison of the design methods in BS 5950 and EC 3 with regard to connections, the material in this section is presented under the following headings:

1. material properties
2. clearances in holes for fasteners
3. positioning of holes for bolts
4. bolted connections
5. high strength bolts in slip-resistant connections
6. welded connections
7. design of connections.

9.13.1 MATERIAL PROPERTIES

9.13.1.1 Nominal bolt strengths (Cl. 3.3, EC 3–8)

The recommended bolt classes and associated nominal values of the yield strength f_{yb} and the ultimate tensile strength f_{ub} (to be adopted as characteristic values in design calculations) are shown in *Table 9.14*.

Cl. 3.1.2 of EC 3–8 recommends that only bolt classes 8.8 and 10.9 conforming to the requirements given in EN 14399: Group 4: *High strength structural bolting for preloading*, with controlled tightening in accordance with EN1090–2: Group 7: *Execution of steel structures* may be used as preloaded bolts.

Table 9.14 Nominal values of f_{yb} and f_{ub} for bolts (Table 3.1, EC 3–8)

Bolt classes	*4.6*	*4.8*	*5.6*	*5.8*	*6.8*	*8.8*	*10.9*
f_{yb} (N mm^{-2})	240	320	300	400	480	640	900
f_{ub} (N mm^{-2})	400	400	500	500	600	800	1000

9.13.1.2 Filler metals

Clause 4.2 (2) of EC 3–8 recommends that the specified yield strength, ultimate tensile strength, etc., of the filler metals used in welded connections should be equal to or greater than the corresponding values specified for the steel being welded.

9.13.1.3 Partial safety factor (Cl. 2.2, EC 3–8)

Partial safety factors, γ_M, are given in *Table 2.1* of EC 3–8. Those relevant to this discussion are reproduced below

Resistance of bolts and welds $\gamma_{M2} = 1.25$
Slip resistance at ULS (Cat C) $\gamma_{M3} = 1.25$
Slip resistance at SLS (Cat B) $\gamma_{M3,ser} = 1.25$

Note that the above values appear in the normative version of EC 3–8 and the accompanying National Annex may specify other values.

9.13.2 CLEARANCES IN HOLES FOR FASTENERS (SEE REFERENCE STANDARDS: GROUP 7)

The nominal clearance in standard holes for bolted connections should be as follows:

(i) 1 mm for M12 and M14 bolts
(ii) 2 mm for M16 and M24 bolts
(iii) 3 mm for M27 and larger bolts.

The nominal clearance in oversize holes for slip-resistant connections should be:

(i) 3 mm for M12 bolts
(ii) 4 mm for M14 to M22 bolts
(iii) 6 mm for M24 bolts
(iv) 8 mm for M27 and larger bolts.

9.13.3 POSITIONING OF HOLES FOR BOLTS (CL. 3.5, EC 3–8)

9.13.3.1 Minimum end and edge distances

The end distance e_1 from the centre of a fastener hole to the adjacent end of any part, measured in the direction of load transfer (see *Fig. 9.8*), should be not less than $1.2d_o$, where d_o is the hole diameter.

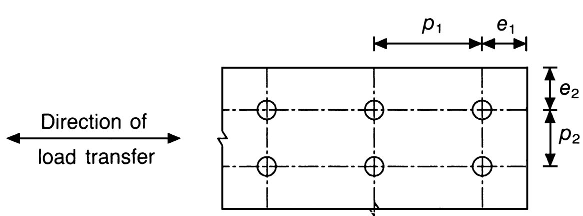


Fig. 9.8 *Spacing of fasteners (based on Table 3.3, EC 3–8).*

Similarly the edge distance e_2 from the centre of a fastener hole to the adjacent edge of any part, measured at right angles to the direction of load transfer (*Fig. 9.8*), should not be less than $1.2d_o$.

9.13.3.2 Maximum end and edge distances

Under normal conditions, the end and edge distance should not exceed $8t$ or 125 mm, whichever is the larger, where t is the thickness of the thinner outer connected part.

9.13.3.3 Minimum and maximum spacing between fasteners

The spacing p_1 between centres of fasteners in the direction of load transfer (*Fig. 9.8*), should be not less than $2.2d_o$ nor generally exceed the smaller of $14t$ and 200 mm.

The spacing p_2 between rows of fasteners, measured perpendicular to the direction of load transfer (*Fig. 9.8*), should not be less than $2.4d_o$ nor generally exceed the smaller of $14t$ and 200 mm.

9.13.4 BOLTED CONNECTIONS (CL. 3.6, EC 3–8)

9.13.4.1 Design shear resistance per shear plane

If the shear plane passes through the threaded portion of the bolt, the design shear resistance per shear plane, $F_{v,Rd}$, is given by:

$$F_{v,Rd} = \alpha_v f_{ub} \frac{A_s}{\gamma_{M2}} \tag{9.78}$$

If the shear plane passes through the unthreaded portion of the bolt, the design shear resistance is given by:

$$F_{v,Rd} = 0.6 f_{ub} \frac{A}{\gamma_{M2}} \tag{9.79}$$

where
A is the gross cross-section of the bolt
A_s is the tensile stress area of the bolt (Table 4.22)
f_{ub} is the ultimate tensile strength of the bolt (*Table 9.14*)
α_v is a factor obtained from *Table 9.15*

Table 9.15 Values for α_v

Bolt classes	*4.6*	*4.8*	*5.6*	*5.8*	*6.8*	*8.8*	*10.9*
α_v	0.6	0.5	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.5

It should be noted that these values for design shear resistance apply only where the bolts are used in holes with nominal clearances specified in section 9.13.2.

9.13.4.2 Bearing resistance

The design bearing resistance, $F_{b,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{b,Rd} = k_1 \alpha_b f_u \frac{dt}{\gamma_{M2}} \tag{9.80}$$

where

$$k_1 = \min\left(2.8\frac{e_2}{d_o} - 1.7;\quad 2.5\right) \text{ for edge bolts} \tag{9.81}$$

$$k_1 = \min\left(1.4\frac{p_2}{d_o} - 1.7;\quad 2.5\right) \text{ for inner bolts} \tag{9.82}$$

$$\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{e_1}{3d_o};\quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_u};\quad 1.0\right) \text{ for end bolts} \tag{9.83}$$

$$\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{p_1}{3d_o} - \frac{1}{4};\quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_u};\quad 1.0\right) \text{ for inner bolts} \tag{9.84}$$

9.13.5 HIGH-STRENGTH BOLTS IN SLIP-RESISTANT CONNECTIONS (CL. 3.9, EC 3–8)

9.13.5.1 Slip resistance

The design slip resistance of a preloaded high-strength bolt (i.e. bolt classes 8.8 and 10.9), $F_{s,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{s,Rd} = \frac{k_s n \mu F_{p,C}}{\gamma_{M3}} \tag{9.85}$$

where

k_s = 1.0 where the holes in all the plies have standard nominal clearances as outlined in section 9.13.2 above

n is the number of friction interfaces

μ is the slip factor (see below)

γ_{M3} is the partial safety factor. For bolt holes in standard nominal clearance holes, γ_{M3} = 1.25 and 1.10 for the ultimate and serviceability limit states respectively

$F_{p,C}$ is the design preloading force. It is given by:

$$F_{p,C} = 0.7 f_{ub} A_s \tag{9.86}$$

9.13.5.2 Slip factor

The value of the slip factor μ is dependent on the class of surface treatment. According to *Table 3.7* of EC 3–8 the value of μ should be taken as follows

μ = 0.5 for class *A* surfaces
μ = 0.4 for class *B* surfaces
μ = 0.3 for class *C* surfaces
μ = 0.2 for class *D* surfaces

where

Class *A* are surfaces blasted with shot or grit, with any loose rust removed, no pitting; surfaces blasted with shot or grit, and spray-metallised with aluminium; surface blasted with shot or grit, and spray-metallised with a zinc-based coating certified to provide a slip factor of not less than 0.5.

Class *B* are surfaces blasted with shot or grit, and painted with an alkali-zinc silicate paint to produce a coating thickness of 50–80 μm.

Class *C* are surfaces cleaned by wire brushing or flame cleaning, with any loose rust removed;

Class *D* are surfaces not treated. (Table 3.7, EC 3–8)

9.13.6 WELDED CONNECTIONS (CL. 4.5.3.3, EC 3–8)

9.13.6.1 Design resistance of a fillet weld

EC 3–8 recommends two methods for the design of fillet welds namely the 'directional method' and the 'simplified method'. The latter is similar to that used in BS 5950 and is the only one discussed here. According to the simplified method the design resistance of a fillet weld will be adequate if at all points the design value of the weld force per unit length, $F_{w,Ed}$, is less than or equal to the design weld resistance per unit length, $F_{w,Rd}$ i.e.

$$F_{w,Ed} \leq F_{w,Rd} \tag{9.87}$$

The design weld resistance per unit length of a fillet weld is given by

$$F_{w,Rd} = f_{vw,d}\, a \tag{9.88}$$

where

a is the throat thickness of the weld and is taken as the height of the largest triangle which can be inscribed within the fusion faces and weld surface, measured perpendicular to the outer side of this triangle (*Fig. 9.9*). Note that a should not be less than 3mm.

$f_{vw,d}$ is the design shear strength of the weld and is given by:

$$f_{vw,d} = \frac{f_u/\sqrt{3}}{\beta_w \gamma_{M2}} \tag{9.89}$$

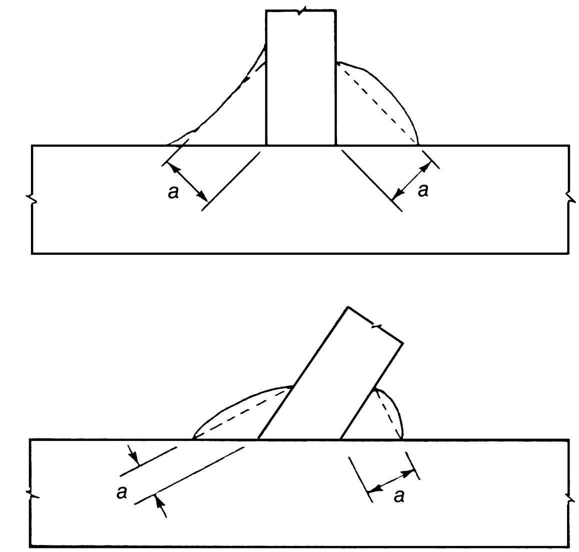


Fig. 9.9 *Throat thickness of a fillet weld.*

Table 9.16 Ultimate tensile strength and correlation factor β_w for fillet welds (based on Table 4.1, EC 3–8)

EN10025 steel grade	*Ultimate tensile strength f_u (N mm^{-2})*	*Correlation factor β_w*
S235	360	0.8
S275	430	0.85
S355	510	0.9

where

f_u is the nominal ultimate tensile strength of the weaker part joined and

β_w is a correlation factor whose values should be taken from *Table 9.16*.

9.13.7 DESIGN OF CONNECTIONS

The use of the above equations is illustrated by means of the following design examples:

1. tension splice connection;
2. welded end plate and beam connection;
3. bolted beam-to-column connection using end plates;
4. bolted beam-to-column connection using web cleats.

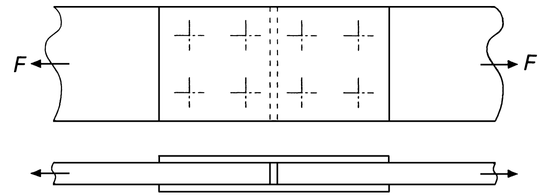


Fig. 9.10 *Splice connection.*

9.13.7.1 Splice connections

The design of splice connections (*Fig. 9.10*) in EC 3 is essentially the same as that used in BS 5950 and involves determining the design values of the following parameters:

(1) design shear resistance of fasteners (section 9.13.4 or 9.13.5)
(2) critical bearing resistance (section 9.13.4)
(3) critical tensile resistance (see below).

Tension resistance of cross-sections (Cl. 6.2.3, EC 3–1). For members in axial tension, the design value of the tensile force N_{Ed} at each cross-section should satisfy the following

$$\frac{N_{Ed}}{N_{t,Rd}} \le 1.0 \qquad (9.90)$$

where

$N_{t,Rd}$ is the design tension resistance of the cross-section.

For sections with holes the design tension resistance should be taken as the smaller of:

$$N_{pl,Rd} = \frac{Af_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \qquad (9.91)$$

$$N_{u,Rd} = \frac{0.9A_{net}f_u}{\gamma_{M2}} \qquad (9.92)$$

where

$N_{pl,Rd}$ is the design plastic resistance of the gross cross-section

$N_{u,Rd}$ is the design ultimate resistance of the net cross-section at holes for fasteners

In Category C connections, i.e. slip-resistant at ultimate limit state, the design tension resistance of the cross-section should be taken as $N_{net,Rd}$, given by

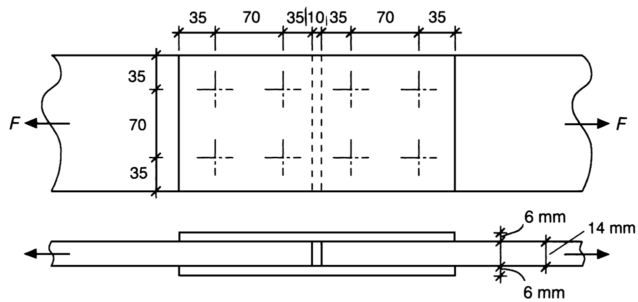
$$N_{net,Rd} = \frac{A_{net}f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} \qquad (9.93)$$

Example 9.12 Analysis of a tension splice connection (EC 3)

Calculate the design resistance of the connection detail shown below. The cover plates are made of S275 steel and connected with either

a) non-preloaded bolts of diameter 20 mm and class 4.6 or
b) prestressed bolts of diameter 16 mm and class 8.8

Assume that in both cases, the shear plane passes through the unthreaded portions of the bolts.



NON-PRELOADED BOLTS

Design shear resistance

Design shear resistance per shear plane, $F_{v,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{v,Rd} = \alpha_v f_{ub} \frac{A_s}{\gamma_{M2}} = 0.6 \times 400 \times \frac{314}{1.25} = 60318 \text{ N} = 60 \text{ kN}$$

where

$$\alpha_v = 0.6 \text{ for class 4.6 bolts}$$
$$f_{ub} = 400 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 9.14})$$
$$\gamma_{Mb} = 1.25$$
$$A = \frac{\pi d^2}{4} = \frac{\pi \times 20^2}{4} = 314 \text{ mm}^2$$

All four bolts are in double shear. Hence, shear resistance, F_{Ed}, of connection is

$$F_{Ed} = 4 \times (2 \times 60) = 480 \text{ kN}$$

Bearing resistance

Bearing failure will tend to take place in the cover plates since they are thinner. According to Table 3.4 of EC 3–8, α_b is the smallest of

For end bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{e_1}{3d_o} = \frac{35}{3 \times 22} = 0.53; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_u} = \frac{400}{430} = 0.93; \quad 1.0\right)$

For inner bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{p_1}{3d_o} - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{70}{3 \times 22} - \frac{1}{4} = 0.81; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_u} = 0.93; \quad 1.0\right)$

Hence, α_b may be conservatively taken as 0.53.

For edge bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(2.8\frac{e_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 2.8 \times \frac{35}{22} = 4.45; \quad 2.5\right)$

For inner bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(1.4\frac{p_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 1.4 \times \frac{70}{22} = 4.45; \quad 2.5\right)$

Example 9.12 *continued*

Hence, $k_1 = 2.5$ and the design bearing resistance of one shear plane, $F_{b,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{b,Rd} = k_1\alpha_b f_u \frac{dt}{\gamma_{M2}} = 2.5 \times 0.53 \times 430 \times \frac{20 \times 6}{1.25} = 54696\ \text{N} = 54.7\ \text{kN}$$

Bearing resistance of double shear plane is

$$2 \times 54.7 = 109.4\ \text{kN}$$

Bearing resistance of bolt group is

$$4 \times 109.4 = 437.6\ \text{kN}$$

Tensile resistance of cover plates

The design tension resistance of the cover plates, $N_{t,Rd}$, should be taken as the smaller of the design plastic resistance of the gross cross-section, $N_{pl,Rd}$, and the design ultimate resistance of the net cross-section at holes for fasteners, $N_{u,Rd}$:

$$N_{pl,Rd} = \frac{Af_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{(6 \times 140) \times 275}{1.0} \times 10^{-3} = 231\ \text{kN}$$

Net area of cover plate, $A_{net} = 6 \times 140 - 2 \times 6 \times 22 = 576\ \text{mm}^2$

$$N_{u,Rd} = \frac{0.9A_{net}f_u}{\gamma_{M2}} = \frac{0.9 \times 576 \times 430}{1.10} \times 10^{-3} = 202.6\ \text{kN (critical)}$$

Total ultimate resistance of connection i.e. two cover plates = (2 × 202.6) = 405.2 kN. Hence design resistance of the connection with class 4.6, 20 mm diameter non-preloaded bolts is 405 kN.

PRESTRESSED BOLTS

Slip resistance

Preloading force, $F_{p,C}$, is given by

$$F_{p,C} = 0.7f_{ub}A_s = 0.7 \times 800 \times 157 = 87920\ \text{N} = 87.9\ \text{kN}$$

Assuming the surfaces have been shot blasted, i.e. class A, take $\mu = 0.5$. For two surfaces $n = 2$, standard clearances $k_s = 1.0$ and $\gamma_{M3} = 1.25$

Hence, slip resistance for each bolt, $F_{s,Rd}$, is given by:

$$F_{s,Rd} = \frac{k_s n \mu F_{p,C}}{\gamma_{M3}} = \frac{1 \times 2 \times 0.5 \times 87.9}{1.25} = 70.3\ \text{kN}$$

Hence design resistance = 4 × 70.3 = 281.2 kN

Tensile resistance of cover plates

Net area of cover plate, $A_{net} = 6 \times 140 - 2 \times 6 \times 18 = 624\ \text{mm}^2$

Tensile resistance of cover plate is given by

$$N_{net,Rd} = \frac{A_{net}f_y}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{624 \times 275}{1.0} \times 10^{-3} = 171.6\ \text{kN}$$

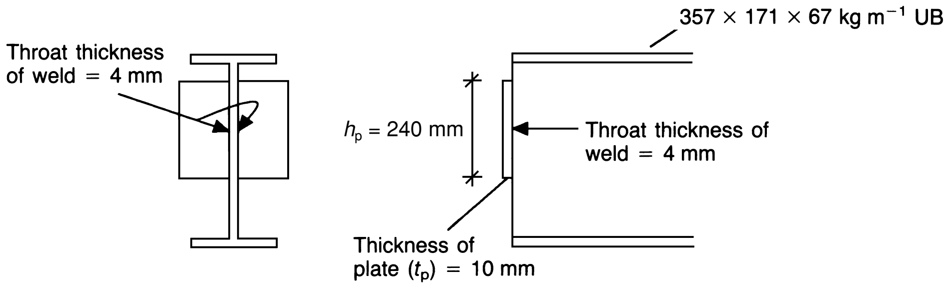
Total ultimate resistance of connection i.e. two cover plates = (2 × 171.6) = 343.2 kN. Hence, design resistance of connection made with grade 8.8, 16 mm diameter prestressed bolts is 281 kN.

9.13.7.2 Welded end-plate to beam connection

The relevant equations for the design of this type of connection were discussed in section 9.13.6.

Example 9.13 Shear resistance of a welded end plate to beam connection (EC 3)

Calculate the shear resistance of the welded end plate-to-beam connection shown below. Assume the throat thickness of the fillet weld is 4 mm and the steel grade is S 275.



Ultimate tensile strength of S 275 steel (f_u) = 430 N mm^{-2} (*Table 9.16*)
Correlation factor (β_w) = 0.85
Throat thickness of weld (a) = 4 mm
Partial safety factor for welds (γ_{M2}) = 1.25
Design shear strength of weld, $f_{vw,d}$, is given by

$$f_{vw,d} = \frac{f_u/\sqrt{3}}{\beta_w \gamma_{M2}} = \frac{430/\sqrt{3}}{0.85 \times 1.25} = 233.6 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Design resistance of weld per unit length, $F_{w,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{w,Rd} = f_{vw,d}a = 233.6 \times 4 = 934.4 \text{ N mm}^{-1}$$

Weld length, $L = 240 - 2a = 240 - 2 \times 4 = 232$ mm and hence the shear resistance of the weld, $V_{w,Rd}$, is

$$V_{w,Rd} = 2 \times (F_{w,Rd} \times L) = 2 \times (934.4 \times 232) = 433561 \text{ N} = 433 \text{ kN}$$

9.13.7.3 Bolted beam-to-column connection using an end plate

The design of this type of connection (*Fig. 9.11*) involves carrying out the following checks:

1. ductility of the material/joint (see below)
2. shear resistance of fasteners (see 9.13.4)
3. bearing resistance of fasteners (see 9.13.4)
4. resistance of welded connections (see 9.13.6)
5. shear resistance of end plate (see below)
6. local shear resistance of beam web (see 9.11.1.2)
7. block tearing failure (see below)

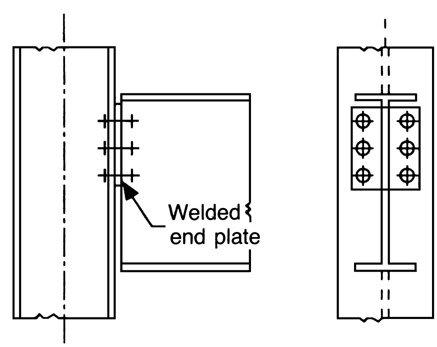


Fig. 9.11 *Typical bolted beam-to-column connection.*

Ductility requirements (Cl. 3.2.2, EC 3 & NA.2.5). EC 3 requires that a check is carried out on the ductility of the materials being joined. According to clause 3.2.2(2) the ductility requirement is generally achieved provided that the ratio of the specified minimum ultimate tensile strength, f_u, to the specified minimum yield strength, f_y, exceeds 1.1, i.e.

$$\frac{f_u}{f_y} \geq 1.1 \qquad (9.94)$$

In the case of simple end plate connections, document SN014a (SCI) recommends that the following should also be satisfied:

If the supporting element is a beam or colum web

$$t_p \le \frac{d}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{f_{ub}}{f_{y,plate}}} \tag{9.95}$$

If the supporting element is a column flange

$$t_p \le \frac{d}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{f_{ub}}{f_{y,plate}}} \text{ or } t_{f,c} \le \frac{d}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{f_{ub}}{f_{y,column}}} \tag{9.96}$$

Shear resistance of end plate (Cl. 6.2.6, EC 3)**.** The design value of the shear force V_{Ed} at each cross section should satisfy the following

$$\frac{V_{Ed}}{V_{c,Rd}} \le 1 \tag{9.97}$$

where $V_{c,Rd}$ is the design shear resistance.

For plastic design $V_{c,Rd}$ is equal to the design plastic shear resistance, $V_{pl,Rd}$, given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = \frac{A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M0}} \tag{9.98}$$

where

A_v is the (gross) shear area and according to document SN014a (Steel Construction Institute) may be taken as

$$A_v = \frac{h_p t_p}{1.27} \tag{9.99}$$

The coefficient 1.27 takes into account the reduction of the shear resistance, due to the presence of in plane bending moments.

Where fastener holes are present the design shear resistance is equal to $V_{Rd,net}$, given by

$$V_{Rd,net} = \frac{A_{v,net}(f_u/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M2}} \tag{9.100}$$

where

f_u is the ultimate tensile strength of the plate material (*Table 9.14*)

$A_{v,net}$ is the net cross-section area of the plate $= t_p(h_p - nd_0)$ (9.101)

in which

t_p is the thickness of the plate
h_p is the length of the plate
n is the number of bolt rows
d_0 is the diameter of the bolt holes

Design for block tearing (Cl. 3.10.2, EC 3–8)**.** 'Block tearing' failure at a group of fastener holes near the end of the beam web may occur as shown in *Fig. 9.12*. For a symmetric bolt group subject to concentric loading the design block tearing resistance, $V_{eff,1,Rd}$, is given by

$$V_{eff,1,Rd} = \frac{f_u A_{nt}}{\gamma_{M2}} + \frac{(f_y/\sqrt{3})A_{nv}}{\gamma_{M0}} \tag{9.102}$$

where

A_{nt} is the net area subject to tension
A_{nv} is the net area subject to shear

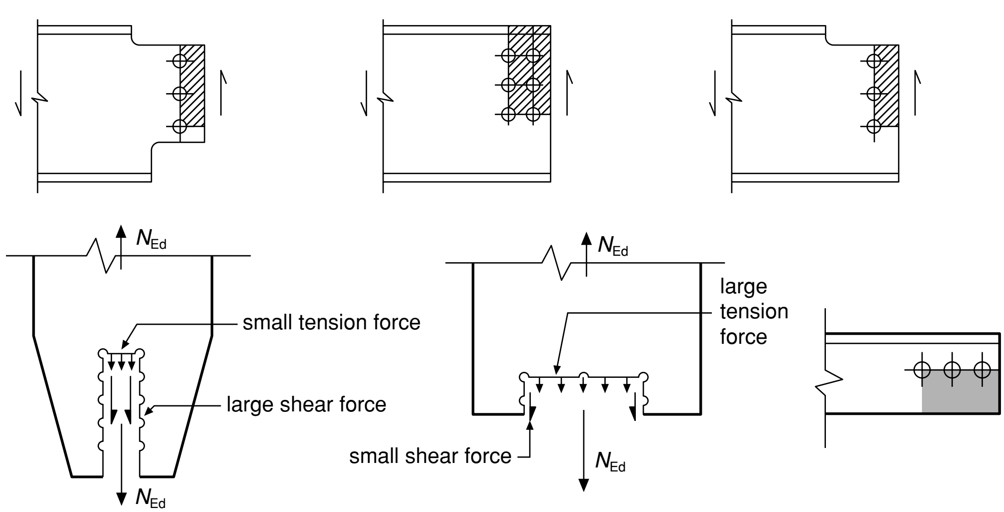
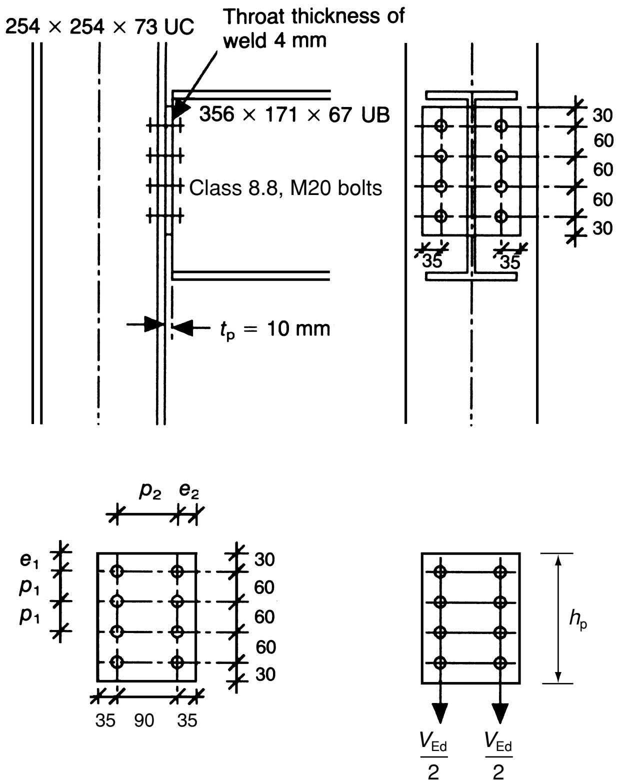


Fig. 9.12 *Block tearing – net tension and shear areas (Fig. 3.8, EC 3–8).*

Example 9.14 Bolted beam-to-column connection using an end plate (EC 3)

If the beam in Example 9.13 is to be connected to a column using eight class 8.8, M20 bolts as shown below, calculate the maximum shear resistance of the connection.



CHECK POSITIONING OF HOLES FOR BOLTS

Diameter of bolt, $d = 20$ mm

Diameter of bolt hole, $d_o = 22$ mm

End distance, $e_1 = 30$ mm

Edge distance, $e_2 = 35$ mm

Pitch, i.e. spacing between centres of bolts in the direction of load transfer, $p_1 = 60$ mm

Gauge, i.e. spacing between columns of bolts, $p_2 = 90$ mm

Thickness of end plate, $t_p = 10$ mm

The following conditions need to be met:

End and edge distances, $e_1 = 30$ and $e_2 = 35 \geq 1.2d_o = 1.2 \times 22 = 26.4$ mm OK

e_1 and $e_2 \leq$ larger of $8t$ ($= 8 \times 10 = 80$ mm) or 125 mm $> 30, 35$ OK

Spacing, $p_1 \geq 2.2d_o = 2.2 \times 22 = 48.4 < 60$ mm OK

Spacing, $p_2 \geq 2.4d_o = 2.4 \times 22 = 52.8 < 90$ mm OK

Spacing, p_1 and $p_2 \leq$ lesser of $14t$ ($= 14 \times 10 = 140$ mm) or 200 mm $> 60, 90$ OK

Example 9.14 *continued*

DUCTILITY REQUIREMENTS

Since the supporting element is a column flange, the following conditions apply:

$$t_p \le \frac{d}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{f_{ub}}{f_{y,plate}}} \text{ or } t_{f,c} \le \frac{d}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{f_{ub}}{f_{y,column}}}$$

$$\frac{d}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{f_{ub}}{f_{y,plate}}} = \frac{20}{2.8}\sqrt{\frac{800}{275}} = 12.2\,\text{mm} > t_p = 10\,\text{mm} \quad \text{OK}$$

BEARING RESISTANCE OF BOLT GROUP

Since bolt diameter, $d = 20$mm, hole diameter, $d_o = 22$mm and α_b is the smallest of

For end bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{e_1}{3d_o} = \frac{30}{3 \times 22} = 0.455; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_{u,p}} = \frac{800}{410} = 1.86; \quad 1.0\right)$

For inner bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{p_1}{3d_o} - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{60}{3 \times 22} - \frac{1}{4} = 0.659; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_u} = 1.86; \quad 1.0\right)$

Hence, α_b may be conservatively taken as 0.455.

For edge bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(2.8\frac{e_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 2.8 \times \frac{35}{22} = 4.45; \quad 2.5\right)$

For inner bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(1.4\frac{p_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 1.4 \times \frac{90}{22} = 5.7; \quad 2.5\right)$

Hence, $k_1 = 2.5$.
The design bearing resistance of one shear plane, $F_{b,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{b,Rd} = k_1\alpha_b f_u \frac{dt}{\gamma_{M2}} = 2.5 \times 0.455 \times 410 \times \frac{20 \times 10}{1.25} = 74620\,\text{N} = 74.6\,\text{kN}$$

Bearing resistance of bolt group = $8F_{b,Rd} = 8 \times 74.6 = 596.8$ kN

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF BOLT GROUP

Design shear resistance per shear plane, $F_{v,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{v,Rd} = \alpha_v f_{ub}\frac{A_s}{\gamma_{M2}} = 0.6 \times 800 \times \frac{314}{1.25} = 120576\,\text{N} = 120.5\,\text{kN}$$

where

$$\alpha_v = 0.6 \text{ for class 8.8 bolts}$$

$$f_{ub} = 800 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 9.14})$$

$$\gamma_{M2} = 1.25$$

$$A_s = \frac{\pi d^2}{4} = \frac{\pi \times 20^2}{4} = 314\,\text{mm}^2$$

Hence, shear resistance of bolt group is

$$V_{v,Rd} = 8 \times F_{v,Rd} = 8 \times 120.5 = 964 \text{ kN}$$

RESISTANCE OF WELDED CONNECTION BETWEEN BEAM AND END-PLATE

$$V_{w,Rd} = 433 \text{ kN} \quad \text{(see Example 9.13)}$$

Example 9.14 *continued*

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF END PLATE (GROSS SECTION)

$$A_v = \frac{h_p t_p}{1.27} = \frac{10 \times 240}{1.27} = 1889.8 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence, the design plastic shear resistance of end plate, $V_{pl,Rd}$, per section is given by

$$V_{pl,Rd} = \frac{A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{1889.8 \times (275/\sqrt{3})}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 300 \text{ kN}$$

For failure, two planes have to shear. Hence, shear resistance of end plate is

$$2 \times V_{pl,Rd} = 2 \times 300 = 600 \text{ kN}$$

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF END PLATE (NET SECTION)

$$A_{v,net} = t_p(h_p - nd_0) = 10 \times (240 - 4 \times 22) = 1520 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$V_{Rd,net} = \frac{A_{v,net}(f_u/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M2}} = \frac{1520(410/\sqrt{3})}{1.10} \times 10^{-3} = 327 \text{ kN}$$

For failure, two planes have to shear. Hence, shear resistance of end plate is

$$2 \times V_{Rd,net} = 2 \times 327 = 654 \text{ kN}$$

LOCAL SHEAR RESISTANCE OF BEAM WEB

Based on case (c) clause 6.2.6 of EC 3, shear area of web $(A_v)_{web}$ is given by

$$(A_v)_{web} = 0.9Lt_{web} = 0.9 \times 240 \times 9.1 = 1965.6 \text{ mm}^2$$

where t_{web} is the beam web thickness = 9.1mm
Hence, local shear resistance of web, $V_{pl,Rd}$, is given by:

$$V_{pl,Rd} = \frac{A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{1965.6 \times (275/\sqrt{3})}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 312 \text{ kN}$$

BLOCK TEARING

$$A_{nt} = (p_2 - d_o)t_p = (90 - 22) \times 10 = 680 \text{ mm}^2 \quad (\textit{Fig. 9.12})$$

$$A_{nv} = 2(h_p - e_1 - 3.5d_o)t_p = 2 \times (240 - 30 - 3.5 \times 22) \times 10 = 2660 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$V_{eff,1,Rd} = \frac{f_u A_{nt}}{\gamma_{M2}} + \frac{(f_y/\sqrt{3})A_{nv}}{\gamma_{M0}} = \left(\frac{410 \times 680}{1.10} + \frac{(275/\sqrt{3})2660}{1.00}\right) \times 10^{-3} = 675.8 \text{ kN}$$

By inspection, the maximum shear resistance of the connection is controlled by the beam web in shear and is equal to 312 kN.

9.13.7.4 Bolted double angle web cleat beam-to-column connection

The design of such connections (*Fig. 9.13*) involves determining the design values of the following parameters:

1. design shear resistance of fasteners (see 9.13.4)
2. bearing resistance of fasteners (see 9.13.4)
3. shear resistance of cleats (see previous case)
4. distribution of shear forces between fasteners (see below)
5. bearing resistance of beam web (see 9.13.4)
6. block tearing failure (see previous case).

Distribution of forces between fasteners. The distribution of internal forces between fasteners at the ultimate limit state can be assumed to be proportional to the distance from the centre of

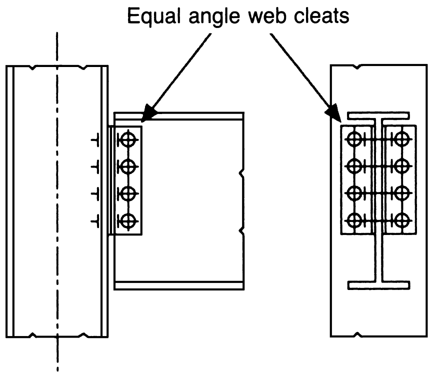


Fig. 9.13 *Typical bolted double angle web cleat beam-to-column connection.*

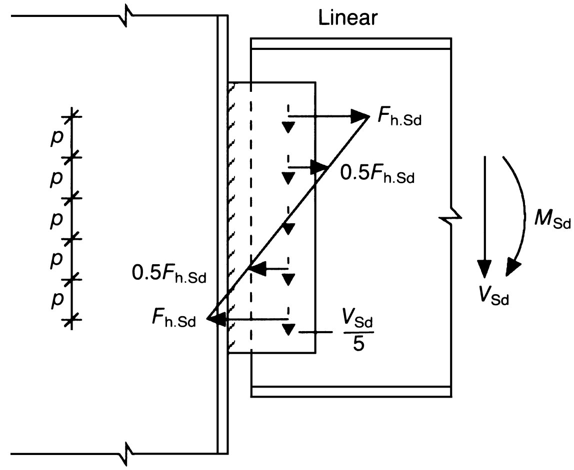


Fig. 9.14 *Distribution of loads between fasteners (Fig. 6.5.7, ENV EC 3).*

rotation (see *Fig. 9.14*) where, amongst other cases, the design shear resistance $F_{v,Rd}$ of a fastener is less than the design bearing resistance $F_{b,Rd}$, i.e.

$$F_{v,Rd} < F_{b,Rd} \qquad (9.103)$$

Thus, for the connection detail shown in *Fig. 9.14*, the horizontal shear force on the bolts, $F_{h,Ed}$, is given by:

$$F_{h,Ed} = \frac{M_{Ed}}{5p} \qquad (9.104)$$

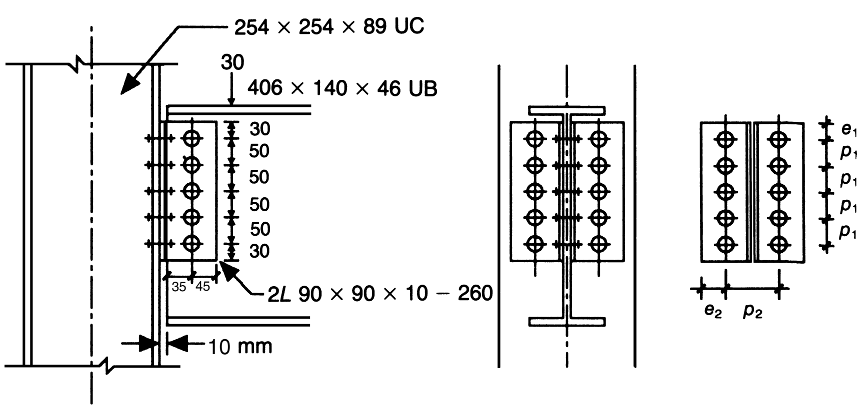
and the vertical shear force per bolts is = $V_{Ed}/5$. The design shear force, $F_{v,Ed}$, is given by

$$F_{v,Ed} = \left[\left(\frac{M_{Ed}}{5p}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{V_{Ed}}{5}\right)^2\right]^{1/2} \qquad (9.105)$$

where
M_{Ed} = design bending moment
V_{Ed} = design shear force
p = spacing between fasteners

Example 9.15 Bolted beam-to-column connection using web cleats (EC 3)

Show that the double angle web cleat beam-to-column connection detail shown below is suitable to resist the design shear force, V_{Ed}, of 200 kN. Assume the steel grade is S 275 and the bolts are class 8.8 and diameter 16 mm.



Example 9.15 *continued*

CHECK POSITIONING OF HOLES FOR BOLTS

Diameter of bolt, $d = 16$ mm

Diameter of bolt hole, $d_o = 18$ mm

End distance, $e_1 = 30$ mm

Edge distance, $e_2 = 45$ mm

Pitch i.e. spacing between centres of bolts in the direction of load transfer, $p_1 = 50$ mm

Thickness of angle cleat, $t_c = 10$ mm

The following conditions need to be met:

End and edge distances, $e_1 = 30$ and $e_2 = 45 \geq 1.2d_o = 1.2 \times 18 = 21.6$ mm OK

e_1 and $e_2 \leq$ larger of $8t$ ($= 8 \times 10 = 80$ mm) or 125 mm > 30, 45 OK

Pitch, $p_1 \geq 2.2d_o = 2.2 \times 18 = 39.6 < 50$ mm OK

Pitch, $p_1 \leq$ lesser of $14t$ ($= 14 \times 10 = 140$ mm) or 200 mm > 50 OK

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF BOLT GROUP CONNECTING CLEATS TO SUPPORTING COLUMN

Assume that the shear plane passes through threaded portion of the bolt. Hence, tensile stress area of bolt $A_s = 157\text{mm}^2$ (Table 4.22). Shear resistance per bolt, $F_{v,Rd}$, is

$$F_{v,Rd} = \alpha_v f_{ub} \frac{A_s}{\gamma_{M2}} = 0.6 \times 800 \times \frac{157}{1.25} \times 10^{-3} = 60.3\,\text{kN}$$

where

$$\alpha_v = 0.6 \text{ for class 8.8 bolts}$$

$$f_{ub} = 800 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 9.14})$$

$$\gamma_{M2} = 1.25$$

$$A_s = 157 \text{ mm}^2 \quad (\textit{Table 4.22})$$

Hence, shear resistance of bolt group is

$$10 \times F_{v,Rd} = 10 \times 60.3 = 603 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed} = 200 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

BEARING RESISTANCE OF CLEATS CONNECTED TO SUPPORTING COLUMN

Bearing failure will tend to take place in the cleats since they are thinner than the column flange. Diameter of bolts (d) 16 mm; hole diameter (d_o) = 18mm; end distance in the direction of load transfer (e_1) = 30 mm; pitch (p_1) = 50 mm; ultimate tensile strength of class 8.8 bolts (f_{ub}) = 800 Nmm^{-2} (*Table 9.14*); ultimate tensile strength of S275 steel, $t \leq 16$ mm (f_u) = 410 Nmm^{-2} (*Table 9.4*)
Here α_b is the smallest of

For end bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{e_1}{3d_o} = \frac{30}{3 \times 18} = 0.555; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_{u,c}} = \frac{800}{410} = 1.95; \quad 1.0 \right)$

For inner bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{p_1}{3d_o} - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{50}{3 \times 18} - \frac{1}{4} = 0.676; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_{u,c}} = 1.95; \quad 1.0 \right)$

Hence, α_b may be conservatively taken as 0.555.

Example 9.15 *continued*

For edge bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(2.8\frac{e_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 2.8 \times \frac{45}{18} = 7; \quad 2.5\right)$

For inner bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(1.4\frac{p_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 1.4 \times \frac{96.9}{18} = 7.5; \quad 2.5\right)$

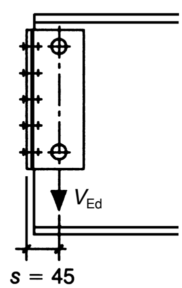
where
e_2 is the edge distance
p_2 is the gauge = 45 + 45 + 6.9 = 96.9 mm

Hence, $k_1 = 2.5$ and the design bearing resistance of one shear plane, $F_{b,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{b,Rd} = k_1\alpha_b f_{u,c}\frac{dt_c}{\gamma_{M2}} = 2.5 \times 0.555 \times 410 \times \frac{16 \times 10}{1.25} \times 10^{-3} = 72.8 \text{ kN}$$

Bearing resistance of bolt group = $10F_{b,Rd} = 10 \times 72.8 = 728$ kN > $V_{Ed} = 200$ kN OK

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF CLEATS CONNECTED TO SUPPORTING COLUMN



For S275 steel

$$f_u = 410 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 9.4})$$

$$f_y = 275 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 9.4})$$

Shear resistance based on gross area of cleat, $A_v = t_c h_c = 10 \times 260 = 2600$ mm^2. Hence shear resistance of each leg of cleat, $V_{pl,Rd}$, is

$$V_{pl,Rd} = \frac{A_v(f_y/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{2600 \times (275/\sqrt{3})}{1.00} \times 10^{-3} = 412.8 \text{ kN}$$

Shear resistance based on net area of cleat, $A_{v,net} = t_c(h_c - nd_0) = 10 \times (260 - 5 \times 18) = 1700$ mm^2. Shear resistance of each leg of cleat, $V_{Rd,net}$, is

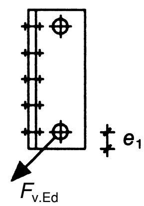
$$V_{Rd,net} = \frac{A_{v,net}(f_{u,c}/\sqrt{3})}{\gamma_{M2}} = \frac{1700 \times (410/\sqrt{3})}{1.25} \times 10^{-3} = 321.9 \text{ kN (critical)}$$

Hence total shear resistance of both legs of cleats

$$= 2 \times V_{Rd,net} = 2 \times 321.9 = 643.8 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed} = 200 \text{ kN OK}$$

Example 9.15 *continued*

SHEAR RESISTANCE OF BOLT GROUP CONNECTING CLEATS TO WEB OF SUPPORTED BEAM



Shear force per bolt in vertical direction, $F_{v,Ed}$, is

$$F_{v,Ed} = \frac{V_{Ed}}{5} = \frac{200}{5} = 40 \text{ kN}$$

Maximum shear force on bolt assembly in horizontal direction, $F_{h,Ed}$, is

$$F_{h,Ed} = \frac{M_{Ed}}{5p} = \frac{V_{Ed}s}{5p_1} = \frac{200 \times 45}{5 \times 50} = 36 \text{ kN}$$

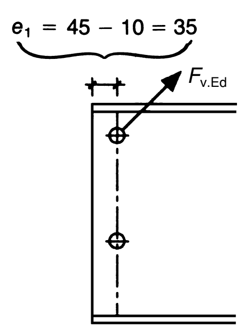
The design shear force, $F_{v,Ed}$, is given by

$$F_{v,Ed} = [F_{v,Ed}{}^2 + F_{h,Ed}{}^2]^{1/2} = [40^2 + 36^2]^{1/2} = 53.8 \text{ kN}$$

Shear resistance per bolt, $F_{v,Rd}$, is 60.3 kN (see above).
Since the bolts are in double shear the total shear resistance is

$$2F_{v,Rd} = 2 \times 60.3 = 120.6 \text{ kN} > F_{V,Ed} = 53.8 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

BEARING RESISTANCE OF WEB OF SUPPORTED BEAM



Here α_b is the smallest of

For end bolts, $\alpha_b = \min\left(\frac{e_1}{3d_o} = \frac{35}{3 \times 18} = 0.648; \quad \frac{f_{ub}}{f_u} = \frac{800}{410} = 1.95; \quad 1.0\right)$

Hence, α_b may be conservatively taken as 0.648.

Example 9.15 *continued*

Here k_1 is the smallest of

For edge bolts, $k_1 = \min\left(2.8\frac{e_2}{d_o} - 1.7 = 2.8 \times \frac{60}{18} - 1.7 = 9.3; \quad 2.5\right)$

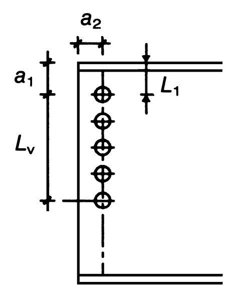
Hence, $k_1 = 2.5$.

The design bearing resistance of one shear plane, $F_{b,Rd}$, is given by

$$F_{b,Rd} = k_1\alpha_b f_u \frac{dt_w}{\gamma_{M2}} = 2.5 \times 0.648 \times 410 \times \frac{16 \times 6.9}{1.25} \times 10^{-3}$$

$$= 58.6 \text{ kN} > F_{v,Ed} = 53.8 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

BLOCK TEARING



$$A_{nt} = (a_2 - 0.5d_o)t_w = (35 - 0.5 \times 18) \times 6.9 = 179.4 \text{ mm}^2 \quad (\textit{Fig. 9.12})$$

$$A_{nv} = (L_v + a_1 - 4.5d_o)t_w = (200 + 60 - 4.5 \times 18) \times 6.9 = 1235.1 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$V_{eff,1,Rd} = \frac{f_u A_{nt}}{\gamma_{M2}} + \frac{(f_y/\sqrt{3})A_{nv}}{\gamma_{M0}} = \frac{430 \times 179.4}{1.25} + \frac{(275/\sqrt{3})1235.1}{1.00}$$

$$= 61713.6 + 196098.5 = 257812 \text{ N}$$

$$= 257.8 \text{ kN} > V_{Ed} = 200 \text{ kN} \quad \text{OK}$$

Chapter 10

Eurocode 6: Design of masonry structures

This chapter describes the contents of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 6, the new European standard for the design of masonry structures, which is expected to replace BS 5628 by about 2010. The chapter highlights the principal differences between Eurocode 6: Part 1.1 and BS 5628 and illustrates the new design procedures by means of a number of worked examples on single leaf and cavity walls, with and without stiffening piers, subject to either vertical or lateral loading or a combination of both.

10.1 Introduction

Eurocode 6 is the new European standard for the design of masonry structures. It applies to the design of buildings and civil engineering works in, predominantly, unreinforced and reinforced masonry. It is based on limit state principles and is published in four parts as shown in *Table 10.1*.

Part 1.1 of Eurocode 6 which is the focus of the discussion in this chapter provides the basic information necessary for the design of masonry structures. It deals with the material properties and gives detailed rules which are mainly applicable to ordinary buildings. The corresponding British Standard is BS 5628: Parts 1 and 2.

Part 1.2 deals with the accidental event of fire and addresses, amongst other aspects, fire protection of load-bearing members to prevent premature collapse of the structure and the measures required to limit the spread of fire in masonry structures.

Table 10.1 Scope of Eurocode 6: Design of Masonry Structures

Part	*Subject*
1.1	General rules for reinforced and unreinforced masonry
1.2	Structural fire design
2	Design consideration, selection of materials and execution of masonry
3	Simplified calculation methods for unreinforced masonry structures

Part 2 provides guidance on, amongst other aspects, the selection of mortars and masonry units for various exposure conditions and applications. It is somewhat similar in scope to BS 5628: Part 3 but the coverage in the European standard is less extensive. This is intimated in clause 4 of the accompanying National Annex which states that 'a standard comprising complementary and non-contradictory material taken from BS 5628–1, BS 5628–2 and BS 5268–3 is in preparation'.

Part 3 contains simple rules for the design of various types of unreinforced masonry walls including panel, shear and basement walls. The rules are consistent with those provided in Part1.1 but will lead to more conservative designs and would appear to have been included because they have traditionally been used in some EC Member State countries. Neither Part 1.2 nor Part 3 of Eurocode 6 is discussed in this chapter.

Part 1.1 of Eurocode 6, hereafter referred to as EC 6, was published as a preliminary standard, reference no: DD ENV 1996–1–1, in 1994 and then in final form in 2004. It is expected to replace BS 5628 by around 2010.

In common with the other structural Eurocodes, design of masonry structures cannot wholly be undertaken using EC 6. Reference will have to be made to a number of other documents, notably EN 1990 and Eurocode 1 for details of design philosophy as well as rules for determining the design value of actions and combination of actions as discussed below.

10.2 Layout

In common with the other structural Eurocodes, EC 6 has been drafted by a panel of experts drawn from the various EC Member State countries. The base documents for the first draft of EC 6 were Report 58: *International recommendations for the design of masonry structures* and Report 94: *International report for design and erection of unreinforced and reinforced masonry structures*, published in 1980 and 1987 respectively, prepared by CIB (Council for International Building) committee W23. The following subjects are covered in EC 6:

Chapter 1: General
Chapter 2: Basis of design
Chapter 3: Materials
Chapter 4: Durability
Chapter 5: Structural analysis
Chapter 6: Ultimate limit states
Chapter 7: Serviceability limit states
Chapter 8: Detailing
Chapter 9: Execution

In addition, supplementary information is provided in a number of annexes. All the annexes in EC 6 are labelled 'informative'. As explained in section 7.5.4 of this book, this signifies that this material does not have any status and is included merely for information.

As can be appreciated from the above contents list, the organisation of material is different to that used in BS 5628 but follows the layout adopted in the other structural Eurocodes. Generally, the design rules in EC 6 are sequenced on the basis of action effects rather than type of member, as in BS 5628.

This chapter briefly describes the contents of EC 6, insofar as it is relevant to the design of single leaf and cavity walls, with or without stiffening piers, subject to vertical and/or lateral loading.

10.3 Principles/Application rules (Cl. 1.4, EC 6)

As with the other structural Eurocodes and for the reasons discussed in Chapter 7, the clauses in EC 5 have been divided into Principles and Application rules. Principles comprise general statements, definitions, requirements and models for which no alternative is permitted. Principles are indicated by the letter P after the clause number. The Application rules are generally recognised rules which follow the statements and satisfy the requirements given in the Principles. The absence of the letter P after the clause number indicates an application rule. The use of alternative application rules to those recommended in the Eurocode is permitted provided it can be shown that the alternatives are at least equivalent and do not adversely affect other design requirements. It is worth noting, however, that if an alternative application rule is used the resulting design will not be deemed Eurocode compliant.

10.4 Nationally Determined Parameters

Like the other structural Eurocodes, Eurocode 6 allows some parameters and design methods to be determined at the national level. Where a national choice is allowed this is indicated in a note in the normative text under the relevant clause. The note may include the recommended value of the parameter, or preferred method, etc., but the actual value, methodology, etc., to be used in a particular Member State country is given in the appropriate National Annex. The recommended values of these parameters and design method/procedures are collectively referred to as Nationally Determined Parameters (NDPs). The NDPs determine various aspects of design but perhaps most importantly the level of safety of structures during execution (i.e. construction/fabrication) and in-service, which remains the responsibility of individual nations.

The UK National Annexes for all four parts of Eurocode 6 were published in 2005 and the discussion and the worked examples in this chapter are based on the material in EC 6 and the NDPs in the accompanying National Annex.

10.5 Symbols

Chapter 1 of EC 6 lists the symbols used in the document. Those relevant to this discussion are reproduced below.

GEOMETRIC PROPERTIES:

t	thickness of a wall or leaf
h	height of panel between restraints
l	length of wall between restraints
A	gross cross-sectional area of a wall
Z	elastic sectional modulus
t_{ef}	effective thickness of a wall
h_{ef}	effective height of a wall
ρ_t	stiffness coefficient
e_{he}	eccentricity at the top and bottom of a wall, resulting from horizontal loads
e_{hm}	eccentricity at the middle of a wall, resulting from horizontal loads
e_i	eccentricity at the top and bottom of a wall
e_{init}	initial eccentricity

e_k eccentricity due to creep
e_m eccentricity due to loads
e_{mk} eccentricity at the middle of the wall
SR slenderness ratio
Φ capacity reduction factor
Φ_i capacity reduction factor at the top or bottom of the wall
Φ_m capacity reduction factor at mid-height of the wall

ACTIONS AND PARTIAL SAFETY FACTORS:

G_k characteristic permanent action
Q_k characteristic imposed action
W_k characteristic wind load
γ_f, γ_F partial factor for actions
γ_M partial factor for materials

COMPRESSION:

E short-term secant modulus of elasticity of masonry
f_b normalised mean compressive strength of a masonry unit
f_d design compressive strength of masonry
f_k characteristic compressive strength of masonry
f_m compressive strength of masonry mortar
f_k characteristic compressive strength of masonry
N design vertical action
N_{Rd} design vertical resistance of a masonry wall

FLEXURE:

f_{xk1} characteristic flexural strength of masonry with plane of failure parallel to bed joints
f_{xk2} characteristic flexural strength of masonry with plane of failure perpendicular to bed joints
f_{xd} design flexural strength of masonry
$\alpha_{1,2}$ bending moment coefficients
μ orthogonal ratio of the flexural strengths of masonry
M_{Ed} design value of the applied moment
M_{Rd} design value of moment of resistance
M_{Ed1} design applied moment with plane of failure parallel to bed joint
M_{Ed2} design applied moment with plane of failure perpendicular to bed joint
M_{Rd1} design moment of resistance with plane of failure parallel to bed joint
M_{Rd2} design moment of resistance with plane of failure perpendicular to bed joint

10.6 Basis of design

Like BS 5628, EC 6 is a limit state code. The two principal categories of limit states relevant to the design of masonry structures are durability and strength. Design for durability is discussed in chapter 4 of EC 6 and largely relates to the selection of masonry units and mortars for particular structure types and exposure classes. The code provisions relevant to this aspect of design are discussed in section 10.8. The design rules dealing with ultimate limit states are given in chapter 6 of EC 6. Only those rules relevant to the design of unreinforced masonry walls subjected to either mainly vertical or lateral loading are discussed in this chapter. Generally, in order to assess the effect of these loading conditions on masonry structures the designer will need to estimate

(a) the design values of actions
(b) the design strength of materials.

10.7 Actions

Action is the Eurocode terminology for loads and imposed deformations. Permanent actions, G, are all the fixed loads acting on the structure, including finishes, immovable partitions and the self-weight of the structure. Variable actions, Q, include the imposed, wind and snow loads. Clause 2.3.1(1) of EC 6 recommends that the values of characteristic permanent, G_k, and variable, Q_k, actions should be obtained from the relevant parts of Eurocode 1: *Actions on structures*. Guidance on determining the design value of actions and combination of actions is given in EN 1990: *Basis of structural design*. These documents and topics are briefly discussed in section 8.5 of this book. As noted there, the design value of an action (F_d) is obtained by multiplying the representative value (F_{rep}) by the appropriate partial safety factor for the action (γ_f):

$$F_d = \gamma_f F_{rep} \tag{10.1}$$

Table 10.2 shows the relevant partial safety factors for the ultimate limit state of strength. Other safety factors will apply in other design situations. For example the partial factors for the ultimate limit states of equilibrium are shown in *Table 8.6*. In equation 10.1, F_{rep} is generally taken as the characteristic value of a permanent or variable action (i.e. F_k). Assuming that the member being designed is subjected to one (or more) permanent actions and one variable action, i.e. load combination 1 in *Table 10.2*, the partial safety factor for permanent

Table 10.2 Load combinations and partial safety/combination factors for the ultimate limit state of strength

Limit state/Load combination	*Load Type*				
	Permanent, G_k		*Imposed, Q_k*		*Wind, W_k*
	Unfavourable	*Favourable*	*Unfavourable*	*Favourable*	
Strength:					
1. Permanent and variable	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5	0	–
2. Permanent and wind	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	–	–	1.5
3. Permanent, imposed and wind					
(a)	1.35	1.0	$1.5\psi_{0,1}$	0	$1.5\psi_{0,2}$
(b)	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5	0	$1.5\psi_0$
(c)	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	$1.5\psi_0$	0	1.5

actions, γ_G can conservatively be taken as 1.35 and for the variable action, γ_Q as 1.5. As discussed in section 8.5.3, it is possible to improve structural efficiency by using expressions 6.10a and 6.10b of EN 1990 (respectively load combination 3(a) and 3(b)/3(c) in *Table 10.2*) to estimate the design values of actions but the value of 1.35 for γ_G is conservative and used throughout this chapter.

10.8 Design compressive strength

The design compressive strength of masonry, f_d, is given by

$$f_d = \frac{f_k}{\gamma_M} \tag{10.2}$$

where

f_k is the characteristic compressive strength of masonry

γ_M is the partial factor for materials.

The characteristic compressive strength of masonry is a function of the following product/material characteristics:

- Group number of masonry unit
- Normalised mean compressive strength of masonry unit
- Compressive strength of the mortar.

The partial factor for materials is a function of the following aspects:

- Category of (masonry unit) manufacturing control
- Class of execution control.

Some of this information is provided by the manufacturer of the masonry units whereas the others are determined using the guidance given in Eurocode 6. Before describing how the characteristic strength of masonry and the partial factor for materials are actually evaluated, the following briefly reviews the purpose of each of the above parameters.

10.8.1 GROUP NUMBER

One of the stated aims of the Single Europe Act is that there should be no barriers to trade, which has generally been interpreted as meaning that design rules must not disadvantage available products from EC countries. Yet there is a wide variety of masonry units used throughout Europe; see *Fig. 10.1* for examples. The units differ in many respects including percentage, size and orientation of voids or perforations, and the thickness of webs and shells, etc. Thus, the EC 6 drafting panel had to develop methods that would allow the majority of masonry products currently available throughout Europe to be used in design.

The method actually developed involved producing European specifications for common types of masonry unit: clay, calcium silicate, aggregate concrete, autoclaved aerated concrete, manufactured stone and natural stone. These specifications use a declaration system to specify product characteristics, each of which is supported with an appropriate test method. In turn, the product characteristics are used to assign masonry units with similar characteristics into one of four groups: 1, 2, 3 and 4, with the superior structural use masonry units being placed in Group 1. In general, Group 1 units have no more than 25 per cent voids. Group 2 clay and

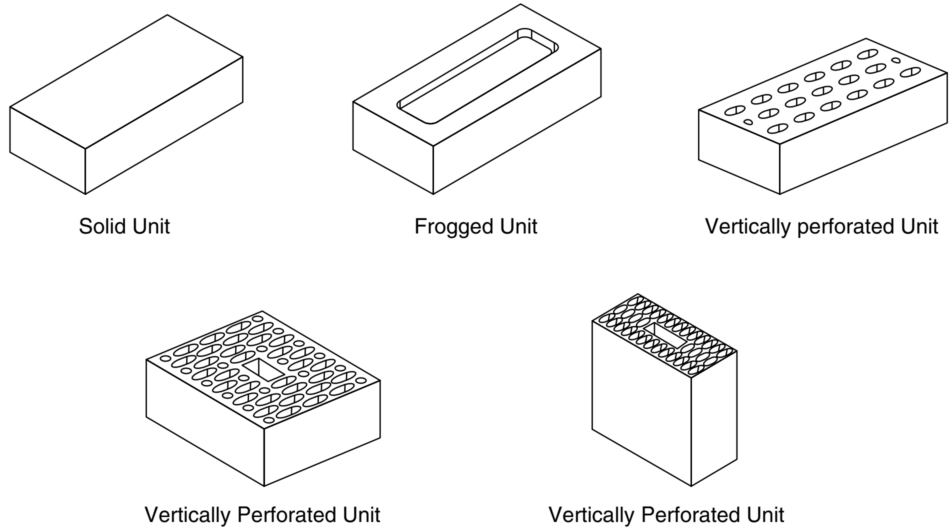


Fig. 10.1 *Examples of high density (HD) clay masonry units (Fig. 3, EN 771-1).*

calcium silicate units have between 25–55 per cent voids and aggregate concrete units between 25–60 per cent voids. *Table 10.3* gives further details of the requirements for unit groupings. All UK bricks currently manufactured to British Standards, including frogged and perforated bricks, fit into Group 1 unit specification although the author understands some Group 2 units are becoming available. Cellular and hollow blocks fit into Group 1 or Group 2 unit specification, depending on the void content. Masonry units which fall within Groups 3 and 4 have not historically been used in the UK. The manufacturer will normally declare the group number appropriate to his unit.

10.8.2 NORMALISED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH

A difference in the size of units available throughout Europe and differences in test procedures has meant that the compressive strength of masonry units had to be normalised.

The normalised compressive strength, f_b, is the compressive strength converted to the air dried compressive strength of an equivalent 100 mm wide × 100 mm high unit of the same material. The normalised compressive strengths of masonry, f_b, is given by

$$f_b = \text{conditioning factor} \times \text{shape factor} \times \text{declared mean compressive strength} \quad (10.3)$$

A number of procedures for conditioning of masonry units prior to testing are outlined in EN 772-1: *Methods of test for masonry units: Determination of compressive strength*. This standard advises that the conditioning factor for air-dried units is 1.0. Masonry units manufactured to British Standards are wet strengths in which case the recommended value of the conditioning factor is 1.2. Values for the shape factor, δ, are given in *Table A1* of EN 772–1, to allow for the height and width of units. For example, for 102.5 mm × 65 mm bricks δ = 0.85, and for 215 mm (height) × 100 mm (width/thickness) blocks, δ = 1.38.

10.8.3 COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MORTAR

Table 10.4 shows the masonry mortar mixes recommended for use in the UK to achieve the appropriate strength given in EC 6. As will be noted the choice and designation of masonry mortars in EC 6 and BS 5628 are identical and therefore for a given application or exposure similar mortars may be specified. According to clause 3.2.2 of EC 6, masonry mortars may be specified by compressive strength, expressed as the letter M followed by the compressive strength in Nmm^{-2}, e.g. M4, or mix proportion, e.g. 1:1:6 signifies the cement-lime-sand proportions by volume. The latter has the advantage, however, that it will produce mortars of known durability and should generally be used in practice.

Table 10.3 Geometrical requirements for groupings of clay bricks and concrete blocks (based on Table 3.1, EC 6)

	Materials and limits for masonry units				
	Group 1 (All materials)	*Units*	*Group 2*	*Group 3*	*Group 4*
			Vertical holes		*Vertical holes*
Volume of all holes (% of the gross volume)	≤ 25	Clay	> 25; ≤ 60	≥ 25; ≤ 70	> 25; ≤ 70
		Concrete	> 25; ≤ 60	> 25; ≤ 70	> 25; ≤ 50
Volume of any hole (% of the gross volume)	≤ 12.5	Clay	Each of multiple holes ≤ 2 gripholes up to a total of 12.5	Each of multiple holes ≤ 2 gripholes up to a total of 12.5	Each of multiple holes ≤ 30
		Concrete	Each of multiple holes ≤ 30 gripholes up to a total of 30	Each of multiple holes ≤ 30 gripholes up to a total of 30	Each of multiple holes ≤ 25
Declared values of thickness of web and shell (mm)			Web / Shell	Web / Shell	Web / Shell
	No requirement	Clay	≥ 5 / ≥ 8	≥ 3 / ≥ 6	≥ 5 / ≥ 6
		Concrete	≥ 15 / ≥ 18	≥ 15 / ≥ 15	≥ 20 / ≥ 20
Declared value of combined thickness of webs and shells (% of the overall width)		Clay	≥ 16	≥ 12	≥ 12
	No requirement	Concrete	≥ 18	≥ 15	≥ 45

Table 10.4 Types of mortars (Table 2 of National Annex to EC 6)

Compressive strength class	*Prescribed mortars (proportion of materials by volume)*				*Mortar designation*
	Cement-lime-sand with or without air entrainment	*Cement-sand with or without air entrainment*	*Masonry cement[1]-sand*	*Masonry cement[2]-sand*	
M12	1:0 to 1/4:3	–	–	–	(i)
M6	$1:\frac{1}{2}:4$ to $4\frac{1}{2}$	1:3 to 4	$1:2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$	1:3	(ii)
M4	1:1:5 to 6	1:5 to 6	1:4 to 5	$1:3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4	(iii)
M2	1:2:8 to 9	1:7 to 8	$1:5\frac{1}{2}$ to $6\frac{1}{2}$	$1:4\frac{1}{2}$	(iv)

Notes:
[1]Masonry cement with organic filler other than lime
[2]Masonry cement with lime

10.8.4 CATEGORY OF UNIT MANUFACTURING CONTROL

Units manufactured in accordance with European specifications can be further classified as belonging to Category I or Category II depending on the manufacturing control. Category I units are those where the manufacturer operates a quality-control scheme and the probability of the units not reaching the declared compressive strength is less than 5 per cent. Masonry units not intended to comply with the Category I level of confidence are classified as Category II. BS 5628 has adopted the same system of classifying masonry units (Table 5.10). It is the manufacturer's responsibility to declare the category of the masonry unit supplied.

10.8.5 CLASS OF EXECUTION CONTROL

EC 6 allows for up to five classes of execution control but, as in BS 5628, only two classes are used in the UK National Annex, namely, 1 and 2. According to Table 1 of the National Annex, Class 1 execution control should be assumed whenever the work is carried out following the recommendations for workmanship in EN 1996: Part 2 (EC 6–2), including appropriate supervision and inspection, and in addition:

(a) the specification, supervision and control ensure that the construction is compatible with the use of the appropriate safety factors given in EC 6;
(b) the mortar conforms to BS EN 998–2, if it is factory made mortar, or if it is site mixed mortar, preliminary compressive strength tests carried out on the mortar to be used, in accordance with BS EN 1015–2 and BS EN 1015–11, indicate conformity to the strength requirements given in EC 6 and regular testing of the mortar used on site, in accordance with BS EN 1015–2 and BS EN 1015–11, shows that the strength requirements of EC 6 are being maintained.

Class 2 execution control should be assumed whenever the work is carried out following the recommendations for workmanship in EC 6–2, including appropriate supervision.

Class 1 execution control corresponds to the 'special' category of construction control used in BS 5628 and Class 2 to the 'normal' category.

10.8.6 CHARACTERISTIC COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY

The characteristic compressive strength of unreinforced masonry, f_k, built with general-purpose mortar can be determined using the following expression

$$f_k = Kf_b^{0.7}f_m^{0.3} \qquad (10.4)$$

where

f_m is the compressive strength of general-purpose mortar but not exceeding 20 Nmm^{-2} or $2f_b$, whichever is the smaller

f_b is the normalised compressive strength of the masonry units

K is a constant obtained from *Table 10.5*.

The compressive strength of general-purpose mortar is obtained from Table 2 of the National Annex to EC 6, reproduced here as *Table 10.4*. This assumes that mortar designations (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) (as defined in *Table 10.4*) have

Table 10.5 Values of K (based on Table 4 of the National Annex to EC 6)

Masonry unit		*Values of K for general purpose mortar*
Clay	Group 1	0.50
	Group 2	0.40
Calcium silicate	Group 1	0.50
	Group 2	0.40
Aggregate concrete	Group 1	0.55
	Group 1[a] (units laid flat)	0.50
	Group 2	0.52

[a]if units contain vertical voids multiply K by (100-n)/100, where n is the percentage of voids, maximum 25%

Table 10.6 Values of γ_M for ultimate limit state (based on Table 2.3 of EC 6 and Table 1 of the National Annex to EC 6)

	Class of execution control	
	1	*2*
When in a state of direct or flexural compression		
Unreinforced masonry made with:		
units of category I	2.3	2.7
units of category II	2.6	3.0
When in a state of flexural tension		
units of category I and II	2.3	2.7

compressive strengths of, respectively, 12 Nmm^{-2}, 6 Nmm^{-2}, 4 Nmm^{-2} and 2 Nmm^{-2}. Unlike BS 5628, EC 6 does not differentiate between site and laboratory strengths.

10.8.7 PARTIAL FACTOR FOR MATERIALS, γ_M

Table 10.6 shows the values of the partial factors for material properties for the ultimate limit state given in Table 1 of the National Annex to EC 6. As can be seen they are primarily a function of the Category of unit, Class of execution control and the state of stress. Comparison with the corresponding values in BS 5628 (Table 5.10) shows that the values in EC 6 are somewhat lower.

10.9 Durability

As previously noted the other limit state which must be considered in masonry design is durability. Thus, masonry units and mortars should be sufficiently durable to resist the relevant exposure conditions for the intended life of the structure, normally assumed to be 50 years for buildings. *Table 10.7* shows the five main exposure classes and sub-classes relevant to masonry design mentioned in EC 6. It also gives examples of structures that may experience these conditions. Tables B1 and B2 of EC 6–2 gives details of acceptable specifications of masonry units and mortars appropriate to these exposures classes. Clause 3 of the associated National Annex recommends that this information is not used, however. As previously noted, an NCCI (Non-Contradictory Complementary Information) on the selection of materials is in preparation and in the interim the guidance in Table 12 of BS 5628 (Table 5.7), which is both extensive and relevant to UK exposure conditions and practice, should be used.

10.10 Design of unreinforced masonry walls subjected to vertical loading

Having discussed the basics, the following outlines EC 6 rules for the design of vertically loaded walls as set out in section 6.1. The approach is very similar to that in BS 5628 and principally involves checking that the design value of the vertical load, N_{Ed}, is less than or equal to the design value of the vertical resistance of the wall, N_{Rd}, i.e.

$$N_{Ed} \leq N_{Rd} \tag{10.5}$$

According to clause 6.1.2.1 of EC 6, the design vertical load resistance of a single leaf unreinforced masonry wall per unit length, N_{Rd}, is given by

$$N_{Rd} = \frac{\Phi_{i,m} t f_k}{\gamma_M} \tag{10.6}$$

where

- $\Phi_{i,m}$ is the capacity reduction factor, Φ_i or Φ_m, as appropriate
- t is the thickness of the wall
- f_k is the characteristic compressive strength of masonry obtained from equation 10.4
- γ_M is the material factor of safety for masonry determined from *Table 10.6*.

The factor Φ_i which relates to the top or bottom of the wall is given by

$$\Phi_i = 1 - 2e_i/t \tag{10.7}$$

where e_i is the eccentricity at the top or bottom of the wall given by

$$e_i = M_i/N_i + e_{he} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t \tag{10.8}$$

where

- M_i is the design bending moment at the top or bottom of the wall

Table 10.7 Classification of conditions of exposure of masonry (Table A1, EC 6)

Class	*Description*	*Typical examples*
MX1	**Dry environment**	Interior walls of building for normal habitation and for offices; rendered exterior walls largely unexposed to rain and isolated from damp
MX2	**Exposed to moisture or wetting**	
MX2.1	Exposed to moisture but not freeze/thaw cycling or external sources of sulphates or aggressive chemicals	Laundry room interior walls; exterior walls sheltered by overhanging eaves; masonry below frost zone in well-drained non-aggressive soil.
MX2.2	Exposed to severe wetting but not freeze/thaw cycling or external sources of sulphates or aggressive chemicals	Exterior walls with cappings of flush eaves; parapets; freestanding walls in the ground or underwater.
MX3	**Exposed to wetting plus freeze/thaw cycles**	
MX3.1	Exposed to moisture or wetting and freeze/thaw cycling but not sulphates or aggressive chemicals	As class MX2.1 but susceptible to freeze/thaw
MX3.2	Exposed to severe wetting and freeze/thaw cycling but not sulphates or aggressive chemicals	As class MX2.1 but susceptible to freeze/thaw
MX4	**Exposed to saturated salt air, sea water or deicing salts**	Masonry in coastal regions or adjacent to roads that are salted
MX5	**In an aggressive chemical environment**	Masonry in contact with natural soils or made ground or groundwater, where moisture and sulphates are present; masonry in contact with acidic soil or contaminated ground conditions; masonry in industrial areas where airborne aggressive chemicals are present.

N_i is the design vertical load at the top or bottom of the wall

e_{he} is the eccentricity at the top or bottom of the wall, if any, resulting from horizontal loads e.g. wind

e_{init} is the accidental eccentricity resulting from construction inaccuracies and can be taken as $h_{ef}/450$ (10.9)

in which h_{ef} is the effective height of the wall (see 10.9.1).

The value of the capacity reduction factor Φ_m, which relates to the mid-height of the wall, is estimated using either Fig. G.1 of EC 6 or the following expressions from Annex G of EC 6. These equations are valid for masonry of modulus of elasticity, $E = 1000f_k$ although the general form of the equations are applicable to masonry of any modulus:

$$\Phi_m = A_1 e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} \tag{10.10}$$

where

$$A_1 = 1 - 2\frac{e_{mk}}{t} \tag{10.11}$$

$$u = \frac{\dfrac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{e_{mk}}{t}} \tag{10.12}$$

in which

h_{ef} is the effective height of the wall

t_{ef} is the effective thickness of the wall

e_{mk} is the eccentricity in the middle of the wall $= e_m + e_k$ (10.13)

where

e_k is the eccentricity due to creep and is equal to zero where SR < 27 (Cl. 2.14 of National Annex)

$$e_m = M_m/N_m + e_{hm} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t \tag{10.14}$$

in which

M_m is the design bending moment in the middle of the wall

N_m is the design vertical load in the middle of the wall

e_{hm} is the greatest eccentricity in the middle one-fifth height of the wall, if any, due to lateral loads

e_{init} is the initial eccentricity.

A simplified sub-frame analysis procedure described in Annex C of EC 6 can be used to calculate the values of the design bending moments and thence the corresponding values of e_i and e_{mk}. The smaller of Φ_i and Φ_m is used to estimate the vertical design resistance of the wall.

Clause 4.4.2(3) notes that where the cross-sectional area of a wall is less than 0.1 m^2, the characteristic compressive strength of masonry should be multiplied by (0.7 + 3A), where A is the loaded horizontal gross cross-sectional area of the member, expressed in square metres. Unlike BS 5628, there is no enhancement factor for narrow walls used in EC 6; rather, there is a 0.8 reduction factor for walls with collar joints in their middle.

10.10.1 EFFECTIVE HEIGHT, h_{ef} (CL. 5.5.1.2, EC 6)

The effective wall height is a function of the actual wall height, h, and end/edge restraints. It can be taken as

$$h_{ef} = \rho_n h \qquad (10.15)$$

ρ_n is a reduction factor where $n = 2$, 3 or 4 depending on the number of restrained and stiffened edges. Thus, $n = 2$ for walls restrained at the top and bottom only, $n = 3$ for walls restrained top and bottom and stiffened on one vertical edge with the other vertical edge free and $n = 4$ for walls restrained top and bottom and stiffened on two vertical edges.

For walls with simple resistance (Fig. 5.10) at the top and bottom, $\rho_2 = 1$ as in BS 5628. For walls with enhanced resistance (Fig. 5.11) at the top and bottom $\rho_2 = 0.75$ as in BS 5628. ρ_n assumes other values if the wall is additionally stiffened along one or more vertical edges. See clause 4.4.4.3 of EC 6 for details.

10.10.2 EFFECTIVE THICKNESS, t_{ef} (CL. 5.5.1.3, EC 6)

The effective thickness of a single leaf wall is equal to the actual thickness, but for cavity walls in which the leaves are connected by suitable wall ties it is generally given by

$$t_{ef} = \sqrt[3]{k_{tef} t_1^3 + t_2^3} \qquad (10.16)$$

where

t_1 and t_2 are the thicknesses of the two leaves.

k_{tef} is the ratio of E values of the two leaves of the wall $= E_1/E_2 = 1$ (Cl 2.13, National Annex to EC 6)

The effective thickness of a wall stiffened by piers is given by

$$t_{ef} = \rho_t t \qquad (10.17)$$

where

t is the actual thickness of the wall

ρ_t is a coefficient obtained from Table 5.1 (reproduced here as *Table 10.8*) in combination with Fig. 5.2 (reproduced here as *Fig. 10.2*), both of EC 6.

Table 10.8 Stiffness coefficient, ρ_t, for walls stiffened by piers, see Fig. 10.2 (Table 5.1, EC 6)

Ratio of pier spacing (centre to centre) to pier width	*Ratio of pier thickness to actual thickness of wall to which it is bonded*		
	1	*2*	*3*
6	1.0	1.4	2.0
10	1.0	1.2	1.4
20	1.0	1.0	1.0

Note: Linear interpolation between the values in the table is permitted

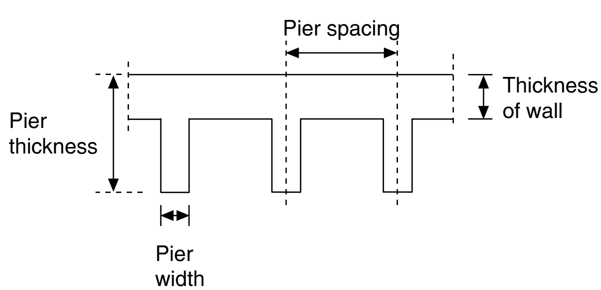


Fig. 10.2 *Diagrammatic view of the definitions used in Table 10.6 (Fig. 5.2, EC 6).*

Example 10.1 Design of a loadbearing brick wall (EC 6)

The internal load-bearing brick wall shown in *Fig. 10.3* supports an ultimate axial load of 140 kN per metre run including self-weight of the wall. The wall is 102.5 mm thick and 4 m long. Assuming that the manufacturing control of the units is category II and the execution control is class 2, design the wall.

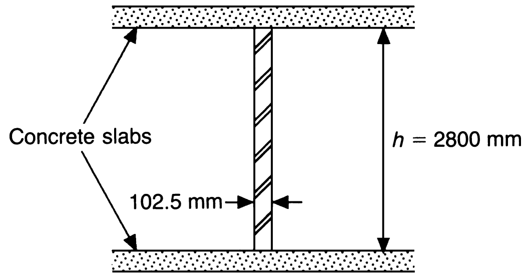


Fig. 10.3

LOADING

Ultimate design load, $N_{Ed} = 140 \text{ kN m}^{-1} = 140 \text{ N mm}^{-1}$

SLENDERNESS RATIO (SR)

Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall, therefore effective height of the wall, h_{ef}, is given by

$$h_{ef} = \rho_n h = 0.75 \times 2800 = 2100\text{mm}$$

Effective thickness of wall, t_{ef} = actual thickness (single leaf) = 102.5 mm

Slenderness ratio, SR $= \dfrac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \dfrac{2100}{102.5} = 20.5 < 27 \Rightarrow$ the effects of creep can be ignored, i.e. $e_k = 0$

CAPACITY REDUCTION FACTOR

Eccentricity at the top and bottom of wall

$M_{id}/N_{id} = 0$ since the wall is axially loaded
$e_{he} = 0$, since there are no horizontal loads present
$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2100/450 = 4.7\text{mm}$

The eccentricity of the design vertical load at the top and bottom of the wall, e_i, is given by

$$e_i = M_i/N_i + e_{hi} \pm e_{init} = 0 + 0 + 4.7 \geq 0.05t = 0.05 \times 102.5 = 5.125 \text{ mm}$$

Hence $e_i = 5.125 \text{ mm} = 0.05t$
The corresponding capacity reduction factor, $\Phi_i = 1 - 2e_i/t = 1 - 2 \times (0.05t)/t = 0.9$

Eccentricity in middle of the wall

$$M_{md}/N_{md} = 0$$

$e_{hm} = 0$, since there are no horizontal loads present

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2100/450 = 4.7 \text{ mm}$$

Eccentricity of the design vertical load in the middle of the wall, e_m, is given by

$$e_m = M_{md}/N_{md} + e_{hm} \pm e_{init} = 0 + 0 + 4.7 \geq 0.05t = 0.05 \times 102.5 = 5.125 \text{ mm}$$

Total eccentricity in the middle of the wall, $e_{mk} = e_m + e_k = 5.125 + 0 = 0.05t$
Modulus of elasticity of masonry, $E = 1000f_k$ (Cl. 2.9 of National Annex to EC 6)

$$u = \frac{\dfrac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{e_{mk}}{t}} = \frac{20.5 - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{(0.05t)}{t}} = 0.875$$

Example 10.1 *continued*

$$A_1 = 1 - 2\frac{e_{mk}}{t} = 1 - 2 \times \frac{0.05t}{t} = 0.9$$

$$\Phi_m = A_1 e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} = 0.9 \times e^{-\frac{0.875^2}{2}} = 0.61 \quad \text{(critical)}$$

DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALL (N_{Rd})

Modification factor
Small plan area modification factor does not apply since horizontal cross-sectional area of wall, $A = 0.1025 \times 4.0 = 0.41\ m^2 > 0.1\ m^2$.

Safety factor for materials (γ_M)
Since manufacturing control is Category II and execution control is Class 2, from *Table 10.6* $\gamma_M = 3.0$

Design vertical load resistance

$$N_{Rd} = \frac{\Phi_{i,m} t f_k}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.61 \times 102.5 f_k}{3.0}$$

DETERMINATION OF f_k
For structural stability

$$N_{Rd} \geq N_{Ed}$$

$$\frac{0.61 \times 102.5 \times f_k}{3.0} \geq 140$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{140}{20.8} = 6.8\ \text{Nmm}^2$$

SELECTION OF BRICK AND MORTAR TYPE
Assuming the wall is made of Group 1 clay bricks of standard format size laid in M4 general purpose mortar

$\Rightarrow K = 0.5$ (*Table 10.5*)
$\Rightarrow f_m = 4\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$ (*Table 10.4*)
$\Rightarrow$ shape factor = 0.85 (section 10.7.2)
$\Rightarrow$ conditioning factor = 1 (assuming units are manufactured to EN 771-1)

The characteristic strength of masonry, f_k, is given by

$$f_k = K f_b^{0.7} f_m^{0.3}$$

$$6.8 = 0.5 \times f_b^{0.7} \times 4^{0.3}$$

Therefore the normalised compressive strength of the units, $f_b \geq 23\ \text{N mm}^{-2}$
The declared mean compressive strength of the units is given by

f_b = conditioning factor × shape factor × declared mean compressive strength
23 = 1.0 × 0.85 × declared mean compressive strength

Therefore the required declared air dried mean compressive strength of units $\geq 27\ \text{N mm}^{-2}$
The actual brick type that will be specified on the working drawings will depend not only upon the structural requirements but also on aesthetics, durability, buildability and cost, amongst other considerations. In this particular case the designer may specify the minimum requirements as declared air dried mean brick strength: $\geq 27\ \text{N mm}^{-2}$, mortar mix: 1:1:6, frost resistance/soluble salt content: F0/S1 (see *Tables 5.1* and *5.2*). Assuming that the wall will be plastered on both sides, appearance of the brick will not need to be specified.

Example 10.2 Design of a brick wall with 'small' plan area (EC 6)

Redesign the wall in Example 10.1 assuming that it is only 0.9 m long.

The calculations for this case are essentially the same as for the 4 m long wall except for the fact the plan area of the wall, A, is now less than 0.1m^2, being equal to $0.1025 \times 0.9 = 0.09225$ m^2. The 'plan area' modification factor is equal to

$$(0.70 + 1.5A) = 0.7 + 1.5 \times 0.09225 = 0.83$$

Therefore the modified characteristic compressive strength of masonry is given by

$$0.83 f_k$$

From the above $\gamma_M = 3.0$ and $\Phi_m = 0.61$. Hence, the required characteristic compressive strength of masonry, f_k, is given by

$$\frac{0.61 \times 102.5 \times 0.83 f_k}{3.0} \geq 140$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{140}{17.3} = 8.1 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Again assuming the wall is made of Group 1 clay bricks of standard format size laid in M4 general purpose mortar

$$\Rightarrow K = 0.5$$

$$\Rightarrow f_m = 4 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{shape factor} = 0.85$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{conditioning factor} = 1.0$$

$$f_k = K f_b^{0.7} f_m^{0.3}$$

$$8.1 = 0.5 \times f_b^{0.7} \times 4^{0.3}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_b \geq 29.5 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

$$f_b = \text{conditioning factor} \times \text{shape factor} \times \text{declared mean compressive strength}$$
$$29.5 = 1.0 \times 0.85 \times \text{declared mean compressive strength}$$

Therefore the declared air dried mean compressive strength of units ≥ 35 Nmm^{-2}

Hence it can be immediately seen that walls having similar construction details but a plan area of < 0.1 m^2 will have a lower load-carrying capacity.

Example 10.3 Analysis of brick walls stiffened with piers (EC 6)

A 3.5 m high wall shown in cross-section *Fig. 10.4* is constructed from clay bricks of standard format size having a declared air dried mean compressive strength of 30 Nmm^{-2} laid in a 1:1:6 mortar. Calculate the ultimate load bearing capacity of the wall assuming the partial safety factor for materials is 3.0 and the resistance to lateral loading is (A) 'enhanced' and (B) 'simple'.

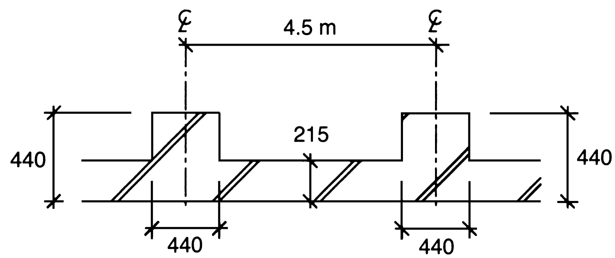


Fig. 10.4

ASSUMING 'ENHANCED' RESISTANCE

Characteristic compressive strength (f_k)
Conditioning factor = 1 since the declared strengths are on air dried units.
Shape factor = 0.85 since the bricks are standard format size.
Declared mean compressive strength of bricks is 30 Nmm^{-2}.
Normalised compressive strength, f_b, is given by

$$f_b = \text{conditioning factor} \times \text{shape factor} \times \text{declared mean compressive strength}$$
$$= 1.0 \times 0.85 \times 30 = 25.5 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

From *Table 10.4*, 1:1:6 mix corresponds to a grade M4 mortar. The characteristic compressive strength of masonry, f_k, is given by

$$f_k = Kf_b^{0.7}f_m^{0.3} = 0.5 \times 25.5^{0.7} \times 4^{0.3} = 7.3 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Capacity reduction factor (Φ)

Slenderness ratio (SR)
With 'enhanced' resistance the effective height of wall, h_{ef}, is given by

$$h_{ef} = \rho_n h = 0.75 \times 3500 = 2625 \text{ mm}$$

$$\frac{\text{Pier spacing}}{\text{Pier width}} = \frac{4500}{440} = 10.2$$

$$\frac{\text{Pier thickness}}{\text{Thickness of wall}} = \frac{440}{215} = 2.0$$

Hence from *Table 10.8*, stiffness coefficient $\rho_t = 1.2$. The effective thickness of the wall, t_{ef}, is equal to

$$t_{ef} = \rho_t t = 1.2 \times 215 = 258 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2625}{258} = 10.2 < 27 \Rightarrow \text{the effects of creep may be ignored, i.e. } e_k = 0$$

Example 10.3 *continued*

Capacity reduction factor

Eccentricity at the top and bottom of the wall, e_i

$$M_i/N = 0 \text{ since the wall is axially loaded}$$

$$e_{hi} = 0\text{, since there are no horizontal loads present}$$

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2625/450 = 5.83 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_i = M_i/N_i + e_{hi} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t = 0.05 \times 215 = 10.75 \text{ mm}$$

$$= 0 + 0 + 5.83$$

Hence $e_i = 0.05t$ and $\Phi_i = 1 - 2e_i/t = 1 - 2 \times (0.05t)/t = 0.9$

Eccentricity of the design load in the middle of the wall, e_{mk}

$$M_{md}/N_{md} = 0$$

$$e_{hm} = 0\text{, since there are no horizontal loads present}$$

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2625/450 = 5.83 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_m = M_{md}/N_{md} + e_{hm} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t = 0.05 \times 215 = 10.75 \text{ mm}$$

$$= 0 + 0 + 5.83$$

$$e_{mk} = e_m + e_k = 0.05t + 0 = 0.05t$$

Hence $e_{mk} = 0.05t$

Modulus of elasticity of masonry, $E = 1000f_k$ (Cl. 2.9 of National Annex to EC 6)

$$u = \frac{\dfrac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{e_{mk}}{t}} = \frac{10.2 - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{(0.05t)}{t}} = 0.388$$

$$A_1 = 1 - 2\frac{e_{mk}}{t} = 1 - 2 \times \frac{0.05t}{t} = 0.9$$

$$\Phi_m = A_1 e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} = 0.9e^{-\frac{0.388^2}{2}} = 0.83 \quad \text{(critical)}$$

Design resistance of wall (N_{Rd})

Safety factor for material (γ_M)

$$\gamma_M = 3.0$$

Design resistance of wall

$$N_{Rd} = \frac{\Phi_{i,m} t f_k}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.83 \times 215 \times 7.3}{3.0} = 434 \text{ Nmm}^{-1} \text{ run of wall} = 434 \text{ kNm}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

Hence the ultimate load capacity of wall, assuming enhanced resistance, is 434 kNm^{-1} run of wall.

ASSUMING 'SIMPLE' RESISTANCE

Characteristic compressive strength (f_k)

As before, $f_k = Kf_b^{0.7}f_m^{0.3} = 0.5 \times 25.5^{0.7} \times 4^{0.3} = 7.3 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$

Example 10.3 *continued*

Capacity reduction factor (Φ)

Slenderness ratio (SR)

Since the end restraints are 'simple'

$$h_{ef} = \text{actual height} = 3500 \text{ mm}$$
$$t_{ef} = 258 \text{ mm (as above)}$$

Hence

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{3500}{258} = 13.6 < 27 \Rightarrow \text{the effects of creep may be ignored, i.e. } e_k = 0$$

Capacity reduction factor

Eccentricity at the top and bottom of the wall, e_i

$$M_i/N = 0 \text{ since the wall is axially loaded}$$
$$e_{hi} = 0, \text{ since there are no horizontal loads present}$$
$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 3500/450 = 7.77 \text{ mm}$$
$$e_i = M_i/N_i + e_{hi} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t = 0.05 \times 215 = 10.75 \text{ mm}$$
$$= 0 + 0 + 7.7 = 7.7 \text{ mm}$$

Hence $e_i = 0.05t$ and $\Phi_i = 1 - 2e_i/t = 1 - 2 \times (0.05t)/t = 0.9$

Eccentricity of the design load in the middle of the wall, e_{mk}

$$M_{md}/N_{md} = 0$$
$$e_{hm} = 0, \text{ since there are no horizontal loads present}$$
$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 3500/450 = 7.77 \text{ mm}$$
$$e_m = M_{md}/N_{md} + e_{hm} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t = 0.05 \times 215 = 10.75 \text{ mm}$$
$$= 0 + 0 + 5.83 = 5.83 \text{ mm}$$
$$e_{mk} = e_m + e_k = 0.05t + 0 = 0.05t$$

Hence $e_{mk} = 0.05t$

Assuming $E = 1000f_k$ (as above), implies that

$$u = \frac{\frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} - 2}{23 - 37\frac{e_{mk}}{t}} = \frac{13.6 - 2}{23 - 37\frac{(0.05t)}{t}} = 0.548$$

$$A_1 = 1 - 2\frac{e_{mk}}{t} = 1 - 2 \times \frac{0.05t}{t} = 0.9$$

$$\Phi_m = A_1 e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} = 0.9e^{-\frac{0.548^2}{2}} = 0.77 \quad \text{(critical)}$$

Design resistance of wall (N_{Rd})

The design vertical load resistance of the wall, N_{Rd}, is given by:

$$N_{Rd} = \frac{\Phi_{i,m} t f_k}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.77 \times 215 \times 7.3}{3.0} = 402 \text{ Nmm}^{-1} \text{ run of wall} = 402 \text{ kNm}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

Hence it can be immediately seen that, all other factors being equal, walls having simple resistance have a lower resistance to failure.

Example 10.4 Design of a cavity wall (EC 6)

A cavity wall of length 6m supports the loads shown in *Fig. 10.5*. The inner leaf is built using solid concrete block of length 440 mm, width 100 mm and height 215 mm, faced with plaster, and the outer leaf from standard format clay bricks. Design the wall assuming that the execution control is Class 1 and that the manufacturing control of the concrete blocks is Category II. The self-weight of the blocks and plaster can be taken to be 2.4 kNm^{-2}.

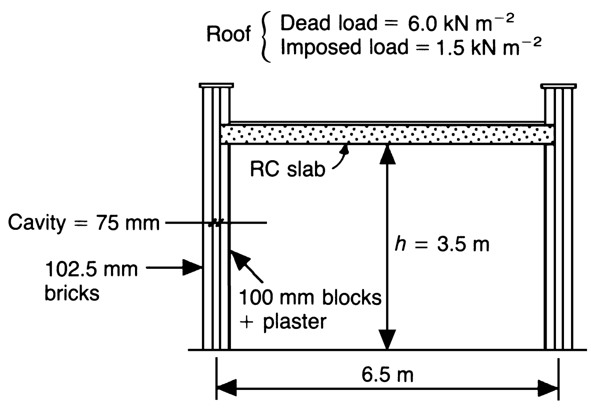


Fig. 10.5

The following assumes that the load is carried by the inner leaf only. The load-bearing capacity of the wall is therefore based on the horizontal cross-sectional area of the inner leaf alone, although the stiffening effect of the other leaf has been taken into account when calculating the slenderness ratio.

LOADING

Characteristic permanent load g_k

$$g_k = \text{roof load} + \text{self weight of wall}$$
$$= \frac{(6.5 \times 1) \times 6}{2} + (3.5 \times 1) \times 2.4$$
$$= 19.5 + 8.4 = 27.9 \text{ kN per m run of wall}$$

Characteristic imposed load, q_k

$$q_k = \text{roof load} = \frac{(6.5 \times 1)1.5}{2} = 4.9 \text{ kN per m run of wall}$$

Ultimate design load, N_{Ed}

$$N_{Ed} = 1.35g_k + 1.5q_k = 1.35 \times 27.9 + 1.5 \times 4.9 = 45 \text{ kN m}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALL

Slenderness ratio (SR)

Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall:

$$h_{ef} = 0.75 \times \text{height} = 0.75 \times 3500 = 2625 \text{ mm}$$
$$t_{ef} = \sqrt[3]{t_1^3 + t_2^3} = \sqrt[3]{102.5^3 + 100^3} = 127.6 \text{ mm}$$
$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2625}{127.6} = 20.6 < 27$$

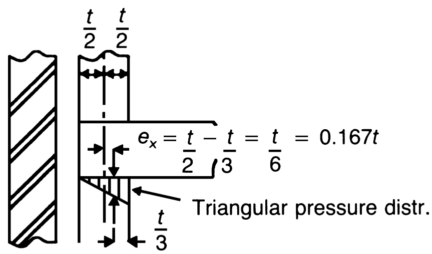
Example 10.4 *continued*

Capacity reduction factor

Eccentricity at the top and bottom of the wall, e_i

The load from the concrete roof will be applied eccentrically as shown in the figure. The eccentricity is given by:

$$e_x = \frac{t}{2} - \frac{t}{3} = \frac{t}{6} = 0.167t$$



$$M_i/N = e_x = t/6 = 100/6 = 16.7 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_{hi} = 0\text{, since there are no horizontal loads present}$$

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2625/450 = 5.83 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_i = M_i/N_i + e_{hi} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t$$

$$= 16.67 + 0 + 5.83 = 22.5 \text{ mm} = 0.225t$$

Hence $e_i = 0.225t$ and $\Phi_i = 1 - 2e_i/t = 1 - 2 \times (0.225t)/t = 0.55$

Eccentricity of the design load in the middle of the wall, e_{mk}

$$M_{md}/N_{md} \approx {}^1/_2 \times \text{eccentricity at top of wall} = {}^1/_2 \times 16.7 = 8.35 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_{hm} = 0\text{, since there are no horizontal loads}$$

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2625/450 = 5.83 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_m = M_{md}/N_{md} + e_{hm} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t$$

$$= 8.35 + 0 + 5.83 = 14.18 \text{ mm} = 0.1418t$$

$$e_{mk} = e_m + e_k = 0.1418t + 0 = 0.1418t$$

Hence $e_{mk} = 0.1418t$

Modulus of elasticity of masonry, $E = 1000f_k$ (Cl. 2.9 of National Annex to EC 6)

$$u = \frac{\frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} - 2}{23 - 37\frac{e_{mk}}{t}} = \frac{20.6 - 2}{23 - 37\frac{(0.1418t)}{t}} = 1.05$$

$$A_1 = 1 - 2\frac{e_{mk}}{t} = 1 - 2 \times \frac{0.1418t}{t} = 0.716$$

$$\Phi_m = A_1 e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} = 0.716e^{-\frac{1.05^2}{2}} = 0.41$$

Hence capacity reduction factor is 0.41

Example 10.4 *continued*

DESIGN RESISTANCE OF WALL (N_{Rd})

Modification factor

Small plan area modification factor does not apply since horizontal cross-sectional area of wall, $A = 6 \times 0.1 = 0.6\ m^2 > 0.1 m^2$.

Safety factor for materials (γ_M)

Since manufacturing control of the units is Category II and the execution control is Class 1, from *Table 10.6* $\gamma_M = 2.6$

Design resistance

$$N_{Rd} = \frac{\Phi_{i,m} t f_k}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.41 \times 100 f_k}{2.6}$$

DETERMINATION OF f_k

For structural stability

$$N_{Rd} \geq N_{Ed}$$

$$\frac{0.41 \times 100 \times f_k}{2.6} \geq 45$$

Hence

$$f_k \geq \frac{45}{15.77} = 2.85\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$$

SELECTION OF BLOCK AND MORTAR TYPE

Assuming the wall is made of Group 1 concrete blocks of length 440 mm, width 100 mm, height 215 mm laid in M4 general purpose mortar

$\Rightarrow K = 0.55$ (*Table 10.5*)

$\Rightarrow f_m = 4\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$ (*Table 10.4*)

$\Rightarrow$ shape factor = 1.38

$\Rightarrow$ conditioning factor = 1.0 (assuming blocks are manufactured to EN 771-3)

The characteristic strength of masonry, f_k, is given by

$$f_k = K f_b^{0.7} f_m^{0.3}$$

$$2.85 = 0.55 \times f_b^{0.7} \times 4^{0.3}$$

Therefore the normalised compressive strength of the units, $f_b \geq 5.8\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$.

The declared mean compressive strength of the units is given by

f_b = conditioning factor $\times$ shape factor $\times$ declared mean compressive strength
5.8 = 1.0 $\times$ 1.38 $\times$ declared mean compressive strength

Therefore the required declared air dried mean compressive strength of units $\geq 4.2\ \text{Nmm}^{-2}$
The bricks and mortar for the outer leaf would be selected on the basis of appearance and durability.

Example 10.5 Block wall subject to axial load and wind (EC 6)

The inner leaf of the cavity wall shown in *Fig. 10.6(a)* is 6 m in length and required to resist a concentric axial load of 135 kN m^{-1} run, 35 kN m^{-1} run at $t/6$ eccentricity at the top of the wall and a lateral load of 1.2 kN m^{-2}. Assuming the inner leaf is made of Group 1 solid concrete blocks of length 390 mm, width 100 mm and height 190mm, mean air dried compressive strength 20 Nmm^{-2}, laid in mortar designation (iii), check the suitability of the design. Assume the manufacturing control of the units is Category II and the execution control is Class 2.

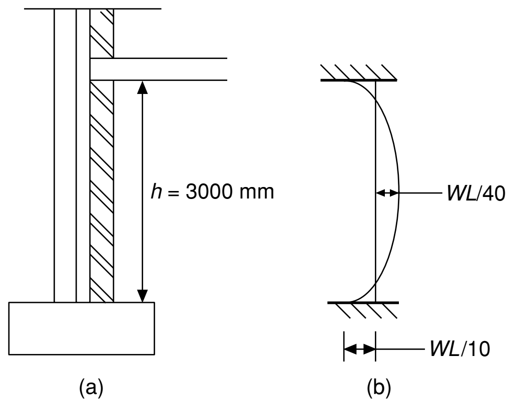


Fig. 10.6

LOADING

Ultimate design load, N_{Ed}

$$N_{Ed} = 135 + 35 = 170 \text{ kN m}^{-1} \text{ run of wall}$$

DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALL

Slenderness ratio (SR)
Concrete slab provides 'enhanced' resistance to wall:

$$h_{ef} = \rho_n h = 0.75 \times 2800 = 2100 \text{ mm}$$

$$t_{ef} = \sqrt[3]{t_1^3 + t_2^3} = \sqrt[3]{102.5^3 + 100^3} = 127.6 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{SR} = \frac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} = \frac{2100}{127.6} = 16.5 < 27$$

CAPACITY REDUCTION FACTOR

Eccentricity at the top of wall

$$M_{id}/N_{id} = 35 \times (t/6)/N = 35 \times (100/6)/170 = 3.43 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_{he} = (WL/10)/N = (1.2 \times 3 \times 2800)/(10 \times 170) = 5.93 \text{ mm} \quad (\textit{Fig. 10.6b})$$

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2100/450 = 4.67 \text{ mm}$$

The eccentricity of the design vertical load at the top and bottom of the wall, e_i, is given by

$$e_i = M_i/N_i + e_{hi} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t$$

$$= 3.43 + 5.93 + 4.67 = 14.03 \text{ mm} = 0.14t$$

Hence $e_i = 0.14t$ and the capacity reduction factor, $\Phi_i = 1 - 2e_i/t = 1 - 2 \times (0.14t)/t = 0.72$

Example 10.5 *continued*

Eccentricity in middle of the wall

$$M_{md}/N_{md} \approx {}^1/_2 \times \text{eccentricity at top of wall} = {}^1/_2 \times 3.43 = 1.72 \text{ mm}$$

$$e_{hm} = (WL/40)/N = (\gamma_F W_k)L/40N = (1.2 \times 3 \times 2800)/(40 \times 170) = 1.48 \text{ mm} \quad (\textit{Fig. 10.6b})$$

$$e_{init} = h_{ef}/450 = 2100/450 = 4.67 \text{ mm}$$

Eccentricity of the design vertical load in the middle of the wall, e_m, is given by

$$e_m = M_{md}/N_{md} + e_{hm} \pm e_{init} \geq 0.05t$$

$$= 1.72 + 1.48 + 4.67 = 7.87 \text{ mm} = 0.0787t$$

Total eccentricity in the middle of the wall, $e_{mk} = e_m + e_k = 0.0787t + 0 = 0.0787t$

Modulus of elasticity of masonry, $E = 1000f_k$ (Cl. 2.9 of National Annex)

$$u = \frac{\dfrac{h_{ef}}{t_{ef}} - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{e_{mk}}{t}} = \frac{16.5 - 2}{23 - 37\dfrac{(0.0787t)}{t}} = 0.722$$

$$A_1 = 1 - 2\frac{e_{mk}}{t} = 1 - 2 \times \frac{0.0787t}{t} = 0.843$$

$$\Phi_m = A_1 e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} = 0.843 \times e^{-\frac{0.722^2}{2}} = 0.65 \quad \text{(critical)}$$

DESIGN VERTICAL LOAD RESISTANCE OF WALL (N_{Rd})

Characteristic compressive strength

The wall is made of Group 1 concrete blocks of length 390 mm, height 190 mm, thickness 100mm, mean compressive strength 20 Nmm^{-2}, laid in M4 general purpose mortar

$\Rightarrow K = 0.55$ (*Table 10.5*)

$\Rightarrow f_m = 4 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$ (*Table 10.4*)

$\Rightarrow$ shape factor = 1.32 (*Table A1*, EN 772–1)

$\Rightarrow$ conditioning factor = 1.0

The normalised mean compressive strength of the units, f_b, is given by

$$f_b = \text{conditioning factor} \times \text{shape factor} \times \text{declared mean compressive strength}$$

$$= 1.0 \times 1.32 \times 20 = 26.4 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

The characteristic strength of masonry, f_k, is given by

$$f_k = K f_b^{0.7} f_m^{0.3} = 0.55 \times 26.4^{0.7} \times 4^{0.3} = 8.2 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Modification factor

Small plan area modification factor does not apply since horizontal cross-sectional area of wall, $A = 6 \times 0.1 = 0.6 \text{ m}^2 > 0.1 \text{ m}^2$.

Safety factor for materials (γ_M)

Since manufacturing control is Category II and execution control is Class 2, from *Table 10.6* $\gamma_M = 3$

Design resistance of wall

$$N_{Rd} = \frac{\Phi_{i,m} t f_k}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.65 \times 100 \times 8.2}{3} = 177.6 \text{ kNm}^{-1} \text{ run} > N_{Ed} \quad \text{OK}$$

10.11 Design of laterally loaded wall panels

Like BS 5628, the design of panel walls in EC 6 is based on 'yield line' principles. The design method for laterally loaded panel walls given in EC 6 is identical to that used in BS 5628 and involves verifying the design value of the moment, M_{Ed}, does not exceed the design value of the moment of resistance of the wall, M_{Rd} i.e.

$$M_{Ed} \leq M_{Rd} \tag{10.18}$$

Since failure may take place about two axes (Fig. 5.21), for a given panel, there will be two design moments and two corresponding moments of resistance. The ultimate design moment per unit height of a panel when the plane of bending is perpendicular to the bed joint, M_{Ed2} (Fig. 5.22), is given by:

$$M_{Ed2} = \alpha_2 W_k \gamma_F l^2 \tag{10.19}$$

The ultimate design moment per unit height of a panel when the plane of bending is parallel to the bed joint, M_{Ed1}, is given by:

$$M_{Ed1} = \mu\alpha_2 W_k \gamma_F l^2 \tag{10.20}$$

where
- μ is the orthogonal ratio
- α_2 is the bending moment coefficient taken from (Annex E)
- γ_F is the partial factor for actions (*Table 10.2*)
- l is the length of the panel between supports
- W_k is the characteristic wind load per unit area

The Tables in Annex E are identical to Table 8 of BS 5628, part of which is reproduced as Table 5.14 of this book.

The corresponding design moments of resistance when the plane of bending is perpendicular, M_{Rd2}, or parallel, M_{Rd1}, to the bed joint is given by equations 10.21 and 10.22 respectively:

$$M_{Rd2} = f_{xd2} Z \tag{10.21}$$

$$M_{Rd1} = f_{xd1} Z \tag{10.22}$$

where
- f_{xd1} design flexural strength parallel to the plane of bending, $f_{xd1} = \dfrac{f_{xk1}}{\gamma_M}$ (10.23)
- f_{xd2} design flexural strength perpendicular to the plane of bending, $f_{xd2} = \dfrac{f_{xk2}}{\gamma_M}$ (10.24)
- Z elastic section modulus
- f_{xk1} characteristic flexural strength parallel to the plane of bending (Table 6 of National Annex to EC 6)
- f_{xk2} characteristic flexural strength perpendicular to the plane of bending (Table 6 of National Annex to EC 6)
- γ_M partial factor for materials (*Table 10.6*).

The characteristic flexural strength values given in Table 6 of the National Annex to EC 6 are identical to those presented in Table 3 of BS 5628, reproduced here as Table 5.13.

Equations 10.18–10.22 form the basis for the design of laterally loaded panel walls, ignoring any contribution from self-weight and other vertical loads. It should be noted, however, since by definition $\mu = f_{kx\ par}/f_{kx\ perp}$, $M_{k\ par} = \mu M_{k\ perp}$ (by dividing equation 10.19 by equation 10.20) that either equations 10.19 and 10.21 or equations 10.20 and 10.22 can be used in design. The full design procedure is summarised in Fig. 5.27 and illustrated by means of the following examples.

Example 10.6 Analysis of a one-way spanning wall panel (EC 6)

Estimate the characteristic wind pressure, W_k, that the cladding panel shown in *Fig. 10.7* can resist assuming that it is constructed using clay bricks having a water absorption of < 7% and mortar designation (iii). Assume $\gamma_F = 1.5$ and $\gamma_M = 2.7$.

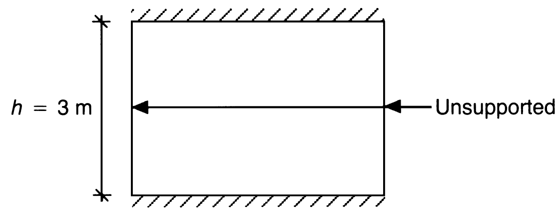


Fig. 10.7

ULTIMATE DESIGN MOMENT (M)

Since the vertical edges are unsupported, the panel must span vertically and, therefore, equations 10.19 and 10.20 cannot be used to determine the design moment here. The critical plane of bending will be parallel to the bed joint and the ultimate design moment at mid-height of the panel, M, is given by

$$M = \frac{\text{Ultimate load} \times \text{height}}{8}$$

Ultimate load on the panel = wind pressure × area

$$= (\gamma_F W_k)(\text{height} \times \text{length of panel})$$

$$= 1.5W_k 3000 \times 1000 = 4.5W_k 10^6 \text{ N m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Hence

$$M = \frac{4.5W_k \times 10^6 \times 3000}{8} = 1.6875 \times 10^9 W_k \text{ Nmm m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

MOMENT OF RESISTANCE (M_d)

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 102.5^2}{6} = 1.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3 \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance

The design moment of resistance, M_d, is equal to the moment of resistance when the plane of bending is parallel to the bed joint, $M_{k\,par}$. Hence

$$M_d = M_{k\,par} = \frac{f_{xk1} Z}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.5 \times 1.75 \times 10^6}{2.7} = 0.324 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm m}^{-1}$$

where $f_{xk1} = 0.5$ N mm^{-2} from Table 5.13, since water absorption of clay bricks < 7% and the mortar is designation (iii).

DETERMINATION OF CHARACTERISTIC WIND PRESSURE (W_K)

For structural stability:

$$M \le M_d$$

$$1.6875 \times 10^9 W_k \le 0.324 \times 10^6$$

$$W_k \le 0.192 \times 10^{-3} \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Hence the characteristic wind pressure that the panel can resist is 0.192×10^{-3} Nmm^{-2} or 0.192 kNm^{-2}.

Example 10.7 Analysis of a two-way spanning panel wall (EC 6)

The panel wall shown in *Fig. 10.7* is constructed using clay bricks having a water absorption of greater than 12 per cent and mortar designation (ii). The clay bricks are Category II and the execution control is Class 2. Calculate the characteristic wind pressure, W_k, the wall can withstand assuming the wall is simply supported on all four edges.

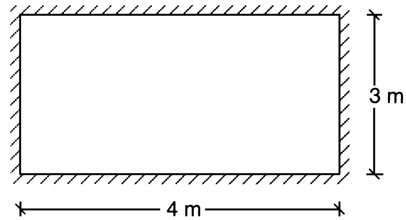


Fig. 10.8

ULTIMATE DESIGN MOMENT (M)

Orthogonal ratio (μ)

$$\mu = \frac{f_{xk1}}{f_{xk2}} = \frac{0.3}{0.9} = 0.33 \text{ (}\textit{Table 5.13}\text{)}$$

Therefore use $\mu = 0.35$ values in *Table 5.14* to determine the design bending moments acting on the wall.

Bending moment coefficient (α)

$$\frac{h}{L} = \frac{3}{4} = 0.75$$

Hence, $\alpha_2 = 0.052$ from *Table 5.14*(E) (based on Annex E, Wall support condition E, EC 6)

Ultimate design moment

$$M = M_{perp} = \alpha_2 \gamma_F W_k L^2 = 0.052 \times 1.5 W_k \times 4^2 \text{ kNm m}^{-1} \text{ run} = 1.248 \times 10^6 W_k \text{ Nmm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

Note that $\gamma_F = 1.5$ since wind load is the primary action.

MOMENT OF RESISTANCE (M_d)

Safety factor for materials (γ_m)

Since the execution control is Class 2 $\gamma_M = 2.7$ (*Table 10.6*)

Section modulus (Z)

$$Z = \frac{bd^2}{6} = \frac{10^3 \times 102.5^2}{6} = 1.75 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^3 \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ length of wall}$$

Moment of resistance (M_d)

$$M_d = M_{k\ perp} = \frac{f_{xk2} Z}{\gamma_M} = \frac{0.9 \times 1.75 \times 10^6}{2.7} = 0.583 \times 10^6 \text{ Nmm m}^{-1} \text{ run}$$

DETERMINATION OF CHARACTERISTIC WIND PRESSURE (W_K)

For structural stability

$$M \leq M_d$$

$$1.248 \times 10^6 W_k \leq 0.583 \times 10^6$$

$$\Rightarrow W_k \leq 0.467 \text{ kN m}^{-2}$$

Hence the panel is able to resist a characteristic wind pressure of 0.467 kN m^{-2}.

Chapter 11

Eurocode 5: Design of timber structures

This chapter briefly describes the content of Part 1.1 of Eurocode 5, the new European standard for the design of buildings in timber, which is expected to replace its British equivalent BS 5268: Part 2 about 2010. The chapter highlights the principal differences between the European standard and BS 5268: Part 2. It also includes a number of worked examples to illustrate the new procedures for designing flexural and compression members.

11.1 Introduction

Eurocode 5 applies to the design of building and civil engineering structures in timber. It is based on limit state principles and comes in three Parts as shown in *Table 11.1*.

Part 1.1 of Eurocode 5, which is the subject of this discussion, gives the general design rules for timber structures together with specific design rules for buildings. It is largely similar in scope to Part 2 of BS 5268, which was discussed in Chapter 6. Part 1.1 of Eurocode 5, hereafter referred to as EC 5, was published as a preliminary standard, reference no: DD ENV 1995–1–1, in 1994 and then in final form in 2004. It is expected to replace BS 5268 about 2010.

Design of building structures cannot wholly be undertaken using EC 5, however. Reference will have to be made to a number of other documents, notably EN 1990 and Eurocode 1 to determine the design values of actions and combination of actions, including values of the partial factors for actions, and EN 338 for material properties of timber such as bending and shear strength, elastic modulus, density, etc. Reference may also have to be made to Part 1.2 of Eurocode 5 (EN 1995–1–2) which gives the general design rules for timber structures in fire conditions. Like EC 5, Part 1.2 was published in final form in 2004 and the design methods are essentially the same as those in the corresponding British Standard, BS 5268–4. Neither Part 1.2 nor Part 2 of Eurocode 5 on timber bridges which has also been available in final form since 2004 are discussed in this chapter.

Table 11.1 Scope of Eurocode 5: Design of Timber Structures

Part	*Subject*
1.1	General – Common Rules and Rules for Buildings
1.2	General rules – Structural Fire Design
2	Bridges

11.2 Layout

In common with the other structural Eurocodes, EC 5 has been drafted by a panel of experts drawn from the various EC Member State countries. It is based on studies carried out by Working Commission W18: Timber Structures of the CIB International Council for Building Research Studies and Documentation, in particular on CIB Structural Timber Design Code: Report No. 66, published in 1983. The following subjects are covered in EC 5:

Chapter 1: General
Chapter 2: Basis of design
Chapter 3: Material properties
Chapter 4: Durability
Chapter 5: Basis of structural action
Chapter 6: Ultimate limit states
Chapter 7: Serviceability limit states
Chapter 8: Connections with metal fasteners
Chapter 9: Components and assemblies
Chapter 10: Structural detailing and control
Chapter 11: Special rules for diaphragm structures

Also included are Annexes for shear failure at connections, for mechanically jointed beams and for built-up columns. All the Annexes are labelled 'informative'. As explained in section 7.5.4 of this book, this signifies that this material does not have any status but has been included merely for information.

As can be appreciated from the above contents list the organisation of material is different to that used in BS 5268 but follows the layout adopted in the other structural Eurocodes. Generally, the design rules in EC 5 are sequenced on the basis of action effects rather than on the type of member, as in BS 5268. The main reason cited for this change in style is to avoid repetition of design rules and also to promote a better understanding of structural behaviour.

This chapter briefly describes the contents of EC 5, in so far as it is relevant to the design of flexural and compression members in solid timber. The rules governing the design of joints or other timber types are not discussed.

11.3 Principles/Application rules

As with the other structural Eurocodes and for the reasons discussed in Chapter 7, the clauses in EC 5 have been divided into Principles and Application rules. Principles comprise general statements, definitions, requirements and models for which no alternative is permitted. Principles are indicated by the letter P after the clause numbers. The Application rules are generally recognised rules which follow the statements and satisfy the requirements given in the Principles. The absence of the letter P after the clause number indicates an application rule. The use of alternative application rules to those recommended in the Eurocode is permitted provided it can be show that the alternatives are at least equivalent and do not adversely affect other design requirements. It is worth noting, however, that if an alternative application rule is used the resulting design will not be deemed Eurocode compliant

11.4 Nationally Determined Parameters

Like the other structural Eurocodes, Eurocode 5 allows some parameters and procedures to be determined at the national level. Where a national choice is allowed this is indicated in a note in the normative text under the relevant clause. The note may include the recommended value of the parameter, or preferred method, etc., but the actual value, methodology, etc., to be used in a particular Member State country is given in the appropriate National Annex. The recommended values of these parameters and design methods/procedures are collectively referred to as Nationally Determined Parameters (NDPs). The NDPs determine various aspects of design but perhaps most importantly the level of safety of structures during execution (i.e. construction/fabrication) and in-service, which remains the responsibility of individual nations.

The UK National Annex to EC 5 was published in 2006 and the discussion and worked examples in this chapter are based on the material in EC 5 and the NDPs in the accompanying National Annex.

11.5 Symbols

Chapter 1 of EC 5 lists the symbols used in EC 5. Those relevant to this discussion are reproduced below.

GEOMETRICAL PROPERTIES:

b	breadth of beam
h	depth of beam
A	area
i	radius of gyration
I	second moment of area
W_y, W_z	elastic modulus about y–y (major axis) and z–z (minor axis)

BENDING:

l	span
M_d	design moment
G	permanent action
Q	variable action
$\sigma_{m,d}$	design normal bending stress
$f_{m,k}$	characteristic bending strength
$f_{m,d}$	design bending strength
γ_G	partial coefficient for permanent actions
γ_Q	partial coefficient for variable actions
γ_M	partial factor for material properties, modelling uncertainties and geometric variations
k_{mod}	modification factor to strength values
k_{sys}	load sharing factor
k_{inst}	instability factor for lateral buckling
$E_{0,05}$	fifth percentile value of modulus of elasticity
E_{mean}	mean value of modulus of elasticity (parallel) to grain

G_{mean}	mean value of shear modulus = $E_{mean}/16$

DEFLECTION:

u_{inst}	instantaneous deformation
$u_{inst,G}$	instantaneous deformation due to a permanent action G
$u_{inst,Q,1}$	instantaneous deformation for the leading variable action Q_1
u_{fin}	final deformation
$u_{fin,G}$	final deformation due to a permanent action G
$u_{fin,Q,1}$	final deformation for the leading variable action Q_1
k_{def}	deformation factor
$w_{net,fin}$	net final deflection
u_m	bending deflection
u_v	shear deflection

VIBRATION:

f_1	fundamental frequency of vibration
b	floor width
l	floor length
v	unit impulse velocity
ζ	damping coefficient
n_{40}	number of first order modes with natural frequencies below 40 Hz

SHEAR:

V_d	design shear force
τ_d	design shear stress
$f_{v,k}$	characteristic shear strength
$f_{v,d}$	design shear strength

BEARING:

$F_{90,d}$	design bearing force
l	length of bearing
$\sigma_{c,90,d}$	design compression stress perpendicular to grain
$f_{c,90,k}$	characteristic compression strength perpendicular to grain
$f_{c,90,d}$	design compression strength perpendicular to grain

COMPRESSION:

l_{ef}	effective length of column
λ_y,λ_z	slenderness ratios about y–y and z–z axes
$\lambda_{rel,y},\lambda_{rel,z}$	relative slenderness ratios about y–y and z–z axes
N	design axial force
$\sigma_{c,0,d}$	design compression stress parallel to grain
$f_{c,0,k}$	characteristic compression strength parallel to grain
$f_{c,0,d}$	design compression strength parallel to grain
$\sigma_{m,y,d},\sigma_{m,z,d}$	design bending stresses parallel to grain
$f_{m,y,d},f_{m,z,d}$	design bending strengths parallel to grain
k_c	compression factor

11.6 Basis of design

As pointed out above, EC 5, unlike BS 5268, is based on limit state principles. However, in common with other limit state codes, EC 5 recommends that the two principal categories of limit states to be considered in design are ultimate and serviceability limit states. A separate third limit state of durability is also mentioned in section 4 of EC 5 which covers the risk of timber decay due to fungal or insect attack as well as the risk of corrosion of metal fasteners and connections, e.g. nails, screws and staples. Measures to reduce the risk of timber decay include selecting materials which are naturally durable or the use of appropriate preservative treatments. Possible measures against corrosion attack of metal fasteners include the use of zinc coatings or stainless steel.

The terms ultimate state and serviceability state apply in the same way as is understood in other limit state codes. Thus ultimate limit states are those associated with collapse or with other forms of structural failure which may endanger the safety of people while serviceability limit states correspond to states beyond which specific service criteria are no longer met. The serviceability limit states which must be checked in EC 5 are deflection and vibration. The ultimate limit states, which must be checked singly or in combination, include bending, shear, compression and buckling. The various design rules for checking these limit states are discussed later.

11.6.1 ACTIONS

Action is the Eurocode terminology for loads and imposed deformations. Permanent actions, G, are all the fixed loads acting on the structure, including the finishes, fixtures and self weight of the structure. Variable actions, Q, include the imposed, wind and snow loads.

Clause 2.3.1.1 of EC 5 recommends that the actions to be used in design, principally characteristic permanent, G_k, and variable, Q_k, actions, should be taken from Eurocode 1: *Actions on structures*. Guidance on determining the design values of actions and combination of actions, including the partial safety factors for actions, are given in EN 1990: *Basis of structural design*. These documents and topics are briefly discussed in section 8.5 of this book. As noted there, the design value of an action (F_d) is obtained by multiplying the representative value (F_{rep}) by the appropriate partial safety factor for actions (γ_f):

$$F_d = \gamma_f F_{rep} \tag{11.1}$$

Table 11.2 shows the relevant partial safety factors for the ultimate limit state of strength. Other safety factors will apply in other design situations. For example, the partial factors for the ultimate limit states of equilibrium are shown in *Table 8.6*. In equation 11.1, F_{rep} is generally taken as the characteristic value of a permanent or variable action (i.e. F_k). Assuming that the member being designed is subjected to one or more permanent actions and one variable action only, i.e. load combination 1 in *Table 11.2*, the partial safety factor for permanent actions, γ_G, will normally be taken as 1.35 and for the variable action, γ_Q as 1.5. As discussed in section 8.5.3, it is possible to improve structural efficiency by using expressions 6.10a and 6.10b of EN 1990 (respectively, load combination 3(a) and 3(b)/3(c) in *Table 11.2*) to estimate the design values of actions but the value of 1.35 for γ_G is conservative and used throughout this chapter.

11.6.2 MATERIAL PROPERTIES

EC 5, unlike BS 5268, does not contain the material properties, e.g. bending and shear strengths, necessary for sizing members. This information is to be found in a CEN supporting standard for timber products, namely EN 338: *Structural Timber: Strength classes*.

Table 11.3 shows the range of timber strength classes available for design. In practice the most commonly recommended strength classes are C16 and C24. The table also gives the characteristic strength and stiffness properties and density values for each class. Note that the strength class indicates the characteristic bending strength of the timber. Comparison with the strength classes used in BS 5268 (*Table 6.3*) shows that they are in fact identical except class TR26. However, there are considerable differences in the values of strength for the same class of timber. This is because the strengths in EN 338 are fifth percentile values derived directly from laboratory tests of five minutes duration whereas those in BS 5268 are grade stresses which have been reduced for long-term duration and already include a safety factor. One benefit of using characteristic values of material properties rather than grade stresses is that it will make it easier to sanction the use of new materials and component for structural purposes, since such values can be utilised immediately, without first having to determine what reduction factors are needed to convert them to permissible or working values.

The characteristic values of strength in *Table 11.3* are related to a depth in bending and width in tension of 150 mm. For depths in bending or widths in tension of solid timber, h, less than 150 mm the characteristic bending and tension strengths may be increased by the factor k_h given

Table 11.2 Load combinations and partial safety/combination factors for the ultimate limit state of strength

Limit state/Load combination	*Load Type*				
	Permanent, G_k		*Imposed, Q_k*		*Wind, W_k*
	Unfavourable	*Favourable*	*Unfavourable*	*Favourable*	
Strength:					
1. Permanent and variable	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5	0	–
2. Permanent and wind	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	–	–	1.5
3. Permanent, imposed and wind					
(a)	1.35	1.0	1.5$\psi_{0,1}$	0	1.5$\psi_{0,2}$
(b)	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5	0	1.5ψ_0
(c)	1.35/1.35ξ	1.0	1.5ψ_0	0	1.5

Table 11.3 Structural timber strength classes (Table 1, EN 338)

Species type		*Poplar and conifer species*									*Deciduous species*					
		C14	*C16*	*C18*	*C22*	*C24*	*C27*	*C30*	*C35*	*C40*	*D30*	*D35*	*D40*	*D50*	*D60*	*D70*
Strength properties (Nmm^{-2})																
Bending	$f_{m,k}$	14	16	18	22	24	27	30	35	40	30	35	40	50	60	70
Tension parallel	$f_{t,0,k}$	8	10	11	13	14	16	18	21	24	18	21	24	30	36	42
Tension perpendicular	$f_{t,90,k}$	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.9
Compression parallel	$f_{c,0,k}$	16	17	18	20	21	22	23	25	26	23	25	26	29	32	34
Compression perpendicular	$f_{c,90,k}$	4.3	4.6	4.8	5.1	5.3	5.6	5.7	6.0	6.3	8.0	8.4	8.8	9.7	10.5	13.5
Shear	$f_{v,k}$	1.7	1.8	2.0	2.4	2.5	2.8	3.0	3.4	3.8	3.0	3.4	3.8	4.6	5.3	6.0
Stiffness properties ($kN\ mm^{-2}$)																
Mean modulus of elasticity parallel	$E_{0,mean}$	7	8	9	10	11	12	12	13	14	10	10	11	14	17	20
5% modulus of elasticity parallel	$E_{0,05}$	4.7	5.4	6.0	6.7	7.4	8.0	8.0	8.7	9.4	8.0	8.7	9.4	11.8	14.3	6.8
Mean modulus of elasticity perpendicular	$E_{90,mean}$	0.23	0.27	0.30	0.33	0.37	0.40	0.40	0.43	0.47	0.64	0.69	0.75	0.93	1.13	1.33
Mean shear modulus	G_{mean}	0.44	0.50	0.56	0.63	0.69	0.75	0.75	0.81	0.88	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.88	1.06	1.25
Density ($kg\ m^{-3}$)																
Density	ρ_k	290	310	320	340	350	370	380	400	420	530	560	590	650	700	900
Average density	ρ_{mean}	350	370	380	410	420	450	460	480	500	640	670	700	780	840	1080

Table 11.4 Partial factors, γ_M, for solid timber (based on Table 2.3, EC 5)

Design situation	γ_M
Fundamental combinations for solid timber	1.3
Accidental combinations	1.0
Serviceability limit states	1.0

by:

$$k_h = \text{lesser of } \left(\frac{150}{h}\right)^{0.2} \text{ and } 1.3 \qquad (11.2)$$

The characteristic strengths, X_k, are converted to design values, X_d, by dividing by a partial factor, γ_M, taken from *Table 11.4*, and multiplying by a factor k_{mod}, obtained from *Table 11.5*.

Note that γ_M is not simply a partial factor for materials but also takes account of modelling and geometric uncertainties.

$$X_d = k_{mod} \frac{X_k}{\gamma_M} \qquad (11.3)$$

EC 5, like BS 5268, allows the design strengths determined using equation 11.3 to be multiplied by a number of other factors as appropriate such as k_{crit} (section 11.4.4), k_v (section 11.4.5), $k_{c,90}$ (section 11.4.6) and the loading sharing factor, k_{sys}, where several equally spaced similar members are able to resist a common load. Typical members which fall into this category may include joists in flat roofs or floors with a maximum span of 6m and wall studs with a maximum height of 4m (clause 5.4.6, ENV EC 5). According to clause 6.6 of EC 5 a value of k_{sys} = 1.1 may generally be assumed.

As can be seen from *Table 11.5*, k_{mod} takes into account the effect on strength parameters of the duration of load and the environmental conditions that the structure will experience in service. EC 5 defines three service classes, which are the same as those in BS 5268, and five load duration classes, which differ from those in BS 5268, as summarised in *Tables 11.6* and *11.7* respectively. See also *Table 2* of National Annex to EC 5 for guidance on assignment of timber elements in building structures to service class.

Where a load combination consists of actions belonging to different load duration classes the value of k_{mod} should correspond to the action with the shortest duration. For example, for a permanent load and medium-term combination, a value of

Table 11.5 Values of k_{mod} for solid timber (based on Table 3.1, EC 5)

Load duration class	*Service class*		
	1	*2*	*3*
Permanent	0.60	0.60	0.50
Long-term	0.70	0.70	0.55
Medium-term	0.80	0.80	0.65
Short-term	0.90	0.90	0.70
Instantaneous	1.10	1.10	0.90

Table 11.6 Service classes (based on clause 2.3.1.3, EC 5)

Service Class	*Moisture content*	*Typical service conditions*
1	≤ 12%	20°C, 65% RH, i.e. internal, heated conditions
2	≤ 20%	20°C, 85% RH, i.e. internal but cold
3	> 20%	Climatic conditions leading to a higher moisture content than in service class 2, i.e. external

Table 11.7 Load duration classes (Table 1 of National Annex to EC 5)

Load-duration class	*Order of accumulated duration of characteristic load*	*Examples of loading*
Permanent	> 10 years	Self weight
Long-term	6 months – 10 years	Storage
Medium-term	1 week – 6 months	Imposed floor loading
Short-term	< 1 week	Snow, maintenance
Instantaneous		Wind, impact loading

k_{mod} corresponding to the medium-term load should be used.

Having discussed these more general aspects it is now possible to describe in detail EC 5 rules governing the design of flexural and compression members.

11.7 Design of flexural members

The design of flexural members principally involves consideration of the following actions which are discussed next:

1. Bending
2. Deflection
3. Vibration
4. Lateral buckling
5. Shear
6. Bearing

11.7.1 BENDING (CL. 6.1.6, EC 5)

If members are not to fail in bending, the following conditions should be satisfied:

$$\frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \le 1 \qquad (11.4)$$

$$k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \le 1 \qquad (11.5)$$

where

$\sigma_{m,y,d}$ and $\sigma_{m,z,d}$ are the design bending stresses about axes y–y and z–z as shown in *Fig. 11.1*

$f_{m,y,d}$ and $f_{m,z,d}$ are the corresponding design bending strengths

k_m is a factor that allows for the redistribution of secondary bending stresses and assumes the following values:

– for rectangular or square sections; $k_m = 0.7$

– for other cross-sections; $k_m = 1.0$

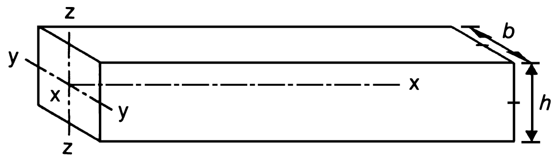


Fig. 11.1 *Beam axes.*

It should be noted that in EC 5 the x–x axis is the axis along the member and that axes y–y and z–z are the major and minor axes respectively. These definitions are consistent with the other structural Eurocodes.

For beams with rectangular cross-sections

$$\sigma_{m,y,d} = \frac{M_{y,d}}{W_y} = \frac{M_{y,d}}{bh^2/6} \qquad (11.6)$$

$$\sigma_{m,z,d} = \frac{M_{z,d}}{W_z} = \frac{M_{z,d}}{hb^2/6} \qquad (11.7)$$

where

$M_{y,d}$ and $M_{z,d}$ are the design bending moments about y–y (major axis) and z–z (minor axis)

W_y and W_z are the values of elastic modulus about y–y and z–z

b is the breadth of beam

h is the depth of beam

11.7.2 DEFLECTION (CL. 7.2, EC 5)

To prevent the possibility of damage to surfacing materials, ceilings, partitions and finishes, and to the functional needs as well as aesthetic requirements, EC 5 recommends various limiting values of deflection for beams (see *Table 7.2*, EC 5). The components of deflection are shown in *Figure 11.2*, where the symbols are defined as:

w_c is the precamber (if applied)

w_{inst} is the instantaneous deflection due to permanent and variable actions

w_{creep} is the creep deflection due to permanent and variable actions

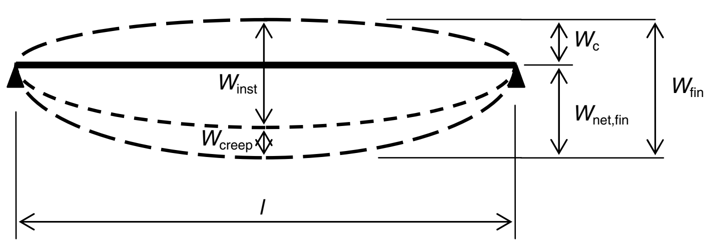


Fig. 11.2 *Components of deflection*

Table 11.8 Limiting values for deflections of beams (based on Table 4 of National Annex to EC 5)

Type of member	*Deflection limits for individual beams, w_{fin}*	
	A member of span, l between two supports	*A member with a cantilever, l*
Roof of floor members with a plastered or plasterboard ceiling	$l/250$	$l/125$
Roof of floor members without a plastered or plasterboard ceiling	$l/150$	$l/75$

w_{fin} is the final deflection due to permanent and variable actions = $w_{inst} + w_{creep}$

$w_{net,fin}$ is the net final deflection due to permanent and variable actions = $w_{fin} - w_c$

Note that if no precamber is applied net final deflection is equal to final deflection.

Clause 2.5 of the National Annex to EC 5 reiterates the advice in clause 4.2(2) of Annex A1 of EN 1990 that deflection and other serviceability requirements should be specified for each project and agreed with the client, but for guidance provides the values for net final deflection of beams in *Table 11.8*, which take into account creep deformations.

According to clause 2.2.3(5) when the member supports one or permanent actions but only a single variable action (i.e. Q_1) the final deflection, u_{fin}, is given by

$$u_{fin} = u_{fin,G} + u_{fin,Q1} \tag{11.8}$$

where

$$u_{fin,G} = u_{instG}(1 + k_{def}) \tag{11.9}$$

$$u_{fin,Q1} = u_{instQ1}(1 + \psi_2 k_{def}) \tag{11.10}$$

in which

k_{def} is the deformation factor

ψ_2 is the factor for quasi permanent value of permanent actions (*Table 8.8*)

The instantaneous deflections, i.e. u_{instG} and u_{instQ1}, can be calculated by means of the expressions given in *Table 6.9* in this book and using $E_{0,mean}$ or $E_{90,mean}$ as appropriate. Note that unlike BS 5268 it is necessary to calculate the deflections produced by permanent and variable actions separately in EC 5. The final deflections are derived from the instantaneous deflection via k_{def} which takes into account the combined effect of creep and moisture content. Recommended values of k_{def} are given in *Table 11.9*.

Table 11.9 Values of k_{def} for solid timber to EN 14081-1 and glue laminated timber to EN 14081 (based on Table 3.2, EC 5)

Material	*Service class*		
	1	*2*	*3*
Solid timber	0.60	0.80	2.00
Glued laminated timber	0.60	0.80	2.00

11.7.3 VIBRATION (CL. 7.3, EC 5)

EC 5, unlike BS 5268, gives procedures for calculating the vibration characteristics of residential floors which must satisfy certain requirements otherwise the vibrations may impair the functioning of the structure or cause unacceptable discomfort to users.

The fundamental frequency of vibration of a rectangular residential floor, f_1, can be estimated using the following expression and should normally exceed 8 Hz

$$f_1 = \frac{\pi}{2\ell^2}\sqrt{\frac{(EI)_\ell}{m}} \tag{11.11}$$

where

m mass equal to the self weight of the floor and other permanent actions per unit area in kg m^{-2}

l floor span in m

$(EI)_l$ equivalent bending stiffness in the beam direction Nm^2 m^{-1}

For residential floors with a fundamental frequency greater than 8 Hz the following conditions should also be satisfied:

Table 11.10 Values of the parameters a and b (based on Table 5 of National Annex to EC 5)

Parameter	*Limit*	
a	1.8 mm	for $l \leq 4\,000$ mm
	$16\,500/l^{1.1}$ mm	for $l > 4\,000$ mm
	Where l is the joist span in mm	
b	For $a \leq 1$ mm	$b = 180 - 60a$
	For $a > 1$ mm	$b = 160 - 40a$

$$\frac{w}{F} \leq a \text{ mmkN}^{-1} \qquad (11.12)$$

and

$$\nu \leq b^{(f_1\zeta - 1)} \text{ m/(Ns}^{-2}) \qquad (11.13)$$

where

ζ is the modal damping coefficient, normally taken as 0.02
w is the maximum vertical deflection caused by a concentrated static force $F = 1.0$
v is the unit impulse velocity
a is the deflection of floor under a 1 kN point load obtained from *Table 11.10*
b is the velocity response constant obtained from *Table 11.10*.

The value of w in equation 11.12 may be estimated from the following expression given in clause 2.6.2 of the National Annex to EC 5

$$w = \frac{1000 k_{\text{dist}} \ell_{\text{eq}}^3 k_{\text{amp}}}{48(EI)_{\text{joist}}} \qquad (11.14)$$

where

k_{dist} is the proportion of point load acting on a single joist
l_{eq} is the equivalent floor span in mm
k_{amp} is the amplification factor to account for shear deflection in the case of solid timber
$(EI)_{\text{joist}}$ is the bending stiffness of a joist in Nmm^2 (calculated using E_{mean})

$$k_{\text{dist}} = k_{\text{strut}}[0.38 - 0.08\, ln[14(EI)_{\text{b}}/s^4] \geq 0.30 \qquad (11.15)$$

in which

k_{strut} = 0.97 for appropriately installed single or multiple lines of strutting, or otherwise 1.0
$(EI)_{\text{b}}$ is the floor flexural rigidity perpendicular to the joists in Nmm^2 m^{-1}
s is the joist spacing in mm
l_{eq} is the span, l, in mm, for simply supported single span joists
k_{amp} 1.05 for simply supported solid timber joists

The value of ν may be estimated from

$$\nu = \frac{4(0.4 + 0.6 n_{40})}{mb\ell + 200} \text{ in m/Ns}^2 \qquad (11.16)$$

where

b is the floor width in m
l is the floor length in m
n_{40} is the number of first order modes with natural frequencies below 40 Hz and is given by

$$n_{40} = \left\{\left(\left(\frac{40}{f_1}\right)^2 - 1\right)\left(\frac{b}{\ell}\right)^4 \frac{(EI)_\ell}{(EI)_{\text{b}}}\right\}^{0.25} \qquad (11.17)$$

where $(EI)_{\text{b}}$ is the equivalent plate bending stiffness parallel to the beams and the other symbols are as defined above.

11.7.4 LATERAL BUCKLING OF BEAMS (CL. 6.3.3, EC 5)

Where both lateral displacement of the compression edge throughout the length of the member and twisting of the member at supports are prevented, lateral buckling should not occur. Otherwise the member may be vulnerable to lateral buckling and the rules in Cl. 6.3.3 (3) of EC 5 should be used to assess the bending behaviour. Generally, the following condition should be verified

$$\sigma_{\text{m,d}} \leq k_{\text{crit}} f_{\text{m,d}} \qquad (11.18)$$

where

$\sigma_{\text{m,d}}$ design bending stress
$f_{\text{m,d}}$ design bending strength
k_{crit} is a factor which takes into account the reduction in bending strength due to lateral buckling and is given by

$$\begin{cases} k_{\text{crit}} = 1 \quad \text{for } \lambda_{\text{rel,m}} \leq 0.75 & (11.19) \\ k_{\text{crit}} = 1.56 - 0.75\lambda_{\text{rel,m}} \quad \text{for } 0.75 < \lambda_{\text{rel,m}} \leq 1.4 & (11.20) \\ k_{\text{crit}} = 1/\lambda_{\text{rel,m}}^2 \quad \text{for } 1.4 < \lambda_{\text{rel,m}} & (11.21) \end{cases}$$

where $\lambda_{\text{rel,m}}$ is the relative slenderness ratio for bending given by

$$\lambda_{\text{rel,m}} = \sqrt{\frac{f_{\text{m,k}}}{\sigma_{\text{m,crit}}}} \qquad (11.22)$$

Table 11.11 Effective length as a ratio of the span (based on Table 6.1, EC 5)

Beam type	*Loading type*	l_{ef}/l[a]
Simply supported	Constant moment	1.0
	Uniformly distributed load	0.9
	Concentrated force at the middle of the span	0.8
Cantilever	Uniformly distributed load	0.5
	Concentrated force at the free end	0.8

[a]The ratios are valid for beams with torsionally restrained supports, loaded at the centre of gravity. If the load is applied at the compression edge of the beam, l_{ef} should be increased by 2 h and may be decreased by 0.5 h for a load at the tension edge of the beam.

where
$f_{m,k}$ is the characteristic bending stress
$\sigma_{m,crit}$ is the critical bending stress generally given by

$$\sigma_{m,crit} = \frac{M_{y,crit}}{W_y} = \frac{\pi\sqrt{E_{0,05}I_z G_{0,05} I_{tor}}}{\ell_{ef}W_y} \qquad (11.23)$$

and for softwoods with solid rectangular sections should be taken as

$$\sigma_{m,crit} = \frac{0.78b^2}{h\ell_{ef}}E_{0,05} \qquad (11.24)$$

where
l_{ef} is the effective length of the beam, according to *Table 11.11*
b width of beam
h depth of beam
I_z is the second moment of area about z-z
I_{tor} is the torsional moment of inertia
$f_{m,k}$ characteristic bending strength
$E_{0,05}$ is the fifth percentile modulus of elasticity parallel to grain (*Table 11.3*)
$G_{0,05}$ is the fifth percentile shear modulus $= E_{0,mean}/16$

11.7.5 SHEAR (CL. 6.1.7 & 6.5, EC 5)

If flexural members are not to fail in shear, the following condition should be satisfied:

$$\tau_d \le f_{v,d} \qquad (11.25)$$

where
τ_d is the design shear stress
$f_{v,d}$ is the design shear strength (*Table 11.3*)

For a beam with a rectangular cross-section, the design shear stress occurs at the neutral axis and is given by:

$$\tau_d = \frac{1.5V_{Ed}}{A} \qquad (11.26)$$

where
V_{Ed} is the design shear force
A is the cross-sectional area

The design shear strength, $f_{v,d}$, is given by

$$f_{v,d} = \frac{k_{mod} f_{v,k}}{\gamma_M} \qquad (11.27)$$

where $f_{v,k}$ is the characteristic shear strength (*Table 11.3*)

For beams notched at their ends as shown in *Figure 11.3*, the following condition should be checked

$$\tau_d \le k_v.f_{v,d} \qquad (11.28)$$

where

$$\tau_d = \frac{1.5V_{Ed}}{bh_{ef}} \quad \text{(see } \textit{Fig. 11.3}\text{)} \qquad (11.29)$$

k_v is the shear factor which may attain the following values:

For beams notched at the oppostie side to support (*Fig. 11.3b*)

$$k_v = 1$$

For beams of solid timber notched at the same side as support (*Fig. 11.3a*)

$$k_v \le \frac{k_n\left(1 + \frac{1.1i^{1.5}}{\sqrt{h}}\right)}{\sqrt{h}\left(\sqrt{\alpha(1-\alpha)} + 0.8\frac{x}{h}\sqrt{\frac{1}{\alpha} - \alpha^2}\right)} \le 1 \qquad (11.30)$$

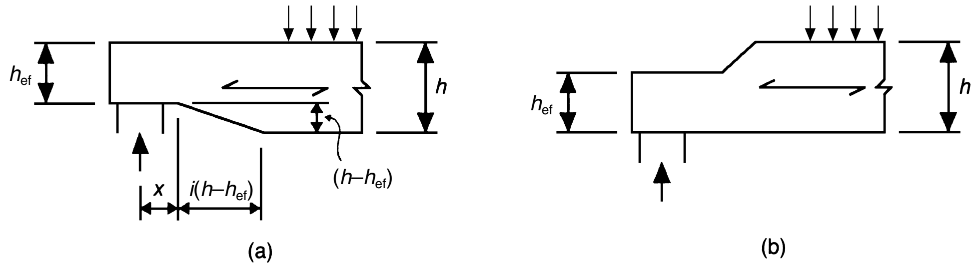


Fig. 11.3 End notched beams (Fig. 6.11, EC 5).

where

k_n = 5 for solid timber
i is the notched inclination as defined in *Fig. 11.3*
h is the beam depth in mm
x is the distance from line of action to the corner

$$\alpha = \frac{h_{ef}}{h} \quad \text{(see } \textit{Fig. 11.3}\text{)} \qquad (11.31)$$

11.7.6 COMPRESSION PERPENDICULAR TO THE GRAIN (CL. 6.1.5, EC 5)

For compression perpendicular to the grain the following condition should be satisfied:

$$\sigma_{c,90,d} \le k_{c,90} f_{c,90,d} \qquad (11.32)$$

where

$\sigma_{c,90,d}$ is the design compressive stress perpendicular to grain
$f_{c,90,d}$ is the design compressive strength perpendicular to grain
$k_{c,90}$ is the compressive strength factor.

The factor $k_{c,90}$ principally takes into account the effect of support position and bearing length on bearing strength. For example in the case of a beam b wide and h deep, resting on end and internal supports, bearing length l and overhang a $\le h/3$ (*Fig. 11.4*), $k_{c,90}$ at the end support is given by

$$k_{c,90} = \left(2.38 - \frac{\ell}{250}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h}{12\ell}\right) \le 4.0 \qquad (11.33)$$

and at internal supports is given by

$$k_{c,90} = \left(2.38 - \frac{\ell}{250}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h}{12\ell}\right) \le 4.0 \qquad (11.34)$$

Clause 6.1.5(4) of EC 5 gives details of other 'member arrangements' and associated expressions for $k_{c,90}$. In all cases the higher value of $k_{c,90}$ will apply but with an upper limit of 4. If none of the member arrangements are appropriate, however, the value of $k_{c,90}$ should be taken as 1.

It should be noted that there is a proposed amendment to this check which is due to be implemented sometime after publication of this book. Like the present method it involves checking that the following condition is satisfied

$$\sigma_{c,90,d} \le k_{c,90} f_{c,90,d}$$

but with

$$\sigma_{c,90,d} = \frac{F_{c,90,d}}{A_{ef}}$$

where A_{ef} is the effective contact area in compression perpendicular to the grain and the other symbols are as defined above.

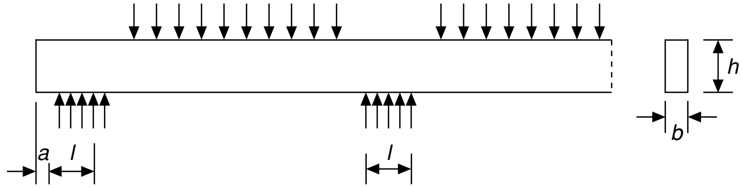


Fig. 11.4 Compression perpendicular to grain (based on Fig. 6.2, EC 5).

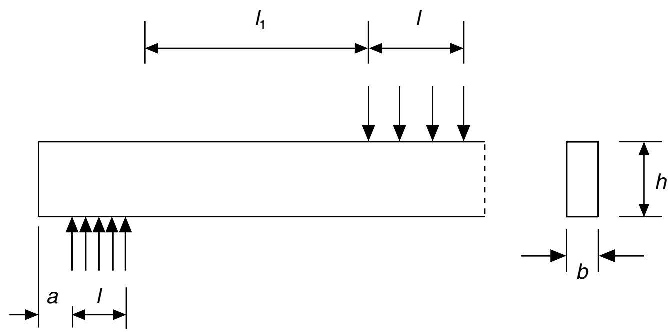


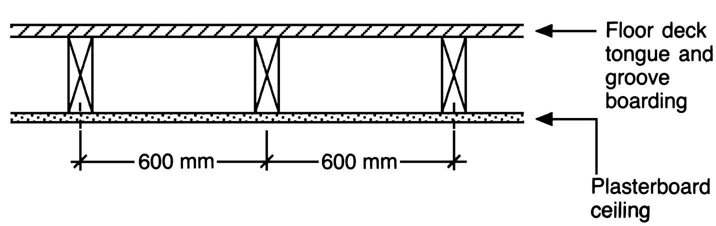
Fig. 11.5 *Member on discrete support (based on Fig. 6.2b, prEN 1995-1-1: A1: 2007).*

According to the amended clause 6.1.5, A_{ef} should be determined taking into account an effective contact length parallel to the grain, where the contact length, l, at each side is increased by 30 mm but not more than a, l or $l_1/2$ (*Fig. 11.5*). The value of $k_{c,90}$ should generally be taken as 1.0. For members on discrete supports, provided $l_1 \geq 2h$, the value of $k_{c,90}$ may be taken as 1.5 for solid support softwood timber. Other values apply for members on continuous supports and for glued laminated softwood timber.

Example 11.1 Design of timber floor joists (EC 5)

Design the timber floor joists for a domestic dwelling using timber of strength class C16 given that the:

a) floor width, *b*, is 3.6 m and floor span, *l*, is 3.4 m
b) joists are spaced at 600 mm centres
c) flooring is tongue and grove boarding of thickness 21 mm and a self-weight of 0.1 kN m^{-2}
d) ceiling is of plasterboard with a self weight of 0.2 kN m^{-2}
e) the bearing length is 100 mm.



DESIGN ACTIONS

Permanent action, G_k

Tongue & grove boarding	= 0.10 kN m^{-2}
Ceiling	= 0.20 kN m^{-2}
Joists (say)	= 0.10 kN m^{-2}
Total characteristic permanent action	= 0.40 kN m^{-2}

Example 11.1 *continued*

Variable action, Q_k
Imposed floor load for domestic dwelling (*Table 3* of UK National Annex to EN 1991–1–1) is 1.50 kN m^{-2}

Design action
Total design load is

$$\gamma_G G_k + \gamma_Q Q_k = 1.35 \times 0.40 + 1.5 \times 1.5 = 2.79 \text{ kN m}^{-2}$$

Design load/joist, F_d = joist spacing × effective span × load

$$= 0.6 \times 3.4 \times 2.79 = 5.7 \text{ kN}$$

CHARACTERISTIC STRENGTHS AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY FOR TIMBER OF STRENGTH CLASS C22

Values in N mm^{-2} are given as follows:

Bending strength ($f_{m,k}$)	*Compression perpendicular to grain ($f_{c,90,k}$)*	*Shear parallel to grain ($f_{v,k}$)*	*Modulus of elasticity ($E_{0,mean}$)*
22.0	5.1	2.4	10000

BENDING

Bending moment

$$M_{d,y} = \frac{F_d \ell}{8} = \frac{5.7 \times 3.4}{8} = 2.42 \text{ kNm}$$

Assuming that the average moisture content of the timber joists does not exceed 20 per cent during the life of the structure, design the joists for service class 2 (*Table 11.6*). Further, since the joists are required to carry permanent and variable (imposed) actions, the critical load duration class is 'medium-term' (*Table 11.7*). Hence from *Table 11.5*, k_{mod} equals 0.8. From *Table 11.4*, γ_M (for ultimate limit states) = 1.3. Since the joists form part of a load sharing system the design strengths can be multiplied by a load sharing factor, k_{sys} = 1.1.

Assuming k_h = 1, design bending strength about the y-y axis is

$$f_{m,y,d} = k_h k_{sys} k_{mod} \frac{f_{m,k}}{\gamma_M} = 1.0 \times 1.1 \times 0.8 \times \frac{22}{1.3} = 14.9 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

The design bending stress is obtained from equation 11.4. Hence

$$\frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \le 1$$

$$\frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{14.9} + 0.7 \times \frac{0}{f_{m,z,d}} \le 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \sigma_{m,y,d} \le 14.9 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$W_y req \ge \frac{M_{d,y}}{\sigma_{m,y,d}} = \frac{2.42 \times 10^6}{14.9} = 162 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^3$$

Example 11.1 *continued*

From *Table 6.8* a 63 mm × 200 mm joist would be suitable ($W_y = 420 \times 10^3$ mm^3, $I_y = 42 \times 10^6$ mm^4, $A = 12.6 \times 10^3$ mm^2).

Since $h > 150$ mm, $k_h = 1$ (as assumed).

DEFLECTION

Instantaneous deflection due to permanent actions, u_{instG}

From *Table 11.4*, γ_G for serviceability limit states = 1.0 and factored permanent load, $G = \gamma_G G_k = 1.0 \times 0.40 = 0.40$ kN m^{-2}

Factored permanent load per joist, $F_{d,G}$, is

$$F_{d,G} = \text{total load} \times \text{joist spacing} \times \text{span length} = 0.40 \times 0.6 \times 3.4 = 0.82 \text{ kN}$$

From *Table 6.9*, instantaneous deflection due to permanent actions, u_{instG}, is given by

$$u_{instG} = \text{bending deflection} + \text{shear deflection}$$

$$= \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{F_d L^3}{EI} + \frac{12}{5} \times \frac{F_d L}{EA}$$

$$= \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{0.82 \times 10^3 (3.4 \times 10^3)^3}{10 \times 10^3 \times 42 \times 10^6} + \frac{12}{5} \times \frac{0.82 \times 10^3 \times 3.4 \times 10^3}{10 \times 10^3 \times 12.6 \times 10^3} = 1 \text{ mm}$$

Instantaneous deflection due to variable action, u_{instQ}

From *Table 11.4*, γ_Q for serviceability limit state = 1.0 and factored variable action, $Q = \gamma_Q Q_k = 1.0 \times 1.5 = 1.5$ kN m^{-2}

Factored variable action per joist, $F_{d,Q}$, is

$$F_{d,Q} = \text{total load} \times \text{joist spacing} \times \text{span length} = 1.5 \times 0.6 \times 3.4 = 3.06 \text{ kN}$$

From *Table 6.9*, instantaneous deflection due to variable load, u_{instQ}, is given by

$$u_{instQ} = \text{bending deflection} + \text{shear deflection}$$

$$= \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{F_{d,Q} L^3}{EI} + \frac{12}{5} \times \frac{F_{d,Q} L}{EA}$$

$$= \frac{5}{384} \times \frac{3.06 \times 10^3 (3.4 \times 10^3)^3}{10 \times 10^3 \times 42 \times 10^6} + \frac{12}{5} \times \frac{3.06 \times 10^3 \times 3.4 \times 10^3}{10 \times 10^3 \times 12.6 \times 10^3} = 3.7 + 0.2 = 3.9 \text{ mm}$$

Final deflection due to permanent actions

From *Table 11.9*, for solid timber members subject to service class 2 and medium-term loading, $K_{def} = 0.8$. Final deflection due to permanent actions, $u_{fin,G}$, is given by

$$u_{fin,G} = u_{instG}(1 + k_{def}) = 1 \times (1 + 0.8) = 1.8 \text{ mm}$$

Final deflection due to variable action

From *Table 8.8*, $\psi_2 = 0.3$. Hence final deflection due to variable action, $u_{fin,Q1}$, is given by

$$u_{fin,Q1} = u_{instQ1}(1 + \psi_2 k_{def}) = 3.9 \times (1 + 0.3 \times 0.8) = 4.9 \text{ mm}$$

Example 11.1 *continued*

Check final deflection

Total final deflection, $u_{fin} = u_{fin,G} + u_{fin,Q1} = 1.8 + 4.9 = 6.7$ mm
Permissible final deflection (assuming the floor supports brittle finishes), w_{fin}, is

$$\begin{aligned} w_{fin} &= 1/250 \times \text{span} \\ &= 1/250 \times 3.4 \times 10^3 \\ &= 13.6 \text{ mm} > 6.7 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore 63 mm × 200 mm joists are adequate in deflection

VIBRATION

Assuming that $f_1 > 8$ Hz, check that

$$\frac{w}{F} \leq a \quad \text{and} \quad \nu \leq b^{(f_1\zeta-1)}$$

Check *w/F* ratio

$$k_{strut} = 1.0$$

$$(EI)_b = 10 \times 10^3 \times (1000 \times 21^3/12) = 7.72 \times 10^9 \text{ Nmm}^2 \text{ m}^{-1}$$

Joist spacing, $s = 600$ mm

Hence k_{dist} is

$$\begin{aligned} k_{dist} &= k_{strut}[0.38 - 0.08\ ln[14(EI)_b/s^4] \geq 0.30 \\ &= 1.0 \times [0.38 - 0.08\ ln[14 \times 7.72 \times 10^9/600^4] = 0.4 \end{aligned}$$

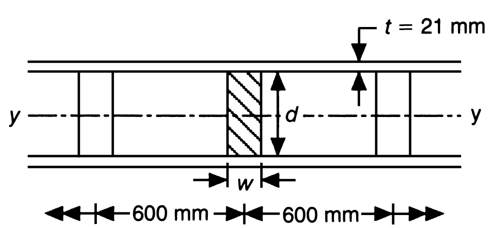
$$l_{eq} = 3400 \text{ mm}$$

$$k_{amp} = 1.05$$

$$(EI)_{joist} = 10 \times 10^3 \times (63 \times 200^3/12) = 4.2 \times 10^{11} \text{ Nmm}^2 \text{ m}^{-1}$$

Therefore the maximum vertical deflection caused by a concentrated static force $F = 1.0$, w, is

$$w = \frac{1000 k_{dist} \ell_{eq}^3 k_{amp}}{48(EI)_{joist}} = \frac{1000 \times 0.4 \times 3400^3 \times 1.05}{48 \times 4.2 \times 10^{11}} = 0.82 \text{ mm} < a = 1.8 \text{ mm} \quad \text{OK}$$



Check impulse velocity

Floor width, $b = 3.4$ m and floor span, $l = 3.6$ m.

I_y is the second moment of area of the joist (ignore tongue and groove boarding unless a specific shear calculation at the interface of joist and board is made):

Example 11.1 *continued*

$$I_y = 42 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4 = 42 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^4$$

$$E_{0,\text{mean}} = 10\ 000 \text{ N mm}^{-2} = 10 \times 10^9 \text{ N m}^{-2} \quad (\textit{Table 11.3})$$

$$(EI)_l = E_{0,\text{mean}} I_y/\text{joist spacing}$$

$$= 10 \times 10^9 \times 42 \times 10^{-6}/0.6 = 7 \times 10^5 \text{ Nm}^2 \text{ m}^{-1}$$

Mass due to permanent actions per unit area, m, is

$$m = \text{permanent action/gravitational constant}$$

$$= 0.40 \times 10^3/9.8 = 40.8 \text{ kg m}^{-2}$$

The fundamental frequency of vibration, f_1, is

$$f_1 = \frac{\pi}{2\ell^2}\sqrt{\frac{(EI)_\ell}{m}} = \frac{\pi}{2 \times 3.4^2}\sqrt{\frac{7 \times 10^5}{40.8}} = 17.8 \text{ Hz} > 8 \text{ Hz} \quad \text{as assumed}$$

The number of first order modes, n_{40}, is

$$n_{40} = \left\{\left(\left(\frac{40}{f_1}\right)^2 - 1\right)\left(\frac{b}{\ell}\right)^4 \frac{(EI)_\ell}{(EI)_b}\right\}^{0.25} = \left\{\left(\left(\frac{40}{17.8}\right)^2 - 1\right)\left(\frac{3.4}{3.6}\right)^4 \frac{700 \times 10^3}{7.72 \times 10^3}\right\}^{0.25} = 4.13$$

The unit impulse velocity, v, is

$$\nu = \frac{4(0.4 + 0.6n_{40})}{mb\ell + 200} = \frac{4(0.4 + 0.6 \times 4.13)}{40.8 \times 3.4 \times 3.6 + 200} = 0.016 \text{ m N}^{-1}\ s^{-2}$$

Assume damping coefficient, $\zeta = 0.02$. From *Table 11.10* since a (= 0.82 mm) < 1, b, is given by

$$b = 180 - 60a = 180 - 60 \times 0.82 = 131$$

Hence permissible floor velocity $= b^{(f.\zeta - 1)} = 131^{(17.8 \times 0.02 - 1)}$

$$= 0.04 \text{ m N}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-2} > 0.016 \text{ m N}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-2} \quad \text{OK}$$

LATERAL BUCKLING

This check is unnecessary as the compressive edge cannot move laterally because the joists are attached to tongue and groove boarding.

SHEAR

Design shear strength is

$$f_{v,d} = k_{sys} k_{mod} \frac{f_{v,k}}{\gamma_M} = 1.1 \times 0.8 \times \frac{2.4}{1.3} = 1.62 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Maximum shear force is

$$V_{Ed} = \frac{F_d}{2} = \frac{5.7 \times 10^3}{2} = 2.85 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$

Design shear stress at neutral axis is

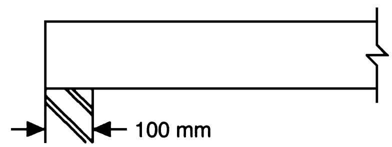
$$\tau_d = \frac{1.5V_{Ed}}{A} = \frac{1.5 \times 2.85 \times 10^3}{12.6 \times 10^3} = 0.34 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < f_{v,d} \quad \text{OK}$$

Example 11.1 *continued*

BEARING

Design compressive stress
Design bearing force is

$$F_{90,d} = F_d/2 = 5.7 \times 10^3/2 = 2.85 \times 10^3 \text{ N}$$



Assuming that the floor joists span onto 100 mm wide walls as shown above, the bearing stress is given by:

$$\sigma_{c,90,d} = \frac{F_{90,d}}{b\ell} = \frac{2.85 \times 10^3}{63 \times 100} = 0.45 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Design compressive strength
Design compressive strength perpendicular to grain, $f_{c,90,d}$, is given by

$$f_{c,90,d} = k_{sys}k_{mod}\frac{k_{c,90,k}}{\gamma_M} = 1.1 \times 0.8 \times \frac{5.1}{1.3} = 3.4 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

Bearing capacity
By comparing the above diagram with *Fig. 11.4*, it can be seen that

$$a = 0,\ l = 100 \text{ mm and } h = 200 \text{ mm}$$

Since $a < h/3$

$$k_{c,90} = \left(2.38 - \frac{\ell}{250}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h}{12\ell}\right) = \left(2.38 - \frac{100}{250}\right)\left(1 + \frac{200}{12 \times 100}\right) = 2.31 < 4 \quad \text{OK}$$

$$k_{c,90}f_{c,90,d} = 2.31 \times 3.4 = 7.9 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} > \sigma_{c,90,d} \quad \text{OK}$$

Alternatively, using the procedure in clause 6.1.5 of prEN 1995-1-1: A1: 2007 gives $l_1 = a = 0$ (by comparing the above diagram with *Fig. 11.5*). Therefore, $A_{ef} = bl$ and $\sigma_{c,90,d} = 0.45 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$ as before. Since $l_1 = 2h$, $k_{c,90} = 1.00$. Hence

$$k_{c,90}f_{c,90,d} = 1.0 \times 3.4 = 3.4 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} > \sigma_{c,90,d} \quad \text{OK}$$

CHECK ASSUMED SELF-WEIGHT OF JOISTS

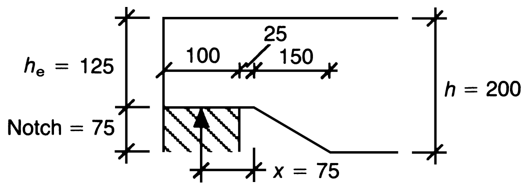
From *Table 11.3*, density of timber of strength class C22 is 410 kg/m^3. Hence, self-weight of the joists, SW, is

$$\text{SW} = \frac{63 \times 200 \times 10^{-6} \times 410 \text{ kg m}^{-3} \times 9.8 \times 10^{-3}}{0.6} = 0.084 \text{ kN m}^{-2} < \text{assumed} \quad \text{OK}$$

Finally, it is worth noting that C22 is not a preferred strength class and readers may wish to redesign the joists using the more commonly specified timber grades namely C16 or C24.

Example 11.2 Design of a notched floor joist (EC 5)

The joists in Example 11.1 are to be notched at the bearings with a 75m deep notch as shown below. Check the notched section is still adequate.



The presence of the notch only affects the shear stress in the joists.

FACTOR K_v

For beams notched at the loaded side, k_v is taken as the lesser of 1 and the value calculated using equation 11.30. Comparing the above diagram with *Fig. 11.3* gives

$$i = 2$$
$$x = 75 \text{ mm}$$
$$\alpha = h_e/h = 125/200 = 0.625$$

From clause 6.5.2(2) $k_n = 5$ for solid timber. Therefore k_v is

$$k_v \le \frac{k_n\left(1 + \dfrac{1.1 i^{1.5}}{\sqrt{h}}\right)}{\sqrt{h}\left(\sqrt{\alpha(1-\alpha)} + 0.8\dfrac{x}{h}\sqrt{\dfrac{1}{\alpha} - \alpha^2}\right)} \le 1$$

$$= \frac{5 \times \left(1 + \dfrac{1.1 \times 2^{1.5}}{\sqrt{200}}\right)}{\sqrt{200}\left(\sqrt{0.625(1-0.625)} + 0.8 \times \dfrac{75}{200}\sqrt{\dfrac{1}{0.625} - 0.625^2}\right)} = 0.53$$

The shear strength, $f_{v,d}$, is

$$f_{v,d} = k_{sys}k_{mod}\frac{f_{v,k}}{\gamma_M} = 1.1 \times 0.8 \times \frac{2.4}{1.3} = 1.62 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

For a notched member, the design shear strength is given by

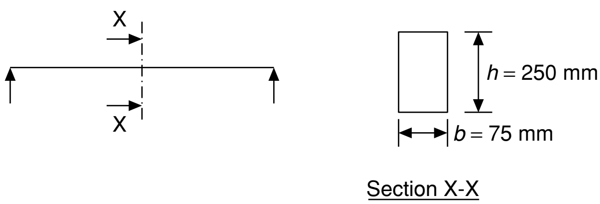
$$k_v.f_{v,d} = 0.53 \times 1.62 = 0.86 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{Design shear stress, } \tau_d = \frac{1.5V_{Ed}}{bh_e} = \frac{1.5 \times 2.85 \times 10^3}{63 \times 125} = 0.54 \text{ Nmm}^{-2} < 0.86 \text{ N mm}^{-2} \quad \text{OK}$$

Therefore the section is also adequate when notched with a 75 mm deep bottom edge notch at the bearing.

Example 11.3 Analysis of a solid timber beam restrained at supports (EC 5)

A solid timber beam, 75 mm wide × 250 mm deep, in strength class C16, 3.4 m simply supported, supports uniformly distributed permanent (including self-weight of beam) and variable actions of respectively 0.2 kNm^{-1} and 2 kNm^{-1}. Assuming the beam is torsionally restrained at supports and the exposure is service class 2 check its bending capacity.



DESIGN ACTION

Total design load is

$$F_d = \gamma_G G_k + \gamma_Q Q_k = 1.35 \times 0.20 + 1.5 \times 2 = 3.27 \text{ kN m}^{-1}$$

DESIGN BENDING STRESS

Bending moment

$$M_{y,d} = \frac{F_d \ell}{8} = \frac{3.27 \times 3.4^2}{8} = 4.73 \text{ kNm}$$

$$\sigma_{m,y,d} = \frac{M_{y,d}}{Z_y} = \frac{4.73 \times 10^6}{75 \times 200^2/6} = 9.5 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Bending strength

As the compressive edge of the beam is not restrained the bending strength is

$$= k_{crit} f_{m,d}$$

Since the load is uniformly distributed and applied to the top of the beam, from *Table 11.11*, $l_{ef} = 0.9l + 2h = 0.9 \times 3500 + 2 \times 200 = 3550$ mm

$$\sigma_{m,crit} = \frac{0.78b^2}{h\ell_{ef}} E_{0,05} = \frac{0.78 \times 75^2}{200 \times 3550} \times 5.4 \times 10^3 = 33.37$$

$$\lambda_{rel,m} = \sqrt{\frac{f_{m,k}}{\sigma_{m,crit}}} = \sqrt{\frac{16}{33.37}} = 0.69$$

Since $\lambda_{rel,m} < 0.75$, $k_{crit} = 1$

$$k_{crit} f_{m,y,d} = k_{crit}\left(k_h k_{mod} \frac{f_{m,k}}{\gamma_M}\right) = 1.0 \times \left(1.0 \times 0.8 \times \frac{16}{1.3}\right) = 9.85 \text{ N mm}^{-2} > \sigma_{m,d} \ (= 9.5 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}) \quad \text{OK}$$

11.8 Design of columns

Columns are normally subjected to either axial load or combined axial load and bending. Axially loaded members may fail in compression or flexural buckling depending upon the relative slenderness ratios, $\lambda_{rel,z}$ and $\lambda_{rel,y}$. Members subject to axial load and bending are also susceptible to these modes of failure but may additionally fail due to lateral torsional buckling. The following subsections discuss the rules relevant to the design of members subject to these two types of stress states.

11.8.1 COLUMNS SUBJECT TO AXIAL LOAD ONLY (CL. 6.3.2, EC 5)

The relative slenderness ratios $\lambda_{rel,z}$ and $\lambda_{rel,y}$ are defined in EC 5 as follows

$$\lambda_{rel,y} = \frac{\lambda_y}{\pi}\sqrt{\frac{f_{c,0,k}}{E_{0,05}}} \tag{11.35}$$

and

$$\lambda_{rel,z} = \frac{\lambda_z}{\pi}\sqrt{\frac{f_{c,0,k}}{E_{0,05}}} \tag{11.36}$$

where

λ_y and $\lambda_{rel,y}$ are slenderness ratios corresponding to bending about the y-axis (deflection in the z-direction)

λ_z and $\lambda_{rel,z}$ are slenderness ratios corresponding to bending about the z-axis (deflection in the y-direction)

$E_{0,05}$ is the fifth percentile value of the modulus of elasticity parallel to the grain.

The slenderness ratio, λ, is given by:

$$\lambda = \frac{\ell_{ef}}{i} \tag{11.37}$$

where

l_{ef} is the effective length

i is the radius of gyration

EC 5 does not include a method for determining the *effective length* of a column. Therefore, designers will have to refer to the recommendation in BS 5268: Part 2, as discussed in section 6.7.1 of this book.

Where both $\lambda_{rel,z}$ and $\lambda_{rel,y}$ are less than or equal to 0.3, columns subject to axial load only should satisfy the following condition:

$$\sigma_{c,0,d} \le f_{c,0,d} \tag{11.38}$$

where

$f_{c,0,d}$ is the design compressive strength obtained from eq. 11.3

$\sigma_{c,0,d}$ is the design compressive stress given by

$$\sigma_{c,0,d} = \frac{N}{A} \tag{11.39}$$

in which

N is the axial load

A is the cross-sectional area

In cases where either $\lambda_{rel,z}$ or $\lambda_{rel,y}$ exceeds 0.3, the column should satisfy the more stringent of the following:

$$\sigma_{c,0,d} \le k_{c,y} f_{c,0,d} \tag{11.40}$$

$$\sigma_{c,0,d} \le k_{c,z} f_{c,0,d} \tag{11.41}$$

where

$$k_{c,y} = \frac{1}{k_y + \sqrt{(k_y^2 - \lambda_{rel,y}^2)}} \tag{11.42}$$

$$k_{c,z} = \frac{1}{k_z + \sqrt{(k_z^2 - \lambda_{rel,z}^2)}} \tag{11.43}$$

in which

$$k_y = 0.5(1 + \beta_c(\lambda_{rel,y} - 0.3) + \lambda_{rel,y}^2) \tag{11.44}$$

$$k_z = 0.5(1 + \beta_c(\lambda_{rel,z} - 0.3) + \lambda_{rel,z}^2) \tag{11.45}$$

where

$\beta_c = 0.2$ (for solid timber).

11.8.2 COLUMNS SUBJECT TO AXIAL LOAD AND BENDING (CL. 6.3.2, EC 5)

In this case if the relative slenderness ratios about both the y–y and z–z axis of the column, $\lambda_{rel,y}$ and $\lambda_{rel,z}$ respectively, are less than or equal to 0.3 the suitability of the section can be assessed using the more stringent of the following conditions

$$\left(\frac{\sigma_{c,0,d}}{f_{c,0,d}}\right)^2 + \frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \le 1 \tag{11.46}$$

$$\left(\frac{\sigma_{c,0,d}}{f_{c,0,d}}\right)^2 + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \le 1 \tag{11.47}$$

where

$\sigma_{c,0,d}$ is the design compressive stress from eq. 11.39

$f_{c,0,d}$ is the design compressive strength from eq. 11.3

k_m = 0.7 for rectangular sections and = 1.0 for other cross-sections

Where either $\lambda_{rel,z}$ or $\lambda_{rel,y}$ exceeds 0.3, the column is vulnerable to flexural buckling and the more stringent of the following expressions should be satisfied

$$\frac{\sigma_{c,0,d}}{k_{c,y} f_{c,0,d}} + \frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \leq 1 \quad (11.48)$$

$$\frac{\sigma_{c,0,d}}{k_{c,z} f_{c,0,d}} + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \leq 1 \quad (11.49)$$

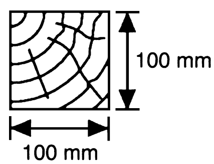
Moreover in cases where $\lambda_{rel,z}$ or $\lambda_{rel,y}$ exceeds 0.3 and when a combined compressive force and a moment about the major axis (y–y) act, the column may be susceptible to lateral torsional buckling. The risk of this mode of failure occurring can be assessed using the following expression taken from clause 6.3.3(6):

$$\left(\frac{\sigma_{m,d}}{k_{crit} f_{m,d}}\right)^2 + \frac{\sigma_{c,d}}{k_{c,z} f_{c,0,d}} \leq 1 \qquad (11.50)$$

where $\sigma_{m,d}$ is the design bending stress, $\sigma_{c,d}$ is the design compressive strength parallel to the grain, k_{crit} is given by equations 11.19–11.21 and $k_{c,z}$ is given by equation 11.43.

Example 11.4 Analysis of column resisting an axial load (EC 5)

A mechanically graded timber column of strength class C16 consists of a 100 mm square section which is restrained at both ends in position but not in direction. Assuming that the service conditions comply with Service Class 2 and the actual height of the column is 3.75m, calculate the design axial long term load that the column can support.



SLENDERNESS RATIO

$$\lambda_y = \lambda_z = \frac{\ell_{ef}}{i}$$

$$l_{ef} = 1.0 \times h = 1.0 \times 3750 = 3750 \text{ mm} \quad \text{(see Table 6.11)}$$

$$i = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}} = \sqrt{\frac{(db^3/12)}{bd}} = \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{12}} = \sqrt{\frac{100}{12}} = 28.87$$

$$\lambda_y = \lambda_z = \frac{3750}{28.87} = 129.9$$

CHARACTERISTIC STRENGTH AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY OF CLASS C16 TIMBER

Values in Nmm^{-2}

Compressive strength parallel to grain, $f_{c,0,k}$	*5% modulus of elasticity, $E_{0,05}$*
17	5400

RELATIVE SLENDERNESS RATIO

$$\lambda_{rel,y} = \lambda_{rel,z} = \frac{\lambda_y}{\pi}\sqrt{\frac{f_{c,0,k}}{E_{0,05}}} = \frac{129.9}{\pi} \times \sqrt{\frac{17}{5400}} = 2.32$$

Since $\lambda_{rel,y}$ and $\lambda_{rel,z} > 0.3$, use the more stringent of equations 11.40 and 11.41.

Example 11.4 *continued*

AXIAL LOAD CAPACITY

$$k_y = k_z = 0.5(1 + \beta_c(\lambda_{rel,y} - 0.3) + \lambda^2_{rel,y})$$
$$= 0.5(1 + 0.2(2.32 - 0.3) + 2.32^2) = 3.37$$

$$k_{c,y} = k_{c,z} = \frac{1}{k_y + \sqrt{(k_y^2 - \lambda^2_{rel,y})}} = \frac{1}{3.37 + \sqrt{(3.37^2 - 2.32^2)}} = 0.17$$

Design compressive strength parallel to grain is given by

$$f_{c,0,d} = k_{mod}\frac{k_{c,0,k}}{\gamma_M} = 0.8 \times \frac{17}{1.3} = 10.46 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

where
$\gamma_M = 1.3$, obtained from *Table 11.4*
$k_{mod} = 0.8$ (service class 2 and medium-term loading)

By inspection use either equation 11.40 or 11.41. Substituting into equation 11.40 gives

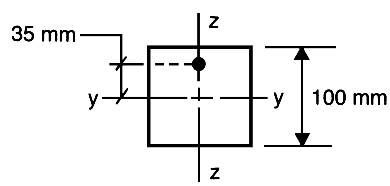
$$\sigma_{c,0,d} \le k_{c,y} f_{c,0,d}$$
$$\sigma_{c,0,d} = 0.17 \times 10.46 = 1.77 \text{ Nmm}^{-2}$$

Hence, axial load capacity of column, N, is given by

$$N = \sigma_{c,0,d}A = 1.77 \times 10^4 = 17.7 \times 10^3 \text{ N} = 17.7 \text{ kN}$$

Example 11.5 Analysis of an eccentrically loaded column (EC 5)

Check the adequacy of the column in Example 11.4 to resist a long-term design axial load of 10 kN applied 35 mm eccentric to its y–y axis.



Plan showing column loading

SLENDERNESS RATIO

$$\lambda_y = \lambda_z = \frac{\ell_{ef}}{i} = 129.9 \quad \text{(see Example 11.4)}$$

CHARACTERISTIC STRENGTHS AND MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

Values in Nmm^{-2} for machine graded timber of strength class C16

Bending parallel to grain, $f_{m,k}$	*Compression parallel to grain $f_{c,0,k}$*	*Modulus of elasticity 5-percentile value $E_{0,05}$*
16	17	5400

Example 11.5 *continued*

BUCKLING

Design compression stress, $\sigma_{c,0,d}$, is

$$\sigma_{c,0,d} = \frac{\text{design axial load}}{A} = \frac{10 \times 10^3}{10^4} = 1\,\text{N mm}^{-2}$$

Design bending stress about y–y axis, $\sigma_{m,y,d}$, is

$$\sigma_{m,y,d} = \frac{M_y}{W_y} = \frac{350 \times 10^3}{167 \times 10^3} = 2.10\,\text{N mm}^{-2}$$

Design bending strength about the y–y axis, $f_{m,d}$, is

$$f_{m,d} = k_h k_{mod} \frac{f_{m,k}}{\gamma_M} = 1.08 \times 0.8 \times \frac{16}{1.3} = 10.63\,\text{N mm}^{-2} \text{ (Example 11.4)}$$

Design compression strength, $f_{c,0,d}$, is

$$f_{c,0,d} = k_{mod} \frac{k_{c,0,k}}{\gamma_M} = 0.8 \times \frac{17}{1.3} = 10.46\,\text{N mm}^{-2}$$

Design bending stress about the z–z axis, $\sigma_{m,z,d} = 0$. Compression factor is $k_{c,y} = 0.17$ (see Example 11.4). Check the suitability of the column by using the more stringent of equations 11.48 and 11.49. By inspection equation 11.48 is more critical. Substitution gives

$$\frac{\sigma_{c,0,d}}{k_{c,y} f_{c,0,d}} + \frac{\sigma_{m,y,d}}{f_{m,y,d}} + k_m \frac{\sigma_{m,z,d}}{f_{m,z,d}} \leq 1$$

$$\frac{1}{0.17 \times 10.46} + \frac{2.1}{10.63} + k_m \frac{0}{f_{m,z,d}} = 0.56 + 0.20 = 0.76 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

Therefore 100 × 100 column is adequate in buckling.

LATERAL TORSIONAL STABILITY

$$l_{ef} = l = 3750 \text{ mm}$$

$$\sigma_{m,crit} = \frac{0.78 b^2}{h \ell_{ef}} E_{0,05} = \frac{0.78 \times 100^2}{100 \times 3750} \times 5.4 \times 10^3 = 112.3$$

$$\lambda_{rel,m} = \sqrt{\frac{f_{m,k}}{\sigma_{m,crit}}} = \sqrt{\frac{16}{112.3}} = 0.4$$

Since $\lambda_{rel,m} < 0.75$, $k_{crit} = 1$

Check lateral torsional stability using equation 11.50

$$\left(\frac{\sigma_{m,d}}{k_{crit} f_{m,y,d}}\right)^2 + \frac{\sigma_{c,0,d}}{k_{c,z} f_{c,0,d}} \leq 1$$

$$\left(\frac{2.1}{1.0 \times 10.36}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{0.17 \times 11.3} = 0.04 + 0.52 = 0.56 < 1 \quad \text{OK}$$

Hence the column is also adequate in lateral torsional buckling.

Appendix A

Permissible stress and load factor design

The purpose of this appendix is to illustrate the salient features and highlight essential differences between the following philosophies of structural design:

1. permissible stress approach, i.e. elastic design;
2. load factor approach, i.e. plastic design.

The reader is referred to *Chapter 2* for revision of some basic concepts of structural analysis.

Example A.1

Consider the case of a simply supported, solid rectangular beam (*Fig. A.1*), depth (d) 200 mm, span (l) 10 m and subject to a uniformly distributed load (w) of 12 kN m^{-1}. Calculate the minimum width of beam (b) using permissible stress and load factor approaches to design assuming the following:

$$\sigma_{yield} = 265 \text{ N mm}^{-2}$$

$$\text{Factor of safety (f.o.s.)} = 1.5$$

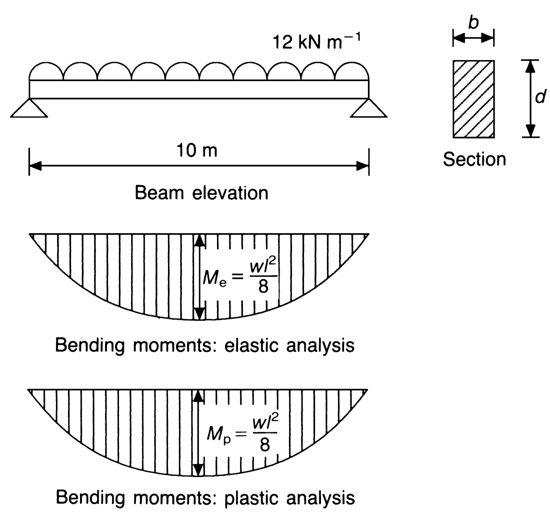


Fig. A.1 *Simply supported beam.*

Example A.1 *continued*

PERMISSIBLE STRESS APPROACH

Elastic design moment, M_e

$$M_e = \frac{wl^2}{8} = \frac{12 \times 10^2}{8} \quad (\textit{Table 2.4})$$

$= 150$ kN m

$= 150 \times 10^6$ N mm

Moment of resistance, M_r

Permissible stress, σ_{perm}, is

$$\sigma_{perm} = \frac{\sigma_{yield}}{\text{f.o.s.}} = \frac{265}{1.5}$$

$M_r = \sigma_{perm} Z$

where Z is the elastic section modulus $= bd^2/6$ (*Table 2.4*). Hence

$$M_r = \frac{(265)}{1.5} \times \frac{200^2 b}{6}$$

$= 1.178 \times 10^6 b$ N mm^{-2}

Breadth of beam

At equilibrium, $M_e = M_r$

$150 \times 10^6 = 1.178 \times 10^6 b$

Hence breadth of beam, b, is

$b = 150/1.178 = 127$ mm

LOAD FACTOR APPROACH

Plastic design moment, M_p

Plastic section modulus, $S = \dfrac{bd^2}{4}$

Elastic section modulus, $Z = \dfrac{bd^2}{6}$ (*Table 2.4*)

Shape factor (s.f.) = S/Z
Hence

s.f. = $(bd^2/4)/(bd^2/6) = 1.5$

Load factor = s.f. × f.o.s.

$= 1.5 \times 1.5 = 2.25$

Actual load (w) $= 12$ kN m^{-1}
Factored load (w') $= 12 \times 2.25 = 27$ kN m^{-1}

$$M_p = \frac{w'l^2}{8} = \frac{27 \times 10^2}{8}$$

$= 337.5$ kN m $= 337.5 \times 10^6$ N mm

Moment of resistance, M_r

$$M_r = \sigma_{yield} S = \frac{265 \times bd^2}{4}$$

$$= \frac{265 \times 200^2 b}{4} = 2.65 \times 10^6 b$$

Breadth of beam

At equilibrium, $M_p = M_r$

$337.5 \times 10^6 = 2.65 \times 10^6 b$

Hence breadth of beam, b, is

$b = 337.5/2.65 = 127$ mm

It can therefore be seen that for the case of a simply supported beam, provided all the factors are taken into account, both approaches will give the same result and this will remain true irrespective of the shape of the section.

Example A.2

Repeat *Example A.1* but this time assume that the beam is built in at both ends as shown in *Fig. A.2*.

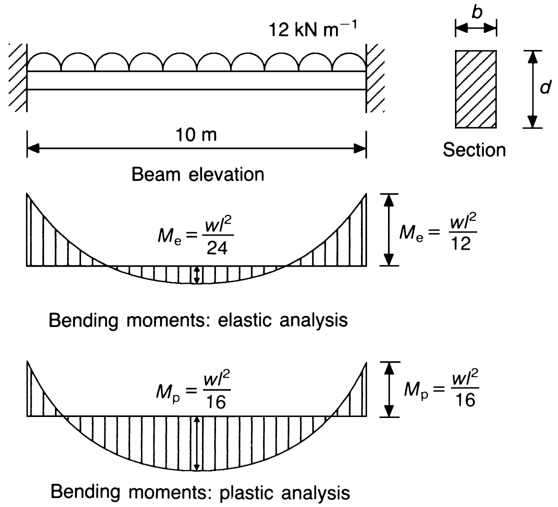


Fig. A.2 *Beam with built-in supports.*

PERMISSIBLE STRESS APPROACH

Elastic design moment, M_e

$$M_e = \frac{wl^2}{12} = \frac{12 \times 10^2}{12}$$

$= 100$ kN m

$= 100 \times 10^6$ N mm

Moment of resistance, M_r

$$M_r = \sigma_{perm} Z = \frac{(265)}{1.5} \times \frac{200^2 b}{6}$$

$= 1.178 \times 10^6 b$ N mm^{-2}

LOAD FACTOR APPROACH

Plastic design moment, M_p

Shape factor (s.f.) = S/Z

Hence
s.f. = $(bd^2/4)/(bd^2/6)$
= 1.5
Load factor = s.f. × f.o.s.
= 1.5 × 1.5 = 2.25
Actual load (w) = 12 kN m^{-1}
Factored load (w') = 12 × 2.25
= 27 kN m^{-1}

$$M_p = \frac{w'l^2}{16} = \frac{27 \times 10^2}{16}$$

$= 168.7$ kN m $= 168.7 \times 10^6$ N mm

Moment of resistance, M_r

$$M_r = \sigma_{yield} S = 265 \times \frac{bd^2}{4}$$

$$= 265 \times \frac{200^2 b}{4} = 2.65 \times 10^6 b$$

Example A.2 *continued*

Breadth of beam

At equilibrium, $M_e = M_r$

$100 \times 10^6 = 1.178 \times 10^6 b$

Hence breadth of beam, b, is

$b = 100/1.178 = 85$ mm

Breadth of beam

At equilibrium, $M_p = M_r$

$168.7 \times 10^6 = 2.65 \times 10^6 b$

Hence breadth of beam, b, is

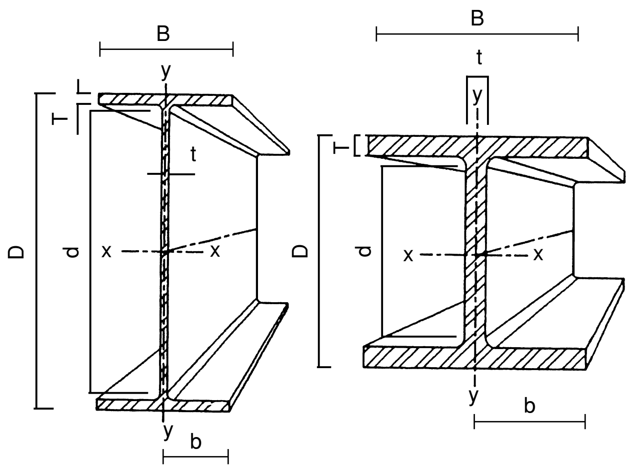
$b = 168.7/2.65 = 75$ mm

Hence, it can be seen that the load factor approach gives a more conservative estimate for the breadth of the beam, a fact which will be generally found to hold for other sections and indeterminate structures.

The basic difference between these two approaches to design is that while the permissible stress method models behaviour of the structure under working loads, and realistic predictions of behaviour in service can be calculated, the load factor method only models failure, and no information on behaviour in service is obtained.

Appendix B

Dimensions and properties of steel universal beams and columns



Universal Beam

Universal Column

Table B1 Dimensions and properties of steel universal beams (structural sections to BS 4: Part 1)

Designation: Serial size (mm)	Designation: Mass per metre (kg)	Depth of section D (mm)	Width of section B (mm)	Thickness: Web t (mm)	Thickness: Flange T (mm)	Root radius r (mm)	Depth between fillets d (mm)	Ratios for local buckling: Flange b/T	Ratios for local buckling: Web d/t	Second moment of area: Axis x–x (cm^4)	Second moment of area: Axis y–y (cm^4)	Radius of gyration: Axis x–x (cm)	Radius of gyration: Axis y–y (cm)	Elastic modulus: Axis x–x (cm^3)	Elastic modulus: Axis y–y (cm^3)	Plastic modulus: Axis x–x (cm^3)	Plastic modulus: Axis y–y (cm^3)	Buckling parameter u	Torsional index x	Warping constant H (dm^6)	Torsional constant J (cm^4)	Area of section A (cm^2)
		Dimensions								*Properties*												
914×419	388	920.5	420.5	21.5	36.6	24.1	799.1	5.74	37.2	719 000	45 400	38.1	9.58	15 600	2160	17 700	3 340	0.884	26.7	88.7	1 730	494
	343	911.4	418.5	19.4	32.0	24.1	799.1	6.54	41.2	625 000	39 200	37.8	9.46	13 700	1870	15 500	2 890	0.883	30.1	75.7	1 190	437
914×305	289	926.6	307.8	19.6	32.0	19.1	824.5	4.81	42.1	505 000	15 600	37.0	6.51	10 900	1010	12 600	1 600	0.867	31.9	31.2	929	369
	253	918.5	305.5	17.3	27.9	19.1	824.5	5.47	47.7	437 000	13 300	36.8	6.42	9 510	872	10 900	1 370	0.866	36.2	26.4	627	323
	224	910.3	304.1	15.9	23.9	19.1	824.5	6.36	51.9	376 000	11 200	36.3	6.27	8 260	738	9 520	1 160	0.861	41.3	22.0	421	285
	201	903.0	303.4	15.2	20.2	19.1	824.5	7.51	54.2	326 000	9 430	35.6	6.06	7 210	621	8 360	983	0.853	46.8	18.4	293	256
838×292	226	850.9	293.8	16.1	26.8	17.8	761.7	5.48	47.3	340 000	11 400	34.3	6.27	7 990	773	9 160	1 210	0.87	35.0	19.3	514	289
	194	840.7	292.4	14.7	21.7	17.8	761.7	6.74	51.8	279 000	9 070	33.6	6.06	6 650	620	7 650	974	0.862	41.6	15.2	307	247
	176	834.9	291.6	14.0	18.8	17.8	761.7	7.76	54.4	246 000	7 790	33.1	5.90	5 890	534	6 810	842	0.856	46.5	13.0	222	224
762×267	197	769.6	268.0	15.6	25.4	16.5	685.8	5.28	44.0	240 000	8 170	30.9	5.71	6 230	610	7 170	959	0.869	33.2	11.3	405	251
	173	762.0	266.7	14.3	21.6	16.5	685.8	6.17	48.0	205 000	6 850	30.5	5.57	5 390	513	6 200	807	0.864	38.1	9.38	267	220
	147	753.9	265.3	12.9	17.5	16.5	685.8	7.58	53.2	169 000	5 470	30.0	5.39	4 480	412	5 170	649	0.857	45.1	7.41	161	188
686×254	170	692.9	255.8	14.5	23.7	15.2	615.1	5.40	42.4	170 000	6 620	28.0	5.53	4 910	518	5 620	810	0.872	31.8	7.41	307	217
	152	687.6	254.5	13.2	21.0	15.2	615.1	6.06	46.6	150 000	5 780	27.8	5.46	4 370	454	5 000	710	0.871	35.5	6.42	219	194
	140	683.5	253.7	12.4	19.0	15.2	615.1	6.68	49.6	136 000	5 180	27.6	5.38	3 990	408	4 560	638	0.868	38.7	5.72	169	179
	125	677.9	253.0	11.7	16.2	15.2	615.1	7.81	52.6	118 000	4 380	27.2	5.24	3 480	346	4 000	542	0.862	43.9	4.79	116	160
610×305	238	633.0	311.5	18.6	31.4	16.5	537.2	4.96	28.9	208 000	15 800	26.1	7.22	6 560	1020	7 460	1 570	0.886	21.1	14.3	788	304
	179	617.5	307.0	14.1	23.6	16.5	537.2	6.50	38.1	15 200	11 400	25.8	7.08	4 910	743	5 520	1 140	0.886	27.5	10.1	341	228
	149	609.6	304.8	11.9	19.7	16.5	537.2	7.74	45.1	125 000	9 300	25.6	6.99	4 090	610	4 570	937	0.886	32.5	8.09	200	190
610×229	140	617.0	230.1	13.1	22.1	12.7	547.3	5.21	41.8	112 000	4 510	25.0	5.03	3 630	392	4 150	612	0.875	30.5	3.99	217	178
	125	611.9	229.0	11.9	19.6	12.7	547.3	5.84	46.0	98 600	3 930	24.9	4.96	3 220	344	3 680	536	0.873	34.0	3.45	155	160
	113	607.3	228.2	11.2	17.3	12.7	547.3	6.60	48.9	87 400	3 440	24.6	4.88	2 880	301	3 290	470	0.87	37.9	2.99	112	144
	101	602.2	227.6	10.6	14.8	12.7	547.3	7.69	51.6	75 700	2 910	24.2	4.75	2 510	256	2 880	400	0.863	43.0	2.51	77.2	129
533×210	122	544.6	211.9	12.8	21.3	12.7	476.5	4.97	37.2	76 200	3 390	22.1	4.67	2 800	320	3 200	501	0.876	27.6	2.32	180	156
	109	539.5	210.7	11.6	18.8	12.7	476.5	5.60	41.1	66 700	2 940	21.9	4.60	2 470	279	2 820	435	0.875	30.9	1.99	126	139
	101	536.7	210.1	10.9	17.4	12.7	476.5	6.04	43.7	61 700	2 690	21.8	4.56	2 300	257	2 620	400	0.874	33.1	1.82	102	129
	92	533.1	209.3	10.2	15.6	12.7	476.5	6.71	46.7	55 400	2 390	21.7	4.51	2 080	229	2 370	356	0.872	36.4	1.60	76.2	118
	82	528.3	208.7	9.6	13.2	12.7	476.5	7.91	49.6	47 500	2 010	21.3	4.38	1 800	192	2 060	300	0.865	41.6	1.33	51.3	104
457×191	98	467.4	192.8	11.4	19.6	10.2	407.9	4.92	35.8	45 700	2 340	19.1	4.33	1 960	243	2 230	378	0.88	25.8	1.17	121	125
	89	463.6	192.0	10.6	17.7	10.2	407.9	5.42	38.5	41 000	2 090	19.0	4.28	1 770	217	2 010	338	0.879	28.3	1.04	90.5	114
	82	460.2	191.3	9.9	16.0	10.2	407.9	5.98	41.2	37 100	1 870	18.8	4.23	1 610	196	1 830	304	0.877	30.9	0.923	69.2	105
	74	457.2	190.5	9.1	14.5	10.2	407.9	6.57	44.8	33 400	1 670	18.7	4.19	1 460	175	1 660	272	0.876	33.9	0.819	52.0	95.0
	67	453.6	189.9	8.5	12.7	10.2	407.9	7.48	48.0	29 400	1 450	18.5	4.12	1 300	153	1 470	237	0.873	37.9	0.706	37.1	85.4

Designation: Serial size (mm)	Designation: Mass per metre (kg)	Depth of section D (mm)	Width of section B (mm)	Thickness: Web t (mm)	Thickness: Flange T (mm)	Root radius r (mm)	Depth between fillets d (mm)	Ratios for local buckling: Flange b/T	Ratios for local buckling: Web d/t	Second moment of area: Axis x–x (cm^4)	Second moment of area: Axis y–y (cm^4)	Radius of gyration: Axis x–x (cm)	Radius of gyration: Axis y–y (cm)	Elastic modulus: Axis x–x (cm^3)	Elastic modulus: Axis y–y (cm^3)	Plastic modulus: Axis x–x (cm^3)	Plastic modulus: Axis y–y (cm^3)	Buckling parameter u	Torsional index x	Warping constant H (dm^6)	Torsional constant J (cm^4)	Area of section A (cm^2)
457×152	82	465.1	153.5	10.7	18.9	10.2	407.0	4.06	38.0	36 200	1 140	18.6	3.31	1 560	149	1 800	235	0.872	27.3	0.569	89.3	104
	74	461.3	152.7	9.9	17.0	10.2	407.0	4.49	41.1	32 400	1 010	18.5	3.26	1 410	133	1 620	209	0.87	30.0	0.499	66.6	95.0
	67	457.2	151.9	9.1	15.0	10.2	407.0	5.06	44.7	28 600	878	18.3	3.21	1 250	116	1 440	182	0.867	33.6	0.429	47.5	85.4
	60	454.7	152.9	8.0	13.3	10.2	407.7	5.75	51.0	25 500	794	18.3	3.23	1 120	104	1 280	163	0.869	37.5	0.387	33.6	75.9
	52	449.8	152.4	7.6	10.9	10.2	407.7	6.99	53.6	21 300	645	17.9	3.11	949	84.6	1 090	133	0.859	43.9	0.311	21.3	66.5
406×178	74	412.8	179.7	9.7	16.0	10.2	360.5	5.62	37.2	27 300	1 540	17.0	4.03	1 320	172	1 500	267	0.881	27.6	0.608	63.0	95.0
	67	409.4	178.8	8.8	14.3	10.2	360.5	6.25	41.0	24 300	1 360	16.9	4.00	1 190	153	1 350	237	0.88	30.5	0.533	46.0	85.5
	60	406.4	177.8	7.8	12.8	10.2	360.5	6.95	46.2	21 500	1 200	16.8	3.97	1 060	135	1 190	208	0.88	33.9	0.464	32.9	76.0
	54	402.6	177.6	7.6	10.9	10.2	360.5	8.15	47.4	18 600	1 020	16.5	3.85	925	114	1 050	177	0.872	38.5	0.39	22.7	68.4
406×140	46	402.3	142.4	6.9	11.2	10.2	359.7	6.36	52.1	15 600	539	16.3	3.02	778	75.7	888	118	0.87	38.8	0.206	19.2	59.0
	39	397.3	141.8	6.3	8.6	10.2	359.7	8.24	57.1	12 500	411	15.9	2.89	627	58.0	721	91.1	0.859	47.4	0.155	10.6	49.4
356×171	67	364.0	173.2	9.1	15.7	10.2	312.3	5.52	34.3	19 500	1 360	15.1	3.99	1 070	157	1 210	243	0.887	24.4	0.413	55.5	85.4
	57	358.6	172.1	8.0	13.0	10.2	312.3	6.62	39.0	16 100	1 110	14.9	3.92	896	129	1 010	199	0.884	28.9	0.331	33.1	72.2
	51	355.6	171.5	7.3	11.5	10.2	312.3	7.46	42.8	14 200	968	14.8	3.87	796	113	895	174	0.882	32.2	0.286	23.6	64.6
	45	352.0	171.0	6.9	9.7	10.2	312.3	8.81	45.3	12 100	812	14.6	3.78	687	95.0	774	147	0.875	36.9	0.238	15.7	57.0
356×127	39	352.8	126.0	6.5	10.7	10.2	311.2	5.89	47.9	10 100	357	14.3	2.69	572	56.6	654	88.7	0.872	35.3	0.104	14.9	49.4
	33	348.5	125.4	5.9	8.5	10.2	311.2	7.38	52.7	8 200	280	14.0	2.59	471	44.7	540	70.2	0.864	42.2	0.081	8.68	41.8
305×165	54	310.9	166.8	7.7	13.7	8.9	265.7	6.09	34.5	11 700	1 060	13.1	3.94	753	127	845	195	0.89	23.7	0.234	34.5	68.4
	46	307.1	165.7	6.7	11.8	8.9	265.7	7.02	39.7	9 950	897	3.0	3.90	648	108	723	166	0.89	27.2	0.196	22.3	58.9
	40	303.8	165.1	6.1	10.2	8.9	265.7	8.09	43.6	8 520	763	12.9	3.85	561	92.4	624	141	0.888	31.1	0.164	14.7	51.5
305×127	48	310.4	125.2	8.9	14.0	8.9	264.6	4.47	29.7	9 500	460	12.5	2.75	612	73.5	706	116	0.874	23.3	0.101	31.4	60.8
	42	306.6	124.3	8.0	12.1	8.9	264.6	5.14	33.1	8 140	388	12.4	2.70	531	62.5	610	98.2	0.872	26.5	0.0842	21.0	53.2
	37	303.8	123.5	7.2	10.7	8.9	264.6	5.77	36.7	7 160	337	12.3	2.67	472	54.6	540	85.7	0.871	29.6	0.0724	14.9	47.5
305×102	33	312.7	102.4	6.6	10.8	7.6	275.9	4.74	41.8	6 490	193	12.5	2.15	415	37.8	480	59.8	0.866	31.7	0.0441	12.1	41.8
	28	308.9	101.9	6.1	8.9	7.6	275.9	5.72	45.2	5 420	157	12.2	2.08	351	30.8	407	48.9	0.858	37.0	0.0353	7.63	36.3
	25	304.8	101.6	5.8	6.8	7.6	275.9	7.47	47.6	4 390	120	11.8	1.96	288	23.6	338	38.0	0.844	43.8	0.0266	4.65	31.4
254×146	43	259.6	147.3	7.3	12.7	7.6	218.9	5.80	30.0	6 560	677	10.9	3.51	505	92.0	568	141	0.889	21.1	0.103	24.1	55.1
	37	256.0	146.4	6.4	10.9	7.6	218.9	6.72	34.2	5 560	571	10.8	3.47	434	78.1	485	120	0.889	24.3	0.0858	15.5	47.5
	31	251.5	146.1	6.1	8.6	7.6	218.9	8.49	35.9	4 440	449	10.5	3.35	353	61.5	396	94.5	0.879	29.4	0.0662	8.73	40.0
254×102	28	260.4	102.1	6.4	10.0	7.6	225.1	5.10	35.2	4 010	178	10.5	2.22	308	34.9	353	54.8	0.873	27.5	0.0279	9.64	36.2
	25	257.0	101.9	6.1	8.4	7.6	225.1	6.07	36.9	3 410	148	10.3	2.14	265	29.0	306	45.8	0.864	31.4	0.0228	6.45	32.2
	22	254.0	101.6	5.8	6.8	7.6	225.1	7.47	38.8	2 870	120	10.00	2.05	226	23.6	262	37.5	0.854	35.9	0.0183	4.31	28.4
203×133	30	206.8	133.8	6.3	9.6	7.6	172.3	6.97	27.3	2 890	384	8.72	3.18	279	57.4	313	88.1	0.882	21.5	0.0373	10.2	38.0
	25	203.2	133.4	5.8	7.8	7.6	172.3	8.55	29.7	2 360	310	8.54	3.10	232	46.4	260	71.4	0.876	25.4	0.0295	6.12	32.3
203×102	23	203.2	101.6	5.2	9.3	7.6	169.4	5.46	32.6	2 090	163	8.49	2.37	206	32.1	232	49.5	0.89	22.6	0.0153	6.87	29.0
178×102	19	177.8	101.6	4.7	7.9	7.6	146.8	6.43	31.2	1 360	138	7.49	2.39	153	27.2	171	41.9	0.889	22.6	0.00998	4.37	24.2
152×89	16	152.4	88.9	4.6	7.7	7.6	121.8	5.77	26.5	838	90.4	6.40	2.10	110	20.3	124	31.4	0.889	19.5	0.00473	3.61	20.5
127×76	13	127.0	76.2	4.2	7.6	7.6	96.6	5.01	23.0	477	56.2	5.33	1.83	75.1	14.7	85	22.7	0.893	16.2	0.002	2.92	16.8

Table B2 Dimensions and properties of steel universal columns (structural sections to BS 4: Part 1)

Designation: Serial size (mm)	Designation: Mass per metre (kg)	Dimensions: Depth of section D (mm)	Width of section B (mm)	Thickness: Web t (mm)	Thickness: Flange T (mm)	Root radius r (mm)	Depth between fillets d (mm)	Ratios for local buckling: Flange b/T	Ratios for local buckling: Web d/t	Properties: Second moment of area: Axis x–x (cm^4)	Second moment of area: Axis y–y (cm^4)	Radius of gyration: Axis x–x (cm)	Radius of gyration: Axis y–y (cm)	Elastic modulus: Axis x–x (cm^3)	Elastic modulus: Axis y–y (cm^3)	Plastic modulus: Axis x–x (cm^3)	Plastic modulus: Axis y–y (cm^3)	Buckling parameter u	Torsional index x	Warping constant H (dm^6)	Torsional constant J (cm^4)	Area of section A (cm^2)
356×406	634	474.7	424.1	47.6	77.0	15.2	290.2	2.75	6.10	275 000	98 200	18.5	11.0	11 600	4630	14 200	7110	0.843	5.46	38.8	13 700	808
	551	455.7	418.5	42.0	67.5	15.2	290.2	3.10	6.91	227 000	82 700	18.0	10.9	9 960	3950	12 100	6060	0.841	6.05	31.1	9 240	702
	467	436.6	412.4	35.9	58.0	15.2	290.2	3.56	8.08	183 000	67 900	17.5	10.7	8 390	3290	10 000	5040	0.839	6.86	24.3	5 820	595
	393	419.1	407.0	30.6	49.2	15.2	290.2	4.14	9.48	14 700	55 400	17.1	10.5	7 000	2720	8 230	4160	0.837	7.86	19.0	3 550	501
	340	406.4	403.0	26.5	42.9	15.2	290.2	4.70	11.0	12 200	46 800	16.8	10.4	6 030	2320	6 990	3540	0.836	8.85	15.5	2 340	433
	287	393.7	399.0	22.6	36.5	15.2	290.2	5.47	12.8	100 000	38 700	16.5	10.3	5 080	1940	5 820	2950	0.835	10.2	12.3	1 440	366
	235	381.0	395.0	18.5	30.2	15.2	290.2	6.54	15.7	79 100	31 000	16.2	10.2	4 150	1570	4 690	2380	0.834	12.1	9.54	812	300
COLCORE	477	427.0	424.4	48.0	53.2	15.2	290.2	3.99	6.05	172 000	68 100	16.8	10.6	8 080	3210	9 700	4980	0.815	6.91	23.8	5 700	607
356×368	202	374.7	374.4	16.8	27.0	15.2	290.2	6.93	17.3	66 300	23 600	16.0	9.57	3 540	1260	3 980	1920	0.844	13.3	7.14	560	258
	177	368.3	372.1	14.5	23.8	15.2	290.2	7.82	20.0	57 200	20 500	15.9	9.52	3 100	1100	3 460	1670	0.844	15.0	6.07	383	226
	153	362.0	370.2	12.6	20.7	15.2	290.2	8.94	23.0	48 500	17 500	15.8	9.46	2 680	944	2 960	1430	0.844	17.0	5.09	251	195
	129	355.6	368.3	10.7	17.5	15.2	290.2	10.5	27.1	40 200	14 600	15.6	9.39	2 260	790	2 480	1200	0.843	19.9	4.16	153	165
305×305	283	365.3	321.8	26.9	44.1	15.2	246.6	3.65	9.17	78 800	24 500	14.8	8.25	4 310	1530	5 100	2340	0.855	7.65	6.33	2 030	360
	240	352.6	317.9	23.0	37.7	15.2	246.6	4.22	10.7	64 200	20 200	14.5	8.14	3 640	1270	4 250	1950	0.854	8.73	5.01	1 270	306
	198	339.9	314.1	19.2	31.4	15.2	246.6	5.00	12.8	50 800	16 200	14.2	8.02	2 990	1030	3 440	1580	0.854	10.2	3.86	734	252
	158	327.2	310.6	15.7	25.0	15.2	246.6	6.21	15.7	38 700	12 500	13.9	7.89	2 370	806	2 680	1230	0.852	12.5	2.86	379	201
	137	320.5	308.7	13.8	21.7	15.2	246.6	7.11	17.9	32 800	10 700	13.7	7.82	2 050	691	2 300	1050	0.851	14.1	2.38	250	175
	118	314.5	306.8	11.9	18.7	15.2	246.6	8.20	20.7	27 600	9 010	13.6	7.75	1 760	587	1 950	892	0.851	16.2	1.97	160	150
	97	307.8	304.8	9.9	15.4	15.2	246.6	9.90	24.9	22 200	7 270	13.4	7.68	1 440	477	1 590	723	0.85	19.3	1.55	91.1	123
254×254	167	289.1	264.5	19.2	31.7	12.7	200.3	4.17	10.4	29 900	9 800	11.9	6.79	2 070	741	2 420	1130	0.852	8.49	1.62	625	212
	132	276.4	261.0	15.6	25.3	12.7	200.3	5.16	12.8	22 600	7 520	11.6	6.67	1 630	576	1 870	879	0.85	10.3	1.18	322	169
	107	266.7	258.3	13.0	20.5	12.7	200.3	6.30	15.4	17 500	5 900	11.3	6.57	1 310	457	1 490	695	0.848	12.4	0.894	173	137
	89	260.4	255.9	10.5	17.3	12.7	200.3	7.40	19.1	14 300	4 850	11.2	6.52	1 100	379	1 230	575	0.849	14.4	0.716	104	114
	73	254.0	254.0	8.6	14.2	12.7	200.3	8.94	23.3	11 400	3 870	11.1	6.46	894	305	989	462	0.849	17.3	0.557	57.3	92.9
203×203	86	222.3	208.8	13.0	20.5	10.2	160.9	5.09	12.4	9 460	3 120	9.27	5.32	851	299	979	456	0.85	10.2	0.317	138	110
	71	215.9	206.2	10.3	17.3	10.2	160.9	5.96	15.6	7 650	2 540	9.16	5.28	708	246	802	374	0.852	11.9	0.25	81.5	91.1
	60	209.6	205.2	9.3	14.2	10.2	160.9	7.23	17.3	6 090	2 040	8.96	5.19	581	199	652	303	0.847	14.1	0.195	46.6	75.8
	52	206.2	203.9	8.0	12.5	10.2	160.9	8.16	20.1	5 260	1 770	8.90	5.16	510	174	568	264	0.848	15.8	0.166	32.0	66.4
	46	203.2	203.2	7.3	11.0	10.2	160.9	9.24	22.0	4 560	1 540	8.81	5.11	449	151	497	230	0.846	17.7	0.142	22.2	58.8
152×152	37	161.8	154.4	8.1	11.5	7.6	123.5	6.71	15.2	2 220	709	6.84	3.87	274	91.8	310	140	0.848	13.3	0.04	19.5	47.4
	30	157.5	152.9	6.6	9.4	7.6	123.5	8.13	18.7	1 740	558	6.75	3.82	221	73.1	247	111	0.848	16.0	0.0306	10.5	38.2
	23	152.4	152.4	6.1	6.8	7.6	123.5	11.2	20.2	1 260	403	6.51	3.68	166	52.9	184	80.9	0.837	20.4	0.0214	4.87	29.8

Appendix C

Buckling resistance of unstiffened webs

The previous version of BS 5950–1 calculated the buckling resistance of unstiffened webs assuming the web behaved as a strut with a slenderness of $2.5d/t$. Comparison with test results suggested that this approach could, in a limited number of cases, lead to unconservative estimates of the web's buckling resistance. It was therefore decided in BS 5950–1:2000 to revise the design approach and base the web's buckling resistance on the well-known theory of plate buckling, which represents the behaviour more realistically compared to the previous assumption of the web acting as a strut.

The buckling resistance, P_X, of a plate is given by

$$P_X = \rho P_{bw}$$

where ρ is a reduction factor based on the effective width concept of representing the inelastic post buckling of plates, and P_{bw} is the bearing capacity. The reduction factor can, approximately, be given by[1]

$$\rho = \frac{0.65}{\lambda_p}$$

where the slenderness of the plate, λ_p, is given by

$$\lambda_p = \sqrt{\frac{P_{bw}}{P_{elastic}}}$$

Representing an unstiffened web as a plate, BS 5950–1:2000 defines the bearing capacity, P_{bw}, as

$$P_{bw} = (b_1 + nk)tp_{yw}$$

$P_{elastic}$ is the elastic buckling load of the web. Assuming that the web is restrained by the flanges of the section and the web behaves as a long plate, the elastic buckling load is given by[2]

$$P_{elastic} = \frac{2\pi E t^3}{3(1 - v^2)d}$$

Substitution gives a slenderness of

$$\lambda_p = 0.659\sqrt{\frac{(b_1 + nk)dp_{yw}}{Et^2}}$$

The buckling resistance, P_X, can be written as

$$P_X = \frac{0.65}{0.659\sqrt{\dfrac{(b_1 + nk)dp_{yw}}{Et^2}}}P_{bw}$$

Re-arranging gives

$$P_X = \frac{27.2t\sqrt{\dfrac{275}{p_{yw}}}}{\sqrt{(b_1 + nk)d}}P_{bw}$$

Comparison of the above equation with available test data highlights the approximations made in the above formulation and led to a reduction of the factor 27.2 by 8%, to 25.0.

Letting

$$\varepsilon = \sqrt{\frac{275}{p_{yw}}}$$

results in

$$P_X = \frac{25\varepsilon t}{\sqrt{(b_1 + nk)d}}P_{bw}$$

which represents the equation given in BS 5950–1:2000 for an unstiffened web.

When the applied load or reaction is less than $0.7d$ from the end of the member, the buckling resistance of an unstiffened web is reduced by the factor

$$\frac{a_e + 0.7d}{1.4d}$$

where $a_e < 0.7d$ and is the distance from the load or reaction to the end of the member.

References

1. Bradford, M.A. et al., *Australian Limit State Design Rules for the Stability of Steel Structures*, First National Structural Engineering Conference, pp 209–216, Melbourne 1987.
2. Timoshenko, S.P. and Gere, J.M., *Theory of Elastic Stability*, McGraw-Hill, 1961.

Appendix D

Second moment of area of a composite beam

Deflections of composite beams are normally calculated using the gross value of the second moment of area of the uncracked section, I_g. This appendix derives the formula for I_g given in section 4.10.3.6.

Consider the beam section shown in *Fig. D1* which consists of a concrete slab of effective width, B_e, and depth, D_s, acting compositely with a steel beam of cross-sectional area, A, and overall depth, D.

Assuming the modular ratio is α_e, the transformed area of concrete slab is $(B_e/\alpha_e)D_s$. Taking moments about x–x, the distance between the centroids of the concrete slab and the steel beam $\bar{y}$, is

$$\bar{y} = \frac{A\left(\dfrac{D}{2} + \dfrac{D_s}{2}\right)}{\left(A + \dfrac{B_e D_s}{\alpha_e}\right)} = \frac{\alpha_e A(D_s + D)}{2(\alpha_e A + B_e D_s)} \qquad \text{(D1)}$$

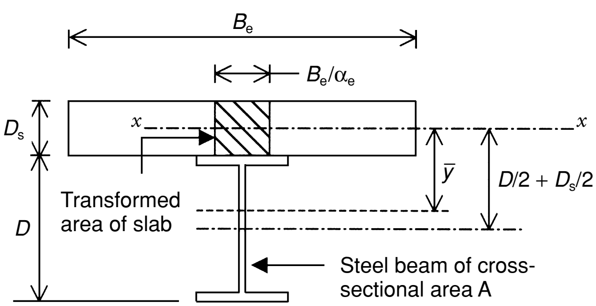


Fig. D1

The second moment of area of the composite section, I_g, is then

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e D_s^3}{12\alpha_e} + A\left(\left(\frac{D_s}{2} + \frac{D}{2}\right) - \bar{y}\right)^2 + \frac{B_e D_s}{\alpha_e}\bar{y}^2 \qquad \text{(D2)}$$

where I_s is the second moment of area of the steel section.

Making $(D_s + D)/2$ the subject of equation (D1) and substituting into (D2) gives

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e D_s^3}{12\alpha_e} + A\left(\left(\frac{A + B_e D_s/\alpha_e}{A}\right)\bar{y} - \bar{y}\right)^2 + \frac{B_e D_s}{\alpha_e}\bar{y}^2 \qquad \text{(D3)}$$

Simplifying and substituting (D1) into (D3) gives

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e D_s^3}{12\alpha_e} + \frac{AB_e^2 D_s^2}{A^2\alpha_e^2}\left(\frac{\alpha_e A(D_s - D)}{2(\alpha_e A + B_e D_s)}\right)^2 + \frac{B_e D_s}{\alpha_e}\left(\frac{\alpha_e A(D_s + D)}{2(\alpha_e A + B_e D_s)}\right)^2 \qquad \text{(D4)}$$

Collecting terms and simplifying obtains the equation given for the gross value of the second moment of area of the uncracked composite section quoted in *section 4.10.3.6*

$$I_g = I_s + \frac{B_e D_s^3}{12\alpha_e} + \frac{AB_e D_s(D_s + D)^2}{4(\alpha_e A + B_e D_s)} \qquad \text{(D5)}$$

Appendix E

References and further reading

References

BRITISH STANDARDS

BS 4–1: 2005: Structural steel sections; Part 1: Specification for hot-rolled sections

BS 449: 1996: Specification for the use of structural steel in buildings: Part 2: Metric units

BS 648: 1964: Schedule of weights of building materials

BS 4729: 2005: Clay and calcium silicate bricks of special shapes and sizes – recommendations

BS 5268–2: 2002: Structural use of timber – Part 2: Code of practice for permissible stress design, materials and workmanship

BS 5400: Steel, Concrete and Composite Bridges; Part 3: Code of Practice for design of steel bridges, 2000; Part 4: Code of Practice for design of concrete bridges, 1990

BS 5628: 2005: Code of practice for use of masonry; Part 1: Structural use of unreinforced masonry; Part 2: Structural use of reinforced and prestressed masonry; Part 3: Materials and components, design and workmanship

BS 5950–1: 2000: Structural use of steelwork in buildings; Part 1: Code of practice for design – rolled and welded sections

BS 6399: Design loading for buildings; Part 1: Code of practice for dead and imposed loads, 1996; Part 2: Code of practice for wind loads, 1997; Part 3: Code of practice for imposed roof loads, 1988

BS 8007: 1987: Code of practice for the design of concrete structures for retaining aqueous liquids

BS 8110: Structural use of concrete; Part 1: Code of practice for design and construction, 1997; Part 2: Code of practice for special circumstances, 1985; Part 3: Design charts for singly reinforced beams, doubly reinforced beams and rectangular columns, 1985

BS 8500–1: 2006: Concrete – complementary British Standard to BS EN 206–1; Part 1: Method of specifying and guidance for the specifier

CP3: 1972: Code of basic design data for the design of buildings; Chapter V: Part 2: Wind loads

CP114: 1969: Structural use of reinforced concrete in buildings

EUROCODES, NATIONAL ANNEXES, PD AND EUROPEAN STANDARDS

BS EN 1990, Eurocode: Basis of structural design, 2002

BS EN 1991, Eurocode 1: Actions on Structures. General actions. Part 1–1: Densities, self weight and imposed loads, 2002; Part 1–4 Wind loads, 2005

BS EN 1992, Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures – Part 1–1: General rules and rules for buildings, 2004

BS EN1993, Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures – Part 1–1: General rules and rules for buildings, 2005; Part 1–5: Plated structural elements, 2006; Part 1–8: Design of joints, 2005

BS EN1995, Eurocode 5: Design of Timber Structures – Part 1–1: Common Rules and rules for buildings, 2004

BS EN 1996, Eurocode 6: Design of masonry structures – Part 1–1: General rules for reinforced and unreinforced masonry structures, 2005

NA to BS EN 1990: UK National Annex to Eurocode 0: Basis of structural design, 2002

NA to BS EN 1991–1–1: UK National Annex to Eurocode 1: Actions on structures. General actions. Densities, self-weight and imposed loads, 2002

NA to BS EN 1992–1–1: UK National Annex to Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures – Part 1–1: General rules and rules for buildings, 2004

NA to BS EN 1993: UK National Annex to Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures – Part 1–1: General rules and rules for buildings, 2008; Part 1–5: Plated structural elements, 2006

NA to BS EN 1995–1–1: UK National Annex to Eurocode 5: Design of Timber Structures – Part 1–1: General – Common Rules and Rules for Buildings, 2004

NA to BS EN 1996–1–1: UK National Annex to Eurocode 6: Design of masonry structures – Part 1–1: General rules for reinforced and unreinforced masonry structures, 2005

PD 6678: Background paper to the UK National Annex to BS EN 1992–1, 2006

BS EN 206–1: 2000, Concrete – Part 1: Specification, performance, production and conformity

BS EN 336: 2003, Structural timber – sizes, permitted deviations

BS EN 338: 2003, Structural timber – strength classes

BS EN 771: 2003, Specification for masonry units; Part 1: Clay masonry units; Part 3: Aggregate concrete masonry units (dense and lightweight aggregates)

BS EN 772–1: 2000, Methods of tests for masonry units. Determination of compressive strength

BS EN 845–1: 2003, Specification for ancillary components for masonry – Part 1: Ties, tension straps, hangers and brackets

BS EN 10002: 2001, Metallic materials – Tensile testing – Part 1: Methods of test at ambient temperature

BS EN 12390–3: 2002, Testing hardened concrete – Part 3: Compressive strength of test specimens

BS EN 14081: 2005, Timber structures – Strength graded structural timber with rectangular cross section – Part 1: General requirements

Further reading

Bond, A.J. et al., *How to design concrete structures using Eurocode 2*, The Concrete Centre, 2006

Curtin, W.G. et al., *Structural masonry designers' manual*, 3rd edition, Oxford, Blackwell, 2006

Gardner, L. and Nethercot, D.A., *Designers' guide to EN 1993–1–1, Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures, general rules and rules for buildings*, London, Thomas Telford, 2005

Higgins, J.B. and Rogers, B.R., *Designed and detailed (BS 8110: 1997)*, Crowthorne, British Cement Association, 1998

Institution of Structural Engineers and The Concrete Society, *Standard method of detailing structural concrete*, London, Institution of Structural Engineers/Concrete Society, 1989

Institution of Structural Engineers and The Concrete Society, *Standard method of detailing structural concrete – a manual for best practice*, London, Institution of Structural Engineers/Concrete Society, 2006

Institution of Structural Engineers, *Manual for the design of timber building structures to Eurocode 5*, London, Institution of Structural Engineers, 2007

Institution of Structural Engineers, *Manual for the design of plain masonry in building structures to Eurocode 6*, London, Institution of Structural Engineers, 2008

Mosley, B. et al., *Reinforced concrete design to Eurocode 2*, 6th edition, Basingstoke, Hampshire, Palgrave Macmillan, 2007

Narayanan, R.S. and Beeby, A.W., *Designers' guide to EN 1992–1–1 and EN 1992–1–2, Eurocode 2: Design of Concrete Structures. General rules and rules for buildings and fire design*, London, Thomas Telford, 2005

Narayanan, R.S. and Goodchild, C.H., *Concise Eurocode 2 for the design of in-situ concrete framed* *buildings to BS EN 1992–1–1: 2004 and its UK National Annex: 2005*, Blackwater, Concrete Centre, 2006

Ozelton, E.C. and Baird, J.A., *Timber designers' manual*, 3rd edition, Oxford, Blackwell Science, 2002

Reynolds et al., *Reynolds's reinforced concrete designer's handbook*, 11th edition, London, Taylor & Francis, 2008

Threlfall, A.J., *Designed and detailed (Eurocode 2: 2004)*, Concrete Society/British Cement Association, Blackwater, 2009

Index